

---

---

**Information technology — Multimedia  
Middleware —**

**Part 2:  
Multimedia application programming  
interface (API)**

*Technologies de l'information — Intergiciel multimédia —*

*Partie 2: Interface de programmation d'application multimédia (API)*

**PDF disclaimer**

This PDF file may contain embedded typefaces. In accordance with Adobe's licensing policy, this file may be printed or viewed but shall not be edited unless the typefaces which are embedded are licensed to and installed on the computer performing the editing. In downloading this file, parties accept therein the responsibility of not infringing Adobe's licensing policy. The ISO Central Secretariat accepts no liability in this area.

Adobe is a trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Details of the software products used to create this PDF file can be found in the General Info relative to the file; the PDF-creation parameters were optimized for printing. Every care has been taken to ensure that the file is suitable for use by ISO member bodies. In the unlikely event that a problem relating to it is found, please inform the Central Secretariat at the address given below.

STANDARDSISO.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO/IEC 23004-2:2007



**COPYRIGHT PROTECTED DOCUMENT**

© ISO/IEC 2007

All rights reserved. Unless otherwise specified, no part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and microfilm, without permission in writing from either ISO at the address below or ISO's member body in the country of the requester.

ISO copyright office  
Case postale 56 • CH-1211 Geneva 20  
Tel. + 41 22 749 01 11  
Fax + 41 22 749 09 47  
E-mail [copyright@iso.org](mailto:copyright@iso.org)  
Web [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org)

Published in Switzerland

# Contents

Page

|                                                                         |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Foreword.....                                                           | iv   |
| Introduction .....                                                      | v    |
| 1 Scope .....                                                           | 1    |
| 2 Organization of this document.....                                    | 1    |
| 3 Normative references .....                                            | 1    |
| 4 Terms, definitions and abbreviated terms .....                        | 2    |
| 5 Overview of interface suites .....                                    | 16   |
| 5.1 General interaction .....                                           | 16   |
| 5.2 Audio .....                                                         | 17   |
| 5.3 Video .....                                                         | 19   |
| 5.4 Security .....                                                      | 23   |
| 6 General interface suites .....                                        | 24   |
| 6.1 General interaction and navigation.....                             | 24   |
| 7 Audio interface suites .....                                          | 123  |
| 7.1 Broadcast Audio decoding .....                                      | 123  |
| 7.2 Audio processing and rendering .....                                | 384  |
| 8 Video interface suites .....                                          | 530  |
| 8.1 Broadcast Video decoding .....                                      | 530  |
| 8.2 Video processing and rendering .....                                | 1041 |
| 8.3 Personal video recording.....                                       | 1336 |
| 9 Security interface suites .....                                       | 1395 |
| 9.1 IPMP interface suites .....                                         | 1395 |
| 9.2 Governance interface suites.....                                    | 1420 |
| Annex A (normative) Global types .....                                  | 1437 |
| Annex B (informative) Use Cases .....                                   | 1449 |
| Annex C (informative) Application notes .....                           | 1452 |
| Annex D (informative) Notational conventions .....                      | 1453 |
| Annex E (informative) Generation of channel status information.....     | 1455 |
| Annex F (informative) Application notes .....                           | 1457 |
| Annex G (informative) Use of the data Injector in the PVR context ..... | 1458 |
| Annex H (informative) Implementation notes .....                        | 1459 |
| Bibliography .....                                                      | 1461 |

## Foreword

ISO (the International Organization for Standardization) and IEC (the International Electrotechnical Commission) form the specialized system for worldwide standardization. National bodies that are members of ISO or IEC participate in the development of International Standards through technical committees established by the respective organization to deal with particular fields of technical activity. ISO and IEC technical committees collaborate in fields of mutual interest. Other international organizations, governmental and non-governmental, in liaison with ISO and IEC, also take part in the work. In the field of information technology, ISO and IEC have established a joint technical committee, ISO/IEC JTC 1.

International Standards are drafted in accordance with the rules given in the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

The main task of the joint technical committee is to prepare International Standards. Draft International Standards adopted by the joint technical committee are circulated to national bodies for voting. Publication as an International Standard requires approval by at least 75 % of the national bodies casting a vote.

Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this document may be the subject of patent rights. ISO and IEC shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.

ISO/IEC 23004-2 was prepared by Joint Technical Committee ISO/IEC JTC 1, *Information technology*, Subcommittee SC 29, *Coding of audio, picture, multimedia and hypermedia information*.

ISO/IEC 23004 consists of the following parts, under the general title *Information technology — Multimedia Middleware*:

- *Part 1: Architecture*
- *Part 2: Multimedia application programming interface (API)*
- *Part 3: Component model*
- *Part 4: Resource and quality management*
- *Part 5: Component download*
- *Part 6: Fault management*
- *Part 7: System integrity management*

## Introduction

MPEG, ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 29/WG 11, has produced many important standards (MPEG-1, MPEG-2, MPEG-4, MPEG-7, and MPEG-21). MPEG feels that it is important to standardize an application programming interface (API) for Multimedia Middleware (M3W) that complies with the requirements found in the annex to the Multimedia Middleware (M3W) Requirements Document Version 2.0 (ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 29/WG 11 N 6981).

The objectives of Multimedia Middleware (M3W) are to allow applications to execute multimedia functions with a minimum knowledge of the middleware and to allow applications to trigger updates to the middleware to extend the middleware API. The first goal can be achieved by standardizing the API that the middleware offers. The second goal is much more challenging, as it requires mechanisms to manage the middleware API and to ensure that this functions according to application needs. The second goal can support the first, by reducing the needed standard API to those that provide middleware management. Consequently, applications can use these standard management APIs to generate the multimedia system they require.

ISO/IEC 23004 provides the following:

1. a *vision* for a multimedia middleware API framework to enable the transparent and augmented use of multimedia resources across a wide range of networks and devices;
2. a method to facilitate the integration of APIs to software components and services in order to harmonise *technologies* for the creation, management, manipulation, transport, distribution and consumption of content;
3. a *strategy* for achieving a multimedia API framework by the development of specifications and standards based on well-defined functional requirements through collaboration with other bodies.

STANDARDSISO.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO/IEC 23004-2:2007

# Information technology — Multimedia Middleware —

## Part 2: Multimedia application programming interface (API)

### 1 Scope

This part of ISO/IEC 23004 defines the Multimedia application programming interface (API) of MPEG Multimedia Middleware. The context of this Multimedia API is described in ISO/IEC 23004-1.

### 2 Organization of this document

This part of ISO/IEC 23004 has the following high level structure:

- Clause 1 defines the scope of this part of ISO/IEC 23004.
- Clause 3 gives an overview of documents that are indispensable for the application of this part of ISO/IEC 23004.
- Clause 4 gives the terms and definitions used in this part of ISO/IEC 23004.
- Clause 5 gives an overview of the interface suites that are part of the Multimedia API of Multimedia Middleware (M3W).
- Clause 6 contains the specification of the general interface suites used for navigation between interfaces, configuration of IO and verification that objects are still alive.
- Clause 7 contains the specification of the interface suites that are part of the Multimedia API and which deal with audio.
- Clause 8 contains the specification of the interface suites that are part of the Multimedia API and which deal with video.
- Clause 9 contains the specification of the interface suites that are part of the Multimedia API and which deal with security and governance.

### 3 Normative references

The following referenced documents are indispensable for the application of this document. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

ISO/IEC 23004-1, *Information technology — Multimedia Middleware — Part 1: Architecture*

ISO/IEC 23004-3, *Information technology — Multimedia Middleware — Part 3: Component model*

## 4 Terms, definitions and abbreviated terms

For the purposes of this document, the following terms, definitions and abbreviated terms apply.

### 4.1

#### **2CS**

Dual or Two Carrier System

German stereo

FM modulated signal which has two carriers, the second of which contains either stereo information or a second (dual) sound channel

### 4.2

#### **AA**

Anti-Aging logical component

### 4.3

#### **AAC**

Advanced Audio Coding (AAC is standardized as part of the MPEG-2 and MPEG-4 specifications.)

### 4.4

#### **AAVL**

Audio Automatic Volume Leveler

### 4.5

#### **AC-3**

Dolby's third generation Audio Coding algorithm a.k.a. Dolby Digital

### 4.6

#### **access unit**

coded representation of a presentation unit

#### **4.6.1**

##### **access unit**

⟨audio⟩ coded representation of an audio frame

#### **4.6.2**

##### **access unit**

⟨video⟩ all the coded data for a picture, and any stuffing that follows it, up to but not including the start of the next access unit

### 4.7

#### **ADRC**

Audio Dynamic Range Control logical component

### 4.8

#### **AFC**

Automatic Frequency Control

### 4.9

#### **AGC**

Automatic Gain Control

### 4.10

#### **AL**

Ambient Light

### 4.11

#### **AM**

Amplitude Modulation



**4.12**

**ANG**

Audio Noise Generator logical component

**4.13**

**API**

Application Programming Interface

**4.14**

**application**

piece of software that makes use of the API

**4.15**

**ASK**

Amplitude Shift Keying

**4.16**

**ATRAC**

Adaptive TRansform Acoustic Coding

**4.17**

**ATSC**

Advanced Television Systems Committee

**4.18**

**AtscDec**

ATSC Decoder logical component

**4.19**

**AVC**

Audio Volume Control logical component

**4.20**

**AVD**

Analog Video Decoder

**4.21**

**AVDC**

Analog Video Decoder Client

**4.22**

**AVI**

Auxiliary Video Information

**4.23**

**AVL**

Automatic Volume Leveling

**4.24**

**BBD**

Black Bar Detection logical component

**4.25**

**BC**

Bass Compensation type of bass enhancement, described in 7.2.2

**4.26**

**BCS**

Brightness, Contrast and Saturation

**4.27**

**BE**

Bass Enhancement

**4.28**

**BER**

Bit Error Rate

ratio of the number of erroneous bits to the total number of bits transmitted

**4.29**

**BTSC**

Broadcast Television Systems Committee

US standard for sound, which can be mono or stereo, with an optional SAP

**4.30**

**BVF**

Basic Video Featuring

**4.31**

**CA**

Conditional Access

**4.32**

**CBC**

Cipher Block Chain

**4.33**

**CC**

Closed Caption

**4.34**

**CDS**

Color Dependent Sharpness

**4.35**

**CHD**

Channel Decoding logical component

**4.36**

**CINCH**

RCA

connector used for composite video or audio connections

NOTE For stereo audio two connections are needed.

**4.37**

**CLUT**

Color LookUp Table

**4.38**

**COM**

Microsoft's Component Object Model

**4.39**

**control interface**

interface provided by the API that allows platform functionality to be controlled by a client

NOTE In this part of ISO/IEC 23004, the term control interface is in most cases used to mean the interface that the Connection Manager provides to select use cases.

**4.40****CRC**

Cyclic Redundancy Check

**4.41****CRT**

Cathode Ray Tube

**4.42****CTI**

Color Transient Improvement

**4.43 CVBS****4.43.1****CVBS**

Composite Video Baseband Signal

**4.43.2****CVBS**

Composite Video, Blanking, Synchronization

video format where luminance, chrominance, blanking and synchronization are integrated in one signal

**4.44****CVI**

Component Video Input

video format where color information is transmitted in three different signals

**4.45****CW**

Control Word

**4.46****DARS**

Digital Audio Reference Signal

**4.47****dB**

decibel

unit used to express relative difference in power or intensity, usually between two acoustic or electric signals, equal to ten times the common logarithm of the ratio of the two levels

**4.48****DBE**

Dynamic Bass Enhancement type of bass enhancement, described in 7.2.2

**4.49****Dei**

De-interlacing

**4.50****DES**

Data Encryption Standard

**4.51****DiSEqC**

Digital Satellite Equipment Control

**4.52**

**DLNA**

Digital Living Network Alliance

**4.53**

**DMA**

Direct Memory Access

**4.54**

**DNR**

Dynamic Noise Reduction

**4.55**

**Dolby**

Dolby Laboratories Inc., supplier of audio algorithms including the AC-3 audio coding standard

**4.56**

**DRC**

Dynamic Range Control  
functionality associated with the ADRC

**4.57**

**DSS**

Digital Satellite System

**4.58**

**DTS**

Digital Theater System

**4.59**

**DTV**

Digital TeleVision, including HDTV (high-definition digital television) and SDTV (standard digital television)

**4.60**

**DTVCC**

Digital TeleVision Closed Captioning

**4.61**

**DV (SD-2ch/4ch)**

Digital Video (IEC 61834) interface standard

**4.62**

**DVB**

Digital Video Broadcasting

**4.63**

**DVD**

Digital Versatile Disc

**4.64**

**DVI**

Digital Visual Interface

**4.65**

**ECB**

Electronic CodeBook

**4.66****ECM**

Entitlement Control Message

**4.67****EIAJ**

Electronic Industries Association of Japan  
Japanese TV stereo sound standard

**4.68****EIT**

Event Information Table

**4.69****EMM**

Entitlement Management Message

**4.70****error**

condition which, if not handled, can cause a system to crash or malfunction

**4.71****error handler**

piece of software meant to deal with the consequences of an error

**4.72****ES**

Elementary Stream

**4.73****EXIF**

EXchangeable Image File format

**4.74****FEC**

Forward Error Correction

**4.75     Field/frame rate****4.75.1****field rate**

⟨interlaced video⟩ number of fields per second

**4.75.2****frame rate**

⟨progressive video⟩ number of frames per second

**4.76****filter depth**

size of the data on which filter criteria can be applied

**4.77****FM**

Frequency Modulation

**4.78****FM Korea**

form of 2CS transmission used in South Korea

**4.79**

**GIF**

Graphics Interchange Format from CompuServe

**4.80**

**GOP**

Group Of Pictures

**4.81**

**GUID**

globally unique identifier

value that uniquely identifies some entity in the universe

**4.82**

**HDMI**

High-Definition Multimedia Interface

uncompressed digital audio/video interface

**4.83**

**HM**

Histogram Modification

**4.84**

**IAA**

I Am Alive logical component

**4.85**

**ICAM**

Integrated Conditional Access Module

**4.86**

**ID**

Identifier

**4.87**

**Id**

Identification

**4.88**

**IF**

Intermediate Frequency

**4.89**

**IID**

Interface Identifier

**4.90**

**JFIF**

JPEG File Interchange Format

**4.91**

**JPEG**

Joint Photographic Experts Group

**4.92**

**kbps**

kilobits per second

**4.93****LC**

Logical Component  
multimedia component as it appears to the user

**4.94****LCD**

Liquid Crystal Display

**4.95****LFE**

Low Frequency Effects

**4.96****LNB**

Low Noise Block

**4.97****loudness**

perceived strength of sound

NOTE Loudness generally increases with the volume level, but not uniformly across all frequency ranges for the human ear.

**4.98****Loudness-Processing**

advanced audio functionality that ensures that the relative perceptual loudness levels for different frequencies are maintained across volume settings for the same musical piece

**4.99****Lt/Rt audio stream**

two-channel (Dolby, DTS, etc.) surround encoded audio stream

**4.100****LTI**

Luminance Transient Improvement

**4.101****matrix display**

flat display type, like plasma or LCD

**4.102****McTc**

Motion compensated Temporal conversion

**4.103****MPEG**

Moving Picture Experts Group

**4.104****MPEG section**

segment of tables containing meta-data

NOTE See [2] for more information.

**4.105****MS**

MPEG Source

**4.106**

**MSB**

Most Significant Bit

**4.107**

**MTS**

Multichannel Television Sound standard

standard similar to FM radio stereo modulation techniques in conjunction with an additional SAP carrier

**4.108**

**multi-channel signal**

audio signal with at least one rear channel (a.k.a. surround channel) and/or at least three front channels

**4.109**

**multiplexing**

〈TS Mux〉 inserting one or more section data packets into a stream of packets(TS/TSts) at appropriate points in the stream

**4.110**

**NG**

Noise Generation

functionality associated with the ANG

**4.111**

**NICAM**

Near Instantaneously Compacted Audio Multiplex

digital sound standard which can contain mono sound, stereo sound, dual sound or data, which is either related or unrelated to the image

NOTE NICAM is accompanied by an AM or FM mono signal.

**4.112**

**NIT**

Network Information Table

**4.113**

**NTSC**

National Television Standards Committee

**4.114**

**Null use case**

special use case that consists of zero streaming graphs and hence has no components

NOTE This use case is always the initial use case after a Connection Manager has been instantiated.

**4.115**

**OFB**

Output FeedBack

**4.116**

**OFDM**

Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex

**4.117**

**OBTDT**

Out Of Band Tuning and Demodulation logical component



**4.118****PAL**

Phase Alternating Line

**4.119****PAT**

Program Association Table

**4.120****PB**

Phantom Bass type of bass enhancement, described in 7.2.2

**4.121****PCM**

Pulse Code Modulation  
digital mono or stereo audio stream

**4.122****PCR**

Program Clock Reference

**4.123****PES**

Packetised Elementary Stream

**4.124****PID**

Packet Identifier

**4.125****platform**

collection of components of which multiple platform instances can be instantiated

**4.126****platform instance**

instantiation of a platform, which determines which components are used from the platform (and how many of each), how they are configured and which use cases and possible transitions between them are possible

**4.127****PMT**

Program Mapping Table

**4.128****PNG**

Portable Network Graphics

**4.129****program**

digital video broadcasting service

**4.130****PS**

Pseudo-Sync

**4.131****PSI**

Program Specific Information

**4.132**

**PSK**

Phase Shift Keying

**4.133**

**PTS**

Presentation Time Stamp

**4.134**

**PVR**

Personal Video Recorder

**4.135**

**QAM**

Quadrature Amplitude Modulation

modulation of two orthogonal derivatives of a carrier by two signals

**4.136**

**QPSK**

Quadrature Phase Shift Keying

**4.137**

**RF**

Radio Frequency

**4.138**

**RFA**

RF Amplification logical component

**4.139**

**RGB**

component video format where color information is transmitted in a red, green and blue signal

**4.140**

**SAP**

Second Audio Program, used with the BTSC sound standard and always mono

**4.141**

**Scan Rate**

combination of frequency and scan type

**4.142**

**SCART**

Peritel

Euroconnector

connector used for combined audio and video connections

NOTE 1 A formal description is given in CENELEC EN 50 049-1:1989 and in IEC 933-1.

NOTE 2 SCART is the acronym for *Syndicat des Constructeurs d'Appareils Radiorécepteurs et Téléviseurs*.

**4.143**

**SDC**

System time clock Decoder Client

**4.144**

**SE**

Sharpness Enhancement, based on LTI and peaking

**4.145****SECAM**

*Séquentiel Couleur Avec Mémoire* or *Système Electronique Couleur Avec Mémoire*, translated as SEquential Color And Memory

**4.146****SI**

Service Information

**4.147****SPD**

Source Product Description

**4.148****SPDIF**

Sony/Philips Digital InterFace  
standard audio transfer file format over a standard CINCH or optical connector

**4.149****SPIFF**

Still Picture Interchange File Format

**4.150****SPKR**

speaker-set headphones logical component

**4.151****SPTS**

Single Program Transport Stream

**4.152****SRS**

Sound Retrieval System

**4.153****STC**

System Time Clock

**4.154****STCD**

STC Decoder

**4.155****streaming graph**

collection of one or more components that are connected via their inputs and outputs and that stream data in between them

**4.156****TDES**

Triple DES

**4.157****thread**

single thread of execution

**4.158****thread-local storage**

mechanism by which variables can be allocated such that there is one instance of the variable per extant thread

NOTE Most operating systems provide special functions to allocate and access such thread-specific variables.

**4.159**

**thumbnail**

small image representation of a larger image, usually intended to make it easier and faster to look at or manage a group of larger images

**4.160**

**TIFF**

Tag Image File Format

**4.161**

**TP**

Transport Packet

**4.162**

**TPH**

Transport Packet Header

**4.163**

**TS**

Transport Stream

**4.164**

**TS Demux**

Transport Stream Demultiplexer

**4.165**

**TS Mux**

Transport Stream Multiplexer

**4.166**

**TSts**

Transport Stream with time-stamps

EXAMPLE a MPEG-2 transport stream having a 32-bit time-stamp appended to every transport stream packet

**4.167**

**M3W client**

object that uses a M3W interface

NOTE Such an object does not necessarily provide the uhlUnknown interface, unless it provides a M3W interface itself, such as a notification interface.

**4.168**

**M3W object**

object that provides a M3W interface

NOTE Such an object has to provide the uhlUnknown interface as well.

**4.169**

**URL**

Uniform Resource Locator

NOTE Previously known as Universal Resource Locator.

**4.170**

**use case**

collection of zero or more streaming graphs

NOTE By selecting a use case, the client determines which components are active and how the connections between those components are laid.

**4.171**

**UV**

color component of a YUV signal

**4.172**

**VBI**

Vertical Blanking Interval

**4.173**

**VCE**

Video Color Enhancement logical component

**4.174**

**VCR**

Video Cassette Recorder

**4.175**

**VPS**

Video Programming System

**4.176**

**VS**

Vendor Specific

**4.177**

**VS**

Vestigial SideBand

**4.178**

**WSS**

Wide Screen Signalling

**4.179**

**WST**

World Standard Teletext

**4.180**

**Y/C**

video format where color information is transmitted in a luminance (Y) and one chrominance (C) signal

**4.181**

**Y/CVBS**

luminance/Composite Video Blanking Signal

**4.182**

**Y'CbCr**

color format using a luma (gamma-corrected luminance) and two chroma (gamma-corrected chrominance) components

**4.183**

**YC**

video format where separate luma (Y) and chroma (C) video signals are used, rather than a single composite video signal

#### 4.184

##### YCbCr

digital component video format where color information is transmitted in a luminance (Y) and two color (Cb and Cr) signals

NOTE YCbCr is a digital version of YPbPr.

#### 4.185

##### YPbPr

component video format where color information is transmitted in a luminance (Y) and two color (Pb and Pr) signals

NOTE YPbPr is a scaled version of YUV.

#### 4.186

##### YUV

component video format where color information is transmitted in a luminance (Y) and two color (U and V) signals

#### 4.187

##### YUV signal

video signal composed of a luminance component (Y) and a chrominance component (UV)

## 5 Overview of interface suites

### 5.1 General interaction

This clause is informative.

In this subclause, the individual specifications with their name and a brief description of the addressed functionality in the specification are listed.

**Table 1 — Description of the general interface specifications**

| Specification | Name                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhlConnMgr    | Connection Manager   | This specification is special in the sense that the interfaces of the Connection Management interface suite are templates, which are instantiated for each platform instance. This is because the interfaces are used to select the current use case and reporting completion of the selection, and the set of use cases is specific to each platform instance. |
| uhlFatErr     | Fatal Error          | This API specification defines the interfaces associated with the fatal and non-fatal error handling.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| uhlIamAlive   | I am alive           | This API specification defines the I am Alive interface suite which consists of the interfaces uhlIamAlive and uhlIamAliveNtf, that support “watchdog” functionality.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| uhlOutConf    | Output Configuration | Component represents functionality to select an output configuration for the audio input stream, i.e. select how and with how many channels the audio input stream should be rendered.                                                                                                                                                                          |

|                            |             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhIPinObjects              | Pin Objects | This suite contains a Pin Objects Provider that has functionality to give access to pin-related objects. Pins refer to the inputs and outputs of a logical component. The Pin Object Provider is meant to be a template only and has to be specialized by logical components that have pin-related objects.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| rclUnknown /<br>uhIUnknown | IUnknown    | <p>This API specification defines the rclUnknown interface which is the M3W equivalent of the IUnknown interface of Microsoft COM. The rclUnknown interface is a generic interface that is provided by all objects and inherited by all other interfaces. It has three main functions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— providing interface navigation functionality;</li> <li>— providing reference counting functionality;</li> <li>— defining the identity of an object.</li> </ul> |

## 5.2 Audio

In this subclause, the individual specifications with their name and a brief description of the addressed functionality in the specification are listed.

**Table 2 — Description of the broadcast audio decoding specifications**

| Specification | Name                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhIAnaAdec    | Analog Audio<br>Decoding | Decodes an encoded analog audio input stream, and outputs the decoded programs. Determines the sound standard of the incoming stream from a set of allowed sound standards and provides notifications of various changes that occur in the input stream.     |
| uhIAtscDec    | ATSC Decoder             | This component is responsible for demultiplexing and decoding an ATSC compliant Transport Stream (TS) into its constituent components.                                                                                                                       |
| uhISpdifDec   | SPDIF Decoding           | Decodes an originally SPDIF-formatted encoded audio input stream, and outputs a decoded audio stream. Determines the compression standard of the encoded audio incoming stream and provides notifications of various changes that occur in the input stream. |
| uhISpdifIn    | SPDIF-in                 | Parses the data from a digital input signal that complies to the SPDIF format. The parsed meta data is available to the client. Both meta data and the audio data (linear PCM or encoded audio) are available at the output.                                 |
| uhISpdifOut   | SPDIF-out                | Transforms various formats of a digital audio stream to a SPDIF IEC compliant stream.                                                                                                                                                                        |

Table 3 — Description of the audio Processing &amp; Rendering

| Specification | Name                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhlAavl       | Audio Automatic Volume Levelling | Compensates for the variation in the volume level, that are e.g. caused by a change in the audio content (advertisements) or a change in the source of the incoming audio signal, resulting in less annoyance for the end-user.                                                                                             |
| uhlAbassEnh   | Audio Bass Enhancement           | Provides control on a set of signal processing algorithms that improve listening experience for low-frequency (bass) sounds. An appropriate choice of the algorithm depends on the kind of bass rendering capabilities the system speakers have.                                                                            |
| uhlAdrc       | Audio Dynamic Range Control      | Reduces the dynamic range of the audio incoming signal to get low-level and high-level signals closer together in level, the incoming signal can thus be adapted to the reproduction apparatus and/or the listening conditions.                                                                                             |
| uhlAmix       | Audio Mixing                     | Mixes a number of incoming (uncompressed, baseband) audio streams into a single output audio stream; individual control is provided to mute, unmute, and control the gain of each of the incoming streams.                                                                                                                  |
| uhlAnoiseGen  | Audio Noise Generation           | Provides control on the injection of noise into audio channels to be fed to a set of speakers (noise injected a channel at a time), enabling the calibration of the inter-channel relative reproduction levels at the listening position.                                                                                   |
| uhlAprogSel   | Audio Program Selection          | Selects one (or more) audio program (e.g. a language) from an audio incoming stream with multiple programs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| uhlAvolCtrl   | Audio Volume Control             | Provides control on the sound level of the audio signal outputted by the audio playback system (master volume); also provides control on muting of the audio signal, and on Loudness processing.                                                                                                                            |
| uhlEqualizer  | Equalizing                       | Provides control to adjust the signal level of the audio incoming signal in various frequency bands.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| uhlOutConf    | Output Configuration             | Provides control to a set of algorithms to get an audio stream with a specific output configuration from an audio incoming stream: selection among a set of possible algorithms covering surround processing, virtualizing, downmixing and upmixing processes and selection of the number of channels in the output stream. |
| UhlSpkr       | Speaker Set/Headphones           | Activates the speakers to be used in the system and provides control to bass-redirection, trim control and delay functionalities.                                                                                                                                                                                           |



### 5.3 Video

In this section the individual specifications with their name and a brief description of the addressed functionality in the specification are listed.

**Table 4 — Description of the broadcast decoding specifications**

| Specification  | Name                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UhlAnaAvDem    | Analog Audio & Video Demodulation | Demodulate the signal, and output the resulting Y/CVBS video and encoded audio signal. Determines the TV system of the incoming signal so the sound carrier can be located.                                                             |
| UhlAnaVdec     | Analog Video Decoding             | Decode a composite video stream (e.g. CVBS, Y/C) into a component decoded signal (e.g. YUV) or to decode a component video stream into another type of component video stream. It also notifies properties of the decoded video signal. |
| UhlAtscDec     | ATSC Decoder                      | This component is responsible for demultiplexing and decoding an ATSC compliant Transport Stream (TS) into its constituent components.                                                                                                  |
| UhlAvIn        | Analog AV Input                   | Detect base band signal properties associated with an AV input cluster (e.g. a SCART) and notifies changes of these properties.                                                                                                         |
| UhlAvOut       | Analog AV Output                  | Mute audio and video outputs and signal base band signal properties associated with an AV input cluster (e.g. a SCART).                                                                                                                 |
| UhlChanDec     | Channel Decoding                  | Control digital demodulation for DVB cable (DvbC), terrestrial (DvbT), and satellite (DvbS) reception.                                                                                                                                  |
| UhlHdmiIn      | HdmiIn                            | Extracts info frames from a HDMI stream and passes them on to the client.                                                                                                                                                               |
| uhlImageDec2   | Image Decoding 2                  | Decode full images to a requested format, get thumbnails in a requested format, and extract raw meta-data.                                                                                                                              |
| UhlOob         | Out Of Band Tuning & Demodulation | Receive an external out of band signal, tune to the correct frequency and demodulate that signal. This is typically used by clients that adhere to the OpenCable POD host control interface standard.                                   |
| UhlRfAmp       | RF Amplification                  | Control the amplification of an incoming RF signal in order to optimize the signal processing by a tuner. Typically needed in regions where transmissions are weak, over modulated, or heavily distorted.                               |
| UhlSigStrength | Signal Strength                   | represents functionality to measure the strength of an incoming IF signal.                                                                                                                                                              |

|             |                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UhlStcDec   | STC Decoder                     | Provide a constant time base for synchronized presentation of components (audio, video, subtitles, etc.) of a digital MPEG stream.<br><br>The STCD synthesizes the STC from time stamps that have been extracted from an MPEG stream (in push mode), or it bases the STC on an autonomously running clock that is linked to, but not driven by, the PTS values in the decoded video or audio elementary stream (in pull mode). |
| UhlTsDmx    | Transport Stream Demultiplexing | TS Demux represents functionality to filter specific content (e.g. PES packets, sections) from a transport stream (TS).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| UhlTsMux    | Transport Stream Multiplexing   | Control the rate and number of insertions per section into this transport stream and output this multiplexed transport stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| UhlTuning   | Tuning                          | Tune to a specific frequency (for e.g.. an antenna, cable or satellite dish). It can perform many operations like tuning, fine-tuning and optionally Automatic Frequency Control (AFC) and searching on the input signal.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| UhlUrlSrc   | URL Source                      | A URL Source is a streaming source that streams data identified by a URL into the platform (based on protocols like e.g. http, ftp, rtsp, file etc.).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| uhlVbiSlice | VBI Slicing                     | Extract Vertical Blanking Interval data from an analog video stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

In Figure 1 an example graph is shown based on the interface specification listed for decoding a digital and an analog input signal.

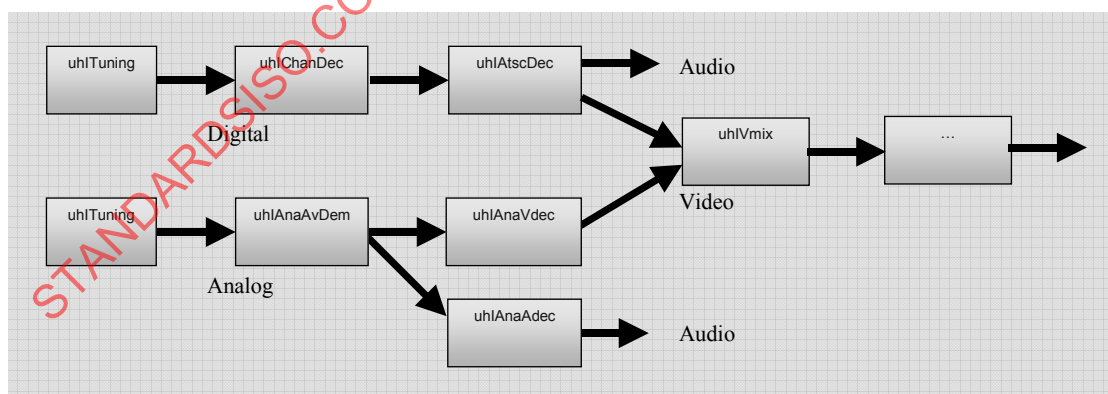


Figure 1 — Simplified example graph.

Table 5 — Description of the video Processing &amp; Rendering.

| Specification    | Name                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhlAmbientLevel  | Ambient Level               | Set the measured ambient light. This can then be used by the platform to optimise the video processing algorithms based on this.                                                        |
| UhlAnaVenc       | Analog Video Encoder        | The Analog Video Encoder gives control over the encoding of a digital video stream into an analog video signal.                                                                         |
| uhlAnaVencrypt   | Analog Video Encryption     | The Analog Video Encryptor gives control over an anti-taping feature.                                                                                                                   |
| uhlAntiAging     | Anti Aging                  | Control the algorithm used to prevent aging in case of static images being displayed (e.g. logo's).                                                                                     |
| UhlBbarDet       | Black Bar Detection         | Detection of the position of the black bars in the video signal. These are often present if the transmission uses a different aspect ratio then the original recording.                 |
| UhlColEnh        | Video Color Enhancement     | Enhance the colors of the incoming video signal. Color enhancement deals with the color features Skin Tone Correction, Blue Stretch, and Green Enhancement.                             |
| UhlCti           | Color Transient Improvement | Allows control over the color transient improvement functionality (to increase the perceived color sharpness).                                                                          |
| UhlDnr           | Dynamic Noise Reduction     | To control the reduction of the noise in a video stream.                                                                                                                                |
| uhlHistoMod      | Histogram Modification      | Histogram Modification can be used to improve the local contrast in a picture of which the distribution of grey levels is sub-optimal.                                                  |
| uhlNoiseMeas     | Noise Measurement           | The Noise Measurement offers an abstract view on the amount of noise in a video signal.                                                                                                 |
| uhlScanRateConv2 | Scan Rate Conversion 2      | Scan Rate Conversion provides the control on different algorithms to change the scan rate and or scan type of a signal (progressive, interlaced).                                       |
| uhlSharpEnh      | Sharpness Enhancement       | Sharpness Enhancement deals with enhancing the sharpness of the luminance (Y) component of a YUV signal.                                                                                |
| uhlSharpMeas     | Sharpness Measurement       | The Sharpness Measurement logical component has a YUV signal as input. It measures the sharpness of the Y signal (luma sharpness) and the sharpness of the UV signal (color sharpness). |
| UhlVfeat         | Basic Video Featuring       | Basic Video Featuring represents functionality to control the brightness, contrast, saturation, hue, and white point of a video signal.                                                 |
| UhlVmix          | Video Mixing                | Video Mixer represents functionality to compose a single video stream from multiple inputs, each of which can either be video or graphics.                                              |

In Figure 2 an example graph is shown based on the interface specifications listed in Table 5.

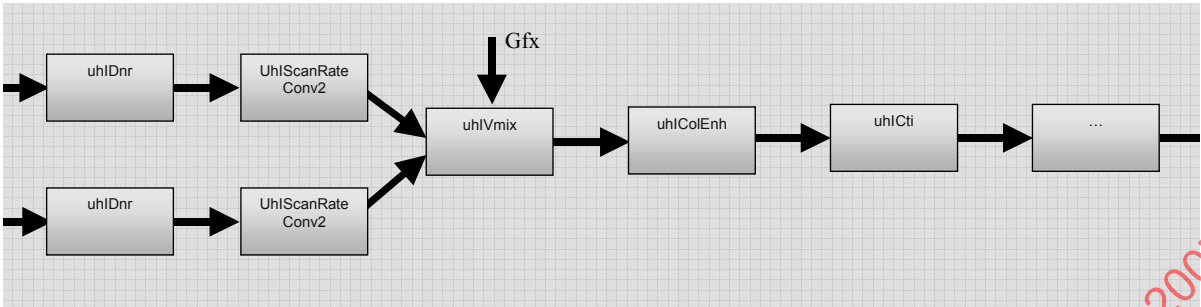


Figure 2 — Possible Video processing & Rendering graph.

Table 6 — Description of the personal Video Recording related.

| Specification  | Name             | Description                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhlDataInject  | Data Injecting   | The Data Injecting component allows the injection of streaming data into the platform. This can be used for a PVR application.                                                        |
| uhlDataExtract | Data Extracting  | The Data Extracting component allows the extraction of streaming data from the platform. This can be used for a PVR application.                                                      |
| uhlSptsTrMux   | SPTS Transmuxing | Provides functionality to transmux an incoming Transport Stream to a SPTS, to insert sections in this SPTS and to notify clients of the locations of video frames in the SPTS output. |

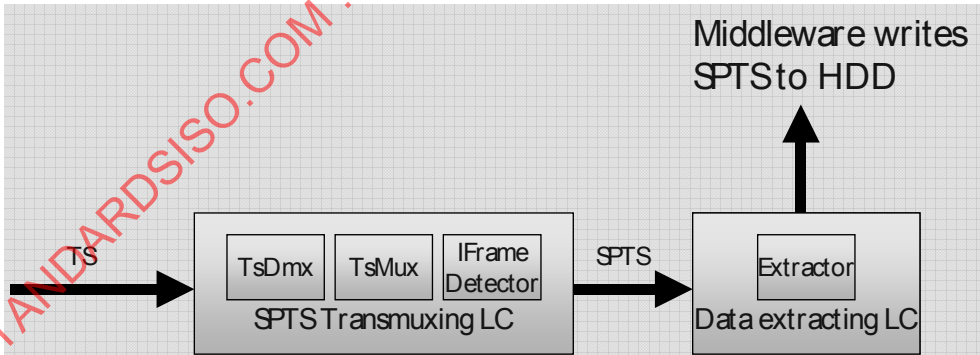


Figure 3 — Extracting a Single Program Transport Stream for recording.

In Figure 3 a simplified context is given. Here the SPTS Transmux is used to reduce the bandwidth, by selecting the specific stream to be recorded, of the incoming stream. After this bandwidth reduction, the stream can be recorded to any device that is typically supported by the operating system (e.g. a harddisk). Obviously in a real product there will be a tuner and channel decoder etc. in front of the SPTS Transmux from Table 6.

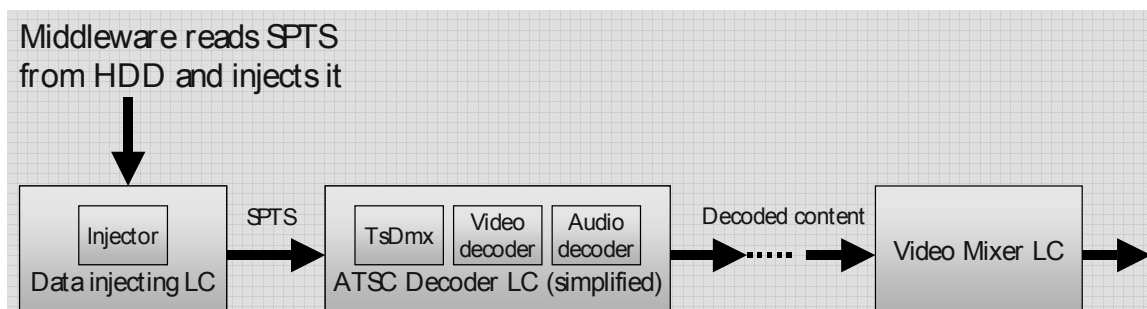


**Figure 4 — Injecting a Single Program Transport Stream for playback.**

In Figure 4 a simplified context is shown for the Data Injector to show how to play back a recorded stream. The normal Atsc Decoder can be used to decode the recorded stream. The AtscDec provides the controls for the trickplay functionality (e.g. control playback speed). Obviously in a real product more components will be there like e.g. Video Processing and Rendering components (see Table 5).

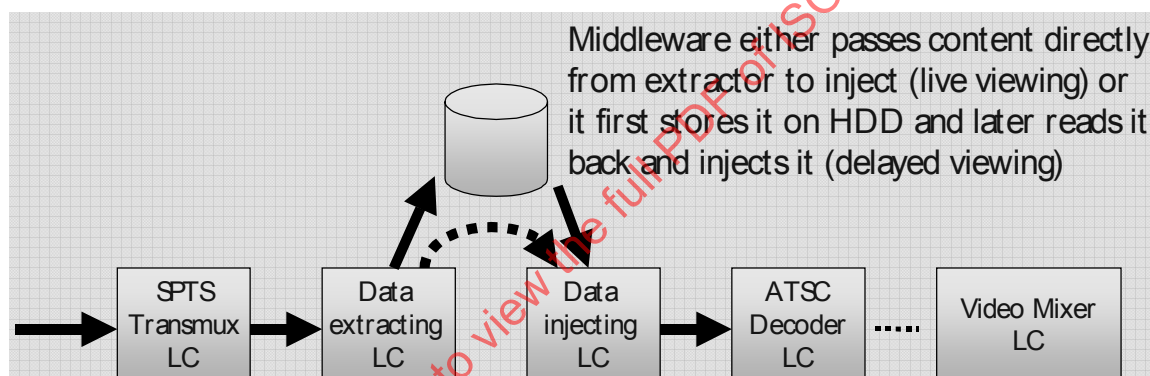


**Figure 5 — Combining Data Extraction and Injection for delayed viewing.**

In Figure 5 a simplified combined usage is shown from the SPTS Transmux, the Data Extractor and the Data Injector interface specifications. In this case a watch delayed video use case is given. A real product obviously contains more interface specification like e.g. a Tuner, Channel Decoder and Video Processing and Rendering components (see Table 5).

## 5.4 Security

In this subclause, the individual specifications with their name and a brief description of the addressed functionality in the specification are listed.

**Table 7 — Description IPMP related.**

| Specification    | Name                        | Description                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Trust Management | Trust Management interfaces | In trust management interfaces, it needs to consider how to access secured or governed information in processing multimedia data or performing IPMP tools. |
| IPMP Tool        | IPMP Tool                   | During the processing of MPEG-2/4, whenever and wherever IPMP processing is required, IPMP tools perform their own IPMP functions.                         |

Table 8 — Description Governance related.

| Specification | Name       | Description                                                                 |
|---------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IGovernance   | Governance | This interface suite deals with restricting access to realization elements. |

## 6 General interface suites

### 6.1 General interaction and navigation

#### 6.1.1 uhlConnMgr

##### 6.1.1.1 Concepts

###### 6.1.1.1.1 Use Cases

The platform consists of streaming components (like digitizers, filters and renderers) that can be connected to each other to form all kinds of configurations, which are used to build multi-media applications. Dynamic switching between configurations is required because:

- the memory footprint can be reduced when at each moment only those components are instantiated that are actually used.
- the connections between components do not have to be fixed over time. Example: when viewing a digital video stream the demultiplexer is connected to a video decoder component, when recording the stream the demultiplexer has to be also connected to a hard disk writer component.

Typically, the configuration that is needed at a certain moment depends on what usage the application requires at that moment. We will use the term use case to indicate such a particular configuration.

Each platform instance will provide a set of use cases that are available to applications that are built on top of that platform. The application controls which use case is selected at any moment in time. The provided use cases should be such that they are useful to the applications and therefore, have to be developed closely coupled to an application domain.

###### 6.1.1.1.2 Connection Manager

The Connection Manager is the entity that is responsible for performing the actual switching between use cases. It provides a control interface that applications can use to select the appropriate use case. Since each platform instance provides its own set of use cases, this control interface will be specific to each platform instance. The control interface specified in this document should therefore be seen as a “template” which has to be used when specifying the control interface for a platform instance. The following “parameters” of the control interface template have to be specified for each platform instance:

- the set of component instance ids that are part of the platform instance (see subclause 6.1.1.2.1.2).
- the set of use cases provided by the platform instance (see subclause 6.1.1.2.1.3).
- the set of functions for selection of a use case (see subclause 6.1.1.5.1.3). For each use case (or group of related use cases) a separate function has to be specified (see subclause 6.1.1.1.4).

### 6.1.1.1.3 Switching between Use Cases

The basic task of the Connection Manager is to perform the switch from the current to a requested use case. The Connection Manager has to make the switch as smooth/seamless as possible. To be more precise, it will

- not destroy and re-create a component instance that is part of both the current and the requested use case (i.e. the component instance keeps its state),
- mute the output signal(s) to prevent visual and audible artifacts if needed.

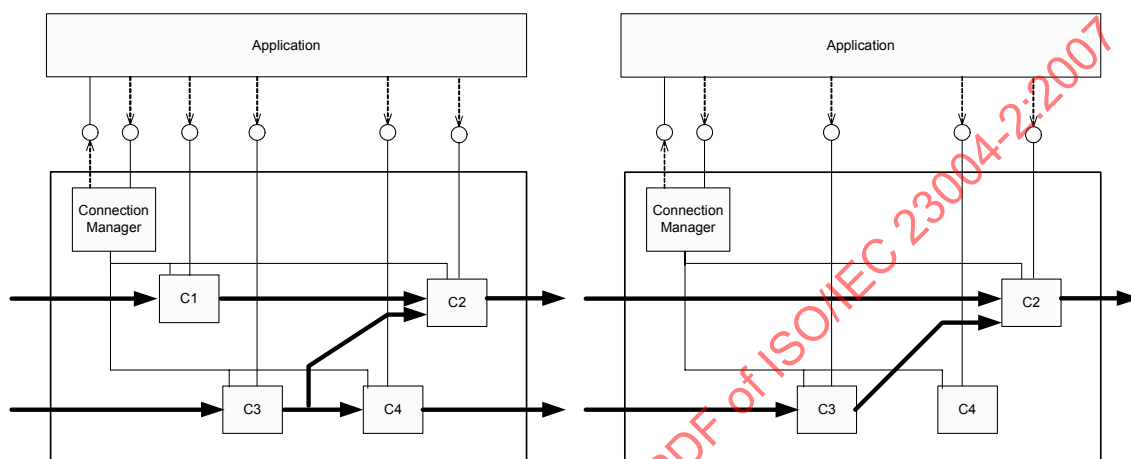


**Figure 6 — Example: Switch between two use cases**

Figure 6 shows an example of two use cases. C1 to C4 are component instances of the platform instance. Streamed data is indicated by the thick lines (arrows indicate the direction.) Component instance C1 is only part of the left use case and will be stopped and destroyed when switching to the right use case. Component instance C4 is part of both use cases, but in the second use case it is not connected to any other component. This is allowed to ensure that component instance C4 keeps its state when switching from the left to the right use case and back, provided that component C4 allows such behavior.

In principle, a platform instance supports all possible transitions between the use cases. However, it is allowed for a platform instance to exclude certain transitions.

### 6.1.1.1.4 Functions versus parameters

In principle, the `uhfConnMgrPlfSelUseCase` interface contains for each use case a separate function. This may possibly lead to a huge number of functions. The number of functions can be decreased by grouping similar use cases into one use case by using parameters. For example in a specific platform instance there may be three SCART outputs. By using a parameter in each use case that indicates which SCART output has to be used, the number of functions is effectively divided by three.

Use cases can be grouped into one use case with parameters when the sets of component instances provided by those use cases are the same.

### 6.1.1.1.5 Retrieving Interfaces

Apart from switching between use cases, the Connection Manager is also the entry point for the application to retrieve interfaces to the component instances that are part of the current use case. Note that only interfaces can be retrieved of component instances that are part of the currently selected use case. (In the right use case of Figure 6 it is not possible to get the an interface of component C1). Once an application has retrieved an interface to a component, it can retrieve other interfaces to that component using `QueryInterface` [Annex B of ISO/IEC 23004-1]. (Note that instead of using `QueryInterface` it is also possible to ask the Connection Manager for this interface.)

When a component creates sub components itself (e.g. a Mixer creates layer components) interfaces to these sub components can only be retrieved via the interface of the main component, not via the Connection Manager.

From the above it becomes clear that an application can only use interfaces of component instances that are part of the current use case. This puts an important constraint on the application: **before selecting a new use case, the application has to release all interfaces that are provided by components (and their sub components) that will not be part of the new use case.** There is no need to release an interface when the component that provides it, is also part of the new use case. (In the example of Figure 6 when switching from the left to the right use case, only the interfaces of component C1 have to be released.)

The `GetContainedComponents` function can be used to find out which component instances are part of a specific use case.

#### 6.1.1.1.6 Multiple component instances of the same type

A platform instance can contain multiple component instances of the same component type, for example multiple demultiplexers. An application may want to specify from which component instance it requires an interface, especially when the capabilities of the component instances differ (e.g. the number of section filters a demultiplexer supports) or when their connections differ (e.g. to video decoder or hard disk writer). Each component instance therefore gets a unique *component id* which has to be used when requesting interfaces from the Connection Manager. The platform instance documentation will describe which component instances are part of the platform instance and specify their unique component id.

#### 6.1.1.2 Types & Constants

##### 6.1.1.2.1 Public Types & Constants

##### 6.1.1.2.1.1 Error Codes

###### Signature

```
const uhErrorCode_t uh_ERR_PLF_NO_INTERFACE = CID_PLF | 0x801;
```

###### Qualifiers

— error-codes

###### Description

Defines the error codes that can be returned by the functions in the interface(s) of a Connection Manager. Note that each platform specific instantiation of this interface will have to define this error code based on its component id (*CID\_PLF*).

###### Constants

Table 9

| Name                                 | Description                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uh_ERR_PLF_NO_INTERFACE</code> | Requested interface is not supported by the specified component. This can be returned by the <code>GetInstance</code> function. |



### 6.1.1.2.1.2 `uhConnMgrPlf_CompId_t`

#### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhConnMgrPlf_CompId_t {
    uhConnMgrPlf_CComp0 = 0,
    uhConnMgrPlf_CComp1 = 1,
    ...
} uhConnMgrPlf_CompId_t, *puhConnMgrPlf_CompId_t;
```

#### Qualifiers

None.

#### Description

This enumeration serves as a generic example. Each platform instance will define its own enumeration.

This enumeration lists the valid component instances IDs. Values of this type can be passed as parameter to the `GetInstance` function.

#### Values

**Table 10**

| Name                             | Description       |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|
| <code>uhConnMgrPlf_CComp0</code> | ID of component 0 |
| <code>uhConnMgrPlf_CComp1</code> | ID of component 1 |
| ...                              | etc.              |

#### Remarks

- 'Plf' in the type name, is the platform name and should be filled in by the platform instance designer.
- Each platform instance will at least contain one component (instance).

### 6.1.1.2.1.3 `uhConnMgrPlf_UseCaseId_t`

#### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhConnMgrPlf_UseCaseId_t {
    uhConnMgrPlf_UcNone = 0,
    uhConnMgrPlf_UcUseCase1 = 1,
    ...
} uhConnMgrPlf_UseCaseId_t, *puhConnMgrPlf_UseCaseId_t;
```

#### Qualifiers

None

#### Description

This enumeration serves as a generic example. Each platform instance will define its own enumeration. However, the first value is always `uhConnMgrPlf_UcNone`.

This enumeration lists the valid use case IDs. Values of this type have to be passed as parameter to the `GetContainedComponents` function. Furthermore, this type is used by the `OnUseCaseSelected` function to indicate which use case has been selected.

## Values

Table 11

| Name                    | Description             |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| uhConnMgrPlf_UcNone     | ID of the Null use case |
| uhConnMgrPlf_UcUseCase1 | ID of use case 1        |
| ...                     | etc.                    |

## Remarks

- 'Plf' in the type name, is the platform name and should be filled in by the platform instance designer.
- Each platform instance will at least contain two use cases: the Null use case and a real one.
- There should be a uhConnMgrPlf\_UseCaseId\_t value for each use case provided by the platform instance.

## 6.1.1.2.1.4 uhConnMgrPlf\_Notification\_t

## Signature

```
typedef enum _uhConnMgrPlf_Notification_t {
    uhConnMgrPlf_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhConnMgrPlf_UseCaseSelected     = 0x00000002
} uhConnMgrPlf_Notification_t, *puhConnMgrPlf_Notification_t;
```

## Qualifiers

- enum-element

## Description

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a on-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface uhIConnMgrPlfSelUseCaseNtf.

## Values

Table 12

| Name                             | Description                       |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhConnMgrPlf_SubscriptionChanged | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged. |
| uhConnMgrPlf_UseCaseSelected     | Represents OnUseCaseSelected.     |

## 6.1.1.2.1.5 uhConnMgrPlf\_Notifications\_t

## Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhConnMgrPlf_Notifications_t, *puhConnMgrPlf_Notifications_t;
```

## Qualifiers

- enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhConnMgrPlf_Notification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**6.1.1.2.1.6      `uhConnMgrPlf_AllNotifications_t`****Signature**

```
const uhConnMgrPlf_Notifications_t uhConnMgrPlf_AllNotifications =
    (uhConnMgrPlf_SubscriptionChanged | uhConnMgrPlf_UseCaseSelected);
```

**Qualifiers**

None

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhConnMgrPlf_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**6.1.1.2.2      Model Types & Constants****6.1.1.2.2.1      `UseCaseSelectionState`****Signature**

```
enum {
    UseCaseSelectionInProgress = 0,
    UseCaseSelectionCompleted  = 1
} UseCaseSelectionState;
```

**Qualifiers**

None

**Description**

This type indicates whether a use case selection is in progress or not. It is used in the pre- and post-conditions of the functions of the `uhIConnMgrPlfSelUseCase` interface.

**Values****Table 13**

| <b>Name</b>                             | <b>Description</b>                      |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <code>UseCaseSelectionInProgress</code> | Selection of a use case is in progress. |
| <code>UseCaseSelectionCompleted</code>  | Selection of a use case is completed.   |

### 6.1.1.2.2.2 Component

#### Signature

```
entity Component {
    const uhConnMgr_CompId_t cid;
    const setof{uhIid_t} iidSet;
}
```

#### Qualifiers

None.

#### Description

Entities of this type are used to model the component instances that are part of the platform instance. Each component instance has a unique ID and can provide interfaces for each iid that is part of the iidSet.

#### Independent Attributes

Table 14

| Name   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cid    | Identifies the component instance uniquely within the platform instance.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| iidSet | The set of IIDs of the interfaces provided by the component instance, determining for which IIDs the <code>GetInstance</code> function will be successful. The value of iidSet is constant because it is set at component instantiation time. |

#### Constraints

None.

### 6.1.1.2.2.3 UseCase

#### Signature

```
entity UseCase {
    const uhConnMgrPlf_UseCaseId_t id;
    const setof{Component} compSet;
}
```

#### Qualifiers

None.

#### Description

Entities of this type are used to model the use cases that can be selected using the `uhIConnMgrPlfSelUseCase` interface. Each use case has a set of component instances. This set is constant because it is not possible to dynamically add/remove component instances from a use case.

#### Independent Attributes

Table 15

| Name    | Description                                               |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| id      | Identification of a use case.                             |
| compSet | Set of component instances that are part of the use case. |

**Constraints**

None.

**Remarks**

- The connections in between the component instances are not modeled as part of the `UseCase` model type. They are not directly observable by the client.
- Most use cases will also contain some specific data attributes (related to the parameters of the `SelectUseCaseX` function.) This has not been modeled explicitly.

**6.1.1.2.2.4 Transition****Signature**

```
entity Transition {
    const UseCase from;
    const UseCase to;
}
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

In some platform instances not all transitions between the use cases may be allowed. Entities of this type are used to model the allowed transitions between use cases.

**Independent Attributes****Table 16**

| <b>Name</b>       | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                    |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>from</code> | Use case from which the transition should be made (i.e. the use case that is current when the transition is started). |
| <code>to</code>   | Use case to which the transition should be made (i.e. the selected use case).                                         |

**Constraints**

None.

6.1.1.3 Logical Component

6.1.1.3.1 Interface-Role Model

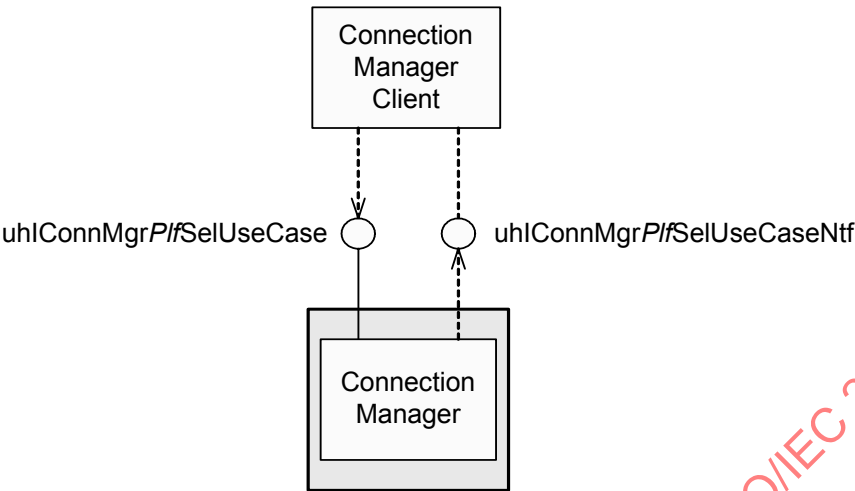


Figure 7 — Interface Role Model

The `ConnectionManager` role provides facilities to select a use case and to retrieve interfaces to the component instances of the selected use case through its `uhIConnMgrPlfSelUseCase` interface. It can send notifications when the use case selection has been completed.

The `ConnectionManagerClient` role can use this interface to subscribe to these notifications by providing a `uhIConnMgrPlfSelUseCaseNtf` interface. In this document we also use the terms *client* and *application* as a shorthand for this role.

6.1.1.3.2 Diversity

6.1.1.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 17

| Role                    | Interface                  | Presence              |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| ConnectionManager       | uhIConnMgrPlfSelUseCase    | mandatory             |
| ConnectionManagerClient | uhIConnMgrPlfSelUseCaseNtf | optional <sup>1</sup> |

<sup>1</sup>The `uhIConnMgrPlfSelUseCaseNtf` interface is optional, but in practice the client cannot do anything with the `uhIConnMgrPlfSelUseCase` interface if it does not provide this notification interface, unless the function `SelectUseCaseX` is implemented as a synchronous function for the platform instance.

#### 6.1.1.3.2.2 Configurable Items

**Table 18**

| Role              | Attribute          |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| ConnectionManager | useCases           |
| ConnectionManager | allowedTransitions |

For a description of the attributes see 6.1.1.4 Roles.

#### 6.1.1.3.2.3 Constraints

— For all transition in `allowedTransitions`:

- `transition.to` in `useCases`
- `transition.from` in `useCases`

#### 6.1.1.3.3 Instantiation

##### 6.1.1.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 19**

| Type              | Object  | Multiplicity |
|-------------------|---------|--------------|
| ConnectionManager | connmgr | 1            |

##### 6.1.1.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

```
connmgr.currentUseCase == Null use case
connmgr.state == UseCaseSelectionCompleted
```

##### 6.1.1.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

#### 6.1.1.4 Roles

##### 6.1.1.4.1 ConnectionManager

###### Signature

```
role ConnectionManager{
    const setof{UseCase}    useCases;
    const setof{Transition} allowedTransitions;
    UseCase                 currentUseCase;
    UseCaseSelectionState   state;
}
```

###### Qualifiers

— root

###### Description

An instance of the role `ConnectionManager` provides functionality to select a use case out of a set of use cases. At any moment in time at most one use case is selected. The platform instance determines the set of use cases from which a use case can be chosen.

###### Independent Attributes

Table 20

| Name                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>useCases</code>           | The set of use cases supported by the platform instance. The value of <code>useCases</code> is constant because it is set at instantiation time and does not change dynamically. For every platform instance this set contains the <code>Null</code> use case.                                                       |
| <code>allowedTransitions</code> | This set contains all transitions that are allowed by the platform instance. In many cases this set will contain all possible transitions implying that there are no restrictions. The value of <code>allowedTransitions</code> is constant because it is set at instantiation time and does not change dynamically. |
| <code>currentUseCase</code>     | The use case that is currently selected. This attribute is only valid when the state is equal to <code>UseCaseSelectionCompleted</code> .                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>state</code>              | Indicates whether a use case selection is in progress or completed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

###### Invariants

- $(state == UseCaseSelectionCompleted) \implies currentUseCase \text{ is valid}$
- `currentUseCase` **in** `useCases`
- `Null` use case **in** `useCases`
- **For all** `transition` **in** `allowedTransitions`
  - `transition.to` **in** `useCases`
  - `transition.from` **in** `useCases`

###### Instantiation

See subclause 6.1.1.3.3.



**Streaming Behavior**

The `ConnectionManager` itself does not expose streaming behavior. However, each use case corresponds with a configuration of the component instances that are part of the platform instance. The streaming behavior of each use case: number and types of inputs, number and types of outputs, connections within the use case etc. will have to be specified by the platform instance documentation.

**Active Behavior**

The `ConnectionManager` has standard notification behavior (see `uhIConnMgrPlfSelUseCaseNtf`).

**6.1.1.4.2 ConnectionManagerClient****Signature**

```
role ConnectionManagerClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

— actor

**Description**

A `ConnectionManagerClient` represents a user of the interface `uhIConnMgrPlfSelUseCase`.

**6.1.1.5 Interfaces****6.1.1.5.1 uhIConnMgrPlfSelUseCase****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface is meant for selecting the current use case and for retrieval of interfaces of component instances that are part of that use case.

This interface is specific for each platform instance (the platform name Plf is part of the interface name). The specification described in this document serves as template for each platform instance specific instantiation.

**Interface ID**

Defined as part of the platform instance documentation.

#### 6.1.1.5.1.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhTConnMgrPlfSelUseCaseNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhConnMgrPlf_Notifications_t notifs);
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

#### 6.1.1.5.1.2 Unsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhTConnMgrPlfSelUseCaseNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhConnMgrPlf_Notifications_t notifs);
```

##### Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

#### 6.1.1.5.1.3 SelectUseCaseX

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t SelectUseCaseX (...);
```

##### Qualifiers

— asynchronous

— single-threaded

##### Description

This function serves as a generic example. A platform instance will have a separate function for each use case it supports (see subclause 6.1.1.1.4).

This function performs the switch from the current use case to *UseCaseX*, and makes *UseCaseX* the current use case afterwards. The actual completion of the change is signaled through the *OnUseCaseSelected* notification.

The switch will be as seamless as possible. If needed and possible the system will mute (using the system mute) the output signals to prevent visual and audible artifacts.

Component instances that are part of the current use case, but not part of *UseCaseX* will be destroyed. Component instances that are not part of the current use case, but are part of *UseCaseX* will be created. Component instances that are part of both the current as well as *UseCaseX* will not be stopped and keep their state, unless specified otherwise in the platform instance documentation.

The client has the obligation to release all interfaces to component instances that are not part of *UseCaseX* before calling this function. During the transition the client can use the interfaces from the components that are present in both the old and the new use case.

**Parameters****Table 21**

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Description</b>                                                 |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ...         | The parameters representing the data associated with the use case. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- connmgr.state == UseCaseSelectionCompleted
- (connmgr.currentUseCase, UseCaseX) in connmgr.allowedTransitions
- The client has released all interfaces of components that are not part of UseCaseX.

**Action**

- Modify connmgr.state

**Postcondition**

connmgr.state == UseCaseSelectionInProgress

**Asynchronous Action**

- For all comp in connmgr.currentUseCase.compSet and not(comp in UseCaseX.compSet):
  - destroy comp
- For all comp in UseCaseX.compSet and not(comp in connmgr.currentUseCase.compSet) :
  - create comp
- connmgr.currentUseCase = UseCaseX
- connmgr.state = UseCaseSelectionCompleted
- Notify OnUseCaseSelected(\*)

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

- connmgr.state == UseCaseSelectionCompleted

**6.1.1.5.1.4 GetInstance****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetInstance (
    [in] uhConnMgrPlf_CompId_t    compId,
    [in] uhRefIid_t              riid,
    [out,iid_is(riid)] pVoid      *ppIntf);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous

— thread-safe

#### Description

Tests whether the root role of the specified component instance provides the requested interface. If this is the case, a pointer to an interface with the specified IID is returned. If the component instance does not provide the requested interface, an error is returned and `*ppIntf` is set to Null.

If the `GetInstance` function returns a valid interface pointer (i.e. not a null pointer) the reference counter of the interface will have been incremented. The client has the obligation to release the interface using `Release` (see Annex B of ISO/IEC 23004-1) when it no longer needs the interface.

#### Parameters

Table 22

| Name                | Description                                                                                               |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>compId</code> | Identifies a component instance of the current use case.                                                  |
| <code>riid</code>   | Pointer to the IID of the interface (pointer) to be returned.                                             |
| <code>ppIntf</code> | Output parameter returning either a pointer to an interface with IID equal to <code>*riid</code> or Null. |

#### Return Values

Table 23

| Name                                 | Description                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uh_OK</code>                   | Indicates that the component instance provides the requested interface.         |
| <code>uh_ERR_PLF_NO_INTERFACE</code> | Indicates that the component instance does not provide the requested interface. |

#### Precondition

- `connmgr.state == UseCaseSelectionCompleted`
- A comp exists in `connmgr.currentUseCase.compSet` such that `comp.cid == compId`.

#### Case 1

- `*riid` in `comp.iidSet`

#### Action

None.

#### Postcondition

- `*ppIntf == &intf`, where `intf` is of type `*riid` and provided by `comp`
- `result == uh_OK`

#### Case 2

- `not(*riid in comp.iidSet)`

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— \*ppIntf == Null

— result == uh\_ERR\_PLF\_NO\_INTERFACE

**6.1.1.5.1.5 GetContainedComponents****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetContainedComponents(
    [in]  uhConnMgrPlf_UseCaseId_t  useCaseId,
    [out] pUInt32                    pComps0to31,
    [out] pUInt32                    pComps32to63,
    ...);
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

This function can be used to query for the component instances that are part of the specified use case. It can be used by the client to find out for which components it has to release interfaces prior to selecting a new use case and to find out for which components it can request interfaces after this use case has been selected.

**Parameters****Table 24**

| Name         | Description                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| useCaseId    | Identifies the use case                                                                                                                                                             |
| pComps0to31  | Pointer to a bit array in which bit <i>i</i> indicates whether the component with <code>uhConnMgr_CompId_t</code> equal to <i>i</i> is contained in the specified use case.         |
| pComps32to63 | Pointer to a bit array in which bit <i>i</i> indicates whether the component with <code>uhConnMgr_CompId_t</code> equal to ( <i>i</i> + 32) is contained in the specified use case. |
| ...          | Etc.                                                                                                                                                                                |

The number of parameters of this function depends on the number of component instances described in the platform instance. When the total number of component instances is less or equal to 32, one parameter suffices. When the total number of component instances is greater than 32 and less or equal to 64, two parameters are needed, etc.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**— `connmgr.state == UseCaseSelectionCompleted`— A use case `uc` exists in `connmgr.useCases` such that `uc.id == useCaseId`

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- For all bits *i* in \*pComps0\_to31
  - Let *comp* be such that *comp.cid* == *i*
  - *i* == 1 <==> *comp* in *uc*
- For all bits *i* in \*pComps32\_to63
  - Let *comp* be such that *comp.cid* == (*i* + 32)
  - *i* == 1 <==> *comp* in *uc*

Etc.

**6.1.1.5.2 uhIConnMgrPlfSelUseCaseNtf**

**Qualifiers**

- call-back

**Description**

This interface is platform specific and should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur when selecting a use case. The `Subscribe` function of `uhIConnMgrPlfSelUseCase` can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**

Defined as part of the platform instance documentation.

**Remarks**

- The notification interface should at least contain the functions specified in this document. For a specific platform instance it may be decided to extend the interface with additional functions.

**6.1.1.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged**

**Signature**

```
[async] void OnSubscriptionChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhConnMgrPlf_Notifications_t notifs);
```

**Qualifiers**

- onsubscriptionchanged-function

6.1.1.5.2.2 OnUseCaseSelected

Signature

```
[async] Void OnUseCaseSelected (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhConnMgrPlf_UseCaseId_t useCaseId);
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called by the Connection Manager when it has completed the selection of a use case (see SelectUseCaseX) and also each time a provider of the notification interface (re-)enables subscription to the OnUseCaseSelected notification. In the latter case the notification is only sent to the new subscriber and only when the subscription was not already enabled. The initial use-case is returned in case there was no use-case selected at that point.

Upon and after reception of this event, the client can retrieve interfaces to the component instances of the newly selected use case.

Parameters

Table 25

| Name      | Description                                                                 |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie    | The cookie identifying the subscription to which this notification applies. |
| useCaseId | Identifies the use case that has been selected.                             |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

— True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

— True

6.1.2 uhlFatErr

6.1.2.1 Concepts

6.1.2.1.1 Types of Errors

An “error” is defined as a condition that, if not handled, can cause a system to crash or malfunction. Many errors can be avoided by using appropriate development and verification techniques, but it is a fact that of life

that most systems contain errors. When these errors manifest themselves at execution time, they should somehow be “handled” so as to avoid the system to crash or malfunction.

We distinguish three types of errors:

a) Programming errors

These are errors in the design of the software, such as precondition violations, deadlocks, etc. This type of errors is supposed to be detected and handled at development time, e.g. using assert statements while debugging and testing. The platform does not provide special provisions for handling this type of errors. Programming errors that go undetected will often manifest themselves at run-time by a system crash.

b) Functional errors

These are errors that are supposed to be handled by the client. The server component reporting the error is in a normal state and can continue its task as specified. A typical example is an “increase volume” function that returns a “maximum volume reached” error code. Errors of this type are part of the “protocol” associated with an interface and specified as normal return values. Failing to handle such an error in the appropriate way is considered a programming error.

Functional errors are reported via return codes of the interface functions. If no error occurred, UH\_OK is returned (0x00000000). In case a functional error has occurred, a value in the range 0x00000001 to 0x7FFFFFFF is returned (the highest bit is used to differentiate between functional and exceptional errors). The lowest 12 bits are defined by M3W and represent the actual error code, ranging from 0x00000001 to 0x00000FFF. The remaining 19 bits can be used in a platform specific way, e.g. for debugging purposes. When no error has occurred, these 19 bits also have to be zero. This makes the check on UH\_OK straightforward. In case an error has occurred, bit masking can be used to obtain the actual error code. An example is given below:

```
errorCode = f(...);
/* In case of UH_OK, all bits must be zero; no masking required for check */
if (UH_OK == errorCode) {
    /* No error has occurred; this is the normal case. */
    /* The client continues with normal operation. */
    ...
} else {
    /* An error has occurred. Only the lowest 12 bits are defined within */
    /* M3W; masking is needed */
    switch (errorCode & 0x00000FFF) {
        case UH_ERR_A:
            /* handle error A */
            ...
    }
    etc.
}
```

c) Exceptional errors

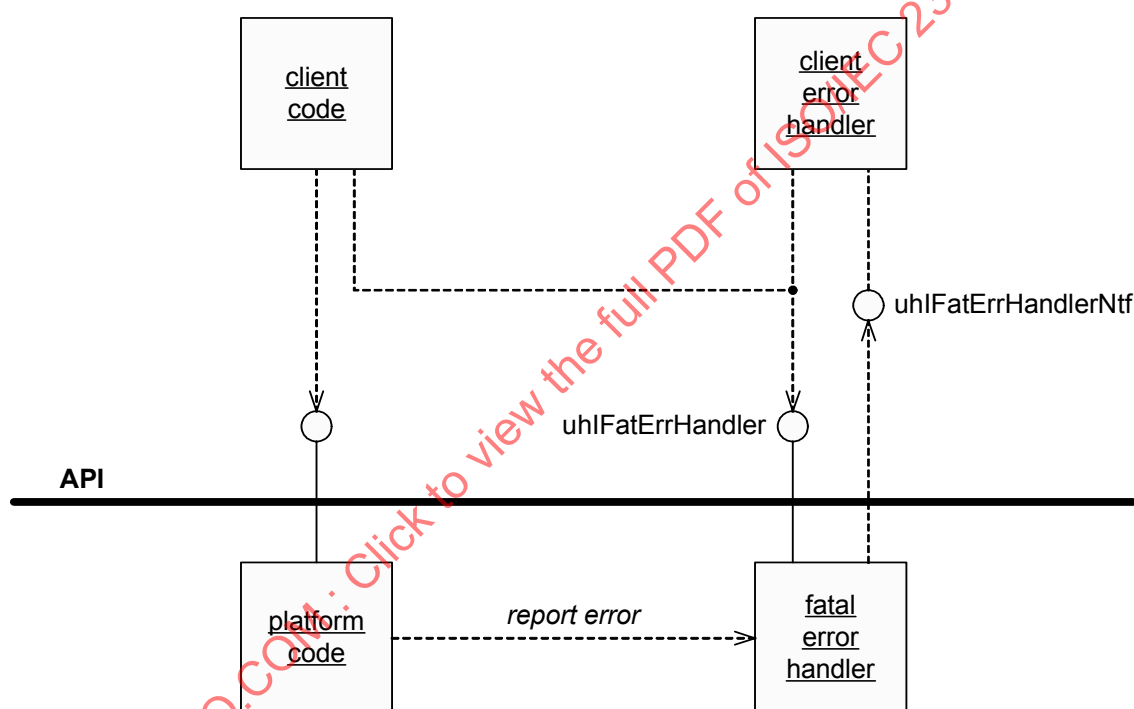
These are errors that are detected by a server component but that are explicitly not resolved by that component (e.g. because of too much effort, too high cost, too low benefit). The errors are indicated by error codes in the range 0x80000000 to 0xFFFFFFFF. Fatal errors are one group of exceptional errors. The fundamental difference with a functional error is that the server component is not in a normal state anymore. In order to handle these fatal errors the platform provides special functionality, referred to as the *fatal* error handler. Fatal errors that occur in the platform are reported by the fatal error handler to the client that typically aborts normal program execution. The other group of exceptional errors consists of non-fatal errors. These are also system-wide errors, but the system is able to continue after their occurrence. Non-fatal errors are also reported via the fatal error handler via a separate interface. Whether an exceptional error is fatal or non-fatal is specified by the platform instance.



#### 6.1.2.1.2 Fatal Error Handling

In the streaming part of a platform there is typically one fatal error handler instance. Its primary purpose is to react to fatal errors that may occur in platform code and abort normal program execution in a controlled way. The abortion of normal program execution can both mean that the total system execution is aborted, or a part of it (depending on the system context) [ Where this specification refers to abortion, this should be interpreted as such. ]. What happens after abortion is not specified in this document. A typical situation is that the system is reset.

The way the fatal error handler works can be illustrated by means of the object configuration in Figure 8. It shows an object representing a piece of client code calling functions in an interface. While executing the platform code associated with these functions, the client thread may run into a fatal error. If so, the client thread will report the error to the fatal error handler in a *synchronous* way, i.e. the thread is blocked while the fatal error handler processes the error. Note that the function used to report the error is internal to the platform and of no concern to the client of the API; the error reporting interface is implementation-dependent and not part of the API.



### Figure 8 — Typical Fatal Error Handler Configuration

#### 6.1.2.1.3 Client-Specific Fatal Error Handling

In practice, clients may want to handle fatal errors in a specific way. For that purpose the fatal error handler provides a facility to install a client-specific error handler. The standard event subscription mechanism is used for this, i.e. a client error handler can be installed by subscribing to “fatal error” notifications provided by the fatal error handler.

For the purpose of client-specific error handling the notification mechanism is used in a special way. First of all, there may be at most one subscriber to the fatal error notifications, the “client error handler”, which should provide the `uhIFatErrHandlerNtf` notification interface. Having more than one error handler would make no sense. Secondly, the notifications of the fatal error handler are *synchronous* because the fatal error handler should be blocked while the client error handler is handling the error. By installing a client error handler all responsibility for handling the error including abortion is transferred to the client error handler.

So, when an error is reported to the fatal error handler and assuming a client error handler has been installed, the fatal error handler will notify the client error handler (possibly on the load of the client's thread) by a synchronous call of the `OnError` function in the `uhIFatErrHandlerNtf` interface of the client error handler:

```
OnError( cookie, error, size, file, line )
```

where `error` is the fatal error code and `file` and `line` are parameters that indicate in which piece of code the error occurred. The `size` parameter is there for marshaling purposes and indicates the size of the `file` string (= length + 1). This notification call does typically not return, since the client error handler typically will abort program execution, usually after making a number of preparations such as logging the error.

If no client error handler is installed, the fatal error handler will itself take care of aborting program execution.

#### 6.1.2.1.4 Fatal Error Handling Protocol

The protocol described above is summarized in the sequence diagrams in Figure 9 and Figure 10, covering the case of an installed client error handler and the case that no client error handler has been installed. Note that in the figures we assumed that the fatal error is reported by a client thread. However, internal platform threads may also report errors.

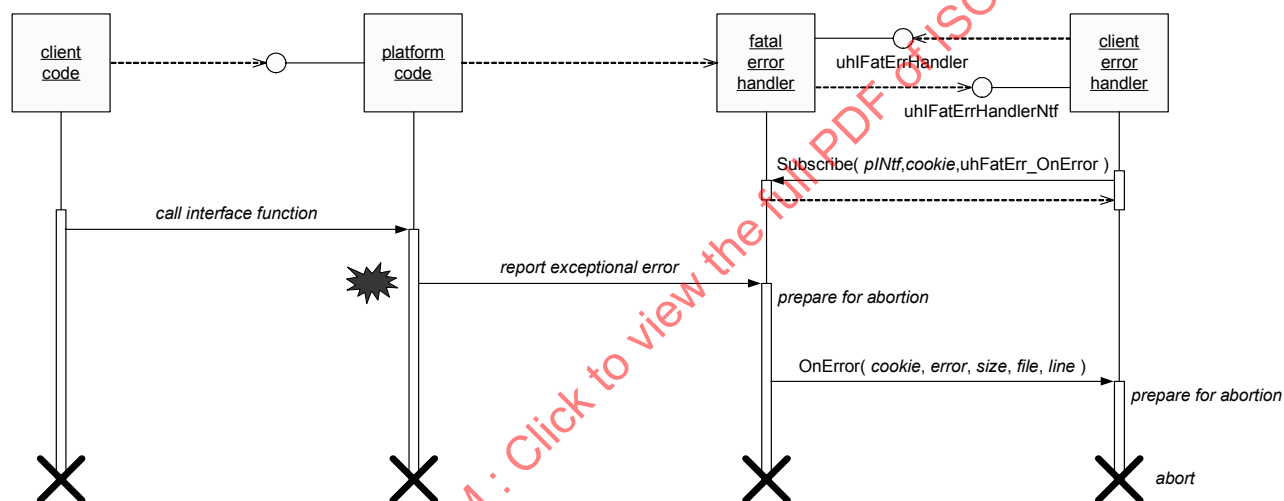


Figure 9 — Fatal Error Handling Protocol with installed Client Error Handler

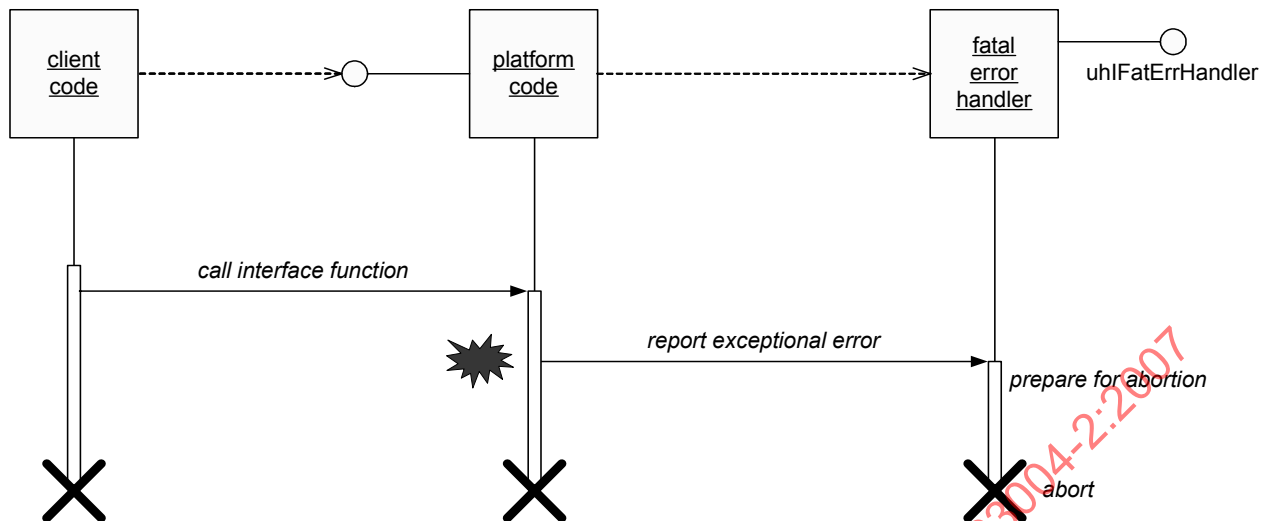


Figure 10 — Fatal Error Handling Protocol without installed Client Error Handler

#### 6.1.2.1.5 Non-fatal Error Handling

Next to the fatal errors, non-fatal errors can also be relevant for a client application. Examples of such errors are 'input sample lost' or 'video frame skipped'. Such errors are non-fatal in the sense that they do not have to lead to aborting program execution. Logging of these errors is useful for several purposes, including:

- testing purposes, e.g. to check certain performance related problems like skipping video frames
- servicing purposes, e.g. to check whether a certain hardware component has intermittent problems

These errors can be logged by the client application in non-volatile memory for later inspection.

Two interfaces `uhIFatErrLog` and `uhIFatErrLogNtf` are used for handling the non-fatal errors. The fatal error handler will deal with these non-fatal errors differently than with the fatal errors. The main difference is that the system continues after a notification call. During execution, the platform code can report non-fatal errors to the fatal error handler via an implementation-dependent interface. The client can subscribe for the notification of non-fatal errors. An occurrence of a non-fatal error will lead to the invocation of the generic error log notification function: `OnError ( cookie, error, nrOfOccurrences, errorData )`

Since non-fatal errors such as 'video frame skipped' can come in a burst mode, a platform instance may decide not to generate a separate notification for the occurrence of each single event. To still be able to inform the client that a certain error has occurred a few times, also the number of occurrences of an error event is identified in a notification call. Furthermore, one additional attribute is provided that can be used for additional error information. Since several errors may be notified within one notification call, it is suggested to use this field to specify the data associated with the last error that occurred.

Which non-fatal errors exist must be defined by the platform instance.

#### 6.1.2.2 Types & Constants

##### 6.1.2.2.1 Public Types & Constants

###### 6.1.2.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

**6.1.2.2.1.2      uhFatErr\_Notification\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhFatErr_Notification_t {
    uhFatErr_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhFatErr_Error                = 0x00000002
} uhFatErr_Notification_t, *puhFatErr_Notification_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type are used to represent the individual notification functions in the `uhIFatErrHandlerNtf` interface.

**Values****Table 26**

| Name                                      | Description                                   |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhFatErr_SubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> |
| <code>uhFatErr_Error</code>               | Represents <code>OnError</code>               |

**6.1.2.2.1.3      uhFatErr\_Notifications\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhFatErr_Notifications_t, *puhFatErr_Notifications_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhFatErr_Notification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**Constraints**

— None.

**6.1.2.2.1.4      uhFatErr\_AllNotifications****Signature**

```
const uhFatErr_Notifications_t uhFatErr_AllNotifications = 0x00000003;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhFatErr_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**6.1.2.2.1.5      `uhFatErr_LogNtf_t`****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhFatErr_LogNtf_t {
    uhFatErr_LogSubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhFatErr_LogError               = 0x00000002
} uhFatErr_LogNtf_t, *puhFatErr_LogNtf_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type are used to represent the individual notification functions in the `uhIFatErrLogNtf` interface.

**Values****Table 27****Name****Description**

`uhFatErr_LogSubscriptionChanged`

Represents `OnSubscriptionChanged`

`uhFatErr_LogError`

Represents `OnError`

**6.1.2.2.1.6      `uhFatErr_LogNtfSet_t`****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhFatErr_LogNtfSet_t, *puhFatErr_LogNtfSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhFatErr_LogNtf_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**Constraints**

— None

## 6.1.2.2.1.7 uhFatErr\_AllLogNtfs

**Signature**

```
const uhFatErr_LogNtfSet_t uhFatErr_AllLogNtfs = 0x00000003;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhFatErr_LogNtf_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

## 6.1.2.2.2 Model Types &amp; Constants

None.

## 6.1.2.3 Logical Component

## 6.1.2.3.1 Interface-Role Model

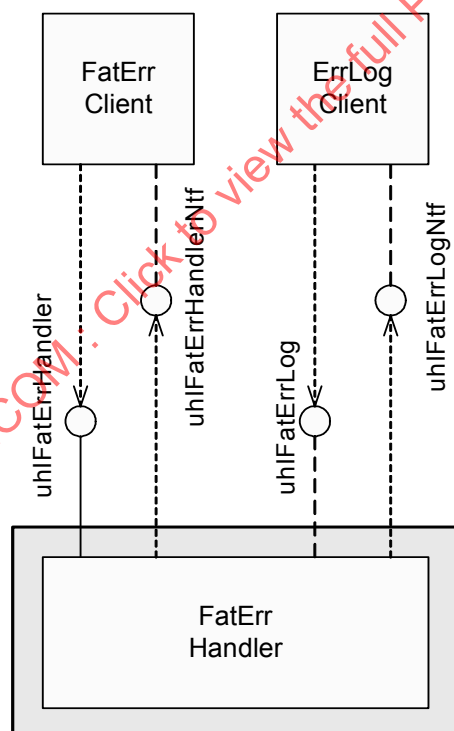


Figure 11 — Interface-Role Model

The role `FatErrHandler` represents (the behavior of) a fatal error handler. In the streaming part of a platform there is typically one fatal error handler instance. The role `FatErrClient` represents a client-specific error handler for handling fatal errors. The role `ErrLogClient` represents a client-specific handler that takes care of logging non-fatal errors. Within a system, there is typically at most one instantiation of each of these two `client` roles. The `uhIFatErrHandler` interface provided by a fatal error handler can be used to install a client-specific error handler using the event-subscription mechanism. A client specific error handler

should provide a `uhIFatErrorHandlerNtf` interface that is used by the fatal error handler to notify the occurrence of an fatal error. The optionally provided `uhIFatErrLog` interface can be used to install a client-specific error logger using the event-subscription mechanism. A client specific error logger should then provide a `uhIFatErrLogNtf` interface that is used by the fatal error handler to notify the occurrence of non-fatal errors.

### 6.1.2.3.2 Diversity

#### 6.1.2.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 28

| Role            | Interface                          | Presence  |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|-----------|
| FatErrorHandler | <code>uhIFatErrorHandler</code>    | mandatory |
|                 | <code>uhIFatErrLog</code>          | optional  |
| FatErrClient    | <code>uhIFatErrorHandlerNtf</code> | optional  |
| ErrLogClient    | <code>uhIFatErrLogNtf</code>       | optional  |

#### 6.1.2.3.2.2 Configurable Items

None.

#### 6.1.2.3.2.3 Constraints

None.

### 6.1.2.3.3 Instantiation

#### 6.1.2.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 29

| Type                         | Object           | Multiplicity |
|------------------------------|------------------|--------------|
| <code>FatErrorHandler</code> | <code>feh</code> | 1            |

#### 6.1.2.3.3.2 Initial State

There are no constraints on the initial state of a logical component instance.

#### 6.1.2.3.4 Execution Constraints

No execution constraints apply to the Fatal Error Handling logical component; the interfaces `uhIFatErrorHandler` and `uhIFatErrLog` are thread-safe.

#### 6.1.2.4 Roles

##### 6.1.2.4.1 FatErrorHandler

###### Signature

```
role FatErrorHandler {}
```

###### Qualifiers

— root

###### Description

An instance of role `FatErrorHandler`, called a *fatal error handler*, handles fatal errors that may occur in the platform by aborting program execution and provides facilities to install a client error handler using the event subscription mechanism. If a client error handler is installed, the fatal error handler delegates the handling of a fatal error to the client error handler.

Next to the fatal errors, also non-fatal errors can be handled by a *fatal error handler*. These errors can be reported to a client error logger via the event subscription mechanism.

###### Independent Attributes

None.

###### Dependent Attributes

None.

###### Instantiation

See subclause 6.1.2.3.3.

###### Streaming Behavior

None.

###### Active Behavior

The `FatErrorHandler` has standard notification behavior (see `uhIFatErrorHandlerNtf` and `uhIFatErrLogNtf`) except for the event related to the `uhIFatErrorHandlerNtf` interface described below:

**Table 30**

###### Event

Some thread in the system reports that a fatal error with error code *c* occurred at line number *n* in the file with name *f* and transfers control to the fatal error handler.

###### Action

The fatal error handler performs the following action

- If ( a client error handler has been installed )
  - Notify `OnError(*,c,f,n)` in a *synchronous* way.
  - If ( client did not abort )
    - Prepare for aborting program execution.
    - Abort.
- Else
  - Prepare for aborting program execution.
  - Abort.

###### Execution Constraints

— Fatal errors are processed in a sequential way (implying that only the first reported error will be handled, due to aborting of program execution).



**Remarks**

- Note that the `OnError` of interface `uhIFatErrHandlerNtf` notification is performed as a *synchronous* function call, implying that the thread reporting the fatal error remains pending.
- What happens after the abortion of program execution is deliberately left unspecified.
- In this API specification we do not specify how exceptional errors are reported within the platform to a fatal error handler. This is an implementation issue that is not observable by the client of the API. The same holds for the non-fatal errors.

**6.1.2.4.2 FatErrClient****Signature**

```
role FatErrClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

- actor

**Description**

An instance of role `FatErrClient`, called a *client error handler*, represents a custom error handler that may be installed by an application as a “delegate” of the fatal error handler. A client error handler is installed by subscribing to the `OnError` notifications of the fatal error handler on interface `uhIFatErrHandlerNtf`.

**Remarks**

- The execution constraints associated with the fatal error handler imply that no more than one client error handler can be installed.
- Note that a call to the client error handler to report a fatal error should does typically not return; see subclause 6.1.2.4.5.2. If this condition is not met and the function returns, the fatal error handler will abort program execution.

**6.1.2.4.3 ErrLogClient****Signature**

```
role ErrLogClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

- actor

**Description**

An instance of role `ErrLogClient`, called a *client error logger*, represents a custom error logger that may be installed by an application as a “delegate” of the fatal error handler for non-fatal errors. A client error logger is installed by subscribing to the `OnError` notifications of the fatal error handler on interface `uhIFatErrLogNtf`.

**6.1.2.4.4 InterfacesuhIFatErrHandler****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This is the control interface of the fatal error handler allowing a client to subscribe and unsubscribe to error notifications.

**Interface ID**

uuid( 5854CE21-5427-4d97-B477-BCBE7DF695E6 )

**Execution Constraints**

— At any given moment the number of subscribers to the `OnError` event may be at most one.

**6.1.2.4.4.1 Subscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (  
    [in] uhIFatErrHandlerNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhFatErr_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**6.1.2.4.4.2 Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhIFatErrHandlerNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhFatErr_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

**6.1.2.4.5 uhIFatErrHandlerNtf**

**Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This interface should be provided by each client error handler so as to receive notifications of the occurrence of fatal errors.

**Interface ID**  
uuid( D7F64618-555E-4896-86C3-E0AE047C6174 )

**6.1.2.4.5.1 OnSubscriptionChanged**

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (   
    [in] UInt32 cookie,   
    [in] uhFatErr\_Notifications\_t notifs );

**Qualifiers**  
— onsubscriptionchanged-function

**6.1.2.4.5.2 OnError**

**Signature**  
Void OnError (   
    [in] UInt32 cookie,   
    [in] uhErrorCode\_t error,   
    [in] UInt32 size,   
    [in, size\_is(size)] String file,   
    [in] UInt32 line );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is used by a fatal error handler to notify a client error handler that a fatal error occurred and that it should abort execution (possibly partially); see the Active Behavior of `FatErrHandler` in subclause 6.1.2.4.1. Before aborting, the client error handler can make any necessary preparations such as logging the error.

**Parameters**

**Table 31**

| Name   | Description                                                           |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.         |
| error  | The error code of the fatal error whose occurrence is being notified. |
| size   | The string size of the file parameter (= string length + 1).          |
| file   | The name of the file where the fatal error occurred.                  |
| line   | The number of the line where the fatal error occurred.                |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
0x80000000 <= error <= 0xFFFFFFFF

— size = strlen( file ) + 1

**Action**

- Prepare for the (possibly partial) abortion of program execution.
- Abort (possibly partially).

**Postcondition**

True

**Remarks**

- This function (the client error handler) typically never returns, by aborting the system execution, or part of it (depending on the system context). The abort is typically followed by a restart to bring the system in a defined state again. If this condition is not met and the function returns, the fatal error handler will abort the system execution, or part of it, and will typically do a restart after the abort.
- What happens after the (possibly partial) abortion of program execution is deliberately left unspecified.

**6.1.2.4.6 uhIFatErrLog**

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This is the control interface of the fatal error handler allowing a client to subscribe and unsubscribe to non-fatal error notifications for logging purposes.

**Interface ID**

uuid(4DA5775C-CC66-487c-8DFA-A9589F3278AB )

**Execution Constraints**

None

**6.1.2.4.6.1 Subscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (  
    [in] uhIFatErrLogNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhFatErr_LogNtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

- subscribe-function

#### 6.1.2.4.6.2 Unsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhIFatErrLogNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhFatErr_LogNtfSet_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

#### 6.1.2.4.7 uhIFatErrLogNtf

##### Qualifiers

— callback

##### Description

This interface should be provided by each client error handler so as to receive notifications of the occurrence of non-fatal errors.

##### Interface ID

```
uuid( 6F59485E-4C9E-4ffc-8CFD-BC47517DEE1C )
```

#### 6.1.2.4.7.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

##### Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhFatErr_LogNtfSet_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

#### 6.1.2.4.7.2 OnError

##### Signature

```
[async] Void OnError (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhErrorCode_t error,
    [in] UInt32 nrOfOccurrences,
    [in] Int32 errorData );
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This function is called by the fatal error handler to notify the occurrence of a non-fatal error. To avoid that notifications are being made in a very high frequency for errors that occur in a burst mode, the fatal error handler may report multiple occurrences of the same error within one notification.

**Parameters****Table 32**

| <b>Name</b>     | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie          | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                                                           |
| error           | The error code of the non-fatal error whose occurrence is being notified                                                                                                                |
| nrOfOccurrences | The number of occurrences of the error since the last time this error was notified.                                                                                                     |
| errorData       | Specific data related to this error. Since multiple errors may have occurred, it is suggested to record the data of the last error (this is to be determined by the platform instance). |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**Remarks**

None.

**6.1.3 uhllamAlive****6.1.3.1 Concepts****6.1.3.1.1 The watchdog**

The I am Alive logical component (IAA) supports watchdog functionality. The watchdog is an entity that needs to receive a heartbeat from the platform every few seconds (see Figure 12 ). If this heartbeat does not come (in time), it initiates a reboot of the platform. The heartbeat is an “I am alive” notification provided by the IAA. The IAA periodically checks if the entire platform is still alive and if this is the case, it issues an “I am alive” notification.

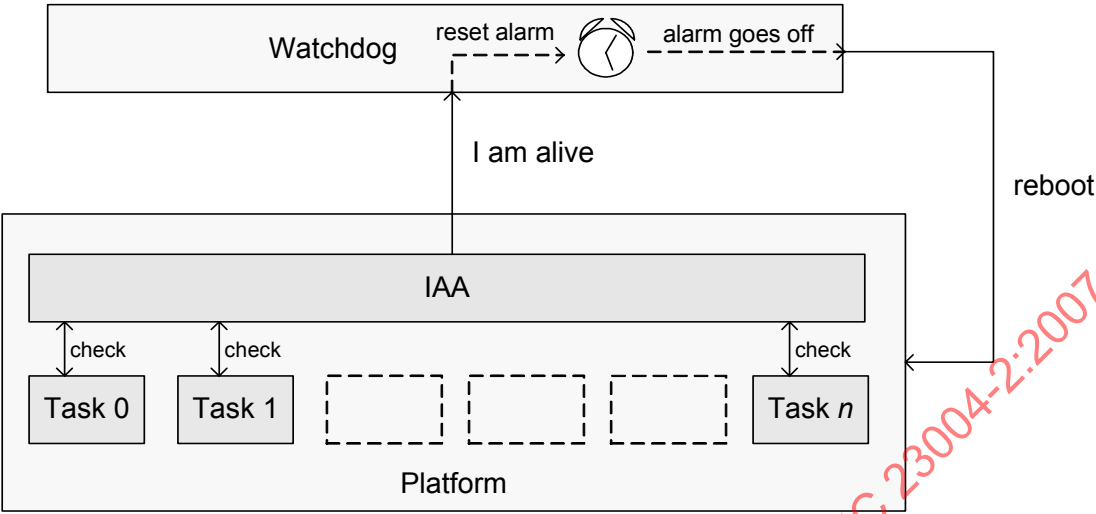


Figure 12 — Interface-Role Model of the IAA.

The IAA (grey box) consists of the `IamAliveNotifier` role. This role provides an interface (`uhIIamAlive`) for monitoring the state (alive/in deadlock) of the platform. The control interface is meant for use by the client (`IamAliveNotifierClient`). This client can optionally provide a call-back interface (`uhIIamAliveNtf`) allowing it to get notified of events in the IAA.

6.1.3.1.2 Diversity

6.1.3.1.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 33

| Role                                | Interface                   | Presence  |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------|
| <code>IamAliveNotifier</code>       | <code>uhIIamAlive</code>    | mandatory |
| <code>IamAliveNotifierClient</code> | <code>uhIIamAliveNtf</code> | optional  |

6.1.3.1.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 34

| Role                          | Attribute                |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>IamAliveNotifier</code> | <code>ntfInterval</code> |

6.1.3.1.2.3 Constraints

None.

**6.1.3.1.3 Instantiation****6.1.3.1.3.1 Objects Created**

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 35**

| Type             | Object | Multiplicity |
|------------------|--------|--------------|
| IamAliveNotifier | iaan   | 1            |

**6.1.3.1.3.2 Initial State**

No constraints on the initial state.

**6.1.3.1.4 Execution Constraints**

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

**6.1.3.2 Roles****6.1.3.2.1 IamAliveNotifier****Signature**

```
role IamAliveNotifier {
    Uint32 ntfInterval;
}
```

**Qualifiers**

— root

**Description**

The IamAliveNotifier role provides means to check if the platform is alive.

**Independent Attributes****Table 36**

| Name        | Description                                                                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ntfInterval | The maximum time (in milliseconds) in between two consecutive "I am alive" notifications. |

**Dependent Attributes**

None.

**Invariants**

None.



**Instantiation**

See subclause 6.1.3.1.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

None.

**Active Behavior**

The `IamAliveNotifier` has standard notification behavior (see `uhIIamAliveNtf`).

**6.1.3.2.2 IamAliveNotifierClient****Signature**

```
role IamAliveNotifierClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

— actor

**Description**

A `IamAliveNotifierClient` represents a user of the `uhIIamAlive` interface.

**6.1.3.3 Interfaces****6.1.3.3.1 uhIIamAlive****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface allows the client to subscribe to the “I am alive” events issued by the `IamAliveNotifier`. He can also query the notification interval used by the `IamAliveNotifier`.

**Interface ID**

```
uuid( 60B6D267-1EB4-44e5-909D-B570E9EFCE27 )
```

**Remarks**

In the following function specifications, the name `iaan` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface; see subclause 6.1.3.1.3.1.

6.1.3.3.1.1      **Subscribe**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t Subscribe (  
    [in] uhIamAliveNtf \*pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhIamAlive\_Notifications\_t notifs );

**Qualifiers**  
— subscribe-function

6.1.3.3.1.2      **Unsubscribe**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhIamAliveNtf \*pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhIamAlive\_Notifications\_t notifs );

**Qualifiers**  
— unsubscribe-function

6.1.3.3.1.3      **GetNotificationInterval**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetNotificationInterval ( [out] pUInt32 pInterval );

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
  
— thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns the notification interval of the IamAliveNotifier.

**Parameters**

Table 37

| Name      | Description                                                                                     |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pInterval | Output parameter returning the notification interval (in milliseconds) of the IamAliveNotifier. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**

— `*pInterval == iaan.ntfInterval`

**6.1.3.3.2 uhllamAliveNtf****Qualifiers**

— `callback`

**Description**

This is the notification interface to be provided by clients of the IAA logical component that wish to subscribe to notifications of events of the IAA logical component.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( 9A528730-25E7-4528-A052-8AFB6E0CA5A1 )`

**6.1.3.3.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhIamAlive_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— `onsubscriptionchanged-function`

**6.1.3.3.2.2 OnIamAlive****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnIamAlive ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the `IamAliveNotifier` on a periodic basis (the time in between two consecutive notifications is at most `ntfInterval`) to notify the client that the platform is alive.

**Parameters****Table 38**

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- Any callback-compliant action

**Postcondition**

True

#### **6.1.4 uhlOutConf**

##### **6.1.4.1 Concepts**

###### **6.1.4.1.1 Introduction**

The input of an Output Configuration component is an uncompressed audio signal with a given channel configuration. The Output Configuration component processes these channels to get to an audio output signal with a channel configuration that corresponds to wishes of the client(s).

The so-called processes (i.e. algorithms) that can be applied to the audio input signal have been grouped into so-called Standards according to the (company) providers of the algorithm:

- A basic group gathers the non-proprietary processes;
- A Dolby group gathers the Dolby processes;
- etc.

A process can have limitations on the channel configuration of the audio input signal to which it can be applied: for instance, the Dolby Pro-Logic algorithm can only be applied to a stereo input signal. For a same process applied, the channel configuration of the output signal can also differ between input signals with different channel configuration: for instance, when the SRS Wow process is applied to a mono input signal, the output signal is a mono signal, and when it is applied to a stereo signal, the output signal is a stereo signal.

Consequently, for each possible channel configuration of the audio input signal it can be necessary to apply a different process to fit as much as possible with requirements towards the channel configuration of the audio output signal. For instance, when the audio playback capability of the system does not fit with the audio material - for example, a television with only left and right speakers fed with a multi-channel audio stream - an appropriate process should be selected to get an output signal with a channel configuration fitting this limitation.

For each channel configuration of the audio input signal (i.e. 1/0, 2/0, 2/1, 2/2, etc.), a number of processes are supported. The application of these processes on input streams with a specific input channel configuration can result in different channel configurations of the output signal. Therefore per input channel configuration, one can establish a list of output channel configurations that can be obtained, by application of one of the processes supported for this input channel configuration.

In other words, only a subset of the supported Standards and within these Standards only a subset of the supported processes will perform a specific input channel configuration to output channel configuration "transformation" (i.e combination).

For each of the possible input channel configuration, a preference can be set towards one of the possible output channel configurations and towards the process that should be used (along with the Standard the process is belonging to) in order to obtain an output signal with this channel configuration.

In case the channel configuration of the input signal changes, the Output Configuration can thus autonomously and transparently select which of the Standards it should use and which of the processes it should apply.

This is depicted in red in the example of Figure 13 in the case of a change in the input stream to a stereo signal. The Basic Standard should be used (since this is the Standard selected by the client for such channel configuration of the input signal) with Front 3 Stereo as the process applied (since this is the process selected by the client when the audio input signal is stereo).

Whenever another change of the channel configuration of the input stream occurs towards a configuration with three front channels and two surround (a.k.a. rear) channels, this will imply - in the example depicted in Figure 13 - the use of the Dolby Standard and the application of the Dolby Virtual process to the audio input signal - as depicted in light purple in Figure 13.

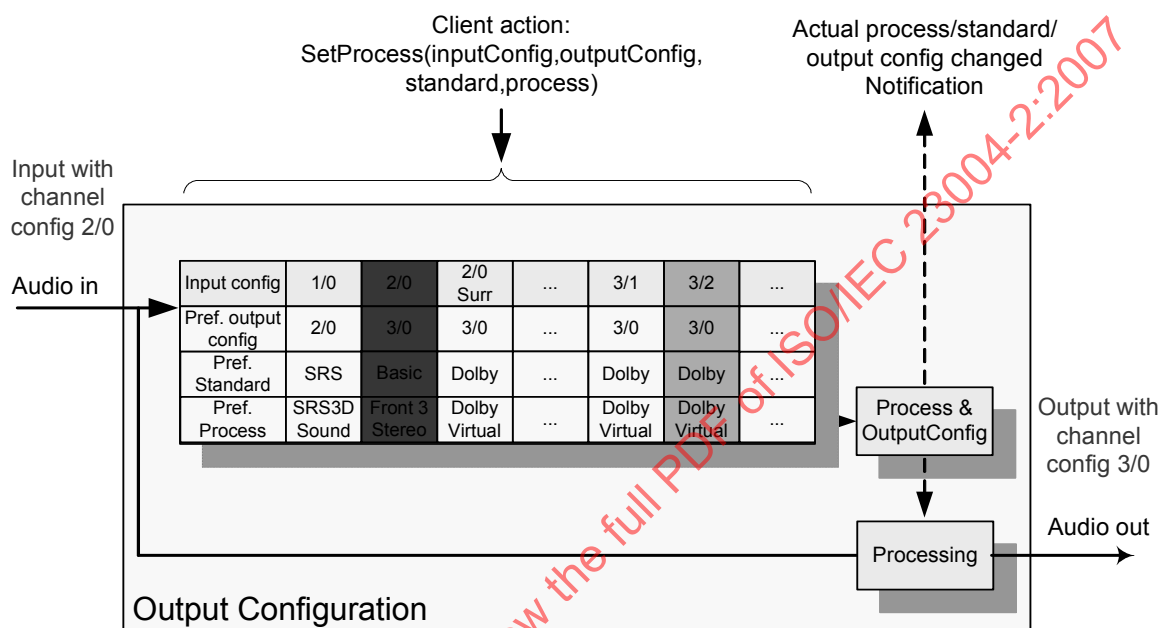


Figure 13 — Example of the Output Configuration Mechanism

For some of the processes the amount of effect that should be used when the process is applied is configurable. Control of the desired amount of effect to be used is provided to the client(s) in the same function used to set the process to be applied for a specific input channel configuration.

#### 6.1.4.2 Types & Constants

##### 6.1.4.2.1 Public Types & Constants

###### 6.1.4.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

###### 6.1.4.2.1.2 uhOutConf\_ValStat\_t

###### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhOutConf_ValStat_t {
    uhOutConf_ValStatInvalid    = -2,
    uhOutConf_ValStatUnknown    = -1,
    uhOutConf_ValStatKnown      = 1
} uhOutConf_ValStat_t, *puhOutConf_ValStat_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This type represents the validity status of the related property/properties.

**Values****Table 39**

| <b>Name</b>              | <b>Description</b>                                                       |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhOutConf_ValStatInvalid | The property/properties are temporarily not available.                   |
| uhOutConf_ValStatUnknown | The property/properties are available, yet they could not be determined. |
| uhOutConf_ValStatKnown   | The property/properties are available and determined.                    |

**6.1.4.2.1.3 uhOutConf\_Config\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhOutConf_Config_t {
    uhOutConf_ConfigInvalid      = 0x80000000,
    uhOutConf_ConfigUnknown     = 0x40000000,
    uhOutConf_Config1s0         = 0x00000001,
    uhOutConf_Config2s0         = 0x00000002,
    uhOutConf_Config2s0Surround = 0x00000004,
    uhOutConf_Config2s1         = 0x00000008,
    uhOutConf_Config2s2         = 0x00000010,
    uhOutConf_Config3s0         = 0x00000020,
    uhOutConf_Config3s1         = 0x00000040,
    uhOutConf_Config3s2         = 0x00000080,
    uhOutConf_Config3s3         = 0x00000100,
    uhOutConf_Config3s4         = 0x00000200,
    uhOutConf_Config4s2         = 0x00000400,
    uhOutConf_Config4s4         = 0x00000800,
    uhOutConf_Config5s2         = 0x00001000,
    uhOutConf_Config5s3         = 0x00002000
} uhOutConf_Config_t, *puhOutConf_Config_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent channel configurations of an audio stream.

**Values****Table 40**

| <b>Name</b>             | <b>Description</b>                                                      |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhOutConf_ConfigInvalid | The channel configuration is temporarily not available.                 |
| uhOutConf_ConfigUnknown | The channel configuration is available, yet it could not be determined. |
| uhOutConf_Config1s0     | Mono signal: only a single channel is present in the audio stream.      |

| Name                        | Description                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhOutConf_Config2s0         | Stereo signal: left and right channels. The audio channels do not contain Dolby Surround encoded signal.                         |
| uhOutConf_Config2s0Surround | Stereo signal: left and right channels. The audio stream contains a (Dolby, DTS, etc) Surround encoded stereo signal.            |
| uhOutConf_Config2s1         | Left, right, and mono surround channels.                                                                                         |
| uhOutConf_Config2s2         | Left, right, surround left, and surround right channels.                                                                         |
| uhOutConf_Config3s0         | Left, center, and right channels.                                                                                                |
| uhOutConf_Config3s1         | Left, center, right, and mono surround channels.                                                                                 |
| uhOutConf_Config3s2         | Left, center, right, surround left, and surround right channels.                                                                 |
| uhOutConf_Config3s3         | Left, center, right, rear left, rear center, and rear right channels.                                                            |
| uhOutConf_Config3s4         | Left, center, right, left surround, left-back surround, right-back surround, and right surround channels.                        |
| uhOutConf_Config4s2         | Left, left-center, right-center, right, surround left, and surround right channels.                                              |
| uhOutConf_Config4s4         | Left, left-center, right-center, right, surround left, surround left-center, surround right-center, and surround right channels. |
| uhOutConf_Config5s2         | Left, left-center, center, right-center, right, surround left, and surround right channels.                                      |
| uhOutConf_Config5s3         | Left, left-center, center, right-center, right, surround left, surround center, and surround right channels.                     |

#### 6.1.4.2.1.4 uhOutConf\_ConfigSet\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhOutConf_ConfigSet_t, *puhOutConf_ConfigSet_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of channel configurations.

##### Constraints

None.

6.1.4.2.1.5 **uhOutConf\_Standard\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhOutConf_Standard_t {
    uhOutConf_StdNone      = 0x00000001,
    uhOutConf_StdBasic     = 0x00000002,
    uhOutConf_StdDolby     = 0x00000004,
    uhOutConf_StdIncred    = 0x00000008,
    uhOutConf_StdSrs       = 0x00000010,
    uhOutConf_StdDts       = 0x00000020
} uhOutConf_Standard_t, *puhOutConf_Standard_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent Standards to be applied to audio input signals.

**Values****Table 41**

| Name                | Description                                                                                                         |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhOutConf_StdNone   | There is no process to apply to the audio input stream. The audio input stream is outputted without any processing. |
| uhOutConf_StdBasic  | The process to be applied to the audio input signal is among a list of basic processes.                             |
| uhOutConf_StdDolby  | The process to be applied to the audio input signal is among a list of Dolby processes.                             |
| uhOutConf_StdIncred | The process to be applied to the audio input signal is among a list of Incredible processes.                        |
| uhOutConf_StdSrs    | The process to be applied to the audio input signal is among a list of SRS processes.                               |
| uhOutConf_StdDts    | The process to be applied to the audio input signal is among a list of DTS processes.                               |

6.1.4.2.1.6 **uhOutConf\_StandardSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32
uhOutConf_StandardSet_t, *p
uhOutConf_StandardSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of standards.

**Constraints**

None.



#### 6.1.4.2.1.7 uhOutConf\_Process\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef UInt32 uhOutConf_Process_t, *puhOutConf_Process_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Defines the "union" of the Standards as a subrange of the integers. That is, a value of this type is a value of type uhOutConf\_BasicProcess\_t, uhOutConf\_DolbyProcess\_t,

uhOutConf\_IncredProcess\_t,

uhOutConf\_SrsProcess\_t, or

uhOutConf\_DtsProcess\_t or is equal to uhOutConf\_ProcessNone. In order to interpret a value of this type correctly the Standard should be indicated. For example, the value 0x00000004 can be interpreted in one of five ways:

- as the value uhOutConf\_BasicPseudoStereo of Standard uhOutConf\_StdBasic;
- as the value uhOutConf\_DolbyProLogic of Standard uhOutConf\_StdDolby;
- as the value uhOutConf\_IncredSurround of Standard uhOutConf\_StdIncred;
- as the value uhOutConf\_Srs3dSound of Standard uhOutConf\_StdSrs;
- as the value uhOutConf\_DtsSurroundEs of Standard uhOutConf\_StdDts.

Likewise, the value 0x80000000 can only be interpreted as the value uhOutConf\_ProcessNone of Standard uhOutConf\_StdNone.

##### Constraints

- Each value of type uhOutConf\_Process\_t is a valid value of at least one of the following types: uhOutConf\_BasicProcess\_t, uhOutConf\_DolbyProcess\_t,
- uhOutConf\_IncredProcess\_t,
- uhOutConf\_SrsProcess\_t, or
- uhOutConf\_DtsProcess\_t or is equal to uhOutConf\_ProcessNone.

##### Remarks

A value of this type is normally used in combination with a value of type uhOutConf\_Standard\_t to indicate the Standard to which the value belongs.

**6.1.4.2.1.8      uhOutConf\_ProcessSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhOutConf_ProcessSet_t, *puhOutConf_ProcessSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of values of type uhOutConf\_Process\_t.

**Constraints**

None.

**6.1.4.2.1.9      uhOutConf\_Ntf\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhOutConf_Ntf_t {
    uhOutConf_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhOutConf_ActualProcessChanged = 0x00000002
} uhOutConf_Ntf_t, *puhOutConf_Ntf_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface uhIAdrcNtf.

**Values****Table 42**

| <b>Name</b>                    | <b>Description</b>                |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhOutConf_SubscriptionChanged  | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged. |
| uhOutConf_ActualProcessChanged | Represents OnActEnabledChanged.   |

**6.1.4.2.1.10    uhOutConf\_NtfSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhOutConf_NtfSet_t, *puhOutConf_NtfSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhOutConf_Ntf_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**Constraints**

None.

**6.1.4.2.1.11    `uhOutConf_AllNtfs`****Signature**

```
const uhOutConf_NtfSet_t uhOutConf_AllNtfs = 0x00000003;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhOutConf_Ntf_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**6.1.4.2.1.12    `uhOutConf_BasicProcess_t`****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhOutConf_BasicProcess_t {
    uhOutConf_BasicSpatial      = 0x00000001,
    uhOutConf_BasicUpmix1To2    = 0x00000002,
    uhOutConf_BasicPseudoStereo = 0x00000004,
    uhOutConf_Basic3dSurround   = 0x00000008,
    uhOutConf_BasicHall         = 0x00000010,
    uhOutConf_BasicMatrix       = 0x00000020,
    uhOutConf_BasicFront3Stereo = 0x00000040,
    uhOutConf_BasicDownmix      = 0x00000080
} uhOutConf_BasicProcess_t, *puhOutConf_BasicProcess_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent basic processes that can be applied to audio input signals.

## Values

Table 43

| Name                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhOutConf_BasicSpatial      | <p>Spatial process.</p> <p>Support: for mono and for stereo input signals.</p> <p>When the input signal is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— A mono signal, this process delivers an output signal with a front left and a front right channel with a pseudo-stereo effect;</li> <li>— A stereo signal, this process widens the sound impression, giving the impression that the front left and front right speakers are at a greater distance from each other.</li> </ul> <p>The output signal is a stereo signal.</p>                                                                                                             |
| uhOutConf_BasicUpmix1To2    | <p>"Basic" upmix from 1 channel to 2 channels.</p> <p>Support: for mono input signals.</p> <p>The output signal is a signal with two channels: a signal with a front left and a front right channel is delivered after proper scaling (fixed per standards, for energy conservation) of the mono input signal. The signals contained in the front left channel and in the front right channel are identical.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| uhOutConf_BasicPseudoStereo | <p>Pseudo Stereo process.</p> <p>Support: for mono input signals.</p> <p>This process delivers an output signal with a front left, a front right, and a rear (surround) channel.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| uhOutConf_Basic3dSurround   | <p>3D Surround process.</p> <p>Support: for stereo input signals.</p> <p>This process (re-)generates a 3D surround sound from a stereo input signal.</p> <p>This process delivers a stereo signal.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| uhOutConf_BasicHall         | <p>Hall process.</p> <p>Support: for any input channel configuration (i.e. excluding uhOutConf_ConfigInvalid and uhOutConf_ConfigUnknown).</p> <p>This process delivers an output signal with a front left, a front right, a rear left, and a rear right channel.</p> <p>When the input signal:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Does not contain surround channel(s), this process creates artificial ones (a surround left and a surround right channel);</li> <li>— Is a multi-channel signal containing a front center channel, this front center channel is merged into the front left and the front right channel.</li> </ul> |
| uhOutConf_BasicMatrix       | <p>Matrix process.</p> <p>This process can be supported for mono and for stereo input signals.</p> <p>This process provides basic surround decoding facility, delivering a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, and a single surround channel.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

| Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhOutConf_BasicFront3Stereo</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <p>Front 3 Stereo process.</p> <p>Support: for stereo and for multi-channel input signals.</p> <p>This process delivers a signal with a front left, a front right, and a front center channel.</p> <p>When the input signal is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— A plain stereo signal, a center channel separation is performed, providing front left, front right, and front center channels.</li> <li>— A possibly Surround encoded stereo signal:</li> <li>— If supported, Dolby Pro-Logic decoding is first applied and then a downmix of the surround channels is performed to obtain a signal with a front left, a front right, and a front center channel;</li> <li>— If not supported, a center channel separation is performed, providing a front left, a front right, and a front center channel.</li> <li>— A multi-channel signal that does not contain a front center channel, then this process performs a center channel separation, and delivers a signal with a front left, a front right, and a front center channel.</li> <li>— A multi-channel signal containing surround channels, a downmix of these channels to a signal with a front left, a front right, and a front center channel is performed.</li> <li>— A multi-channel signal with a center channel and without surround channels, the input signal is passed on unchanged.</li> </ul> |
| <code>uhOutConf_BasicDownmix</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <p>Downmix process.</p> <p>Support: for stereo and for multi-channel input signals, depending on the selected output channel configuration.</p> <p>The channel configuration of the signal that is delivered is compliant to the selected output configuration.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Remarks</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| When the selected process is a downmixing process (i.e. <code>uhOutConf_BasicDownmix</code> ) and when the audio input stream contains a single rear (i.e. surround) channel and the required output configuration does not contain a single rear channel but at least rear left and right channels, then the single rear signal is routed after proper scaling (fixed per standards) to the rear left and right channels. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| With respect to downmixing, the coefficients used to obtain the required output configuration are usually already fixed and specified in the standard with which the signal was potentially encoded. The coefficients can also be embedded in the encoded stream itself as can be the case for an originally DTS encoded stream.                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Table 44 defines, per input channel configuration, for each of the basic processes the output configuration that is delivered, depending on the selected output configuration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

**Table 44 — Channel configuration of the output signal in case a basic process is applied to the input stream.**

|               | Input Config  | 1/0 | 2/0 | 2/0Surr | 2/1 | 2/2 | 3/0 | 3/1 | 3/2 | 3/3 | 3/4 | 4/2 | 4/4 | 5/2 | 5/3 |
|---------------|---------------|-----|-----|---------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Process       | Output Config |     |     |         |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| Spatial       | 2/0           | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0     | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
| Upmix 1 To 2  | 2/0           | 2/0 | -   | -       | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
| Pseudo Stereo | 2/1           | 2/1 | -   | -       | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
| 3D Surround   | 2/0           | -   | 2/0 | 2/0     | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
| Hall          | 2/2           | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2     | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2 |
| Matrix        | 3/1           | 3/1 | 3/1 | 3/1     | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
| Front Stereo  | 3 3/0         | -   | 3/0 | 3/0     | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 |
| Downmix       | 1/0           | -   | 1/0 | 1/0     | 1/0 | 1/0 | 1/0 | 1/0 | 1/0 | 1/0 | 1/0 | 1/0 | 1/0 | 1/0 | 1/0 |
|               | 2/0           | -   | -   | 2/0     | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 |
|               | 2/2           | -   | -   | -       | 2/2 | -   | -   | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2 | 2/2 |
|               | 3/0           | -   | -   | -       | -   | -   | -   | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 |
|               | 3/2           | -   | -   | -       | -   | -   | -   | 3/2 | -   | 3/2 | 3/2 | 3/2 | 3/2 | 3/2 | 3/2 |

**6.1.4.2.1.13 uhOutConf\_DolbyProcess\_t****Signature****typedef enum \_****uhOutConf\_DolbyProcess\_t {**

```

    uhOutConf_DolbySurroundDownmix    = 0x00000001,
    uhOutConf_Dolby3Stereo             = 0x00000002,
    uhOutConf_DolbyProLogic            = 0x00000004,
    uhOutConf_DolbyProLogic2           = 0x00000008,
    uhOutConf_DolbyProLogic2x          = 0x00000010,
    uhOutConf_DolbyHeadphone           = 0x00000020,
    uhOutConf_DolbyVirtual             = 0x00000040,
    uhOutConf_DolbyVirtualSpeaker      = 0x00000080,
    uhOutConf_DolbyVirtualSpeakerWide = 0x00000100

```

**}****uhOutConf\_DolbyProcess\_t, \*p****uhOutConf\_DolbyProcess\_t;****Qualifiers****— enum-element**

Description

Values of this type represent Dolby processes that can be applied to audio input signals.

Values

Table 45

| Name                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhOutConf_<br>DolbySurroundDownmix | <p>Downmix to a Dolby Surround encoded stereo signal.</p> <p>Support: for input signals that have a number of front channels bigger or equal to 2 (excluding uhOutConf_Config2s0 and uhOutConf_Config2s0Surround).</p> <p>The signal that is delivered contains a front left and a front right channel Dolby Surround encoded.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| uhOutConf_<br>Dolby3Stereo         | <p>Dolby 3 stereo process.</p> <p>Support: for possibly Surround encoded stereo input signals and for multi-channel input signals.</p> <p>This process provides a front left, a front right, and a front center signal.</p> <p>When the input signal is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>— A possibly Surround encoded stereo signal, Dolby Pro-Logic decoding is first applied and then a downmix of the surround channels is performed to obtain a signal with a front left, a front right, and a front center channel.</li><li>— A multi-channel signal containing surround channel(s), a downmix of these channels into the front left and the front right channel is performed.</li><li>— A multi-channel signal containing only a front left and a front right channel: no channel center is derived, surround information is downmixed into the front left and front right channels.</li></ul> <p>A multi-channel signal with a center channel and without surround channels, the input signal is passed on unchanged.</p> |

| Name          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhOutConf_    | Dolby Pro-Logic process.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| DolbyProLogic | <p>Support: for stereo input signals.</p> <p>When the input signal is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— A plain stereo signal:</li> <li>— If the input signal was previously encoded according to a standard with which the application of the Dolby Pro-Logic process conflicts (for instance Dolby Digital), the input signal is passed on unchanged;</li> <li>— If the input signal was not previously encoded or was encoded according to a standard with which the application of the Dolby Pro-Logic process does not conflict, this process delivers, depending on the selected output configuration:</li> <li>— Either a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, and a (single) surround channel;</li> <li>— Either a signal with a front left, a front right, and a (single) surround signal (the signal in the front center channel is merged into the signals delivered in the front left and the front right channel).</li> <li>— A possibly Surround encoded stereo signal, this process delivers depending on the selected output configuration:</li> <li>— Either a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, and a (single) surround channel;</li> <li>— Either a signal with a front left, a front right, and a (single) surround signal (the signal in the front center channel is merged into the signals delivered in the front left and the front right channel).</li> </ul> |



**Name**

uhOutConf\_  
DolbyProLogic2

**Description**

Dolby Pro-Logic II process.

Support: for stereo input signals.

When the input signal is:

- A plain stereo signal;
- If the input signal was previously encoded according to a standard with which the application of the Dolby Pro-Logic II process conflicts (for instance Dolby Digital), the input signal is passed on unchanged;
- If the input signal was not previously encoded or was encoded according to a standard with which the application of the Dolby Pro-Logic II process does not conflict, this process delivers, depending on the selected output configuration:
- Either a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, and full range stereo surround channels;
- Either a signal with a front left, a front right, a surround left, and a surround right channel (the signal in the front center channel is merged into the signals delivered in the front left and the front right channel).
- A possibly Surround encoded stereo signal, this process delivers depending on the selected output configuration:
- Either a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center and full range stereo surround channels;
- Either a signal with a front left, a front right, a surround left, and a surround right channel (the signal in the front center channel is merged into the signals delivered in the front left and the front right channel).

uhOutConf\_  
DolbyProLogic2x

Dolby Pro-Logic IIx process.

Support: for stereo input signals and for input signals with three front channels and two surround channels.

This process delivers depending on the selected output configuration:

- Either a signal with a front left, a front center, a front right, a left surround, a center surround, and a right surround channel;
- Either a signal with a front left, a front center, a front right, a left surround, a left back, a right back, and a right surround channel.

uhOutConf\_  
DolbyHeadphone

Dolby Headphone process.

Support: for stereo and multi-channel input signals.

This process delivers a stereo signal.

When the input signal is:

- A stereo signal, this process modifies the input signal into a spacious, natural sound, stereo signal for headphone playback;
- A multi-channel signal, this process virtualizes the multi-channel signal into a stereo signal with surround effects over any set of headphones.

**Name**

uhOutConf\_  
DolbyVirtual

**Description**

Dolby Virtual Dolby process.

Support: for stereo and multi-channel input signals.

This process delivers depending on the selected output configuration:

- Either a stereo signal;
- Either a signal with a front left, a front right and possibly a front center channel.
- When the input signal is
- A plain stereo:
- If the input signal was previously encoded according to a standard with which the application of the Dolby Pro-Logic process conflicts (for instance Dolby Digital), the input signal is passed on unchanged;
- If the input signal was not previously encoded or was encoded according to a standard with which the application of the Dolby Pro-Logic process does not conflict, Dolby Pro-Logic processing is first performed, and then virtualizing is applied. The surround channel is virtualized and routed towards front left and front right channels. Depending on the selected output configuration, the process delivers:
- Either a virtual surround stereo signal (the front center channel, resulting from the Dolby Pro-Logic processing, is merged into the signals delivered in the front left and the front right channel);
- Either a multi-channel signal with a front left, a front right, and a front center channel.
- A possibly Surround encoded stereo signal, Dolby Pro-Logic processing is first performed, and then virtualizing is applied. The surround channel is virtualized and routed towards front left and front right channels. Depending on the selected output configuration, the process delivers:
- Either a virtual surround stereo signal (the front center channel, resulting from the Dolby Pro-Logic processing, is merged into the signals delivered in the front left and the front right channel);
- Either a multi-channel signal with a front left, a front right, and a front center channel.
- A multi-channel signal, the surround channel(s), if present in the input signal, is virtualized and routed towards the front left and the front right channel. Depending on the selected output configuration, this process delivers
- Either a stereo signal (the center channel, if present in the input signal, being distributed over the front left and the front right channel);
- Either a multi-channel signal with a front left, a front center (if originally present in the audio input stream) and a front right channel.

**Name**

uhOutConf\_  
DolbyVirtualSpeaker

**Description**

Dolby Virtual Speaker process, Reference mode.

Support: for stereo and multi-channel input signals.

This process delivers a stereo signal.

When the input signal is:

- A plain stereo signal, this process creates a wider two-channel environment;
- A possibly Surround encoded stereo signal:
- If supported, Dolby Pro-Logic II processing is first performed and then virtualizing is applied, a virtual surround stereo signal of higher quality is delivered;
- Otherwise, this process creates a wider two-channel environment.
- A multi-channel signal, this process simulates a multi-channel surround sound listening environment by virtualizing the multi-channel input signal to a stereo signal.

uhOutConf\_

DolbyVirtualSpeakerWide

Virtual Speaker process, Wide mode.

Support: for stereo and multi-channel input signals.

This process delivers a stereo signal.

It provides a wider, more spacious front image when the two speakers are close together, with the same virtual surround sound as the Reference mode of the Virtual Speaker process.

When the input signal is:

- A plain stereo signal, this process creates a wider two-channel environment;
- A possibly Surround encoded stereo signal:
- If supported, Dolby Pro-Logic II processing is first performed and then virtualizing is applied, a virtual surround stereo signal of higher quality is delivered;
- Otherwise, this process creates a wider two-channel environment.
- A multi-channel signal, this process simulates a multi-channel surround sound listening environment by virtualizing the multi-channel input signal to a stereo signal.

**Remarks**

Table 46 defines, per input channel configuration, for each of the Dolby processes the output configuration that is delivered, depending on the selected output configuration.

**Table 46 — Channel configuration of the output signal in case a Dolby process is applied to the input stream.**

| Process                    | Input Config | 1/0 | 2/0                   | 2/0<br>Surr | 2/1         | 2/2         | 3/0         | 3/1         | 3/2         | 3/3         | 3/4         | 4/2         | 4/4         | 5/2         | 5/3         |
|----------------------------|--------------|-----|-----------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
|                            |              |     |                       |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |
| Dolby Surround Downmix     | 2/0Surr      | -   | -                     | -           | 2/0<br>Surr | 2/0<br>Surr | 2/0<br>Surr | 2/0<br>Surr | 2/0<br>Surr | 2/0<br>Surr | 2/0<br>Surr | 2/0<br>Surr | 2/0<br>Surr | 2/0<br>Surr | 2/0<br>Surr |
| Dolby Stereo               | 3 3/0        | -   | -                     | 3/0         | -           | -           | -           | 3/0         | 3/0         | 3/0         | 3/0         | -           | -           | 3/0         | 3/0         |
|                            | 2/0          | -   | -                     | -           | 2/0         | 2/0         | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | 2/0         | 2/0         | -           | -           |
| Dolby Pro-Logic            | 3/1          | -   | 3/1<br>(AC-3:<br>2/0) | 3/1         | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           |
|                            | 2/1          | -   | 2/1<br>(AC-3:<br>2/0) | 2/1         | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           |
| Dolby Pro-Logic II         | 3/2          | -   | 3/2<br>(AC-3:<br>2/0) | 3/2         | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           |
|                            | 2/2          | -   | 2/2<br>(AC-3:<br>2/0) | 2/2         | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           |
| Dolby Pro-Logic IIx        | 3/4          | -   | 3/4                   | 3/4         | -           | -           | -           | -           | 3/4         | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           |
|                            | 3/3          | -   | 3/3                   | 3/3         | -           | -           | -           | -           | 3/3         | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           | -           |
| Dolby Headphone            | 2/0          | -   | 2/0                   | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         |
| Dolby Virtual              | 3/0          | -   | 3/0<br>(AC-3:<br>2/0) | 3/0         | -           | -           | -           | 3/0         | 3/0         | 3/0         | 3/0         | 3/0         | 3/0         | 3/0         | 3/0         |
|                            | 2/0          | -   | 2/0                   | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         |
| Dolby Virtual Speaker      | 2/0          | -   | 2/0                   | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         |
| Dolby Virtual Speaker Wide | 2/0          | -   | 2/0                   | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         | 2/0         |

#### 6.1.4.2.1.14 uhOutConf\_IncredProcess\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _
uhOutConf_IncredProcess_t {
    uhOutConf_IncredMono      = 0x00000001,
    uhOutConf_IncredStereo    = 0x00000002,
    uhOutConf_IncredSurround  = 0x00000004,
    uhOutConf_Incred3dSurround = 0x00000008
}
uhOutConf_IncredProcess_t, *p
uhOutConf_IncredProcess_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

##### Description

Values of this type represent Incredible processes that can be applied to audio input signals.

##### Values

Table 47

| Name                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhOutConf_IncredMono     | <p>Incredible Mono process.</p> <p>Support: for mono input signals.</p> <p>This process delivers a stereo signal, where the left channel is identical to the input signal, while the right channel contains the input signal on which a 180 degrees phase shift at 800 Hz has been performed.</p>                                                                         |
| uhOutConf_IncredStereo   | <p>This process adds a stereo-like impression on a mono signal.</p> <p>Incredible Stereo process.</p> <p>Support: for stereo input signals.</p> <p>This process delivers a widened stereo signal, immersing the listener into the screen action.</p>                                                                                                                      |
| uhOutConf_IncredSurround | <p>Incredible Surround process.</p> <p>Support: for stereo input signals.</p> <p>This process delivers a signal with a front left and a front right channel, and two phantom speakers that enlarge the stereo effect.</p> <p>This process is an enhanced Spatial effect, giving the impression that the speakers are positioned further apart than they actually are.</p> |

**Name**

uhOutConf\_Incred3dSurround

**Description**

Incredible 3D Surround process.

Support: for possibly Surround encoded stereo signals and multi-channel input signals.

When the input signal is:

- A possibly Surround encoded stereo signal, this process enhances the surround aspect. The Lt and Rt channels are converted towards a signal with a front left, a front center, a front right and a (single) surround channel. The (single) surround channel is virtualized and routed to the front left and the front right channel. An output signal with a front left, a front center and a front right channel is delivered.
- A multi-channel signal, if existing, the surround channel(s) is virtualized and routed to the front left and the front right channel. In the output signal, the front left, the front center (if originally present in the audio input signal) and the front right channel is active.

**Remarks**

Table 48 defines, per input channel configuration, for each of the Incredible processes the output configuration that is delivered, depending on the selected output configuration.

**Table 48 — Channel configuration of the output signal in case an Incredible process is applied to the input stream.**

| Process                | Input Config | 1/0 | 2/0 | 2/0<br>Surr | 2/1 | 2/2 | 3/0 | 3/1 | 3/2 | 3/3 | 3/4 | 4/2 | 4/4 | 5/2 | 5/3 |
|------------------------|--------------|-----|-----|-------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
|                        |              |     |     |             |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| Incredible Mono        | 2/0          | 2/0 | -   | -           | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
| Incredible Stereo      | 2/0          | -   | 2/0 | -           | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
| Incredible Surround    | 2/0          | -   | 2/0 | -           | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
| Incredible 3D Surround | 3/0          | -   | -   | 3/0         | -   | -   | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 | 3/0 |
|                        | 2/0          | -   | -   | -           | 2/0 | 2/0 | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |

6.1.4.2.1.15    uhOutConf\_SrsProcess\_t

Signature

```
typedef enum _
uhOutConf_SrsProcess_t {
    uhOutConf_Srs                = 0x00000001,
    uhOutConf_Srs3dMono          = 0x00000002,
    uhOutConf_Srs3dSound         = 0x00000004,
    uhOutConf_SrsHeadphone       = 0x00000008,
    uhOutConf_SrsWow              = 0x00000010,
    uhOutConf_SrsTruSurround     = 0x00000020,
    uhOutConf_SrsTruSurroundXt   = 0x00000040,
    uhOutConf_SrsTruSurroundXtHeadph = 0x00000080,
    uhOutConf_SrsCircleSurround  = 0x00000100,
    uhOutConf_SrsCircleSurround2 = 0x00000200
}
uhOutConf_SrsProcess_t, *p
uhOutConf_SrsProcess_t;
```

Qualifiers

— enum-element

Description

Values of this type represent SRS processes that can be applied to audio input signals.

Values

Table 49

| Name                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhOutConf_Srs       | SRS process.<br>Support: for stereo input signals.<br><br>This process delivers a stereo signal closer to the original intention of the artist and to a live performance.<br><br>This process restores the spatial information that is usually masked by traditional recording and playback techniques. |
| uhOutConf_Srs3dMono | SRS 3D Mono process.<br>Support: for mono input signal.<br><br>This process delivers a mono or stereo signal: the channel configuration of the signal that is delivered is compliant to the selected output configuration.<br><br>This process creates a 3D stereo effect on a mono signal.             |

| Name                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhOutConf_<br>Srs3dSound             | <p>SRS 3D Sound process.</p> <p>Support: for mono and stereo input signals.</p> <p>This process delivers a stereo signal.</p> <p>When the input signal is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— A mono signal, it is first converted into a stereo signal, by using constant phase filters. Then the stereo signal is broadened and expanded, resulting in a three-dimensional sound field that fills the listening environment.</li> <li>— A stereo signal, this process delivers a broadened and expanded stereo signal, resulting in a three-dimensional sound field that fills the listening environment.</li> </ul> |
| uhOutConf_<br>SrsHeadphone           | <p>SRS Headphone process.</p> <p>Support: for stereo and for multi-channel input signals.</p> <p>This process delivers a stereo signal where the sound is repositioned from inside the listener's head to outside the listener's ears, creating a more natural and immersive listening experience.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| uhOutConf_<br>SrsWow                 | <p>SRS Wow process.</p> <p>Support: for mono and stereo signals.</p> <p>This process produces a taller and wider soundstage with enhanced bass performance.</p> <p>When the input signal is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— A mono signal, the output signal is a mono signal;</li> <li>— A stereo signal, the output signal is a stereo signal.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| uhOutConf_<br>SrsTruSurround         | <p>SRS TruSurround process.</p> <p>Support: for stereo and for multi-channel input signals.</p> <p>This process delivers a stereo signal.</p> <p>This process delivers a full and immersive virtual surround sound experience on stereo channels.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| uhOutConf_<br>SrsTruSurroundXt       | <p>SRS TruSurround XT process.</p> <p>Support: for stereo and for multi-channel input signals.</p> <p>This process delivers a stereo signal.</p> <p>This process is based on the TruSurround technology and includes SRS Dialog clarity for improvement of dialog intelligibility, to create a 3D sound image.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| uhOutConf_<br>SrsTruSurroundXtHeadph | <p>SRS TruSurround XT Headphone process.</p> <p>Support: for stereo and for multi-channel input signals.</p> <p>This technology delivers a stereo signal.</p> <p>This process provides a surround sound listening experience over headphones.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| uhOutConf_<br>SrsCircleSurround      | <p>SRS Circle Surround process.</p> <p>Support: stereo input signal.</p> <p>This process delivers signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, a surround left, and a surround right channel. True stereo is provided on the surround channels.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |



| Name               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhOutConf_         | SRS Circle Surround II process.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| SrsCircleSurround2 | Support: for mono and stereo input signals.<br><br>This process delivers depending on the selected output channel configuration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Either a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, and stereo surround channels;</li> <li>— Either a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, a surround left, a surround center, and a right surround channel.</li> </ul> |

**Remarks**

Table 50 defines, per input channel configuration, for each of the SRS processes the output configuration that is delivered, depending on the selected output configuration.

**Table 50 — Channel configuration of the output signal in case a SRS process is applied to the input stream.**

| Process                       | Input Config | 1/0 | 2/0 | Surr |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-------------------------------|--------------|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
|                               |              |     |     | 2/0  | 2/1 | 2/2 | 3/0 | 3/1 | 3/2 | 3/3 | 3/4 | 4/2 | 4/4 | 5/2 | 5/3 |
| SRS                           | 2/0          | -   | 2/0 | -    | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
| SRS 3D Mono                   | 2/0          | -   | 2/0 | -    | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
|                               | 1/0          | -   | 1/0 | -    | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
| SRS 3D Sound                  | 2/0          | 2/0 | 2/0 | -    | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
| SRS Headphone                 | 2/0          | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0  | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 |
| SRS Wow                       | 2/0          | -   | 2/0 | -    | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
|                               | 1/0          | 1/0 | -   | -    | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
| SRS Tru Surround              | 2/0          | -   | 2/0 | 2/0  | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 |
| SRS Tru Surround XT           | 2/0          | -   | 2/0 | 2/0  | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 |
| SRS Tru Surround XT Headphone | 2/0          | -   | 2/0 | 2/0  | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/0 |
| SRS Surround                  | Circle 3/2   | -   | 3/2 | 3/2  | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
| SRS Surround II               | Circle 3/3   | 3/3 | 3/3 | 3/3  | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
|                               | 3/2          | 3/2 | 3/2 | 3/2  | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |

6.1.4.2.1.16    uhOutConf\_DtsProcess\_t

Signature

```
typedef enum _
uhOutConf_DtsProcess_t {
    uhOutConf_DtsNeo6          = 0x00000001,
    uhOutConf_DtsNeo6Music     = 0x00000002,
    uhOutConf_DtsSurroundEs    = 0x00000004
}
uhOutConf_DtsProcess_t, *p
uhOutConf_DtsProcess_t;
```

Qualifiers

— enum-element

Description

Values of this type represent DTS processes that can be applied to audio input signals.

Values

Table 51

| Name                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhOutConf_DtsNeo6      | DTS NEO:6 process.<br><br>Support: for stereo input signals (plain and Surround encoded) and for input signals with three front channels and two surround channels.<br><br>This process delivers depending on the selected output configuration:<br>— Either a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, and stereo surround channels;<br><br>— Either a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, a rear center and stereo surround channels.                                                                       |
| uhOutConf_DtsNeo6Music | DTS NEO:6 process, Music mode.<br><br>Support: for plain stereo input signals.<br><br>With this mode the subtlety and integrity of the original stereo recording is not diminished as it can be with the usual uhOutConf_DtsNeo6 process.<br><br>This process delivers depending on the selected output configuration:<br>— Either a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, and stereo surround channels;<br><br>— Either a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, a rear center and stereo surround channels. |

**Name**

uhOutConf\_DtsSurroundEs

**Description**

DTS Surround ES process.

Support for input signals with three front channels and two surround channels.

This process delivers depending on the selected output configuration:

- Either a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, and stereo surround channels;
- Either a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, a rear center and stereo surround channels.

**Remarks**

Table 52 defines, per input channel configuration, for each of the DTS processes the output configuration that is delivered, depending on the selected output configuration.

**Table 52 — Channel configuration of the output signal in case a DTS process is applied to the input stream.**

| Process              | Input Config  | 1/0  | 2/0 | 2/0 | 2/1 | 2/2 | 3/0 | 3/1 | 3/2 | 3/3 | 3/4 | 4/2 | 4/4 | 5/2 | 5/3 |
|----------------------|---------------|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
|                      | Output Config | Surr |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| DTS Neo:6            | 3/3           | -    | 3/3 | 3/3 | -   | -   | -   | -   | 3/3 | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
|                      | 3/2           | -    | 3/2 | 3/2 | -   | -   | -   | -   | 3/2 | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
| DTS Neo:6 Music Mode | 3/3           | -    | 3/3 | 3/3 | -   | -   | -   | -   | 3/3 | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
|                      | 3/2           | -    | 3/2 | 3/2 | -   | -   | -   | -   | 3/2 | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
| DTS Surround Es      | 3/3           | -    | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | 3/3 | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |
|                      | 3/2           | -    | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | 3/2 | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -   |

#### 6.1.4.2.1.17 uhOutConf\_ProcessNone

**Signature**

```
const UInt32 uhOutConf_ProcessNone = 0x80000000;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines that no processing will be applied to the audio input signal. The input signal is passed on unchanged.

**Remarks**

This value is only to be used in combination with the value `uhOutConf_StdNone_t` of the type `uhOutConf_Standard_t` to indicate that no processing is to be applied.

## 6.1.4.2.2 Model Types & Constants

### 6.1.4.2.2.1 InOutProcesses

#### Signature

```
typedef struct _InOutProcesses{
    uhOutConf_ProcessSet_t basicProcesses;
    uhOutConf_ProcessSet_t dolbyProcesses;
    uhOutConf_ProcessSet_t incredProcesses;
    uhOutConf_ProcessSet_t srsProcesses;
    uhOutConf_ProcessSet_t dtsProcesses;
} InOutProcesses, *pInOutProcesses;
```

#### Qualifiers

None.

#### Description

Defines for a specific input channel configuration the set of processes that are supported, for each existing Standard, to obtain a specific output channel configuration.

#### Fields

Table 53

| Name            | Description                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| basicProcesses  | The set of basic processes that are supported for a specific input channel configuration to obtain a specific output channel configuration.      |
| dolbyProcesses  | The set of Dolby processes that are supported for a specific input channel configuration to obtain a specific output channel configuration.      |
| incredProcesses | The set of Incredible processes that are supported for a specific input channel configuration to obtain a specific output channel configuration. |
| srsProcesses    | The set of SRS processes that are supported for a specific input channel configuration to obtain a specific output channel configuration.        |
| dtsProcesses    | The set of DTS processes that are supported for a specific input channel configuration to obtain a specific output channel configuration.        |

#### Constraints

None.

### 6.1.4.2.2.2 InputProcesses

#### Signature

```
typedef struct _InputProcesses{
    UInt32                nrOutputConfigs;
    uhOutConf_Config_t    pOutputConfigs;
    p
    uhOutConf_StandardSet_t pStandards;
    pInOutProcesses        pProcesses;
} InputProcesses, *pInputProcesses;
```

#### Qualifiers

None.

**Description**

Defines a structure to be used for each supported channel configuration of audio input signals: it contains the output configurations that are supported and that can be obtained, as well as the sets of processes and the associated Standards that can be applied in order to obtain each of these output configurations.

**Fields****Table 54**

| <b>Name</b>     | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| nrOutputConfigs | The number of different output configurations that can be obtained from audio input signals with a specific input channel configuration.                                  |
| pOutputConfigs  | Array containing the output configurations that are supported and that can be obtained from audio input signals with a specific input channel configuration.              |
| pStandards      | Array containing for each output configuration that can be obtained, the set of Standards for which at least one process can be used to obtain this output configuration. |
| pProcesses      | Array containing for each output configuration that can be obtained, the sets of processes that can be used in order to obtain this output configuration.                 |

**Constraints**

None.

**6.1.4.2.2.3 EffectRange****Signature**

```
typedef struct {
    UInt32 min;
    UInt32 max;
} EffectRange;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the possible range for the effect amount that can be used when a specific process is applied.

**Fields****Table 55**

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Description</b>                                                             |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| min         | The minimum effect amount that can be used when a specific process is applied. |
| max         | The maximum effect amount that can be used when a specific process is applied. |

**Constraints**

None.

6.1.4.3 Logical Component

6.1.4.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 14 depicts the interface-role model of the Output Configuration Logical Component. It shows the interfaces and the roles involved with this component.

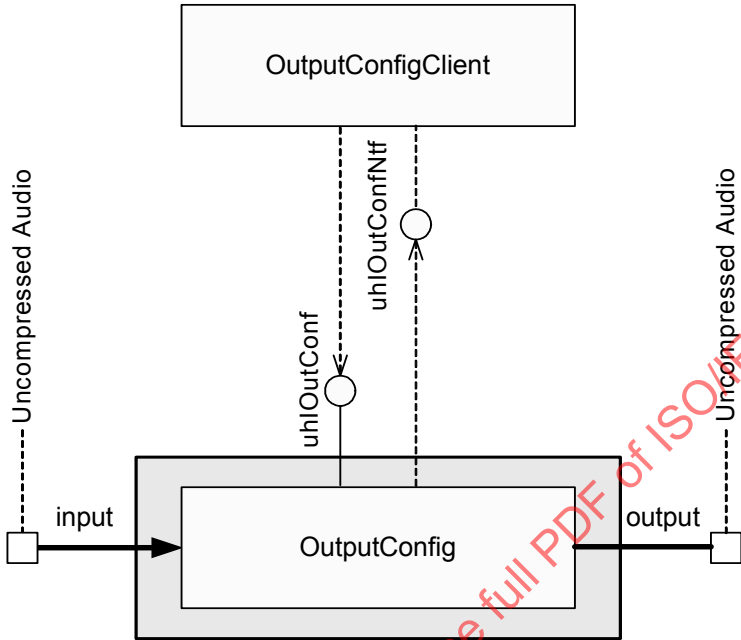


Figure 14 — Interface Role Model

The grey box in Figure 14 denotes an Output Configuration logical component containing a single OutputConfig role.

This role provides one mandatory (solid line) control interface (uhIOutConf).

The uhIOutConf interface provides functionality to control the Standard and the process to be used for each of the supported channel configurations of the audio input stream, as well as functionality to select the channel configuration to be obtained for the audio output stream.

A client can optionally provide a call-back interface, uhIOutConfNtf. This allows the client to receive notifications of events in the OutputConfig.

6.1.4.3.2 Diversity

6.1.4.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 56

| Role               | Interface     | Presence  |
|--------------------|---------------|-----------|
| OutputConfig       | uhIOutConf    | mandatory |
| OutputConfigClient | uhIOutConfNtf | optional  |

### 6.1.4.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 57

| Role         | Attribute          |
|--------------|--------------------|
| OutputConfig | nrSuppInputConfigs |
|              | suppInputConfigs   |
|              | inputProcesses     |
|              | basicEffectRange   |
|              | dolbyEffectRange   |
|              | incredEffectRange  |
|              | srsEffectRange     |
|              | dtseffectRange     |

### 6.1.4.3.2.3 Constraints

```

— nrSuppInputConfigs ≥ 1
— For each i in {0 .. nrSuppInputConfigs-1}
  — !(suppInputConfigs[i] & uhOutConf_ConfigInvalid)
  — !(suppInputConfigs[i] & uhOutConf_ConfigUnknown)
  — inputProcesses[i].nrOutputConfigs ≥ 1
  — suppInputConfigs[i] in inputProcesses[i].pOutputConfigs[]
  — For each j in {0 .. inputProcesses[i].nrOutputConfigs-1}
    — !(inputProcesses[i].pOutputConfigs[j] & uhOutConf_ConfigInvalid)
    — !(inputProcesses[i].pOutputConfigs[j] & uhOutConf_ConfigUnknown)
    — (inputProcesses[i].pStandards[j] & uhOutConf_StdNone) ==
      uhOutConf_StdNone
    — If (inputProcesses[i].pStandards[j] & uhOutConf_StdBasic) ==
      uhOutConf_StdBasic
      — inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].basicProcesses !=
        uhOutConf_ProcessNone
    — else
      — inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].basicProcesses ==
        uhOutConf_ProcessNone
    — If (inputProcesses[i].pStandards[j] & uhOutConf_StdDolby) ==
      uhOutConf_StdDolby
      — inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].dolbyProcesses !=
        uhOutConf_ProcessNone
    — else
      — inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].dolbyProcesses ==
        uhOutConf_ProcessNone
    — If (inputProcesses[i].pStandards[j] & uhOutConf_StdIncred) ==
      uhOutConf_StdIncred
      — inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].incredProcesses !=
        uhOutConf_ProcessNone
    — else
      — inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].incredProcesses ==
        uhOutConf_ProcessNone
    — If (inputProcesses[i].pStandards[j] & uhOutConf_StdSrs) ==
      uhOutConf_StdSrs
      — inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].srsProcesses !=
        uhOutConf_ProcessNone

```

```

— else
—   inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].srsProcesses ==
—     uhOutConf_ProcessNone
— If (inputProcesses[i].pStandards[j] & uhOutConf_StdDts) ==
—   uhOutConf_StdDts
—   inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].dtsProcesses !=
—     uhOutConf_ProcessNone
— else
—   inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].dtsProcesses ==
—     uhOutConf_ProcessNone
— For each p in uhOutConf_BasicProcess_t
—   basicEffectRange[p].min ≤ basicEffectRange[p].max
— For each p in uhOutConf_DolbyProcess_t
—   dolbyEffectRange[p].min ≤ dolbyEffectRange[p].max
— For each p in
—   uhOutConf_IncredProcess_t
—   incredEffectRange[p].min ≤ incredEffectRange[p].max
— For each p in
—   uhOutConf_SrsProcess_t
—   srsEffectRange[p].min ≤ srsEffectRange[p].max
— For each p in
—   uhOutConf_DtsProcess_t
—   dtsEffectRange[p].min ≤ dtsEffectRange[p].max

```

### 6.1.4.3.3 Instantiation

#### 6.1.4.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 58**

| Type         | Object  | Multiplicity |
|--------------|---------|--------------|
| OutputConfig | outconf | 1            |

#### 6.1.4.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

```

— For each j in {0 .. outconf.nrSuppInputConfigs-1}
—   outconf.prefOutputConfig[j] == outconf.supInputConfigs[j]
—   outconf.prefStandard[j] == uhOutConf_StdNone
—   outconf.prefProcess[j] == uhOutConf_ProcessNone
—   outconf.prefEffect[j] == 0
— outconf.currentInputConfig == uhOutConf_ConfigInvalid
— outconf.currentOutputConfig == uhOutConf_ConfigInvalid
— outconf.currentStatus == uhOutConf_ValStatInvalid
— outconf.currentStandard == uhOutConf_StdNone
— outconf.currentProcess == uhOutConf_ProcessNone
— outconf.currentEffect == 0

```



#### 6.1.4.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

#### 6.1.4.4 Roles

##### 6.1.4.4.1 OutputConfig

###### Signature

```

role OutputConfig {
    const UInt32                nrSuppInputConfigs;
    const uhOutConf_Config_t    suppInputConfigs[nrSuppInputConfigs];
    const InputProcesses        inputProcesses[nrSuppInputConfigs];
    const EffectRange           basicEffectRange[uhOutConf_BasicProcess_t];
    const EffectRange           dolbyEffectRange[uhOutConf_DolbyProcess_t];
    const EffectRange           incaredEffectRange[
uhOutConf_IncredProcess_t];
    const EffectRange           srsEffectRange[
uhOutConf_SrsProcess_t];
    const EffectRange           dtsEffectRange[
uhOutConf_DtsProcess_t];
    uhOutConf_Config_t          prefOutputConfig[nrSuppInputConfigs];
    uhOutConf_Standard_t        prefStandard[nrSuppInputConfigs];
    uhOutConf_Process_t         prefProcess[nrSuppInputConfigs];
    UInt32                      prefEffect[nrSuppInputConfigs];
    uhOutConf_Config_t          currentInputConfig;
    uhOutConf_Config_t          currentOutputConfig;
    uhOutConf_ValStat_t         currentStatus;
    uhOutConf_Standard_t        currentStandard;
    uhOutConf_Process_t         currentProcess;
    UInt32                      currentEffect;
}

```

###### Qualifiers

— root

###### Description

An `OutputConfig` configures the front and rear channels present in its output stream. An `OutputConfig` provides functionality to the client(s) to select the Standard to be used and the process to apply to the audio input signal for each channel configuration of its audio input stream, as well as functionality to select the channel configuration to be obtained for the output stream.

An `OutputConfig` provides notifications of changes in the channel configuration of its audio output stream, as well as notifications of changes in the actual process applied to the audio input stream, and in the actual Standard associated with the process applied.

###### Independent Attributes

Table 59

| Name                            | Description                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>nrSuppInputConfigs</code> | The number of input channel configurations that are supported by the <code>OutputConfig</code> . |

| Name                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| suppInputConfigs    | Array containing the input channel configurations supported by the <code>OutputConfig</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| inputProcesses      | Array containing for each supported input channel configuration the set of output configurations that can be obtained with audio input signals with this channel configuration, the sets of processes and associated Standards that can be used to obtain output streams with these channel configurations. The elements at index $x$ of this array correspond to the input channel configuration in the array <code>suppInputConfigs</code> at index $x$ . |
| basicEffectRange    | Array containing for each basic process the minimum and the maximum effect amount that can be applied. At the minimum effect amount the processing may still be active, the signal is not necessarily passed on unchanged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| dolbyEffectRange    | Array containing for each Dolby process the minimum and the maximum effect amount that can be applied. At the minimum effect amount the processing may still be active, the signal is not necessarily passed on unchanged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| incredEffectRange   | Array containing for each Incredible process the minimum and the maximum effect amount that can be applied. At the minimum effect amount the processing may still be active, the signal is not necessarily passed on unchanged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| srsEffectRange      | Array containing for each SRS process the minimum and the maximum effect amount that can be applied. At the minimum effect amount the processing may still be active, the signal is not necessarily passed on unchanged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| dtsEffectRange      | Array containing for each DTS process the minimum and the maximum effect amount that can be applied. At the minimum effect amount the processing may still be active, the signal is not necessarily passed on unchanged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| prefOutputConfig    | Array containing for each supported input channel configuration the preferred channel configuration of the output stream of the <code>OutputConfig</code> . An element at index $x$ of this array is the preferred output channel configuration for the input channel configuration in the array <code>suppInputConfigs</code> at index $x$ .                                                                                                               |
| prefStandard        | Array containing for each supported input channel configuration the Standard that should be used whenever an audio signal with this channel configuration is present. An element at index $x$ of this array is the preferred Standard for the input channel configuration in the array <code>suppInputConfigs</code> at index $x$ .                                                                                                                         |
| prefProcess         | Array containing for each supported input channel configuration the process that should be applied whenever an audio signal with this channel configuration is present. An element at index $x$ of this array is the preferred Process for the input channel configuration in the array <code>suppInputConfigs</code> at index $x$ .                                                                                                                        |
| prefEffect          | Array containing for each supported input channel configuration the effect amount of the preferred process that should be applied whenever an audio signal with this channel configuration is present. An element at index $x$ of this array is the preferred effect amount for the input channel configuration in the array <code>suppInputConfigs</code> at index $x$ .                                                                                   |
| currentInputConfig  | The current channel configuration of the audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| currentOutputConfig | The current channel configuration of the audio output stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| currentStatus       | Validity state of the information over the current Standard used ( <code>currentStandard</code> ), over the current process applied ( <code>currentProcess</code> ) and over the amount of effect used ( <code>currentEffect</code> ).                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| currentStandard     | The Standard to which the current process <code>currentProcess</code> belongs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| currentProcess      | The current process applied to the audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| currentEffect       | The current amount of effect used for the current process <code>currentProcess</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

**Dependent Attributes**

None.

**Invariants**

```

— currentInputConfig in {suppInputConfigs[] | uhOutConf_ConfigInvalid |
  uhOutConf_ConfigUnknown}
— If currentInputConfig == uhOutConf_ConfigInvalid
  — currentOutputConfig == uhOutConf_ConfigInvalid
  — currentStatus == uhOutConf_ValStatInvalid
— If currentInputConfig == uhOutConf_ConfigUnknown
  — currentOutputConfig == uhOutConf_ConfigUnknown
  — currentStatus == uhOutConf_ValStatUnknown
— For each i in {0 .. nrSuppInputConfigs-1}
  — prefOutputConfig[i] in inputProcesses[i].pOutputConfigs[]
  — Let j be the index of prefOutputConfig[i] in inputProcesses[i].pOutputConfigs[]
  — (prefStandard[i] & inputProcesses[i].pStandards[j]) == prefStandard[i]
  — If (prefStandard[i] == uhOutConf_StdBasic)
    — (prefProcess[i] & inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].basicProcesses) ==
      prefProcess[i]
    — basicEffectRange[prefProcess[i]].min ≤ prefEffect[i] ≤
      basicEffectRange[prefProcess[i]].max
    else if (prefStandard[i] == uhOutConf_StdDolby)
    — (prefProcess[i] & inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].dolbyProcesses) ==
      prefProcess[i]
    — dolbyEffectRange[prefProcess[i]].min ≤ prefEffect[i] ≤
      dolbyEffectRange[prefProcess[i]].max
    else if (prefStandard[i] == uhOutConf_StdIncred)
    — (prefProcess[i] & inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].incredProcesses) ==
      prefProcess[i]
    — incredEffectRange[prefProcess[i]].min ≤ prefEffect[i] ≤
      incredEffectRange[prefProcess[i]].max
    else if (prefStandard[i] == uhOutConf_StdSrs)
    — (prefProcess[i] & inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].srsProcesses) ==
      prefProcess[i]
    — srsEffectRange[prefProcess[i]].min ≤ prefEffect[i] ≤
      srsEffectRange[prefProcess[i]].max
    else if (prefStandard[i] == uhOutConf_StdDts)
    — (prefProcess[i] & inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].dtsProcesses) ==
      prefProcess[i]
    — dtsEffectRange[prefProcess[i]].min ≤ prefEffect[i] ≤
      dtsEffectRange[prefProcess[i]].max
    else if (prefStandard[i] == uhOutConf_StdNone)
    — prefProcess[i] == uhOutConf_ProcessNone
    — prefEffect[i] == 0

```

**Instantiation**

An `OutputConfig` is always instantiated as part of an `Output Configuration`; see subclause 6.1.4.3.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

The `OutputConfig` processes the audio input stream according to `currentProcess` which is the process set in `prefProcess[currentInputConfig]`, this process belongs to the `currentStandard` `Standard`, which is the `Standard` set in `prefStandard[currentInputConfig]`, with `currentInputConfig` being the current channel configuration of the audio input signal.

After processing, the `OutputConfig` streams out the audio signal. The channel configuration of the audio output stream is according to the channel configuration in `currentOutputConfig`, which is identical to the channel configuration set in `prefOutputConfig[currentInputConfig]` (except in some few cases, e.g.

when applying some of the Dolby processed on an input signal that was previously encoded according to the AC-3 standard; see Table 46 for details).

#### Active Behavior

The `OutputConfig` has standard notification behavior (see `uhIOutConfNtf`).

#### Execution Constraints

None.

#### 6.1.4.4.2 OutputConfigClient

##### Signature

**role** `OutputConfigClient` {}

##### Qualifiers

— actor

##### Description

An Output Configuration Client represents a user of the `uhIOutConf` interface.

#### Execution Constraints

None.

#### 6.1.4.5 Interfaces

##### 6.1.4.5.1 uhIOutConf

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This interface of an `OutputConfig` provides functionality to configure the process and the associated Standard that should be used for each supported channel configuration of the audio input stream, as well as functionality to configure the output configuration that should be obtained, functionality to query the current channel configuration of the input and output streams and the current process in use. This interface also provides a subscription and unsubscription function on notifications of changes in the channel configuration of the output stream and changes in the process and associated Standard used.

##### Interface ID

`uuid( 7C97D8F9-4060-4864-93A7-6CFF73C3F968 )`

6.1.4.5.1.1      **Subscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (  
    [in] uhIOOutConfNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhOutConf_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

6.1.4.5.1.2      **Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhIOOutConfNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhOutConf_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

6.1.4.5.1.3      **GetSuppInputConfigs**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppInputConfigs (  
    [out] puhOutConf_ConfigSet_t pInputConfigs );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the set of input channel configurations that are supported by the OutputConfig.

**Parameters**

**Table 60**

| Name          | Description                                                                                                |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pInputConfigs | Output parameter returning the set of input channel configurations that are supported by the OutputConfig. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

inputConfigs = 0

For each *i* in {0 .. outconf.nrSuppInputConfigs -1}inputConfigs = ( inputConfigs | outconf.suppInputConfigs[*i*] )

\*pInputConfigs == inputConfigs

**6.1.4.5.1.4 GetSuppOutputConfigs****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppOutputConfigs (
    [in] uhOutConf_Config_t inputConfig,
    [out] puhOutConf_ConfigSet_t pOutputConfigs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns for the specified input channel configuration the set of output channel configurations that are supported and that can be obtained with an audio input stream with this channel configuration.

**Parameters****Table 61**

| Name           | Description                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| inputConfig    | The input channel configuration for which the set of output channel configurations that are supported and that can be obtained is requested.                            |
| pOutputConfigs | Output parameter returning for the input channel configuration <i>inputConfig</i> the set of output channel configurations that are supported and that can be obtained. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

inputConfig in outconf.suppInputConfigs[]

Let *i* be the index of inputConfig in outconf.suppInputConfigs[]**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— outputConfigs = 0

```

For each j in {0 .. outconf.inputProcesses[i].nrOutputConfigs -1}
— outputConfigs = ( outputConfigs |
  outconf.inputProcesses[i].pOutputConfigs[j] )
*pOutputConfigs == outputConfigs

```

#### 6.1.4.5.1.5 GetSuppStandards

##### Signature

```

uhErrorCode_t GetSuppStandards (
  [in] uhOutConf_Config_t inputConfig,
  [in] uhOutConf_Config_t outputConfig,
  [out] p
uhOutConf_StandardSet_t pStandards );

```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

Returns the set of Standards that are supported by the `OutputConfig` for the specified input channel configuration and that can be used with an audio input stream with this input channel configuration to obtain an audio output stream with the specified output channel configuration.

##### Parameters

**Table 62**

| Name                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>inputConfig</code>  | The input channel configuration for which the set of Standards that are supported by the <code>OutputConfig</code> , and that can be used to obtain an audio output stream with the output channel configuration <code>outputConfig</code> , is requested.                                                                                                |
| <code>outputConfig</code> | The output channel configuration that should be obtained with audio input streams with the input channel configuration <code>inputConfig</code> and for which the set of Standards that are supported by the <code>OutputConfig</code> and that can be used is requested.                                                                                 |
| <code>pStandards</code>   | Output parameter returning the set of Standards that are supported by the <code>OutputConfig</code> for the input channel configuration <code>inputConfig</code> and that can be used with an audio input stream with this input channel configuration to obtain an audio output stream with the output channel configuration <code>outputConfig</code> . |

##### Return Values

Standard

##### Precondition

- `inputConfig` in `outconf.supInputConfigs[]`
- Let `i` be the index of `inputConfig` in `outconf.supInputConfigs[]`
- `outputConfig` in `outconf.inputProcesses[i].pOutputConfigs[]`
- Let `j` be the index of `outputConfig` in `outconf.inputProcesses[i].pOutputConfigs[]`

##### Action

None.

**Postcondition**

```
*pStandards == outconf.inputProcesses[i].pStandards[j]
```

**6.1.4.5.1.6 GetSuppProcesses****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppProcesses (
    [in] uhOutConf_Config_t inputConfig,
    [in] uhOutConf_Config_t outputConfig,
    [in] uhOutConf_Standard_t standard,
    [out] puhOutConf_ProcessSet_t pProcesses );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the set of processes of the specified Standard that are supported by the `OutputConfig` for the specified input channel configuration and that can be used with an audio input stream with this input channel configuration to obtain an audio output stream with the specified output channel configuration.

**Parameters****Table 63**

| Name                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>inputConfig</code>  | The input channel configuration for which the set of processes, of the Standard <code>standard</code> , that are supported by the <code>OutputConfig</code> and that can be used to obtain an audio output stream with the output channel configuration <code>outputConfig</code> , is requested.                                                                                                  |
| <code>outputConfig</code> | The output channel configuration that should be obtained with audio input streams with the input channel configuration <code>inputConfig</code> and for which the set of processes, of the Standard <code>standard</code> , that are supported by the <code>OutputConfig</code> and that can be used, is requested.                                                                                |
| <code>standard</code>     | The Standard for which the set of processes that are supported by the <code>OutputConfig</code> for the input channel configuration <code>inputConfig</code> and that can be used with an audio input stream with this input channel configuration to obtain an audio output stream with the output channel configuration <code>outputConfig</code> , is requested.                                |
| <code>pProcesses</code>   | Output parameter returning the set of processes, of the Standard <code>standard</code> , that are supported by the <code>OutputConfig</code> for the input channel configuration <code>inputConfig</code> and that can be used with an audio input stream with this input channel configuration to obtain an audio output stream with the output channel configuration <code>outputConfig</code> . |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

- `inputConfig` in `outconf.supInputConfigs[]`
- Let `i` be the index of `inputConfig` in `outconf.supInputConfigs[]`
- `outputConfig` in `outconf.inputProcesses[i].pOutputConfigs[]`
- Let `j` be the index of `outputConfig` in `outconf.inputProcesses[i].pOutputConfigs[]`
- `standard != uhOutConf_StdNone`
- `(standard & outconf.inputProcesses[i].pStandards[j]) == standard`



**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```

— If (standard == uhOutConf_StdBasic)
  — *pProcesses == outconf.inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].basicProcesses
  else if (standard == uhOutConf_StdDolby)
  — *pProcesses == outconf.inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].dolbyProcesses
  else if (standard == uhOutConf_StdIncred)
  — *pProcesses == outconf.inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].incredProcesses
  else if (standard == uhOutConf_StdSrs)
  — *pProcesses == outconf.inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].srsProcesses
  else if (standard == uhOutConf_StdDts)
  — *pProcesses == outconf.inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].dtsProcesses

```

**6.1.4.5.1.7 GetEffectRange****Signature**

```

uhErrorCode_t GetEffectRange (
    [in] uhOutConf_Standard_t standard,
    [in] uhOutConf_Process_t process,
    [out] pUInt32 pMinEffect,
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxEffect );

```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the minimum and maximum effect amount for the specified process.

**Parameters****Table 64**

| Name       | Description                                                                     |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| standard   | The Standard to which the process <code>process</code> belongs.                 |
| process    | The process for which the range of effect amount that can be used is requested. |
| pMinEffect | The minimum effect amount for the basic process <code>process</code> .          |
| pMaxEffect | The maximum effect amount for the basic process <code>process</code> .          |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

- standard != uhOutConf\_StdNone
- process != uhOutConf\_ProcessNone

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```

— If (standard == uhOutConf_StdBasic)
—   *pMinEffect == outconf.basicEffectRange[process].min
—   *pMaxEffect == outconf.basicEffectRange[process].max
else if (standard == uhOutConf_StdDolby)
—   *pMinEffect == outconf.dolbyEffectRange[process].min
—   *pMaxEffect == outconf.dolbyEffectRange[process].max
else if (standard == uhOutConf_StdIncred)
—   *pMinEffect == outconf.incredEffectRange[process].min
—   *pMaxEffect == outconf.incredEffectRange[process].max
else if (standard == uhOutConf_StdSrs)
—   *pMinEffect == outconf.srsEffectRange[process].min
—   *pMaxEffect == outconf.srsEffectRange[process].max
else if (standard == uhOutConf_StdDts)
—   *pMinEffect == outconf.dtsEffectRange[process].min
—   *pMaxEffect == outconf.dtsEffectRange[process].max

```

**6.1.4.5.1.8 SetProcess****Signature**

```

uhErrorCode_t SetProcess (
    [in] uhOutConf_Config_t inputConfig,
    [in] uhOutConf_Config_t outputConfig,
    [in] uhOutConf_Standard_t standard,
    [in] uhOutConf_Process_t process,
    [in] UInt32 effect );

```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the process and the associated Standard that should be used whenever an audio signal with the specified channel configuration is present, in order to obtain an output stream with the specified channel configuration.

**Parameters****Table 65**

| Name         | Description                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| inputConfig  | The input channel configuration for which the process that should be used is set.                                                                                                         |
| outputConfig | The output channel configuration that should be obtained when the process <code>process</code> is used with audio input signals with the channel configuration <code>inputConfig</code> . |
| standard     | The Standard to which the process <code>process</code> belongs.                                                                                                                           |
| process      | The process that should be used whenever an audio input signal with the specified channel configuration <code>inputConfig</code> is present.                                              |

| Name   | Description                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| effect | The amount of effect to be used for the process <code>process</code> whenever an audio input signal with the specified channel configuration <code>inputConfig</code> is present. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

```

— inputConfig in outconf.supInputConfigs[]
— Let i be the index of inputConfig in outconf.supInputConfigs[]
— outputConfig in outconf.inputProcesses[i].pOutputConfigs[]
— Let j be the index of outputConfig in outconf.inputProcesses[i].pOutputConfigs[]
— (standard & outconf.inputProcesses[i].pStandards[j]) == standard
— If (standard == uhOutConf_StdNone)
  — outputConfig == inputConfig
  — process == uhOutConf_ProcessNone
  — effect == 0
  else if (standard == uhOutConf_StdBasic)
  — (process & outconf.inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].basicProcesses) == process
  — outconf.basicEffectRange[process].min ≤ effect ≤
    outconf.basicEffectRange[process].max
  else if (standard == uhOutConf_StdDolby)
  — (process & outconf.inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].dolbyProcesses) ==
    process
  — outconf.dolbyEffectRange[process].min ≤ effect ≤
    outconf.dolbyEffectRange[process].max
  else if (standard == uhOutConf_StdIncred)
  — (process & outconf.inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].incredProcesses) ==
    process
  — outconf.incredEffectRange[process].min ≤ effect ≤
    outconf.incredEffectRange[process].max
  else if (standard == uhOutConf_StdSrs)
  — (process & outconf.inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].srsProcesses) ==
    process
  — outconf.srsEffectRange[process].min ≤ effect ≤
    outconf.srsEffectRange[process].max
  else if (standard == uhOutConf_StdDts)
  — (process & outconf.inputProcesses[i].pProcesses[j].dtsProcesses) ==
    process
  — outconf.dtsEffectRange[process].min ≤ effect ≤
    outconf.dtsEffectRange[process].max

```

**Action**

```

— Modify outconf.prefOutputConfig[i]
— Modify outconf.prefStandard[i]
— Modify outconf.prefProcess[i]
— Modify outconf.prefEffect[i]

```

**Postcondition**

```

— outconf.prefOutputConfig[i] == outputConfig
— outconf.prefStandard[i] == standard
— outconf.prefProcess[i] == process
— outconf.prefEffect[i] == effect

```

## 6.1.4.5.1.9 GetProcess

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetProcess (
    [in] uhOutConf_Config_t inputConfig,
    [out] puhOutConf_Config_t pOutputConfig,
    [out] puhOutConf_Standard_t pStandard,
    [out] puhOutConf_Process_t pProcess,
    [out] pUInt32 pEffect );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the process and the associated Standard that should be used whenever an audio signal with the specified channel configuration is present. Also returns the output channel configuration that should be obtained when applying this process.

**Parameters**

Table 66

| Name          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| inputConfig   | The input channel configuration for which the process that should be used is requested.                                                                                                     |
| pOutputConfig | Output parameter returning the output channel configuration that should be obtained when the process *pProcess is used with audio input signals with the channel configuration inputConfig. |
| pStandard     | Output parameter returning the standard to which the process *pProcess belongs.                                                                                                             |
| pProcess      | Output parameter returning the process that should be used whenever an audio input signal with the specified channel configuration inputConfig is present.                                  |
| pEffect       | Output parameter returning the amount of effect to be used for the process *pProcess whenever an audio input signal with the specified channel configuration inputConfig is present.        |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

- inputConfig in suppInputConfigs[]
- Let i be the index of inputConfig in outconf.supInputConfigs[]

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pOutputConfig == outconf.prefOutputConfig[i]
- \*pStandard == outconf.prefStandard[i]
- \*pProcess == outconf.prefProcess[i]
- \*pEffect == outconf.prefEffect[i]

**6.1.4.5.1.10 GetActualProcess****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualProcess (
    [out] puhOutConf_Config_t pActualInputConfig,
    [out] puhOutConf_Config_t pActualOutputConfig,
    [out] puhOutConf_ValStat_t pStatus,
    [out] puhOutConf_Standard_t pActualStandard,
    [out] puhOutConf_Process_t pActualProcess,
    [out] pUInt32 pActualEffect );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current process and the associated Standard that is applied to the audio input stream. Also returns the current channel configuration of the audio input stream as well as the current channel configuration of the audio output stream.

**Parameters****Table 67**

| Name                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pActualInputConfig  | Output parameter returning the current channel configuration of the audio input stream.                                                                                                                                    |
| pActualOutputConfig | Output parameter returning the current channel configuration of the audio output stream.                                                                                                                                   |
| pStatus             | Output parameter that indicates the validity of the information over the current Standard used (*pActualStandard), over the current process applied (*pActualProcess) and over the amount of effect used (*pActualEffect). |
| pActualStandard     | Output parameter returning the standard to which the current process *pActualProcess belongs.                                                                                                                              |
| pActualProcess      | Output parameter returning the current process that is applied to the audio input stream.                                                                                                                                  |
| pActualEffect       | Output parameter returning the current amount of effect used for the current process *pActualProcess.                                                                                                                      |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pActualInputConfig == outconf.currentInputConfig
- \*pActualOutputConfig == outconf.currentOutputConfig
- \*pStatus == outconf.currentStatus
- \*pActualStandard == outconf.currentStandard

```
— *pActualProcess == outconf.currentProcess
— *pActualEffect == outconf.currentEffect
```

#### 6.1.4.5.2 uhlOutConfNtf

##### Qualifiers

— callback

##### Description

This is the notification interface to be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that are related to changes in the channel configuration of the audio output stream and to changes in the process and the associated Standard applied to the audio input stream.

##### Interface ID

uuid( 27BE787E-6458-4227-8845-7E68F97D1421 )

#### 6.1.4.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

##### Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhOutConf_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

#### 6.1.4.5.2.2 OnActualProcessChanged

##### Signature

```
[async] Void OnActEnabledChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhOutConf_Config_t inputConfig,
    [in] uhOutConf_Config_t outputConfig,
    [in] uhOutConf_ValStat_t status,
    [in] uhOutConf_Standard_t standard,
    [in] uhOutConf_Process_t process,
    [in] UInt32 effect );
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This function is called by the `OutputConfig` whenever it detects a change in the actual process applied to the audio input stream, a change in the actual Standard associated with the process applied and/or a change in the channel configuration of the audio output stream.

**Parameters****Table 68**

| <b>Name</b>  | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie       | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                                               |
| inputConfig  | The channel configuration of the audio input stream.                                                                                                                        |
| outputConfig | The channel configuration of the audio output stream.                                                                                                                       |
| status       | Parameter that indicates the validity of the information over the Standard used (standard), over the process applied (process) and over the amount of effect used (effect). |
| standard     | The Standard to which the current process process belongs.                                                                                                                  |
| process      | The process applied to the audio input stream.                                                                                                                              |
| effect       | The amount of effect used for the current process process.                                                                                                                  |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action

**Postcondition**

True

**6.1.5 uhlPinObjects****6.1.5.1 Concepts****6.1.5.1.1 Pin Objects**

A Pin Object is an object that is related to an input or output (pin) of a logical component. It is not, as the name might suggest, an object that represents the pin itself. Since inputs and outputs are needed for connecting logical components in a platform, Pin Objects can be considered part of connection management functionality 6.1.1. Pin Objects are relevant when a logical component has multiple inputs or outputs. Clients want to control the functionality belonging to connected inputs and outputs but it will not always be straightforward for the control client to know what object is related to an input or output. Also the number of inputs and outputs may be a diversity parameter and change per connection manager use-case. Using Pin Objects is a method to give the control client access to objects related to an input or output of that logical component.

The Pin Objects interface, described in this document, provides functionality to retrieve the interface pointer belonging to a pin object. Pins of a logical component can be given a pin identifier. By means of this identifier, the interface pointer of the related pin object can be retrieved. Figure 15 shows the concept of pin objects.

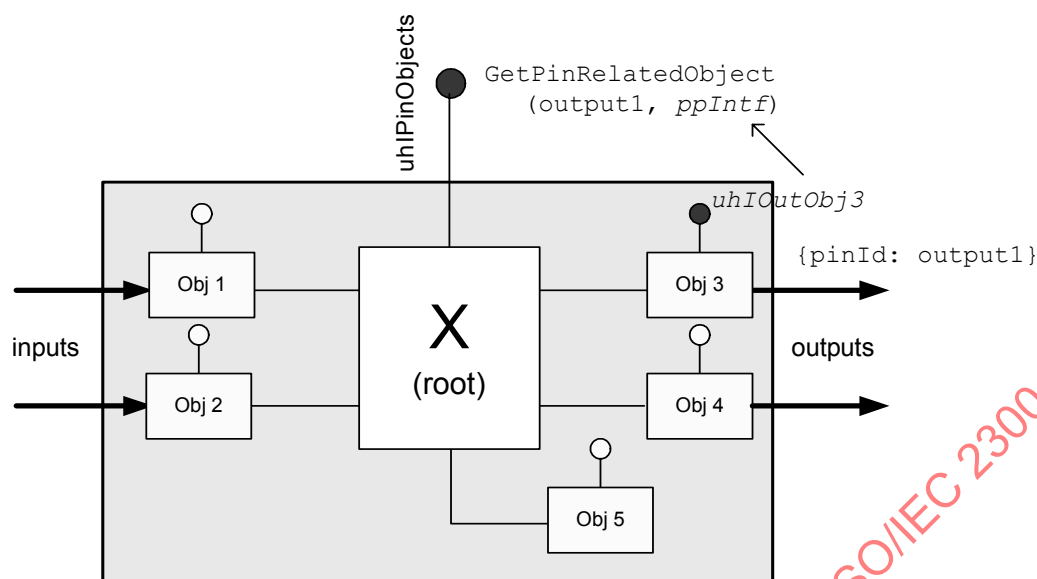


Figure 15 — Pin Objects concept

The Pin Objects interface can be provided by all logical components that have non-root objects that are related to an input or output (Obj 1 - Obj 4). In general, getting access to a non-root object has to be done via a function on an interface of the root role. This function can be placed on a component-specific interface or the generic Pin Objects interface can be specialized. In Figure 15, Obj 5 is not related to an input or output. To retrieve its interface pointer, a function has to be available on a component specific interface.

The need for pin-related objects becomes clear in case there are multiple identical objects (e.g. Obj 3 and Obj 4) that can only be identified by means of input or output pins. The association of input or output pins with objects depends on how logical components are connected within a platform instance use-case. Pin-related objects are therefore seen as part of connection management functionality and not part of the control functionality of logical components.

#### 6.1.5.1.1 Separation of Functionality

The important motivation to use a specialized Pin Objects interface instead of a component specific interface, is to separate the functionality of the logical component (control) and the connection management related functionality to get access to pin-related objects. First, connection management and component control address different functionality and their interface evolution lifetime is very likely not the same. Connection management and control should be independent of each other. Secondly, the actual configuration and the number of inputs or outputs of logical components is determined per use-case and is platform-specific. This dependency is not desirable for logical components since in general it is preferred to make interface suites for logical components platform independent.

Pin Objects also provides the means to separate concerns at the client side. Control clients that need access to the pin-related objects can request the pin objects themselves. However, it is more desirable to use a connection manager client that retrieves the pin-related objects and that passes them to the control clients. This way, control clients do not depend on connection management and the connection manager client does not depend on component specific interfaces. This approach is used for the example of subclause 6.1.5.1.2 (See Figure 16).

For these reasons a generic Pin Objects interface is used and not a specific component interface. Changes in the interface of a logical component or the Pin Objects do not influence each other.



#### 6.1.5.1.1.2 Lifetime

A pin-related object has the same lifetime as the logical component instance of which it is part. During that lifetime a pin object keeps its state. Within a connection manager use-case, the object associated with a given pin identifier remains the same.

#### 6.1.5.1.2 Usage Example

This paragraph shows how a logical component should specialize the Pin Objects Provider. As an example, a simplified interface-role model of a Digital Audio Decoder is used.

Figure 16 shows the interface-role model of the Digital Audio Decoder (DAD). The DAD has an input stream containing a number of audio channels.

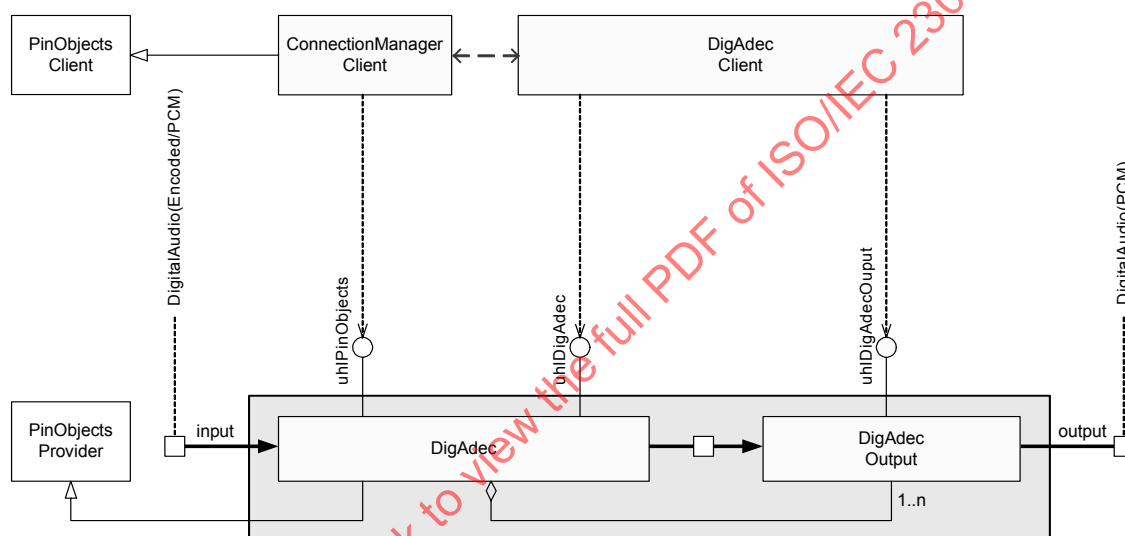


**Figure 16 — Example Interface-Role model of Digital Audio Decoder using Pin Objects.**

There are a number of outputs for passing a decoded channel (1..n). Every output pin has an associated `DigAdecOutput` object. Since these output objects are all identical, it is not clear which object belongs to a certain output pin. Therefore, a `PinObjectsProvider` role is used. By giving every output pin a unique identifier, the `ConnectionManagerClient` role can request the pin-related object interface pointer for every output pin and pass it to the `DigAdecClient` role.

It is not necessary to give the input pin an identifier since it is clear which object is associated to the input.

#### 6.1.5.1.2.1 Defining Pins

The following indented text gives an example of how to define the pin identifiers. One does not have to define a constant for every input or output. For this example, one can also define a base value and add the output number to it. Within a logical component, pin identifiers must be unique.

##### Signature

```
const UInt32 uhlDigAdec_OutputBase = 0x00000001;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

Description

Defines the constants that identify the output pins of a Digital Audio Decoder.

Constants

Table 69

| Name                 | Description                                                   |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhDigAdec_OutputBase | Identified the first output pin of the Digital Audio Decoder. |

6.1.5.1.2.2 Initializing Attributes

The document section defining the initial state of a logical component must define all valid pin identifiers and the related objects. For this, specialized attributes of the Pin Objects Provider are used (see subclause 6.1.5.4.1). The following indented paragraph gives an example. `nrOutputs` is a configurable item of the DAD and its value is defined by the platform instance document.

Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 70

| Type          | Object | Multiplicity |
|---------------|--------|--------------|
| DigAdec       | dec    | 1            |
| DigAdecOutput | output | nrOutputs    |

Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- `dec.pinIds == {uhDigAdec_OutputBase .. (uhDigAdec_OutputBase + nrOutputs -1)}`
- For each `i` in `{0 .. nrOutputs-1}`
  - `dec.pinObjects[uhDigAdec_OutputBase+i] == output[i]`

6.1.5.2 Types & Constants

6.1.5.2.1 Public Types & Constants

None.

6.1.5.2.2 Model Types & Constants

None.

6.1.5.3 Logical Component

6.1.5.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 17 depicts the interface-role model of the Pin Objects LC. It shows the roles and interfaces the Pin Objects LC and its client can have.

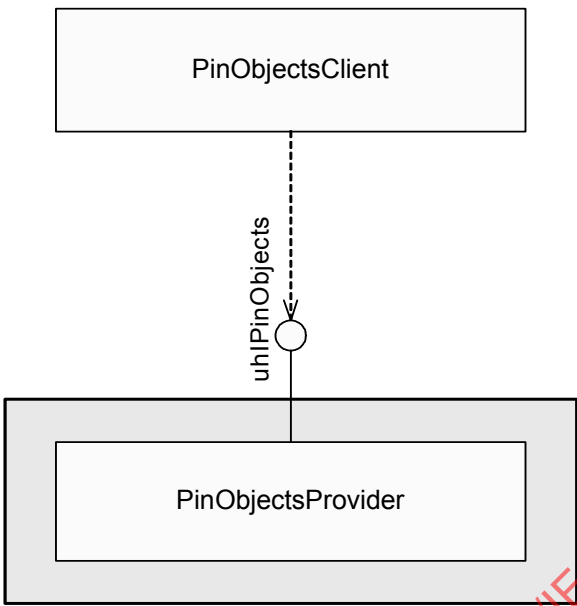


Figure 17 — Interface-Role Model of the Pin Objects provider.

The Pin Objects LC (grey box) consists of the `PinObjectsProvider` role. This role provides the interface `uhIPinObjects` to request interface pointers of objects related to input or output pins. The control interface is meant for usage by the client `PinObjectsClient`. From a design point of view, it is desirable that the `PinObjectsClient` is implemented by a control specialized for connection management, e.g. `ConnectionManagerClient` (see subclause 6.1.5.1.1.1).

6.1.5.3.2 Diversity

6.1.5.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 71

| Role                            | Interface                  | Presence  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------|
| <code>PinObjectsProvider</code> | <code>uhIPinObjects</code> | mandatory |

6.1.5.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 72

| Role                            | Attribute               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>PinObjectsProvider</code> | <code>pinIds</code>     |
|                                 | <code>pinObjects</code> |

The configurable items will be given values at instantiation of the logical component that specializes Pin Objects.

6.1.5.3.2.3 Constraints

— None.

### 6.1.5.3.3 Instantiation

#### 6.1.5.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 73**

| Type               | Object | Multiplicity |
|--------------------|--------|--------------|
| PinObjectsProvider | pinObj | 1            |

#### 6.1.5.3.3.2 Initial State

No constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance. Constraints are determined by the logical component that specializes the `PinObjectsProvider`.

#### 6.1.5.3.4 Execution Constraints

No execution constraints apply to the Pin Objects logical component. Execution constraints are determined by the logical component that specializes the `PinObjectsProvider`.

### 6.1.5.4 Roles

#### 6.1.5.4.1 PinObjectsProvider

##### Signature

```
role PinObjectsProvider {
    const setof{UInt32} pinIds;
    const Object        pinObjects[UInt32];
}
```

##### Qualifiers

— root

##### Description

The `PinObjectsProvider` provides functionality to retrieve interface pointers of pin-related objects.

##### Independent Attributes

**Table 74**

| Name   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pinIds | The set of pin identifiers that are associated with pin-related objects. Which pin identifiers are valid is defined in the suite of the logical component that specializes Pin Objects and possibly also by the platform instance document. E.g. when a logical component has a configurable number of output pins, a base identifier will be defined in the logical component specification. The platform instance document will define the number of output pins (diversity). Together this results in a valid identifier range: {baseId .. (baseId + nrOutputs -1) } |

| Name                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pinObjects</code> | The mapping from pin identifiers in the set <code>pinIds</code> to the objects associated with those pin identifiers. The logical component that specialized <code>PinObjectsProvider</code> will create these objects. |

**Dependent Attributes**

None.

**Invariants**

None.

**Instantiation**

A `PinObjectsProvider` is always instantiated as part of a Pin Objects logical component; see subclause 6.1.5.3.3. A `PinObjectsProvider` is never instantiated as a separate entity but always as part of the root role of the logical component that specializes it.

**Streaming Behavior**

None.

**Active Behavior**

None.

**6.1.5.4.2 PinObjectsClient****Signature**

```
role PinObjectsClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

— actor

**Description**

A `PinObjectsClient` represents a user of the Pin Objects provider.

**6.1.5.5 Interfaces****6.1.5.5.1 `uhfPinObjects`****Qualifiers**

— None.

**Description**

This interface provides functionality to request the interface pointer of an object associated with a logical component pin.

**Interface ID**

```
uuid( 518B12EC-BAAA-4eb7-9A65-5068B399669B )
```

**Remarks**

In the function specification below we use the name `pinObj` to refer to the instance of role `PinObjectsProvider` providing this interface; see subclause 6.1.5.3.1.

**6.1.5.5.1.1 GetPinRelatedObject****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetPinRelatedObject (
    [in] UInt32                pinId,
    [in] uhRefIid_t            riid,
    [out, iid_is(riid)] uhIUnknown **ppIntf);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the interface pointer to the object related to the pin having the given pin identifier.

**Parameters****Table 75**

| Name                | Description                                                                                   |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pinId</code>  | Identifier of the pin for which the interface pointer is requested                            |
| <code>riid</code>   | Pointer to the IID of the interface (pointer) to be returned.                                 |
| <code>ppIntf</code> | Output parameter returning the interface pointer to the object associated with the given pin. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `pinId` is an element of `pinObj.pinIds`.
- `pinObj.pinObjects[pinId]` has an interface `I` of type `*riid`

**Action**

- None.

**Postcondition**

- `*ppIntf == pointer to I`

## 6.1.6 RclUnknown / UhIUnknown

### 6.1.6.1 Concepts

#### 6.1.6.1.1 Introduction

The M3W API has been designed to be compatible with Microsoft COM [Annex B of ISO/IEC 23004-1]. This implies among other things that all run-time objects that provide a M3W API interface, referred to as “M3W objects”, also have to provide an interface that is known in COM as “IUnknown”. This interface serves three main purposes:

- It provides a function (`QueryInterface`) to navigate from one interface of an object to another using the “interface ID” (IID) of the interfaces. The IID is a globally unique identifier that can be seen as the “type” of an interface. The IIDs of the interfaces provided by an object are all different.
- It provides functions (`AddRef` and `Release`) to perform reference counting on M3W objects. The reference count of an object indicates how many references to the interfaces of the object exist. If it reaches zero, the object is no longer reachable and its resources may be freed.
- It defines the identity of an object. COM does not provide direct access to the identity of an object. The interface-based programming model of COM implies that the identity of objects has to be established by comparing interface pointers. COM allows different pointers to point to the same interface of an object *except* for the `IUnknown` interface pointer which is guaranteed to be unique. Hence two objects are identical if and only if their `IUnknown` interface pointers are identical.

The M3W equivalent of the `IUnknown` interface is called `rcIUnknown` which is also called `uhIUnknown` in the specification of the audio and video interface suites. Like `IUnknown`, this interface is “inherited” by all other UHAPI interfaces. This implies that the functions `QueryInterface`, `AddRef` and `Release` are available in *all* interfaces. In order to call these functions on an object there is no need to first navigate to the `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` interface of the object.

Note that users of M3W API interfaces, referred to as “M3W API clients”, do not necessarily have to provide the `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` interface, unless of course they also provide interfaces that are part of the M3W API such as notification interfaces.

### 6.1.6.2 Types & Constants

#### 6.1.6.2.1 Public Types & Constants

##### 6.1.6.2.1.1 Error Codes

###### Signature

```
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_UNKNOWN_NO_INTERFACE = 0x00000001;
```

###### Qualifiers

— error-codes

###### Description

This section defines the error codes specific to `uhIUnknown`.

## Constants

Table 76

| Name                        | Description                                            |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| UH_ERR_UNKNOWN_NO_INTERFACE | Indicates that a requested interface is not available. |

6.1.6.2.1.2 `uhIid_t`

## Signature

```
typedef struct _uhIid_t {
    UInt32 data1;
    UInt16 data2;
    UInt16 data3;
    UInt8 data4[8];
} uhIid_t, *puhIid_t;
```

## Qualifiers

None.

## Description

The values of `uhIid_t` represent interface IDs (IIDs), i.e. globally unique identifiers (GUIDs) that uniquely identify “interface types”.

## Constraints

— None.

## Remarks

- The above definition conforms to the COM definition of IIDs.
- In specifications values of this type are usually represented as 32-digit (128-bit) hexadecimal numbers in a format exemplified below:  
`uuid( 5697C761-5E73-11d6-9A8B-00065B6400D5 )`

6.1.6.2.1.3 `uhRefIid_t`

## Signature

```
typedef const uhIid_t* const uhRefIid_t;
typedef uhRefIid_t *puhRefIid_t;
```

## Qualifiers

None.

## Description

The values of `uhRefIid_t` represent pointers to IIDs.

## Constraints

- Each value of type `uhRefIid_t` points to a valid IID.



**Remarks**

- The above constraint implies that in-parameters of type `uhRefIid_t` in functions always point to valid IIDs. This constraint is therefore not repeated in the preconditions of these functions.
- The reason to introduce this type is that the size of IIDs is 128 bits, which makes it more efficient to pass pointers to IIDs rather than the IIDs themselves.

**6.1.6.2.2 Model Types & Constants****6.1.6.2.2.1 Interface****Signature**

```
entity Interface {
    const uhIid_t iid;
    const Object provider;
    UInt32 refCount;
}
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The entities of this type are used to model the interfaces of objects, where “interface” is meant in the sense of “interface instance”. Each interface (instance) has a unique IID which can be interpreted as the “interface type”, is provided by a unique object and has a reference count associated with it.

**Independent Attributes****Table 77**

| Name                  | Description                                        |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <code>iid</code>      | The IID of the interface.                          |
| <code>provider</code> | The object providing the interface.                |
| <code>refCount</code> | The reference count associated with the interface. |

**Constraints**

- None.

**Remarks**

- According to the COM specification [27] reference counting is done per interface rather than per object. This implies that the number of times `Release` is called on an interface may not exceed the number of times `AddRef` is called on the same interface. The reference count of an object is the sum of the reference counts of the interfaces provided by the object; see also *Appendix A*.
- The “interfaces” defined by the type `Interface` should not be confused with “interface pointers”, which are implementation entities pointing to interfaces.

6.1.6.3 Logical Component

6.1.6.3.1 Interface-Role Model

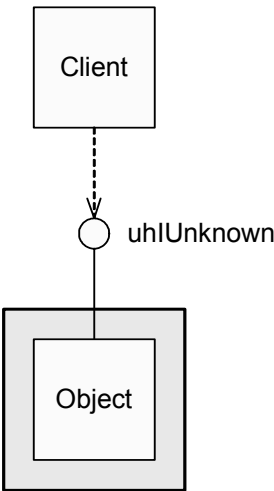


Figure 18 — Interface Role Model

The roles Object and Client in the interface-role model represent “M3W objects” (objects that provide M3W API interfaces) and “M3W API clients” (objects that use M3W API interfaces), respectively. The interface-role model expresses that each M3W object should provide the `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` interface and each M3W API client is allowed to use it.

6.1.6.3.2 Diversity

6.1.6.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 78

| Role   | Interface                                         | Presence  |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Object | <code>rcIUnknown</code> / <code>uhIUnknown</code> | mandatory |

6.1.6.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 79

| Role   | Attribute           |
|--------|---------------------|
| Object | <code>iidSet</code> |

The `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` interface is a generic interface. The set of IIDs for which the `QueryInterface` function will return “success” can be seen as a configuration parameter of this interface that is set at creation time of an object. This configuration parameter is modelled by the attribute `iidSet`.

6.1.6.3.2.3 Constraints

- For each Object `x`
  - The IID of `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` (see 6.1.6.5.1) is an element of `iidSet`.

### 6.1.6.3.3 Instantiation

#### 6.1.6.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 80**

| Type             | Object | Multiplicity |
|------------------|--------|--------------|
| Object           | obj    | 1            |
| setof{Interface} | intfs  | any          |

Here intfs represents the initial collection of interfaces of obj. How many interfaces are created is implementation freedom hence the multiplicity (number of elements) of the set intfs is specified as “any”.

#### 6.1.6.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- For each *i* in intfs
  - *i*.iid in obj.iidSet
  - *i*.provider == obj
- There is at least one interface *i* in intfs such that *i*.refCount > 0.

#### Remarks

- Note that the constraints imply that `obj.interfaces == intfs`.
- As specified above, an object is instantiated together with a non-empty set of interfaces. At least one of these interfaces has a reference count > 0, hence the reference count of the object is > 0 as well. A typical implementation will create interface instances for *all* IIDs in iids, but this is not required. New interface instances can e.g. be created by `QueryInterface`.

#### 6.1.6.3.4 Execution Constraints

No execution constraints apply to the `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` logical component; the `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` interface is thread-safe.

### 6.1.6.4 Roles

#### 6.1.6.4.1 Object

#### Signature

```
role Object {
    const setof{uhIid_t} iidSet;
    setof{Interface}    interfaces;
}
```

#### Qualifiers

None.

#### Description

This role models general M3W objects, i.e. objects that provide the `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` interface.

## Independent Attributes

Table 81

| Name                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>iidSet</code> | The set of IIDs of the interfaces provided by the object, determining for which IIDs the <code>QueryInterface</code> function will be successful. The value of <code>iidSet</code> is constant because it is set at object instantiation time and does not change dynamically (in accordance with Microsoft COM). |

## Dependent Attributes

Table 82

| Name                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>interfaces</code> | The set of interfaces of the object, i.e. the set of all instances <code>i</code> of type <code>Interface</code> such that <code>i.provider == this</code> . The value of this attribute is not constant because interface instances may be created dynamically e.g. due to the creation of interface “proxies” when remotely accessing interfaces. Hence there may be multiple interface instances in <code>interfaces</code> with the same IID. |

## Invariants

— `iidSet` contains the IID of `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` (see 6.1.6.5.1).

## Instantiation

See 6.1.6.3.3.

## Streaming Behavior

None.

## Active Behavior

None.

## Remarks

- The reference count of an object can be defined as the sum of the reference counts of its interfaces. In a typical implementation the resources associated with an object, such as the occupied storage, will be freed when the reference count of the object reaches zero. This is not modeled in the specification because it is an implementation issue. From the specification perspective an object lives forever. If the reference count of an object is zero, the reference counts of all of its interfaces are zero and the effect of any call of a function in one of these interfaces will be undefined. In other words, the object no longer serves any useful purpose.
- Each role that is specified as a provider of a M3W API interface is assumed to specialize the Object role. This relation is not normally indicated in interface-role diagrams; see Annex D.

## 6.1.6.4.2 Client

## Signature

```
role Client {}
```

## Qualifiers

— actor

## Description

This role models users of the `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` interface.

**Remarks**

Each role that is specified as a user of a M3W API interface is assumed to specialize the Client role. This relation is not normally indicated in interface-role diagrams; see Annex D.

**6.1.6.5 Interfaces****6.1.6.5.1 rcIUnknown / uhIUnknown****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` interface is a generic interface that is provided by all objects and inherited by all other interfaces. It has three main functions:

- providing interface navigation functionality;
- providing reference counting functionality;
- defining the identity of an object.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( 00000000-0000-0000-C000-000000000046 )`

**Remarks**

- The fact that `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` is “inherited” by all other interfaces of the M3W API implies that the functions `QueryInterface`, `AddRef` and `Release` are available in *all* interfaces. In order to call these functions on an object there is no need to first navigate to the `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` interface of the object.
- As specified below, all functions in `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` have precondition “`refCount > 0`”. This is to indicate that no guarantees are given when such a function is called on an interface whose reference count is zero. The precondition “`refCount > 0`” is implicit in the precondition of each UHAPI function; see Annex D. The specification of the `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` interface is the only place where this condition is made explicit.

**6.1.6.5.1.1 QueryInterface****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t QueryInterface(
    [in] uhRefId_t riid,
    [out] pVoid *pUnk
);
```

**Qualifiers**

- Synchronous

**Description**

Tests whether the current object provides an interface with a specified IID. If the object provides the interface, a pointer to an interface with the specified IID is returned. If the object does not provide the interface, a null pointer is returned.

**Parameters****Table 83**

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Description</b>                                                                       |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| riid        | Pointer to the IID of the interface (pointer) to be returned.                            |
| pUnk        | Output parameter returning either a pointer to an interface of type <i>*iid</i> or Null. |

**Return Values****Table 84**

| <b>Name</b>                 | <b>Description</b>                                                              |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UH_OK                       | Indicates that the object provides an interface with the specified IID.         |
| UH_ERR_UNKNOWN_NO_INTERFACE | Indicates that the object does not provide an interface with the specified IID. |

**Precondition**

— refCount > 0  
 — Let iid = \*riid

**Case 1** (*Object provides an interface of type iid*)

— iid in iidSet

**Action**

— Let intf be an existing or new Interface such that  
   — intf.iid == iid  
   — intf.provider == **this**  
 — Modify intf.refCount

**Postcondition**

— \*pUnk == &intf  
 — intf.refCount == intf.refCount' + 1  
 — **result** == UH\_OK

**Case 2** (*Object does not provide an interface of type iid*)

— !( iid in iidSet )

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— \*pUnk == Null  
 — **result** == UH\_ERR\_UNKNOWN\_NO\_INTERFACE

**Remarks**

— Note that “refCount” in the precondition refers to the refCount attribute of the interface on which QueryInterface is called; it is not an attribute of the object.

- As implied by Case 1 of the specification, `QueryInterface` does not necessarily return the same interface pointer when asked for the same interface multiple times. The only exception to this is a query for `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown`. Within the context of a single process the pointer to the `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` interface of an object is unique, i.e. exactly one interface instance of type `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` is accessible in the process. This constraint is implied by the COM compatibility and allows pointers to `rcIUnknown` / `uhIUnknown` to be used for comparing the identities of objects. The constraint is not explicitly modeled in the specification because it requires modeling part of the execution architecture as well.
- Note that `QueryInterface` increments the reference count of the interface whose pointer it returns. If an application no longer needs to use the interface retrieved by a call to `QueryInterface`, it must therefore call the `Release` method for that interface to free it.

#### 6.1.6.5.1.2 AddRef

##### Signature

```
UInt32 AddRef();
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous

##### Description

Increments the reference count of the interface on which `AddRef` is called.

##### Parameters

None.

##### Return Values

See the postcondition.

##### Precondition

```
refCount > 0
```

##### Action

- Modify `refCount`

##### Postcondition

- `refCount == refCount' + 1`
- `result > 0`

##### Remarks

- Note that “`refCount`” in the precondition refers to the `refCount` attribute of the interface on which `AddRef` is called; it is not an attribute of the object.
- Even though the COM specification describes the value returned by `AddRef` as “the resulting value of the reference count”, it also specifies that absolutely no meaning can be assigned to this return value.

#### 6.1.6.5.1.3 Release

##### Signature

```
UInt32 Release();
```

##### Qualifiers

— synchronous

##### Description

Decrements the reference count of the interface on which Release is called.

##### Parameters

None.

##### Return Values

See the postcondition.

##### Precondition

— `refCount > 0`

##### Action

— Modify `refCount`

##### Postcondition

— `refCount == refCount' - 1`  
— If ( **result** == 0 ) then `refCount == 0`

##### Remarks

- Note that “`refCount`” in the precondition refers to the `refCount` attribute of the interface on which Release is called; it is not an attribute of the object.
- When `refCount` becomes zero as a consequence of calling Release no more references to the interface are supposed to exist, i.e. all references to the interface are “invalid”. Implementations can therefore choose to free the resources associated with the interface. Note that the resources associated with an object can only be freed if the reference counts of all of its interfaces are zero.
- Even though the COM specification describes the value returned by Release as “the resulting value of the reference count”, it also specifies that this return value only has meaning if it is zero. In that case, all references to the interface can be considered invalid, as expressed by the last part of the postcondition.



## 7 Audio interface suites

### 7.1 Broadcast Audio decoding

#### 7.1.1 UhlAnaAdec

##### 7.1.1.1 Concepts

##### 7.1.1.1.1 Introduction

This subclause is structured in the following way. First an overview over common analog audio broadcasting standards is given. Then the basic working principle of the Analog Audio Decoder is explained. In this 2<sup>nd</sup> part especially the relation between input signals, decoding and output signals is described.

##### 7.1.1.1.2 Analog Audio Broadcasting Standards

In analog broadcasting, the audio signal broadcasted can be classified by two criteria's.

The first criteria is the Sound System, which is used to encode the information. The second criteria are the Sound Properties, which are more defining the additional capability of the signal. The combination of the two is unambiguously identifying a broadcasted audio signal.

Sound Standard can be one of the following:

**Table 85 — Sound standards**

#### Sound Standard

|                    |                                              |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| AM mono            | Analog signal.                               |
| FM mono            | Analog signal.                               |
| 2CS                | Analog signal.                               |
| FM Korea           | Analog signal.                               |
| BTSC               | Analog signal.                               |
| EIAJ               | Analog signal.                               |
| NICAM with AM mono | Digital extension to AM mono audio standard. |
| NICAM with FM mono | Digital extension to FM mono audio standard. |

Note that the Sound Standards should not be confused with TV systems. A TV system deals with the spectral location of the sound carriers, the sound standard with the modulation and coding techniques. Sound standards and TV systems are more or less independent, though in practice, certain combinations are fixed (such as e.g. the AM sound standard with TV system L).

Sound Properties on the other hand can be one of the following:

**Table 86 — Sound properties**

#### Sound Properties

|      |                                                                                  |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| None | No additional property, the audio signal is fully defined by the Sound Standard. |
| Mono | The audio stream contains a mono signal.                                         |

**Sound Properties**

|                 |                                                                                     |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Stereo          | The audio stream contains a stereo signal.                                          |
| Dual            | The audio stream contains a 2 <sup>nd</sup> language.                               |
| Unrelated       | The audio stream contains information, which is unrelated to the video information. |
| Data 352 kbit/s | The audio stream contains data information at a rate of 352 kbit/s.                 |
| Data 704 kbit/s | The audio stream contains data information at a rate of 704 kbit/s.                 |

Nevertheless, not all combinations of Sound Standards and Sound Properties are possible. Table 87 shows all defined combinations. Since Table 87 is a full list with all the possible audio signals an Analog Audio Decoder has to deal with, we linked every combination with an Id-Number that is used as a reference further on in this document.

**Table 87 — Audio Signal Classification****Audio Signals**

| <b>Id</b> | <b>Name</b>                                        |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 1         | Invalid                                            |
| 2         | Unknown                                            |
| 3         | AM mono                                            |
| 4         | FM mono                                            |
| 5         | 2CS Stereo                                         |
| 6         | 2CS Dual                                           |
| 7         | FM Korea Stereo                                    |
| 8         | FM Korea Dual                                      |
| 9         | BTSC Stereo                                        |
| 10        | BTSC Mono + SAP                                    |
| 11        | BTSC Stereo + SAP                                  |
| 12        | EIAJ Stereo                                        |
| 13        | EIAJ Dual                                          |
| 14        | AM mono + NICAM Mono                               |
| 15        | AM mono + NICAM Stereo                             |
| 16        | AM mono + NICAM Dual                               |
| 17        | AM mono + NICAM Data only (704 kbit/s)             |
| 18        | AM mono + NICAM Mono + Data (352 kbit/s)           |
| 19        | AM mono + unrelated NICAM Mono                     |
| 20        | AM mono + unrelated NICAM Stereo                   |
| 21        | AM mono + unrelated NICAM Dual                     |
| 22        | AM mono + unrelated NICAM Data only (704 kbit/s)   |
| 23        | AM mono + unrelated NICAM Mono + Data (352 kbit/s) |
| 24        | FM mono + NICAM Mono                               |
| 25        | FM mono + NICAM Stereo                             |
| 26        | FM mono + NICAM Dual                               |
| 27        | FM mono + NICAM Data only (704 kbit/s)             |
| 28        | FM mono + NICAM Mono + Data (352 kbit/s)           |

**Audio Signals**

|    |                                                    |
|----|----------------------------------------------------|
| 29 | FM mono + unrelated NICAM Mono                     |
| 30 | FM mono + unrelated NICAM Stereo                   |
| 31 | FM mono + unrelated NICAM Dual                     |
| 32 | FM mono + unrelated NICAM Data only (704 kbit/s)   |
| 33 | FM mono + unrelated NICAM Mono + Data (352 kbit/s) |

The NICAM, BTSC and 2CS sound standards are defined in [8], [9] and [10], respectively.

**7.1.1.1.3 Decoding Working Principles**

The input of the Analog Audio Decoder is an analog audio stream, encoded with one of the sound standards mentioned above.

On one hand, the Analog Audio Decoder is detecting the sound standard and sound properties of the input stream. This detection may take some time. The decoder can be instructed to detect specific sound standards only, by limiting the set of allowed sound standards.

On the other hand, the Analog Audio Decoder is decoding the input stream to baseband audio.

Depending on the input signal, several independent audio streams may be encoded in the input stream. For example, dual language signals contain two independent audio streams, one for the first language and one for the second language. The Analog Audio Decoder is always decoding all streams contained in the input signal and outputs them all. Selection of one of the stream is not in the scope of the Analog Audio Decoder, but is done downstream by another logical component.

So, the output of the Analog Audio Decoder can be seen as multiple baseband signals multiplexed to one output stream.

**7.1.1.2 Types & Constants****7.1.1.2.1 Public Types & Constants****7.1.1.2.1.1 Error Codes**

None.

7.1.1.2.1.2 **uhAnaAdec\_SoundStandard\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAnaAdec_SoundStandard_t {
    uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardInvalid = 0x80000000,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardUnknown = 0x40000000,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardAmMono = 0x00000002,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmMono = 0x00000004,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundStandard2Cs = 0x00000008,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmKorea = 0x00000010,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardBtsc = 0x00000020,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardEiaj = 0x00000040,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardAmNicam = 0x00000080,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmNicam = 0x00000100
} uhAnaAdec_SoundStandard_t, *puhAnaAdec_SoundStandard_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent sound standards.

**Values****Table 88****Name****Description**

uhAnaAdec\_SoundStandardInvalid

The sound standard is temporarily not available.

uhAnaAdec\_SoundStandardUnknown

The sound standard is available, yet it could not be determined.

uhAnaAdec\_SoundStandardAmMono

AM Mono. The base property of the audio signal is that it contains a Mono signal.

uhAnaAdec\_SoundStandardFmMono

FM Mono. The base property of the audio signal is that it contains a Mono signal.

uhAnaAdec\_SoundStandard2Cs

Two-Carrier System (also known as German Stereo).

uhAnaAdec\_SoundStandardFmKorea

South Korea - which uses the NTSC standard - has adopted a modified version of the Two-Carrier System (2CS).

uhAnaAdec\_SoundStandardBtsc

BTSC.

uhAnaAdec\_SoundStandardEiaj

EIAJ.

uhAnaAdec\_SoundStandardAmNicam

NICAM with AM. The base property of the audio signal is that the analog audio content is a Mono signal.

uhAnaAdec\_SoundStandardFmNicam

NICAM with FM. A base property of the audio signal is that the analog audio content is a Mono signal.

7.1.1.2.1.3 **uhAnaAdec\_SoundStandardSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardSet_t, *puhAnaAdec_SoundStandardSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of sound standards

**7.1.1.2.1.4      uhAnaAdec\_SoundProperty\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAnaAdec_SoundProperty_t {
    uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyInvalid      = 0x80000000,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnknown      = 0x40000000,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono         = 0x00000001,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyStereo       = 0x00000002,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyDual         = 0x00000004,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnrelated    = 0x00000008,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyData352Kbits = 0x00000010,
    uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyData704Kbits = 0x00000020
} uhAnaAdec_SoundProperty_t, *puhAnaAdec_SoundProperty_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent additional properties of the input stream of an analog audio decoder besides the sound standard.

**Values****Table 89****Name****Description**

uhAnaAdec\_SoundPropertyInvalid

The sound property is temporarily not available.

uhAnaAdec\_SoundPropertyUnknown

The sound property is available, yet it could not be determined.

uhAnaAdec\_SoundPropertyMono

An additional property of the input signal is that it contains a mono signal. In case the sound standard of the audio signal is NICAM, the additional property relates to the digital audio content.

uhAnaAdec\_SoundPropertyStereo

An additional property of the input signal is that it contains a stereo signal. In case the sound standard of the audio signal is NICAM, the additional property relates to the digital audio content

uhAnaAdec\_SoundPropertyDual

An additional property of the input signal is that it contains a mono 2<sup>nd</sup> language signal. In case the sound standard of the audio signal is NICAM, the additional property relates to the digital audio content

uhAnaAdec\_SoundPropertyUnrelated

NICAM with AM mono or FM mono has been detected and the digital audio is unrelated to the video content.

uhAnaAdec\_SoundPropertyData352Kbits

NICAM with 352 kbit/s data has been detected; only mono digital audio is available.

uhAnaAdec\_SoundPropertyData704Kbits

NICAM with data only has been detected; no digital audio is available.

**7.1.1.2.1.5      uhAnaAdec\_SoundPropertySet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertySet_t, *puhAnaAdec_SoundPropertySet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of additional properties of the input stream of an analog audio decoder besides the sound standard.

**7.1.1.2.1.6      uhAnaAdec\_Notification\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAnaAdec_Notification_t {
    uhAnaAdec_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhAnaAdec_AudioSignalChanged  = 0x00000002,
    uhAnaAdec_StableOutput        = 0x00000004
} uhAnaAdec_Notification_t, *puhAnaAdec_Notification_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIAnaAdecNtf`.

**Values****Table 90**

| <b>Name</b>                                | <b>Description</b>                              |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhAnaAdec_SubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> . |
| <code>uhAnaAdec_AudioSignalChanged</code>  | Represents <code>OnAudioSignalChanged</code> .  |
| <code>uhAnaAdec_StableOutput</code>        | Represents <code>OnStableOutput</code> .        |

**7.1.1.2.1.7      uhAnaAdec\_Notifications\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAnaAdec_Notifications_t, *puhAnaAdec_Notifications_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhAnaAdec_Notification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**Constraints**

None.

**7.1.1.2.1.8      uhAnaAdec\_AllNotifications****Signature**

```
const uhAnaAdec_Notifications_t uhAnaAdec_AllNotifications = 0x00000007;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhAnaAdec_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**7.1.1.2.2      Model Types & Constants**

None.

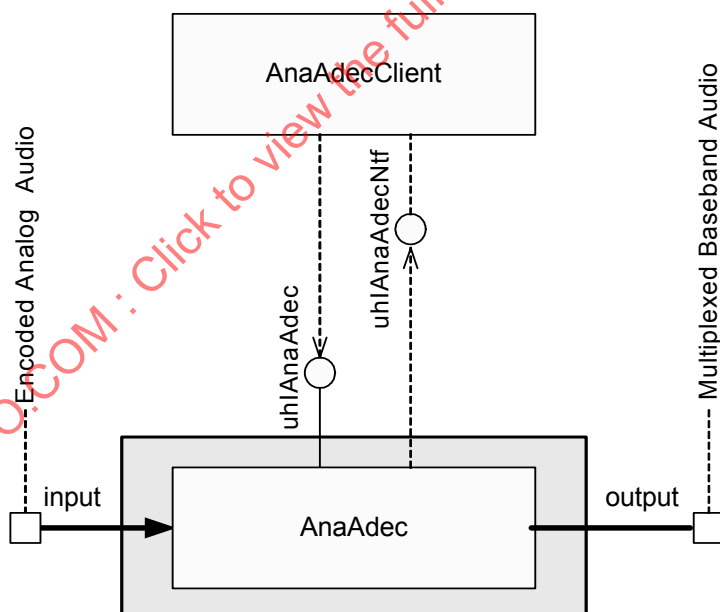
**7.1.1.3      Logical Component****7.1.1.3.1      Interface-Role Model****Figure 19 — Interface Role Model**

Figure 19 depicts the interface-role model of the Analog Audio Decoding Logical Component. It shows the interfaces and the roles involved with this component.

An Analog Audio Decoding Logical Component contains a Decoder (represented by the `AnaAdec` role).

Each decoder has its own control interface (`uhIAnaAdec`). This control interface is meant for use by the regular client (represented by the `AnaAdecClient` role).

Clients can optionally provide a call-back interface (`uhIAnaAdecNtf`) allowing them to subscribe to notifications of events in the decoder.

### 7.1.1.3.2 Diversity

#### 7.1.1.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

**Table 91**

| Role          | Interface                  | Presence  |
|---------------|----------------------------|-----------|
| AnaAdec       | <code>uhIAnaAdec</code>    | mandatory |
| AnaAdecClient | <code>uhIAnaAdecNtf</code> | optional  |

#### 7.1.1.3.2.2 Configurable Items

**Table 92**

| Role    | Attribute                       |
|---------|---------------------------------|
| AnaAdec | <code>supportedStandards</code> |

#### 7.1.1.3.2.3 Constraints

- `!(supportedStandards & uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardInvalid)`
- `!(supportedStandards & uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardUnknown)`

### 7.1.1.3.3 Instantiation

#### 7.1.1.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 93**

| Type    | Object           | Multiplicity |
|---------|------------------|--------------|
| AnaAdec | <code>dec</code> | 1            |

#### 7.1.1.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- `dec.allowedStandards == dec.supportedStandards`
- `dec.detectedStandard == uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardInvalid`
- `dec.detectedProperties == uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyInvalid`
- `dec.stableOutput == False`

#### 7.1.1.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".



#### 7.1.1.4 Roles

##### 7.1.1.4.1 AnaAdec

###### Signature

```
role AnaAdec {
    const uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardSet_t    supportedStandards;
    uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardSet_t          allowedStandards;
    uhAnaAdec_SoundStandard_t              detectedStandard;
    uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertySet_t           detectedProperties;
    Bool                                   stableOutput;
}
```

###### Qualifiers

— root

###### Description

An **AnaAdec** decodes an encoded analog audio input stream and provides the decoded programs. It autonomously detects the sound standard of the input stream from a set of allowed sound standards and provides notifications of various changes that occur in the input stream.

###### Independent Attributes

**Table 94**

| Name               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| supportedStandards | The set of sound standards that the decoder is able to detect.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| allowedStandards   | The set of sound standards that the decoder is allowed to detect.                                                                                                                                                                                |
| detectedStandard   | The sound standard of the input stream as detected by the decoder.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| detectedProperties | The additional sound properties of the input stream besides the sound standard as detected by the decoder.                                                                                                                                       |
| stableOutput       | Indicates whether the analog audio decoder is outputting decoded audio long enough so that the client can safely unmute the corresponding output at the appropriate logical component(s) downstream (True if this is the case, False otherwise). |

###### Invariants

```
— (allowedStandards & supportedStandards) == allowedStandards
— (detectedStandard & (allowedStandards | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardInvalid |
  uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardUnknown)) == detectedStandard
— if (detectedStandard == uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardInvalid)
  — detectedProperties == uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyInvalid
— if (detectedStandard == uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardUnknown)
  — detectedProperties == uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnknown
```

###### Instantiation

An **AnaAdec** is always instantiated as part of an Analog Audio Decoder; see subclause 7.1.1.3.3.

###### Streaming Behavior

The decoder continually observes the input stream of the Analog Audio Decoder.

When an input stream is detected, it will try to detect the sound standard of the input stream and set the value of **detectedStandard** accordingly.

The decoder will only detect standards that are in the set `allowedStandards`.

As soon as a sound standard `s` has been detected, the value of `detectedStandard` is set to `s` and the input stream is decoded.

When the sound standard of the input signal is not in the set `allowedStandards`, or could not be determined, the value of `detectedStandard` is set to `uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardUnknown`; no output data is produced.

Active Behavior

The `AnaAdec` has standard notification behavior (see `uhIAAnaAdecNtf`), apart from the following events.

Table 95

| Event                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Action                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The analog audio decoder is outputting decoded audio long enough so that the client can safely unmute the corresponding output at the appropriate logical component(s) downstream. ( <code>dec.stableOutput == False</code> when this event occurs). | <code>dec.stableOutput = True</code><br>— <code>notify OnStableOutput(*, True)</code>   |
| The analog audio decoder is no longer outputting a stable (decoded) audio stream ( <code>dec.stableOutput == True</code> when this event occurs).                                                                                                    | <code>dec.stableOutput = False</code><br>— <code>notify OnStableOutput(*, False)</code> |

Execution Constraints  
None.

Remarks  
The `allowedStandards` attribute is useful for countries/areas where certain sound standards are not used. It can speed up the detection of the right sound standard and it can prevent a sound standard from being detected incorrectly.

7.1.1.4.2 AnaAdecClient

Signature  
`role AnaAdecClient {}`

Qualifiers  
— actor

Description  
An Analog Audio Decoder Client represents a user of the `uhIAAnaAdec` interface.

Execution Constraints  
None.

### 7.1.1.5 Interfaces

#### 7.1.1.5.1 uhlAnaAdec

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This interface of a decoder provides functionality to control the decoding of audio programs, to retrieve properties of the decoder input stream and to subscribe/unsubscribe to events notified by the decoder. The client can control the decoding by restricting the sound standards to be used by the decoder.

##### Interface ID

uuid( 1BCA5EC3-27FB-4972-91A3-A1DC0C978DA1 )

##### Execution Constraints

None.

#### 7.1.1.5.1.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhIAAnaAdecNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAnaAdec_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

#### 7.1.1.5.1.2 Unsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhIAAnaAdecNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAnaAdec_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

#### 7.1.1.5.1.3 GetSuppStandards

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppStandards (
    [out] puhAnaAdec_SoundStandardSet_t pSupportedStandards );
```

##### Qualifiers

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns the set of sound standards supported by the decoder.

**Parameters**

Table 96

| Name                | Description                                                                     |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSupportedStandards | Output parameter returning the set of sound standards supported by the decoder. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pSupportedStandards == dec.supportedStandards`

7.1.1.5.1.4      **SetAllowedStandards**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t SetAllowedStandards (  
    [in] uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardSet_t allowedStandards );`

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - single-threaded

**Description**  
Sets the set of sound standards that the decoder is allowed to detect.

**Parameters**

Table 97

| Name             | Description                                                       |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| allowedStandards | The set of sound standards that the decoder is allowed to detect. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
— `(allowedStandards & dec.supportedStandards) == allowedStandards`

**Action**

```

— Modify dec.allowedStandards
— If !(dec.detectedStandard & allowedStandards)
    — Modify dec.detectedStandard
    — Modify dec.detectedProperties

```

**Postcondition**

```

— dec.allowedStandards == allowedStandards
— if (dec.detectedStandard' == uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardInvalid)
    — dec.detectedStandard == uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardInvalid
    — dec.detectedProperties == uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyInvalid
— else if !(dec.detectedStandard' & allowedStandards)
    — dec.detectedStandard == uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardUnknown
    — dec.detectedProperties == uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnknown

```

**Remarks**

SetAllowedStandards is taking effect immediately. I.e. if the previously detected standard is not allowed any more, then dec.detectedStandard will be reset to uhAnaAdec\_SoundStandardUnknown and detection will restart to find an alternative standard.

**7.1.1.5.1.5 GetAllowedStandards****Signature**

```

uhErrorCode_t GetAllowedStandards (
    [out] puhAnaAdec_SoundStandardSet_t pAllowedStandards );

```

**Qualifiers**

```

— synchronous

— thread-safe

```

**Description**

Returns the set of sound standards that the decoder is allowed to detect.

**Parameters****Table 98****Name****Description**

pAllowedStandards

Output parameter returning the set of sound standards that the decoder is allowed to detect.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pAllowedStandards == dec.allowedStandards

**7.1.1.5.1.6 GetAudioSignal**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetAudioSignal (
    [out] puhAnaAdec_SoundStandard_t pSoundStandard,
    [out] puhAnaAdec_SoundPropertySet_t pSoundProperties );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the sound standard and additional sound properties of the input signal as detected by the decoder.

**Parameters**

**Table 99**

| Name             | Description                                                                                                           |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSoundStandard   | Output parameter returning the sound standard of the input signal as detected by the decoder.                         |
| pSoundProperties | Output parameter returning additional sound properties of the input signal of the decoder besides the sound standard. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pSoundStandard == dec.detectedStandard
- \*pSoundProperties == dec.detectedProperties

**Remarks**

- Sound standard and audio program information are combined in this function, thus providing synchronous, consistent information on the input stream.
- The following table defines the Sound Standard and additional Sound Property sets for all the audio signal (as defined in subclause 7.1.1.1.1):

Table 100

| Audio Signal |                                                   | Sound Standard                 | Additional Sound Property set                                                                          |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Id           | Name                                              |                                |                                                                                                        |
| 1            | Invalid                                           | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardInvalid | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyInvalid                                                                         |
| 2            | Unknown                                           | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardUnknown | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnknown                                                                         |
| 3            | AM mono                                           | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardAmMono  | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnknown                                                                         |
| 4            | FM mono                                           | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmMono  | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnknown                                                                         |
| 5            | 2CS Stereo                                        | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandard2Cs     | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyStereo                                                                          |
| 6            | 2CS Dual                                          | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandard2Cs     | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyDual                                             |
| 7            | FM Korea Stereo                                   | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmKorea | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyStereo                                                                          |
| 8            | FM Korea Dual                                     | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmKorea | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyDual                                             |
| 9            | BTSC Stereo                                       | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardBtsc    | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyStereo                                                                          |
| 10           | BTSC Mono + SAP                                   | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardBtsc    | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyDual                                             |
| 11           | BTSC Stereo + SAP                                 | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardBtsc    | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyStereo<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyDual                                           |
| 12           | EIAJ Stereo                                       | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardEiaj    | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyStereo                                                                          |
| 13           | EIAJ Dual                                         | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardEiaj    | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyDual                                             |
| 14           | AM mono + NICAM Mono                              | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardAmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono                                                                            |
| 15           | AM mono + NICAM Stereo                            | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardAmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyStereo                                                                          |
| 16           | AM mono + NICAM Dual                              | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardAmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyDual                                             |
| 17           | AM mono + NICAM Data only (704kbit/s)             | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardAmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyData704Kbits                                                                    |
| 18           | AM mono + NICAM Mono + Data (352kbit/s)           | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardAmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyData352Kbits                                     |
| 19           | AM mono + unrelated NICAM Mono                    | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardAmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnRelated<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono                                        |
| 20           | AM mono + unrelated NICAM Stereo                  | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardAmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnRelated<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyStereo                                      |
| 21           | AM mono + unrelated NICAM Dual                    | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardAmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnRelated<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyDual         |
| 22           | AM mono + unrelated NICAM Data only (704kbit/s)   | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardAmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnRelated<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyData704Kbits                                |
| 23           | AM mono + unrelated NICAM Mono + Data (352kbit/s) | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardAmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnRelated<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyData352Kbits |
| 24           | FM mono + NICAM Mono                              | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono                                                                            |
| 25           | FM mono + NICAM Stereo                            | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyStereo                                                                          |

| Audio Signal |                                                   | Sound Standard                 | Additional Sound Property set                                                                          |  |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| Id           | Name                                              |                                |                                                                                                        |  |
| 26           | FM mono + NICAM Dual                              | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyDual                                             |  |
| 27           | FM mono + NICAM Data only (704kbit/s)             | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyData704Kbits                                                                    |  |
| 28           | FM mono + NICAM Mono + Data (352kbit/s)           | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyData352Kbits                                     |  |
| 29           | FM mono + unrelated NICAM Mono                    | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnRelated<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono                                        |  |
| 30           | FM mono + unrelated NICAM Stereo                  | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnRelated<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyStereo                                      |  |
| 31           | FM mono + unrelated NICAM Dual                    | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnRelated<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyDual         |  |
| 32           | FM mono + unrelated NICAM Data only (704kbit/s)   | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnRelated<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyData704Kbits                                |  |
| 33           | FM mono + unrelated NICAM Mono + Data (352kbit/s) | uhAnaAdec_SoundStandardFmNicam | uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyUnRelated<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyMono<br>uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertyData352Kbits |  |

#### 7.1.1.5.1.7 GetStableOutput

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetStableOutput (
    [out] pBool pStableOutput);
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

Returns whether the analog audio decoder has currently stable output.

##### Parameters

Table 101

| Name          | Description                                                                              |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStableOutput | Output parameter returning whether the analog audio decoder has currently stable output. |

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

True



**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**`*pStableOutput == dec.stableOutput`**7.1.1.5.2 uhAnaAdecNtf****Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in a decoder. The `Subscribe` function of the `uhAnaAdec` interface can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**`uuid( DC8AA7A5-7A94-4242-8A29-5388210753F7 )`**Execution Constraints**

None.

**7.1.1.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAnaAdec_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

**7.1.1.5.2.2 OnAudioSignalChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnAudioSignalChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAnaAdec_SoundStandard_t soundStandard,
    [in] uhAnaAdec_SoundPropertySet_t soundProperties );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called whenever a change of the audio signal, as observable by `GetAudioSignal(...)`, is detected. This can be caused by the following events:

- loss of synchronization, either spontaneously (in particular due to bad reception conditions) or at the beginning of a (re-)tuning operation;

- detection of the sound standard after re-synchronization;
- detection of a change in the broadcasted sound standard;
- modification of one or more of the properties of the input signal.

## Parameters

Table 102

| Name            | Description                                                                                                      |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie          | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                    |
| soundStandard   | The new sound standard of the input signal as detected by the decoder.                                           |
| soundProperties | Information about the additional sound properties of the input signal of the decoder besides the sound standard. |

## Return Values

None.

## Precondition

True

## Action

- Any callback-compliant action

## Postcondition

True

## Remarks

Sound standard and audio program information are combined in this function, thus providing synchronous, consistent information on the input stream.

### 7.1.1.5.2.3 OnStableOutput

## Signature

```
[async] Void OnStableOutput (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] Bool stableOutput );
```

## Qualifiers

None.

## Description

The AnaAdec calls this function when there is a change in the stability of the output of the AnaAdec.

Parameters

Table 103

| Name         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie       | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| stableOutput | If True: AnaAdec is outputting decoded audio long enough so that the client can safely unmute the corresponding output at the appropriate logical component(s) downstream.<br><br>If False: AnaAdec is no longer outputting a stable (decoded) audio stream. |

Return Values  
None.

Precondition  
True

Action  
— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition  
True

7.1.2 UhlAtscDec

7.1.2.1 Concepts

7.1.2.1.1 Introduction

The ATSC Decoder described in this document is designed for decoding live broadcast streams as well as decoding an SPTS, which the client has for example read from a file or disc and injected into the platform (e.g. in the case of PVR). The ATSC Decoder can also decode audio and video clips. The concepts which make up the ATSC Decoder are as shown in Figure 20. These concepts are further detailed in the following subclauses.

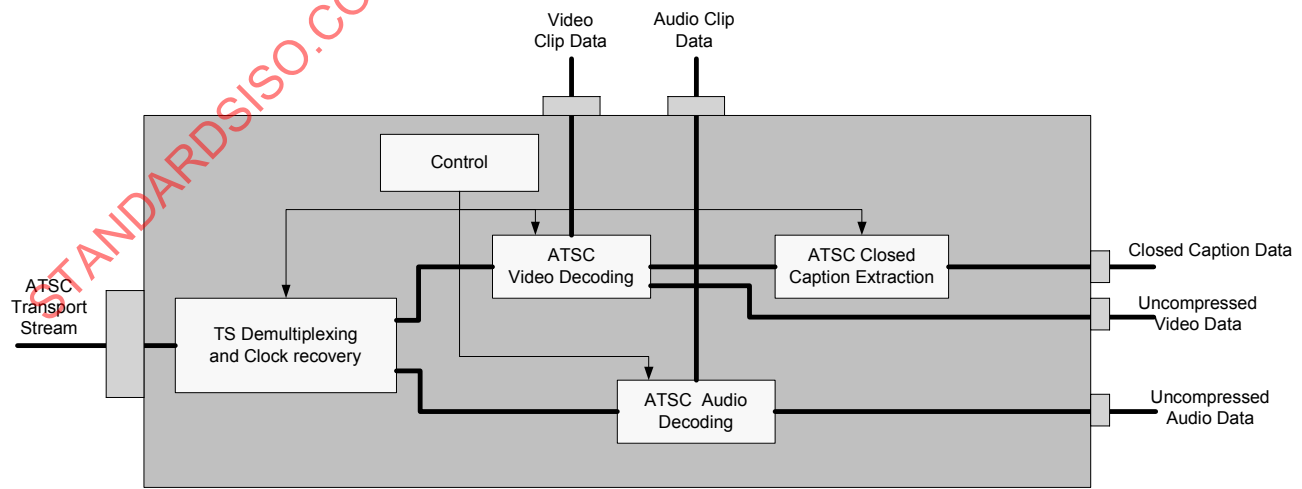


Figure 20 — ATSC Decoder concepts

### 7.1.2.1.2 TS Demultiplexing and Clock Management

#### 7.1.2.1.2.1 TS Demultiplexing

The function of a TS Demultiplexer is to filter specific contents (e.g. PES packets, MPEG-2 sections) from one transport stream (TS). The client can specify several criteria for filtering. The filtered data is routed to decoders and/or (client) middleware stacks. Several types of filters exist, each with their own filter criteria. Please refer to 8.1.13 for further information.

#### 7.1.2.1.2.2 Clock Management

The Clock management is responsible for reconstruction and maintaining the STC. In push mode (see subclause 7.1.2.1.6.1) the STC frequency and actual values in time are locked to the incoming PCR values; in pull mode (see subclause 7.1.2.1.6.2), the STC frequency is determined by the platform and the actual values are linked to the PTS values. STC is used for presentation of time synchronized program elements. Further it also provides functions to set alarms. When an alarm expires, the Clock manager sends an event to the client. Please refer to 8.1.12 for further information.

#### 7.1.2.1.3 ATSC Video Decoding

The ATSC Video Decoder decodes an incoming ATSC video stream into an uncompressed format suitable for further processing and display. The ATSC video stream is encoded using MPEG-2 compression standard along with the constraints as specified in ATSC standard [13].

The clients, on subscription will receive a notification of the encoding standard detected along with MPEG-2 video level and MPEG-2 video profile information. Please refer to MPEG-2 video standard [2] for more details on levels and profiles.

The ATSC Video Decoder also outputs "Picture User Data" present in the ATSC video stream on a streaming output channel to facilitate extraction of Closed Caption information. For more details on Picture User Data, please refer to ATSC standard [13].

Clients on subscription can also receive "User Data" via notifications. Client can also use this "User Data" to extract Closed Caption information.

#### Clip play mode

In clip play mode, the ATSC Video Decoder can decode MPEG-2 video clips into a format suitable for further processing and display. For this, the client provides buffers filled with video clip data, and the ATSC Video Decoder will decode these buffers in the same order they were provided. Once it has decoded a buffer, it returns the buffer to the client.

The clients on subscription for video clip notifications will receive notifications for events such as video clip play decoding started, video clip play decoding stopped, video clip play decoding paused. The decoding of a video clip by the ATSC Video decoder is completely independent of the audio clip decoding.

Decoding in the clip play mode has priority over decoding the input coming from the demultiplexer.

Therefore, the ATSC Video decoder will stop the ATSC video stream decoding when the client requests to play the video clips and it should wait for the client buffer(s) filled with data. The client has the responsibility to give the clip data buffers in proper sequence via the `uhIAtscDecVideoClip` interface. The ATSC Video decoder will send the corresponding notification to the client(s) via `uhIAtscDecVideoClipNtf` interface, when the data contained in the buffer(s) has been decoded. When the client requests to stop the video clip play decoding, the ATSC Video decoder resumes decoding the ATSC video stream coming from the demultiplexer.

The state of the demultiplexer is unaffected by the clip play state. While clip play is started, the demultiplexer output to the ATSC video decoder is ignored.

Clip play is only allowed in the pull mode (see subclause 7.1.2.1.6).

#### 7.1.2.1.4 ATSC Audio Decoding

The ATSC Audio Decoder decodes an incoming ATSC audio stream into an uncompressed format suitable for further processing.

The ATSC Audio Decoder supports the audio compression standard as defined in the ATSC standard, i.e. the AC-3 compression standard [5].

The Decoder has a unique output, which is completely determined by the content of its encoded audio input stream. This can be a multi-channel, a stereo or a mono audio signal. The number of output channels is identical to the number of channels in the audio input stream. Channel selection (i.e. down-mixing, up-mixing) is -not- provided by ATSC Audio Decoder.

The Decoder detects whether the digital audio input stream is encoded with an audio compression standard defined in the ATSC standard. If so, the Decoder decodes the digital audio input stream. Clients, when subscribed, receive notification of changes to the properties of the digital audio input signal.

##### Clip play mode

In the clip play mode, the ATSC Audio Decoder can decode AC-3 and MPEG-1 audio clips into a format suitable for further processing and rendering.

The ATSC Audio Decoder supports audio clip play similarly to how the ATSC Video Decoder supports video clip play (see subclause 7.1.2.1.3). The decoding of an audio clip by the ATSC Audio decoder is completely independent of the video clip decoding.

#### 7.1.2.1.5 ATSC Closed Caption Extractor

##### Input Stream

In the case of an ATSC digital TV broadcast (terrestrially or re-transmitted over cable), closed caption data can be available in the Picture User Data bits of the video elementary stream, see Figure 21.

The input for the closed caption data-extracting unit (or closed caption extraction) is this Picture User Data.

The DTVCC Service Directory can be carried as descriptor information in the Program Mapping Table (PMT) and/or the Event Information Table (EIT). These Caption Service Descriptors, when present, identify the type of Caption Service(s) available in the bit stream. A client can access EIT and/or PMT using the TS Demultiplexer.

Two types of closed caption data can be available in the Picture User Data bits of a video elementary stream:

- Analog CC data: NTSC line 21, Field 1 and/or Field 2 closed caption data (compliant with EIA-608); see [14].
- Digital CC data (compliant with EIA-708): zero or more Caption Services are transmitted within the DTVCC Caption Channel (see Figure 21); see [15].

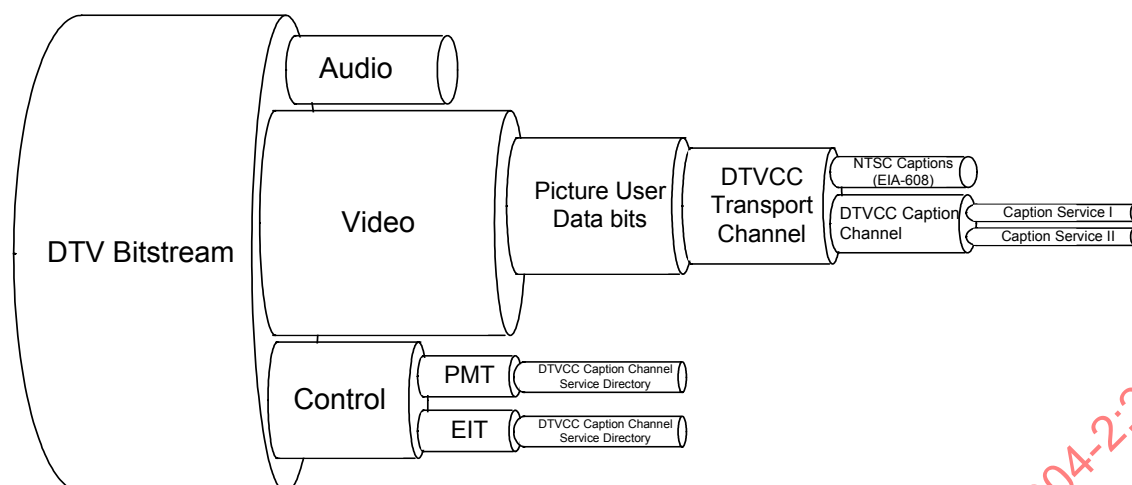


**Figure 21 — Closed Caption Services and Data in an ATSC Bitstream**

### Closed Caption Extractor

The Closed Caption Extractor monitors the user data input stream, extracts the data payload related to closed caption, and routes it to the subscribed client(s). NTSC Caption data (analog VBI data) as well as DTVCC Caption data (in Channel Packets or in Service Blocks) can be extracted from the user data stream and routed to the subscribed client(s).

#### 7.1.2.1.6 Push vs. pull

The ATSC decoder can operate both in the so-called push mode (“the stream is pushed to the decoders”) and in the so-called pull mode (“the decoders pull the stream”). It is the responsibility of the client to set the mode such that the mode is compatible with the input stream and a setting on the TS demultiplexer, as described below.

##### 7.1.2.1.6.1 Push mode

In push mode, the System Time Clock (STC) is locked to the PCR values of the incoming transport stream. The ATSC decoder must operate in push mode if either

— the ATSC decoder has a live broadcast transport stream input, or

the ATSC decoder has a client-provided<sup>2</sup> TS (or SPTS) input where each TS packet is preceded by a timestamp and the TS demultiplexer has been instructed to use these timestamps for determining when to demultiplex the packets. (NOTE The client can for instance receive a time-stamped TS (or SPTS) over a home network; see for instance the DLNA specifications [16].)

This mode is called the push mode, because the stream is “pushed” to the decoders. The stream itself determines the timing of the decoding.

##### 7.1.2.1.6.2 Pull mode

In pull mode, the STC is not locked to the PCR values of the incoming transport stream; instead, the STC has an autonomous clock frequency and the value of the STC is linked to the PTSs in the decoded video or audio elementary stream. The ATSC decoder must operate in pull mode if either

<sup>2</sup> The ATSC decoder itself does not provide functionality for a client to provide a TS or SPTS for decoding; another component in the platform must offer this functionality (for example, the Data Injecting logical component 8.3.1 UHDataInject).

- the ATSC decoder has a client-provided TS (or SPTS) input where the TS packets are not preceded by a timestamp, or
- the ATSC decoder has a client-provided TS (or SPTS) input where each TS packet is preceded by a timestamp and the TS demultiplexer has been instructed *not* to use these timestamps.

The pull mode is typically used in a PVR context, where the client provides a TS (or SPTS) read from a storage device (e.g., from a hard disk).

This mode is called the pull mode, because the video or audio decoder can “pull” the stream from the source (one of them determines the timing of the decoding). The TS demultiplexer must ensure, if possible, that there is enough data available in the video and audio input buffers such that the video and audio decoders can decode the stream without an underrun. The client is responsible for providing the required streaming data in time, such that the TS demultiplexer can ensure that the decoders do not get an underrun. If the video or audio input buffer is full, then the TS demultiplexer must temporarily suspend the demultiplexing until there is again space available in both the video and audio decoder input buffers.

#### 7.1.2.1.7 Starting and stopping

The client can start and stop the TS demultiplexer and the client can start and stop the decoding (which starts and stops the audio decoder, video decoder, STC decoder and CC extractor together).

When the TS demultiplexer is stopped, its own input buffer is flushed and the input buffers of the video and audio decoders are flushed. (As the CC extractor receives its input from the same input buffer, also its input is flushed.)

Note that stopping and starting the TS demultiplexer is useful in, for example, the following situations:

- The client is playing a stream in pull mode and wants to jump to another part of the stream (e.g. 10 minutes back in the stream). Stopping the TS demultiplexer flushes the input buffers of the TS demultiplexer, the audio decoder and the video decoder. When the client then starts playing from the new location in the stream, the TS demultiplexer and the audio and video decoder can process the new stream directly, as there is no data from the ‘old’ location in the stream present anymore. This implies that any information the client obtains about the state of the TS demultiplexer, after starting it again, will always relate the new stream.
- The client wants to switch from a stream that does not have TS packet timestamps to a stream that has these timestamps (or vice versa). The client first stops the TS demultiplexer before it sets the appropriate “timestamp mode” on the TS demultiplexer.

It depends on whether the ATSC decoder operates in the push or the pull mode what happens with the streaming output of the TS demultiplexer when the decoding is in the stopped state.

In push mode, the streaming output of the TS demultiplexer is “thrown away” (= ignored; switches are open) until the decoding is started again (see Figure 22). This prevents overflow of the input buffers. Apart from that its streaming output is “thrown away”, the TS demultiplexer continues to function normally.

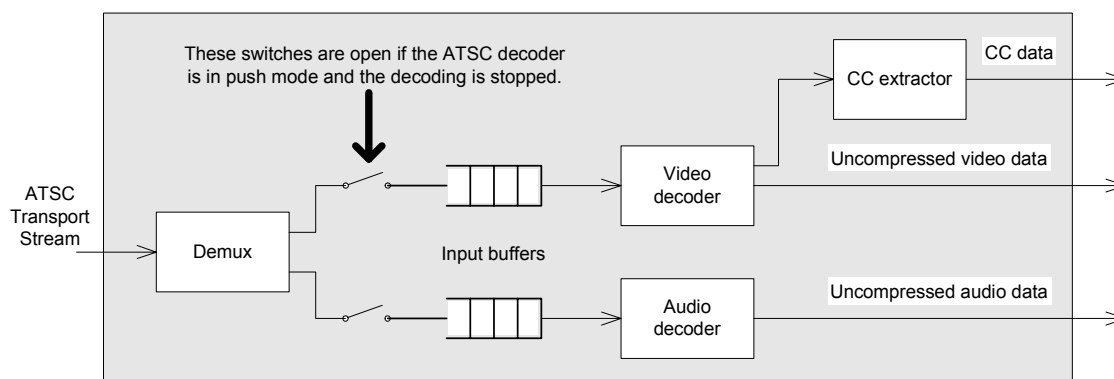


**Figure 22 — Routing of the streaming output of the TS demultiplexer when decoding is in the stopped state.**

In pull mode, the streaming output of the TS demultiplexer continues to be streamed into the input buffers of the video and audio decoders (i.e., if and when the demux is started), until the buffers are full; then the demultiplexing is temporarily suspended until there is again space available in both the video and audio decoder input buffers (i.e., after the decoders have been started again).

#### 7.1.2.1.8 Trick modes

When the ATSC decoder operates in pull mode, it can support a number of trick modes. Examples of such trick modes are:

- Playback at a different speed (e.g. at half speed or double speed)
- Pause
- Step to the next frame when paused
- Decoding of only I-frames, or only I- and P-frames

#### 7.1.2.2 Types & Constants

##### 7.1.2.2.1 Public Types & Constants

###### 7.1.2.2.1.1 Error Codes

###### Signature

```
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_ATSCDEC_NO_CCEXTR           = 0x00000001;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_ATSCDEC_PAUSE_AT_NOT_ENABLED = 0x00000002;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_ATSCDEC_CANCEL_IGNORED      = 0x00000003;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_ATSCDEC_STOP_IGNORED        = 0x00000004;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_ATSCDEC_PAUSE_IGNORED       = 0x00000005;
```

###### Qualifiers

- error-codes

###### Description

Defines all non-standard errors that may be returned by the interfaces of AtscDec.



**Constants****Name**

UH\_ERR\_ATSCDEC\_NO\_CCEXTR  
 UH\_ERR\_ATSCDEC\_PAUSE\_AT\_NOT\_ENABLED  
 UH\_ERR\_ATSCDEC\_CANCEL\_IGNORED  
 UH\_ERR\_ATSCDEC\_STOP\_IGNORED  
 UH\_ERR\_ATSCDEC\_PAUSE\_IGNORED

**Table 104****Description**

This AtscDec does not support AtscDecCcExtr functionality.  
 There is no “Pause At” request enabled at this moment.  
 The request to cancel has been ignored.  
 The request to stop has been ignored.  
 The request to pause has been ignored.

**7.1.2.2.1.2 uhAtscDec\_ValStat\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDec_ValStat_t {
    uhAtscDec_ValStatInvalid = -2,
    uhAtscDec_ValStatKnown   = 1
} uhAtscDec_ValStat_t, *puhAtscDec_ValStat_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This type represents the validity status of the related property/properties.

**Values****Table 105****Name****Description**

uhAtscDec\_ValStatInvalid The property/properties are temporarily not available.  
 uhAtscDec\_ValStatKnown The property/properties are available and determined.

**7.1.2.2.1.3 uhAtscDecCtrl\_StartStopNtf\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopNtf_t {
    uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopSubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopDemuxStarted       = 0x00000002,
    uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopDemuxStopped       = 0x00000004,
    uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopDecodersStarted     = 0x00000008,
    uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopDecodersStopped     = 0x00000010
} uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopNtf_t, *puhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopNtf_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIAAtscDecStartStopNtf`. These values can be used to individually turn on and off the notifications.

**Values**

**Table 106**

| <b>Name</b>                                             | <b>Description</b>                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopSubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> . |
| <code>uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopDemuxStarted</code>        | Represents <code>OnDemuxStarted</code> .        |
| <code>uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopDemuxStopped</code>        | Represents <code>OnDemuxStopped</code> .        |
| <code>uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopDecodersStarted</code>     | Represents <code>OnDecodersStarted</code> .     |
| <code>uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopDecodersStopped</code>     | Represents <code>OnDecodersStopped</code> .     |

**7.1.2.2.1.4      `uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopNtfSet_t`**

**Signature**

**typedef** `Int32 uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopNtfSet_t, *puhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopNtfSet_t;`

**Qualifiers**

— `enum-set`

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions, which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopNtf_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**7.1.2.2.1.5      `uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopAllNtfs`**

**Signature**

**const** `uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopNtfSet_t uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopAllNtfs = 0x1F;`

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopNtf_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**7.1.2.2.1.6      uhAtscDecCtrl\_TrickNtf\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickNtf_t {
    uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickSubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickPaused              = 0x00000002,
    uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickContinued           = 0x00000004,
    uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickStepped             = 0x00000008,
    uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickNextIframeDecoded   = 0x00000010
} uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickNtf_t, *puhAtscDecCtrl_TrickNtf_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIAtscDecTrickNtf`. These values can be used to individually turn on and off the notifications.

**Values****Table 107**

| Name                                                | Description                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickSubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> . |
| <code>uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickPaused</code>              | Represents <code>OnPaused</code> .              |
| <code>uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickContinued</code>           | Represents <code>OnContinued</code> .           |
| <code>uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickStepped</code>             | Represents <code>OnStepped</code> .             |
| <code>uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickNextIframeDecoded</code>   | Represents <code>OnNextIframeDecoded</code> .   |

**7.1.2.2.1.7      uhAtscDecCtrl\_TrickNtfSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickNtfSet_t, *puhAtscDecCtrl_TrickNtfSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions, which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickNtf_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**7.1.2.2.1.8      uhAtscDecCtrl\_TrickAllNtfs****Signature**

```
const uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickNtfSet_t uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickAllNtfs = 0x1F;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickNtf_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**7.1.2.2.1.9      `uhAtscDecCtrl_State_t`****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecCtrl_State_t {
    uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopped    = 0,
    uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStarting   = 1,
    uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStarted    = 2,
    uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopping   = 3
} uhAtscDecCtrl_State_t, *puhAtscDecCtrl_State_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the operational states of the de-multiplexer and the decoders.

**Values****Table 108**

| Name                                     | Description                    |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopped</code>  | Represents the Stopped state.  |
| <code>uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStarting</code> | Represents the Starting state. |
| <code>uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStarted</code>  | Represents the Started state.  |
| <code>uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopping</code> | Represents the Stopping state. |

**7.1.2.2.1.10      `uhAtscDec_FrameType_t`****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDec_FrameType_t {
    uhAtscDec_Iframe      = 0x00000001,
    uhAtscDec_IorPframe   = 0x00000002,
    uhAtscDec_AnyFrame    = 0x00000004
} uhAtscDec_FrameType_t, *puhAtscDec_FrameType_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— `enum-element`

**Description**

This type defines frame types.

**Values****Table 109**

| Name                             | Description         |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|
| <code>uhAtscDec_Iframe</code>    | I-frame.            |
| <code>uhAtscDec_IorPframe</code> | I-frame or P-frame. |

| Name               | Description            |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| uhAtscDec_AnyFrame | Any frame (I, P or B). |

#### 7.1.2.2.1.11 uhAtscDec\_FrameTypeSet\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhAtscDec_FrameTypeSet_t, *puhAtscDec_FrameTypeSet_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of frame types.

##### Constraints

None.

#### 7.1.2.2.1.12 uhAtscDec\_TrickState\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDec_TrickState_t {
    uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopped          = 0,
    uhAtscDec_TrickStateStarting         = 1,
    uhAtscDec_TrickStateStarted          = 2,
    uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopping        = 3,
    uhAtscDec_TrickStatePaused           = 4,
    uhAtscDec_TrickStatePausing          = 5,
    uhAtscDec_TrickStateContinuing       = 6,
    uhAtscDec_TrickStateStepping         = 7,
    uhAtscDec_TrickStateDecIframe        = 8
} uhAtscDec_TrickState_t, *puhAtscDec_TrickState_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Defines the decoding trick states.

##### Values

**Table 110**

| Name                         | Description                                                                 |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopped  | The decoders are stopped.                                                   |
| uhAtscDec_TrickStateStarting | The decoders are in transition from the stopped state to the started state. |
| uhAtscDec_TrickStateStarted  | The decoders are started.                                                   |
| uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopping | The decoders are in transition to the stopped state.                        |
| uhAtscDec_TrickStatePaused   | The decoders are paused.                                                    |

| Name                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAtscDec_TrickStatePausing    | The decoders are in transition to the paused state.                                                                                                                                            |
| uhAtscDec_TrickStateContinuing | The decoders are in transition from the paused state to the started state.                                                                                                                     |
| uhAtscDec_TrickStateStepping   | The decoders are decoding the next frame and are in the transition back to the paused state.<br>NOTE When stepping, no audio is being decoded; CC extraction is performed.                     |
| uhAtscDec_TrickStateDecIframe  | The decoders are decoding the next I-frame and are in the transition back to the stopped state.<br>NOTE When decoding the next I-frame, no audio is being decoded; CC extraction is performed. |

#### 7.1.2.2.1.13 uhAtscDec\_StreamMode\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDec_StreamMode_t {
    uhAtscDec_StreamModePush = 0,
    uhAtscDec_StreamModePull = 1
} uhAtscDec_StreamMode_t, *puhAtscDec_StreamMode_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Defines the operational stream modes of the ATSC decoder.

##### Values

Table 111

| Name                     | Description                                                         |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAtscDec_StreamModePush | Represents the push mode. See subclause 7.1.2.1.6 for more details. |
| uhAtscDec_StreamModePull | Represents the pull mode. See subclause 7.1.2.1.6 for more details. |

#### 7.1.2.2.1.14 uhAtscDec\_Speed\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef struct _uhAtscDec_Speed_t {
    UInt32 numerator;
    UInt32 denominator;
} uhAtscDec_Speed_t, *puhAtscDec_Speed_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Values of this type represent distinct values of speed, relative to normal speed. Speed is expressed in numerator / denominator. The numerator and denominator have the smallest possible value for which the expression `speed == numerator / denominator` still holds (e.g. `numerator == denominator == 1` for normal speed).

**Fields****Table 112**

| Name        | Description                   |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| numerator   | The numerator of the speed.   |
| denominator | The denominator of the speed. |

**Constraints**

numerator != 0

denominator != 0

**7.1.2.2.1.15    uhAtscDecVideo\_Ntf\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecVideo_Ntf_t {
    uhAtscDecVideo_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhAtscDecVideo_StandardDataChanged = 0x00000002,
    uhAtscDecVideo_PictureDataChanged = 0x00000004,
    uhAtscDecVideo_Error = 0x00000008,
    uhAtscDecVideo_Recovered = 0x00000010,
    uhAtscDecVideo_StableOutput = 0x00000020
} uhAtscDecVideo_Ntf_t, *puhAtscDecVideo_Ntf_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIAAtscDecVideoNtf`. These values can be used to individually turn on and off the notifications.

**Values****Table 113**

| Name                               | Description                      |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| uhAtscDecVideo_SubscriptionChanged | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged |
| uhAtscDecVideo_StandardDataChanged | Represents OnStandardDataChanged |
| uhAtscDecVideo_PictureDataChanged  | Represents OnPictureDataChanged  |
| uhAtscDecVideo_Error               | Represents OnError               |
| uhAtscDecVideo_Recovered           | Represents OnRecovered           |
| uhAtscDecVideo_StableOutput        | Represents OnStableOutput        |

**7.1.2.2.1.16    uhAtscDecVideo\_NtfSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAtscDecVideo_NtfSet_t, *puhAtscDecVideo_NtfSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions, which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhAtscDecVideo_Ntf_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**7.1.2.2.1.17    uhAtscDecVideo\_AllNtfs****Signature**

```
const uhAtscDecVideo_NtfSet_t uhAtscDecVideo_AllNtfs = 0x0000003F;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhAtscDecVideo_Ntf_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**7.1.2.2.1.18    uhAtscDecVideo\_UserDataNtf\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataNtf_t {
    uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataSubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataPicture              = 0x00000002,
    uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataGop                  = 0x00000004,
    uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataSequence             = 0x00000008
} uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataNtf_t, *puhAtscDecVideo_UserDataNtf_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. There is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIAtscDecVideoUserDataNtf`. These values can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

**Values****Table 114**

| Name                                                    | Description                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataSubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnUserDataSubscriptionChanged</code> . |
| <code>uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataPicture</code>             | Represents <code>OnUserDataPictureArrived</code> .      |



| Name                            | Description                          |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataGop      | Represents OnUserDataGopArrived      |
| uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataSequence | Represents OnUserDataSequenceArrived |

#### 7.1.2.2.1.19 uhAtscDecVideo\_UserDataNtfSet\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataNtfSet_t, *puhAtscDecVideo_UserDataNtfSet_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions, which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataNtf_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

#### 7.1.2.2.1.20 uhAtscDecVideo\_UserDataAllNtfs

##### Signature

```
const uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataNtfSet_t uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataAllNtfs =  
0x0000000F;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Defines the set of all values of type `uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataNtf_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

#### 7.1.2.2.1.21 uhAtscDecVideo\_ClipState\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum uhAtscDecVideo_ClipState_t {  
    uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStarted    = 0,  
    uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStarting   = 1,  
    uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStopped    = 2,  
    uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStopping   = 3,  
    uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStPaused     = 4,  
    uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStPausing    = 5  
} uhAtscDecVideo_ClipState_t, *puhAtscDecVideo_ClipState_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Values of this type represent the various states of the ATSC Video Decoder for Clip Play.

## Values

Table 115

| Name                          | Description                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStarted  | Represents Video Clip Play is started.        |
| uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStarting | Represents Video Clip Play is going to start. |
| uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStopped  | Represents Video Clip Play is stopped.        |
| uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStopping | Represents Video Clip Play is going to stop.  |
| uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStPaused   | Represents Video Clip Play is paused.         |
| uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStPausing  | Represents Video Clip Play is going to pause. |

## 7.1.2.2.1.22 uhAtscDecVideo\_ClipNtf\_t

## Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecVideo_ClipNtf_t {
    uhAtscDecVideo_ClipSubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhAtscDecVideo_ClipBufferAvailable     = 0x00000002,
    uhAtscDecVideo_ClipEndOfData           = 0x00000004,
    uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStarted             = 0x00000008,
    uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStopped            = 0x00000010,
    uhAtscDecVideo_ClipPaused              = 0x00000020
} uhAtscDecVideo_ClipNtf_t, *puhAtscDecVideo_ClipNtf_t;
```

## Qualifiers

— enum-element

## Description

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIAtscDecVideoClipNtf`. The values can be used to individually turn on and off the notifications.

## Values

Table 116

| Name                                   | Description                       |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhAtscDecVideo_ClipSubscriptionChanged | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged. |
| uhAtscDecVideo_ClipBufferAvailable     | Represents OnBufferAvailable      |
| uhAtscDecVideo_ClipEndOfData           | Represents OnEndOfData            |
| uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStarted             | Represents OnStarted              |
| uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStopped             | Represents OnStopped              |
| uhAtscDecVideo_ClipPaused              | Represents OnPaused               |

**7.1.2.2.1.23    uhAtscDecVideo\_ClipNtfSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAtscDecVideo_ClipNtfSet_t, *puhAtscDecVideo_ClipNtfSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhAtscDecVideo_ClipNtf_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**7.1.2.2.1.24    uhAtscDecVideo\_ClipAllNtfs****Signature**

```
const uhAtscDecVideo_ClipNtfSet_t uhAtscDecVideo_ClipAllNtfs = 0x0000003F;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhAtscDecVideo_ClipNtf_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**7.1.2.2.1.25    uhAtscDecVideo\_CompStd\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecVideo_CompStd_t {
    uhAtscDecVideo_CompStdInvalid = -2,
    uhAtscDecVideo_CompStdUnknown = -1,
    uhAtscDecVideo_CompStdMpeg2    = 1
} uhAtscDecVideo_CompStd_t, *puhAtscDecVideo_CompStd_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent digital video compression standards.

— The MPEG-2 Standard is defined in [2].

**Values****Table 117**

| Name                                       | Description                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhAtscDecVideo_CompStdInvalid</code> | The compression standard is temporarily not available.              |
| <code>uhAtscDecVideo_CompStdUnknown</code> | The compression standard is available, yet could not be determined. |
| <code>uhAtscDecVideo_CompStdMpeg2</code>   | The compression standard of the input stream is MPEG-2.             |

7.1.2.2.1.26 **uhAtscDecVideo\_Level\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecVideo_Level_t {
    uhAtscDecVideo_LevelInvalid    = -2,
    uhAtscDecVideo_LevelUnknown    = -1,
    uhAtscDecVideo_LevelLow        =  1,
    uhAtscDecVideo_LevelMain       =  2,
    uhAtscDecVideo_LevelHigh1440   =  3,
    uhAtscDecVideo_LevelHigh       =  4
} uhAtscDecVideo_Level_t, *puhAtscDecVideo_Level_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent various MPEG-2 video levels.

**Values****Table 118**

| <b>Name</b>                  | <b>Description</b>                                         |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAtscDecVideo_LevelInvalid  | The video level is temporarily not available.              |
| uhAtscDecVideo_LevelUnknown  | The video level is available, yet could not be determined. |
| uhAtscDecVideo_LevelLow      | Low level                                                  |
| uhAtscDecVideo_LevelMain     | Main level                                                 |
| uhAtscDecVideo_LevelHigh1440 | High-1440 level                                            |
| uhAtscDecVideo_LevelHigh     | High level                                                 |

7.1.2.2.1.27 **uhAtscDecVideo\_Profile\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecVideo_Profile_t {
    uhAtscDecVideo_InvalidProfile    = -2,
    uhAtscDecVideo_UnknownProfile    = -1,
    uhAtscDecVideo_SimpleProfile     =  1,
    uhAtscDecVideo_MainProfile       =  2,
    uhAtscDecVideo_SnrScalableProfile =  3,
    uhAtscDecVideo_SpatScaleProfile  =  4,
    uhAtscDecVideo_HighProfile       =  5
} uhAtscDecVideo_Profile_t, *puhAtscDecVideo_Profile_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the various MPEG-2 profiles.

**Values****Name**

uhAtscDecVideo\_InvalidProfile  
uhAtscDecVideo\_UnknownProfile  
uhAtscDecVideo\_SimpleProfile  
uhAtscDecVideo\_MainProfile  
uhAtscDecVideo\_SnrScalableProfile  
uhAtscDecVideo\_SpatScaleProfile  
uhAtscDecVideo\_HighProfile

**Table 119****Description**

The MPEG-2 profile is temporarily not available.  
The MPEG-2 profile is available, yet could not be determined.  
Simple Profile  
Main Profile  
SNR Scalable Profile  
Spatially Scalable Profile  
High Profile

**7.1.2.2.1.28 uhAtscDecVideo\_FrameRate\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecVideo_FrameRate_t {
    uhAtscDecVideo_InvalidFrameRate = -2,
    uhAtscDecVideo_UnknownFrameRate = -1,
    uhAtscDecVideo_23_976Hz         = 1,
    uhAtscDecVideo_24Hz              = 2,
    uhAtscDecVideo_29_97Hz           = 3,
    uhAtscDecVideo_30Hz              = 4,
    uhAtscDecVideo_59_94Hz           = 5,
    uhAtscDecVideo_60Hz              = 6
} uhAtscDecVideo_FrameRate_t, *puhAtscDecVideo_FrameRate_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent frame rates of the incoming video signal.

**Values****Name**

uhAtscDecVideo\_InvalidFrameRate  
uhAtscDecVideo\_UnknownFrameRate  
uhAtscDecVideo\_23\_976Hz  
uhAtscDecVideo\_24Hz  
uhAtscDecVideo\_29\_97Hz  
uhAtscDecVideo\_30Hz  
uhAtscDecVideo\_59\_94Hz  
uhAtscDecVideo\_60Hz

**Table 120****Description**

The frame rate is temporarily not available.  
The frame rate is available, yet could not be determined.  
23.976 frames per second.  
24 frames per second.  
29.97 frames per second.  
30 frames per second.  
59.94 frames per second.  
60 frames per second.

**7.1.2.2.1.29    uhAtscDecVideo\_ScanType\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecVideo_ScanType_t {
    uhAtscDecVideo_ScanTypeInvalid      = -2,
    uhAtscDecVideo_ScanTypeUnknown      = -1,
    uhAtscDecVideo_ScanTypeInterlaced   =  1,
    uhAtscDecVideo_ScanTypeProgressive  =  2
} uhAtscDecVideo_ScanType_t, *puhAtscDecVideo_ScanType_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent scan types.

**Values****Table 121****Name****Description**

uhAtscDecVideo\_ScanTypeInvalid

The scan type is temporarily not available.

uhAtscDecVideo\_ScanTypeUnknown

The scan type is available, yet could not be determined.

uhAtscDecVideo\_ScanTypeInterlaced

Interlaced scanning.

uhAtscDecVideo\_ScanTypeProgressive

Progressive scanning.

**7.1.2.2.1.30    uhAtscDecVideo\_Error\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecVideo_Error_t {
    uhAtscDecVideo_NoError      = 0x00000000,
    uhAtscDecVideo_DeclarePicture = 0x00000001,
    uhAtscDecVideo_Underrun      = 0x00000002
} uhAtscDecVideo_Error_t, *puhAtscDecVideo_Error_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

This type enumerates the errors that can occur in the video decoder.

**Values****Table 122****Name****Description**

uhAtscDecVideo\_NoError

Indicates that there is no error.

uhAtscDecVideo\_DeclarePicture

Indicates an error occurred while decoding a picture of video

uhAtscDecVideo\_Underrun

Indicates an underrun error due to insufficient data

**7.1.2.2.1.31    uhAtscDecVideo\_ErrorSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAtscDecVideo_ErrorSet_t, *puhAtscDecVideo_ErrorSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

This type represents sets of errors that can occur in the video decoder. Values of this type are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type uhAtscDecVideo\_Error\_t.

**7.1.2.2.1.32    uhAtscDecAudio\_CompStd\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecAudio_CompStd_t {
    uhAtscDecAudio_CompStdInvalid = -2,
    uhAtscDecAudio_CompStdUnknown = -1,
    uhAtscDecAudio_CompStdAc3      = 1,
    uhAtscDecAudio_Mpeg1Layer1     = 2,
    uhAtscDecAudio_Mpeg1Layer2     = 3,
    uhAtscDecAudio_Mpeg1Layer3     = 4
} uhAtscDecAudio_CompStd_t, *puhAtscDecAudio_CompStd_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent digital audio compression standards.

- The AC-3 Standard is defined in [5]. See [13], for restriction of the AC-3 standard for ATSC.
- The MPEG-1 Standards are defined in [1]. The MPEG-1 Standards are only used for clip play.

**Values****Table 123****Name****Description**

uhAtscDecAudio\_CompStdInvalid

The compression standard is temporarily not available.

uhAtscDecAudio\_CompStdUnknown

The compression standard is available, yet could not be determined.

uhAtscDecAudio\_CompStdAc3

AC-3.

uhAtscDecAudio\_Mpeg1Layer1

MPEG-1, layer I.

uhAtscDecAudio\_Mpeg1Layer2

MPEG-1, layer II.

uhAtscDecAudio\_Mpeg1Layer3

MPEG-1, layer III.

**7.1.2.2.1.33    uhAtscDecAudio\_SampFreq\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecAudio_SampFreq_t {
    uhAtscDecAudio_FreqInvalid = -2,
    uhAtscDecAudio_FreqUnknown = -1,
    uhAtscDecAudio_48k         = 1,
    uhAtscDecAudio_32k         = 2,
    uhAtscDecAudio_44k1        = 3
} uhAtscDecAudio_SampFreq_t, *puhAtscDecAudio_SampFreq_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the sampling frequency of the incoming digital audio signal.

**Values****Table 124**

| Name                       | Description                                                       |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAtscDecAudio_FreqInvalid | The sampling frequency is temporarily not available.              |
| uhAtscDecAudio_FreqUnknown | The sampling frequency is available, yet could not be determined. |
| uhAtscDecAudio_48k         | 48 kHz sampling frequency.                                        |
| uhAtscDecAudio_32k         | 32 kHz sampling frequency.                                        |
| uhAtscDecAudio_44k1        | 44.1 kHz sampling frequency.                                      |

**7.1.2.2.1.34    uhAtscDecAudio\_ServiceType\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecAudio_ServiceType_t {
    uhAtscDecAudio_ServiceInvalid   = -2,
    uhAtscDecAudio_ServiceUnknown   = -1,
    uhAtscDecAudio_CompleteMain     = 1,
    uhAtscDecAudio_MusicAndEffects  = 2,
    uhAtscDecAudio_VisuallyImpaired = 3,
    uhAtscDecAudio_HearingImpaired  = 4,
    uhAtscDecAudio_Dialogue         = 5,
    uhAtscDecAudio_Commentary       = 6,
    uhAtscDecAudio_Emergency        = 7,
    uhAtscDecAudio_VoiceOver        = 8
} uhAtscDecAudio_ServiceType_t, *puhAtscDecAudio_ServiceType_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type provide information about the type of audio service the digital audio input stream of the Decoder conveys.



**Values****Name**

uhAtscDecAudio\_ServiceInvalid  
uhAtscDecAudio\_ServiceUnknown  
uhAtscDecAudio\_CompleteMain  
uhAtscDecAudio\_MusicAndEffects  
uhAtscDecAudio\_VisuallyImpaired  
uhAtscDecAudio\_HearingImpaired  
uhAtscDecAudio\_Dialogue  
uhAtscDecAudio\_Commentary  
uhAtscDecAudio\_Emergency  
uhAtscDecAudio\_VoiceOver

**Table 125****Description**

The Audio Service is temporarily not available.  
The Audio Service is available, yet could not be determined.  
Main Audio Service: Complete Main.  
Main Audio Service: Music and Effects.  
Associated Audio Service: Visually Impaired.  
Associated Audio Service: Hearing Impaired.  
Associated Audio Service: Dialogue.  
Associated Audio Service: Commentary.  
Associated Audio Service: Emergency.  
Associated Audio Service: Voice-Over.

**7.1.2.2.1.35 uhAtscDecAudio\_DolbySurroundInfo\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum uhAtscDecAudio_DolbySurroundInfo_t {
    uhAtscDecAudio_DolbyInvalid      = -2,
    uhAtscDecAudio_DolbyUnknown      = -1,
    uhAtscDecAudio_NotDolbySurround =  1,
    uhAtscDecAudio_DolbySurround     =  2
} uhAtscDecAudio_DolbySurroundInfo_t; *puhAtscDecAudio_DolbySurroundInfo_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type provide information about the presence of Dolby Surround in the digital audio input stream of the Decoder.

**Values****Name**

uhAtscDecAudio\_DolbyInvalid  
uhAtscDecAudio\_DolbyUnknown  
uhAtscDecAudio\_NotDolbySurround  
uhAtscDecAudio\_DolbySurround

**Table 126****Description**

The Dolby Surround info is temporarily not available.  
The presence of Dolby Surround info could not be determined.  
Dolby Surround is not present in the audio input stream.  
Dolby Surround is present in the audio input stream.

7.1.2.2.1.36 **uhAtscDecAudio\_Error\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecAudio_Error_t {
    uhAtscDecAudio_NoError          = 0x00000000,
    uhAtscDecAudio_SyncNotFound     = 0x00000001,
    uhAtscDecAudio_InvalidHeader    = 0x00000002,
    uhAtscDecAudio_DecodeFrame      = 0x00000004,
    uhAtscDecAudio_CrcFailed        = 0x00000008,
    uhAtscDecAudio_Underrun         = 0x00000010
} uhAtscDecAudio_Error_t, *puhAtscDecAudio_Error_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

This type enumerates the errors that can occur in the audio decoder.

**Values****Table 127**

| Name                         | Description                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAtscDecAudio_NoError       | Indicates that there is no error.                                                                                                                      |
| uhAtscDecAudio_SyncNotFound  | The decoder did not find a valid sync word within the search range. To maintain a continuous data stream at the output the decoder may mute one frame. |
| uhAtscDecAudio_InvalidHeader | Invalid header. Error while parsing the bit stream.                                                                                                    |
| uhAtscDecAudio_DecodeFrame   | An error occurred while decoding. The decoder may perform muting of the current audio block, and the rest of the frame.                                |
| uhAtscDecAudio_CrcFailed     | The calculation of the CRC derived a wrong value. Audio block muting or audio block repeating may be performed.                                        |
| uhAtscDecAudio_Underrun      | The decoder requested data, but none was available.                                                                                                    |

7.1.2.2.1.37 **uhAtscDecAudio\_ErrorSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAtscDecAudio_ErrorSet_t, *puhAtscDecAudio_ErrorSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

This type represents sets of errors that can occur in the audio decoder. Values of this type are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type uhAtscDecAudio\_Error\_t.

7.1.2.2.1.38 **uhAtscDecAudio\_Ntf\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecAudio_Ntf_t {
    uhAtscDecAudio_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhAtscDecAudio_StandardChanged    = 0x00000002,
    uhAtscDecAudio_SampFreqChanged    = 0x00000004,
    uhAtscDecAudio_BitRateChanged     = 0x00000008,
    uhAtscDecAudio_ChannelsChanged    = 0x00000010,
    uhAtscDecAudio_ServiceTypeChanged = 0x00000020,
    uhAtscDecAudio_DolbySurroundChanged = 0x00000040,
    uhAtscDecAudio_Error              = 0x00000080,
    uhAtscDecAudio_Recovered          = 0x00000100,
    uhAtscDecAudio_StableOutput       = 0x00000200
} uhAtscDecAudio_Ntf_t, *puhAtscDecAudio_Ntf_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhAtscDecAudioNtf`. The values can be used to individually turn on and off the notifications.

**Values****Table 128**

| Name                                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhAtscDecAudio_SubscriptionChanged</code>  | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> .                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>uhAtscDecAudio_StandardChanged</code>      | Represents <code>OnStandardChanged</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>uhAtscDecAudio_SampFreqChanged</code>      | Represents <code>OnSampFreqChanged</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>uhAtscDecAudio_BitRateChanged</code>       | Represents <code>OnBitRateChanged</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>uhAtscDecAudio_ChannelsChanged</code>      | Represents <code>OnChannelsChanged</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>uhAtscDecAudio_ServiceTypeChanged</code>   | Represents <code>OnServiceTypeChanged</code> .                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>uhAtscDecAudio_DolbySurroundChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnDolbySurroundChanged</code> .                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>uhAtscDecAudio_Error</code>                | Some error(s) occurred while decoding the incoming signal. The exact error(s) that occurred will be an argument of the <code>OnError</code> notification that is generated (see type <code>uhAtscDecAudio_Error_t</code> ). |
| <code>uhAtscDecAudio_Recovered</code>            | Represents <code>OnRecovered</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>uhAtscDecAudio_StableOutput</code>         | Represents <code>OnStableOutput</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                    |

#### 7.1.2.2.1.39 uhAtscDecAudio\_NtfSet\_t

**Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAtscDecAudio_NtfSet_t, *puhAtscDecAudio_NtfSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type uhAtscDecAudio\_Ntf\_t. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**Constraints**

None.

#### 7.1.2.2.1.40 uhAtscDecAudio\_AllNtfs

**Signature**

```
const uhAtscDecAudio_Ntf_t uhAtscDecAudio_AllNtfs = 0x000003FF;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type uhAtscDecAudio\_Ntf\_t. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

#### 7.1.2.2.1.41 uhAtscDecAudio\_ClipState\_t

**Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecAudio_ClipState_t {
    uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStarted    = 0,
    uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStarting   = 1,
    uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStopped    = 2,
    uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStopping   = 3,
    uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStPaused     = 4,
    uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStPausing    = 5
} uhAtscDecAudio_ClipState_t, *puhAtscDecAudio_ClipState_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the various state of the ATSC Audio Decoder for Clip Play.

**Values****Table 129**

| <b>Name</b>                   | <b>Description</b>                            |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStarted  | Represents Audio Clip Play is started.        |
| uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStarting | Represents Audio Clip Play is going to start. |
| uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStopped  | Represents Audio Clip Play is stopped.        |
| uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStopping | Represents Audio Clip Play is going to stop.  |
| uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStPaused   | Represents Audio Clip Play is paused.         |
| uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStPausing  | Represents Audio Clip Play is going to pause. |

**7.1.2.2.1.42 uhAtscDecAudio\_ClipNtf\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecAudio_ClipNtf_t {
    uhAtscDecAudio_ClipSubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhAtscDecAudio_ClipBufferAvailable     = 0x00000002,
    uhAtscDecAudio_ClipEndOfData           = 0x00000004,
    uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStarted              = 0x00000008,
    uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStopped              = 0x00000010,
    uhAtscDecAudio_ClipPaused               = 0x00000020
} uhAtscDecAudio_ClipNtf_t, *puhAtscDecAudio_ClipNtf_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIAAtscDecAudioClipNtf`. The values can be used to individually turn on and off the notifications.

**Values****Table 130**

| <b>Name</b>                            | <b>Description</b>                |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhAtscDecAudio_ClipSubscriptionChanged | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged. |
| uhAtscDecAudio_ClipBufferAvailable     | Represents OnBufferAvailable      |
| uhAtscDecAudio_ClipEndOfData           | Represents OnEndOfData            |
| uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStarted             | Represents OnStarted              |
| uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStopped             | Represents OnStopped              |
| uhAtscDecAudio_ClipPaused              | Represents OnPaused               |

**7.1.2.2.1.43    uhAtscDecAudio\_ClipNtfSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAtscDecAudio_ClipNtfSet_t, *puhAtscDecAudio_ClipNtfSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type uhAtscDecAudio\_ClipNtf\_t. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**7.1.2.2.1.44    uhAtscDecAudio\_ClipAllNtfs****Signature**

```
const uhAtscDecAudio_ClipNtfSet_t uhAtscDecAudio_ClipAllNtfs = 0x0000003F;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type uhAtscDecAudio\_ClipNtf\_t. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**7.1.2.2.1.45    uhAtscDecCcExtr\_Ntf\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAtscDecCcExtr_Ntf_t {
    uhAtscDecCcExtr_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhAtscDecCcExtr_Eia708Data          = 0x00000002,
    uhAtscDecCcExtr_SelectedServiceData = 0x00000004,
    uhAtscDecCcExtr_Eia608Data          = 0x00000008
} uhAtscDecCcExtr_Ntf_t, *puhAtscDecCcExtr_Ntf_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface

uhIAtscDecCcExtrNtf. The values can be used to individually turn on and off the notifications.

**Values****Table 131****Name**

uhAtscDecCcExtr\_SubscriptionChanged

**Description**

Represents OnSubscriptionChanged.

| Name                                | Description                       |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhAtscDecCcExtr_Eia708Data          | Represents OnEia708Data.          |
| uhAtscDecCcExtr_SelectedServiceData | Represents OnSelectedServiceData. |
| uhAtscDecCcExtr_Eia608Data          | Represents OnEia608Data.          |

#### 7.1.2.2.1.46 uhAtscDecCcExtr\_NtfSet\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhAtscDecCcExtr_NtfSet_t, *puhAtscDecCcExtr_NtfSet_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type uhAtscDecCcExtr\_Ntf\_t. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

#### 7.1.2.2.1.47 uhAtscDecCcExtr\_AllNtfs

##### Signature

```
const uhAtscDecCcExtr_NtfSet_t uhAtscDecCcExtr_AllNtfs = 0x0000000F;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Defines the set of all values of type uhAtscDecCcExtr\_Ntf\_t. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

#### 7.1.2.2.1.48 Externally referenced types.

Please refer to 8.1.13 and 8.1.12 for understanding the

- error codes and
- types and constants

of the ATSC Demux and ATSC System Time Clock decoder.

7.1.2.2.2 Model Types & Constants

7.1.2.2.2.1 AvClipBuffer

Signature

```
typedef struct {
    UInt32  bufferId;
    UInt32  bufferSize;
    pUInt8  pBuffer;
    Bool    bufferEndOfData;
} AvClipBuffer;
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

Values of this type represent an Audio or Video Clip Buffer.

Fields

Table 132

| Name            | Description                                                               |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| bufferId        | Identification for the buffer.                                            |
| bufferSize      | Size of the data pointed by pBuffer.                                      |
| pBuffer         | A pointer to the buffer (av clip content).                                |
| bufferEndOfData | Indication whether the buffer contains end of data (True) or not (False). |

7.1.2.3 Logical Component

7.1.2.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 23 depicts the interface role model for the ATSC Decoder logical component (the grey box in the interface-role diagram).



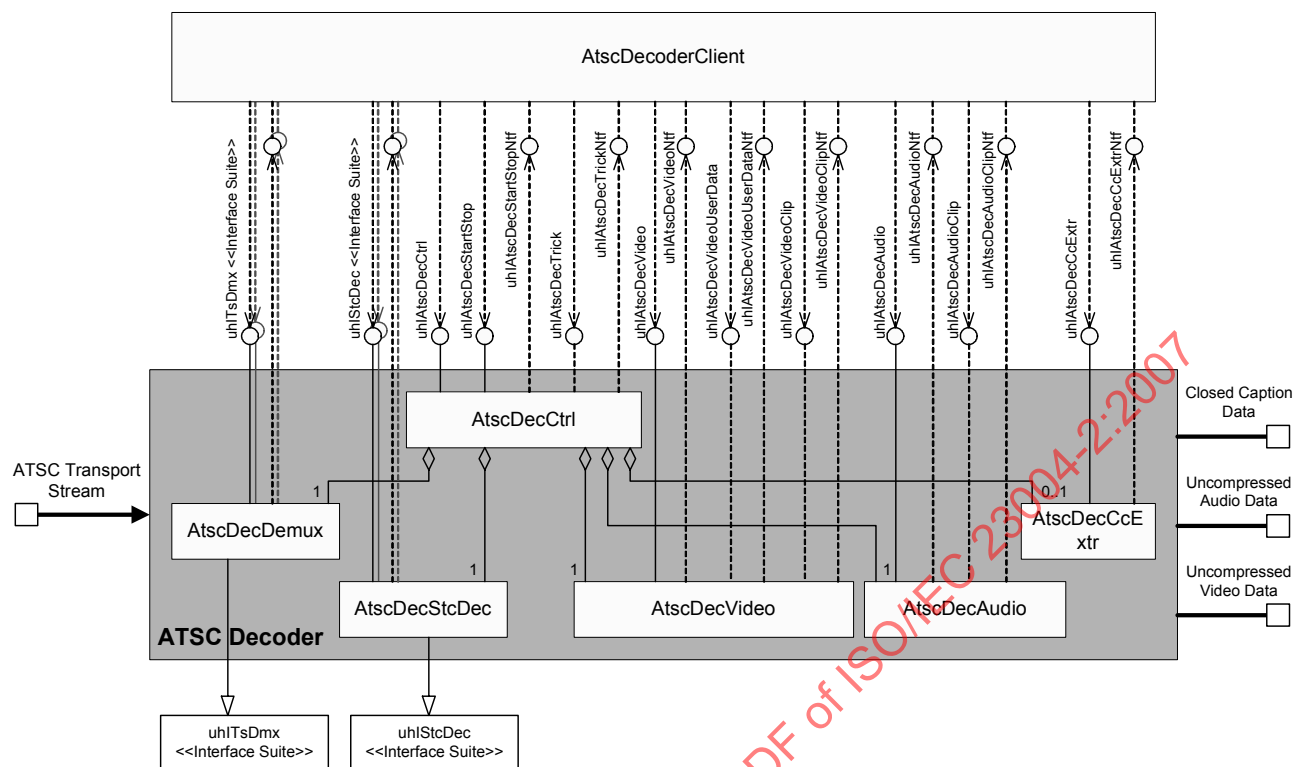


Figure 23 — Interface-Role Model of an ATSC Decoder

As shown in the figure an ATSC Decoder logical component has the following roles:

- An **AtscDecCtrl** that provides interfaces for controlling the entire ATSC Decoder logical component **AtscDec**. Further, it provides interfaces for accessing various roles/interfaces of the ATSC Decoder logical component. The relationship with all other roles are as depicted in Figure 23. The **AtscDecCtrl** also has interfaces for starting and stopping and for trick play.
- An **AtscDecDemux** providing interfaces for demultiplexing the incoming ATSC Transport Stream into an Audio and Video part. It also filters sections and private PES packets. It is important to note that **AtscDecDemux** role is specializing the **uhITsDmx** interface suite. Please refer to 8.1.13 for more details on the interfaces that **uhITsDmx** suite provides.
- An **AtscDecVideo** providing interfaces to decode the incoming compressed ATSC video stream. It has a mandatory **uhIAtscDecVideo** interface, which allows the user to query the incoming stream attributes and be notified of stream attributes and its changes. The optional **uhIAtscDecVideoNtf** if provided by the client is used for notification purposes. The **AtscDecVideo** has also an optional interface (**uhIAtscDecVideoUserData**) that allows to selectively extract user data present in the digital video stream. The optional interface **uhIAtscDecVideoClip** enables the client to use the video decoder for decoding video clips and provides control to the video clip play functionality. The optional **uhIAtscDecVideoClipNtf** interface enables the client to be notified of events such as the start, the end, the pausing of the video clip play.
- An **AtscDecAudio** providing interfaces to decode the incoming compressed ATSC audio stream. It has a mandatory **uhIAtscDecAudio** interface, which is used by the client to get notified of stream attributes and its changes. The optional interface **uhIAtscDecAudioNtf** if provided by the client is used for notification purposes. The optional interface **uhIAtscDecAudioClip** enables the client to use the audio decoder for decoding audio clips and provides control to the audio clip play functionality. The optional **uhIAtscDecAudioClipNtf** interface enables the client to be notified of events such as the start, the end, the pausing of the audio clip play.

- An `AtscDecStcDec` providing interfaces for monitoring the System Time Clock and associated alarms. It is important to note that `AtscDecStcDec` role is specializing the `uhIStcDec` interface suite. Please refer to 8.1.12 for more details on the interfaces that `uhIStcDec` suite provides.
- An `AtscDecCcExtr` providing interfaces for the client to retrieve EIA 608/708 data. It has a mandatory interface `uhIAtscDecCcExtr` EIA 608/708 data retrieval services. It is important to note that this role is optional.

### 7.1.2.3.2 Diversity

#### 7.1.2.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 133

| Role                       | Interface                                  | Presence   |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------|------------|
| <code>AtscDecAudio</code>  | <code>uhIAtscDecAudio</code>               | mandatory  |
| <code>AtscDecClient</code> | <code>uhIAtscDecAudioNtf</code>            | optional   |
| <code>AtscDecAudio</code>  | <code>uhIAtscDecAudioClip</code>           | optional   |
| <code>AtscDecClient</code> | <code>uhIAtscDecAudioClipNtf</code>        | optional   |
| <code>AtscDecCcExtr</code> | <code>uhIAtscDecCcExtr</code>              | mandatory  |
| <code>AtscDecClient</code> | <code>uhIAtscDecCcExtrNtf</code>           | optional   |
| <code>AtscDecCtrl</code>   | <code>uhIAtscDecCtrl</code>                | mandatory  |
| <code>AtscDecCtrl</code>   | <code>uhIAtscDecStartStop</code>           | mandatory  |
| <code>AtscDecClient</code> | <code>uhIAtscDecStartStopNtf</code>        | optional   |
| <code>AtscDecCtrl</code>   | <code>uhIAtscDecTrick</code>               | optional   |
| <code>AtscDecClient</code> | <code>uhIAtscDecTrickNtf</code>            | optional   |
| <code>AtscDecVideo</code>  | <code>uhIAtscDecVideo</code>               | mandatory  |
| <code>AtscDecClient</code> | <code>uhIAtscDecVideoNtf</code>            | optional   |
| <code>AtscDecVideo</code>  | <code>uhIAtscDecVideoUserData</code>       | optional   |
| <code>AtscDecClient</code> | <code>uhIAtscDecVideoUserDataNtf</code>    | optional   |
| <code>AtscDecVideo</code>  | <code>uhIAtscDecVideoClip</code>           | optional   |
| <code>AtscDecClient</code> | <code>uhIAtscDecVideoClipNtf</code>        | optional   |
| <code>AtscDecStcDec</code> | <code>uhIStcDec</code> <<interface suite>> | See 8.1.12 |
| <code>AtscDecDemux</code>  | <code>uhITsDmx</code> <<interface suite>>  | See 8.1.13 |

#### 7.1.2.3.2.2 Configurable Items

The configurable items are captured against each role of the ATSC Decoder.

Table 134

| Role                     | Attribute                    |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| <code>AtscDecCtrl</code> | <code>ccExtrSupported</code> |

| Role          | Attribute          |
|---------------|--------------------|
| AtscDecCtrl   | nrSuppSpeeds       |
| AtscDecCtrl   | suppSpeeds         |
| AtscDecCtrl   | suppFrameDecModes  |
| AtscDecCcExtr | maxNrServices      |
| AtscDecAudio  | clipPauseSupported |
| AtscDecAudio  | clipMaxNrBuffers   |
| AtscDecDemux  | See 8.1.13.        |
| AtscDecStcDec | See 8.1.12.        |
| AtscDecVideo  | clipPauseSupported |
| AtscDecVideo  | clipStepSupported  |
| AtscDecVideo  | clipMaxNrBuffers   |

### 7.1.2.3.3 Constraints

The constraints of this logical component are captured against each role of the ATSC Decoder.

#### AtscDecCtrl

- nrSuppSpeeds != 0
- Normal speed (1/1) in suppSpeeds
- uhAtscDec\_AnyFrame in suppFrameDecModes

#### AtscDecDemux

See 8.1.13.

#### AtscDecStcDec

See 8.1.12.

#### AtscDecVideo

- if clipPauseSupported == False
  - clipStepSupported == False

#### AtscDecAudio

None.

#### AtscDecCcExtr

None.

### 7.1.2.3.3 Instantiation

#### 7.1.2.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 135

| Type          | Object | Multiplicity |
|---------------|--------|--------------|
| AtscDecVideo  | vdec   | 1            |
| AtscDecCcExtr | ccextr | 0..1         |
| AtscDecAudio  | adec   | 1            |
| AtscDecDemux  | dmx    | 1            |
| AtscDecStcDec | stcdec | 1            |
| AtscDecCtrl   | ctrl   | 1            |

### 7.1.2.3.3.2 Initial State

The initial state of AtscDec logical component is captured in terms of its roles.

#### AtscDecCtrl

```

— if(ctrl.ccExtrSupported == False)
—   ctrl.pIAtscDecCcExtr == NULL
— ctrl.demuxState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopped
— ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopped
— ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopped
— ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec_StreamModePush
— ctrl.speed.numerator == 1
— ctrl.speed.denominator == 1
— ctrl.pauseAtEnabled == False
— ctrl.pauseAtFirstFrame == False
— ctrl.decodingFrameMode == uhAtscDec_AnyFrame

```

#### AtscDecDemux

See 8.1.13.

#### AtscDecStcDec

See 8.1.12.

#### AtscDecVideo

```

— vdec.compressionStd == uhAtscDecVideo_CompStdInvalid
— vdec.level == uhAtscDecVideo_LevelInvalid
— vdec.profile == uhAtscDecVideo_InvalidProfile
— vdec.resStatus == uhAtscDec_ValStatInvalid
— vdec.height == 0
— vdec.width == 0
— vdec.frameRate == uhAtscDecVideo_InvalidFrameRate
— vdec.scanType == uhAtscDecVideo_ScanTypeInvalid
— vdec.seqDataStatus == uhAtscDec_ValStatInvalid
— vdec.gopDataStatus == uhAtscDec_ValStatInvalid
— vdec.picDataStatus == uhAtscDec_ValStatInvalid
— vdec.errorStatus == uhAtscDecVideo_NoError
— vdec.stableOutput == False
— vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStopped

```

```
— vdec.avclip == {}
```

#### **AtscDecAudio**

```
— adec.compStandard == uhAtscDecAudio_CompStdInvalid
— adec.sampFreq == uhAtscDecAudio_FreqInvalid
— adec.bitRateStatus == uhAtscDec_ValStatInvalid
— adec.variableBitRate == False
— adec.bitRate == 0
— adec.channelStatus == uhAtscDec_ValStatInvalid
— adec.frontChannels == 0
— adec.rearChannels == 0
— adec.lfeChannelPresent == False
— adec.serviceType == uhAtscDecAudio_ServiceInvalid
— adec.dolbySurroundPresent == uhAtscDecAudio_DolbyInvalid
— adec.errorStatus == uhAtscDecAudio_NoError
— adec.stableOutput == False
— vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStopped
— vdec.avclip == {}
```

#### **AtscDecCcExtr**

```
— ccextr.eia708DataStatus == uhAtscDec_ValStatInvalid
— ccextr.selServiceDataStatus == uhAtscDec_ValStatInvalid
— ccextr.eia608DataStatus == uhAtscDec_ValStatInvalid
— ccextr.nrServicesSelected == 0
— For each i in {0 .. ccextr.maxNrServices - 1}
  — ccextr.servicesSelected[i] == 0
```

#### **7.1.2.3.4 Execution Constraints**

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

The **AtscDecCtrl** role will only notify **OnDecodersStopped** once all events in the **AtscDecCtrl**, **AtscDecVideo**, **AtscDecAudio**, **AtscDecStc** and the **AtscDecCcExtr** roles that occurred before the ATSC decoder entered the stopped state for decoding (**ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl\_StateStopped**), are notified and the corresponding notification functions returned.

The **AtscDecCtrl** role will only notify **OnDemuxStopped** once all events in the **uhITsDmx** roles that occurred before the ATSC decoder entered the stopped state for the demux (**ctrl.demuxState == uhAtscDecCtrl\_StateStopped**), are notified and the corresponding notification functions returned.

## 7.1.2.4 Roles

## 7.1.2.4.1 AtscDecCtrl

## Signature

```

role AtscDecCtrl {
    puhIAtscDecVideo                pIAtscDecVideo;
    puhIAtscDecAudio                pIAtscDecAudio;
    puhIAtscDecCcExtr               pIAtscDecCcExtr;
    puhITsDmx                       pIAtscDecDemux;
    puhIStcDec                      pIAtscDecStcDec;
    const Bool                      ccExtrSupported;
    uhAtscDecCtrl_State_t           demuxState;
    uhAtscDecCtrl_State_t           decodingState;
    uhAtscDec_TrickState_t          trickState;
    uhAtscDec_StreamMode_t          streamMode;
    const UInt32                    nrSuppSpeeds;
    const uhAtscDec_Speed_t          suppSpeeds[nrSuppSpeeds];
    uhAtscDec_Speed_t               speed;
    uhTimeStamp_t                   pauseAtPts;
    uhAtscDec_FrameType_t           pauseAtType;
    Bool                            pauseAtEnabled;
    Bool                            pauseAtFirstFrame;
    const uhAtscDec_FrameTypeSet_t  suppFrameDecModes;
    uhAtscDec_FrameType_t           frameDecMode;
}

```

## Qualifiers

— root

## Description

AtscDecCtrl provides navigational facilities for the AtscDecClient to access and interact with other roles of AtscDec.

## Independent Attributes

Table 136

| Name            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pIAtscDecVideo  | Interface pointer to the ATSC Video Decoder associated with this AtscDec.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| pIAtscDecDemux  | Interface pointer to the ATSC Demux associated with this AtscDec.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| pIAtscDecAudio  | Interface pointer to the ATSC Audio Decoder associated with this AtscDec.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| pIAtscDecCcExtr | Interface pointer to the ATSC Closed Caption Extractor associated with this AtscDec.                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| pIAtscDecStcDec | Interface pointer to the ATSC System Time Clock Decoder associated with this AtscDec.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| ccExtrSupported | Indicates whether AtscDecCcExtr functionality is supported by AtscDec. If “True” AtscDecCcExtr functionality is supported and “False” if not supported.                                                                                                                                             |
| demuxState      | The current state of the AtscDecDemux. Figure 24 shows the corresponding state diagram. Note that the difference between push and pull, as shown in the figure, is modeled by the streamMode attribute.                                                                                             |
| decodingState   | The current state of the AtscDecAudio, AtscDecVideo, AtscDecStcDec, and AtscDecCcExtr. Figure 24 shows the corresponding state diagram (replace StartDemux by StartDecoders, etc.). Note that the difference between push and pull, as shown in the figure, is modeled by the streamMode attribute. |

| Name              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| trickState        | The current trick state of the ATSC Decoder. Figure 25 shows the corresponding state diagram. Note that the difference between push and pull, as shown in the figure, is modeled by the streamMode attribute. |
| streamMode        | The current stream mode, being either push or pull.                                                                                                                                                           |
| nrSuppSpeeds      | The number of supported decoding speeds.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| suppSpeeds        | Array containing the supported decoding speeds.                                                                                                                                                               |
| speed             | The current decoding speed.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| pauseAtPts        | The pause at PTS value.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| pauseAtType       | The frame type to pause on when the PTS expires.                                                                                                                                                              |
| pauseAtEnabled    | Indicates whether a pause at a certain PTS value has been enabled (enabled is True, disabled is False).                                                                                                       |
| pauseAtFirstFrame | Indicates whether the decoding must pause at the first frame that is decoded when decoding is started (is True, if and when pause on first frame is enabled, is False otherwise).                             |
| suppFrameDecModes | The set of supported frame decoding modes.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| frameDecMode      | The current frame decoding mode.                                                                                                                                                                              |

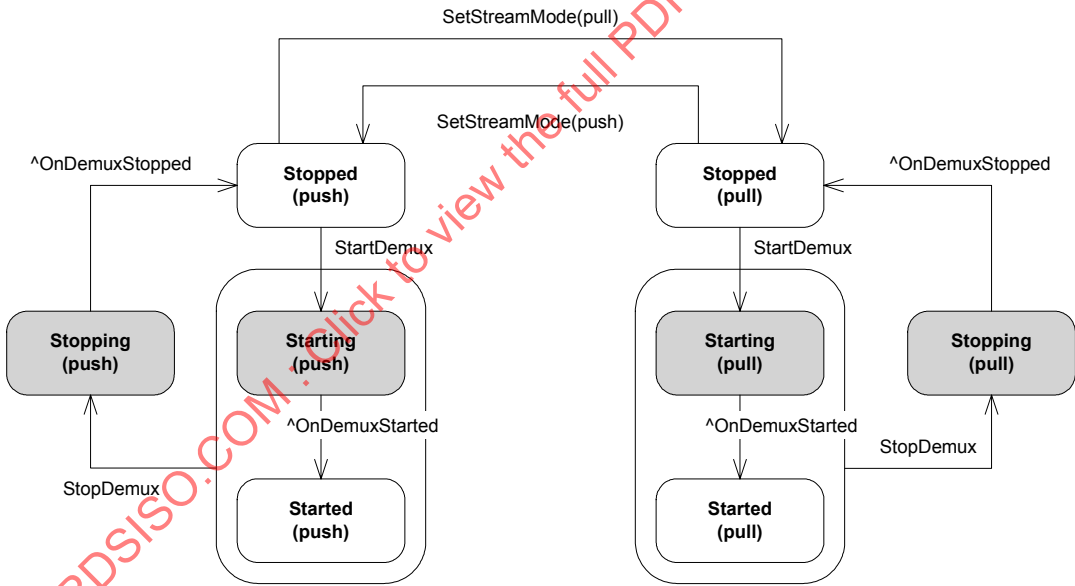


**Figure 24** — The state machine for the demux (as represented by the `demuxState` attribute). The state machine for the decoding (as represented by the `decodingState` attribute is similar (replace “Demux” by “Decoders”). The colored states are transitory states.

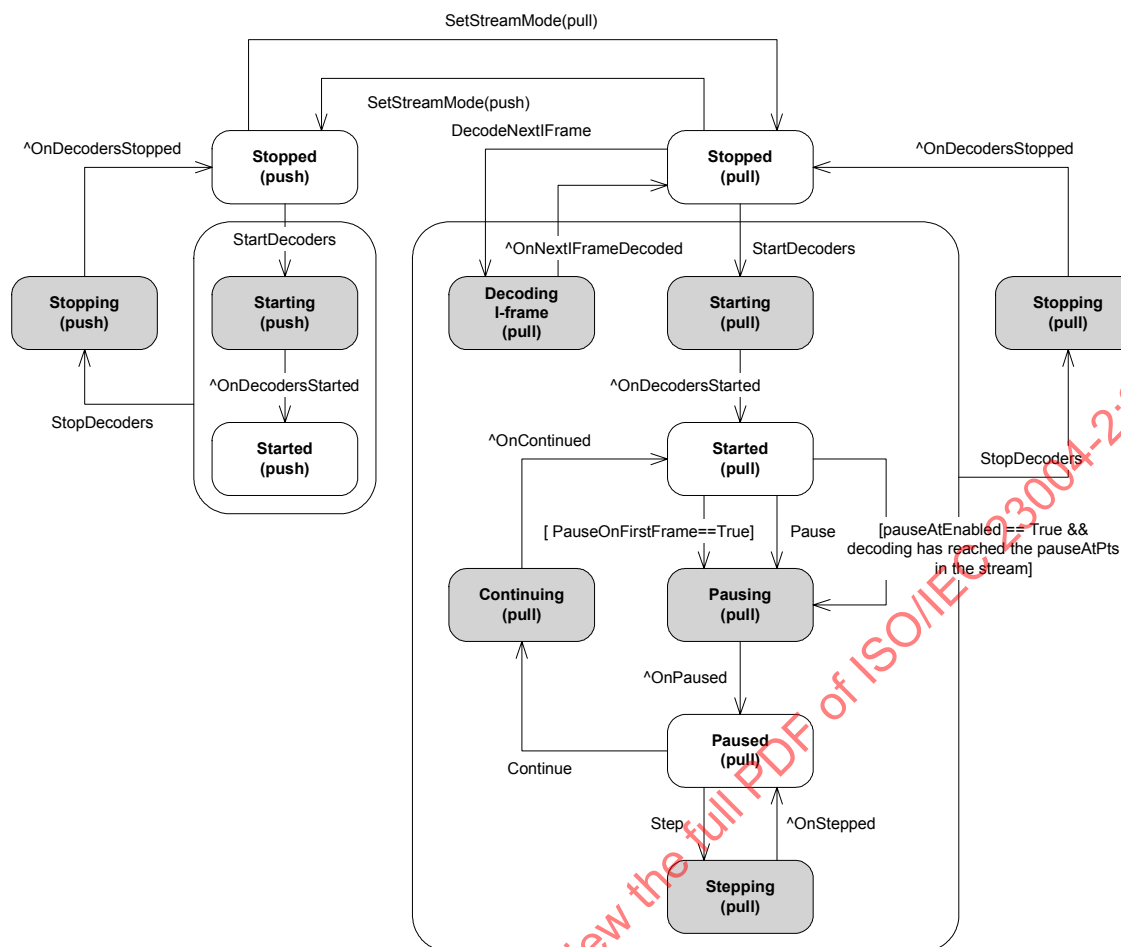


**Figure 25 — The state machine for trick play decoding (as represented by the `trickState` attribute).  
The colored states are transitory states.**

#### Invariants

- `frameDecMode` in `suppFrameDecModes`
- `speed` in `suppSpeeds`

#### Instantiation

`AtscDecCtrl` is always instantiated as part of `AtscDec`.

#### Streaming Behavior

None.

#### Active Behavior

The `AtscDecCtrl` has standard notification behavior (see `uhIAtscDecStartStopNtf` and `uhIAtscDecTrickNtf`), apart from the following events.



Table 137

| Event                                                                                                                 | Action                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Only if <code>ctrl.pauseAtEnabled == True</code> :                                                                    | <code>ctrl.trickState = uhAtscDec_TrickStatePausing</code>                                                                                    |
| The decoding reaches a PTS in the stream that matches <code>ctrl.pauseAtPts</code> .                                  |                                                                                                                                               |
| Only if <code>ctrl.pauseAtEnabled == True</code> and <code>ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStatePausing</code> :    | <code>ctrl.pauseAtEnabled = False</code><br><code>ctrl.trickState = uhAtscDec_TrickStatePaused</code><br>— <code>notify OnPaused(*)</code>    |
| The first frame with a frame type that matches <code>ctrl.pauseAtType</code> has been decoded.                        |                                                                                                                                               |
| Only if <code>ctrl.pauseAtFirstFrame == True</code> :                                                                 | <code>ctrl.trickState = uhAtscDec_TrickStatePausing</code>                                                                                    |
| <code>ctrl.trickState</code> becomes equal to <code>uhAtscDec_TrickStateStarted</code> .                              |                                                                                                                                               |
| Only if <code>ctrl.pauseAtFirstFrame == True</code> and <code>ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStatePausing</code> : | <code>ctrl.pauseAtFirstFrame = False</code><br><code>ctrl.trickState = uhAtscDec_TrickStatePaused</code><br>— <code>notify OnPaused(*)</code> |
| The first frame has been decoded.                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                               |

#### 7.1.2.4.2 AtscDecDemux

##### Signature

**role** `AtscDecDemux` specialises `uhITsDmx {}`

##### Qualifiers

— See 8.1.13 for further details.

##### Description

The `AtscDecDemux` specialises the context of `uhITsDmx` in the sense that it is being used in the ATSC Decoder context. Since it is being used in the ATSC Decoder context the root interface of `uhITsDmx` interface suite as specified in 8.1.13 is not applicable here. For further details on `uhITsDmx` interface suite please refer to 8.1.13.

##### Independent Attributes

See 8.1.13 for further details.

##### Invariants

— See 8.1.13 for further details.

##### Instantiation

`AtscDecDemux` is always instantiated as part of `AtscDec`.

##### Streaming Behavior

See 8.1.13 for further details. In addition, if the `AtscDecDemux` is in the Stopped state (`ctrl.demuxState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopped`), then it does not process its input and it indicates that its sync lock is invalid. In the Stopped state, the `AtscDecDemux` retains its state (e.g. section filters allocated by the client, or selected PID values).

**Active Behavior**

See 8.1.13 for further details.

**7.1.2.4.3 AtscDecStcDec**

**Signature**

**role** AtscDecStcDec specialises uhIStcDec {}

**Qualifiers**

— See 8.1.12 for further details.

**Description**

AtscDecStcDec specialises the context of uhIStcDec in the sense that it is being used in the ATSC Decoder context. Since it is being used in the ATSC Decoder context the root interface of uhIStcDec interface suite as specified in 8.1.12 is not applicable here. For further details on uhIStcDec interface suite please refer to 8.1.12.

**Independent Attributes**

See 8.1.12 for further details.

**Invariants**

— See 8.1.12 for further details.

**Instantiation**

AtscDecStcDec is always instantiated as part of AtscDec.

**Streaming Behavior**

See 8.1.12 for further details.

**Active Behavior**

See 8.1.12 for further details.

#### 7.1.2.4.4 AtscDecVideo

##### Signature

```

role AtscDecVideo {
    uhAtscDecVideo_CompStd_t      compressionStd;
    uhAtscDecVideo_Level_t       level;
    uhAtscDecVideo_Profile_t     profile;
    uhAtscDec_ValStat_t          resStatus;
    UInt32                       height;
    UInt32                       width;
    uhAtscDecVideo_FrameRate_t   frameRate;
    uhAtscDecVideo_ScanType_t    scanType;
    uhAtscDec_ValStat_t          seqDataStatus;
    uhAtscDec_ValStat_t          gopDataStatus;
    uhAtscDec_ValStat_t          picDataStatus;
    uhAtscDecVideo_ErrorSet_t    errorStatus;
    Bool                         stableOutput;
    uhAtscDecVideo_ClipState_t   clipCurrentState;
    const Bool                   clipPauseSupported;
    const Bool                   clipStepSupported;
    const UInt32                 clipMaxNrBuffers;
    setof{AvClipBuffer}         avclip;
    UInt32                       clipNrOfCurrentBuffers;
    Bool                         consumingData;
}

```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

AtscDecVideo decodes an ATSC encoded digital video input stream, or a video clip provided by the client, and provides the decoded video stream at its output. AtscDecVideo detects the compression standards that match the decoder's capability and provides notifications of various changes that occur in the input stream (or clip input). It also extracts the picture user data present in the encoded digital video input stream (or clip input).

##### Independent Attributes

**Table 138**

| Name           | Description                                                                                           |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| compressionStd | Compression standard of the current video stream                                                      |
| level          | MPEG-2 Level of the current video stream                                                              |
| profile        | MPEG-2 Profile of the current video stream                                                            |
| resStatus      | The validity status of the resolution (height and width) of the pictures in the current video stream. |
| height         | The height of the picture in the current video stream in units of pixels.                             |
| width          | The width of the picture in the current video stream in units of pixels.                              |
| frameRate      | The frame rate of pictures in the input stream.                                                       |
| scanType       | The way pictures are scanned in the input stream.                                                     |
| seqDataStatus  | The validity status of the sequence user data and related properties.                                 |
| gopDataStatus  | The validity status of the GOP user data and related properties.                                      |
| picDataStatus  | The validity status of the picture user data and related properties.                                  |

| Name                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>errorStatus</code>        | The current error status, represented by the set of errors that have occurred, and from which the video decoder has not yet recovered.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>stableOutput</code>       | Indicates whether the video decoder is outputting decoded video long enough so that the client can safely unblank the corresponding output at the appropriate logical component(s) downstream ( <code>True</code> if this is the case, <code>False</code> otherwise).<br><br>NOTE 1 While in a trick mode (like paused, or stepping), the video decoder is considered to be outputting decoded video. |
| <code>clipCurrentState</code>   | Indicates the current status of ATSC Video Clip play.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>clipPauseSupported</code> | Flag indicating whether Pause functionality is supported by ATSC Video decoder in the video clip play mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>clipStepSupported</code>  | Flag indicating whether Step functionality is supported by ATSC Video decoder in the video clip play mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>clipMaxNrBuffers</code>   | Indicates maximum number of video clip data buffers that the video decoder can hold at the same time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>avclip</code>             | A set of video clip buffers. The clip buffers are decoded in the same order as they were added by the client.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

## Dependent attributes

Table 139

| Name                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>clipNrOfCurrentBuffers</code> | Indicates the number of video clip data buffers in <code>avclip</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>consumingData</code>          | Indication, in the clip play mode, whether <code>AtscDecVideo</code> is consuming data from buffers available in <code>avclip</code> . It is <code>True</code> when <code>AtscDecVideo</code> is consuming data from buffers available in <code>avclip</code> . It is <code>False</code> , otherwise.<br><br>Consumption of the data by the decoder depends on its state: in the <code>uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStarted</code> state, it is consuming data; in the <code>uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStPaused</code> and <code>uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStopped</code> states, it is not consuming data; in the <code>uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStarting</code> , <code>uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStPausing</code> , and <code>uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStopping</code> states, the value of the <code>consumingData</code> attribute stays identical to the value it had in the previous state. |

## Invariants

- `(ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopped)` implies `(vdec.stableOutput == False)`
- `clipNrOfCurrentBuffers <= clipMaxNrBuffers`
- if `(!clipPauseSupported)`
  - `clipCurrentState != uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStPaused`
  - `clipCurrentState != uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStPausing`

## Instantiation

`AtscDecVideo` is always instantiated as part of an ATSC Decoder.

## Streaming Behavior

- When trying to decode its input, the `AtscDecVideo` continuously observes its video input stream. When a video input stream is detected `AtscDecVideo` will try to detect the compression standard of the input stream and set the value of `compressionStd` accordingly.  
As soon as the compression standard of the input stream is MPEG-2 then `compressionStd` is set to `uhAtscDecVideo_CompStdMpeg2` and the input stream is decoded. At all other times the value of `compressionStd` is equal to `uhAtscDecVideo_CompStdInvalid` (when there is no input stream) or

`uhAtscDecVideo_CompStdUnknown` (when there is an input stream, but the compression standard could not be determined) but `AtscDecVideo` continues to observe its video input stream for a valid compression standard.

- When one or more changes occur in the properties of the video input stream, `AtscDecVideo` provides a notification to the subscribed client(s).
- When an error occurs during the decoding, the subscribed client(s) are notified. The `AtscDecVideo` will try to recover, and when recovered it will notify the subscribed client(s) again.
- When clip play decoding is started, decoding data from the transport stream demultiplexer will be suspended until clip play decoding is stopped. Clip play decoding has preference.
- When the video decoder is decoding clip data, it will decode the clip data in the order it has been added.
- If the video decoder does not output a newly decoded frame for whatever reason (e.g., the decoding is stopped, the decoder has encountered an error, or the decoding is paused), the default behaviour is that the platform will repeat the last decoded frame or field for the downstream components.

### Active Behavior

The `AtscDecVideo` has standard notification behavior. (see `uhAtscDecVideoNtf`), apart from the following events.

Table 140

| Event                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A buffer with clip data has been decoded.                                                                                                                                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Let 'b' be the buffer that has just been decoded</li> <li>— Remove 'b' from <code>vdec.avclip</code></li> <li>— Notify <code>OnBufferAvailable(*)</code></li> <li>— If (<code>b.bufferEndOfData == True</code>)</li> <li>— Notify <code>OnEndOfData(*)</code></li> </ul> |
| A clip buffer with <code>bufferSize==0</code> and <code>bufferEndOfData ==True</code> has been encountered while decoding clip buffers (i.e. the clip buffer would have been decoded if <code>bufferSize != 0</code> ). | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— The clip buffer is removed from <code>vdec.avclip</code></li> <li>— Notify <code>OnEndOfData(*)</code></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                        |
| Only if <code>(clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStopped)    ((clipCurrentState != uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStopped) &amp;&amp; consumingData):</code>                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Let <code>e</code> be the set of the one or more errors that the video decoder encountered and that are not part of <code>vdec.errorStatus</code>.</li> <li>— Add the errors in <code>e</code> to <code>vdec.errorStatus</code></li> </ul>                               |
| The video decoder encounters one or more errors that are not part of <code>vdec.errorStatus</code> .                                                                                                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Notify <code>OnError(*, e)</code></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

NOTE If `clipCurrentState != uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStopped` and the `bufferEndOfData` flag of the last decoded or encountered buffer is `True`, then the video decoder will *not* treat a possible underrun as an error situation.

**Event**

The video decoder recovers from one or more errors.

NOTE 1 It is up to the implementation to decide when it has recovered from an error.

NOTE 2 When video clip play starts or stops, the video decoder “recovers” from all errors if there were any (and then the OnRecovered event is notified).

**Action**

— Let *e* be the set of the one or more errors that the video decoder recovered from.

— Remove the errors in *e* from `vdec.errorStatus`

— Notify `OnRecovered(*, e)`

The video decoder is outputting decoded video long enough so that the client can safely unblank the corresponding output at the appropriate logical component(s) downstream. (`vdec.stableOutput == False` when this event occurs).

`vdec.stableOutput = True`

— Notify `OnStableOutput(*, True)`

The video decoder is no longer outputting a stable (decoded) video stream (`vdec.stableOutput == True` when this event occurs).

`vdec.stableOutput = False`

— Notify `OnStableOutput(*, False)`

**7.1.2.4.5 AtscDecAudio****Signature**

```
role AtscDecAudio {
    uhAtscDecAudio_CompStd_t      compStandard;
    uhAtscDecAudio_SampFreq_t     sampFreq;
    uhAtscDec_ValStat_t           bitRateStatus;
    Bool                          variableBitRate;
    UInt32                        bitRate;
    uhAtscDec_ValStat_t           channelStatus
    UInt32                        frontChannels;
    UInt32                        rearChannels;
    Bool                          lfeChannelPresent;
    uhAtscDecAudio_ServiceType_t  serviceType;
    uhAtscDecAudio_DolbySurroundInfo_t dolbySurroundPresent;
    uhAtscDecAudio_ErrorSet_t     errorStatus;
    Bool                          stableOutput;
    uhAtscDecAudio_ClipState_t     clipCurrentState;
    const Bool                    clipPauseSupported;
    const UInt32                  clipMaxNrBuffers;
    setof{AvClipBuffer}           avclip;
    UInt32                        clipNrOfCurrentBuffers;
    Bool                          consumingData;
}
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

`AtscDecAudio` decodes an ATSC encoded audio input stream, or an audio clip provided by the client, and outputs a decoded audio stream. It autonomously detects the compression standard of the encoded audio input stream (or clip input) and provides notifications of various changes that occur in the input stream (or clip input).

## Independent Attributes

Table 141

| Name                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| compStandard         | The audio compression standard of the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| sampFreq             | The sampling frequency of the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| bitRateStatus        | The validity status of the bit rate related properties (variableBitRate, bitRate).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| variableBitRate      | Indicates whether the digital audio input stream has a variable bit rate.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| bitRate              | The bit rate (in kbit/s) of the digital audio input stream.<br><br>When the digital audio input stream has a variable bit rate or when the bit rate of the digital audio input stream is unknown, bitRate == 0.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| channelStatus        | The validity status of the audio channel configuration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| frontChannels        | The number of front channels in the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| rearChannels         | The number of rear channels in the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| lfeChannelPresent    | Indicates whether a LFE channel is present in the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| serviceType          | The type of audio service that the digital audio input stream conveys. When the type of the audio service is not present in the input stream, serviceType == uhAtscDecAudio_ServiceUnknown.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| dolbySurroundPresent | Information about the presence of Dolby Surround in the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| errorStatus          | The current error status, represented by the set of errors that have occurred, and from which the audio decoder has not yet recovered.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| stableOutput         | Indicates whether the audio decoder is outputting decoded audio long enough so that the client can safely unmute the corresponding output at the appropriate logical component(s) downstream (True if this is the case, False otherwise).<br><br>NOTE 1 While in a trick mode (like paused, or decoding with a different speed than normal speed), the audio decoder is considered to be outputting decoded audio (although this may be "silence"). |
| clipCurrentState     | Indicates the current status of audio clip play.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| clipPauseSupported   | Flag indicating whether Pause functionality is supported by ATSC Audio decoder in the audio clip play mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| clipMaxNrBuffers     | Indicates maximum number of audio clip data buffers that client(s) can add at a the same time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| avclip               | A set of audio clip buffers. The clip buffers are decoded in the same order as they were added by the client.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

## Dependent Attributes

Table 142

| Name                   | Description                                                |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| clipNrOfCurrentBuffers | Indicates the number of audio clip data buffers in avclip. |

| Name          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| consumingData | <p>Indication, in the clip play mode, whether <code>AtscDecAudio</code> is consuming data from buffers available in <code>avclip</code>. It is <code>True</code> when <code>AtscDecAudio</code> is consuming data from buffers available in <code>avclip</code>. It is <code>False</code>, otherwise.</p> <p>Consumption of the data by the decoder depends on its state: in the <code>uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStarted</code> state, it is consuming data; in the <code>uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStPaused</code> and <code>uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStopped</code> states, it is not consuming data; in the <code>uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStarting</code>, <code>uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStPausing</code>, and <code>uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStopping</code> states, the value of the <code>consumingData</code> attribute stays identical to the value it had in the previous state.</p> |

### Invariants

- If `variableBitRate == True`
  - `bitRate == 0`
- If `compStandard == uhAtscDecAudio_CompStdUnknown`
  - `sampFreq == uhAtscDecAudio_FreqUnknown`
- If `sampFreq == uhAtscDecAudio_FreqUnknown`
  - `variableBitRate = False`
  - `bitRate == 0`
  - `frontChannels == 0`
  - `rearChannels == 0`
  - `lfeChannelPresent == False`
  - `serviceType == uhAtscDecAudio_ServiceUnknown`
  - `dolbySurroundPresent == uhAtscDecAudio_DolbyUnknown`
  - `(ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopped) implies (adec.stableOutput == False)`
  - `clipNrOfCurrentBuffers <= clipMaxNrBuffers`
- if `(!clipPauseSupported)`
  - `clipCurrentState != uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStPaused`
  - `clipCurrentState != uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStPausing`

### Instantiation

`AtscDecAudio` is always instantiated as part of an ATSC Decoder.

### Streaming Behavior

The following streaming behavior applies when the streaming input of the `AtscDecAudio` comes from the demultiplexer:

- When trying to decode its input, the `AtscDecAudio` continually observes the input stream. When an input stream is detected `AtscDecAudio` will try to detect the compression standard of the input stream and set the value `compStandard` and `sampFreq` accordingly. As long as no compression standard has been detected the value of `compStandard` is equal to `uhAtscDecAudio_CompStdUnknown` (in case there is an input stream) or `uhAtscDecAudio_CompStdInvalid` (in case there is no input stream). `AtscDecAudio` will only detect standards that are in the set of compression standards supported in the ATSC standard, i.e. AC-3 only. As soon as the AC-3 standard has been detected, the value of `compStandard` is set to `uhAtscDecAudio_CompStdAc3`.
- If the sampling frequency *sf* of the audio input stream is not in the set of sampling frequencies supported (i.e. 48 kHz in the case of the ATSC standard), the value of `sampFreq` remains set to `uhAtscDecAudio_FreqUnknown`. As soon as the sampling frequency *sf* of the input stream is 48 kHz, the value of `sampFreq` is set to `uhAtscDecAudio_48k` and the input stream is decoded. In case there is no input stream, the sampling frequency *sf* is set to `uhAtscDecAudio_FreqInvalid`.



- When the compression standard is not AC-3 (anymore), the value of `compStandard` is (re)set to `uhAtscDecAudio_CompStdUnknown` and `sampFreq` is (re)set to `uhAtscDecAudio_FreqUnknown`. When there is no input stream, the value of `compStandard` is (re)set to `uhAtscDecAudio_CompStdInvalid` and `sampFreq` is (re)set to `uhAtscDecAudio_FreqInvalid`. The `AtscDecAudio` keeps reading and parsing the incoming audio packets, looks respectively for a valid compression standard and for a valid sampling frequency, and no output data is produced until a valid compression standard and a valid sampling frequency have been detected.
- When one or more changes occur in the properties of the audio input stream, `AtscDecAudio` provides a notification to the subscribed client(s). If the changes in the properties leads to artifacts for e.g. blops, ticks then `AtscDecAudio` stops producing output data and a soft mute (a cosine mute, for instance) is applied. `AtscDecAudio` determines when it is possible to resume again and a soft unmute (a cosine unmute, for instance) is accordingly applied.
- When an error occurs during the decoding, the subscribed client(s) are notified. The `AtscDecAudio` will try to recover, and when recovered it will notify the subscribed client(s) again.

When decoding an audio clip, the above streaming behavior also applies, but with the following difference: MPEG-1 layer 1, 2 and 3 are also supported, and the sampling frequencies 32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz are also supported for MPEG-1 layer 1, 2 and 3.

- When audio clip play decoding is started, decoding data from the transport stream demultiplexer will be suspended until clip play decoding is stopped. Clip play decoding has preference.
- When the audio decoder is decoding clip data, it will decode the clip data in the order it has been added.

### Active Behavior

`AtscDecAudio` has standard notification behaviour (see `uhIAtscDecAudioNtf`), apart from the following events.

**Table 143**

| Event                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A buffer with clip data has been decoded.                                                                                                                                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Let 'b' be the buffer that has just been decoded</li> <li>— Remove 'b' from <code>adec.avclip</code></li> <li>— Notify <code>OnBufferAvailable(*)</code></li> <li>— If (<code>b.bufferEndOfData == True</code>)</li> <li>— Notify <code>OnEndOfData(*)</code></li> </ul> |
| A clip buffer with <code>bufferSize==0</code> and <code>bufferEndOfData ==True</code> has been encountered while decoding clip buffers (i.e. the clip buffer would have been decoded if <code>bufferSize != 0</code> ). | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— The clip buffer is removed from <code>adec.avclip</code></li> <li>— Notify <code>OnEndOfData(*)</code></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                        |

**Event**

Only if (`clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStopped`) || (`clipCurrentState != uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStopped`) && `consumingData`):

The audio decoder encounters one or more errors that are not part of `adec.errorStatus`.

**NOTE** If `clipCurrentState != uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStopped` and the `bufferEndOfData` flag of the last decoded or encountered buffer is `True`, then the audio decoder will *not* treat a possible underrun as an error situation.

The audio decoder recovers from one or more errors.

**NOTE 1** It is up to the implementation to decide when it has recovered from an error.

**NOTE 2** When audio clip play starts or stops, the audio decoder “recovers” from all errors if there were any (and then the `OnRecovered` event is notified).

The audio decoder is outputting decoded audio long enough so that the client can safely unmute the corresponding output at the appropriate logical component(s) downstream. (`adec.stableOutput == False` when this event occurs).

The audio decoder is no longer outputting a stable (decoded) audio stream (`adec.stableOutput == True` when this event occurs).

**Action**

— Let *e* be the set of the one or more errors that the audio decoder encountered and that are not part of `adec.errorStatus`.

— Add the errors in *e* to `adec.errorStatus`

— Notify `OnError(*, e)`

— Let *e* be the set of the one or more errors that the audio decoder recovered from.

— Remove the errors in *e* from `adec.errorStatus`

— Notify `OnRecovered(*, e)`

`adec.stableOutput = True`

— Notify `OnStableOutput(*, True)`

`adec.stableOutput = False`

— Notify `OnStableOutput(*, False)`

**7.1.2.4.6 AtscDecCcExtr****Signature**

```
role AtscDecCcExtr {
    const UInt32      maxNrServices;
    UInt32            nrServicesSelected;
    UInt32            servicesSelected[maxNrServices];
    uhAtscDec_ValStat_t eia708DataStatus;
    uhAtscDec_ValStat_t selServiceDataStatus;
    uhAtscDec_ValStat_t eia608DataStatus;
}
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

`AtscDecCcExtr` monitors the user data input stream and extracts Closed Caption data from it. It provides notifications to the subscribed client(s):

- when the end of an EIA-708 digital CC packet has been detected. The DTVCC data is notified in the appropriate order for further decoding (see subclause 4.4.1 of [15]) to the subscribed client(s). See Figure 26 for the organization of the notified data.
- when EIA-708 digital Closed Caption data from a selected Caption Service has been extracted. CC Service Blocks, as described in clause 6 of [15], are notified in the appropriate order for further decoding (see subclause 4.4.1 of [15]) to the subscribed client(s).
- when analog CC data (NTSC line 21, odd and/or even field) has been extracted from the user data stream. The bit layout of the notified analog CC data follows the CC standard (see [14]); this is shown in Figure 27.

`AtscDecCcExtr` starts passing on closed caption data to a client only after this client has subscribed to the appropriate notification.

### Independent Attributes

Table 144

| Name                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>maxNrServices</code>        | The maximum number of close caption services for which CC Service Blocks can be notified via the function <code>OnSelectedServiceData</code> to <code>AtscDecClient</code> .                                                      |
| <code>nrServicesSelected</code>   | The number of close caption service for which the corresponding CC Service Block(s) are notified via the <code>OnSelectedServiceData</code> function to <code>AtscDecClient</code> , if subscribed.                               |
| <code>servicesSelected</code>     | The set of close caption services for which CC Service Blocks are notified via the <code>OnSelectedServiceData</code> function to <code>AtscDecClient</code> , if subscribed. The services are identified by their service number |
| <code>eia708DataStatus</code>     | The validity status of the EIA-708 CC data and related properties.                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>selServiceDataStatus</code> | The validity status of the CC service block data and related properties.                                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>eia608DataStatus</code>     | The validity status of the EIA-608 CC data and related properties.                                                                                                                                                                |

**Dependent Attributes**  
None.

### Invariants

- $\text{nrServicesSelected} \leq \text{maxNrServices}$

### Instantiation

`AtscDecCcExtr` role is instantiated if Closed Caption functionality is supported by `AtscDec`. Please refer to subclause 7.1.2.3.3.2 for more information.

### Streaming Behavior

When trying to extract data from its input, the `AtscDecCcExtr` continually monitors its user data input stream and extracts the data payload related to closed caption data. It passes on a data stream containing either the analog EIA-608 CC data (NTSC line 21, odd and/or even field) extracted from the user data input stream or the digital EIA-708 CC data extracted from the user data input stream. The output data stream follows EIA-608 standard (see [14]) or EIA-708 standard (see [15]) respectively.

### Active Behavior

`AtscDecCcExtr` has standard notification behavior (see

`uhIAtscDecCcExtrNtf`).

### Remarks

`AtscDecCcExtr` passes CC service blocks with service numbers as defined in `servicesSelected` to `AtscDecClient` via `OnSelectedServiceData` notification.

#### 7.1.2.4.7 AtscDecClient

### Signature

**role** `AtscDecClient` {}

### Qualifiers

— actor

### Description

`AtscDecClient` represents a user of all interfaces provided as part of ATSC Decoder. It can provide the optional notification interfaces for receiving events generated by the roles of (`AtscDecDemux`, `AtscDecStcDec`, `AtscDecVideo`, `AtscDecAudio`, `AtscDecCcExtr`) of ATSC Decoder. No constraints apply to the role of `AtscDecClient` other than those implied by Figure 23.

#### 7.1.2.5 Interfaces

##### 7.1.2.5.1 AtscDec::uhITsDmx

### Qualifiers

None.

### Description

This interface of `AtscDec` is a specialization of `uhITsDmx` interface suite 8.1.13. It only specialises the context under which `uhITsDmx` is being used i.e. ATSC Decoder. It is also important to note that since `uhITsDmx` is being used under the context of ATSC decoder the root role of `uhITsDmx` as defined in 8.1.13 is not applicable here.

### Interface ID

See 8.1.13.

##### 7.1.2.5.2 AtscDec::uhIStcDec

### Qualifiers

None.

### Description

This interface of `AtscDec` is a specialization of `uhIStcDec` interface suite 8.1.12. It only specialises the context under which `uhIStcDec` is being used i.e. ATSC Decoder. It is also important to note that since

uhIStcDec is being used under the context of ATSC decoder the root role of uhIStcDec as defined in 8.1.12 not applicable here.

**Interface ID**  
See 8.1.12.

7.1.2.5.3    uhlAtscDecCtrl

**Qualifiers**  
— root

**Description**  
This interface is provided by AtscDec for controlling and navigating across various roles of ATSC Decoder.

**Interface ID**  
uuid( 7E2F8D2C-1CFA-473b-8CC3-7C135CB7AA9E )

7.1.2.5.3.1    GetAtscDecDemux

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetAtscDecDemux ([out] uhITsDmx \*\*ppIAtscTsDmx );

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
  
— thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns an interface pointer to uhITsDmx. Clients can use this interface pointer to further exercise control on AtscDecDemux.

**Parameters**

Table 145

| Name           | Description                                                              |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ppIAtscTsDemux | Output parameter returning an interface pointer to uhITsDmx. See 8.1.13. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

Postcondition

— ppIAtsTsDemux == ctrl.pIAtsDecDemux

7.1.2.5.3.2 GetAtscDecStcDec

Signature

uhErrorCode\_t GetAtscDecStcDec ([out] uhIStcDec \*\*ppIAtsDecStcDec );

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns an interface pointer to uhIStcDec. Clients can use this interface pointer to further exercise control on AtscDecStcDec.

Parameters

Table 146

| Name            | Description                                                               |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ppIAtsDecStcDec | Output parameter returning an interface pointer to uhIStcDec. See 8.1.12. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

True

Action

None.

Postcondition

— ppIAtsDecStcDec == ctrl.pIAtsDecStcDec

7.1.2.5.3.3 GetAtscDecVideo

Signature

uhErrorCode\_t GetAtscDecVideo ([out] uhIAtsDecVideo \*\*ppIAtsDecVideo );

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns an interface pointer to uhIAtsDecVideo. Clients can use this interface pointer to further exercise control on AtscDecVideo.

Parameters

Table 147

| Name             | Description                                                          |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ppIAAtscDecVideo | Output parameter returning an interface pointer to uhIAAtscDecVideo. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
— ppIAAtscDecVideo == ctrl.ppIAAtscDecVideo

7.1.2.5.3.4      GetAtscDecAudio

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetAtscDecAudio ([out] uhIAAtscDecAudio \*\*ppIAAtscDecAudio );

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns an interface pointer to uhIAAtscDecAudio. Clients can use this interface pointer to further exercise control on AtscDecAudio.

Parameters

Table 148

| Name             | Description                                                          |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ppIAAtscDecAudio | Output parameter returning an interface pointer to uhIAAtscDecAudio. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

Postcondition

— ppIAtscDecAudio == ctrl.pIAtscDecAudio

7.1.2.5.3.5 GetAtscDecCcExtr

Signature

uhErrorCode\_t GetAtscDecCcExtr ([out] uhIAtscDecCcExtr \*\*ppIAtscDecCcExtr );

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns an interface pointer to uhIAtscDecCcExtr if AtscDecCcExtr functionality is supported by this AtscDec. Clients can use this interface pointer to further exercise control on AtscDecCcExtr.

Parameters

Table 149

| Name             | Description                                                          |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ppIAtscDecCcExtr | Output parameter returning an interface pointer to uhIAtscDecCcExtr. |

Return Values

Only non-standard error values are listed here.

Table 150

| Value                    | Description                                                |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| UH_ERR_ATSCDEC_NO_CCExTR | This AtscDec does not support AtscDecCcExtr functionality. |

Precondition

True

Action

Modify ppIAtscDecCcExtr

Postcondition

— ppIAtscDecCcExtr == ctrl.pIAtscDecCcExtr

Remarks

If ctrl.ccExtrSupported == False then the interface pointer will be NULL.

7.1.2.5.4 uhlAtscDecStartStop

Qualifiers

None.



**Description**

This interface of `AtscDecCtrl` provides functions to start and stop the de-multiplexer and the decoders.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( B9E2D7B2-7365-4370-9E13-1DB8FAEB84B6 )`

**7.1.2.5.4.1 Subscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhIAtscDecStartStopNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                      cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopNtfSet_t  notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**7.1.2.5.4.2 Unsubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhIAtscDecStartStopNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                      cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecCtrl_StartStopNtfSet_t  notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

**7.1.2.5.4.3 StartDemux****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t StartDemux ();
```

**Qualifiers**

— asynchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

Starts the de-multiplexer.

**NOTE** If `ctrl.demuxState` changes to `uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopping` or `uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopped` before the execution of the asynchronous part of this function has started, the asynchronous part will not be executed. Always either all or nothing of the asynchronous part is executed.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

`ctrl.demuxState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopped`

`ctrl.streamMode` is compatible with the input stream and the settings in the system (see subclause 7.1.2.1.6)

**Action**

— Modify `ctrl.demuxState`

**Postcondition**

`ctrl.demuxState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStarting`

**Asynchronous Action**

Modify `ctrl.demuxState`

Notify `OnDemuxStarted(*)`

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

`ctrl.demuxState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStarted`

**7.1.2.5.4.4 StopDemux**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t StopDemux ();`

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Stops the de-multiplexer and flushes the de-multiplexer input buffer, the audio input buffer and the video input buffer. All state in the de-multiplexer that does not directly depend on the input signal, is kept (e.g. all section filters allocated by the client will become active again when the de-multiplexer is started again and a started PID filter remains started, although it will not output any data while the de-multiplexer is in the stopped state).

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `!(ctrl.demuxState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopped)`
- `!(ctrl.demuxState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopping)`

**Action**

- Modify `ctrl.demuxState`

**Postcondition**

— ctrl.demuxState == uhAtscDecCtrl\_StateStopping

**Asynchronous Action**

- Modify ctrl.demuxState
- Notify OnDemuxStopped(\*)

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

- ctrl.demuxState == uhAtscDecCtrl\_StateStopped
- The input buffer of the de-multiplexer is empty (has been flushed).
- The audio input buffer and video input buffer are empty (have been flushed).

**Remarks**

While the de-multiplexer is in the Stopped state, it will indicate that its sync lock is invalid.

**7.1.2.5.4.5      GetDemuxState**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetDemuxState (  
    [out] puhAtscDecCtrl_State_t pDemuxState );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the operational state of the de-multiplexer.

**Parameters**

**Table 151**

| Name        | Description                                                  |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| pDemuxState | Output parameter returning the current de-multiplexer state. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pDemuxState == ctrl.demuxState

#### 7.1.2.5.4.6 StartDecoders

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t StartDecoders ();
```

##### Qualifiers

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

##### Description

Starts the decoders (audio decoder, video decoder, STC decoder and CC extractor).

NOTE If `ctrl.decodingState` changes to `uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopping` or `uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopped` before the execution of the asynchronous part of this function has started, the asynchronous part will not be executed. Always either all or nothing of the asynchronous part is executed.

##### Parameters

None.

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

- `ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopped`
- `ctrl.streamMode` is compatible with the input stream and the settings in the system (see subclause 7.1.2.1.6)

##### Action

- Modify `ctrl.decodingState`
- Modify `ctrl.trickState`

##### Postcondition

- `ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStarting`
- `ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStateStarting`

##### Asynchronous Action

- Modify `ctrl.decodingState`
- Modify `ctrl.trickState`
- Notify `OnDecodersStarted(*)`

##### Asynchronous Postcondition

- `ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStarted`
- `ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStateStarted`

#### 7.1.2.5.4.7 StopDecoders

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t StopDecoders ();
```

##### Qualifiers

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

##### Description

Stops the decoders (audio decoder, video decoder, STC decoder and CC extractor). The error status is reset. Any other state in the decoders that does not directly depend on the input signal, is kept.

##### Parameters

None.

##### Return Values

Table 152

##### Value

UH\_ERR\_ATSCDEC\_STOP\_IGNORED

##### Description

The request to stop has been ignored. This error occurs if and only if:

```
(ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopped) ||
(ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopping)
```

##### Precondition

- vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo\_ClipStStopped
- adec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecAudio\_ClipStStopped

##### Action

- Modify ctrl.decodingState
- Modify ctrl.trickState

##### Postcondition

- ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl\_StateStopping
- ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec\_TrickStateStopping

##### Asynchronous Action

- Modify ctrl.decodingState
- Modify ctrl.trickState
- Modify ctrl.pauseAtEnable
- Modify ctrl.pauseAtFirstFrame
- Modify adec.errorStatus
- Modify vdec.errorStatus
- Modify adec.stableOutput
- Modify vdec.stableOutput
- Notify OnDecodersStopped(\*)

##### Asynchronous Postcondition

- ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl\_StateStopped
- ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec\_TrickStateStopped

```
— ctrl.pauseAtEnabled == False
— ctrl.pauseAtFirstFrame == False
— adec.errorStatus == uhAtscDecAudio_NoError
— vdec.errorStatus == uhAtscDecVideo_NoError
— adec.stableOutput == False
— vdec.stableOutput == False
```

**Remarks**

The error return value is present to prevent a race condition that would be present if a strong pre-condition were used. (The decoders can autonomously go to the Stopped state, in particular when a next I-frame has been decoded, see subclause 7.1.2.5.6.15.)

The error statuses of the audio decoder and video decoder are reset, but this triggers no OnRecovered notification(s).

**7.1.2.5.4.8      GetDecodingState**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetDecodingState (
    [out] puhAtscDecCtrl_State_t pDecState );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the operational state of the decoders.

**Parameters**

**Table 153**

| Name      | Description                                           |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| pDecState | Output parameter returning the current decoder state. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```
*pDecState == ctrl.decodingState
```

**7.1.2.5.4.9 SetStreamMode****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetStreamMode (
    [in] uhAtscDec_StreamMode_t streamMode );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the stream mode (push or pull) of the ATSC Decoder.

**Parameters****Table 154**

| Name       | Description                               |
|------------|-------------------------------------------|
| streamMode | The requested stream mode (push or pull). |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- ctrl.demuxState == uhAtscDecCtrl\_StateStopped
- ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl\_StateStopped

**Action**

- Modify ctrl.streamMode

**Postcondition**

- ctrl.streamMode == streamMode

**Remarks**

For details about the push and pull modes, see subclause 7.1.2.1.6.

**7.1.2.5.4.10 GetStreamMode****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetStreamMode (
    [out] puhAtscDec_StreamMode_t pStreamMode );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current stream mode.

**Parameters****Table 155**

| <b>Name</b>              | <b>Description</b>                                                 |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pStreamMode</code> | Output parameter returning the current stream mode (push or pull). |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pStreamMode == ctrl.streamMode`

**7.1.2.5.5 uhlAtscDecStartStopNtf**

**Qualifiers**  
— callback

**Description**

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in `AtscDecCtrl` related to the start/stop functionality. The `Subscribe` function of `uhlAtscDecStartStop` can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( 57FD140F-4B84-438d-BD51-DB18E0291D0B )`

**7.1.2.5.5.1 OnSubscriptionChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhlAtscDecCtrl_StartStopNtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function



**7.1.2.5.5.2 OnDemuxStarted****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnDemuxStarted (
    [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the `AtscDecCtrl` when the de-multiplexer is started.

**Parameters****Table 156**

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.2.5.5.3 OnDemuxStopped****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnDemuxStopped (
    [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the `AtscDecCtrl` when the de-multiplexer is stopped.

**Parameters****Table 157**

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

**Remarks**  
See also subclause 7.1.2.3.4 for special execution constraints related to this notification.

**7.1.2.5.5.4 OnDecodersStarted**

**Signature**  
[**async**] Void OnDecodersStarted (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is called by the AtscDecCtrl when the decoders are started.

**Parameters**

**Table 158**

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

7.1.2.5.5.5 OnDecodersStopped

**Signature**  
[**async**] Void OnDecodersStopped (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is called by the AtscDecCtrl when the decoders are stopped.

**Parameters**

Table 159

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

**Remarks**  
See also subclause 7.1.2.3.4 for special execution constraints related to this notification.

7.1.2.5.6 uhlAtscDecTrick

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This interface of AtscDecCtrl provides functions to control trick play functionality. Note that this interface does not control trick play functionality for audio or video clip play.

**Interface ID**  
uuid( 007099A0-3829-485D-A41E-2FC65B9CBE48 )

7.1.2.5.6.1      **Subscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (  
    [in] uhIAAtscDecTrickNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickNtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

7.1.2.5.6.2      **Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhIAAtscDecTrickNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickNtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

7.1.2.5.6.3      **GetNrSuppSpeeds**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetNrSuppSpeeds (  
    [out] pUInt32 pNrOfSpeeds );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the number of supported speeds.

**Parameters**

Table 160

| Name        | Description                                                |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| pNrOfSpeeds | Output parameter returning the number of supported speeds. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pNrOfSpeeds == ctrl.nrSuppSpeeds

**7.1.2.5.6.4      GetSuppSpeedSet**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppSpeedSet (  
    [in] UInt32  nrOfSpeeds,  
    [out, size_is(nrOfSpeeds)] puhAtscDec_Speed_t pSpeedSet );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the set of supported speeds.

**Parameters**

**Table 161**

| Name       | Description                                                                 |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| nrOfSpeeds | The number of supported speeds as returned by the GetNrSuppSpeeds function. |
| pSpeedSet  | Output parameter returning the set of supported speeds (as an array).       |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

nrOfSpeeds == ctrl.nrSuppSpeeds

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pSpeedSet == ctrl.suppSpeeds

**7.1.2.5.6.5      SetSpeed**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetSpeed (  
    [in] uhAtscDec_Speed_t reqSpeed );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the decoding speed factor.

**Parameters**

Table 162

| Name     | Description                          |
|----------|--------------------------------------|
| reqSpeed | The requested decoding speed factor. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec\_StreamModePull
- reqSpeed in ctrl.suppSpeeds

**Action**

- Modify ctrl.speed

**Postcondition**

ctrl.speed == reqSpeed

**7.1.2.5.6.6      GetSpeed**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSpeed (  
    [out] puhAtscDec_Speed_t pReqSpeed );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the decoding speed factor.

**Parameters**

Table 163

| Name      | Description                                           |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| pReqSpeed | Output parameter returning the decoding speed factor. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec\_StreamModePull

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pReqSpeed == ctrl.speed`

**7.1.2.5.6.7      Pause**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t Pause (  
    [in] uhAtscDec_FrameType_t pauseType );`

- Qualifiers**
- asynchronous
  - single-threaded

**Description**  
Pauses the decoding, taking into account the requested type of pause.

**NOTE** If `ctrl.trickState` changes to `uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopping` or `uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopped` before the execution of the asynchronous part of this function has started, the asynchronous part will not be executed. Always either all or nothing of the asynchronous part is executed.

**Parameters**

**Table 164**

| Name                   | Description                                                                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pauseType</code> | The type of pause (i.e. pause on next I-frame, next I- or P-frame, or any next frame). |

**Return Values**  
Only non-standard errors are listed here.

**Table 165**

| Value                                     | Description                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>UH_ERR_ATSCDEC_PAUSE_IGNORED</code> | The request to pause has been ignored. This error is returned only if <code>ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStatePausing</code> |

**Precondition**

- `ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec_StreamModePull`
- `(ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStateStarted)`  
  || `(ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStatePausing)`

**Action**

- Modify `ctrl.trickState`

**Postcondition**  
`ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStatePausing`

**Asynchronous Action**

- Modify `ctrl.trickState`
- Notify `OnPaused(*)`

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

`ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStatePaused`

**7.1.2.5.6.8 SetPauseAt****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetPauseAt(
    [in] uhTimeStamp_t pts,
    [in] uhAtscDec_FrameType_t pauseType );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Requests that the decoding pauses at the given PTS, taking into account the requested type of pause.

**Parameters****Table 166**

| Name                   | Description                                                                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pts</code>       | The PTS on which the pause is requested.                                               |
| <code>pauseType</code> | The type of pause (i.e. pause on next I-frame, next I- or P-frame, or any next frame). |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec_StreamModePull`
- `ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStateStarted`
- `pts.timeStampHigh <= 1`

**Action**

- Modify `ctrl.pauseAtPts`
- Modify `ctrl.pauseAtType`
- Modify `ctrl.pauseAtEnabled`

**Postcondition**

- `ctrl.pauseAtPts == pts`
- `ctrl.pauseAtType == pauseType`
- `ctrl.pauseAtEnabled == True`



**7.1.2.5.6.9 GetPauseAt****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetPauseAt (
    [out] pBool pPending,
    [out] puhTimeStamp_t pPts,
    [out] puhAtscDec_FrameType_t pPauseType );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the status of the PTS based pause.

**Parameters****Table 167**

| Name       | Description                                                                                        |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pPending   | Output parameter returning whether a pause at a certain PTS is pending.                            |
| pPts       | Output parameter returning the PTS on which the pause is requested.                                |
| pPauseType | Output parameter returning the type of pause (i.e. pause on I-frame, I- or P-frame, or any frame). |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

```
ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec_StreamModePull
```

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pPending == ctrl.pauseAtEnabled
- \*pPts == ctrl.pauseAtPts
- \*pPauseType == ctrl.pauseAtType

**7.1.2.5.6.10 CancelPauseAt****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t CancelPauseAt ();
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**  
Cancels the PTS based pause.

**Parameters**  
None.

**Return Values**  
Only non-standard errors are listed here.

| Value                               | Description                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UH_ERR_ATSCDEC_PAUSE_AT_NOT_ENABLED | There is no “Pause At” request enabled at this moment.                                                                             |
| UH_ERR_ATSCDEC_CANCEL_IGNORED       | The request to cancel has been ignored, because the decoding is too close to the point of pausing for the pausing to be cancelled. |

**Precondition**  
`ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec_StreamModePull`

**Action**  
— Modify `ctrl.pauseAtEnabled`

**Postcondition**  
`ctrl.pauseAtEnabled == False`

**Remarks**  
When the `UH_ERR_ATSCDEC_PAUSE_AT_NOT_ENABLED` error is returned, the ATSC decoder might just have paused the decoding because of a previous `PauseAt` request.

7.1.2.5.6.11    **EnablePauseAtFirstFrame**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t EnablePauseAtFirstFrame (`  
    `[in] Bool firstFramePause );`

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
— single-threaded

**Description**  
Enables or disables the pause at first frame when decoding will be started.

**Parameters**

| Table 169                    |                                                                     |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name                         | Description                                                         |
| <code>firstFramePause</code> | The pause at first frame mode (enabled == True, disabled == False). |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
— ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec\_StreamModePull  
— ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec\_TrickStateStopped

**Action**  
— Modify ctrl.pauseAtFirstFrame

**Postcondition**  
ctrl.pauseAtFirstFrame == firstFramePause

**7.1.2.5.6.12    GetPauseAtFirstFrameEnabled**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetPauseAtFirstFrameEnabled (  
    [out] pBool pFirstFramePause );

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
  
— thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns the pause at first frame mode.

**Parameters**

**Table 170**

| Name             | Description                                                                                    |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pFirstFramePause | Output parameter returning the pause at first frame mode (enabled == True, disabled == False). |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec\_StreamModePull

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
\*pFirstFramePause == ctrl.pauseAtFirstFrame

#### 7.1.2.5.6.13 Continue

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Continue ();
```

##### Qualifiers

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

##### Description

Continues decoding that was paused earlier.

NOTE If `ctrl.trickState` changes to `uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopping` or `uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopped` before the execution of the asynchronous part of this function has started, the asynchronous part will not be executed. Always either all or nothing of the asynchronous part is executed.

##### Parameters

None.

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

- `ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec_StreamModePull`
- `ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStatePaused`

##### Action

- Modify `ctrl.trickState`

##### Postcondition

```
ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStateContinuing
```

##### Asynchronous Action

Modify `ctrl.trickState`

Notify `OnContinued(*)`

##### Asynchronous Postcondition

```
ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStateStarted
```

##### Remarks

The decoding continues with the last set speed.

**7.1.2.5.6.14 Step****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Step ();
```

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Decodes the next frame and returns to pause. Depending on the frame decoding mode (`ctrl.frameDecMode`), it decodes the next I-frame, the next I- or P-frame or any next frame.

**NOTE** If `ctrl.trickState` changes to `uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopping` or `uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopped` before the execution of the asynchronous part of this function has started, the asynchronous part will not be executed. Always either all or nothing of the asynchronous part is executed.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec_StreamModePull`
- `ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStatePaused`

**Action**

- Modify `ctrl.trickState`

**Postcondition**

`ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStateStepping`

**Asynchronous Action**

- Modify `ctrl.trickState`
- Notify `OnStepped(*)`

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

`ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStatePaused`

**7.1.2.5.6.15 DecodeNextIframe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t DecodeNextIframe ();
```

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Decodes the next I-frame (i.e. the first one encountered that is preceded by a sequence header) and returns to the stopped state. Any data still present in the video input buffer when the next I-frame has been decoded, may be lost. The client should not rely on this data.

While decoding the next I-frame, CC extraction is performed, but no audio is decoded.

**NOTE** If `ctrl.trickState` changes to `uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopping` or `uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopped` before the execution of the asynchronous part of this function has started, the asynchronous part will not be executed. Always either all or nothing of the asynchronous part is executed.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec_StreamModePull`
- `ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopped`

**Action**

- Modify `ctrl.trickState`
- Modify `ctrl.decodingState`

**Postcondition**

- `ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStateDecIframe`
- `ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStarted`

**Asynchronous Action**

- Modify `ctrl.trickState`
- Modify `ctrl.decodingState`
- Notify `OnNextIframeDecoded(*)`

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

- `ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopped`
- `ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStopped`

**Remarks**

- Although this function changes `ctrl.decodingState`, it does not send `OnDecodersStarted` or `OnDecodersStopped` notifications.
- It is recommended that the client takes care that only the data related to a single I-frame is fed to the video decoder (through the video input buffer) each time it calls `DecodeNextIframe`. After the video decoder has decoded the I-frame, the client can take care that the next I-frame is fed to the video decoder for the next call to `DecodeNextIframe`.

**7.1.2.5.6.16 GetTrickState****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetTrickState ([out] puhAtscDec_TrickState_t pTrickState );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current trick state.

**Parameters****Table 171**

| Name        | Description                                         |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| pTrickState | Output parameter returning the current trick state. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

```
ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec_StreamModeFull
```

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```
*pTrickState == ctrl.trickState
```

**7.1.2.5.6.17 GetSuppFrameDecModes****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppFrameDecMode (
    [out] puhAtscDec_FrameTypeSet_t pFrameDecModeSet);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the set of supported frame decoding modes (for pull mode).

**Parameters****Table 172**

| <b>Name</b>                   | <b>Description</b>                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pFrameDecModeSet</code> | Output parameter returning the set of supported frame decoding modes (I-frame, I- and P-frame, all frames). |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**`*pFrameDecModeSet == ctrl.supFrameDecModes`**7.1.2.5.6.18 SetFrameDecMode****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetFrameDecMode(
    [in] uhAtscDec_FrameType_t frameDecMode );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the frame decoding mode (for pull mode). In case of I-frame-only or I- and P-frame-only based decoding:

- The PTSs in the stream are ignored for timing the presentation of the video frames. The decoder decodes the frames as quickly as it can (at most one decoded frame per frame period). It may be the case that not every frame period a new frame is decoded.
- The input stream may be fragmented, e.g. frames may be removed from the input stream. The video decoder will scan for I-frames (and P-frames) in the input (by looking for the `picture_start_code` and checking the `picture_coding_type`) and decode these. Actual decoding starts with the first I-frame that is preceded by a sequence header.
- The currently set speed is ignored. Pause, PauseAt & Step are still allowed. The PauseAt pauses on a decoded frame that matches the "PauseAt PTS" or on a decoded frame that has a PTS that is later than the "PauseAt PTS" while the PTS of the frame decoded before that frame was earlier than the "PauseAt PTS". Stepping steps to the next frame that is to be decoded given the currently set frame decoding mode.



**Parameters****Table 173**

| Name                      | Description                                                                 |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>frameDecMode</code> | The frame decoding mode (I-frame only, I- and P-frame-only, or all frames). |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

— `ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec_StreamModePull`  
 — `ctrl.trickState == uhAtscDec_TrickStateStopped`  
 — `frameDecMode in ctrl.suppFrameDecModes`

**Action**

— Modify `ctrl.frameDecMode`

**Postcondition**

`ctrl.frameDecMode == frameDecMode`

**Remarks**

For I- and P-frame only decoding, use `uhAtscDec_IorPFrame` (a frame is decoded when it is either an I-frame or a P-frame).

**7.1.2.5.6.19 GetFrameDecMode****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetFrameDecMode (
    [out] puhAtscDec_FrameType_t pFrameDecMode );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous  
 — thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the frame decoding mode (for pull mode).

**Parameters****Table 174**

| Name                       | Description                                                                                            |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pFrameDecMode</code> | Output parameter returning the frame decoding mode (I-frame only, I- and P-frame-only, or all frames). |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

`ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec_StreamModePull`

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

`*pFrameDecMode == ctrl.frameDecMode`

**7.1.2.5.7 uhlAtscDecTrickNtf**

**Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in `AtscDecCtrl` related to trick play functionality. The `Subscribe` function of `uhlAtscDecTrickNtf` can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( AA1122F7-3F4B-4DF3-8FF0-E94E9A1446C1 )`

**7.1.2.5.7.1 OnSubscriptionChanged**

**Signature**

**[async]** `Void OnSubscriptionChanged(  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAtscDecCtrl_TrickNtfSet_t notifs );`

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

**7.1.2.5.7.2 OnPaused**

**Signature**

**[async]** `Void OnPaused(  
    [in] UInt32 cookie );`

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the `AtscDecCtrl` when the decoding has been paused.

**Parameters****Table 175**

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.2.5.7.3 OnContinued****Signature**

```
OnContinued(
    [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**This function is called by the `AtscDecCtrl` when the decoding has been continued.**Parameters****Table 176**

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

7.1.2.5.7.4 OnStepped

Signature

```
OnStepped(  
    [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called by the `AtscDecCtrl` when a decoding step has been made.

Parameters

Table 177

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

7.1.2.5.7.5 OnNextIframeDecoded

Signature

```
OnNextIframeDecoded(  
    [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called by the `AtscDecCtrl` when the next I-frame has been decoded.

Parameters

Table 178

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.2.5.8 uhlAtscDecVideo****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of `AtscDecVideo` provides functions to retrieve properties of the digital video input stream and provides a subscription and an unsubscription function on notifications of changes of these properties

**Interface ID**

```
uuid( AFC001DE-4166-4685-AF58-FAFB04464F3D )
```

**7.1.2.5.8.1 Subscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhAtscDecVideoNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecVideo_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**7.1.2.5.8.2 Unsubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhAtscDecVideoNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecVideo_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

## 7.1.2.5.8.3 GetStandardData

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetStandardData (
    [out] puhAtscDecVideo_CompStd_t      pStandard,
    [out] puhAtscDecVideo_Profile_t     pProfile,
    [out] puhAtscDecVideo_Level_t       pLevel );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the compression standard, MPEG-2 profile, and MPEG-2 level of the input stream.

**Parameters**

Table 179

| Name      | Description                                                              |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStandard | Output parameter returning the compression standard of the input stream. |
| pProfile  | Output parameter returning the MPEG-2 profile of the input stream.       |
| pLevel    | Output parameter returning the MPEG-2 level of the input stream.         |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pStandard == vdec.compressionStd
- \*pProfile == vdec.profile
- \*pLevel == vdec.level

**Remarks**

When there is no video input stream,

- \*pStandard == uhAtscDecVideo\_CompStdInvalid
- \*pProfile == uhAtscDecVideo\_InvalidProfile
- \*pLevel == uhAtscDecVideo\_LevelInvalid

#### 7.1.2.5.8.4 GetPictureData

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetPictureData (
    [out] puhAtscDec_ValStat_t      pStatus,
    [out] pUInt32                   pHeight,
    [out] pUInt32                   pWidth,
    [out] puhAtscDecVideo_FrameRate_t pFrameRate,
    [out] puhAtscDecVideo_ScanType_t pScanType );
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

Returns the resolution, its validity status, frame rate, and scan type of pictures in the input stream.

##### Parameters

Table 180

| Name       | Description                                                                                                                        |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStatus    | Output parameter returning the validity status of the resolution (vdec.height and vdec.width) of the pictures in the input stream. |
| pHeight    | Output parameter returning the height of pictures - in pixels - in the input stream.                                               |
| pWidth     | Output parameter returning the width of pictures - in pixels - in the input stream.                                                |
| pFrameRate | Output parameter returning the frame rate of pictures in the input stream.                                                         |
| pScanType  | Output parameter returning the scan type of pictures in the input stream.                                                          |

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

True

##### Action

None.

##### Postcondition

- \*pStatus == vdec.resStatus
- \*pHeight == vdec.height
- \*pWidth == vdec.width
- \*pFrameRate == vdec.frameRate
- \*pScanType == vdec.scanType

##### Remarks

When there is no input stream:

- Both \*pHeight and \*pWidth are 0

— \*pFrameRate == uhAtscDecVideo\_InvalidFrameRate  
 — \*pScanType == uhAtscDecVideo\_ScanTypeInvalid

#### 7.1.2.5.8.5 GetErrorStatus

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetErrorStatus (
    [out] puhAtscDecVideo_ErrorSet_t pErrorStatus );
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

Returns the current error status.

##### Parameters

Table 181

| Name         | Description                                          |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| pErrorStatus | Output parameter returning the current error status. |

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

True

##### Action

None.

##### Postcondition

\*pErrorStatus == vdec.errorStatus

#### 7.1.2.5.8.6 GetStableOutput

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetStableOutput (
    [out] pBool pStableOutput);
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

Returns whether the video decoder has currently stable output.



Parameters

Table 182

| Name          | Description                                                                       |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStableOutput | Output parameter returning whether the video decoder has currently stable output. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pStableOutput == vdec.stableOutput`

7.1.2.5.9    uhlAtscDecVideoNtf

**Qualifiers**  
— callback

**Description**  
This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in the `AtscDecVideo`. The `Subscribe` function of `uhlAtscDecVideo` can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**  
`uuid( 0031DFE1-3114-4b7b-A905-47373169E4B6 )`

7.1.2.5.9.1    OnSubscriptionChanged

**Signature**  
`Void OnSubscriptionChanged (`  
    `[in] UInt32 cookie,`  
    `[in] uhlAtscDecVideo_NtfSet_t notifs );`

**Qualifiers**  
— onsubscriptionchanged-function

7.1.2.5.9.2 OnStandardDataChanged

Signature

```
Void OnStandardDataChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecVideo_CompStd_t standard,
    [in] uhAtscDecVideo_Profile_t profile,
    [in] uhAtscDecVideo_Level_t level );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

AtscDecVideo calls this function whenever it detects a change in the compression standard, profile, or level of its input stream.

Parameters

Table 183

| Name     | Description                                                   |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie   | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| standard | The new compression standard of the input stream.             |
| profile  | The new profile of the input stream.                          |
| level    | The new level of the input stream.                            |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

7.1.2.5.9.3 OnPictureDataChanged

Signature

```
Void OnPictureDataChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDec_ValStat_t status,
    [in] UInt32 height,
    [in] UInt32 width,
    [in] uhAtscDecVideo_FrameRate_t frameRate,
    [in] uhAtscDecVideo_ScanType_t scanType );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

AtscDecVideo calls this function whenever it detects a change in resolution, frame rate and scan type, of pictures in its input stream.

Parameters

Table 184

| Name      | Description                                                                                             |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie    | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                           |
| status    | The validity status of the resolution (vdec.height and vdec.width) of the pictures in the input stream. |
| height    | The new height of pictures - in pixels - in the input stream.                                           |
| width     | The new width of pictures - in pixels - in the input stream.                                            |
| frameRate | The new frame rate of pictures in the input stream.                                                     |
| scanType  | The new scan type of pictures in the input stream.                                                      |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

7.1.2.5.9.4      **OnError**

**Signature**

```
Void OnError (
    [in] UInt32                cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecVideo_ErrorSet_t  errors );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This notification function is used to inform the subscribed client that one or more errors occurred when decoding Video from the digital Video input stream.

**Parameters**

**Table 185**

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| errors | Describes the type(s) of error(s) that occurred.              |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

7.1.2.5.9.5      **OnRecovered**

**Signature**

```
Void OnRecovered (
    [in] UInt32                cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecVideo_ErrorSet_t  errors );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This notification function is used to inform the subscribed client that the video decoder has recovered from one or more previously notified errors.

**Parameters****Table 186**

| Name                | Description                                                                   |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                 |
| <code>error</code>  | Describes the type(s) of error(s) from which the video decoder has recovered. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.2.5.9.6 OnStableOutput****Signature**

```
Void OnStableOutput (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] Bool stableOutput );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The `AtscDecVideo` calls this function when there is a change in the stable output of the `AtscDecVideo`.

**Parameters****Table 187**

| Name                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>       | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>stableOutput</code> | <p>If True: <code>AtscDecVideo</code> is outputting decoded video long enough so that the client can safely unblank the corresponding output at the appropriate logical component(s) downstream.</p> <p>If False: <code>AtscDecVideo</code> is no longer outputting a stable (decoded) video stream.</p> |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.2.5.10 uhlAtscDecVideoUserData**

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of `AtscDecVideo` provides functions to subscribe and unsubscribe to the User Data detected as part of the video stream. This interface is optional and may not be supported by all decoders.

**Interface ID**

uuid( 5D6867EB-8AE4-4909-A1A7-51E7D9C1C48B )

**7.1.2.5.10.1 Subscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (  
    [in] uhlAtscDecVideoUserDataNtf *pUserDataNotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhlAtscDecVideo_UserDataNtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**7.1.2.5.10.2 Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhlAtscDecVideoUserDataNtf *pUserDataNotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhlAtscDecVideo_UserDataNtfSet_t notifs);
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

**7.1.2.5.11 uhlAtscDecVideoUserDataNtf**

**Qualifiers**

callback.

**Description**

This interface of `AtscDecVideo` provides notifications on arrival of User Data as part of the video stream. The attributes of user data are provided as part of the notification.

**Interface ID**

uuid( C65D3D89-9273-487e-ADBE-0D9AD51F29D1 )

**7.1.2.5.11.1 OnUserDataSubscriptionChanged**

**Signature**

```
Void OnUserDataSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecVideo_UserDataNtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

onsubscriptionchanged-function

**7.1.2.5.11.2 OnUserDataSequenceArrived**

**Signature**

```
Void OnUserDataSequenceArrived (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDec_ValStat_t status,
    [in] uhTimeStamp_t timeStamp,
    [in] UInt32 size,
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pUserData );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This notification function is used to inform the subscribed client that sequence user data has arrived as part of the video stream. A pointer to the start of the buffer and valid number of bytes are passed as arguments. Along with the sequence user data, the corresponding incoming PTS is also sent to the client. Clients can use this PTS value to present any time-synchronised data present in `pUserData`.

**Parameters**

**Table 188**

| Name      | Description                                                           |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie    | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.         |
| status    | The validity status of the notified sequence user data and timestamp. |
| timeStamp | PTS associated with the user data.                                    |
| size      | Number of bytes of valid user data.                                   |
| pUserData | Pointer to start of user data in memory.                              |

**Return Values**

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

Remarks

On return from the function call the data is no longer guaranteed to be available. The client is expected to copy the user data to its own memory area.

7.1.2.5.11.3 OnUserDataGopArrived

Signature

```
Void OnUserDataGopArrived (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDec_ValStat_t status,
    [in] uhTimeStamp_t timeStamp,
    [in] UInt32 size,
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pUserData );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This notification function is used to inform the subscribed client that GOP user data has arrived as part of the video stream. A pointer to the start of the buffer and valid number of bytes are passed as arguments. Along with the GOP user data, the corresponding incoming PTS is also sent to the client. Clients can use this PTS value to present any time-synchronised data present in pUserData.

Parameters

Table 189

| Name      | Description                                                      |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie    | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.    |
| status    | The validity status of the notified GOP user data and timestamp. |
| timeStamp | PTS associated with the user data.                               |
| size      | Number of bytes of valid user data.                              |
| pUserData | Pointer to start of user data in memory.                         |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True



Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

Remarks

On return from the function call the data is no longer guaranteed to be available. The client is expected to copy the user data to its own memory area.

7.1.2.5.11.4 OnUserDataPictureArrived

Signature

```
Void OnUserDataPictureArrived (
    [in] UInt32                cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDec_ValStat_t   status,
    [in] uhTimeStamp_t        timeStamp,
    [in] UInt32                size,
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pUserData );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This notification function is used to inform the subscribed client that picture user data has arrived as part of the video stream. A pointer to the start of the buffer and the number of valid bytes are passed as arguments. Along with the Picture User Data, the corresponding PTS is also sent to the client. Clients can use this PTS value to present any time-synchronised data present in pUserData.

Parameters

Table 190

| Name      | Description                                                          |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie    | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.        |
| status    | The validity status of the notified picture user data and timestamp. |
| timeStamp | PTS associated with the user data.                                   |
| size      | Number of bytes of valid user data.                                  |
| pUserData | Pointer to start of user data in memory.                             |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**Remarks**

On return from the function call the data is no longer guaranteed to be available. The client is expected to copy the user data to its own memory area.

**7.1.2.5.12 uhlAtscDecVideoClip**

**Qualifiers**

None

**Description**

This interface of AtscDecVideo provides functions to command video clip play functionality and provides a subscribe and an unsubscribe function for events related to video clip play status.

**Interface ID**

uuid( 864B60C1-BF54-4ABC-B3B9-67984E0A8399 )

**7.1.2.5.12.1 Subscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhlAtscDecVideoClipNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecVideo_ClipNtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**7.1.2.5.12.2 Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhlAtscDecVideoClipNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecVideo_ClipNtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

7.1.2.5.12.3    **GetMaxNrBuffers**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMaxNrBuffers (  
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxNrBuffers);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function queries how many buffers can be held by the video decoder at the same time for video clip play decoding.

**Parameters**

Table 191

| Name          | Description                                                                                                     |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMaxNrBuffers | Output parameter returning the maximum number of buffers that can be held by the video decoder at the same time |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```
*pMaxNrBuffers == vdec.clipMaxNrBuffers
```

7.1.2.5.12.4    **AddData**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t AddData (  
    [in] UInt32 id,  
    [in] UInt32 size,  
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pData,  
    [in] Bool endOfData );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function adds a buffer pointed to by “pData”, identified by “id” containing “size” bytes of input data to be decoded. This function can also be called by the client(s) when video clip play has not (yet) been started.

**Parameters****Table 192**

| Name      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| id        | Identification of the buffer. When the buffer is no longer needed by <code>uhIAtscDecVideo</code> , client will receive an “OnBufferAvailable” notification returning the “id”.                                                                                                                                                                 |
| size      | Size of the buffer pointed to by “pData”.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| pData     | Pointer to the buffer containing (a part of) the video clip to be decoded.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| endOfData | Indicates whether the data currently added is the last byte of the currently added Clip Play. It is True if the data currently added is the last data of the currently added Clip Play. It is False if not. If this flag is True, the ATSC video decoder will notify to client(s) with an OnEndOfData notification when it decodes this buffer. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- if ( endOfData == False )
  - pData != NULL
  - size > 0
  - vdec.clipNrOfCurrentBuffers < vdec.clipMaxNrBuffers

**Action**

- Modify `vdec.avclip`

**Postcondition**

- A new buffer has been added to the set `vdec.avclip`. The fields of this buffer are initialized with the corresponding parameters of this function.

**7.1.2.5.12.5 Start****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Start ( );
```

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function requests the ATSC video decoder to start video clip play decoding.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStopped`
- `ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec_StreamModePush`
- `ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStarted`

**Action**

- Request to start the video decoding for clip
- Modify `vdec.clipCurrentState`

**Postcondition**

`vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStarting`

**Asynchronous Action**

- Modify `vdec.clipCurrentState`
- Notify `OnStarted(*)`

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

`vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStarted`

**Remarks**

When clip play is started, the video decoder recovers from any errors from which it has not yet recovered. See also the Active Behavior in subclause 7.1.2.4.4.

**7.1.2.5.12.6 Stop****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Stop ( );
```

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function requests the ATSC video decoder to stop video clip decoding. The video decoder resumes decoding the ATSC video stream coming from the demux.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `vdec.clipCurrentState != uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStopping`
- `vdec.clipCurrentState != uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStopped`

Action

- Request to stop the video decoding for clip
- Modify `vdec.clipCurrentState`

Postcondition

`vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStopping`

Asynchronous Action

- For each `b` in `vdec.avclip` (in the order they were added)
  - `Notify OnBufferAvailable (*)`
  - `Modify vdec.avclip`
  - `Modify vdec.clipCurrentState`
  - `Notify OnStopped (*)`

Asynchronous Postcondition

- `vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStopped`
- `vdec.avclip == {}`

Remarks

When clip play is stopped, the video decoder recovers from any errors from which it has not yet recovered. See also the Active Behavior in subclause 7.1.2.4.4.

7.1.2.5.12.7    **GetPauseSupp**

Signature

`uhErrorCode_t GetPauseSupp ([out] pBool pSupported );`

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function reports whether pausing for video clip decoding is supported by the ATSC video decoder.

Parameters

Table 193

| Name                    | Description                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pSupported</code> | Output parameter reporting whether pausing is supported or not. It is <code>True</code> when pausing is supported; it is <code>False</code> , otherwise. |

Return Values

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pSupported == vdec.clipPauseSupported

**7.1.2.5.12.8 Pause****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Pause ( );
```

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function requests the ATSC video decoder to pause video clip decoding as soon as possible. The position where decoding is paused depends on the type of decoder and data being decoded.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo\_ClipStStarted
- vdec.clipPauseSupported == True

**Action**

- Request to pause the video decoding for clip
- Modify vdec.clipCurrentState

**Postcondition**

vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo\_ClipStPausing

**Asynchronous Action**

- Modify vdec.clipCurrentState
- Notify OnPaused(\*)

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo\_ClipStPaused

#### 7.1.2.5.12.9 Continue

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Continue ( );
```

##### Qualifiers

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

##### Description

This function requests the ATSC video decoder to continue video clip decoding after having been paused.

##### Parameters

None.

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

- `vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStPaused`
- `vdec.clipPauseSupported == True`

##### Action

- Request to start the video decoding for clip
- Modify `vdec.clipCurrentState`

##### Postcondition

`vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStarting`

##### Asynchronous Action

- Modify `vdec.clipCurrentState`
- Notify `OnStarted(*)`

##### Asynchronous Postcondition

`vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStStarted`

#### 7.1.2.5.12.10 GetStepSupp

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetStepSupp ([out] pBool pSupported );
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

This function reports whether stepping for video clip is supported for ATSC video decoder for Video Clip Play.



**Parameters****Table 194**

| <b>Name</b>             | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pSupported</code> | Output parameter reporting whether stepping is supported or not for Video Clip Play. It is <code>True</code> when stepping is supported; it is <code>False</code> , otherwise. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**`True`**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**`*pSupported == vdec.clipStepSupported`**7.1.2.5.12.11 Step****Signature**`uhErrorCode_t Step ( );`**Qualifiers**

— asynchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

This function requests the ATSC video decoder to decode the next video frame and then go in to the Paused state.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStPaused`
- `vdec.clipStepSupported == True`

**Action**

- Request to decode the next frame of the video decoding for clip
- Modify `vdec.clipCurrentState`

**Postcondition**`vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStPausing`

### Asynchronous Action

- Modify `vdec.clipCurrentState`
- Notify `OnPaused(*)`

### Asynchronous Postcondition

`vdec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecVideo_ClipStPaused`

## 7.1.2.5.12.12 GetAvailableNrBuffers

### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetAvailableNrBuffers (
    [out] pUInt32 pNrBuffers);
```

### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

### Description

This function queries how many buffers are available for the client to add the video clip data.

### Parameters

Table 195

| Name                    | Description                                                                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pNrBuffers</code> | Output parameter returning the available number of buffers that can be added. |

### Return Values

Standard.

### Precondition

True

### Action

None.

### Postcondition

`*pNrBuffers == vdec.clipMaxNrBuffers - vdec.clipNrOfCurrentBuffers`

## 7.1.2.5.12.13 GetState

### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetState (
    [out] puhAtscDecVideo_ClipState_t pClipState );
```

### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the current state of the video clip play.

**Parameters**

Table 196

| Name       | Description                                                          |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pClipState | Output parameter returning the current state of the video clip play. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pClipState == vdec.clipCurrentState

**7.1.2.5.13 uhIAtsDecVideoClipNtf**

**Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that are related to decoding a video clip. The Subscribe function of uhIAtsDecVideoClip can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**

uuid( 2520BADC-5BB6-4905-BEAD-670AF59EC77B )

**7.1.2.5.13.1 OnSubscriptionChanged**

**Signature**

```
Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecVideo_ClipNtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

**7.1.2.5.13.2 OnBufferAvailable****Signature**

```
Void OnBufferAvailable (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] UInt32 id );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the ATSC Video Decoder whenever a buffer, which was filled with data, has become free. This may result from decoding of the data filled in this buffer, or from a request from the ATSC Video Decoder Client to stop the decoding of the video clip.

The buffers are becoming free for further addition of new data, and notified, in the same order as they were added by the ATSC Video Decoder Client.

**Parameters****Table 197**

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Description</b>                                            |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie      | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| id          | Identification for the buffer provided by the client.         |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-complaint action.

**Postcondition**

True

**Remarks**

Each call of `AddData()` with a non-empty buffer eventually results in an `OnBufferAvailable` event.

**7.1.2.5.13.3 OnEndOfData****Signature**

```
Void OnEndOfData (
    [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the ATSC video decoder when it has completed the decoding of a client buffer which has the “endOfData” flag set or when it has encountered a client buffer which has the “endOfData” flag set with the size of this buffer being 0.

**Parameters**

Table 198

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-complaint action

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.2.5.13.4 OnStarted**

**Signature**

```
Void OnStarted (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the ATSC video decoder if video clip play has started or continued as a result of the “Start” or “Continue” function.

**Parameters**

Table 199

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

7.1.2.5.13.5 OnStopped

Signature

```
Void OnStopped (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called by the ATSC video decoder if video clip play has stopped as a result of the “Stop” function.

Parameters

Table 200

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

7.1.2.5.13.6 OnPaused

Signature

```
Void OnPaused (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

Qualifiers

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the ATSC video decoder if video clip play has been paused as a result of either the “Pause” or “Step”function.

**Parameters**

**Table 201**

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.2.5.14 uhlAtscDecCcExtr**

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of `AtscDecCcExtr` provides facilities to subscribe/unsubscribe to notifications of events related to the extraction of CC data. It also provides facilities to select specific CC services for which EIA-708 CC Service Blocks (see clause 6 of [15]) will be notified to `AtscDecClient`, if subscribed to the appropriate notification.

**Interface ID**

uuid( E263C0A1-2792-489f-BA11-825A424A98AA )

**7.1.2.5.14.1 Subscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhlAtscDecCcExtrNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhlAtscDecCcExtr_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

7.1.2.5.14.2    **Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhIAAtscDecCcExtrNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAtscDecCcExtr_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

- unsubscribe-function

7.1.2.5.14.3    **GetMaxNrServices**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMaxNrServices ( [out] pUInt32 pMaxNrServices );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the maximum number of close caption services that can be selected.

**Parameters**

**Table 202**

| Name           | Description                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMaxNrServices | Output parameter returning the maximum number of close caption services for which CC Service Blocks can be notified via OnSelectedServiceData. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pMaxNrServices == ccextr.maxNrServices



7.1.2.5.14.4    **SetServices**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetServices (  
    [in] UInt32 nrServices,  
    [in, size_is(nrServices)] pUInt32 pServices );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Sets the list with service numbers of close caption services, for which CC Service Blocks are be notified via OnSelectedServiceData.

**Parameters**

**Table 203**

| Name       | Description                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| nrServices | The number of elements, which are passed in pServices.                                                                                                                                 |
| pServices  | Pointer to an array with close caption services for which CC Service Blocks are notified via OnSelectedServiceData. The close caption services are identified by their service number. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- nrServices ≤ ccextr.maxNrServices

**Action**

- Modify ccextr.nrServicesSelected
- for each i in {0 .. nrServices-1}
  - Modify ccextr.servicesSelected[i]
- for each i in {nrServices .. ccextr.maxNrServices-1}
  - Reset ccextr.servicesSelected[i]

**Postcondition**

- ccextr.nrServicesSelected == nrServices
- for each i in {0 .. nrServices-1}
  - ccextr.servicesSelected[i] == pServices[i]
- for each i in {nrServices .. ccextr.maxNrServices-1}
  - ccextr.servicesSelected[i] == 0

## 7.1.2.5.14.5 GetServices

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetServices (
    [in] UInt32 nrRequestedServices,
    [out] pUInt32 pNrServices,
    [out, size_is(nrRequestedServices)] pUInt32 pServices);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the list with service numbers of close caption services, for which CC Service Blocks are notified via OnSelectedServiceData.

**Parameters****Table 204**

| Name                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| nrRequestedServices | The number of elements, which is allocated space for in pServices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| pNrServices         | The total number of closed caption services for which CC Services Blocks are notified.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| pServices           | Pointer to an array with close caption services for which CC Service Blocks are notified via OnSelectedServiceData. The services are identified by their service number. The number of services returned in the array, is the minimum between nrRequestedServices and ccextr.nrServicesSelected. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- nrRequestedServices <= ccextr.maxNrServices

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pNrServices == ccextr.nrServicesSelected
- if (nrRequestedServices <= ccextr.nrServicesSelected)
  - for each i in {0 .. nrRequestedServices-1}
    - pServices[i] == ccextr.servicesSelected[i]
- else
  - for each i in {0 .. ccextr.nrServicesSelected-1}
    - pServices[i] == ccextr.servicesSelected[i]

### 7.1.2.5.15 `uhAtscDecCcExtrNtf`

#### Qualifiers

— callback

#### Description

This interface should be provided by each `AtscDecCcExtr` client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events related to closed caption data extraction that occurs in the `AtscDecCcExtr`. The `Subscribe` function of `uhAtscDecCcExtr` can be used to subscribe to these events.

#### Interface ID

`uuid( 55202F1C-CBEF-4c41-BACF-CE5C0C7200F0 )`

### 7.1.2.5.15.1 `OnSubscriptionChanged`

#### Signature

```
Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecCcExtr_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

#### Qualifiers

— `onsubscriptionchanged-function`

### 7.1.2.5.15.2 `OnEia708Data`

#### Signature

```
Void OnEia708Data (
    [in] UInt32                cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDec_ValStat_t   status,
    [in] Bool                  ptsPresent,
    [in] uhTimeStamp_t         timeStamp,
    [in] UInt32                size,
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pData );
```

#### Qualifiers

None.

#### Description

`AtscDecCcExtr` calls this function whenever it has detected the end of an EIA-708 digital Caption Channel Packet in the user data input stream. `pData` points to the CC data. The CC Extractor owns the storage space occupied by the data.

First, the CC Extractor has detected the presence of EIA-708 data in the user data input stream, it has detected the start header of an EIA-708 Caption Channel Packet, and it has extracted the related data from the incoming stream and buffered it internally in the appropriate order for further decoding (see subclause 4.4.1 of [15]).

The storage space, and therefore the CC data, is guaranteed to stay unmodified until the current call of this function returns.

**Parameters****Table 205**

| <b>Name</b>             | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>     | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                                                |
| <code>status</code>     | The validity status of the notified EIA-708 CC data and related properties notified by this function.                                                                        |
| <code>ptsPresent</code> | Value that indicates whether <i>timeStamp</i> contains a valid PTS. Is <code>True</code> if valid.                                                                           |
| <code>timeStamp</code>  | The presentation time stamp of the last Caption Channel Packet in <i>pData</i> . If <i>ptsPresent</i> is <code>False</code> , the content of <i>timeStamp</i> is irrelevant. |
| <code>size</code>       | The size, in bytes, of valid DTVCC data to which <i>pData</i> points.                                                                                                        |
| <code>pData</code>      | Pointer to a size bytes buffer of valid DTVCC data.                                                                                                                          |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**`True`**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**`True`**Remarks**

- DTVCC data (compliant with EIA-708) is encoded in variable-rate and variable-sized Caption Channel Packets; see subclause 4.4.1 of [15] for more details about Caption Channel Packets. The first two bytes of a Caption Channel Packet have the “Channel Packet Start” type. The remaining bytes of the Caption Channel Packet have the “Channel Packet Data” type. In the Picture User Data bits the end of a Caption Channel Packet is indicated by either:
  - extraction of a Caption Channel Packet with the “Channel Packet Start” type;
  - extraction of a Caption Channel Packet with the “Channel Packet Data” type associated with a `ccValid` flag set to `False`; see [15].
- An example of the organization of the storage space is shown in Figure 26:

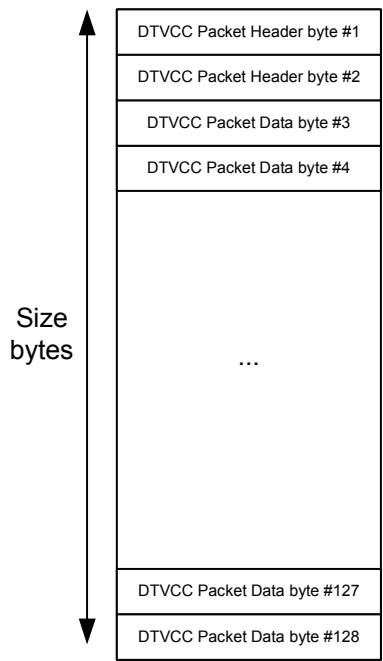


**Figure 26 — Organization of capture DTVCC data, when a DTVCC Caption Channel Packet is 128 bytes in length. The first two bytes are the header of the DTVCC Caption Channel Packet.**

**7.1.2.5.15.3 OnSelectedServiceData**

**Signature**

```
Void OnSelectedServiceData (
    [in] UInt32          cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDec_ValStat_t status,
    [in] Bool           ptsPresent,
    [in] uhTimeStamp_t  timeStamp,
    [in] UInt32          size,
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pData,
    [in] UInt32          service );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the Closed Caption Extractor whenever it has extracted a CC Service Block of the Caption Service with Service Number service, which belongs to the set of selected services. See clause 6 of [15] for the CC Service Blocks syntax, the data is notified in the appropriate order for further decoding; see subclause 4.4.1 of [15].

**Parameters**

**Table 206**

| Name       | Description                                                                                            |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie     | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                          |
| status     | The validity status of the notified CC Service Block and related properties notified by this function. |
| ptsPresent | Value that indicates whether <i>timeStamp</i> contains a valid PTS. Is <code>True</code> if valid.     |

| Name      | Description                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| timeStamp | The presentation time stamp of the CC data in <i>pData</i> . If <i>ptsPresent</i> is <code>False</code> , the content of <i>timeStamp</i> is irrelevant. |
| size      | The size, in bytes, of valid CC data of the closed caption Service with Service Number service to which <i>pData</i> points.                             |
| pData     | Pointer to a size bytes buffer of valid CC data of the closed caption Service with Service Number service.                                               |
| service   | The Service Number of the closed caption Service from which the CC Service Block in <i>pData</i> is extracted.                                           |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.2.5.15.4 OnEia608Data****Signature**

```

Void OnEia608Data (
    [in] UInt32                cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDec_ValStat_t   status,
    [in] UInt32                nrEia608Data,
    [in] Bool                  ptsPresent,
    [in, size_is(nrEia608Data)] const puhTimeStamp_t pTimeStamp,
    [in, size_is(nrEia608Data)] const pBool          pField,
    [in, size_is(nrEia608Data)] const pUInt16        pData );

```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the Closed Caption Extractor whenever it has extracted analog CC data (NTSC line 21, odd and/or even field) from the user data input stream (see [15]). The bit layout of the notified analog CC data follows the CC standard (see [14]); this is shown in Figure 27.

**Parameters****Table 207**

| Name         | Description                                                                                           |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie       | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                         |
| status       | The validity status of the notified EIA-608 CC data and related properties notified by this function. |
| nrEia608Data | The number of byte-pairs of valid analog CC data to which <i>pData</i> points.                        |

| Name       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ptsPresent | Value that indicates whether <i>pTimeStamp</i> contains valid PTS. Is <b>True</b> if valid.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| pTimeStamp | Pointer to a buffer containing the presentation time stamps of the analog CC data to which <i>pData</i> points. <i>pTimeStamp</i> [ <i>i</i> ] contains the presentation time stamp of the byte-pair of analog CC data in <i>pData</i> [ <i>i</i> ]. If <i>ptsPresent</i> is <b>False</b> , the content of <i>pTimeStamp</i> is irrelevant.                                                |
| pField     | Pointer to a buffer containing for each byte-pair of analog CC data in <i>pData</i> the indication of the field to which this byte-pair of analog CC data belongs. <i>pField</i> [ <i>i</i> ] contains the indication of the field to which the byte-pair of analog CC data in <i>pData</i> [ <i>i</i> ] belongs. It is <b>True</b> for the even field and <b>False</b> for the odd field. |
| pData      | Pointer to a buffer of <i>nrEia608Data</i> byte-pairs of valid analog CC data extracted from the user data input stream. Each byte-pairs are stored as indicated in Figure 27.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
**True**

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
**True**

**Remarks**  
In case, NTSC line 21 CC data (see [15]) is present in the user data input stream of the Closed Caption Extractor, the CC data is transmitted in the decode order. The bit layout of the notified analog CC data in *pData* follows the CC standard (see [14]); this is shown in Figure 27.

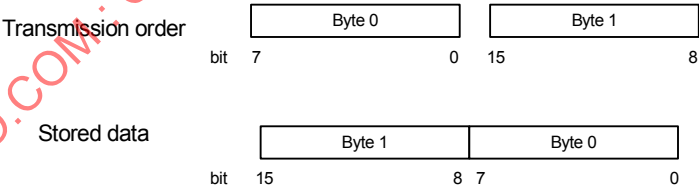


**Figure 27 — The relationship of the bits layout of the captured CC data in *pData* and the order of transmission of CC data in case NTSC Line 21 closed caption data is present in the user data input stream.**

7.1.2.5.16 uhlAtscDecAudio

**Qualifiers**  
None.

### Description

This interface of `AtscDecAudio` provides functions to retrieve properties of the digital audio input stream (or the audio clip input) and provides a subscription and an unsubscription function on notifications of changes of these properties.

### Interface ID

uuid( 98AE108A-CCEE-42B0-AA9E-7725F0D721EB )

### Execution Constraints

None.

#### 7.1.2.5.16.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (  
    [in] uhAtscDecAudioNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAtscDecAudio_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

#### 7.1.2.5.16.2 Unsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhAtscDecAudioNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAtscDecAudio_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

#### 7.1.2.5.16.3 GetStandard

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetStandard ( [out] puhAtscDecAudio_CompStd_t pStandard );
```

##### Qualifiers

— synchronous  
— thread-safe

### Description

Returns the compression standard of the digital audio input stream.



**Parameters****Table 208**

| Name                   | Description                                                                                           |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pStandard</code> | Output parameter returning the compression standard of the digital audio input stream of the Decoder. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**— `*pStandard == adec.compStandard`**Remarks**

When there is no audio input stream in the Decoder, `*pStandard == uhAtscDecAudio_CompStdInvalid`.

**7.1.2.5.16.4 GetSampFreq****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSampFreq ( [out] puhAtscDecAudio_SampFreq_t pSampFreq );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the sampling frequency of the digital audio input stream.

**Parameters****Table 209**

| Name                   | Description                                                                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pSampFreq</code> | Output parameter returning the sampling frequency of the digital audio input stream. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**— *\*pSampFreq* == *adec.sampFreq***7.1.2.5.16.5 GetBitRate****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetBitRate (
    [out] puhAtscDec_ValStat_t pStatus,
    [out] pBool                pVariable,
    [out] pUInt32              pBitRate );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns whether the bit rate of the digital audio input stream is variable or constant. Also returns the bit rate (in kbit/s) of the digital audio input stream. When the input stream has a variable bit rate or when the bit rate of the input stream is unknown, the returned bit rate is 0.

**Parameters****Table 210**

| Name             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>pStatus</i>   | Output parameter returning the validity status of the bit rate properties ( <i>adec.variableBitRate</i> , <i>adec.bitRate</i> ) of the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                     |
| <i>pVariable</i> | Output parameter returning whether the bit rate of the digital audio input stream is a variable bit rate (VBR). It is <i>True</i> when the bit rate of the digital audio input stream is variable. It is <i>False</i> when the bit rate of the digital audio input stream is constant. |
| <i>pBitRate</i>  | Output parameter returning the bit rate (in kbit/s) of the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition***True***Action**

None.

**Postcondition**— *\*pStatus* == *adec.bitRateStatus*;— *\*pVariable* == *adec.variableBitRate*— *\*pBitRate* == *adec.bitRate*

### 7.1.2.5.16.6 GetChannels

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetChannels (
    [out] puhAtscDec_ValStat_t pStatus,
    [out] pUInt32               pFrontChannels,
    [out] pUInt32               pRearChannels,
    [out] pBool                 pLfe );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

#### Description

Returns the number of front channels and rear channels in the digital audio input stream. Also returns whether a LFE channel is present in the digital audio input stream.

#### Parameters

Table 211

| Name           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStatus        | Output parameter returning the validity status of the audio channel configuration (adec.frontChannels, adec.rearChannels, adec.lfeChannelPresent).                                                                |
| pFrontChannels | Output parameter returning the number of front channels in the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                        |
| pRearChannels  | Output parameter returning the number of rear channels in the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                         |
| pLfe           | Output parameter returning whether a LFE channel is present in the digital audio input stream. Is <code>True</code> if a LFE channel is present in the digital audio input stream, and <code>False</code> if not. |

#### Return Values

Standard.

#### Precondition

`True`

#### Action

`None`.

#### Postcondition

- \*pStatus == adec.channelStatus
- \*pFrontChannels == adec.frontChannels
- \*pRearChannels == adec.rearChannels
- \*pLfe == adec.lfeChannelPresent

#### 7.1.2.5.16.7 GetServiceType

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetServiceType (
    [out] puhAtscDecAudio_ServiceType_t pServiceType );
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

Returns the type of the audio service that the digital audio input stream conveys.

##### Parameters

Table 212

| Name         | Description                                                                                           |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pServiceType | Output parameter returning the type of the audio service that the digital audio input stream conveys. |

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

True

##### Action

None.

##### Postcondition

- \*pServiceType == adec.serviceType

#### 7.1.2.5.16.8 GetDolbySurroundInfo

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetDolbySurroundInfo (
    [out] puhAtscDecAudio_DolbySurroundInfo_t pDolbySurround );
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

Returns whether Dolby Surround is present in the digital audio input stream.

**Parameters****Table 213**

| Name                        | Description                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pDolbySurround</code> | Output parameter returning whether Dolby Surround is present in the digital audio input stream. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**— `*pDolbySurround == adec.dolbySurroundPresent`**7.1.2.5.16.9    GetErrorStatus****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetErrorStatus (
    [out] puhAtscDecAudio_ErrorSet_t pErrorStatus );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current error status.

**Parameters****Table 214**

| Name                      | Description                                          |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pErrorStatus</code> | Output parameter returning the current error status. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

Postcondition

\*pErrorStatus == adec.errorStatus

7.1.2.5.16.10    GetStableOutput

Signature

uhErrorCode\_t GetStableOutput (  
    [out] pBool pStableOutput);

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns whether the audio decoder has currently stable output.

Parameters

Table 215

| Name          | Description                                                                       |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStableOutput | Output parameter returning whether the audio decoder has currently stable output. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

True

Action

None.

Postcondition

\*pStableOutput == adec.stableOutput

7.1.2.5.17    uhlAtscDecAudioNtf

Qualifiers

- callback

Description

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in AtscDecAudio. The Subscribe function of uhlAtscDecAudio can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**

uuid( 436E902F-A279-4e13-AB74-58B5CF90E1EB )

**Execution Constraints**

None.

**7.1.2.5.17.1 OnSubscriptionChanged**

**Signature**

```
Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecAudio_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

**7.1.2.5.17.2 OnStandardChanged**

**Signature**

```
Void OnStandardChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecAudio_CompStd_t standard );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by `AtscDecAudio` whenever it detects a change in the compression standard of its digital audio input stream.

**Parameters**

**Table 216**

| Name     | Description                                                     |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie   | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.   |
| standard | The new compression standard of the digital audio input stream. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

### 7.1.2.5.17.3 OnSampFreqChanged

#### Signature

```
Void OnSampFreqChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecAudio_SampFreq_t sampFreq );
```

#### Qualifiers

None.

#### Description

This function is called by `AtscDecAudio` whenever it detects a change in the sampling frequency of its digital audio input stream.

#### Parameters

Table 217

| Name                  | Description                                                   |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>   | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| <code>sampFreq</code> | The new sampling frequency detected by the Decoder.           |

#### Return Values

None.

#### Precondition

True

#### Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

#### Postcondition

True

### 7.1.2.5.17.4 OnBitRateChanged

#### Signature

```
Void OnBitRateChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDec_ValStat_t status,
    [in] Bool variable,
    [in] UInt32 bitRate );
```

#### Qualifiers

None.

#### Description

This function is called by `AtscDecAudio` whenever it detects a change in the bit rate of its digital audio input stream and/or in the variability of the bit rate.



**Parameters****Table 218**

| Name                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>   | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>status</code>   | The validity status of the notified bit rate properties ( <code>adec.variableBitRate</code> , <code>adec.bitRate</code> ).                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>variable</code> | The new value indicating whether the bit rate of the digital audio input stream is variable. It is <code>True</code> if the bit rate of the digital audio input stream is variable and it is <code>False</code> if the bit rate of the digital audio input stream is constant. |
| <code>bitRate</code>  | The new bit rate (in kbit/s) detected by the Decoder. When the digital audio input stream has a variable bit rate or when the bit rate of the digital audio input stream is unknown <code>bitRate</code> is 0.                                                                 |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**`True`**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**`True`**7.1.2.5.17.5 OnChannelsChanged****Signature**

```
Void OnChannelsChanged (
    [in] UInt32      cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDec_ValStat_t status,
    [in] UInt32      frontChannels,
    [in] UInt32      rearChannels,
    [in] Bool        lfe );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by `AtscDecAudio` whenever it detects a change in the configuration of the channels in its digital audio input stream.

**Parameters****Table 219**

| Name                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>        | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                                               |
| <code>status</code>        | The validity status of the notified audio channel configuration ( <code>adec.frontChannels</code> , <code>adec.rearChannels</code> , <code>adec.lfeChannelPresent</code> ). |
| <code>frontChannels</code> | The new number of front channels detected by the Decoder.                                                                                                                   |

| Name         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| rearChannels | The new number of rear channels detected by the Decoder.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| lfe          | The new value indicating the presence of a LFE channel in the digital audio input stream. Is <code>True</code> if a LFE channel is present in the digital audio input stream, is <code>False</code> if a LFE channel is not present in the digital audio input stream. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
`True`

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
`True`

7.1.2.5.17.6    **OnServiceTypeChanged**

**Signature**  
`Void OnServiceTypeChanged (`  
    `[in] UInt32 cookie,`  
    `[in] uhAtscDecAudio_ServiceType_t serviceType );`

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
`AtscDecAudio` calls this function whenever it detects a change in the type of audio service that the digital audio input stream conveys.

**Parameters**

Table 220

| Name        | Description                                                         |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie      | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.       |
| serviceType | The new value of the type of audio service detected by the Decoder. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
`True`

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.2.5.17.7 OnDolbySurroundChanged****Signature**

```
Void OnDolbySurroundChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecAudio_DolbySurroundInfo_t dolbySurround );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by `AtscDecAudio` whenever it detects a change in the presence of Dolby Surround in its digital audio input stream.

**Parameters****Table 221**

| Name                       | Description                                                                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>        | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                              |
| <code>dolbySurround</code> | The new value indicating the presence of Dolby Surround in the digital audio input stream. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.2.5.17.8 OnError****Signature**

```
Void OnError (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecAudio_ErrorSet_t errors );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This notification function is used by `AtscDecAudio` to inform the subscribed client that one or more errors occurred when decoding audio from the digital audio input stream.

Parameters

Table 222

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| errors | Describes the type(s) of error(s) that occurred.              |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

7.1.2.5.17.9 OnRecovered

**Signature**  
Void OnRecovered (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAtscDecAudio\_ErrorSet\_t errors);

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This notification function is used to inform the subscribed client that the audio decoder has recovered from one or more previously notified errors.

Parameters

Table 223

| Name   | Description                                                                   |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                 |
| errors | Describes the type(s) of error(s) from which the audio decoder has recovered. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.2.5.17.10 OnStableOutput**

**Signature**

```
Void OnStableOutput (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] Bool stableOutput );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The AtscDecAudio calls this function when there is a change in the stable output of the AtscDecAudio.

**Parameters**

**Table 224**

| Name         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie       | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| stableOutput | If True: AtscDecAudio is outputting decoded audio long enough so that the client can safely unmute the corresponding output at the appropriate logical component(s) downstream.<br>If False: AtscDecAudio is no longer outputting a stable (decoded) audio stream. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.2.5.18 uhlAtscDecAudioClip**

**Qualifiers**

None

**Description**

This interface of AtscDecAudio provides functions to command Audio clip play functionality and provides a subscribe and an unsubscribe function for events related to clip play status.

Interface ID

uuid( D8B397C9-F2C6-424C-B767-7B7EE61D97C9 )

7.1.2.5.18.1      Subscribe

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhAtscDecAudioClipNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecAudio_ClipNtfSet_t notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

7.1.2.5.18.2      Unsubscribe

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhAtscDecAudioClipNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAtscDecAudio_ClipNtfSet_t notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

7.1.2.5.18.3      GetMaxNrBuffers

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMaxNrBuffers (
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxNrBuffers );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function queries how many buffers can be held by the audio decoder at the same time for audio clip paly decoding.

Parameters

Table 225

| Name          | Description                                                                                                   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMaxNrBuffers | Output parameter returning the maximum number of buffers that can held by the audio decoder at the same time. |

Return Values

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pMaxNrBuffers == adec.clipMaxNrBuffers

**7.1.2.5.18.4    AddData**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t AddData (
    [in] UInt32 id,
    [in] UInt32 size,
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pData,
    [in] Bool endOfData );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function adds a buffer pointed by “pData”, identified by “id” containing “size” bytes of input data to be decoded. This function can be called by the client(s) before switching into audio clip play decoding.

**Parameters**

**Table 226**

| Name      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| id        | Identification of the buffer. When the buffer is no longer needed by the audio decoder, the client will receive an “OnBufferAvailable” notification returning the “id”.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| size      | Size of the buffer pointed to by “pData”.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| pData     | Pointer to the buffer containing (a part of) the Audio clip to be decoded.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| endOfData | Indicates whether the data currently added is the last byte of the currently added Clip Play. It is <b>True</b> if the data currently added is the last data of the currently added Clip Play. It is <b>False</b> if not. If this flag is <b>True</b> , the ATSC Audio Decoder will notify to client(s) with an <b>OnEndOfData</b> notification when it decodes this buffer |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- if ( endOfData == False )
  - pData != NULL
  - size >0
  - adec.clipNrOfCurrentBuffers < adec.clipMaxNrBuffers

#### Action

- Modify `adec.avclip`

#### Postcondition

- A new buffer has been added to the set `adec.avclip`. The fields of this buffer are initialized with the corresponding parameters of this function.

#### 7.1.2.5.18.5 Start

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Start ( );
```

#### Qualifiers

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

#### Description

This function requests the ATSC Audio decoder to start audio clip play decoding.

#### Parameters

None.

#### Return Values

Standard.

#### Precondition

- `adec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStopped`
- `ctrl.streamMode == uhAtscDec_StreamModePush`
- `ctrl.decodingState == uhAtscDecCtrl_StateStarted`

#### Action

- Request to start the audio decoding for clip
- Modify `adec.clipCurrentState`

#### Postcondition

`adec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStarting`

#### Asynchronous Action

- Modify `adec.clipCurrentState`
- Notify `OnStarted(*)`

#### Asynchronous Postcondition

`adec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStarted`

#### Remarks

- When clip play is started, the audio decoder recovers from any errors from which it has not yet recovered. See also the Active Behavior in subclause 7.1.2.4.5.



**7.1.2.5.18.6 Stop****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Stop ( );
```

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function requests the ATSC Audio Decoder to stop audio clip decoding. The audio decoder resumes decoding the ATSC audio stream coming from the demux.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `adec.clipCurrentState != uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStopping`
- `adec.clipCurrentState != uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStopped`

**Action**

- Request to stop the audio decoding for clip
- Modify `adec.clipCurrentState`

**Postcondition**

```
adec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStopping
```

**Asynchronous Action**

- For each `b` in `adec.avclip` (in the order they were added)
  - Notify `OnBufferAvailable(*)`
  - Modify `adec.avclip`
  - Modify `adec.clipCurrentState`
  - Notify `OnStopped(*)`

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

```
adec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStopped
```

```
vdec.avclip == {}
```

**Remarks**

- When clip play is stopped, the audio decoder recovers from any errors from which it has not yet recovered. See also the Active Behavior in subclause 7.1.2.4.5.

7.1.2.5.18.7    **GetPauseSupp**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetPauseSupp ( [out] pBool pSupported );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function reports whether pausing for Audio clip decoding is supported by the ATSC Audio decoder.

**Parameters**

**Table 227**

| Name       | Description                                                                                                                                              |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSupported | Output parameter reporting whether pausing is supported or not. It is <code>True</code> when pausing is supported; it is <code>False</code> , otherwise. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

`True`

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```
*pSupported == adec.clipPauseSupported
```

7.1.2.5.18.8    **Pause**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Pause ( );
```

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function requests the ATSC Audio decoder to pause audio clip decoding as soon as possible. The position where decoding is paused depends on the type of decoder and data being decoded.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `adec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStarted`
- `adec.clipPauseSupported == True`

**Action**

- Request to pause the audio decoding for clip
- Modify `adec.clipCurrentState`

**Postcondition**

`adec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStPausing`

**Asynchronous Action**

- Modify `adec.clipCurrentState`
- Notify `OnPaused(*)`

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

`adec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStPaused`

**7.1.2.5.18.9 Continue****Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t Continue( );`

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function requests the ATSC Audio decoder to continue audio clip decoding after having been paused.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `adec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStPaused`
- `adec.clipPauseSupported == True`

**Action**

- Request to start the audio decoding for clip
- Modify `adec.clipCurrentState`

**Postcondition**

`adec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStarting`

### Asynchronous Action

- Modify `adec.clipCurrentState`
- Notify `OnStarted(*)`

### Asynchronous Postcondition

`adec.clipCurrentState == uhAtscDecAudio_ClipStStarted`

## 7.1.2.5.18.10 GetAvailableNrBuffers

### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetAvailableNrBuffers (
    [out] pUInt32 pNrBuffers );
```

### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

### Description

This function queries how many buffers are available for the client to add the audio clip data.

### Parameters

Table 228

| Name                    | Description                                                                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pNrBuffers</code> | Output parameter returning the available number of buffers that can be added. |

### Return Values

Standard.

### Precondition

True

### Action

None.

### Postcondition

`*pNrBuffers == adec.clipMaxNrBuffers - adec.clipNrOfCurrentBuffers`

## 7.1.2.5.18.11 GetState

### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetState ( [out] puhAtscDecAudio_ClipState_t pClipState );
```

### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the current state of the audio clip play.

**Parameters**

Table 229

| Name       | Description                                                          |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pClipState | Output parameter returning the current state of the audio clip play. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pClipState == adec.clipCurrentState`

**7.1.2.5.19 uhlAtscDecAudioClipNtf**

**Qualifiers**  
— callback

**Description**  
This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that are related to decoding an audio clip. The Subscribe function of uhlAtscDecAudioClip can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**  
`uuid( BECDBE82-3738-4DB2-9BD0-67B3FA7021E5 )`

**7.1.2.5.19.1 OnSubscriptionChanged**

**Signature**  
`Void OnSubscriptionChanged (`  
    `[in] UInt32 cookie,`  
    `[in] uhlAtscDecAudio_ClipNtfSet_t notifs );`

**Qualifiers**  
— onsubscriptionchanged-function

**7.1.2.5.19.2 OnBufferAvailable****Signature**

```
Void OnBufferAvailable (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] UInt32 id );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the ATSC Audio Decoder whenever a buffer, which was filled with data, has become free. This may result from decoding of the data filled in this buffer, or from a request from the ATSC Audio Decoder Client to stop the decoding of the audio clip.

The buffers are becoming free for further addition of new data, and are notified, in the same order as they were added by the ATSC Audio Decoder Client.

**Parameters****Table 230**

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Description</b>                                            |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie      | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| id          | Identification for the buffer provided by the client.         |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**Remarks**

— Each call of `AddData()` with a non-empty buffer eventually results in an `OnBufferAvailable` event.

**7.1.2.5.19.3 OnEndOfData****Signature**

```
Void OnEndOfData ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the ATSC audio decoder when it has completed the decoding of a client buffer which has the “endOfData” flag set or when it has encountered a client buffer which has the “endOfData” flag set with the size of this buffer being 0.

**Parameters****Table 231**

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.2.5.19.4 OnStarted****Signature**

```
Void OnStarted ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the ATSC Audio decoder if audio clip play has started or continued as a result of the “Start” or “Continue” function.

**Parameters****Table 232**

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action

Postcondition

True

7.1.2.5.19.5 OnStopped

Signature

Void OnStopped ( [in] UInt32 cookie );

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called by the ATSC Audio decoder if audio clip play has stopped as a result of the “Stop” function.

Parameters

Table 233

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action

Postcondition

True

7.1.2.5.19.6 OnPaused

Signature

Void OnPaused ( [in] UInt32 cookie );

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called by the ATSC Audio decoder if audio clip play has been paused as a result of the “Pause” function.



Parameters

Table 234

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action

**Postcondition**  
True

7.1.3 UhlSpdifDec

7.1.3.1 Concepts

7.1.3.1.1 Introduction

A SPDIF Decoder only consists of a SPDIF audio decoder.

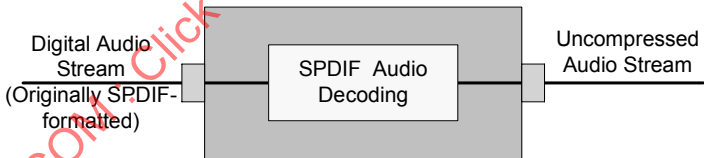


Figure 28 — SPDIF Decoder concepts

7.1.3.1.2 SPDIF Audio Decoding

The function of a SPDIF audio decoder is to decode an originally SPDIF-formatted audio input signal into an uncompressed format suitable for further processing.

The format of the audio input stream is either linear PCM or is encoded audio.

In the first case (linear PCM audio stream), the audio signal is streamed out unchanged.

In the latter case, the audio data complies to the IEC 61937 standard [19] and contains for instance AC-3, MPEG-1, MPEG-2 or DTS encoded audio.

The audio decoder may support one or more audio compression standards. The audio decoder detects into which audio compression standard the digital audio input stream is encoded. If the compression standard is among the compression standards supported by the audio decoder, the audio decoder decodes the digital audio input stream. Clients, when subscribed, receive notifications of changes in the properties of the digital audio input signal.

The audio decoder has a unique output which is completely determined by the content of its (encoded) audio input stream. This can be a multi-channel, a stereo or a mono audio signal. The number of output channels is identical to the number of channels in the input stream. Channel selection (i.e. downmixing, upmixing) is not provided by the audio decoder.

7.1.3.2 Types & Constants

7.1.3.2.1 Public Types & Constants

7.1.3.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

7.1.3.2.1.2 uhSpdifDec\_ValStat\_t

Signature

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifDec_ValStat_t {
    uhSpdifDec_ValStatInvalid = -2,
    uhSpdifDec_ValStatUnknown = -1,
    uhSpdifDec_ValStatKnown    = 1
} uhSpdifDec_ValStat_t, *puhSpdifDec_ValStat_t;
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This type represents the validity status of the related property/properties.

Values

Table 235

| Name                      | Description                                                              |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifDec_ValStatInvalid | The property/properties are temporarily not available.                   |
| uhSpdifDec_ValStatUnknown | The property/properties are available, yet they could not be determined. |
| uhSpdifDec_ValStatKnown   | The property/properties are available and determined.                    |

### 7.1.3.2.1.3 uhSpdifDec\_CompStandard\_t

#### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifDec_CompStandard_t {
    uhSpdifDec_StandardInvalid = 0x80000000,
    uhSpdifDec_StandardUnknown = 0x40000000,
    uhSpdifDec_Mpeg1Layer1      = 0x00000001,
    uhSpdifDec_Mpeg1Layer2      = 0x00000002,
    uhSpdifDec_Mpeg1Layer3      = 0x00000004,
    uhSpdifDec_Mpeg2Layer1      = 0x00000008,
    uhSpdifDec_Mpeg2Layer2      = 0x00000010,
    uhSpdifDec_Mpeg2Layer3      = 0x00000020,
    uhSpdifDec_Mpeg2Aac         = 0x00000040,
    uhSpdifDec_Ac3              = 0x00000080,
    uhSpdifDec_Dts              = 0x00000100,
    uhSpdifDec_Atrac1           = 0x00000200,
    uhSpdifDec_Atrac2           = 0x00000400,
    uhSpdifDec_Atrac3           = 0x00000800,
    uhSpdifDec_AtracX           = 0x00001000,
    uhSpdifDec_Pcm              = 0x00002000
} uhSpdifDec_CompStandard_t, *puhSpdifDec_CompStandard_t;
```

#### Qualifiers

— enum-element

#### Description

Values of this type represent digital audio compression standards.

- The MPEG-1 Standards are defined in [1].
- The MPEG-2 Standards are defined in [2].
- The MPEG-2 AAC Standard is defined in [2].
- The AC-3 Standard is defined in [20].
- The DTS Standard is defined in [7].

#### Values

Table 236

| Name                       | Description                                                                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifDec_StandardInvalid | The compression standard property is temporarily not available.                 |
| uhSpdifDec_StandardUnknown | The compression standard property is available, yet it could not be determined. |
| uhSpdifDec_Mpeg1Layer1     | MPEG-1, layer I.                                                                |
| uhSpdifDec_Mpeg1Layer2     | MPEG-1, layer II.                                                               |
| uhSpdifDec_Mpeg1Layer3     | MPEG-1, layer III.                                                              |
| uhSpdifDec_Mpeg2Layer1     | MPEG-2, layer I.                                                                |
| uhSpdifDec_Mpeg2Layer2     | MPEG-2, layer II.                                                               |
| uhSpdifDec_Mpeg2Layer3     | MPEG-2, layer III.                                                              |
| uhSpdifDec_Mpeg2Aac        | MPEG-2 AAC.                                                                     |

| Name              | Description |
|-------------------|-------------|
| uhSpdifDec_Ac3    | AC-3.       |
| uhSpdifDec_Dts    | DTS.        |
| uhSpdifDec_Atrac1 | ATRAC1.     |
| uhSpdifDec_Atrac2 | ATRAC2.     |
| uhSpdifDec_Atrac3 | ATRAC3.     |
| uhSpdifDec_AtracX | ATRAC-X.    |
| uhSpdifDec_Pcm    | PCM.        |

#### 7.1.3.2.1.4 uhSpdifDec\_CompStandardSet\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhSpdifDec_CompStandardSet_t, *puhSpdifDec_CompStandardSet_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of digital audio compression standards.

##### Constraints

None.

#### 7.1.3.2.1.5 uhSpdifDec\_SampFreq\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifDec_SampFreq_t {
    uhSpdifDec_FreqInvalid = 0x80000000,
    uhSpdifDec_FreqUnknown = 0x40000000,
    uhSpdifDec_8k          = 0x00000001,
    uhSpdifDec_11k025     = 0x00000002,
    uhSpdifDec_12k         = 0x00000004,
    uhSpdifDec_16k         = 0x00000008,
    uhSpdifDec_22k05      = 0x00000010,
    uhSpdifDec_24k         = 0x00000020,
    uhSpdifDec_32k         = 0x00000040,
    uhSpdifDec_44k1       = 0x00000080,
    uhSpdifDec_48k         = 0x00000100,
    uhSpdifDec_64k         = 0x00000200,
    uhSpdifDec_88k2       = 0x00000400,
    uhSpdifDec_96k         = 0x00000800,
    uhSpdifDec_128k        = 0x00001000,
    uhSpdifDec_176k4      = 0x00002000,
    uhSpdifDec_192k        = 0x00004000
} uhSpdifDec_SampFreq_t, *puhSpdifDec_SampFreq_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent sampling frequencies.

**Values****Table 237**

| <b>Name</b>            | <b>Description</b>                                                            |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifDec_FreqInvalid | The sampling frequency property is temporarily not available.                 |
| uhSpdifDec_FreqUnknown | The sampling frequency property is available, yet it could not be determined. |
| uhSpdifDec_8k          | 8 kHz.                                                                        |
| uhSpdifDec_11k025      | 11.025 kHz.                                                                   |
| uhSpdifDec_12k         | 12 kHz.                                                                       |
| uhSpdifDec_16k         | 16 kHz.                                                                       |
| uhSpdifDec_22k05       | 22.05 kHz.                                                                    |
| uhSpdifDec_24k         | 24 kHz.                                                                       |
| uhSpdifDec_32k         | 32 kHz.                                                                       |
| uhSpdifDec_44k1        | 44.1 kHz.                                                                     |
| uhSpdifDec_48k         | 48 kHz.                                                                       |
| uhSpdifDec_64k         | 64 kHz.                                                                       |
| uhSpdifDec_88k2        | 88.2 kHz.                                                                     |
| uhSpdifDec_96k         | 96 kHz.                                                                       |
| uhSpdifDec_128k        | 128 kHz.                                                                      |
| uhSpdifDec_176k4       | 176.4 kHz.                                                                    |
| uhSpdifDec_192k        | 192 kHz.                                                                      |

**7.1.3.2.1.6      uhSpdifDec\_SampFreqSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhSpdifDec_SampFreqSet_t, *puhSpdifDec_SampFreqSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of sampling frequencies.

**Constraints**

None.

7.1.3.2.1.7      uhSpdifDec\_BitRateInfo\_t

Signature

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifDec_BitRateInfo_t {
    uhSpdifDec_VariableInvalid    = -2,
    uhSpdifDec_VariableUnknown    = -1,
    uhSpdifDec_Constant           =  0,
    uhSpdifDec_Variable           =  1
} uhSpdifDec_BitRateInfo_t, *puhSpdifDec_BitRateInfo_t;
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

Values of this type indicate whether the digital audio input stream has a variable bit rate or not.

Values

Table 238

| Name                       | Description                                                                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifDec_VariableInvalid | The information over the bit rate variability is temporarily not available.                 |
| uhSpdifDec_VariableUnknown | The information over the bit rate variability is available, yet it could not be determined. |
| uhSpdifDec_Constant        | The digital audio input stream has a constant bit rate.                                     |
| uhSpdifDec_Variable        | The digital audio input stream has a variable bit rate.                                     |

7.1.3.2.1.8 **uhSpdifDec\_ChannelInfo\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifDec_ChannelInfo_t {
    uhSpdifDec_ChannelInvalid      = -2,
    uhSpdifDec_ChannelUnknown     = -1,
    uhSpdifDec_Mono                = 0,
    uhSpdifDec_Stereo              = 1,
    uhSpdifDec_JointStereo         = 2,
    uhSpdifDec_SumDifferenceStereo = 3,
    uhSpdifDec_DolbySurroundStereo = 4,
    uhSpdifDec_2x1                 = 5,
    uhSpdifDec_2x2                 = 6,
    uhSpdifDec_3x0                 = 7,
    uhSpdifDec_3x1                 = 8,
    uhSpdifDec_3x2                 = 9,
    uhSpdifDec_3x3                 = 10,
    uhSpdifDec_3x4                 = 11,
    uhSpdifDec_4x2                 = 12,
    uhSpdifDec_4x4                 = 13,
    uhSpdifDec_5x2                 = 14,
    uhSpdifDec_5x3                 = 15,
    uhSpdifDec_Dual_1x0_1x0        = 16,
    uhSpdifDec_Dual_1x0_2x0        = 17,
    uhSpdifDec_Dual_2x0_2x0        = 18,
    uhSpdifDec_Dual_3x0_2x0        = 19,
    uhSpdifDec_Dual_1x0_1x0_2x0    = 20
} uhSpdifDec_ChannelInfo_t, *puhSpdifDec_ChannelInfo_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type provide information about the channel configuration of the audio input stream.

**Values****Table 239****Name****Description**

uhSpdifDec\_ChannelInvalid

The channel configuration property is temporarily not available.

uhSpdifDec\_ChannelUnknown

The channel configuration property is available, yet it could not be determined.

uhSpdifDec\_Mono

The audio input stream contains a mono signal.

uhSpdifDec\_Stereo

The audio input stream contains a stereo signal. The stereo signal is not Dolby surround encoded or it is not indicated whether Dolby surround is present in the audio input stream.

uhSpdifDec\_JointStereo

The audio input stream contains a stereo signal, encoded with a method that exploits stereophonic irrelevance or stereophonic redundancy. This channel configuration can be found for audio signals encoded according to the ATRAC, DTS or the MPEG standard. The decoded audio output stream of the audio decoder contains a plain stereo signal.

| Name                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifDec_SumDifferenceStereo | The audio input stream contains a stereo signal, where the left channel contains the sum of the left and right channels of the original audio signal (before encoding), and the right channel the difference between the left and the right channel of the original audio signal (before encoding). This channel configuration can be found for audio signals encoded according to the DTS or the MPEG standard. The decoded audio output stream of the audio decoder contains a plain stereo signal.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| uhSpdifDec_DolbySurroundStereo | The audio input stream contains a Dolby surround encoded stereo signal. The output stream of the SPDIF decoder may be further decoded, externally to the SPDIF decoder. If it is decoded by a passive decoder (a.k.a. Dolby Surround decoder), the surround signal is extracted to supplement the two (left and right) front channels; the output stream then contains a front left, a front right, and a rear surround channel. If it is decoded by an active decoder (a.k.a. Dolby Surround Pro Logic decoder and Dolby Pro Logic II decoder), directional enhancement techniques are used to create four separate channels (front left, front center, front right, and surround channel). |
| uhSpdifDec_2x1                 | The audio input stream contains a signal with a front left, a front right, and a rear (surround) channel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| uhSpdifDec_2x2                 | The audio input stream contains a signal with a front left, a front right, a rear (surround) left, and a rear (surround) right channel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| uhSpdifDec_3x0                 | The audio input stream contains a signal with a front left, a front right, and a front center channel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| uhSpdifDec_3x1                 | The audio input stream contains a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, and a rear (surround) channel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| uhSpdifDec_3x2                 | The audio input stream contains a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, a rear (surround) left, and a rear (surround) right channel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| uhSpdifDec_3x3                 | The audio input stream contains a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, a rear (surround) left, a rear (surround) right, and a rear (surround) center channel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| uhSpdifDec_3x4                 | The audio input stream contains a signal with a front left, a front right, a front center, a left surround, a left-back surround, a right-back surround, and a right surround channel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| uhSpdifDec_4x2                 | The audio input stream contains a signal with a front left, a front left-center, a front right-center, a front right, a rear (surround) left, and a rear (surround) right channel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| uhSpdifDec_4x4                 | The audio input stream contains a signal with a front left, a front left-center, a front right-center, a front right, a first rear (surround) left, a second rear (surround) left, a first rear (surround) right, and a second rear (surround) right channel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| uhSpdifDec_5x2                 | The audio input stream contains a signal with a front left, a front left-center, a center, a front right-center, a front right, a rear (surround) left, and a rear (surround) right channel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| uhSpdifDec_5x3                 | The audio input stream contains a signal with a front left, a front left-center, a center, a front right-center, a front right, a rear (surround) left, a rear (surround) right, and a rear (surround) center channel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| uhSpdifDec_Dual_1x0_1x0        | The audio input stream contains two mono signals with independent content.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| uhSpdifDec_Dual_1x0_2x0        | The audio input stream contains a mono and a stereo signal with independent content. This channel configuration can be found for audio signals encoded according to the MPEG-2 standard.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| uhSpdifDec_Dual_2x0_2x0        | The audio input stream contains two stereo signals with independent content. This channel configuration can be found for audio signals encoded according to the MPEG-2 standard.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |



| Name                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifDec_Dual_3x0_2x0     | The audio input stream contains a signal with a front left, a front right, and a front center channel and a stereo signal. The two signals have independent contents. This channel configuration can be found for audio signals encoded according to the MPEG-2 standard. |
| uhSpdifDec_Dual_1x0_1x0_2x0 | The audio input stream contains two mono signals and a stereo signal. The three signals have independent contents. This channel configuration can be found for audio signals encoded according to the MPEG-2 standard.                                                    |

#### 7.1.3.2.1.9 uhSpdifDec\_LfeInfo\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifDec_LfeInfo_t {
    uhSpdifDec_LfePresentInvalid = -2,
    uhSpdifDec_LfePresentUnknown = -1,
    uhSpdifDec_LfeNotPresent     = 0,
    uhSpdifDec_LfePresent        = 1
} uhSpdifDec_LfeInfo_t, *puhSpdifDec_LfeInfo_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Values of this type indicate whether a LFE channel is present in the digital audio input stream or not.

##### Values

Table 240

| Name                         | Description                                                                                        |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifDec_LfePresentInvalid | The information over the presence of the LFE channel is temporarily not available.                 |
| uhSpdifDec_LfePresentUnknown | The information over the presence of the LFE channel is available, yet it could not be determined. |
| uhSpdifDec_LfeNotPresent     | The digital audio input stream does not contain a LFE channel.                                     |
| uhSpdifDec_LfePresent        | The digital audio input stream contains a LFE channel.                                             |

## 7.1.3.2.1.10 uhSpdifDec\_Language\_t

## Signature

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifDec_Language_t {
    uhSpdifDec_LanguageInvalid = -2,
    uhSpdifDec_LanguageUnknown = -1,
    uhSpdifDec_Albanian        = 1,
    uhSpdifDec_Breton          = 2,
    uhSpdifDec_Catalan         = 3,
    uhSpdifDec_Croatian        = 4,
    uhSpdifDec_Welsh           = 5,
    uhSpdifDec_Czech           = 6,
    uhSpdifDec_Danish          = 7,
    uhSpdifDec_German          = 8,
    uhSpdifDec_English         = 9,
    uhSpdifDec_Spanish         = 10,
    uhSpdifDec_Esperanto       = 11,
    uhSpdifDec_Estonian        = 12,
    uhSpdifDec_Basque          = 13,
    uhSpdifDec_Faroese         = 14,
    uhSpdifDec_French           = 15,
    uhSpdifDec_Frisian         = 16,
    uhSpdifDec_Irish           = 17,
    uhSpdifDec_Gaelic          = 18,
    uhSpdifDec_Galician        = 19,
    uhSpdifDec_Icelandic       = 20,
    uhSpdifDec_Italian         = 21,
    uhSpdifDec_Lappish         = 22,
    uhSpdifDec_Latin           = 23,
    uhSpdifDec_Latvian         = 24,
    uhSpdifDec_Luxembourgian   = 25,
    uhSpdifDec_Lithuanian      = 26,
    uhSpdifDec_Hungarian       = 27,
    uhSpdifDec_Maltese         = 28,
    uhSpdifDec_Dutch           = 29,
    uhSpdifDec_Norwegian       = 30,
    uhSpdifDec_Occitan         = 31,
    uhSpdifDec_Polish          = 32,
    uhSpdifDec_Portuguese      = 33,
    uhSpdifDec_Romanian        = 34,
    uhSpdifDec_Romanish        = 35,
    uhSpdifDec_Serbian         = 36,
    uhSpdifDec_Slovak          = 37,
    uhSpdifDec_Slovene         = 38,
    uhSpdifDec_Finnish         = 39,
    uhSpdifDec_Swedish         = 40,
    uhSpdifDec_Turkish         = 41,
    uhSpdifDec_Flemish         = 42,
    uhSpdifDec_Walloon         = 43,
    uhSpdifDec_BackgroundSound = 64,
    uhSpdifDec_Zulu            = 69,
    uhSpdifDec_Vietnamese      = 70,
    uhSpdifDec_Uzbek           = 71,
    uhSpdifDec_Urdu            = 72,
    uhSpdifDec_Ukrainian       = 73,
    uhSpdifDec_Thai            = 74,
    uhSpdifDec_Telugu          = 75,
    uhSpdifDec_Tatar           = 76,
    uhSpdifDec_Tamil           = 77,

```

```

uhSpdifDec_Tadzhik      = 78,
uhSpdifDec_Swahili      = 79,
uhSpdifDec_SrananTongo  = 80,
uhSpdifDec_Somali       = 81,
uhSpdifDec_Sinhalese    = 82,
uhSpdifDec_Shona        = 83,
uhSpdifDec_SerboCroat   = 84,
uhSpdifDec_Ruthenian    = 85,
uhSpdifDec_Russian      = 86,
uhSpdifDec_Quechua      = 87,
uhSpdifDec_Pustu        = 88,
uhSpdifDec_Punjabi      = 89,
uhSpdifDec_Persian      = 90,
uhSpdifDec_Papiamentto  = 91,
uhSpdifDec_Oriya        = 92,
uhSpdifDec_Nepali       = 93,
uhSpdifDec_Ndebele      = 94,
uhSpdifDec_Marathi      = 95,
uhSpdifDec_Moldavian    = 96,
uhSpdifDec_Malaysian    = 97,
uhSpdifDec_Malagasay    = 98,
uhSpdifDec_Macedonian   = 99,
uhSpdifDec_Laotian      = 100,
uhSpdifDec_Korean       = 101,
uhSpdifDec_Khmer        = 102,
uhSpdifDec_Kazakh       = 103,
uhSpdifDec_Kannada      = 104,
uhSpdifDec_Japanese     = 105,
uhSpdifDec_Indonesian   = 106,
uhSpdifDec_Hindi        = 107,
uhSpdifDec_Hebrew       = 108,
uhSpdifDec_Hausa        = 109,
uhSpdifDec_Gurani       = 110,
uhSpdifDec_Gujurati     = 111,
uhSpdifDec_Greek        = 112,
uhSpdifDec_Georgian     = 113,
uhSpdifDec_Fulani       = 114,
uhSpdifDec_Dari         = 115,
uhSpdifDec_Churash      = 116,
uhSpdifDec_Chinese      = 117,
uhSpdifDec_Burmese      = 118,
uhSpdifDec_Bulgarian    = 119,
uhSpdifDec_Bengali      = 120,
uhSpdifDec_Byelorussian = 121,
uhSpdifDec_Bambora      = 122,
uhSpdifDec_Azerbaijani  = 123,
uhSpdifDec_Assamese     = 124,
uhSpdifDec_Armenian     = 125,
uhSpdifDec_Arabic       = 126,
uhSpdifDec_Amharic      = 127,
uhSpdifDec_OtherLanguage = 128
} uhSpdifDec_Language_t, *puhSpdifDec_Language_t;

```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent languages.

## Values

Table 241

| Name                       | Description                                                         |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifDec_LanguageInvalid | The language property is temporarily not available.                 |
| uhSpdifDec_LanguageUnknown | The language property is available, yet it could not be determined. |
| uhSpdifDec_Albanian        | Albanian language.                                                  |
| uhSpdifDec_Breton          | Breton language.                                                    |
| uhSpdifDec_Catalan         | Catalan language.                                                   |
| uhSpdifDec_Croatian        | Croatian language.                                                  |
| uhSpdifDec_Welsh           | Welsh language.                                                     |
| uhSpdifDec_Czech           | Czech language.                                                     |
| uhSpdifDec_Danish          | Danish language.                                                    |
| uhSpdifDec_German          | German language.                                                    |
| uhSpdifDec_English         | English language.                                                   |
| uhSpdifDec_Spanish         | Spanish language.                                                   |
| uhSpdifDec_Esperanto       | Esperanto language.                                                 |
| uhSpdifDec_Estonian        | Estonian language.                                                  |
| uhSpdifDec_Basque          | Basque language.                                                    |
| uhSpdifDec_Faroese         | Faroese language.                                                   |
| uhSpdifDec_French          | French language.                                                    |
| uhSpdifDec_Frisian         | Frisian language.                                                   |
| uhSpdifDec_Irish           | Irish language.                                                     |
| uhSpdifDec_Gaelic          | Gaelic language.                                                    |
| uhSpdifDec_Galician        | Galician language.                                                  |
| uhSpdifDec_Icelandic       | Icelandic language.                                                 |
| uhSpdifDec_Italian         | Italian language.                                                   |
| uhSpdifDec_Lappish         | Lappish language.                                                   |
| uhSpdifDec_Latin           | Latin language.                                                     |
| uhSpdifDec_Latvian         | Latvian language.                                                   |
| uhSpdifDec_Luxembourgian   | Luxembourgian language.                                             |
| uhSpdifDec_Lithuanian      | Lithuanian language.                                                |
| uhSpdifDec_Hungarian       | Hungarian language.                                                 |
| uhSpdifDec_Maltese         | Maltese language.                                                   |
| uhSpdifDec_Dutch           | Dutch language.                                                     |
| uhSpdifDec_Norwegian       | Norwegian language.                                                 |
| uhSpdifDec_Occitan         | Occitan language.                                                   |
| uhSpdifDec_Polish          | Polish language.                                                    |
| uhSpdifDec_Portuguese      | Portuguese language.                                                |
| uhSpdifDec_Romanian        | Romanian language.                                                  |
| uhSpdifDec_Romansh         | Romansh language.                                                   |
| uhSpdifDec_Serbian         | Serbian language.                                                   |

| Name                       | Description                  |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| uhSpdifDec_Slovak          | Slovak language.             |
| uhSpdifDec_Slovene         | Slovene language.            |
| uhSpdifDec_Finnish         | Finnish language.            |
| uhSpdifDec_Swedish         | Swedish language.            |
| uhSpdifDec_Turkish         | Turkish language.            |
| uhSpdifDec_Flemish         | Flemish language.            |
| uhSpdifDec_Walloon         | Walloon language.            |
| uhSpdifDec_BackgroundSound | Background sound/clean feed. |
| uhSpdifDec_Zulu            | Zulu language.               |
| uhSpdifDec_Vietnamese      | Vietnamese language.         |
| uhSpdifDec_Uzbek           | Uzbek language.              |
| uhSpdifDec_Urdu            | Urdu language.               |
| uhSpdifDec_Ukrainian       | Ukrainian language.          |
| uhSpdifDec_Thai            | Thai language.               |
| uhSpdifDec_Telugu          | Telugu language.             |
| uhSpdifDec_Tatar           | Tatar language.              |
| uhSpdifDec_Tamil           | Tamil language.              |
| uhSpdifDec_Tadzhik         | Tadzhik language.            |
| uhSpdifDec_Swahili         | Swahili language.            |
| uhSpdifDec_SrananTongo     | Sranan Tongo language.       |
| uhSpdifDec_Somali          | Somali language.             |
| uhSpdifDec_Sinhalese       | Sinhalese language.          |
| uhSpdifDec_Shona           | Shona language.              |
| uhSpdifDec_SerboCroat      | Serbo-Croat language.        |
| uhSpdifDec_Ruthenian       | Ruthenian language.          |
| uhSpdifDec_Russian         | Russian language.            |
| uhSpdifDec_Quechua         | Quechua language.            |
| uhSpdifDec_Pustu           | Pustu language.              |
| uhSpdifDec_Punjabi         | Punjabi language.            |
| uhSpdifDec_Persian         | Persian language.            |
| uhSpdifDec_Papiamentto     | Papiamentto language.        |
| uhSpdifDec_Oriya           | Oriya language.              |
| uhSpdifDec_Nepali          | Nepali language.             |
| uhSpdifDec_Ndebele         | Ndebele language.            |
| uhSpdifDec_Marathi         | Marathi language.            |
| uhSpdifDec_Moldavian       | Moldavian language.          |
| uhSpdifDec_Malaysian       | Malaysian language.          |
| uhSpdifDec_Malagasay       | Malagasay language.          |
| uhSpdifDec_Macedonian      | Macedonian language.         |
| uhSpdifDec_Laotian         | Laotian language.            |
| uhSpdifDec_Korean          | Korean language.             |

| Name                     | Description                                                    |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifDec_Khmer         | Khmer language.                                                |
| uhSpdifDec_Kazakh        | Kazakh language.                                               |
| uhSpdifDec_Kannada       | Kannada language.                                              |
| uhSpdifDec_Japanese      | Japanese language.                                             |
| uhSpdifDec_Indonesian    | Indonesian language.                                           |
| uhSpdifDec_Hindi         | Hindi language.                                                |
| uhSpdifDec_Hebrew        | Hebrew language.                                               |
| uhSpdifDec_Hausa         | Hausa language.                                                |
| uhSpdifDec_Gurani        | Gurani language.                                               |
| uhSpdifDec_Gujurati      | Gujurati language.                                             |
| uhSpdifDec_Greek         | Greek language.                                                |
| uhSpdifDec_Georgian      | Georgian language.                                             |
| uhSpdifDec_Fulani        | Fulani language.                                               |
| uhSpdifDec_Dari          | Dari language.                                                 |
| uhSpdifDec_Churash       | Churash language.                                              |
| uhSpdifDec_Chinese       | Chinese language.                                              |
| uhSpdifDec_Burmese       | Burmese language.                                              |
| uhSpdifDec_Bulgarian     | Bulgarian language.                                            |
| uhSpdifDec_Bengali       | Bengali language.                                              |
| uhSpdifDec_Byelorussian  | Byelorussian language.                                         |
| uhSpdifDec_Bambora       | Bambora language.                                              |
| uhSpdifDec_Azerbaijani   | Azerbaijani language.                                          |
| uhSpdifDec_Assamese      | Assamese language.                                             |
| uhSpdifDec_Armenian      | Armenian language.                                             |
| uhSpdifDec_Arabic        | Arabic language.                                               |
| uhSpdifDec_Amharic       | Amharic language.                                              |
| uhSpdifDec_OtherLanguage | Another language than the ones explicitly defined in the type. |

## 7.1.3.2.1.11 uhSpdifDec\_ServiceType\_t

**Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifDec_ServiceType_t {
    uhSpdifDec_ServiceInvalid    = -2,
    uhSpdifDec_ServiceUnknown    = -1,
    uhSpdifDec_CompleteMain      = 0,
    uhSpdifDec_MusicAndEffects   = 1,
    uhSpdifDec_VisualImpaired    = 2,
    uhSpdifDec_HearingImpaired   = 3,
    uhSpdifDec_CleanEffects      = 4,
    uhSpdifDec_Dialogue          = 5,
    uhSpdifDec_Commentary        = 6,
    uhSpdifDec_Emergency         = 7,
    uhSpdifDec_VoiceOver         = 8,
    uhSpdifDec_Karaoke           = 9
} uhSpdifDec_ServiceType_t, *puhSpdifDec_ServiceType_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type provide information about the type of audio service that the digital audio input stream conveys.

**Values****Table 242**

| Name                       | Description                                                              |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifDec_ServiceInvalid  | The audio service property is temporarily not available.                 |
| uhSpdifDec_ServiceUnknown  | The audio service property is available, yet it could not be determined. |
| uhSpdifDec_CompleteMain    | Complete Main.                                                           |
| uhSpdifDec_MusicAndEffects | Music and Effects.                                                       |
| uhSpdifDec_VisualImpaired  | The audio content is prepared for the visually impaired viewer.          |
| uhSpdifDec_HearingImpaired | The audio content is prepared for hearing impaired.                      |
| uhSpdifDec_CleanEffects    | The audio content has no language.                                       |
| uhSpdifDec_Dialogue        | Dialogue.                                                                |
| uhSpdifDec_Commentary      | Commentary.                                                              |
| uhSpdifDec_Emergency       | Emergency.                                                               |
| uhSpdifDec_VoiceOver       | Voice-Over.                                                              |
| uhSpdifDec_Karaoke         | Karaoke.                                                                 |

7.1.3.2.1.12 **uhSpdifDec\_Error\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifDec_Error_t {
    uhSpdifDec_NoError          = 0x00000000,
    uhSpdifDec_SyncNotFound     = 0x00000001,
    uhSpdifDec_InvalidHeader    = 0x00000002,
    uhSpdifDec_DecodeFrame      = 0x00000004,
    uhSpdifDec_CrcFailed        = 0x00000008,
    uhSpdifDec_Underrun         = 0x00000010
} uhSpdifDec_Error_t, *puhSpdifDec_Error_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

This type enumerates the errors that can occur in the SPDIF decoder.

**Values****Table 243**

| Name                     | Description                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifDec_NoError       | Indicates that there is no error.                                                                                                                                  |
| uhSpdifDec_SyncNotFound  | The audio decoder did not find a valid sync word within the search range. To maintain a continuous data stream at the output the audio decoder may mute one frame. |
| uhSpdifDec_InvalidHeader | Invalid header. Error while parsing the bitstream.                                                                                                                 |
| uhSpdifDec_DecodeFrame   | An error occurred while decoding. The audio decoder may perform muting of the current audio block, and the rest of the frame.                                      |
| uhSpdifDec_CrcFailed     | The calculation of the CRC derived a wrong value. Audio block muting or audio block repeating may be performed.                                                    |
| uhSpdifDec_Underrun      | The audio decoder requested data, but none was available.                                                                                                          |

7.1.3.2.1.13 **uhSpdifDec\_ErrorSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhSpdifDec_ErrorSet_t, *puhSpdifDec_ErrorSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

This type represents sets of errors that can occur in the SPDIF decoder. Values of this type are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhSpdifDec_Error_t`.



7.1.3.2.1.14 **uhSpdifDec\_Ntf\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifDec_Ntf_t {
    uhSpdifDec_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhSpdifDec_StandardChanged     = 0x00000002,
    uhSpdifDec_SampFreqChanged     = 0x00000004,
    uhSpdifDec_BitRateChanged      = 0x00000008,
    uhSpdifDec_ChannelsChanged     = 0x00000010,
    uhSpdifDec_LanguageChanged     = 0x00000020,
    uhSpdifDec_ServiceTypeChanged  = 0x00000040,
    uhSpdifDec_Error               = 0x00000080,
    uhSpdifDec_Recovered           = 0x00000100,
    uhSpdifDec_StableOutput        = 0x00000200
} uhSpdifDec_Ntf_t, *puhSpdifDec_Ntf_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhISpdifDecNtf`.

**Values****Table 244**

| Name                                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhSpdifDec_SubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>uhSpdifDec_StandardChanged</code>     | Represents <code>OnStandardChanged</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>uhSpdifDec_SampFreqChanged</code>     | Represents <code>OnSampFreqChanged</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>uhSpdifDec_BitRateChanged</code>      | Represents <code>OnBitRateChanged</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>uhSpdifDec_ChannelsChanged</code>     | Represents <code>OnChannelsChanged</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>uhSpdifDec_LanguageChanged</code>     | Represents <code>OnLanguageChanged</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>uhSpdifDec_ServiceTypeChanged</code>  | Represents <code>OnServiceTypeChanged</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>uhSpdifDec_Error</code>               | Represents <code>OnError</code> . Some error(s) occurred while decoding the incoming signal. The exact error(s) that occurred will be an argument of the <code>OnError</code> notification that is generated (see type <code>uhSpdifDec_Error_t</code> ). |
| <code>uhSpdifDec_Recovered</code>           | Represents <code>OnRecovered</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>uhSpdifDec_StableOutput</code>        | Represents <code>OnStableOutput</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

7.1.3.2.1.15 **uhSpdifDec\_NtfSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhSpdifDec_NtfSet_t, *puhSpdifDec_NtfSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhSpdifDec_Ntf_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**Constraints**

None.

**7.1.3.2.1.16 uhSpdifDec\_AllNtfs****Signature**

```
const uhSpdifDec_NtfSet_t uhSpdifDec_AllNtfs = 0x000003FF;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhSpdifDec_Ntf_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**7.1.3.2.2 Model Types & Constants**

None.

**7.1.3.3 Logical Component****7.1.3.3.1 Interface-Role Model**

Figure 29 depicts the interface-role model of the SPDIF Decoder logical component (the grey box in the interface-role model). It shows the interfaces and the roles involved with this component.

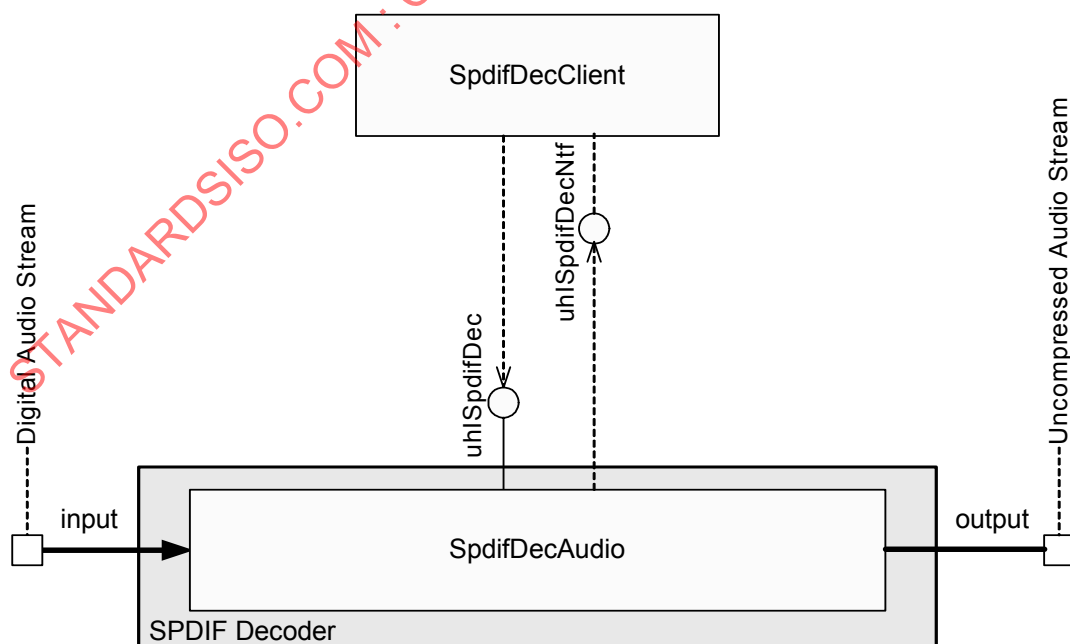


Figure 29 — Interface Role Model of a SPDIF Decoder

The SPDIF Decoder logical component contains a single `SpdifDecAudio` role. This role provides one mandatory (solid line) control interface to its client. A client can optionally provide a call-back interface allowing it to receive notifications of events in the `SpdifDecAudio`.

### 7.1.3.3.2 Diversity

#### 7.1.3.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 245

| Role                        | Interface                   | Presence  |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------|
| <code>SpdifDecAudio</code>  | <code>uhISpdifDec</code>    | mandatory |
| <code>SpdifDecClient</code> | <code>uhISpdifDecNtf</code> | optional  |

#### 7.1.3.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 246

| Role                       | Attribute                      |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>SpdifDecAudio</code> | <code>suppCompStandards</code> |
|                            | <code>suppSampFreqs</code>     |

#### 7.1.3.3.2.3 Constraints

```

— !( suppCompStandards & uhSpdifDec_StandardInvalid)
— !( suppCompStandards & uhSpdifDec_StandardUnknown)
— For each s in uhSpdifDec_CompStandard_t
  — If s in suppCompStandards
    — !( suppSampFreqs[s] & uhSpdifDec_FreqInvalid)
    — !( suppSampFreqs[s] & uhSpdifDec_FreqUnknown)
  — else
    — suppSampFreqs[s] == uhSpdifDec_FreqUnknown

```

### 7.1.3.3.3 Instantiation

#### 7.1.3.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 247

| Type                       | Object           | Multiplicity |
|----------------------------|------------------|--------------|
| <code>SpdifDecAudio</code> | <code>dec</code> | 1            |

#### 7.1.3.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

```

— dec.compStandard == uhSpdifDec_StandardInvalid

```

```

— dec.sampFreq == uhSpdifDec_FreqInvalid
— dec.variableBitRate == uhSpdifDec_VariableInvalid
— dec.bitRateStatus == uhSpdifDec_ValStatInvalid
— dec.bitRate == 0
— dec.channelInfo == uhSpdifDec_ChannelInvalid
— dec.lfePresent == uhSpdifDec_LfePresentInvalid
— dec.primaryLanguage == uhSpdifDec_LanguageInvalid
— dec.secondaryLanguage == uhSpdifDec_LanguageInvalid
— dec.serviceType == uhSpdifDec_ServiceInvalid
— dec.errorStatus == uhSpdifDec_NoError
— dec.stableOutput == False

```

#### 7.1.3.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

#### 7.1.3.4 Roles

##### 7.1.3.4.1 SpdifDecAudio

#### Signature

```

role SpdifDecAudio {
    const uhSpdifDec_CompStandardSet_t    suppCompStandards;
    uhSpdifDec_CompStandard_t             compStandard;
    const                                uhSpdifDec_SampFreqSet_t
    suppSampFreqs[uhSpdifDec_CompStandard_t];
    uhSpdifDec_SampFreq_t                  sampFreq;
    uhSpdifDec_BitRateInfo_t               variableBitRate;
    uhSpdifDec_ValStat_t                   bitRateStatus;
    UInt32                                 bitRate;
    uhSpdifDec_ChannelInfo_t               channelInfo;
    uhSpdifDec_LfeInfo_t                   lfePresent;
    uhSpdifDec_Language_t                  primaryLanguage;
    uhSpdifDec_Language_t                  secondaryLanguage;
    uhSpdifDec_ServiceType_t               serviceType;
    uhSpdifDec_ErrorSet_t                  errorStatus;
    Bool                                   stableOutput;
}

```

#### Qualifiers

— root

#### Description

A SPDIF audio decoder decodes an originally SPDIF-formatted encoded audio input stream and outputs a decoded audio stream. It autonomously detects the compression standard of the encoded audio input stream and provides notifications of various changes that occur in the input stream.

## Independent Attributes

Table 248

| Name              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| suppCompStandards | The set of compression standards that the audio decoder supports.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| compStandard      | The audio compression standard of the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| suppSampFreqs     | For each compression standard, the set of sampling frequencies that the audio decoder supports.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| sampFreq          | The sampling frequency of the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| variableBitRate   | Indicates whether the digital audio input stream has a variable bit rate or not.                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| bitRateStatus     | Validity state of the bit rate in <code>bitRate</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| bitRate           | The bit rate (in kbit/s) of the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| channelInfo       | The channel configuration of the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| lfePresent        | Indicates whether a LFE channel is present in the digital audio input stream or not.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| primaryLanguage   | The primary language of the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| secondaryLanguage | The secondary language of the digital audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| serviceType       | The type of audio service that the digital audio input stream conveys.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| errorStatus       | The current error status, represented by the set of errors that have occurred, and from which the SPDIF decoder has not yet recovered.                                                                                                                               |
| stableOutput      | Indicates whether the SPDIF decoder is outputting decoded audio long enough so that the client can safely unmute the corresponding output at the appropriate logical component(s) downstream ( <code>True</code> if this is the case, <code>False</code> otherwise). |

## Dependent Attributes

None.

## Invariants

```

— If ((variableBitRate == uhSpdifDec_VariableUnknown) || (variableBitRate ==
  uhSpdifDec_Variable))
  — bitRateStatus == uhSpdifDec_ValStatUnknown
— If ((channelInfo != uhSpdifDec_Dual_1x0_1x0) &&
  (channelInfo != uhSpdifDec_Dual_1x0_2x0) &&
  (channelInfo != uhSpdifDec_Dual_2x0_2x0) &&
  (channelInfo != uhSpdifDec_Dual_3x0_2x0) &&
  (channelInfo != uhSpdifDec_Dual_1x0_1x0_2x0))
  — secondaryLanguage == uhSpdifDec_LanguageUnknown
— If (compStandard == uhSpdifDec_StandardInvalid)
  — sampFreq == uhSpdifDec_FreqInvalid
— If (sampFreq == uhSpdifDec_FreqInvalid)
  — variableBitRate == uhSpdifDec_VariableInvalid
  — bitRateStatus == uhSpdifDec_ValStatInvalid
  — channelInfo == uhSpdifDec_ChannelInvalid
  — lfePresent == uhSpdifDec_LfePresentInvalid
  — primaryLanguage == uhSpdifDec_LanguageInvalid
  — secondaryLanguage == uhSpdifDec_LanguageInvalid
  — serviceType == uhSpdifDec_ServiceInvalid
— If (compStandard == uhSpdifDec_StandardUnknown)
  — sampFreq == uhSpdifDec_FreqUnknown
— If (sampFreq == uhSpdifDec_FreqUnknown)
  — variableBitRate == uhSpdifDec_VariableUnknown

```

```

— bitRateStatus == uhSpdifDec_ValStatUnknown
— channelInfo == uhSpdifDec_ChannelUnknown
— lfePresent == uhSpdifDec_LfePresentUnknown
— primaryLanguage == uhSpdifDec_LanguageUnknown
— secondaryLanguage == uhSpdifDec_LanguageUnknown
— serviceType == uhSpdifDec_ServiceUnknown

```

Instantiation

SpdifDecAudio is always instantiated as part of a SPDIF Decoder; see subclause 3.3.

### Streaming Behavior

- The audio decoder continually observes the input stream.
- When an input stream is detected the audio decoder will try to detect the compression standard of the input stream and set the value `compStandard` accordingly. As long as no compression standard has been detected the value of `compStandard` is equal to `uhSpdifDec_StandardInvalid`. If the compression standard is detected but is not in the set `suppCompStandards`, then the value of `compStandard` is set to `uhSpdifDec_StandardUnknown`. When a supported compression standard `cs` is detected the value of `compStandard` is set to `cs`.
- If the sampling frequency of the audio input stream is not in the set `suppSampFreqs[cs]`, the value of `sampFreq` is set to `uhSpdifDec_FreqUnknown` and the audio input stream is not decoded. As soon as the sampling frequency `sf` of the input stream is in the set `suppSampFreqs[cs]`, the value of `sampFreq` is set to `sf` and the input stream is decoded.
- When the audio input signal drops or when the compression standard changes and is not yet detected, the value of `compStandard` is set to `uhSpdifDec_StandardInvalid`, the values of the other attributes of the audio decoder are also set to Invalid (including `sampFreq`, which is set to `uhSpdifDec_FreqInvalid`). Detection of the compression standard of the audio input stream is restarted; no output data is then produced.

After that, when the compression standard of the digital audio input stream can't be determined, or is not in the set `suppCompStandards`, the value of `compStandard` is then reset to `uhSpdifDec_StandardUnknown`. The values of the other attributes of the audio decoder are then also reset to Unknown (including `sampFreq` which is then reset to `uhSpdifDec_FreqUnknown`). Once again, no output data is produced.

Output data is also not produced when the sampling frequency of the audio input stream is not in the set `suppSampFreqs[cs]` although the compression standard `cs` of the audio input stream could be determined and could be in the set `suppCompStandards`. The value of `sampFreq` is then set to `uhSpdifDec_FreqUnknown`. The values of the other attributes of the audio decoder (excluding `compStandard`) are then also reset to Unknown.

- In all cases, the audio decoder keeps reading and parsing the incoming audio packets, looks for a valid compression standard and for a valid sampling frequency.
- When one or more changes occur in the properties of the audio input stream, the audio decoder provides a notification to the subscribed client(s). If the changes in the properties may result in artefacts such as e.g. blops, ticks if the audio decoder continues producing output data, then the audio decoder stops producing output data, a soft mute (a cosine mute, for instance) is applied, the audio decoder determines when it is possible to produce output data again, and a soft unmute (a cosine unmute, for instance) is accordingly applied.

**Active Behavior**

The audio decoder has standard notification behavior (see `uhISpdifDecNtf`), apart from the following events.

**Table 249**

| Event                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The SPDIF decoder encounters one or more errors that are not part of <code>dec.errorStatus</code> .                                                                                                                                              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Let <i>e</i> be the set of the one or more errors that the SPDIF decoder encountered and that are not part of <code>dec.errorStatus</code>.</li> <li>— Add the errors in <i>e</i> to <code>dec.errorStatus</code></li> <li>— <code>notifyOnError(*, e)</code></li> </ul> |
| The SPDIF decoder recovers from one or more errors.<br>NOTE It is up to the implementation to decide when it has recovered from an error.                                                                                                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Let <i>e</i> be the set of the one or more errors that the SPDIF decoder recovered from.</li> <li>— Remove the errors in <i>e</i> from <code>dec.errorStatus</code></li> <li>— <code>notifyOnRecovered(*, e)</code></li> </ul>                                           |
| The SPDIF decoder is outputting decoded audio long enough so that the client can safely unmute the corresponding output at the appropriate logical component(s) downstream.<br>( <code>dec.stableOutput == False</code> when this event occurs). | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>dec.stableOutput = True</code></li> <li>— <code>notifyOnStableOutput(*, True)</code></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                      |
| The SPDIF decoder is no longer outputting a stable (decoded) audio stream<br>( <code>dec.stableOutput == True</code> when this event occurs).                                                                                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>dec.stableOutput = False</code></li> <li>— <code>notifyOnStableOutput(*, False)</code></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                    |

**Execution Constraints**

None.

**7.1.3.4.2 SpdifDecClient****Signature**

```
role SpdifDecClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

— actor

**Description**

A SPDIF decoder client represents a user of the `uhISpdifDec` interface.

**Execution Constraints**

None.

### 7.1.3.5 Interfaces

#### 7.1.3.5.1 uhlSpdifDec

##### Qualifiers

— None.

##### Description

This interface of a `SpdifDecAudio` provides functions to retrieve properties of the digital audio input stream and provides a subscription and an unsubscription function on notifications of changes of these properties.

##### Interface ID

`uuid( FB46ED44-AED1-497d-9967-3FDE251D5E11 )`

#### 7.1.3.5.1.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (  
    [in] uhISpdifDecNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhSpdifDec_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

#### 7.1.3.5.1.2 Unsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhISpdifDecNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhSpdifDec_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

#### 7.1.3.5.1.3 GetSuppStandards

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppStandards (  
    [out] puhSpdifDec_CompStandardSet_t pStandards );
```

##### Qualifiers

— synchronous

— thread-safe



**Description**  
Returns the set of compression standards supported by the audio decoder.

**Parameters**

Table 250

| Name       | Description                                                                                  |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStandards | Output parameter returning the set of compression standards that the audio decoder supports. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
— \*pStandards == dec.suppCompStandards

7.1.3.5.1.4      **GetStandard**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetStandard ( [out] puhSpdifDec\_CompStandard\_t pStandard );

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns the compression standard of the digital audio input stream.

**Parameters**

Table 251

| Name      | Description                                                                            |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStandard | Output parameter returning the compression standard of the digital audio input stream. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

Postcondition

— \*pStandard == dec.compStandard

7.1.3.5.1.5      GetSuppSampFreqs

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppSampFreqs (  
    [in] uhSpdifDec_CompStandard_t standard,  
    [out] puhSpdifDec_SampFreqSet_t pSampFreqs );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns the set of sampling frequencies supported by the audio decoder for the specified compression standard.

Parameters

Table 252

| Name       | Description                                                                                                                       |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| standard   | The compression standard for which the set of supported frequencies is requested.                                                 |
| pSampFreqs | Output parameter returning the set of sampling frequencies that the audio decoder supports for the compression standard standard. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

True

Action

None.

Postcondition

— \*pSampFreqs == dec.suppSampFreqs[standard]

7.1.3.5.1.6      GetSampFreq

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSampFreq ( [out] puhSpdifDec_SampFreq_t pSampFreq );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous

— thread-safe

### Description

Returns the sampling frequency of the digital audio input stream.

### Parameters

Table 253

| Name                   | Description                                                                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pSampFreq</code> | Output parameter returning the sampling frequency of the digital audio input stream. |

### Return Values

Standard.

### Precondition

True

### Action

None.

### Postcondition

— `*pSampFreq == dec.sampFreq`

### 7.1.3.5.1.7 GetBitRate

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetBitRate (
    [out] puhSpdifDec_BitRateInfo_t pVariable,
    [out] puhSpdifDec_ValStat_t      pStatus,
    [out] pUInt32                     pBitRate );
```

#### Qualifiers

— synchronous

— thread-safe

### Description

Returns whether the bit rate of the digital audio input stream is variable or constant. Also returns the bit rate (in kbit/s) of the digital audio input stream.

### Parameters

Table 254

| Name                   | Description                                                                                                            |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pVariable</code> | Output parameter returning whether the bit rate of the digital audio input stream is a variable bit rate (VBR) or not. |

| Name     | Description                                                                            |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStatus  | Output parameter that indicates the validity of the bit rate parameter pBitRate.       |
| pBitRate | Output parameter returning the bit rate (in kbit/s) of the digital audio input stream. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
 — \*pVariable == dec.variableBitRate  
 — \*pStatus == dec.bitRateStatus  
 — \*pBitRate == dec.bitRate

#### 7.1.3.5.1.8 GetChannels

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetChannels (
    [out] puhSpdifDec_ChannelInfo_t pChannelInfo,
    [out] puhSpdifDec_LfeInfo_t pLfePresent );
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

Returns the channel configuration of the digital audio input stream. Also returns whether a LFE channel is present in the digital audio input stream.

##### Parameters

Table 255

| Name         | Description                                                                                    |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pChannelInfo | Output parameter returning the channel configuration of the digital audio input stream.        |
| pLfePresent  | Output parameter returning whether a LFE channel is present in the digital audio input stream. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
— \*pChannelInfo == dec.channelInfo  
— \*pLfePresent == dec.lfePresent

**7.1.3.5.1.9      GetLanguage**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetLanguage (  
    [out] puhSpdifDec\_Language\_t pPrimaryLanguage,  
    [out] puhSpdifDec\_Language\_t pSecondaryLanguage );

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
  
— thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns the primary and secondary languages of the digital audio input stream.

**Parameters**

**Table 256**

| Name               | Description                                                                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pPrimaryLanguage   | Output parameter returning the primary language of the digital audio input stream.   |
| pSecondaryLanguage | Output parameter returning the secondary language of the digital audio input stream. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
— \*pPrimaryLanguage == dec.primaryLanguage  
— \*pSecondaryLanguage == dec.secondaryLanguage

7.1.3.5.1.10    **GetServiceType**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetServiceType ( [out] puhSpdifDec_ServiceType_t pServiceType );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the type of the audio service that the digital audio input stream conveys.

**Parameters**

**Table 257**

| Name         | Description                                                                                           |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pServiceType | Output parameter returning the type of the audio service that the digital audio input stream conveys. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pServiceType == dec.serviceType

7.1.3.5.1.11    **GetErrorStatus**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetErrorStatus ( [out] puhSpdifDec_ErrorSet_t pErrorStatus );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current error status.

**Parameters****Table 258**

| Name                      | Description                                          |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pErrorStatus</code> | Output parameter returning the current error status. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pErrorStatus == dec.errorStatus`

**7.1.3.5.1.12    GetStableOutput****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetStableOutput (
    [out] pBool pStableOutput);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns whether the SPDIF decoder has currently stable output.

**Parameters****Table 259**

| Name                       | Description                                                                       |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pStableOutput</code> | Output parameter returning whether the SPDIF decoder has currently stable output. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

Postcondition

\*pStableOutput == dec.stableOutput

7.1.3.5.2 uhlSpdifDecNtf

Qualifiers

— callback

Description

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in the SpdifDecAudio. The Subscribe function of uhlSpdifDec interface can be used to subscribe to these events.

Interface ID

uuid( 1DC99322-69B8-4825-963A-8752D237DF5B )

7.1.3.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhlSpdifDec_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

7.1.3.5.2.2 OnStandardChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnStandardChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhlSpdifDec_CompStandard_t standard );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called by SpdifDecAudio whenever it detects a change in the compression standard of its digital audio input stream.

Parameters

Table 260

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |



| Name     | Description                                                     |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| standard | The new compression standard of the digital audio input stream. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

7.1.3.5.2.3      **OnSampFreqChanged**

**Signature**  
**[async]** Void OnSampFreqChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhSpdifDec\_SampFreq\_t sampFreq );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is called by SpdifDecAudio whenever it detects a change in the sampling frequency of its digital audio input stream.

**Parameters**

Table 261

| Name     | Description                                                   |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie   | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| sampFreq | The new sampling frequency detected by SpdifDecAudio.         |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

7.1.3.5.2.4      **OnBitRateChanged**

**Signature**  
[**async**] Void OnBitRateChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhSpdifDec\_BitRateInfo\_t variable,  
    [in] uhSpdifDec\_ValStat\_t        status,  
    [in] UInt32                      bitRate );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is called by SpdifDecAudio whenever it detects a change in the bit rate of its digital audio input stream and/or in the variability of the bit rate.

**Parameters**

Table 262

| Name     | Description                                                                                         |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie   | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                       |
| variable | The new value indicating whether the bit rate of the digital audio input stream is variable or not. |
| status   | Parameter that indicates the validity of the bit rate parameter bitRate.                            |
| bitRate  | The new bit rate (in kbit/s) detected by SpdifDecAudio.                                             |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

7.1.3.5.2.5      **OnChannelsChanged**

**Signature**  
[**async**] Void OnChannelsChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhSpdifDec\_ChannelsInfo\_t variable,  
    [in] uhSpdifDec\_ValStat\_t        status,  
    [in] UInt32                      bitRate );

```
[in] UInt32 cookie,
[in] uhSpdifDec_ChannelInfo_t channelInfo,
[in] uhSpdifDec_LfeInfo_t lfePresent );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by `SpdifDecAudio` whenever it detects a change in the channel configuration of its digital audio input stream and/or in the presence of a LFE channel in its digital audio input stream.

**Parameters****Table 263**

| Name                     | Description                                                                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>      | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                             |
| <code>channelInfo</code> | The new channel configuration of the digital audio input stream.                          |
| <code>lfePresent</code>  | The new value indicating the presence of a LFE channel in the digital audio input stream. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.3.5.2.6 OnLanguageChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnLanguageChanged (
[in] UInt32 cookie,
[in] uhSpdifDec_Language_t primaryLanguage,
[in] uhSpdifDec_Language_t secondaryLanguage );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by `SpdifDecAudio` whenever it detects a change in the primary language and/or in the secondary language of its digital audio input stream.

**Parameters****Table 264**

| Name              | Description                                                   |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie            | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| primaryLanguage   | The new primary language of the digital audio input stream.   |
| secondaryLanguage | The new secondary language of the digital audio input stream. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.3.5.2.7 OnServiceTypeChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnServiceTypeChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhSpdifDec_ServiceType_t serviceType );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by `SpdifDecAudio` whenever it detects a change in the type of the audio service that the digital audio input stream conveys.

**Parameters****Table 265**

| Name        | Description                                                                    |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie      | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                  |
| serviceType | The new type of the audio service that the digital audio input stream conveys. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

7.1.3.5.2.8      **OnError**

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnError (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhSpdifDec\_ErrorSet\_t errors );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This notification function is used by SpdifDecAudio to inform the subscribed client that one or more errors occurred when decoding audio from the audio input stream.

**Parameters**

Table 266

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| errors | Describes the type(s) of error(s) that occurred.              |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

7.1.3.5.2.9      **OnRecovered**

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnRecovered (

```
[in] UInt32          cookie,  
[in] uhSpdifDec_ErrorSet_t errors );
```

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This notification function is used to inform the subscribed client that the SPDIF decoder has recovered from one or more previously notified errors.

**Parameters**

Table 267

| Name   | Description                                                                   |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                 |
| errors | Describes the type(s) of error(s) from which the SPDIF decoder has recovered. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

7.1.3.5.2.10    **OnStableOutput**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnStableOutput (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] Bool stableOutput );
```

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
The SpdifDecAudio calls this function when there is a change in the stability of the output of the SpdifDecAudio.

Parameters

Table 268

| Name         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie       | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| stableOutput | If True: SpdifDecAudio is outputting decoded audio long enough so that the client can safely unmute the corresponding output at the appropriate logical component(s) downstream.<br>If False: SpdifDecAudio is no longer outputting a stable (decoded) audio stream. |

Return Values  
None.

Precondition  
True

Action  
— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition  
True

7.1.4 UhlSpdifIn

7.1.4.1 Concepts

7.1.4.1.1 Introduction

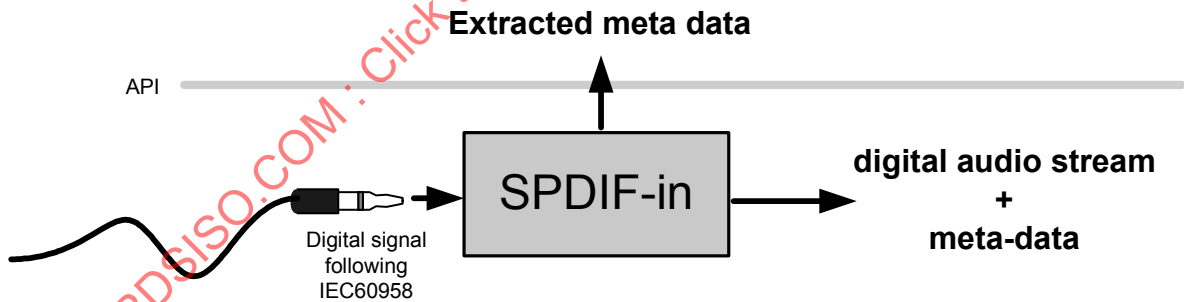


Figure 30 — Flow of data through the SPDIF-in logical component

In Figure 30 a schematic representation of the data flow through the SPDIF-in logical component is depicted. The input of the SPDIF-in logical component is a SPDIF signal that is compliant to the IEC 60958 standard [21]. Together with audio data, the SPDIF signal also contains so-called *meta-data* describing several properties of the carried audio data. The SPDIF-in logical component extracts the data from the SPDIF signal and separates the audio and meta-data. The streaming output of the SPDIF-in logical component contains audio data together with the meta-data. The extracted meta-data can be accessed by the clients of the SPDIF-in component through its interface.

The format of the audio data that is extracted from the IEC 60958 compliant signal is either linear PCM or is encoded audio. In the latter case, the extracted audio data complies to the IEC 61937 standard [19] and contains for instance AC-3, MPEG-1, MPEG-2 or DTS encoded audio. The SPDIF-in component does not *interpret* the audio data that it extracts from the SPDIF signal.

#### 7.1.4.1.2 Meta-data extraction

The meta-data that is carried along in the SPDIF signal is distributed over two channels. Each of the channels represents one of the so-called “sub-frames” as described by the IEC 60958 standard. Each channel has its own set of meta-data. The monitoring of meta-data of the two channels must explicitly be enabled before the meta-data is accessible to the client of the SPDIF-in logical component. Meta-data extraction of both channels can be enabled independent from each other.

The meta-data of a channel can be accessed by client by two means:

- a) by means of notifications.  
The properties that are part of the meta-data are divided into coherent groups. For each group one notification exists for each channel. A notification is generated when one or more properties in the meta-data belonging to the concerned group change.
- b) by means of `Get<Xxx>` functions.  
If monitoring of meta-data of a channel is enabled, the meta-data is continuously monitored. The most recently extracted meta-data of each channel can be retrieved by the client by means of several `Get<Xxx>` functions.

Most of the meta-data of an SPDIF signal is taken from the so-called “Channel Status” information which takes up to 24 bytes. The interpretation of the channel status information depends on its format (consumer format or professional format, see [21]). For convenience, the Channel Status bytes are interpreted and provided as grouped properties to the client. For completeness, the original Channel Status bytes can also be monitored.

#### 7.1.4.1.3 State machine of SPDIF-in

The operation of the SPDIF-in logical component depends on its internal state. The legal states of the SPDIF-in component are the following:

- Invalid  
This is the initial state of the SPDIF-in logical component. This state means that the signal information is temporarily not available.
- NotLocked  
This state means that the SPDIF-in logical component has not yet recognized a signal that complies to the IEC 60958 standard. The SPDIF-in component will internally vary the sub-sample rate with which the incoming SPDIF signal is sampled.
- Locked  
The SPDIF-in logical component has recognized that the incoming SPDIF signal is an IEC 60958 compliant signal. In this state, the exact audio format is not yet known. Because the syntax of the generated output stream does not depend on the audio format, streaming audio output and meta-data extraction starts once SPDIF-in is in the Locked state. The extracted audio data may be either linear PCM or some encoded audio format. For non-linear PCM data, the SPDIF-in component tries to interpret the extracted audio data as being compliant to the IEC 61937 standard. The IEC 61937 standard describes how encoded audio formats are encoded in an IEC 60958 compliant signal. One property of the meta-data describes whether the format of the carried audio data is linear PCM. Though, this property is not reliable. Even if the property indicates linear PCM, the SPDIF signal may contain non-linear PCM data. For this reason, even if the meta-data indicates that the carried audio is linear PCM, the SPDIF-in component will check the audio data to be compliant to the IEC 61937 standard for a fixed amount of time.
- AudioFormatFound  
Once in this state, the SPDIF-in logical component has monitored the extracted audio data on IEC 61937 compliancy for a fixed amount of time. If the audio data does not comply to the IEC 61937 standard, the



audio format is regarded as being linear PCM. If IEC 61937 compliance is detected, the current audio format is read from the meta-data carried in the IEC 61937 compliant audio data.

The state transition diagram of the SPDIF-in logical component is depicted in Figure 31.

Each state transition will cause a `StateChanged` notification. The SPDIF-in logical component will extract meta-data and an audio stream will be streamed out in the `Locked` state and `AudioFormatFound` state. The audio format is only known if the SPDIF-in component operates in the `AudioFormatFound` state.

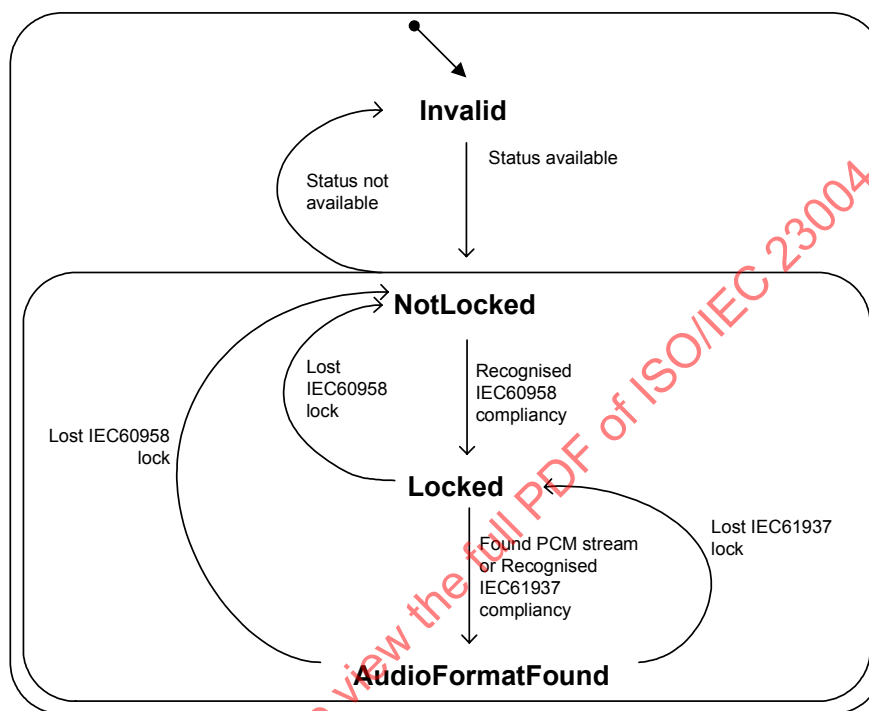


**Figure 31 — State transition diagram of SPDIF-in**

Special attention is needed for the case that the incoming SPDIF signal is of bad quality. Bad signal might result in high frequent state transitions. Especially transitions between the `NotLocked` and the `Locked` state may occur in a high frequency. This behavior is highly unwanted because in such situation the client would be "attacked" by an enormous amount of notifications. SPDIF-in will prevent high rate state transition notification from happening by taking a notification-threshold `notifThreshold` into account. If a state transition happens, a notification about this state change is deferred until the new state is stable for the period defined by attribute `notifThreshold`. This threshold is applied to the following transitions:

- Transition from `AudioFormatFound` state to the `Locked` or `NotLocked` state
- Transition from the `Locked` state to the `NotLocked` state.

Notifications for the transitions that are named above are generated when the new state is stable for the specified threshold. Other transitions are reported right-away. This is depicted in Figure 32.

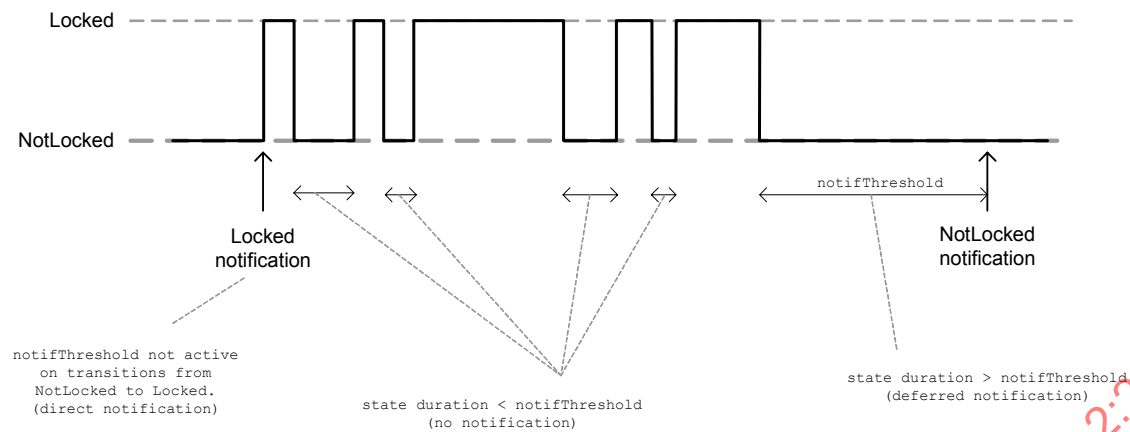


Figure 32 — example of the notification threshold for state transitions.

7.1.4.2 Types & Constants

7.1.4.2.1 Public Types & Constants

7.1.4.2.1.1 Error Codes

Signature

```
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_SPDIFIN_NO_CHANNEL_DATA = 0x00000801;
```

Qualifiers

— error-codes

Description

Definition of all non-standard errors that might be returned by any of the functions of the interfaces of the SPDIF-in logical component.

Constants

Table 269

Name

UH\_ERR\_SPDIFIN\_NO\_CHANNEL\_DATA

Description

This error is specific to the SPDIF-in logical component and is only used in its interface `uhISpdifIn`. The error signals that an attempt was made to access meta-data of a channel while no data was yet extracted from the SPDIF signal.

**7.1.4.2.1.2      uhSpdifIn\_ValStat\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifIn_ValStat_t {
    uhSpdifIn_ValStatInvalid = -2,
    uhSpdifIn_ValStatUnknown = -1,
    uhSpdifIn_ValStatKnown   = 1
} uhSpdifIn_ValStat_t, *puhSpdifIn_ValStat_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This type represents the validity status of the related property/properties.

**Values****Table 270**

| Name                     | Description                                                              |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifIn_ValStatInvalid | The property/properties are temporarily not available.                   |
| uhSpdifIn_ValStatUnknown | The property/properties are available, yet they could not be determined. |
| uhSpdifIn_ValStatKnown   | The property/properties are available and determined.                    |

**7.1.4.2.1.3      uhSpdifIn\_NrChannelStatusBytes****Signature**

```
const UInt8 uhSpdifIn_NrChannelStatusBytes = 24;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the maximum number of bytes that is occupied by the channel status information. The consumer channel status format occupies less bytes.

**7.1.4.2.1.4      uhSpdifIn\_State\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifIn_State_t {
    uhSpdifIn_StInvalid      = -2,
    uhSpdifIn_StNotLocked   = 0,
    uhSpdifIn_StLocked      = 1,
    uhSpdifIn_StAudioFormatFound = 2
} uhSpdifIn_State_t, *puhSpdifIn_State_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This type enumerates the states in which the `SpdifIn` logical component may operate. See Figure 31 for the state diagram of the `SpdifIn` component.

**Values****Table 271**

| Name                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhSpdifIn_StInvalid</code>          | The property/properties are temporarily not available.                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_StNotLocked</code>        | The <code>SpdifIn</code> component has not yet recognized an IEC 60958 compliant stream in the input signal.                                                                                           |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_StLocked</code>           | The <code>SpdifIn</code> component has recognized an IEC 60958 compliant stream and starts outputting a digital audio stream. Several meta-data properties are available once operating in this state. |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_StAudioFormatFound</code> | The <code>SpdifIn</code> component has recognized the format of the audio data that is carried by the input signal.                                                                                    |

**7.1.4.2.1.5      `uhSpdifIn_Notification_t`****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifIn_Notification_t {
    uhSpdifIn_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhSpdifIn_StateChanged        = 0x00000002,
    uhSpdifIn_Error               = 0x00000004,
    uhSpdifIn_AudioInfoChanged    = 0x00000008,
    uhSpdifIn_ChannelInfoChanged  = 0x00000010,
    uhSpdifIn_CopyrightInfoChanged = 0x00000020,
    uhSpdifIn_ClockAccuracyChanged = 0x00000040,
    uhSpdifIn_ChannelStatusChanged = 0x00000080,
    uhSpdifIn_UserData            = 0x00000100
} uhSpdifIn_Notification_t, *puhSpdifIn_Notification_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

Enum-element.

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhISpdifInNtf`.

**Values****Table 272**

| Name                                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhSpdifIn_SubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> .                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_StateChanged</code>        | The operational state of the <code>SpdifIn</code> component changed.                                                                                                                          |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_Error</code>               | Some error occurred while monitoring the incoming signal. The exact error that occurred will be an argument of the notification that is generated. (See type <code>uhSpdifIn_Error_t</code> ) |

| Name                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifIn_AudioInfoChanged     | One or more of the properties w.r.t. the (audio) format of the SPDIF signal changed.                                                                                                   |
| uhSpdifIn_ChannelInfoChanged   | One or more of the properties w.r.t. the channel information of the SPDIF signal changed.                                                                                              |
| uhSpdifIn_CopyrightInfoChanged | The copyright state of the audio data carried in the SPDIF signal changed.                                                                                                             |
| uhSpdifIn_ClockAccuracyChanged | The clock accuracy of the encoded clock in the SPDIF signal changed.                                                                                                                   |
| uhSpdifIn_ChannelStatusChanged | Any of the properties of the Channel Status information carried in the SPDIF signal changed. The Channel Status is the raw meta-data that other kind of information is extracted from. |
| uhSpdifIn_UserData             | Userdata was extracted from the SPDIF signal.                                                                                                                                          |

#### 7.1.4.2.1.6 uhSpdifIn\_Notifications\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhSpdifIn_Notifications_t,
                *puhSpdifIn_Notifications_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhSpdifIn_Notification_t`. These values are used in the Subscribe and Unsubscribe functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

#### 7.1.4.2.1.7 uhSpdifIn\_AllNotifications

##### Signature

```
const uhSpdifIn_Notifications_t
        uhSpdifIn_AllNotifications = 0x000001FF;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Defines the set of all values of type `uhSpdifIn_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the Subscribe and Unsubscribe functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

#### 7.1.4.2.1.8 uhSpdifIn\_ChannelStatusFormat\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifIn_ChannelStatusFormat_t {
    uhSpdifIn_CfConsumer      = 0,
    uhSpdifIn_CfProfessional = 1
} uhSpdifIn_ChannelStatusFormat_t, *puhSpdifIn_ChannelStatusFormat_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

**Description**

The `uhSpdifIn_ChannelStatusFormat_t` type enumerates the two distinct SPDIF Channel Status formats. The format is either consumer or professional, see [21].

**Values****Table 273**

| Name                                  | Description                                                       |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhSpdifIn_CfConsumer</code>     | The SPDIF channel status data format is of the consumer type.     |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_CfProfessional</code> | The SPDIF channel status data format is of the professional type. |

**7.1.4.2.1.9      `uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t`****Signature**

```
typedef enum uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t {
    uhSpdifIn_Channel1      = 1,
    uhSpdifIn_Channel2      = 2
} uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t, *puhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element.

**Description**

The `uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t` type enumerates the two channels which are carried in the so-called “sub-frames” of a SPDIF signal. See [21] for details about sub-frames.

**Values****Table 274**

| Name                            | Description                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhSpdifIn_Channel1</code> | Specifies the first channel (sub-frame)  |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_Channel2</code> | Specifies the second channel (sub-frame) |

**Remarks**

— Note that the channel number does not *necessarily* specify e.g. the left and right channels of a stereo audio signal. AC-3, for instance, distinguishes 5 audio channels for surround sound. For audio formats other than linear PCM, the channel number is -in common- irrelevant because the two sub-frames are merged into one audio stream. In that case the meta-data of channel 1 and 2 are the same (see [21]).

**7.1.4.2.1.10      `uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumberSet_t`****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumberSet_t,
    *puhSpdifIn_ChannelNumberSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

The `uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumberSet_t` type describes a set of channel number values as defined by `uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t`.

**7.1.4.2.1.11 uhSpdifIn\_AudioFormat\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifIn_AudioFormat_t
{
    uhSpdifIn_AfNull          = 0,
    uhSpdifIn_AfAc3           = 1,
    uhSpdifIn_AfPause         = 3,
    uhSpdifIn_AfMpeg1Layer1   = 4,
    uhSpdifIn_AfMpeg1Layer2Or3 = 5,
    uhSpdifIn_AfMpeg2         = 6,
    uhSpdifIn_AfMpeg2Aac      = 7,
    uhSpdifIn_AfMpeg2Layer1   = 8,
    uhSpdifIn_AfMpeg2Layer2Or3 = 9,
    uhSpdifIn_AfDtsType1      = 11,
    uhSpdifIn_AfDtsType2      = 12,
    uhSpdifIn_AfDtsType3      = 13,
    uhSpdifIn_AfAtrac1        = 14,
    uhSpdifIn_AfAtrac2Or3     = 15,
    uhSpdifIn_AfUnknown       = 32,
    uhSpdifIn_AfPcm           = 33
} uhSpdifIn_AudioFormat_t, *puhSpdifIn_AudioFormat_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The `uhSpdifIn_AudioFormat_t` type is used to specify the format of the audio data that is carried in the SPDIF signal. The values that the audio formats represent are taken from the IEC 60958 standard.

**Values****Table 275**

| Name                                    | Description                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhSpdifIn_AfNull</code>           | The Null audio format is used in transitions from encoded audio (conform IEC 61937) to linear PCM data (conform IEC 60958). Rarely used. |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_AfAc3</code>            | The SPDIF signal contains AC-3 encoded audio data.                                                                                       |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_AfPause</code>          | The SPDIF signal contains a gap. During a gap, all audio is muted.                                                                       |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_AfMpeg1Layer1</code>    | The SPDIF signal contains MPEG-1 layer 1 encoded audio data.                                                                             |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_AfMpeg1Layer2Or3</code> | The SPDIF signal contains MPEG-1 layer 2 or 3 encoded audio data or contains MPEG-2 without extension.                                   |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_AfMpeg2</code>          | The SPDIF signal contains MPEG-2 extension audio data.                                                                                   |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_AfMpeg2Aac</code>       | The SPDIF signal contains MPEG-2 AAC encoded audio data.                                                                                 |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_AfMpeg2Layer1</code>    | The SPDIF signal contains MPEG-2 layer 1 encoded audio data with a low sampling frequency.                                               |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_AfMpeg2Layer2Or3</code> | The SPDIF signal contains MPEG-2 layer 2 or 3 encoded audio data with a low sampling frequency.                                          |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_AfDtsType1</code>       | The SPDIF signal contains DTS type I audio data.                                                                                         |

| Name                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifIn_AfDtsType2  | The SPDIF signal contains DTS type II audio data.                                                                                                                                          |
| uhSpdifIn_AfDtsType3  | The SPDIF signal contains DTS type III audio data.                                                                                                                                         |
| uhSpdifIn_AfAtrac1    | The SPDIF signal contains ATRAC 1 encoded audio data.                                                                                                                                      |
| uhSpdifIn_AfAtrac2Or3 | The SPDIF signal contains ATRAC 2 or 3 encoded audio data.                                                                                                                                 |
| uhSpdifIn_AfUnknown   | The audio format that is carried in the SPDIF signal is not yet recognized. This value will be reported by the interface if the state of the SPDIF-in component is not "AudioFormatFound". |
| uhSpdifIn_AfPcm       | The audio format is linear PCM conform IEC 60958.                                                                                                                                          |

#### 7.1.4.2.1.12 uhSpdifIn\_Error\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifIn_Error_t
{
    uhSpdifIn_ErParity = 0x01,
    uhSpdifIn_ErData   = 0x02,
    uhSpdifIn_ErCrc    = 0x04
} uhSpdifIn_Error_t, *puhSpdifIn_Error_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

##### Description

The `uhSpdifIn_Error_t` type is used in notifications of type `uhSpdifIn_Error` to specify the type of error that occurred. All error values are represented by one bit. Multiple errors may be ORed together into one value of type `uhSpdifIn_ErrorSet_t`.

##### Values

Table 276

| Name               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifIn_ErParity | A parity error was detected on the IEC 60958 level. Lots of parity errors indicate a bad signal.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| uhSpdifIn_ErData   | The signal contains invalid data. In this case, the output audio stream might contain invalid samples.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| uhSpdifIn_ErCrc    | In the professional channel status format, a crc-code is provided in order to check data integrity on the IEC 60958 level. If the crc check does not match the provided crc code, data errors on the input stream exist. In that case, the output audio stream might contain invalid samples. This error can occur in professional mode only. |



**7.1.4.2.1.13    uhSpdifIn\_ErrorSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhSpdifIn_ErrorSet_t,
             *puhSpdifIn_ErrorSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

The uhSpdifIn\_ErrorSet\_t type describes a set of error values as defined by uhSpdifIn\_Error\_t.

**7.1.4.2.1.14    uhSpdifIn\_Emphasis\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifIn_Emphasis_t
{
    uhSpdifIn_EmNotIndicated = 0,
    uhSpdifIn_EmNone         = 1,
    uhSpdifIn_EmCdType       = 3,
    uhSpdifIn_EmJ17          = 7
} uhSpdifIn_Emphasis_t, *puhSpdifIn_Emphasis_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The uhSpdifIn\_Emphasis\_t type signals whether -and what kind of- pre-emphasis was applied during encoding of the audio data contained in the SPDIF signal. The values of the enumeration are derived from the IEC 60958 standard.

**Values****Table 277**

| Name                     | Description                                                                 |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifIn_EmNotIndicated | The emphasis information was not indicated in the SPDIF signal.             |
| uhSpdifIn_EmNone         | No pre-emphasis was applied during encoding of the audio signal.            |
| uhSpdifIn_EmCdType       | Pre-emphasis of type 'CD' was applied during encoding of the audio signal.  |
| uhSpdifIn_EmJ17          | Pre-emphasis of type 'J17' was applied during encoding of the audio signal. |

## 7.1.4.2.1.15 uhSpdifIn\_Category\_t

**Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifIn_Category_t
{
    uhSpdifIn_CtUnknown          = 0x80,
    uhSpdifIn_CtCdPlayer         = 0x81,
    uhSpdifIn_CtDatPlayer        = 0x83,
    uhSpdifIn_CtDccPlayer        = 0xC3,
    uhSpdifIn_CtMiniDiscPlayer   = 0xC9,
    uhSpdifIn_CtDvdPlayer        = 0x99,
    // groups of products (removed high bits, 3 low-bits remaining)
    uhSpdifIn_CtLaserOptical     = 0x01,
    uhSpdifIn_CtSignalProc       = 0x02,
    uhSpdifIn_CtMagneticMedia    = 0x03,
    uhSpdifIn_CtBroadcasted      = 0x04,
    uhSpdifIn_CtMusicalInstr     = 0x05,
    uhSpdifIn_CtAdConverter      = 0x06
} uhSpdifIn_Category_t, *puhSpdifIn_Category_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The category code indicates the kind of equipment that generated the digital audio signal. According to IEC 60958 the list of categories is not fixed and may be extended in the future. Though, the IEC 60958 standard distinguishes category *groups* that are fixed. The category enumeration describes both, specific equipment and grouped equipment.

The category code is only known if the channel status data that is extracted from the SPDIF signal is of the “consumer” type. In case the channel status is of the “professional” type, the category code is uhSpdifIn\_CtUnknown.

**Values****Table 278**

| Name                       | Description                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifIn_CtUnknown        | The category is not specified.                                                                                 |
| uhSpdifIn_CtCdPlayer       | The audio signal is generated by a CD player.                                                                  |
| uhSpdifIn_CtDatPlayer      | The audio signal is generated by a DAT player.                                                                 |
| uhSpdifIn_CtDccPlayer      | The audio signal is generated by a DCC player.                                                                 |
| uhSpdifIn_CtMiniDiscPlayer | The audio signal is generated by a MiniDisc player.                                                            |
| uhSpdifIn_CtDvdPlayer      | The audio signal is generated by a DVD player.                                                                 |
| uhSpdifIn_CtLaserOptical   | The generating device belongs to the optical laser equipment group. This is a grouped category.                |
| uhSpdifIn_CtSignalProc     | The generating device is any kind of signal processing device. This is a grouped category.                     |
| uhSpdifIn_CtMagneticMedia  | The generating device belongs to the magnetic tape or magnetic disc product group. This is a grouped category. |
| uhSpdifIn_CtBroadcasted    | Audio signal is broadcast. This is a grouped category.                                                         |

| Name                     | Description                                                                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifIn_CtMusicalInstr | Audio signal is generated by any kind of musical instrument. This is a grouped category. |
| uhSpdifIn_CtAdConverter  | Audio signal is generated by any kind of A/D converter. This is a grouped category.      |

**Remarks**

— The last 6 category codes specify a *group* of devices rather than one *specific* device.

**7.1.4.2.1.16 uhSpdifIn\_ClockAccuracy\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifIn_ClockAccuracy_t
{
    uhSpdifIn_CaInvalid      = -2,
    uhSpdifIn_CaUnknown     = -1,
    uhSpdifIn_Ca1000ppm     = 0,
    uhSpdifIn_Ca50ppm       = 1,
    uhSpdifIn_CaVariable     = 2
} uhSpdifIn_ClockAccuracy_t, *puhSpdifIn_ClockAccuracy_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The uhSpdifIn\_ClockAccuracy\_t type is used to specify the accuracy of the clock that is sent along with the SPDIF signal.

**Values****Table 279**

| Name                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpdifIn_CaInvalid  | The clock accuracy is temporarily not available.                                                                                                                                    |
| uhSpdifIn_CaUnknown  | The clock accuracy is available, yet it could not be determined.                                                                                                                    |
| uhSpdifIn_Ca1000ppm  | The tolerance of transmitting sample frequency shall be within +/- 1000 x 10 <sup>-6</sup> .                                                                                        |
| uhSpdifIn_Ca50ppm    | The tolerance of transmitting sample frequency shall be within +/- 50 x 10 <sup>-6</sup> .                                                                                          |
| uhSpdifIn_CaVariable | The clock-accuracy may vary in time. The signal in this mode can only be received by specially designed receivers. Most receivers require a constant time base in the SPDIF signal. |

7.1.4.2.1.17 **uhSpdifIn\_CopyrightStatus\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifIn_CopyrightStatus_t
{
    uhSpdifIn_CrInvalid      = -2,
    uhSpdifIn_CrUnknown     = -1,
    uhSpdifIn_CrNone        =  1,
    uhSpdifIn_CrPreRecorded =  2,
    uhSpdifIn_CrHomeCopy    =  3
} uhSpdifIn_CopyrightStatus_t, *puhSpdifIn_CopyrightStatus_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The `uhSpdifIn_CopyrightStatus_t` type is used to signal the copyright status of the input signal. This type combines 2 copyright properties into one enumeration: the copyright property (copyrighted or not) and the generation status (number of copies allowed) of the data.

If a signal carries copyrighted material, the copyright status is either `uhSpdifIn_CrPreRecorded` or `uhSpdifIn_CrHomeCopy`. If the audio signal is not copyrighted, the copyright state is `uhSpdifIn_CrNone`.

**Values****Table 280**

| Name                                 | Description                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhSpdifIn_CrInvalid</code>     | The copyright information is temporarily not available.                                                                |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_CrUnknown</code>     | The copyright information is available, yet it could not be determined. (always the case for the professional format). |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_CrNone</code>        | The audio data carried in the SPDIF signal is not copyrighted.                                                         |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_CrPreRecorded</code> | The audio data carried in the SPDIF signal is copyrighted. One more copy is allowed.                                   |
| <code>uhSpdifIn_CrHomeCopy</code>    | The audio data carried in the SPDIF signal is copyrighted. Copying is not allowed.                                     |

### 7.1.4.2.2 Model Types & Constants

#### 7.1.4.2.2.1 ConsumerChannelStatus\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef struct _ConsumerChannelStatus_t
{
    int channelStatusFormat : 1;
    int nonLinearPcm        : 1;
    int copyright            : 1;
    int emphasis             : 3;
    int channelStatusMode   : 2;
    int categoryCode        : 8;
    int sourceNumber        : 4;
    int channelNumber       : 4;
    int sampleFrequency     : 4;
    int clockAccuracy       : 2;
    int reserved1           : 2;
    int wordLengthFieldSize : 1;
    int wordLengthBits      : 3;
    int reserved2           : 4;
} ConsumerChannelStatus_t, *pConsumerChannelStatus_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

The `ConsumerChannelStatus_t` type represents the Channel Status bits as described in the IEC 60958 standard (see [21]).

##### Fields

**Table 281**

| bits | Name                | Description                                                                                                                                  |
|------|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | channelStatusFormat | 0 = Consumer format<br>1 = Professional format                                                                                               |
| 1    | nonLinearPcm        | 0 = Linear PCM audio signal<br>1 = Other than linear PCM samples                                                                             |
| 2    | copyright           | 0 = Copyrighted material. The L bit of the categoryCode field defines the copyright generation status of the channel.<br>1 = Not copyrighted |
| 3-5  | emphasis            | 000 = Emphasis not indicated<br>001 = Emphasis CD type                                                                                       |
| 6-7  | channelStatusMode   | Should always contain '0', all other values reserved.                                                                                        |

| bits  | Name                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8-15  | categoryCode        | Defines the type of equipment that generated the SPDIF signal. The MSB of this field ('L') describes the copyright generation status of the channel. Most common values are:<br><br>0000 0001 = CD player<br>L000 0011 = DAT player<br>L100 0011 = DCC player<br>L100 1001 = MiniDisc player<br>L001 1001 = DVD player                                              |
| 16-19 | sourceNumber        | Contains the source number (0..15)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 20-23 | channelNumber       | Contains the channel number (0..15)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 24-27 | sampleFrequency     | 0000 = 44.1 kHz<br>0010 = 48.0 kHz<br>0011 = 32.0 kHz                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 28-29 | clockAccuracy       | Defines the tolerance of the sampling frequency of the transmitter.<br>01 = Level I (±50 parts per million)<br>00 = Level II (±1000 parts per million)<br>10 = Level III (variable pitch shifted)                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 30-31 | reserved1           | Not used, reserved for future extensions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 32    | wordLengthFieldSize | Together with field wordLengthBits defines the number of bits in each audio sample.<br><br>0 = Maximum length of an audio sample is 20 bits<br>1 = Maximum length of an audio sample is 24 bits                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 33-35 | wordLengthBits      | Together with field wordLengthFieldSize defines the number of bits in each audio sample.<br><br>Value of field wordLengthFieldSize:<br>1:                      0:<br>-----<br>000 Not indicated Not indicated<br>101 24 bits        20 bits<br>100 23 bits        19 bits<br>010 22 bits        18 bits<br>110 21 bits        17 bits<br>001 20 bits        16 bits |
| 36-39 | reserved2           | Not used, reserved for future extensions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

Constraints

— The channelStatusFormat field should always be set to '0'.

Remarks

- Bit-fields are not portable due to the fact that the alignment may vary between compilers. Though, the `ConsumerChannelStatus_t` type is only a model type and won't be used in the implementation of the SPDIF-in component. For this document 8-bits alignment is assumed for bit-fields.

#### 7.1.4.2.2.2 ProfessionalChannelStatus\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef struct _ProfessionalChannelStatus_t
```

```
{
    int channelStatusFormat      : 1;
    int nonLinearPcm             : 1;
    int emphasis                 : 3;
    int unused1                  : 1;
    int sampleFrequency1        : 2;
    int unused2                  : 4;
    int unused3                  : 4;
    int useOfAuxWord             : 3;
    int wordLengthBits          : 3;
    int unused4                  : 2;
    int channelId                : 8;
    int unused5                  : 2;
    int reserved1                : 1;
    int sampleFrequency2        : 4;
    int sampleFrequencyScaling   : 1;
    int unused6                  : 32;
    int unused7                  : 32;
    int unused8                  : 32;
    int unused9                  : 32;
    int reliabilityFlags         : 8;
    int crc                      : 8;
} ProfessionalChannelStatus_t, *pProfessionalChannelStatus_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

The `ProfessionalChannelStatus_t` type represents the Channel Status bits as described in the IEC 60958 standard (see [21]).

##### Fields

Table 282

| bits | Name                | Description                                                                                        |
|------|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | channelStatusFormat | 0 = consumer format<br>1 = professional format                                                     |
| 1    | nonLinearPcm        | 0 = linear PCM audio signal<br>1 = other than linear PCM samples                                   |
| 2-4  | emphasis            | 000 = Emphasis not indicated<br>001 = No emphasis<br>011 = CD type emphasis<br>111 = J-17 emphasis |
| 5    | unused1             | Contains the lock field, but is not used by SpdifIn.                                               |

| bits  | Name                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6-7   | sampleFrequency1       | 00 = not indicated (see bits 35-38 for the sample rate)<br>01 = 48.0 kHz<br>10 = 44.1 kHz<br>11 = 32.0 kHz                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 8-11  | unused2                | Contains the channel mode field, but is not used by SpdifIn.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 12-15 | unused3                | Contains the user bit management field, but is not used by SpdifIn.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 16-18 | useOfAuxWord           | Defines whether the lower 4 bits of 24 bits sample data belong to the sample value or contains auxiliary data. Together with the wordLengthBits defines the length of the sample words.<br><br>000 = not defined, audio max 20 bits<br>100 = used for main audio, max 24 bits<br>010 = used for coordination signal, audio max 20 bits<br>110 = user defined. |
| 19-21 | wordLengthBits         | Depending on field useOfAuxWord:<br>if max==20 bits if max==24 bits<br>-----<br>000 not indicated not indicated<br>101 24 bits 20 bits<br>100 23 bits 19 bits<br>010 22 bits 18 bits<br>110 21 bits 17 bits<br>001 20 bits 16 bits                                                                                                                            |
| 22-23 | unused4                | Contains the alignment level field, but is not used by SpdifIn.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 24-31 | channelId              | If the highest bit == 0 then the channel number is 1 plus the numeric value of the lower 7 bits.<br>If the highest bit == 1 then bit 4-6 define a multi channel mode and bits 0-3 give the channel number within that mode.                                                                                                                                   |
| 32-33 | unused5                | Contains the DARS field, but is not used by SpdifIn.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 34    | reserved1              | Reserved for future extensions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 35-38 | sampleFrequency2       | Extension to the sample rates provided by bit 6-7. Only to be used if bit 6-7 contain '00'.<br><br>0000 = not indicated<br>0001 = 24.00 kHz<br>0010 = 96.00 kHz<br>1001 = 22.05 kHz<br>1010 = 88.20 kHz<br>1011 = 176.40 kHz<br>1111 = user defined                                                                                                           |
| 39    | sampleFrequencyScaling | 0 = no scaling<br>1 = apply factor of 1/1.001 to the value defined by field sampleFrequency2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |



| bits    | Name             | Description                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 48-79   | unused6          | Contains the channel origin field, but is not used by Spdifln.                                                                                                     |
| 80-111  | unused7          | Contains the channel destination field, but is not used by Spdifln.                                                                                                |
| 112-143 | unused8          | Contains the sample address code field, but is not used by Spdifln.                                                                                                |
| 144-175 | unused9          | Contains the time of day code field, but is not used by Spdifln.                                                                                                   |
| 176-183 | reliabilityFlags | Defines whether the content of the channel status bytes is reliable. This field is not used by the SPDIF-in component.                                             |
| 184-191 | crcc             | Provides a CRC code for data integrity check purposes.<br>00000000 no CRC code provided<br>xxxxxxx CRC code for all fields in the channel status up to this field. |

### Constraints

- The `channelStatusFormat` field should always be set to '1'.

### Remarks

- Bit-fields are not portable due to the fact that the alignment may vary between compilers. Though, the `ConsumerChannelStatus_t` type is only a model type and won't be used in the implementation of the SPDIF-in component. For this document 8-bits alignment is assumed for bit-fields.

#### 7.1.4.2.2.3 ChannelStatus\_t

### Signature

```
typedef union _ChannelStatus_t
{
    ConsumerChannelStatus_t    consumer;
    ProfessionalChannelStatus_t professional;
} ChannelStatus_t, *pChannelStatus_t;
```

### Qualifiers

None.

### Description

The `ChannelStatus_t` union is used to interpret a block of 24 bytes channel status information extracted from the SPDIF signal. The interpretation of the channel status bytes depends on the very first bit of the block (bit 7 of byte 0). If this bit is 0, then the consumer member must be used, else the professional member must be used for interpretation. Bit 0 can be interpreted with both union members.

### Fields

Table 283

| Name                      | Description                                                                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>consumer</code>     | Bit-oriented interpretation of the Channel Status bytes for the consumer format.     |
| <code>professional</code> | Bit-oriented interpretation of the Channel Status bytes for the professional format. |

### Constraints

- If `consumer.channelStatusFormat == 0` then only member `consumer` should be used.
- If `consumer.channelStatusFormat == 1` then only member `professional` should be used.

7.1.4.2.2.4 BurstInfo\_t

Signature

```
typedef struct _BurstInfo_t
{
    UInt8 dataType          : 5;
    UInt8 reserved1         : 2;
    UInt8 errorFlag         : 1;
    UInt8 reserved2         : 8;
} BurstInfo_t, *pBurstInfo_t;
```

Qualifiers  
None.

Description

The BurstInfo\_t type describes the format of the burst info field of a non-linear PCM data burst compliant to the IEC 61937 standard (see [19]).

Fields

Table 284

| Name      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| dataType  | <p>This field indicates the format of the burst payload. The following data Types are defined:</p> <p>00000 = Null data<br/>00001 = AC-3 data<br/>00011 = Pause<br/>00100 = MPEG-1 layer 1 data<br/>00101 = MPEG-1 layer 2 or 3 data, or MPEG-2 without extension<br/>00110 = MPEG-2 data with extension<br/>00111 = MPEG-2 AAC data<br/>01000 = MPEG-2 layer 1 low sampling frequency<br/>01001 = MPEG-2 layer 2 or 3 low sampling frequency<br/>01011 = DTS level I<br/>01100 = DTS level II<br/>01101 = DTS level III<br/>01110 = ATRAC 1<br/>01111 = ATRAC 2 or 3</p> |
| reserved1 | Reserved for future extensions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| errorFlag | <p>0 = no error, valid burst payload.<br/>1 = The burst payload may contain errors.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| reserved2 | Reserved for future extensions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

7.1.4.2.2.5 ChannelMetaData\_t

Signature

```
typedef struct _ChannelMetaData_t
{
    ChannelStatus_t channelStatus;
    UInt8          userData[uhSpdifIn_NrChannelStatusBytes];
    BurstInfo_t     burstInfo;
} ChannelMetaData_t, *pChannelMetaData_t;
```

Qualifiers  
None.

Description

The ChannelMetaData\_t type bundles all channel related information into one structure. In this scope, a channel is a sub-frame according the IEC 60958 standard [21].

Fields

Table 285

| Name          | Description                                                                                            |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| channelStatus | Channel Status bits that are extracted from the SPDIF signal.                                          |
| userData      | User Data bytes that are extracted from the SPDIF signal.                                              |
| burstInfo     | If an IEC 61937 compliant burst is found, the burst information is collected and stored in this field. |

7.1.4.3 Logical Component

7.1.4.3.1 Interface-Role Model

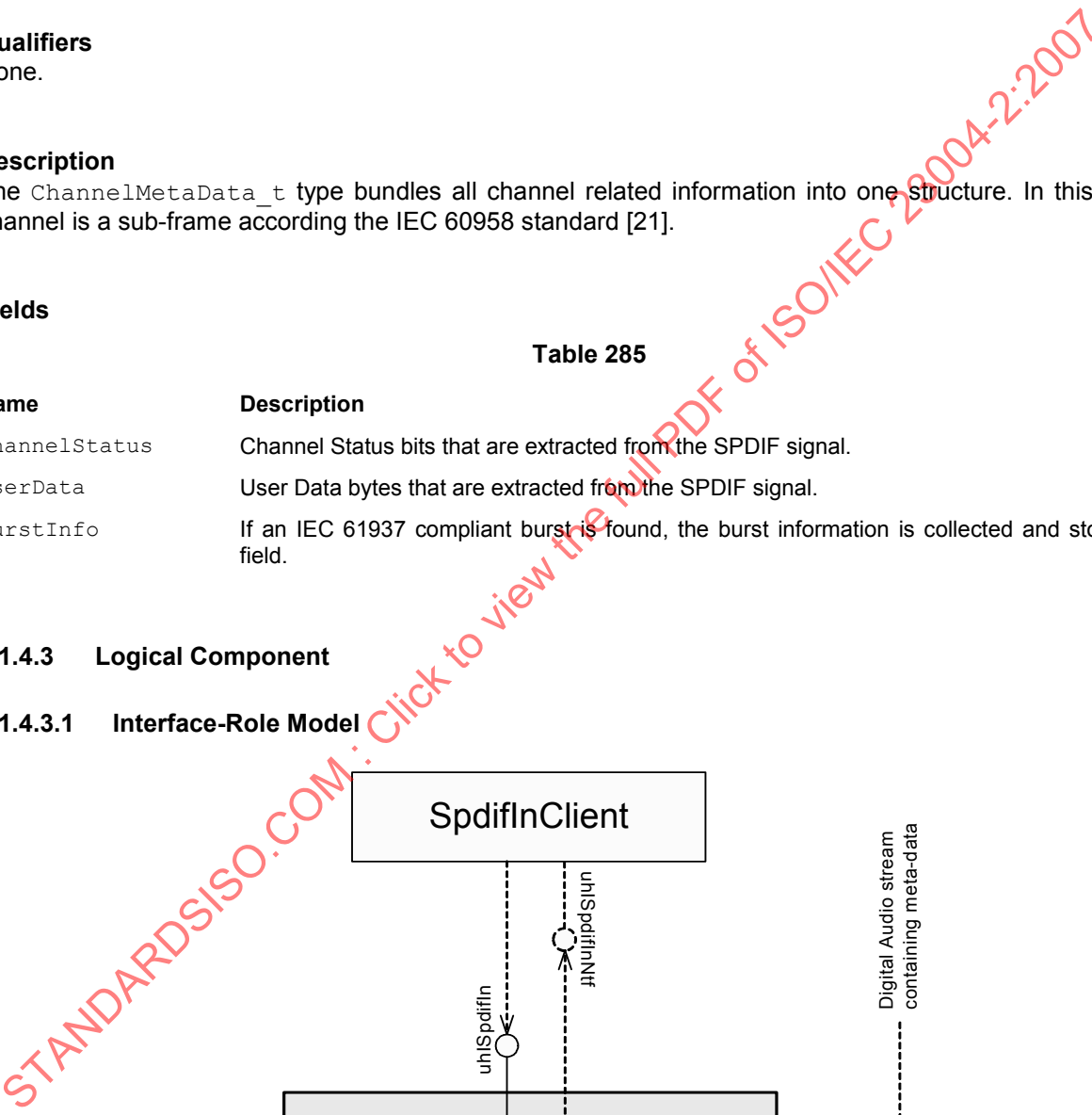


Figure 33 — Interface-Role Model of the SPDIF-in logical component

Figure 33 represents the interface role model for the SPDIF-in logical component. It shows the names and roles that the SPDIF-in logical component and its clients have. The role SpdifIn provides only one interface

to its clients: `uhISpdifIn`. The `uhISpdifIn` interface provides the clients access to meta-data that was extracted from the input SPDIF signal.

In case of events happening in the SPDIF-in component that are asynchronous to its client behavior, the `SpdifIn` role might generate notifications. If the client of `SpdifIn` provides an interface of type `uhISpdifInNtf`, these notifications can be received by the client.

The `SpdifIn` role extracts audio data and accompanying meta-data from a SPDIF input signal and streams out the extracted data along with the meta-data. The `SpdifIn` role has no *streaming* input.

7.1.4.3.2 Diversity

7.1.4.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 286

| Role                       | Interface                  | Presence  |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------|
| <code>SpdifIn</code>       | <code>uhISpdifIn</code>    | mandatory |
| <code>SpdifInClient</code> | <code>uhISpdifInNtf</code> | optional  |

7.1.4.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 287

| Role                 | Attribute                          |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code>SpdifIn</code> | <code>Bool multiChannelSupp</code> |
| <code>SpdifIn</code> | <code>UInt32 notifThreshold</code> |

Not all implementations of `SpdifIn` may support monitoring meta-data of two channels at the same time. The `multiChannelSupp` attribute makes the two-channel support configurable.

7.1.4.3.3 Instantiation

7.1.4.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 288

| Type                 | Object               | Multiplicity |
|----------------------|----------------------|--------------|
| <code>SpdifIn</code> | <code>spdifIn</code> | 1            |

7.1.4.3.3.2 Initial State

The initial state of a SPDIF-in logical component:

- `spdifIn.state` = `uhSpdifIn_StInvalid`  
The state of `SpdifIn` is set to `uhSpdifIn_StInvalid`. Directly after creation, `SpdifIn` starts trying to recognize an IEC 60958 compliant signal. The component does not have to be started explicitly.
- `spdifIn.monitoredChannels` == 0  
Initially, monitoring of both channels for meta-data extraction is disabled.

#### 7.1.4.3.4 Execution Constraints

The SPDIF-in logical component acts as an autonomous component. This means that, once instantiated, the behavior of the component does not require interaction of its client(s). The interaction of the client is restricted to monitoring meta-data that was extracted from the SPDIF input signal. This monitoring can be done either by means of notifications (`uhISpdifInNtf`) or by means of query (`GetXxx`) functions from interface `uhISpdifIn`.

#### 7.1.4.4 Roles

##### 7.1.4.4.1 SpdifIn

##### Signature

**role** `SpdifIn`

```
{
    uhSpdifIn_State_t          state;
    uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumberSet_t monitoredChannels;
    ChannelMetaData_t          channel[2];
    Bool                        multiChannelSupp
    UInt32                      notifThreshold
}
```

##### Qualifiers

— `root`

##### Description

This role models an instance of a SPDIF-in logical component, providing an interface of type `uhISpdifIn`.

##### Independent Attributes

**Table 289**

| Name                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>state</code>             | Describes the state in which the component operates.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>monitoredChannels</code> | Describes which channels are currently monitored for meta-data.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>channel</code>           | Contains the meta-data of channels for which monitoring is enabled. Depending on attribute <code>monitoredChannels</code> either none, one or both of these meta-data structures are in use.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>multiChannelSupp</code>  | Defines whether extraction of meta-data for two channels at the same time is supported by the implementation of the SPDIF-in component.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>notifThreshold</code>    | Specifies the time (in milliseconds) that a new state must be stable before a notification of type <code>uhSpdifIn_StateChanged</code> is generated. This threshold is only applied to the following state transitions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Transition from <code>AudioFormatFound</code> state to the <code>Locked</code> or <code>NotLocked</code> state</li> <li>- Transition from the <code>Locked</code> state to the <code>NotLocked</code> state.</li> </ul> |

##### Invariants

— `if(multiChannelSupp)`  
— `nrElementsInSet3(monitoredChannels) <= 2`

<sup>3</sup>Function `nrElementsInSet` is an imaginary function that counts the number of selected enum-elements in a enum-set.

- else
  - `nrElementsInSet(monitoredChannels) <= 1`

**Instantiation**

See subclause 7.1.4.3.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

The SPDIF-in logical component is a so-called *digitizer*. This means that the component has no streaming input but gets SPDIF signal as input. From the SPDIF input signal, the SPDIF-in component extracts meta-data and audio data. The component has a streaming output containing the extracted audio data.

**Active Behavior**

Table 290

| Event                                                                  | Action                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| New SPDIF data from the SPDIF signal is fetched into so-called frames. | Update the meta-data in attribute channel, and if the client subscribed on notification(s), generate the appropriate notification(s). The extracted audio frames are output to the output pin. |

**Execution Constraints**

None.

7.1.4.4.2    **SpdifInClient**

**Signature**

`role SpdifInClient {}`

**Qualifiers**

- actor

**Description**

This role models the client of the SPDIF-in logical component

**Execution Constraints**

None.

7.1.4.5    **Interfaces**

7.1.4.5.1    **uhISpdifIn**

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The `uhISpdifIn` interface is the only interface of a SPDIF-in logical component. Main goal of this interface is monitoring of meta-data that is extracted from a SPDIF input signal.

**Interface ID**

uuid( 2633B732-5F95-4d63-941D-7DEE9F57D67D )

**Execution Constraints**

None.

**7.1.4.5.1.1 Subscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhISpdifInNtf*          pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                  cookie,
    [in] uhSpdifIn_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**7.1.4.5.1.2 Unsubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhISpdifInNtf*          pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                  cookie,
    [in] uhSpdifIn_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

**7.1.4.5.1.3 SetMonitoredChannels****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetMonitoredChannels(
    [in] uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumberSet_t monitoredChannels);
```

**Qualifiers**

— Synchronous (effects of this function are asynchronous)

**Description**

This function selects the channel(s) for which meta-data must be monitored. This function is used for both, enabling and disabling monitoring of channels. The semantics of this function is best explained by an example scenario:

— Multiple channels are enabled as follows:

```
SetMonitoredChannels( uhSpdifIn_Channel1 | uhSpdifIn_Channel2 );
```

— Next, channel 1 is disabled as follows:

```
SetMonitoredChannels( uhSpdifIn_Channel2 );
```

— Finally, monitoring of all channels is disabled:

```
SetMonitoredChannels( 0 );
```

The monitoring of the meta-data of the incoming SPDIF signal happens asynchronously.

Parameters

Table 291

| Name              | Description                                                 |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| monitoredChannels | Specifies for which channels the monitoring must be enabled |

Return Values  
Standard.

Precondition  
— if GetMultiChannelSupp() returns False, only one channel must be enabled at the same time.

Action  
Modify spdifIn.monitoredChannels.

Postcondition  
spdifIn.monitoredChannels == monitoredChannels

7.1.4.5.1.4 GetMonitoredChannels

Signature  
uhErrorCode\_t GetMonitoredChannels(  
    [out] uhSpdifIn\_ChannelNumberSet\_t\* pMonitoredChannels);

Qualifiers  
— Synchronous

Description  
Reports for which channels the meta-data is currently monitored.

Parameters

Table 292

| Name               | Description                                                                |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMonitoredChannels | Output parameter that describes the channels that are currently monitored. |

Return Values  
Standard.

Precondition  
True



**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pMonitoredChannels == spdifIn.monitoredChannels`

**7.1.4.5.1.5      GetMultiChannelSupp**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t GetMultiChannelSupp(  
    [out] Bool* pMultiChannelSupp );`

**Qualifiers**  
— Synchronous

**Description**  
Queries the capability of the SPDIF-in implementation w.r.t. extraction of meta-data on two channels simultaneously.

**Parameters**

**Table 293**

| Name                           | Description                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pMultiChannelSupp</code> | Output parameter that on exit will indicate if the SPDIF-in component is able to extract meta-data from two channels simultaneously. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pMultiChannelSupp == multiChannelSupp`

**7.1.4.5.1.6      GetState**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t GetState(  
    [out] uhSpdifIn_State_t* pStatus );`

**Qualifiers**  
— Synchronous

Description

Returns the current operational state of the SPDIF-in logical component.

Parameters

Table 294

| Name    | Description                                                                        |
|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStatus | On function exit this parameter will indicate the current status of the component. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

True

Action

None.

Postcondition

\*pStatus == spdifIn.state

7.1.4.5.1.7      GetAudioInfo

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetAudioInfo(  
    [in]  uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t      chNr,  
    [out] uhSpdifIn_ValStat_t*           pStatus,  
    [out] uhSpdifIn_ChannelStatusFormat_t* pCsFormat,  
    [out] uhSpdifIn_AudioFormat_t*       pType,  
    [out] uhSpdifIn_Emphasis_t*          pEmphasis,  
    [out] uhSpdifIn_Category_t*          pCategory,  
    [out] UInt32*                        pSamplingFrequency,  
    [out] UInt8*                         pAudioSampleWordLength );
```

Qualifiers

— Synchronous

Description

The `GetAudioInfo` function returns a sub-set of the meta-data for the specified channel that describes the properties of audio data carried by the SPDIF signal. Since the meta-data is constantly updated with new meta-data that is extracted from the SPDIF signal, the returned audio information is a “snapshot”. However, a change in the audio properties of the audio data carried by the SPDIF signal only happens occasionally. Clients that provide the `uhISpdifInNtf` interface may also monitor *changes* of the audio properties by subscribing on notification `uhSpdifIn_AudioInfoChanged`.

Note that prior to use this function, the monitoring of the concerned channel should be enabled by invoking function `SetMonitoredChannels`.

## Parameters

Table 295

| Name                   | Description                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| chNr                   | Input parameter that specifies the channel for which the audio properties are requested.                                                     |
| pStatus                | Output parameter that indicates the validity of the [out] parameters of this function.                                                       |
| pCsFormat              | Output parameter that on function exit indicates the Channel Status format which is either uhSpdifIn_CfConsumer or uhSpdifIn_CfProfessional. |
| pType                  | On function exit this output parameter contains the audio format of the output audio stream (PCM, MPEG, AC-3 etc..).                         |
| pEmphasis              | Output parameter that on function exit contains the emphasis type of the output audio stream.                                                |
| pCategory              | Output parameter that on function exit contains the sort of equipment that generated the SPDIF input signal.                                 |
| pSamplingFrequency     | Output parameter that contains the sampling frequency of the output audio stream expressed in Hz.                                            |
| pAudioSampleWordLength | Output parameter that contains the number of significant bits that are used per audio sample. This value can maximum be 24.                  |

Return Values  
Standard.

## Precondition

(spdifIn.monitoredChannels & chNr) == chNr (monitoring of meta-data of the selected channel is enabled)

Action  
None.

## Postcondition

```

— if (spdifIn.state == uhSpdifIn_StInvalid)
—   *pStatus == uhSpdifIn_ValStatInvalid
else if ((spdifIn.state == uhSpdifIn_StNotLocked) ||
         (spdifIn.state == uhSpdifIn_StLocked))
—   *pStatus == uhSpdifIn_ValStatUnknown
else if (spdifIn.state == uhSpdifIn_StAudioFormatFound)
—   *pStatus == uhSpdifIn_ValStatKnown
—   *pCsFormat == spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].channelStatus.consumer.channelStatusFormat
—   *pType == spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].channelStatus.consumer.nonLinearPcm ?
         spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].burstInfo.dataType : uhSpdifIn_AfPCM
— if (*pCsFormat == uhSpdifIn_CfConsumer)
—   *pEmphasis == spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].channelStatus.consumer.emphasis
—   *pCategory == f 4 (spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].channelStatus.
         consumer.categoryCode)

```

<sup>4</sup>Function f() represents an imaginary function that converts its input parameters into an appropriate result. The exact description of the applied processing is out of scope of this interface specification.

```

— *pSamplingFrequency == f (spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].
channelStatus.consumer.sampleFrequency)
— *pAudioSampleWordLength == f (spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].
channelStatus.consumer.wordLengthFieldSize, spdifIn. channel[chNr-
1].channelStatus.consumer.wordLengthBits)
— if (pCsFormat == uhSpdifIn_CfProfessional)
— *pEmphasis == spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].channelStatus.professional. emphasis
— *pCategory == uhSpdifIn_CtUnknown
— *pSamplingFrequency == f (spdifIn.channel[chNr-
1].channelStatus.professional.sampleFrequency1, spdifIn.channel[chNr-
1].channelStatus.professional.sampleFrequency2, spdifIn.channel[chNr-
1].channelStatus.professional. sampleFrequencyScaling)
— *pAudioSampleWordLength == f (spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].
channelStatus.professional.useOfAuxWord, spdifIn.channel[chNr-
1].channelStatus.professional.wordLengthBits)

```

#### 7.1.4.5.1.8 GetChannelInfo

##### Signature

```

uhErrorCode_t GetChannelInfo(
    [in]  uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t    chNr,
    [out] uhSpdifIn_ValStat_t*         pStatus,
    [out] UInt8*                       pChannelStatusMode,
    [out] UInt8*                       pSourceNumber,
    [out] UInt8*                       pChannelNumber);

```

##### Qualifiers

— Synchronous

##### Description

The `GetChannelInfo` function can be used to request channel related information. This channel information is part of the meta-data that belongs to a channel.

Clients that provide the `uhISpdifInNtf` interface may also monitor *changes* of the channel information by subscribing on notification `uhSpdifIn_ChannelInfoChanged`.

Note that prior to use this function, the monitoring of the concerned channel should be enabled by invoking function `SetMonitoredChannels`.

##### Parameters

Table 296

| Name                            | Description                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>chNr</code>               | Input parameter that specifies the channel for which the channel information is requested.                               |
| <code>pStatus</code>            | Output parameter that indicates the validity of the [out] parameters of this function.                                   |
| <code>pChannelStatusMode</code> | Output parameter that on function exit indicates the Channel Mode Status field. The returned value should always be '0'. |
| <code>pSourceNumber</code>      | Output parameter that on function exit contains the source number for the carried audio.                                 |
| <code>pChannelNumber</code>     | Output parameter that on function exit contains the <i>logical</i> channel number for the carried audio.                 |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

(spdifIn.monitoredChannels & chNr) == chNr (monitoring of meta-data of the selected channel is enabled)

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```

— if (spdifIn.state == uhSpdifIn_StInvalid)
  — *pStatus == uhSpdifIn_ValStatInvalid
  else if ((spdifIn.state == uhSpdifIn_StNotLocked) ||
    (spdifIn.state == uhSpdifIn_StLocked))

    — *pStatus == uhSpdifIn_ValStatUnknown
    else if (spdifIn.state == uhSpdifIn_StAudioFormatFound)

      — *pStatus == uhSpdifIn_ValStatKnown
— if (spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].consumer.channelStatusFormat ==
uhSpdifIn_CfConsumer)
  — *pChannelStatusMode == spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].channelStatus.
    consumer.channelStatusMode
  — *pSourceNumber == spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].channelStatus.consumer.
    sourceNumber
  — *pChannelNumber == spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].channelStatus.consumer.
    channelNumber
— if (spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].consumer.channelStatusFormat ==
uhSpdifIn_CfProfessional)
  — *pChannelStatusMode == 0
  — *pSourceNumber == 0
  — *pChannelNumber == f5(spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].
    channelStatus.professional.channelId)

```

**7.1.4.5.1.9 GetCopyrightInfo****Signature**

```

uhErrorCode_t GetCopyrightInfo(
  [in] uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t    chNr,
  [out] uhSpdifIn_CopyrightStatus_t* pCopyrightStatus);

```

**Qualifiers**

— Synchronous

---

<sup>5</sup>Function f() represents an imaginary function that combines its input parameters into a result. The exact description of the applied processing is out of scope of this interface specification.

Description

The `GetCopyrightInfo` function returns the current copyright status of the audio data in the SPDIF signal for a given channel.

Parameters

Table 297

| Name                          | Description                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>chNr</code>             | Input parameter specifying the channel for which the copyright information is requested.                                 |
| <code>pCopyrightStatus</code> | On function exit this output parameter will indicate the current copyright status of the audio data in the SPDIF signal. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

`(spdifIn.monitoredChannels & chNr) == chNr` (monitoring of meta-data of the selected channel is enabled)

Action

None.

Postcondition

```
— if (spdifIn.state == uhSpdifIn_StInvalid)
—   *pClockAccuracy == uhSpdifIn_CaInvalid
else
—   if (spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].consumer.channelStatusFormat ==
uhSpdifIn_CfConsumer)
—     *pCopyrightStatus ==
spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].channelStatus.consumer.copyright ?
uhSpdifIn_CrNone : f6(spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].channelStatus.
consumer.categoryCode)

—   if (spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].professional.channelStatusFormat ==
uhSpdifIn_CfProfessional)
—     *pCopyrightStatus == uhSpdifIn_CrUnknown
```

<sup>6</sup>Function `f()` represents an imaginary function that combines its input parameters into a result. The exact description of the applied processing is out of scope of this interface specification.

**7.1.4.5.1.10 GetClockAccuracy****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetClockAccuracy(
    [in]  uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t  chNr,
    [out] uhSpdifIn_ClockAccuracy_t* pClockAccuracy );
```

**Qualifiers**

— Synchronous

**Description**

This function can be used to query the accuracy of the encoded clock in the SPDIF signal.

**Parameters****Table 298**

| Name           | Description                                                                                   |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| chNr           | Input parameter specifying the channel for which the clock accuracy information is requested. |
| pClockAccuracy | This output parameter will on function exit indicate the clock accuracy.                      |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

— (spdifIn.monitoredChannels & chNr) == chNr (monitoring of meta-data of the selected channel is enabled)

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```
— if (spdifIn.state == uhSpdifIn_StInvalid)
    — *pClockAccuracy == uhSpdifIn_CaInvalid
    else
    — if (spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].consumer.channelStatusFormat ==
        uhSpdifIn_CfConsumer)
        — *pClockAccuracy == spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].consumer.clockAccuracy
    — if (spdifIn.channel[chNr-1].professional.channelStatusFormat ==
        uhSpdifIn_CfProfessional)
        — *pClockAccuracy == uhSpdifIn_CaUnknown
```

## 7.1.4.5.1.11 GetChannelStatusBytes

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetChannelStatusBytes(
    [in]      uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t chNr,
    [out]     uhSpdifIn_ValStat_t*      pStatus,
    [in, out] UInt8                    pData[uhSpdifIn_NrChannelStatusBytes]
);
```

**Qualifiers**

— Synchronous

**Description**

The `GetChannelStatusBytes` function can be used to get the “raw” channel status bytes as extracted from the SPDIF signal. The data is returned as an array of bytes. The client itself is responsible for the interpretation of the data. The format of the channel status data can be found in the IEC 60958 standard.

**Parameters****Table 299**

| Name                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>chNr</code>    | Input parameter specifying the channel for which the channel status bytes are requested.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>pStatus</code> | Output parameter that indicates the validity of the “raw” channel status bytes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>pData</code>   | Input / Output parameter that refers to the “raw” channel status bytes. The client is responsible to pass a valid pointer to a <code>uhSpdifIn_NrChannelStatusBytes</code> bytes memory block. The channel status information will be copied into the memory block that is provided by the client. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

— `(spdifIn.monitoredChannels & chNr) == chNr` (monitoring of meta-data of the selected channel is enabled)

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```
— if (spdifIn.state == uhSpdifIn_StInvalid)
—   *pStatus == uhSpdifIn_ValStatInvalid
else if ((spdifIn.state == uhSpdifIn_StNotLocked) ||
         (spdifIn.state == uhSpdifIn_StLocked))
—   *pStatus == uhSpdifIn_ValStatUnknown
else if (spdifIn.state == uhSpdifIn_StAudioFormatFound)
—   *pStatus == uhSpdifIn_ValStatKnown
—   memcmp(*pData, spdifIn.channel[chNr-
    1].channelStatus, uhSpdifIn_NrChannelStatusBytes) == 0
```



7.1.4.5.2    uhISpdifInNtf

Qualifiers

— callback

Description

This interface should be implemented by any client that wants to receive notifications generated by the SPDIF-in component. The interface contains one function for each kind of notification. However, for those notifications that are channel related, two notifications (one for each possible channel) are represented by one single function which has a channel number as one of its parameters.

Interface ID

uuid( B57C5948-8607-46ee-BAC5-CE7CDB6737B3 )

Execution Constraints

None.

7.1.4.5.2.1    OnSubscriptionChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhSpdifIn_Notifications_t notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

7.1.4.5.2.2    OnStateChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnStateChanged(
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhSpdifIn_State_t status );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This notification function is used to inform the subscribed client that a transition in the operational state of the SPDIF-in logical component occurred.

Parameters

Table 300

| Name   | Description                                                          |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The cookie-value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| status | The new status of the SPDIF-in logical component.                    |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

7.1.4.5.2.3      **OnError**

Signature

```
[async] Void OnError(  
    [in] UInt32          cookie,  
    [in] uhSpdifIn_Error_t error );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This notification function is used to inform the subscribed client that an error occurred when extracting the audio data from the SPDIF signal.

Parameters

Table 301

| Name   | Description                                                          |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The cookie-value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| error  | Describes the type of error that occurred.                           |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

7.1.4.5.2.4      **OnAudioInfoChanged**

Signature

```
[async] Void OnAudioInfoChanged(
```

```

[in] UInt32                cookie,
[in] uhSpdifIn_ValStat_t   status,
[in] uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t chNr,
[in] uhSpdifIn_ChannelStatusFormat_t csFormat,
[in] uhSpdifIn_AudioFormat_t type,
[in] uhSpdifIn_Emphasis_t emphasis,
[in] uhSpdifIn_Category_t category,
[in] UInt32                samplingFrequency,
[in] UInt8                 audioSampleWordLength );

```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This notification function is used to inform the subscribed client that the format of the audio data carried in the SPDIF signal changed. The client must have subscribed on notification `uhSpdifIn_AudioInfoChanged`.

**Parameters****Table 302**

| Name                               | Description                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>                | The cookie-value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                        |
| <code>status</code>                | Indicates the validity of the other parameters of this function.                                            |
| <code>chNr</code>                  | The channel on which the format change happened.                                                            |
| <code>csFormat</code>              | Describes the channel status format (either “consumer” or “professional”).                                  |
| <code>type</code>                  | Describes the audio type (e.g. “PCM”, “MPEG” etc.)                                                          |
| <code>emphasis</code>              | Describes the kind of pre-emphasis that was applied to the audio data carried by the incoming SPDIF signal. |
| <code>category</code>              | Describes the equipment that generated the SPDIF signal.                                                    |
| <code>samplingFrequency</code>     | Defines the sampling frequency of the digital audio stream in Hz.                                           |
| <code>audioSampleWordLength</code> | Defines the number of bits of each sample of the audio data stream.                                         |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.4.5.2.5 OnChannelInfoChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnChannelInfoChanged(
```

```
[in] UInt32          cookie,
[in] uhSpdifIn_ValStat_t  status,
[in] uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t chNr,
[in] UInt8            channelStatusMode,
[in] UInt8            sourceNumber,
[in] UInt8            channelNumber );
```

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This notification function is used to inform the subscribed client that the channel information of the specified channel changed.

**Parameters**

Table 303

| Name              | Description                                                          |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie            | The cookie-value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| status            | Indicates the validity of the other parameters of this function.     |
| chNr              | The channel on which the format change happened.                     |
| channelStatusMode | Indicates the channel status mode of the SPDIF signal.               |
| sourceNumber      | The new source number of this channel [0..15].                       |
| channelNumber     | The new logical channel number of this channel [0..15].              |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

7.1.4.5.2.6 OnCopyrightInfoChanged

```
Signature
[async] Void OnCopyrightInfoChanged(
    [in] UInt32          cookie,
    [in] uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t chNr,
    [in] uhSpdifIn_CopyrightStatus_t copyrightStatus );
```

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**

This notification function is used to inform the subscribed client that the copyright status of the audio data changed.

**Parameters****Table 304**

| Name            | Description                                                                            |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie          | The cookie-value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                   |
| chNr            | The channel for which the copyright status change happened.                            |
| copyrightStatus | Describes the new copyright status of the carried audio data of the specified channel. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**7.1.4.5.2.7 OnClockAccuracyChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnClockAccuracyChanged(
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t chNr,
    [in] uhSpdifIn_ClockAccuracy_t clockAccuracy );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This notification function is used to inform the subscribed client that the clock accuracy of (one of) the monitored channel(s) changed.

**Parameters****Table 305**

| Name          | Description                                                          |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie        | The cookie-value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| chNr          | The channel on which the clock accuracy changed.                     |
| clockAccuracy | The new clock accuracy of the SPDIF input signal.                    |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

7.1.4.5.2.8      **OnChannelStatusChanged**

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnChannelStatusChanged(  
    [in] UInt32                      cookie,  
    [in] uhSpdifIn\_ValStat\_t        status,  
    [in] uhSpdifIn\_ChannelNumber\_t chNr,  
    [in] UInt8 pChannelStatus[uhSpdifIn\_NrChannelStatusBytes] );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This notification function is used to inform the subscribed client that any bit in the channel status of the specified channel has changed. A reference to the raw (unformatted) channel status bytes is passed. The client is responsible for correct interpretation of these data bytes. Note that this is a low-level access interface to channel status information; most of the channel status data can be retrieved in a formatted form by means of other notifications.

The client must have subscribed on notification uhSpdifIn\_ChannelStatusChanged.

**Parameters**

Table 306

| Name           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie         | The cookie-value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                                                           |
| status         | Indicates the validity of the other parameters of this function.                                                                                                                               |
| chNr           | The channel on which the channel status change happened.                                                                                                                                       |
| pChannelStatus | Pointer to the raw channel status bytes. The lifetime of the referred data is limited to this function only. The client must make a local copy if he wants to refer to this data after return. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

Remarks

— If the client intends to use the channel status data even after returning from this call-back, the client has to make a local copy because the lifetime of the passed data is unknown from the client's point of view.

7.1.4.5.2.9 OnUserData

Signature

```
[async] Void OnUserData(  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhSpdifIn_ValStat_t status,  
    [in] uhSpdifIn_ChannelNumber_t chNr,  
    [in, size_is(size)] UInt8* pUserData,  
    [in] UInt32 size );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This notification function is used to inform the subscribed client that a new packet with user data was extracted from the SPDIF signal. A reference to the raw (unformatted) user data bytes is passed. The client is responsible for correct interpretation of these user data bytes.

The client must have subscribed on notification uhSpdifIn\_UserData.

Parameters

Table 307

| Name      | Description                                                          |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie    | The cookie-value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| status    | Indicates the validity of the other parameters of this function.     |
| chNr      | The channel from which the user data was extracted.                  |
| pUserData | Pointer to the raw user data bytes.                                  |
| size      | Size of the user data expressed in number of bytes.                  |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**Remarks**

- If the client intends to use the user data even after returning from this call-back, the client has to make a local copy because the lifetime of the passed data is unknown from the client's point of view.

**7.1.5 UHISpdifOut****7.1.5.1 Concepts****7.1.5.1.1 Introduction**

In Figure 34 a schematic view of the SPDIF-out logical component is given. As depicted, the SPDIF-out component has one input stream carrying digital audio data with accompanying meta-data. The SPDIF-out component transforms this digital audio stream into an IEC 60958

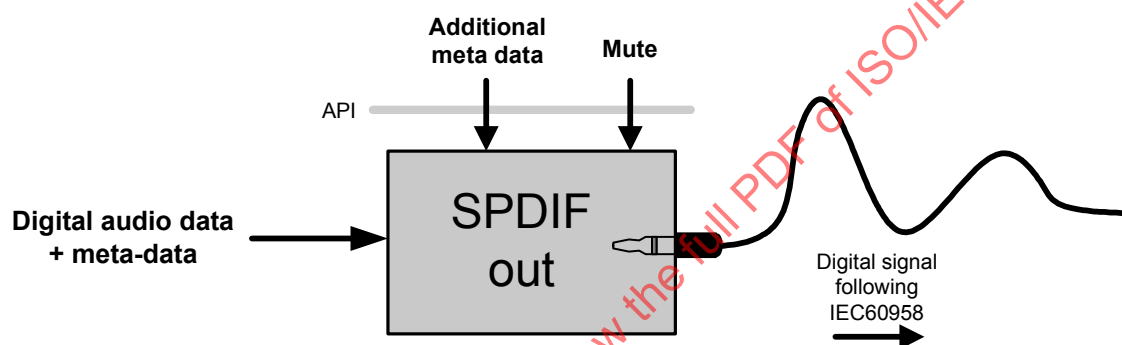


**Figure 34 — Data flow through the SPDIF-out logical component.**

compliant output signal. The output of the SPDIF-out component is *always* a valid SPDIF signal, even if there is no audio input at all. In these cases, the SPDIF-out component will autonomously *mute* the output signal. The client of SPDIF-out is also able to mute / unmute the output explicitly. The content of a muted SPDIF output signal is elaborated in subclause 7.1.5.1.3. Possible unwanted audible artefacts due to mute/unmute transitions will be suppressed by SPDIF-out in case of linear PCM audio data input.

The output signal contains next to the audio data also some “meta-data”. This meta-data is used to describe the properties of the carried audio data. The composition of the meta-data in the output signal depends on the audio input type:

- In case the input audio stream was extracted from a SPDIF source (e.g. SPDIF-in), all meta-data is already present in the input stream and is simply duplicated in the generated SPDIF output signal and the client is not able to alter the meta-data that is inserted in the SPDIF output signal.
- In case the input audio stream does not originate from SPDIF input (e.g. digitized analog audio), not all of the required meta-data to be merged in the generated output signal is present in the input stream. In this case, missing meta-data should be provided by the client of the SPDIF-out logical component. If not provided, default values will be used for inserting meta-data.



### 7.1.5.1.2 Meta-data generation

The output SPDIF IEC 60958 compliant signal consists of two multiplexed data streams, called “channel”<sup>7</sup>. Each of the two IEC 60958 channels contains next to audio data also meta-data. This meta-data consists of the so-called “channel status data” and “user data”. The first describes the properties of the carried audio data, the second is of free-format type and is rarely used for consumer electronic products. The channel status data has a fixed format that is determined by the IEC 60958 standard. To be more precise: the format of the channel status data has two variants: either the “consumer type” or the “professional type”.

The user data is not bound to any format. Its use is therefore bound by end-to-end agreements between equipment providers. Unlike the static nature of the channel status data, the user data might be varying for a specific application. The user data could for instance be used to implement an auxiliary data stream.

The way the channel status bytes and user data bytes are generated for the SPDIF output signal depends on the source of the audio data carried by the input stream of the SPDIF-out component:

- If the audio input data originates from a SPDIF input signal, both the user data and channel status data are present in the input stream and are copied from the input stream to the generated output stream unchanged.
- If the audio input contains audio that does not originate from a SPDIF signal (e.g. linear-PCM audio data that was digitized from an analog audio signal), both the user data and channel status bytes must be generated by the SPDIF-out logical component. By default all bytes belonging to the user data are set to “0”. This may be overruled if the client explicitly provides user data<sup>8</sup>. The generated channel status data is always of the “consumer type”. Most of the channel-status information like sample-rate, and word length of a sample can be extracted from the meta-data of the input stream and can be inserted in the generated SPDIF signal. Other channel status information that cannot be generated automatically must explicitly be provided by the client of the SPDIF-out component. Details about the generation of channel status information are described in Annex E. The channel status is rather static information and once set, will change very rarely. The same channel status information is repeatedly inserted in the generated SPDIF output signal until the client of the SPDIF-out component changes the channel status information. The user data on the other hand, can best be regarded as a continuous bit-stream. The content of the inserted user data changes continuously. With the interface specified in this document, the client can set a buffer with user data. Unless the client sets a new buffer, the current buffer will be used over and over again. Details about how channel status and user data is inserted in the generated SPDIF signal can be found in [21].

### 7.1.5.1.3 Muting the output of SPDIF-out

As depicted in Figure 34, the client is able to mute or un-mute the output of the SPDIF-out component explicitly. Besides, the SPDIF-out component may also mute / unmute the output signal autonomously in case the component runs out of audio input. The general mute state is derived from the explicit client mute state and autonomous mute state by a logical OR function. This is depicted in Table 308.

<sup>7</sup>Originally each channel contained audio data for either the right and left component of stereo audio. Yet, a SPDIF signal may contain multiple channels (e.g. for surround sound) or even data belonging to several multiplexed audio sources. The term “channel” therefore does not necessarily reflect a *physical* channel.

<sup>8</sup>Support of user data insertion is a configuration item of the SPDIF-out logical component. Not all implementations of the SPDIF-out component may support user data insertion.

**Table 308 — Resulting mute state due to auto mute versus explicit client mute**

| client mute | autonomous mute |        |
|-------------|-----------------|--------|
|             | mute            | unmute |
| mute        | mute            | mute   |
| unmute      | mute            | unmute |

If the resulting mute state of SPDIF-out changes, a `uhSpdifOut_MuteStateChanged` notification is generated.

If the SPDIF-out component is muted, a special SPDIF mute signal compliant to IEC 60958 is generated. The content of the mute signal depends on the format of the last received audio input data:

- In case of linear PCM audio data, all sample data words of the output signal are set to '0'.
- In case of encoded audio compliant to the IEC60137 standard, all audio burst packets are replaced by so-called "Null" burst packets.

In the former case (linear PCM), the SPDIF-out component guarantees a smooth transition to mute/unmute: audible artefacts are suppressed.

If the SPDIF-out component mutes before it received any audio input data before, a linear PCM audio signal is generated with all data words set to '0'.

#### 7.1.5.1.4 Inserting user data bytes

The SPDIF standard (IEC 60958) supports user data. User data is auxiliary data for which the content is not defined by the SPDIF standard. The meaning of the user data is subject to end-to-end agreements between SPDIF equipment manufacturers.

Whether SPDIF-out supports insertion of user data is subject to configuration.

Though user data can be seen as an auxiliary data stream from which the content changes constantly, the inserted user data controlled by the client of the SPDIF-out component is rather static. That means that the user data is fixed and the same user data is inserted in the generated SPDIF signal repeatedly. In this case, the client of SPDIF-out has to specify user data only once by means of function `SetUserData`. The specified user data will be inserted in the generated output signal repeatedly until the client specifies new user data by invoking `SetUserData` again.

A more dynamic insertion method can also be thought of in which the inserted user data changes continuously. In that case the client has to provide a new buffer with user data before the previous buffer is used. This mechanism is not supported by the interfaces specified in this document.

### 7.1.5.2 Types & Constants

#### 7.1.5.2.1 Public Types & Constants

##### 7.1.5.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

#### 7.1.5.2.1.2 `uhSpdifOut_Notification_t`

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifOut_Notification_t
{
    uhSpdifOut_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhSpdifOut_DataSourceChanged   = 0x00000002,
    uhSpdifOut_MuteStateChanged    = 0x00000004
} uhSpdifOut_Notification_t, *puhSpdifOut_Notification_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

Enum-element.

##### Description

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhISpdifOutNtf`.

##### Values

**Table 309**

| Name                                        | Description                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhSpdifOut_SubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> .                                                                                                 |
| <code>uhSpdifOut_DataSourceChanged</code>   | The source of the input stream changed. As a result of this, the availability of channel status data and user data in the input stream changed. |
| <code>uhSpdifOut_MuteStateChanged</code>    | The mute state output signal of the SPDIF-out component changed from "muted" to "unmuted" or vice-versa.                                        |

#### 7.1.5.2.1.3 `uhSpdifOut_Notifications_t`

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhSpdifOut_Notifications_t,
             *puhSpdifOut_Notifications_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhSpdifOut_Notification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

#### 7.1.5.2.1.4 `uhSpdifOut_AllNotifications`

##### Signature

```
const uhSpdifOut_Notifications_t
    uhSpdifOut_AllNotifications = 0x00000007;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhSpdifOut_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the Subscribe and Unsubscribe functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**7.1.5.2.1.5      `uhSpdifOut_ChannelNumber_t`****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifOut_ChannelNumber_t {
    uhSpdifOut_Channel1    = 0,
    uhSpdifOut_Channel2    = 1
} uhSpdifOut_ChannelNumber_t, *puhSpdifOut_ChannelNumber_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The `uhSpdifOut_ChannelNumber_t` type enumerates the two channels which are carried in the so-called “sub-frames” of a SPDIF signal. See [21] for details about sub-frames.

**Values****Table 310****Name****Description**

`uhSpdifOut_Channel1`

Specifies the first channel (sub-frame)

`uhSpdifOut_Channel2`

Specifies the second channel (sub-frame)

**Remarks**

- Note that the channel number does not *necessarily* address the left and right channels of a stereo audio signal. AC-3, for instance, distinguishes 5 audio channels for surround sound.

**7.1.5.2.1.6      `uhSpdifOut_CopyrightStatus_t`****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifOut_CopyrightStatus_t
{
    uhSpdifOut_CrUnknown      = 0,
    uhSpdifOut_CrNone         = 1,
    uhSpdifOut_CrPreRecorded  = 2,
    uhSpdifOut_CrHomeCopy     = 3
} uhSpdifOut_CopyrightStatus_t, *puhSpdifOut_CopyrightStatus_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The `uhSpdifOut_CopyrightStatus_t` type is used to describe the copyright status of the audio data in the generated SPDIF signal. This type combines 2 copyright properties into one enumeration: the copyright property (copyrighted or not) and the generation status (number of copies allowed) of the data. If a signal carries copyrighted material, the copyright status is either `uhSpdifOut_CrPreRecorded` or `uhSpdifOut_CrHomeCopy`. If the audio signal is not copyrighted, the copyright state is `uhSpdifOut_CrNone`.

**Values****Name**

uhSpdifOut\_CrUnknown

uhSpdifOut\_CrNone

uhSpdifOut\_CrPreRecorded

uhSpdifOut\_CrHomeCopy

**Table 311****Description**

No copyright information present (always the case for the professional format).

Copyright information is present. The audio data carried in the SPDIF signal is not copyrighted.

The audio data carried in the SPDIF signal is copyrighted. One more copy is allowed.

The audio data carried in the SPDIF signal is copyrighted. Copying is not allowed.

**7.1.5.2.1.7 uhSpdifOut\_DataSource\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpdifOut_DataSource_t
{
    uhSpdifOut_DsSpdif      = 0x00000001,
    uhSpdifOut_DsNonSpdif   = 0x00000002
} uhSpdifOut_DataSource_t, *puhSpdifOut_DataSource_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The uhSpdifOut\_DataSource\_t type enumerates the source of the input stream of the SPDIF-out logical component.

**Values****Name**

uhSpdifOut\_DsSpdif

uhSpdifOut\_DsNonSpdif

**Table 312****Description**

The input stream originates from a SPDIF signal. Both, user data and channel status data is available in the input stream.

The input stream does not originate from a SPDIF signal. No user data and only part of the channel status information is present in the input stream.

7.1.5.2.2 Model Types & Constants

7.1.5.2.2.1 ConsumerChannelStatus\_t

Signature

```
typedef struct _ConsumerChannelStatus_t
{
    UInt8          channelStatusMode;
    UInt8          sourceNumber;
    UInt8          channelNumber;
    uhSpdifOut_CopyrightStatus_t copyrightStatus;
} ConsumerChannelStatus_t, *pConsumerChannelStatus_t;
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

The ConsumerChannelStatus\_t type represents the portion of the Channel Status bits that must be provided by the client in case the input stream does not originate from a SPDIF signal. The mapping of the data in this structure upon the Channel Status Bits as defined by IEC80958 is described in Annex E.

Fields

Table 313

| Name              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| channelStatusMode | This field should always be set to '0'. All other values are reserved for future extension.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| sourceNumber      | Defines the source number for this channel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| channelNumber     | Defines the channel number for this channel. Note that this is channel number does not address a physical channel of the SPDIF signal but rather a logical channel ID.<br>— 0 means “do not take into account” (see [21]).<br>— 1 indicates, in a stereo configuration, the left channel.<br>— 2 indicates, in a stereo configuration, the right channel. |
| copyrightStatus   | Defines whether the audio content is copyrighted and if so, what the generation status of the audio content is (i.e. whether a copy of the audio data is allowed).                                                                                                                                                                                        |

Constraints

- 0 <= sourceNumber <= 15
- 0 <= channelNumber <= 15

7.1.5.3 Logical Component

7.1.5.3.1 Interface-Role Model

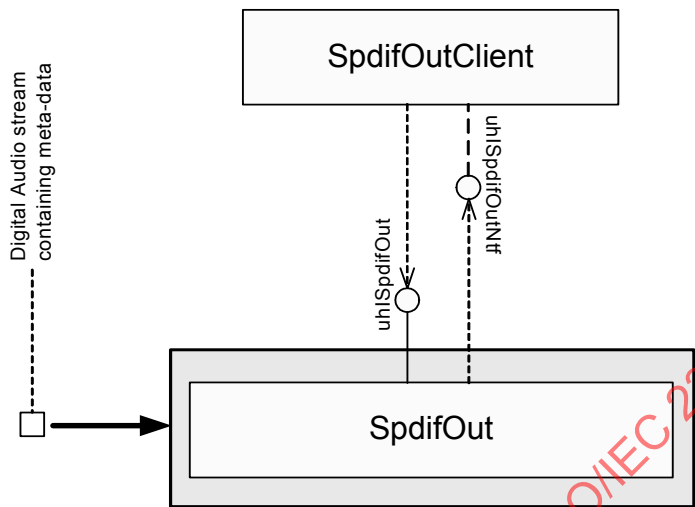


Figure 35 — Interface-Role Model of the SPDIF-out logical component

Figure 35 represents the interface role model for the SPDIF-out logical component. It shows the names and roles that the SPDIF-out logical component and its client have. The role `SpdifOut` provides only one interface to its client: `uhISpdifOut`. The `uhISpdifOut` interface provides the clients control over the SPDIF-out component.

In case events happen in the SPDIF-out component, the `SpdifOut` role might generate notifications. If the client of `SpdifOut` provides an interface of type `uhISpdifOutNtf`, these notifications can be received by the client.

The `SpdifOut` role has only one input stream, no output stream but generates a SPDIF output signal.

7.1.5.3.2 Diversity

7.1.5.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 314

| Role                        | Interface                   | Presence  |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------|
| <code>SpdifOut</code>       | <code>uhISpdifOut</code>    | mandatory |
| <code>SpdifOutClient</code> | <code>uhISpdifOutNtf</code> | optional  |

7.1.5.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 315

| Role                  | Attribute                      |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>SpdifOut</code> | <code>Bool userDataSupp</code> |

Not all implementations of `SpdifOut` may support insertion of user data in the generated output SPDIF signal. The `userDataSupp` attribute makes the user data insertion configurable.

7.1.5.3.3 Instantiation

7.1.5.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 316

| Type     | Object   | Multiplicity |
|----------|----------|--------------|
| SpdifOut | spdifOut | 1            |

7.1.5.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

```
— spdifOut.clientMute = True
— spdifOut.autoMute is undefined
— spdifOut.dataSource is undefined
— spdifOut.uBits = Null
— spdifOut.uBitsSize = 0
— for each i in [0..1]:
  — spdifOut.channel[i].channelStatusMode = 0
  — spdifOut.channel[i].sourceNumber = 0
  — spdifOut.channel[i].channelNumber = 0
  — spdifOut.channel[i].copyrightStatus = uhSpdifOut_CrNone
```

7.1.5.3.4 Execution Constraints

The SPDIF-out component acts as an autonomous component. This means that once instantiated, the behavior of the component does not require interaction of its client. The interaction of the client is restricted to:

- a) mute or un-mute the output audio signal of the SPDIF-out component.
- b) provide channel status information (and possibly user data) that is used in case the input source is “non-SPDIF” audio data.



### 7.1.5.4 Roles

#### 7.1.5.4.1 SpdifOut

##### Signature

```

role SpdifOut
{
    const Bool          userDataSupp;
    Bool               clientMute;
    Bool               autoMute;
    uhSpdifOut_DataSource_t dataSource;
    UInt8*             uBits;
    UInt32              uBitsSize;
    ConsumerChannelStatus_t channel[2];
}

```

##### Qualifiers

— root

##### Description

This role models an instance of a SPDIF-out logical component, providing an interface of type `uhISpdifOut`.

##### Independent Attributes

Table 317

| Name                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>userDataSupp</code> | Describes whether user data insertion is supported by the concerned implementation of SPDIF-out.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>clientMute</code>   | Describes whether the output signal of SPDIF-out is muted by explicit client interaction or not.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>autoMute</code>     | Describes whether the output signal of SPDIF-out is muted as a result of missing input audio data.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>dataSource</code>   | Defines the type of streaming input: <code>uhSpdifOut_DsSpdif</code> or <code>uhSpdifOut_DsNonSpdif</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>uBits</code>        | Contains the buffer that is inserted in the user-bit fields of the generated SPDIF-signal. This buffer must be provided by the client of the SPDIF component (only if the format of the source data is <code>uhSpdifOut_DsNonSpdif</code> , in other cases the user data is copied from the input stream). If the buffer is set to Null, the user data bits in the generated SPDIF signal are set to "0". |
| <code>uBitsSize</code>    | Size of the user data buffer <code>uBits</code> in bytes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>channel</code>      | Contains the variable part of the channel status information that can be specified by the client. This attribute is only taken into account if <code>dataSource == uhSpdifOut_DsNonSpdif</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

##### Invariants

None.

##### Instantiation

See subclause 7.1.5.3.3 on page 370.

##### Streaming Behavior

The `SpdifOut` role has only one streaming input, no streaming output but has a SPDIF output *signal*. The input stream contains either audio data that originates from SPDIF-in or from any other digital audio source.

Active Behavior

Table 318

| Event                                                                                                                                                 | Action                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The input source of the SPDIF-out component changed.                                                                                                  | For each subscription on notification function "uhSpdifOut_DataSourceChanged" OnDataSourceChanged is invoked.                                       |
| The SPDIF-out component runs out of streaming input data or receives streaming input data again after some period of absence of streaming input data. | The generated output is muted/unmuted and for each subscription on notification function uhSpdifOut_MuteStateChanged OnMuteStateChanged is invoked. |

Execution Constraints  
None.

7.1.5.4.2 SpdifOutClient

Signature  
`role spdifOutClient {}`

Qualifiers  
— actor

Description  
This role models the client of the SPDIF-out logical component.

Execution Constraints  
None.

7.1.5.5 Interfaces

7.1.5.5.1 uhISpdifOut

Qualifiers  
None.

Description  
The uhISpdifOut interface is the only interface of a SPDIF-out logical component. This interface is used to control the SPDIF-out logical component.

Interface ID  
`uuid( FD47C6C1-6231-42b4-91F5-27BAE795D09B )`

Execution Constraints  
None.

7.1.5.5.1.1      **Subscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (  
    [in] uhISpdifOutNtf*          pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32                   cookie,  
    [in] uhSpdifOut_Notifications_t notif);
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

7.1.5.5.1.2      **Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe(  
    [in] uhISpdifOutNtf*          pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32                   cookie,  
    [in] uhSpdifOut_Notifications_t notif);
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

7.1.5.5.1.3      **GetUserDataSupp**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetUserDataSupp(  
    [out] Bool* pUserDataSupp);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

The client of the SPDIF-out component may use this function to query whether insertion of user data is supported by the concerned implementation or not. If \*pUserDataSupp is `False` on function exit, user data insertion is not supported. Note that user data insertion is only possible if the data source of the input stream is not SPDIF. In case user data insertion is not supported and the source of the input signal is not SPDIF, all user data bits in the output signal will be set to '0'

**Parameters**

Table 319

| Name          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pUserDataSupp | Output parameter that on exit defines whether user data insertion is supported by the current implementation of the SPDIF-out component. ( <code>True</code> means that user data insertion is supported). |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

— True.

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— *\*pUserDataSupp* == *spdifOut.userDataSupp*

**7.1.5.5.1.4 SetUserData****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetUserData(
    [in, size_is(size)] UInt8*      pUserData,
    [in] UInt32                      size );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

Function *SetUserData* specifies a new buffer that will be inserted as user data in the generated SPDIF signal. Note that insertion of user data is only supported by a SPDIF-out instance if *GetUserDataSupp* returns *True*.

The user data that is specified by this function will be inserted repeatedly until new user data is specified. (If the size of the specified buffer is not a multiple of 48, the SPDIF-out component will not align the user data on a IEC 60958 Z-preamble.)

This function has only effect on the generated SPDIF output signal in case the source of the input signal is *uhSpdifOut\_DsNonSpdif*. If the source of the input signal is *uhSpdifOut\_DsSpdif*, the user data of the input signal is inserted into the output signal and the settings done with this function will not have any effect until the source of the input signal changes to *uhSpdifOut\_DsNonSpdif*.

**Parameters****Table 320**

| Name             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>pUserData</i> | Input parameter that contains a reference to the user data that is inserted. Setting argument <i>pUserData</i> to Null specifies that all user data in the generated SPDIF signal is set to "0". |
| <i>size</i>      | Size of the buffer that is returned by parameter <i>pUserData</i> in bytes.                                                                                                                      |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

— if (*pUserData*==Null)

— *size*==0

— if (*pUserData*!=Null)

— *size* >= 48

**Action**

Modify attributes `spdifOut.uBits.` and `spdifOut.uBitsSize`

**Postcondition**

— `spdifOut.uBitsSize == size`  
— `if (size>0)`  
    — `for each i in {0 .. size -1}`  
        — `spdifOut.uBits[i] == pUserData[i]`  
— `else spdifOut.uBits == Null`

**7.1.5.5.1.5      GetDataSource**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetDataSource(  
    [out] uhSpdifOut_DataSource_t* pDataSource );
```

**Qualifiers**

— `synchronous`  
  
— `thread-safe`

**Description**

This function reports the data source of the input stream. The data source is either `uhSpdifOut_DsSpdif` or `uhSpdifOut_DsNonSpdif`.

**Parameters**

**Table 321**

| Name                     | Description                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pDataSource</code> | Output parameter that on function exit contains the source of the current input stream that is used for output signal generation. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

`True.`

**Action**

`None.`

**Postcondition**

— `*pDataSource == spdifOut.dataSource`

## 7.1.5.5.1.6 Mute

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Mute(
    [in] Bool mute);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

The Mute function is used to mute or un-mute the output of the SPDIF-out logical component. Note that due to missing input signal, the SPDIF-out component may also mute autonomously. Autonomous mute overrules a possible unmute by the client of SPDIF-out.

If the SPDIF-out component is muted, the component will still generate a compliant SPDIF signal. The format of the “mute signal” depends on the former content of the input stream. If the input stream complied to the IEC60137 standard (non PCM encoded audio), all data burst packets from the input are replaced with burst packets of type null data in the generated SPDIF output signal. If the input stream was containing linear PCM, all audio samples are replaced with ‘0’.

The SPDIF-out component takes care of a “smooth” transition while muting or un-muting in case the last received input was linear PCM audio, meaning that audible artefacts like “clicks” do not occur. Smooth transitions will not be guaranteed by SPDIF-out for encoded audio like AC-3, MPEG etc.

**Parameters****Table 322**

| Name | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| mute | Defines whether the output of the SPDIF-out component should be muted or not. (True means that the output should be muted, False means that the output should contain audio that originates from the input stream.) |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True.

**Action**

- Modify the `spdifOut.clientMute` attribute.
- If the mute state (resulting from the explicit client mute and the autonomous mute) of the SPDIF-out component changes, a `uhSpdifOut_MuteStateChanged` notification is generated.

**Postcondition**

- `spdifOut.clientMute == mute`

7.1.5.5.1.7      **GetMuted**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMuted(  
    [out] Bool* pIsMuted);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

The `GetMuted` function returns whether the output of the SPDIF-out component is currently muted or not. Note that due to autonomous mute of the SPDIF-out component, the returned mute state of this function may not reflect the mute state that was set by the client with function `Mute`.

**Parameters**

**Table 323**

| Name                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pIsMuted</code> | Output parameter that on exit reflects the current mute state of the SPDIF-out component. ( <code>True</code> means that the output is muted, <code>False</code> means that the output contains audio that originates from the input stream.) |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

`True`.

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— `*pIsMuted = spdifOut.clientMute || spdifOut.autoMute`

7.1.5.5.1.8      **GetChannelInfo**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetChannelInfo(  
    [in]  uhSpdifOut_ChannelNumber_t chNr,  
    [out] UInt8* pChannelStatusMode,  
    [out] UInt8* pSourceNumber,  
    [out] UInt8* pChannelNumber);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous

— thread-safe

### Description

The `GetChannelInfo` function returns settings that are used to generate the Channel Status information in case the audio source is `uhSpdifOut_DsNonSpdif`. Because the Channel Status information of channel 1 and 2 may deviate from each other, parameter `chNr` selects one of the two channels.

### Parameters

Table 324

| Name                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>chNr</code>               | Input parameter that specifies for which channel the Channel Info is requested.                                                                                                           |
| <code>pChannelStatusMode</code> | Output parameter that indicates the Channel Status Mode. The returned value should always be "0" according to the IEC 60958 standard.                                                     |
| <code>pSourceNumber</code>      | Output parameter that on function exit describes the source number of the channel.                                                                                                        |
| <code>pChannelNumber</code>     | Output parameter that on function exit indicates the channel number of the selected channel. Note that this is the logical channel number rather than the <i>physical</i> channel number. |

### Return Values

Standard

### Precondition

True

### Action

None.

### Postcondition

- `*pChannelStatusMode == spdifOut.channel[chNr].channelStatusMode`
- `*pSourceNumber == spdifOut.channel[chNr].sourceNumber`
- `*pChannelNumber == spdifOut.channel[chNr].channelNumber`

### Remarks

- The `GetChannelInfo` function cannot be used to retrieve the Channel Status Info of the *input* stream in case the input source was SPDIF. It can only be used to retrieve the channel related properties that will be inserted in the generated SPDIF output signal in case the source of the input stream is not SPDIF.



7.1.5.5.1.9      **SetChannelInfo**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetChannelInfo(  
    [in] uhSpdifOut_ChannelNumber_t chNr,  
    [in] UInt8                      channelStatusMode,  
    [in] UInt8                      sourceNumber,  
    [in] UInt8                      channelNumber);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

The `SetChannelInfo` function specifies part of Channel Status bits that will be inserted in the meta-data of `channel[chNr]` of the generated SPDIF output signal. This is only applicable if the source of the input stream is `uhSpdifOut_DsNonSpdif`. If the source of the input signal is `uhSpdifOut_DsSpdif`, the Channel Status bits of the input signal will be copied into the output signal and the settings done with this function will not have any effect until the source changes to `uhSpdifOut_DsNonSpdif`.

**Parameters**

**Table 325**

| Name                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>chNr</code>              | Specifies for which of the two channels the channel status information must be used.                                                                                             |
| <code>channelStatusMode</code> | Parameter that indicates the Channel Status Mode. According to the IEC 60958 standard, this parameter should always be set to "0". All other values are reserved for future use. |
| <code>sourceNumber</code>      | Specifies the source number of the audio signal of the specified channel.                                                                                                        |
| <code>channelNumber</code>     | Specifies the logical channel number of the audio signal of the specified channel.                                                                                               |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `0 <= sourceNumber <= 15`
- `0 <= channelNumber <= 15`

**Action**

- **Modify**                      **attributes**                      `spdifOut.channel[chNr].channelStatusMode`,  
                                 `spdifOut.channel[chNr].sourceNumber` and `spdifOut.channel[chNr].channelNumber`

**Postcondition**

- `spdifOut.channel[chNr].channelStatusMode == channelStatusMode`
- `spdifOut.channel[chNr].sourceNumber == sourceNumber`
- `spdifOut.channel[chNr].channelNumber == channelNumber`

## 7.1.5.5.1.10 GetCopyrightInfo

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetCopyrightInfo(
    [in]  uhSpdifOut_ChannelNumber_t    chNr,
    [out] uhSpdifOut_CopyrightStatus_t* pCopyrightStatus);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

The `GetCopyrightInfo` function returns the copyright related properties that are inserted in the channel status bytes of `channel[chNr]` if the source of the input stream is not SPDIF. The copyright information contains two properties w.r.t. copyright:

- whether the data in the input stream is copyrighted;
- the generation state (whether the user is allowed to make one more copy of the audio data).

The two properties are combined into one parameter *pCopyrightStatus*.

**Parameters****Table 326**

| Name             | Description                                                                                                                             |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| chNr             | Specifies for which of the two channels the copyright properties must be returned.                                                      |
| pCopyrightStatus | Output parameter that on exit will indicate the copyright information w.r.t. the audio data carried in the channel specified with chNr. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- *\*pCopyrightStatus* == `spdifOut.channel[chNr].copyrightStatus`

**Remarks**

- `GetCopyrightInfo()` cannot be used to retrieve the Copyright info of the *input* stream in case the input source is `uhSpdifOut_DsSpdif`. It can only be used to retrieve the copyright related properties that will be inserted in the generated SPDIF output signal in case the source of the input stream is (or becomes) `uhSpdifOut_DsNonSpdif`.

#### 7.1.5.5.1.11 SetCopyrightInfo

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t SetCopyrightInfo(
    [in] uhSpdifOut_ChannelNumber_t chNr,
    [in] uhSpdifOut_CopyrightStatus_t copyrightStatus);
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

##### Description

The `SetCopyrightInfo` function specifies the copyright related part of the Channel Status information that will be inserted in the generated SPDIF compliant output signal in case the source of the input stream is `uhSpdifOut_DsNonSpdif`. If the source of the input signal is `uhSpdifOut_DsSpdif`, the copyright properties of the input signal are copied into the output signal and the settings done with this function will not have any effect until the source of the input audio stream becomes `uhSpdifOut_DsNonSpdif`.

The copyright information contains two properties w.r.t. copyright:

- whether the data in the stream is copyrighted;
- the generation state (whether the user is allowed to make one more copy of the audio data).

##### Parameters

Table 327

| Name                         | Description                                                                        |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>chNr</code>            | Specifies for which of the two channels the copyright properties must be inserted. |
| <code>copyrightStatus</code> | Specifies the copyright related properties.                                        |

##### Return Values

Standard

##### Precondition

- `copyrightStatus` != `uhSpdifOut_CrUnknown`

##### Action

- Modify `spdifOut.channel[chNr].copyrightStatus`.

##### Postcondition

- `spdifOut.channel[chNr].copyrightStatus` == `copyrightStatus`

#### 7.1.5.5.2 uhISpdifOutNtf

##### Qualifiers

- callback

Description

The `uhISpdifOutNtf` interface describes an interface that should be implemented by clients of the SPDIF-out component in order to receive notifications that are generated by SPDIF-out.

Interface ID

`uuid( D1222035-0FFF-4222-923F-DC283BD101F8 )`

Execution Constraints

None.

7.1.5.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhSpdifOut_Notifications_t notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

7.1.5.5.2.2 OnDataSourceChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnDataSourceChanged(
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhSpdifOut_DataSource_t dataSource );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

In case the source of the streaming input data of SPDIF-out changes, this function is invoked to inform the client(s) about this event. The new source of the input is passed by means of parameter *dataSource*.

Parameters

Table 328

| Name                    | Description                                                   |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>     | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| <code>dataSource</code> | Specifies the new source of the streaming input.              |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

**Action**  
Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

7.1.5.5.2.3      **OnMuteStateChanged**

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnMuteStateChanged(  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] Bool    isMuted );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is invoked if the mute state of the SPDIF-out component changes from “muted” to “unmuted” or vice-versa. The reason for this change can be explicit interaction by the client with use of function Mute or autonomous mute/unmute by the SPDIF-out component.

**Parameters**

**Table 329**

| Name    | Description                                                                        |
|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie  | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                      |
| isMuted | Indicates the mute state of the SPDIF-out component (True=muted, False=not muted). |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
Any notification compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

## 7.2 Audio processing and rendering

### 7.2.1 UhlAavl

#### 7.2.1.1 Concepts

##### 7.2.1.1.1 Automatic Volume Leveling

Audio signals from different sound sources do not necessarily have the same volume level, or the volume level may vary with the audio content e.g. the volume in advertisements is usually louder than in other programs like a movie. This is often experienced as disturbing by the end-user. Automatic Volume Leveling (AVL) is a feature that compensates for this volume changes, and results in less annoyance for the end-user.

AVL uses measurements of the input volume level, possibly measured in upstream logical components (in the case of decoded multi-channel audio input streams). Because of the measurements and possible delays in the AVL operation, the response time of AVL is not instantaneous and can take a short time.

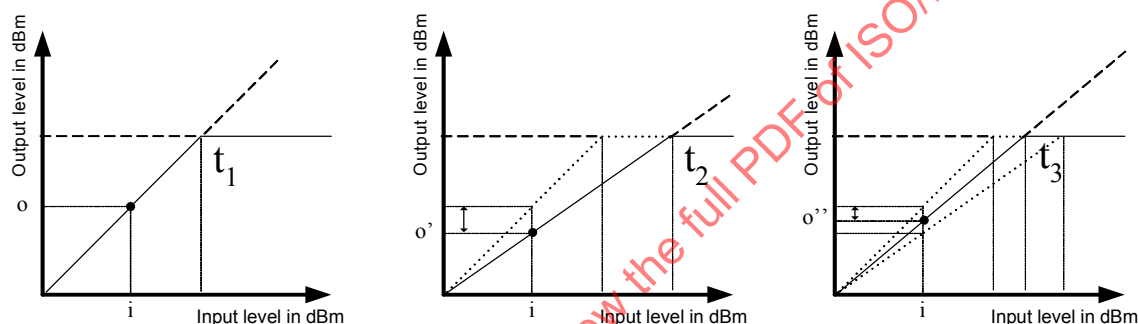


**Figure 36 — Example of the Automatic Volume Leveling mechanism.**

In Figure 36, the AVL mechanism is depicted:

- At time  $t_1$ , the average input volume level is below or equal to the maximum volume level, the volume level of  $o$  at the output is equal to the volume level  $i$  at the input;
- At time  $t_2$ , the average input volume level has exceeded the maximum volume level, the volume level of  $o'$  at the output is reduced compared to the volume level  $i$  at the input, due to the gain adjustment of the AVL feature;
- At time  $t_3$ , the average input volume level is still above the maximum volume level, the volume level of  $o''$  at the output is still adjusted - but less - compared to the volume level  $i$  at the input, due to the gain adjustment of the AVL feature;
- The moment the average input volume level is again below or equal to the maximum volume level, the volume level of the output is equal to the volume level at the input, as depicted at time  $t_1$ .

The client can enable, disable, and set different levels of AVL. A higher level of AVL results in a more limited range of the output volume and/or different response times, depending on the platform realization.

AVL may be autonomously de-activated in certain cases where its application conflicts with other features in the sound signal path. Changes in the actual enabling status of AVL will be notified.

## 7.2.1.2 Types & Constants

### 7.2.1.2.1 Public Types & Constants

#### 7.2.1.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

#### 7.2.1.2.1.2 `uhAavl_ValStat_t`

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAavl_ValStat_t {
    uhAavl_ValStatInvalid = -2,
    uhAavl_ValStatUnknown = -1,
    uhAavl_ValStatKnown = 1
} uhAavl_ValStat_t, *puhAavl_ValStat_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This type represents the validity status of the related property/properties.

##### Values

Table 330

| Name                               | Description                                                              |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhAavl_ValStatInvalid</code> | The property/properties are temporarily not available.                   |
| <code>uhAavl_ValStatUnknown</code> | The property/properties are available, yet they could not be determined. |
| <code>uhAavl_ValStatKnown</code>   | The property/properties are available and determined.                    |

#### 7.2.1.2.1.3 `uhAavl_Ntf_t`

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAavl_Ntf_t {
    uhAavl_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhAavl_ActEnabledChanged = 0x00000002
} uhAavl_Ntf_t, *puhAavl_Ntf_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

##### Description

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIAavlNtf`.

Values

Table 331

| Name                       | Description                       |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhAavl_SubscriptionChanged | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged. |
| uhAavl_ActEnabledChanged   | Represents OnActEnabledChanged.   |

7.2.1.2.1.4      uhAavl\_NtfSet\_t

**Signature**  
`typedef Int32 uhAavl_NtfSet_t, *puhAavl_NtfSet_t;`

**Qualifiers**  
— enum-set

**Description**  
Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type

uhAavl\_Ntf\_t. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

7.2.1.2.1.5      uhAavl\_AllNtfs

**Signature**  
`const uhAavl_NtfSet_t uhAavl_AllNtfs = 0x00000003;`

**Qualifiers**  
— None.

**Description**  
Defines the set of all values of type  
  
uhAavl\_Ntf\_t. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

7.2.1.2.2      Model Types & Constants

None.

7.2.1.3      Logical Component

7.2.1.3.1      Interface-Role Model

The interface role-model is depicted in Figure 37.



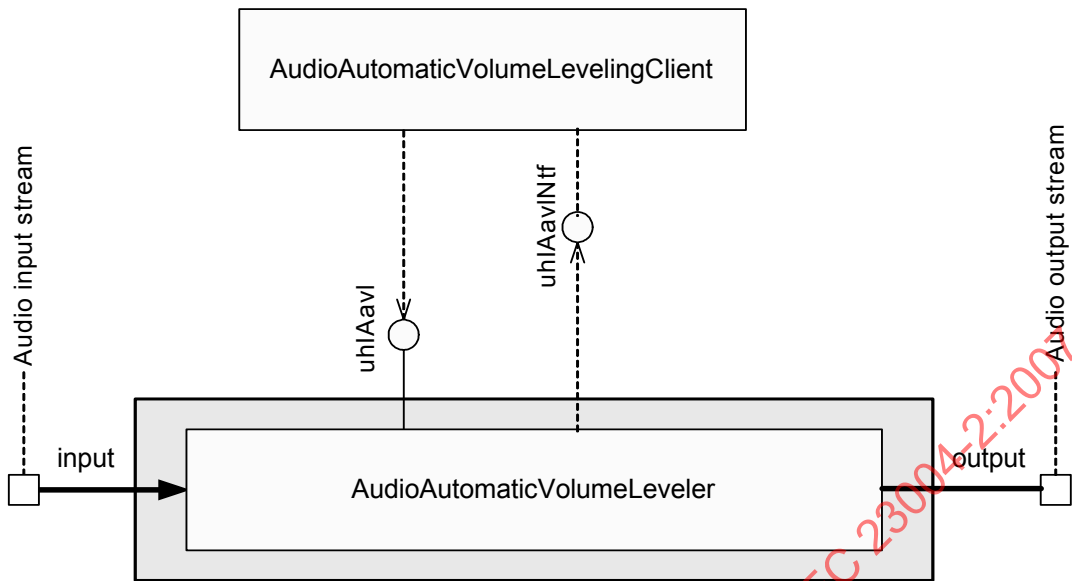


Figure 37 — Interface-Role Model of the Audio Automatic Volume Leveler logical component

The Audio Automatic Volume Leveler logical component (AAVL, grey box) consists of the `AudioAutomaticVolumeLeveler` role. This role provides an interface (`uhIAavl`) for controlling AVL. The control interface is meant for use by the client (`AudioAutomaticVolumeLevelingClient`). This client can optionally provide a call-back interface (`uhIAavlNtf`) allowing it to receive notifications of events in the Audio Automatic Volume Leveler logical component.

7.2.1.3.2 Diversity

7.2.1.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

| Table 332                                       |                         |           |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------|
| Role                                            | Interface               | Presence  |
| <code>AudioAutomaticVolumeLeveler</code>        | <code>uhIAavl</code>    | mandatory |
| <code>AudioAutomaticVolumeLevelingClient</code> | <code>uhIAavlNtf</code> | optional  |

7.2.1.3.2.2 Configurable Items

| Table 333                                |                       |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Role                                     | Attribute             |
| <code>AudioAutomaticVolumeLeveler</code> | <code>minLevel</code> |
|                                          | <code>maxLevel</code> |

7.2.1.3.2.3 Constraints

`minLevel <= maxLevel`

7.2.1.3.3 Instantiation

7.2.1.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 334

| Type                        | Object | Multiplicity |
|-----------------------------|--------|--------------|
| AudioAutomaticVolumeLeveler | aavl   | 1            |

7.2.1.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- aavl.setEnabled == False
- aavl.actualEnabledStatus == uhAavl\_ValStatInvalid
- aavl.actualEnabled == False
- aavl.level == minLevel

7.2.1.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

7.2.1.4 Roles

7.2.1.4.1 AudioAutomaticVolumeLeveler

Signature

```
role AudioAutomaticVolumeLeveler {
    Bool      setEnabled;
    uhAavl_ValStat_t actualEnabledStatus;
    Bool      actualEnabled;
    const UInt32 minLevel;
    const UInt32 maxLevel;
    UInt32     level;
}
```

Qualifiers

- root

Description

The AudioAutomaticVolumeLeveler role controls the AVL level. The AVL level can be set and queried and AVL processing can be enabled or disabled.

**Independent Attributes****Table 335**

| <b>Name</b>                      | <b>Description</b>                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>setEnabled</code>          | Indicates the preferred AVL enabling status, <code>True</code> if enabled and <code>False</code> if disabled. |
| <code>actualEnabledStatus</code> | Validity state of the AVL enabling status in <code>actualEnabled</code> .                                     |
| <code>actualEnabled</code>       | Indicates the actual AVL enabling status, <code>True</code> if enabled and <code>False</code> if disabled.    |
| <code>minLevel</code>            | Minimum value for the AVL level.                                                                              |
| <code>maxLevel</code>            | Maximum value for the AVL level.                                                                              |
| <code>level</code>               | Current value of the AVL level.                                                                               |

**Dependent Attributes**

None.

**Invariants**

— `minLevel <= level <= maxLevel`

**Instantiation**

See subclause 7.2.1.3.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

The `AudioAutomaticVolumeLeveler` has an audio signal as an input.

When the AVL processing is enabled (`aavl.setEnabled` is `True`)

and AVL processing is not de-activated autonomously by the platform, then `aavl.actualEnabled` is `True` and the `AudioAutomaticVolumeLeveler` will perform AVL processing on the audio input stream, using the AVL level set in `aavl.level`.

This processed stream is passed to the output.

The AVL processing can be disabled as a result of:

- Explicitly disabling by the client (`aavl.setEnabled` is `False`)

and/or

- Autonomous de-activation by the platform.

When the AVL processing is disabled (`aavl.actualEnabled` is `False`), the stream at the input is passed to the output without any processing.

**Active Behavior**

In addition to the standard notification behavior (see `uhIAavlNtf`), `AudioAutomaticVolumeLeveler` has the following event-driven notification behavior:

Table 336

| Event                                                                                               | Action                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The applicability of AVL towards the audio input stream of the AAVL logical component, has changed. | Notify OnActEnabledChanged if the enabling status of AVL changes. |

**Execution Constraints**  
None.

7.2.1.4.2 AudioAutomaticVolumeLevelingClient

**Signature**  
`role AudioAutomaticVolumeLevelingClient {}`

**Qualifiers**  
— actor

**Description**  
An `AudioAutomaticVolumeLevelingClient` represents a user of the `uhIAavl` interface.

**Execution Constraints**  
— None

7.2.1.5 Interfaces

7.2.1.5.1 uhIAavl

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This interface provides control on the activation/deactivation of the AVL processing and on the level of AVL that is applied to the audio input signal.

**Interface ID**  
`uuid( 5A9F23B0-E331-4025-B024-70684F9C11BA )`

**Remarks**  
— In the following function specifications, the name `aavl` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface; see subclause 7.2.1.3.3.1.

7.2.1.5.1.1      **Subscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhIAavlNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32          cookie,
    [in] uhAavl_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

- subscribe-function

7.2.1.5.1.2      **Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhIAavlNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32          cookie,
    [in] uhAavl_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

- unsubscribe-function

7.2.1.5.1.3      **Enable**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Enable ( [in] Bool enable );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the preferred AVL enabling status.

**Parameters**

Table 337

| Name   | Description                                                                                               |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| enable | The preferred AVL enabling status, being <code>True</code> if enabled and <code>False</code> if disabled. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

`True`

**Action**

- Modify `aavl.setEnabled`

## Postcondition

— `aavl.setEnabled == enable`

### 7.2.1.5.1.4 GetEnabled

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetEnabled ( [out] pBool pEnabled );
```

## Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

## Description

Returns the preferred AVL enabling status.

## Parameters

Table 338

| Name                  | Description                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pEnabled</code> | Output parameter returning the preferred AVL enabling status, being <code>True</code> if enabled and <code>False</code> if disabled. |

## Return Values

Standard.

## Precondition

`True`

## Action

None.

## Postcondition

— `*pEnabled == aavl.setEnabled`

### 7.2.1.5.1.5 GetActualEnabled

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualEnabled (
    [out] puhAavl_ValStat_t pStatus,
    [out] pBool pActualEnabled );
```

## Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

## Description

Returns the actual AVL enabling status.

**Parameters****Table 339**

| <b>Name</b>                 | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pStatus</code>        | Output parameter that indicates the validity of the actual AVL enabling status in the <code>pActualEnabled</code> parameter.      |
| <code>pActualEnabled</code> | Output parameter returning the actual AVL enabling status, being <code>True</code> if enabled and <code>False</code> if disabled. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**`True`**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**`*pStatus == aavl.actualEnabledStatus``*pActualEnabled == aavl.actualEnabled`**7.2.1.5.1.6 SetLevel****Signature**`uhErrorCode_t SetLevel ( [in] UInt32 level );`**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the AVL level.

**Parameters****Table 340**

| <b>Name</b>        | <b>Description</b>       |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>level</code> | The AVL level to be set. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**— `aavl.minLevel <= level <= aavl.maxLevel`

Action

— Modify `aavl.level`

Postcondition

— `aavl.level == level`

7.2.1.5.1.7      **GetLevel**

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetLevel ( [out] pUInt32 pLevel );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns the AVL level.

Parameters

Table 341

| Name                | Description                               |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <code>pLevel</code> | Output parameter returning the AVL level. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

True

Action

None.

Postcondition

— *\*pLevel* == `aavl.level`

7.2.1.5.1.8      **GetLevelRange**

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetLevelRange (
    [out] pUInt32 pMinLevel,
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxLevel );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe



**Description**

Returns the minimum and the maximum value for the AVL level.

**Parameters****Table 342**

| Name                   | Description                                                     |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pMinLevel</code> | Output parameter returning the minimum value for the AVL level. |
| <code>pMaxLevel</code> | Output parameter returning the maximum value for the AVL level. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— `*pMinLevel == aavl.minLevel`  
 — `*pMaxLevel == aavl.maxLevel`

**7.2.1.5.2 uhIAavlNtf****Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This is the notification interface to be provided by clients of the AAVL logical component that wish to receive notifications of events of the AAVL logical component.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( E2798E9B-5AF0-412C-8E33-51BFCAEAC5D8 )`

**7.2.1.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32      cookie,
    [in] uhAavl_NtfSet_t  notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

7.2.1.5.2.2 OnActEnabledChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnActEnabledChanged (  
    [in] UInt32          cookie,  
    [in] uhAavl_ValStat_t status,  
    [in] Bool           enable);
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called by the `AudioAutomaticVolumeLeveler` whenever it detects a change in the actual enabling status of AVL for the current audio input stream.

Parameters

Table 343

| Name                | Description                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                        |
| <code>status</code> | Parameter that indicates the validity of the AVL enabling status in the <code>enable</code> parameter.                                               |
| <code>enable</code> | The new AVL enabling status. It is <code>True</code> if AVL is enabled for the current audio input stream and <code>False</code> if AVL is disabled. |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

`True`

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

`True`

7.2.2 UhlAbassEnh

7.2.2.1 Concepts

7.2.2.1.1 Introduction

Bass Enhancement (BE) refers to a set of signal processing algorithms that are used to provide improved listening experience for low-frequency (bass) sounds. It is typically applied in the audio frequency range below 120 Hz and its purpose may depend on the kind of bass rendering capabilities of the speaker system.

The bass enhancement algorithms mainly fall into two broad categories:

- a) Those that compensate for some inadequacies in the speakers. This usually pertains to speaker systems that have reduced acoustic outputs at low-frequencies. The effect could take shape of the following:
  - 1) A bass-booster that compensates for the low output levels of a given speaker system at low frequencies. This is used where the speakers have a reduced, but functional low-frequency response. Often an implementation of this takes the form of compensating the speakers' amplitude (and sometimes phase) response through an "inverse" filter. Frequently speaker compensation systems extend beyond the low-frequency range of frequencies, and cease to be "bass enhancement" algorithms in a pure sense.
  - 2) A phantom-bass generator that introduces harmonics of the fundamental in the output signal to create the perception of bass. This is usually deployed where the speakers have a severely impaired low-frequency response.
- b) Those that regulate subjective sound level in the low-frequency range of frequencies. A typical implementation of this corresponds to a bass-boost filter whose gain reduces with the signal level.

Some of the popularly available Bass Enhancement algorithms are listed as examples in Appendix A.

#### 7.2.2.1.2 Operational Bass Enhancement Modes

The Audio Bass Enhancer logical component has the form of a filter with a single streaming input pin and a single streaming output pin.

The Audio Bass Enhancer logical component supports only generic bass-enhancement settings. The control for the logical component is open loop in the sense that there are no notifications that the client can use.

The Audio Bass Enhancer logical component can support the following bass enhancement modes:

- Bass Compensation (**BC**): Generic name associated with type 1a in subclause 7.2.2.1.1.
- Phantom Bass (**PB**): Generic name associated with type 1b in subclause 7.2.2.1.1.
- Dynamic Bass Enhancement (**DBE**): Generic name associated with type 2 in subclause 7.2.2.1.1.

All modes can be used in conjunction. Each mode has an associated "effect-strength" parameter, which can be set by the user.

#### 7.2.2.2 Types & Constants

##### 7.2.2.2.1 Public Types & Constants

###### 7.2.2.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

###### 7.2.2.2.1.2 uhAbassEnh\_Type\_t

###### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAbassEnh_Type_t {
    uhAbassEnh_BassCompensation          = 0x00000001,
    uhAbassEnh_PhantomBass                = 0x00000002,
    uhAbassEnh_DynamicBassEnhancement    = 0x00000004
}
```

```
} uhAbassEnh_Type_t, *puhAbassEnh_Type_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the different types of bass enhancement algorithm as described in subclause 7.2.2.1.2.

**Values**

**Table 344**

**Name**

uhAbassEnh\_BassCompensation  
uhAbassEnh\_PhantomBass  
uhAbassEnh\_DynamicBassEnhancement

**Description**

Corresponds to bass compensation (BC).  
Corresponds to phantom bass (PB).  
Corresponds to dynamic bass enhancement (DBE).

**7.2.2.2.1.3      uhAbassEnh\_TypeSet\_t**

**Signature**

```
typedef Int32  
  
uhAbassEnh_TypeSet_t, *p  
  
uhAbassEnh_TypeSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of bass enhancement algorithm types that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type uhAbassEnh\_Type\_t.

**Constraints**

None.

**7.2.2.2.2      Model Types & Constants**

**7.2.2.2.2.1      NoBassEnhType**

**Signature**

```
const Int32 NoBassEnhType = 0x00000000;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**  
Defines the empty set of bass enhancement algorithm types.

7.2.2.3 Logical Component

7.2.2.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 38 depicts the interface-role model of the Audio Bass Enhancer logical component. It shows the interfaces and the roles involved with this component.

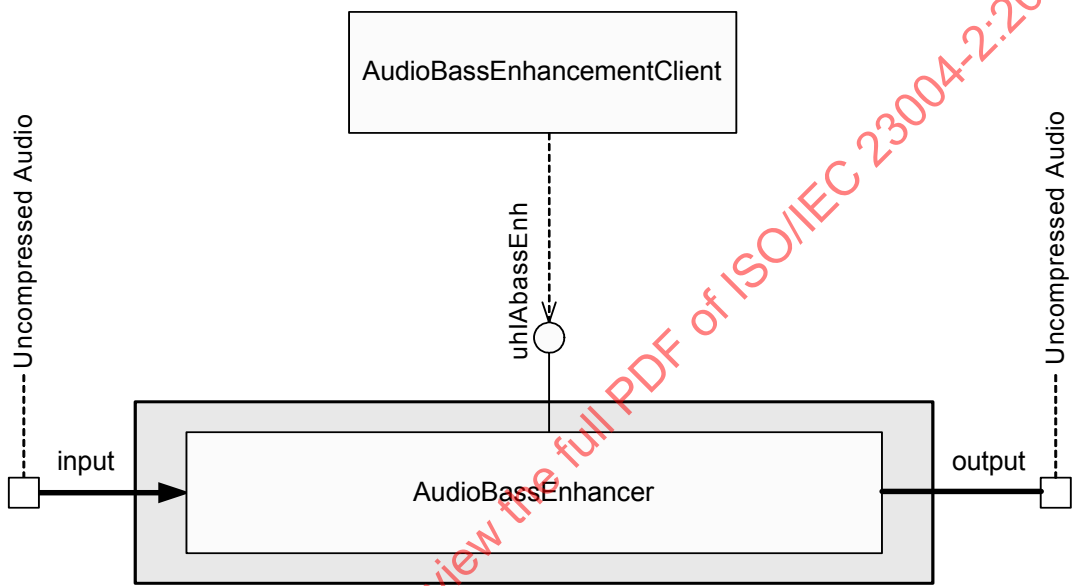


Figure 38 — Interface Role Model

The grey box in Figure 38 denotes an **Audio Bass Enhancer** logical component containing a single `AudioBassEnhancer` role. This role provides one mandatory (solid line) control interface called `UhIAbassEnh` to its client, the `AudioBassEnhancementClient`. There are no notification interfaces since the control is an open-loop one.

7.2.2.3.2 Diversity

7.2.2.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 345

| Role                           | Interface                | Presence  |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------|
| <code>AudioBassEnhancer</code> | <code>UhIAbassEnh</code> | mandatory |

7.2.2.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 346

| Role              | Attribute            |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| AudioBassEnhancer | suppBassEnhTypes     |
|                   | minEffectStrengthDbe |
|                   | maxEffectStrengthDbe |
|                   | minEffectStrengthPb  |
|                   | maxEffectStrengthPb  |
|                   | minEffectStrengthBc  |
|                   | maxEffectStrengthBc  |
|                   |                      |

7.2.2.3.2.3 Constraints

- `suppBassEnhTypes != NoBassEnhType`
- `minEffectStrengthDbe ≤ maxEffectStrengthDbe`
- `minEffectStrengthPb ≤ maxEffectStrengthPb`
- `minEffectStrengthBc ≤ maxEffectStrengthBc`

7.2.2.3.3 Instantiation

7.2.2.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 347

| Type              | Object | Multiplicity |
|-------------------|--------|--------------|
| AudioBassEnhancer | abe    | 1            |

7.2.2.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- `abe.currentBassEnhTypes == NoBassEnhType`
- `abe.effectStrengthBc == minEffectStrengthBc`
- `abe.effectStrengthPb == minEffectStrengthPb`
- `abe.effectStrengthDbe == minEffectStrengthDbe`

7.2.2.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier “thread-safe”.

7.2.2.4 Roles

AudioBassEnhancer

**Signature**

```

role AudioBassEnhancer {
    const
    uhAbassEnh_TypeSet_t suppBassEnhTypes;

    uhAbassEnh_TypeSet_t      currentBassEnhTypes;
    const Int32               minEffectStrengthBc;
    const Int32               maxEffectStrengthBc;
    const Int32               minEffectStrengthPb;
    const Int32               maxEffectStrengthPb;
    const Int32               minEffectStrengthDbe;
    const Int32               maxEffectStrengthDbe;
    Int32                     effectStrengthBc;
    Int32                     effectStrengthPb;
    Int32                     effectStrengthDbe;
}

```

**Qualifiers**

— root

**Description**

The `AudioBassEnhancer` role performs the function of accepting bass enhancement settings from the user, and retrieving these settings on request.

For each type of bass enhancement, an “effect-strength” can be set and queried. The “effect-strength” limit parameters (min/max) providing the range over which each type of bass enhancement may be set by the user, can also be queried.

**Independent Attributes****Table 348**

| Name                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>suppBassEnhTypes</code>     | The set of supported bass enhancement types.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>currentBassEnhTypes</code>  | The set of bass enhancement types that are currently activated. A bass enhancement type, once activated by the user, will remain activated, until the user deactivates it. It will not be affected by settings of other bass enhancement types. |
| <code>minEffectStrengthBc</code>  | Minimum effect-strength that can be used for bass enhancement type BC.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>maxEffectStrengthBc</code>  | Maximum effect-strength that can be used for bass enhancement type BC.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>minEffectStrengthPb</code>  | Minimum effect-strength that can be used for bass enhancement type PB.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>maxEffectStrengthPb</code>  | Maximum effect-strength that can be used for bass enhancement type PB.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>minEffectStrengthDbe</code> | Minimum effect-strength that can be used for bass enhancement type DBE.                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>maxEffectStrengthDbe</code> | Maximum effect-strength that can be used for bass enhancement type DBE.                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>effectStrengthBc</code>     | Effect-strength used for BC, when bass enhancement type BC is activated.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>effectStrengthPb</code>     | Effect-strength used for PB, when bass enhancement type PB is activated.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>effectStrengthDbe</code>    | Effect-strength used for DBE, when bass enhancement type DBE is activated.                                                                                                                                                                      |

**Dependent Attributes**

None.

**Invariants**

—  $(\text{currentBassEnhTypes} \ \& \ \text{suppBassEnhTypes}) == \text{currentBassEnhTypes}$

- $\text{minEffectStrengthBc} \leq \text{effectStrengthBc} \leq \text{maxEffectStrengthBc}$
- $\text{minEffectStrengthPb} \leq \text{effectStrengthPb} \leq \text{maxEffectStrengthPb}$
- $\text{minEffectStrengthDbe} \leq \text{effectStrengthDbe} \leq \text{maxEffectStrengthDbe}$

#### Instantiation

An `AudioBassEnhancer` is always instantiated as part of an Audio Bass Enhancer; see subclause 7.2.2.3.3.

#### Streaming Behavior

The `AudioBassEnhancer` role has one audio input stream and one audio output stream. The `AudioBassEnhancer` processes the audio signal of the input stream with the algorithm(s) set in `currentBassEnhTypes` and streams the resulting audio signal out.

#### Active Behavior

None.

#### Execution Constraints

None.

`AudioBassEnhancementClient`

#### Signature

```
role AudioBassEnhancementClient {}
```

#### Qualifiers

- actor

#### Description

An Audio Bass Enhancement Client represents a user of the `UhlAbassEnh` interface.

#### Execution Constraints

None.

### 7.2.2.5 Interfaces

#### 7.2.2.5.1 `uhlAbassEnh`

#### Qualifiers

None.

#### Description

This interface of an `AudioBassEnhancer` provides functions to set and retrieve bass enhancement preferences.



Interface ID

uuid( 6E60D4E3-1E67-4C0C-98DF-CC2A7FE6D73E )

7.2.2.5.1.1 GetSuppBassEnhTypes

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppBassEnhTypes(  
    [out] p  
  
    uhAbassEnh_TypeSet_t pSuppBassEnhTypes );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns the set of supported bass enhancement types.

Parameters

Table 349

| Name              | Description                                                             |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSuppBassEnhTypes | Output parameter returning the set of supported bass enhancement types. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

True

Action

None.

Postcondition

\*pSuppBassEnhTypes == abe.suppBassEnhTypes

7.2.2.5.1.2 GetEffectStrengthRange

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetEffectStrengthRange(  
    [in] uhAbassEnh_Type_t bassEnhType,  
    [out] pInt32 pMinEffectStrength,  
    [out] pInt32 pMaxEffectStrength );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the range over which the “effect-strength” can be set for a given bass enhancement type.

**Parameters****Table 350**

| Name                            | Description                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>bassEnhType</code>        | The bass enhancement type for which the minimum and maximum the “effect-strength” are queried.                    |
| <code>pMinEffectStrength</code> | Output parameter returning the minimum “effect-strength” for the bass enhancement type <code>bassEnhType</code> . |
| <code>pMaxEffectStrength</code> | Output parameter returning the maximum “effect-strength” for the bass enhancement type <code>bassEnhType</code> . |

**Return Values**

- Standard

**Precondition**

`(bassEnhType & abe.suppBassEnhTypes) != 0`

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- If `(bassEnhType == uhAbassEnh_BassCompensation)`
  - `*pMinEffectStrength == abe.minEffectStrengthBc`
  - `*pMaxEffectStrength == abe.maxEffectStrengthBc`
- If `(bassEnhType == uhAbassEnh_PhantomBass)`
  - `*pMinEffectStrength == abe.minEffectStrengthPb`
  - `*pMaxEffectStrength == abe.maxEffectStrengthPb`
- If `(bassEnhType == uhAbassEnh_DynamicBassEnhancement)`
  - `*pMinEffectStrength == abe.minEffectStrengthDbe`
  - `*pMaxEffectStrength == abe.maxEffectStrengthDbe`

**7.2.2.5.1.3 SetBassEnh****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetBassEnh(
    [in] uhAbassEnh_Type_t bassEnhType,
    [in] Int32 effectStrength,
    [in] Bool enable);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function sets the “effect-strength” and activation status for a given bass enhancement type.

**Parameters****Table 351**

| Name                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>bassEnhType</code>    | The type of bass enhancement for which activation and “effect-strength” are set.                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>effectStrength</code> | The “effect-strength” that should be applied for the bass enhancement type <code>bassEnhType</code> when this bass enhancement type is activated. It is specified in integral steps within the range corresponding to <code>bassEnhType</code> .         |
| <code>enable</code>         | The activation state for the bass enhancement type <code>bassEnhType</code> . It is <code>True</code> when the specified bass enhancement type should be active. It is <code>False</code> when the specified bass enhancement type should not be active. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `bassEnhType & abe.suppBassEnhTypes != 0`
- `If (bassEnhType == uhAbassEnh_BassCompensation)`
  - `abe.minEffectStrengthBc <= effectStrength <= abe.maxEffectStrengthBc`
- `If (bassEnhType == uhAbassEnh_PhantomBass)`
  - `abe.minEffectStrengthPb <= effectStrength <= abe.maxEffectStrengthPb`
- `If (bassEnhType == uhAbassEnh_DynamicBassEnhancement)`
  - `abe.minEffectStrengthDbe <= effectStrength <= abe.maxEffectStrengthDbe`

**Action**

- `Modify abe.currentBassEnhTypes`
- `If (bassEnhType == uhAbassEnh_BassCompensation)`
  - `Modify abe.effectStrengthBc`
- `If (bassEnhType == uhAbassEnh_PhantomBass)`
  - `Modify abe.effectStrengthPb`
- `If (bassEnhType == uhAbassEnh_DynamicBassEnhancement)`
  - `Modify abe.effectStrengthDbe`

**Postcondition**

- `If (enable == True)`
  - `abe.currentBassEnhTypes & bassEnhType != 0`
- `else`
  - `abe.currentBassEnhTypes & bassEnhType == 0`
- `If (bassEnhType == uhAbassEnh_BassCompensation)`
  - `abe.effectStrengthBc == effectStrength`
- `If (bassEnhType == uhAbassEnh_PhantomBass)`
  - `abe.effectStrengthPb == effectStrength`
- `If (bassEnhType == uhAbassEnh_DynamicBassEnhancement)`
  - `abe.effectStrengthDbe == effectStrength`

## 7.2.2.5.1.4 GetBassEnh

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetBassEnh (
    [in] uhAbassEnh_Type_t bassEnhType,
    [out] pInt32 pEffectStrength,
    [out] pBool pEnabled);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the “effect-strength” and current activation status for a given bass enhancement type.

**Parameters****Table 352**

| Name            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| bassEnhType     | The bass enhancement type for which the “effect-strength” and the activation state are queried.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| pEffectStrength | Output parameter returning the “effect-strength” for the bass enhancement type <code>bassEnhType</code> . It is specified in integral steps within the range corresponding to <code>bassEnhType</code> .                                                                      |
| pEnabled        | Output parameter returning the current activation state for the bass enhancement type <code>bassEnhType</code> . It is <code>True</code> when the specified bass enhancement type is active. It is <code>False</code> when the specified bass enhancement type is not active. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

`bassEnhType & abe.suppBassEnhTypes != 0`

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- If (`bassEnhType & abe.currentBassEnhTypes == 0`)
  - `*pEnabled == False`
  - else
    - `*pEnabled == True`
- If (`bassEnhType == uhAbassEnh_BassCompensation`)
  - `*pEffectStrength == abe.effectStrengthBc`
- If (`bassEnhType == uhAbassEnh_PhantomBass`)
  - `*pEffectStrength == abe.effectStrengthPb`
- If (`bassEnhType == uhAbassEnh_DynamicBassEnhancement`)
  - `*pEffectStrength == abe.effectStrengthDbe`

## 7.2.3 UhlAdrc

### 7.2.3.1 Concepts

#### 7.2.3.1.1 Introduction

Audio DRC (ADRC) reduces the dynamic range of the audio signal to get low-level and high-level signals closer together in level. The signal can thus be adapted to the reproduction apparatus and/or the listening conditions. DRC can e.g. be used to attenuate (or 'limit') high-level signals while passing low-level signals unchanged, or to boost low-level signals while passing high-level signals unchanged, or to attenuate high-level signals and boost low-level signals. An example is the so-called "midnight mode" of operation for TVs that allows reducing the overall volume of the program without significantly affecting the intelligibility of the dialogues.

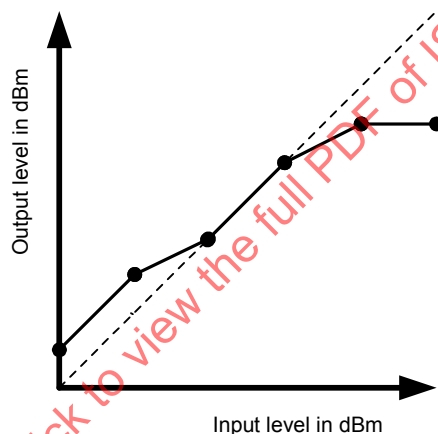


**Figure 39 — A typical curve for dynamic range control. The dots on the curve denote the "elbow points"**

DRC operation can be precisely specified through a curve as illustrated in Figure 39. For compressed audio, the requirement can also be met through a gain parameter associated with each frame of audio data. Different gain parameters may be included in a single stream corresponding to different DRC settings.

The gain parameter is frequently associated with the audio stream as meta-data. For example, MPEG-1 [1] and MPEG-2 [2] used for DVB, DVD-Video etc. optionally carries the meta-data inside the 'ancillary data' field of the coded audio bit-stream. AC-3 audio, used for the ATSC TV system [13] and DVD-Video, carries the meta-data in fields 'dynrng' and 'compr' in the coded audio bitstream. As indicated p. 4-20 of the AC-3 Licensee Information Manual [22] Dynamic Range Compression is required in all Dolby Digital products, it is also available for DTS streams.

#### 7.2.3.1.2 Operational Mode for ADRC

Control is provided to the user to query what DRC modes (light/medium/heavy etc.) are supported, and to set a preference for a DRC mode from among this set.

Depending on the signal properties, it may not be advisable to apply DRC or it might be necessary to adapt the selected DRC mode accordingly.

Wherever such possibilities of conflict arise, the DRC functionality may be autonomously be shut off or the DRC mode applied may be autonomously enforced to an other mode.

In case a DRC mode is not available for a particular stream, the DRC mode enforced by the LC will be different than the mode selected by the user, based on availability of DRC options. The closest supported mode will be autonomously substituted to it. See Table 353 for details of the mode mapping that the user can expect from the LC, in case substitution is applied.

**Table 353 — DRC mode mapping**

| <b>Supported and Available Mode(s) for the current audio input stream</b> | <b>(User) Selected Mode</b>       | <b>Actual Mode</b> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| Invalid input signal                                                      | No/Light/Medium/Heavy Compression | Invalid            |
| Unknown input signal                                                      | No/Light/Medium/Heavy Compression | Unknown            |
| No Compression                                                            | No/Light/Medium/Heavy Compression | No Compression     |
| No Compression,                                                           | No Compression                    | No Compression     |
| Light Compression                                                         | Light/Medium/Heavy Compression    | Light Compression  |
| No Compression,                                                           | No Compression                    | No Compression     |
| Medium Compression                                                        | Light/Medium/Heavy Compression    | Medium Compression |
| No Compression,                                                           | No Compression                    | No Compression     |
| Heavy Compression                                                         | Light/Medium/Heavy Compression    | Heavy Compression  |
| No Compression,                                                           | No Compression                    | No Compression     |
| Light Compression,                                                        | Light/Medium Compression          | Light Compression  |
| Heavy Compression                                                         | Heavy Compression                 | Heavy Compression  |
| No Compression,                                                           | No Compression                    | No Compression     |
| Light Compression,                                                        | Light Compression                 | Light Compression  |
| Medium Compression                                                        | Medium/Heavy Compression          | Medium Compression |
| No Compression,                                                           | No Compression                    | No Compression     |
| Medium Compression,                                                       | Light/Medium Compression          | Medium Compression |
| Heavy Compression                                                         | Heavy Compression                 | Heavy Compression  |
| No Compression,                                                           | No Compression                    | No Compression     |
| Light Compression,                                                        | Light Compression                 | Light Compression  |
| Medium Compression,                                                       | Medium Compression                | Medium Compression |
| Heavy Compression                                                         | Heavy Compression                 | Heavy Compression  |

For practical purposes, the "light", "medium" and "heavy" modes constitute a set of monotonically increasing DRC effect qualifiers.

### 7.2.3.2 Types & Constants

#### 7.2.3.2.1 Public Types & Constants

##### 7.2.3.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

##### 7.2.3.2.1.2 uhAdrc\_Mode\_t

#### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAdrc_Mode_t {
    uhAdrc_ModeInvalid      = 0x80000000,
    uhAdrc_ModeUnknown      = 0x40000000,
    uhAdrc_ModeNoDrc        = 0x00000001,
    uhAdrc_ModeLightCompr   = 0x00000002,
    uhAdrc_ModeMediumCompr  = 0x00000004,
    uhAdrc_ModeHeavyCompr   = 0x00000008
} uhAdrc_Mode_t, *puhAdrc_Mode_t;
```

#### Qualifiers

— enum-element

#### Description

Values of this type represent the DRC modes settable by the user (see subclause 7.2.3.1.2).

#### Values

Table 354

| Name                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAdrc_ModeInvalid     | The information over the DRC data is temporarily not available.                                                                                                                                  |
| uhAdrc_ModeUnknown     | The information over the DRC data is available, yet the mode could not be determined.                                                                                                            |
| uhAdrc_ModeNoDrc       | DRC is not applied on the input signal. The output stream is identical to the input stream.                                                                                                      |
| uhAdrc_ModeLightCompr  | Generic light dynamic range compression mode, where low-level signals are enhanced, and very loud sounds reduced in volume.                                                                      |
| uhAdrc_ModeMediumCompr | Generic medium dynamic range compression mode, somewhere between "light" and "heavy".                                                                                                            |
| uhAdrc_ModeHeavyCompr  | Generic heavy dynamic range compression mode, suitable for use as the "night mode". The difference between low and high output audio levels reduces further from the "light" and "medium" modes. |

**7.2.3.2.1.3      uhAdrc\_ModeSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32
uhAdrc_ModeSet_t, *p
uhAdrc_ModeSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of ADRC modes.

**Constraints**

None.

**7.2.3.2.1.4      uhAdrc\_Ntf\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAdrc_Ntf_t {
    uhAdrc_SubscriptionChanged    = 0x00000001,
    uhAdrc_ActualModeChanged      = 0x00000002
} uhAdrc_Ntf_t, *puhAdrc_Ntf_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIAdrcNtf`.

**Values****Table 355**

| Name                                    | Description                                     |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhAdrc_SubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> . |
| <code>uhAdrc_ActualModeChanged</code>   | Represents <code>OnActEnabledChanged</code> .   |

**7.2.3.2.1.5      uhAdrc\_NtfSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAdrc_NtfSet_t, *puhAdrc_NtfSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set



**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhAdrc_Ntf_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**Constraints**

None.

**7.2.3.2.1.6      `uhAdrc_AllNtfs`****Signature**

```
const uhAdrc_NtfSet_t uhAdrc_AllNtfs = 0x00000003;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhAdrc_Ntf_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**7.2.3.2.2      Model Types & Constants**

None.

**7.2.3.3      Logical Component****7.2.3.3.1      Interface-Role Model**

Figure 40 depicts the interface-role model of the ADRC logical component. It shows the interfaces and the roles involved with this component.

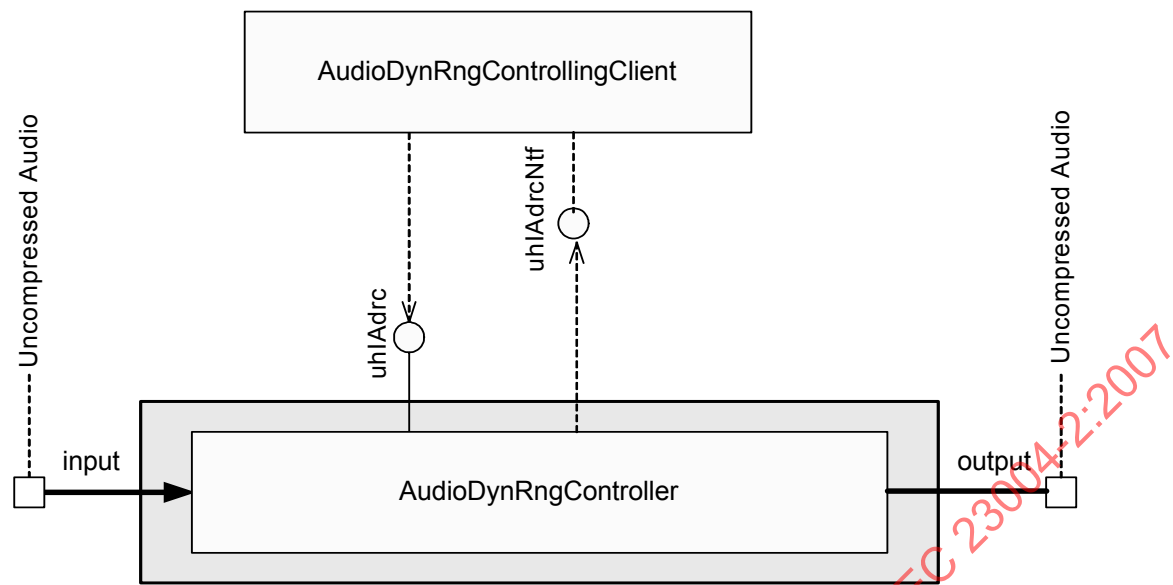


Figure 40 — Interface Role Model

The grey box in Figure 40 denotes an Audio Dynamic Range Control logical component containing a single `AudioDynRngController` role.

This role provides one mandatory (solid line) control interface called `UhIAdrc` to its client, the `AudioDynRngControllingClient`.

This client can optionally provide a call-back interface (`uhIAdrcNtf`) allowing it to receive notifications of changes in the actual DRC mode applied to the audio input stream.

7.2.3.3.2 Diversity

7.2.3.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 356

| Role                                      | Interface               | Presence  |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------|
| <code>AudioDynRngController</code>        | <code>UhIAdrc</code>    | mandatory |
| <code>AudioDynRngControllingClient</code> | <code>uhIAdrcNtf</code> | optional  |

7.2.3.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 357

| Role                               | Attribute              |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <code>AudioDynRngController</code> | <code>suppModes</code> |

7.2.3.3.2.3 Constraints

- `!( suppModes & uhAdrc_ModeInvalid)`
- `!( suppModes & uhAdrc_ModeUnknown)`

— (suppModes & uhAdrc\_ModeNoDrc) == uhAdrc\_ModeNoDrc  
— suppModes != uhAdrc\_ModeNoDrc

7.2.3.3.3 Instantiation

7.2.3.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 358

| Type                  | Object | Multiplicity |
|-----------------------|--------|--------------|
| AudioDynRngController | drc    | 1            |

7.2.3.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

drc.prefMode == uhAdrc\_ModeNoDrc  
drc.actualMode == uhAdrc\_ModeInvalid

7.2.3.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

7.2.3.4 Roles

7.2.3.4.1 AudioDynRngController

Signature

```
role AudioDynRngController {  
    const  
    uhAdrc_ModeSet_t suppModes;  
    uhAdrc_Mode_t prefMode;  
    uhAdrc_Mode_t actualMode;  
}
```

Qualifiers

— root

Description

The `AudioDynRngController` role performs the function of accepting DRC settings from the user, and executing DRC operation on the input stream in a way as to fit user preferences.

**Independent Attributes****Table 359**

| Name                    | Description                                                                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>suppModes</code>  | The set of supported DRC modes.                                                        |
| <code>prefMode</code>   | The user preference for the DRC mode that should be applied to the audio input stream. |
| <code>actualMode</code> | The actual DRC mode applied to the audio input stream.                                 |

**Dependent Attributes**

None.

**Invariants**

```

— (suppModes & prefMode) == prefMode
— if ( (actualMode != uhAdrc_ModeInvalid) || (actualMode !=
  uhAdrc_ModeUnknown) )
  — (suppModes & actualMode) == actualMode

```

**Instantiation**

An `AudioDynRngController` is always instantiated as part of an Audio Dynamic Range Control LC; see subclause 7.2.3.3.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

The `AudioDynRngController` has an uncompressed audio stream as input. It processes the audio signal according to the DRC mode in `actualMode`. This processed audio signal is passed to the output.

When the actual DRC mode is `uhAdrc_NoDrcMode`, the stream at the input is passed to the output without any processing.

**Active Behavior**

The main events associated with the `AudioDynRngController` role are as follows:

**Table 360**

| Event                                                                                                                               | Action                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| A modification in the DRC mode that is applied to the audio input stream occurs related to:                                         | <code>OnActualModeChanged</code> |
| — Either a modification in terms of availability of the DRC modes due to a change in the stream format or in the stream's metadata; |                                  |
| — Either a modification of the user preference for the DRC mode that should preferably be applied.                                  |                                  |

**Execution Constraints**

None.

#### 7.2.3.4.2 AudioDynRngControllingClient

##### Signature

```
role AudioDynRngControllingClient {}
```

##### Qualifiers

— actor

##### Description

An `AudioDynRngControllingClient` represents a user of the `UhIAdrc` interface.

##### Execution Constraints

None.

#### 7.2.3.5 Interfaces

##### 7.2.3.5.1 uhIAdrc

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This interface of an ADRC provides functions to set and retrieve DRC preferences.

##### Interface ID

```
uuid( C4E4ABE5-7281-4D18-A82E-DD6CCE1FEA7B )
```

##### 7.2.3.5.1.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhIAdrcNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAdrc_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

##### 7.2.3.5.1.2 Unsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhIAdrcNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAdrc_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

7.2.3.5.1.3      **GetSuppModes**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppModes ( [out] p
uhAdrc_ModeSet_t pSuppModes );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the set of DRC modes supported by the ADRC.

**Parameters**

Table 361

| Name       | Description                                                             |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSuppModes | Output parameter returning the set of DRC modes that the ADRC supports. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pSuppModes == drc.suppModes`

7.2.3.5.1.4      **SetMode**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetMode ( [in] uhAdrc_Mode_t mode );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the DRC mode that should preferably be applied to the audio input stream.

Parameters

Table 362

| Name | Description                                                                            |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| mode | The user preference for the DRC mode that should be applied to the audio input stream. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
(mode & drc.suppModes) != 0

**Action**  
— Modify drc.prefMode

**Postcondition**  
drc.prefMode == mode

7.2.3.5.1.5      **GetMode**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetMode ( [out] puhAdrc\_Mode\_t pMode );

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns the DRC mode that should preferably be applied to the audio input stream.

Parameters

Table 363

| Name  | Description                                                                                                       |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMode | Output parameter returning the user preference for the DRC mode that should be applied to the audio input stream. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

#### Postcondition

\*pMode == drc.prefMode

#### 7.2.3.5.1.6 GetActualMode

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualMode ( [out] puhAdrc_Mode_t pActualMode );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

#### Description

Returns the actual DRC mode applied to the audio input stream.

#### Parameters

Table 364

| Name        | Description                                                                       |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pActualMode | Output parameter returning the actual DRC mode applied to the audio input stream. |

#### Return Values

Standard.

#### Precondition

True

#### Action

None.

#### Postcondition

\*pActualMode == drc.actualMode

#### 7.2.3.5.2 uhAdrcNtf

#### Qualifiers

- callback

#### Description

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of changes in the actual DRC mode applied to the input audio stream. The `Subscribe` function of the `UhIAdrc` interface can be used to subscribe to these events.

#### Interface ID

uuid( 0BAC03CE-BFB7-412b-946B-E332BED95F3B )



7.2.3.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAdrc\_NtfSet\_t notifs );

**Qualifiers**  
— onsubscriptionchanged-function

7.2.3.5.2.2 OnActualModeChanged

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnActualModeChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAdrc\_Mode\_t actualMode );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is called by the AudioDynRngController whenever the actual DRC mode applied to the audio input stream has changed.

**Parameters**

Table 365

| Name       | Description                                                    |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie     | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.  |
| actualMode | The actual DRC mode that is applied to the audio input stream. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action

**Postcondition**  
True

## 7.2.4 UhlAmix

### 7.2.4.1 Concepts

#### 7.2.4.1.1 Introduction

An Audio Mixer is able to sum uncompressed baseband audio input streams into a single baseband audio output stream.

Figure 41 — General structure of an Audio Mixer shows the general structure of an Audio Mixer.

An Audio Mixer has two or more uncompressed baseband audio input signals (three in the case of Figure 41 — General structure of an Audio Mixer). Each input signal has its own Gain and Mute Control. The adder sums the inputs together and the result of the mixing is a single baseband audio signal.

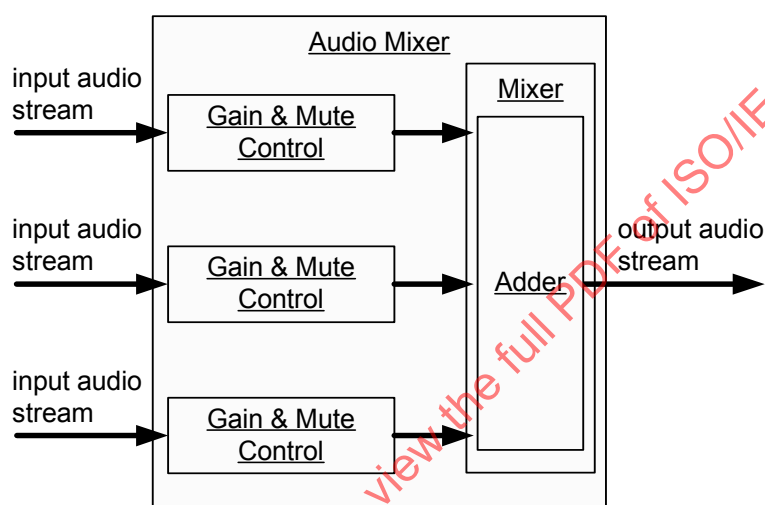


Figure 41 — General structure of an Audio Mixer

If the same input signals must be mixed to different output signals, e.g. a complete karaoke mix with vocals and a karaoke mix without vocals, then two different Audio Mixers must be used.

The Audio Mixer should not be confused with a downmixer. The Audio Mixer mixes together two or more audio signals (each containing one or more audio channels), while a downmixer has as input a single audio signal with multiple audio channels, which it downmixes to an audio signal with less audio channels than its input.

#### 7.2.4.1.2 Gain & Mute Control

A Gain & Mute Control provides to its client(s) functionality to explicitly mute or un-mute its input signal.

Mute control is effective at the audio signal level, i.e. all the audio channels of the input signal are either muted, either un-muted.

Muting and gain operate independently; setting a gain level doesn't unmute the audio (if muted). During muting the gain setting maintains its value. When the audio is unmuted this value is then applied.

Gain control is also effective at the audio signal level, i.e. the gain value is applied to all the audio channels of the input signal.

### 7.2.4.1.3 Mixing of the input streams

The Mixers function is to add the audio input signals together.

The Mixer adds matching audio channels together, i.e. left channels are added to left channels, right channels are added to right channels, etc. The output signal will have the superset of the audio channels of the inputs; see Figure 42 — Mixing input signals with different channel configurations.

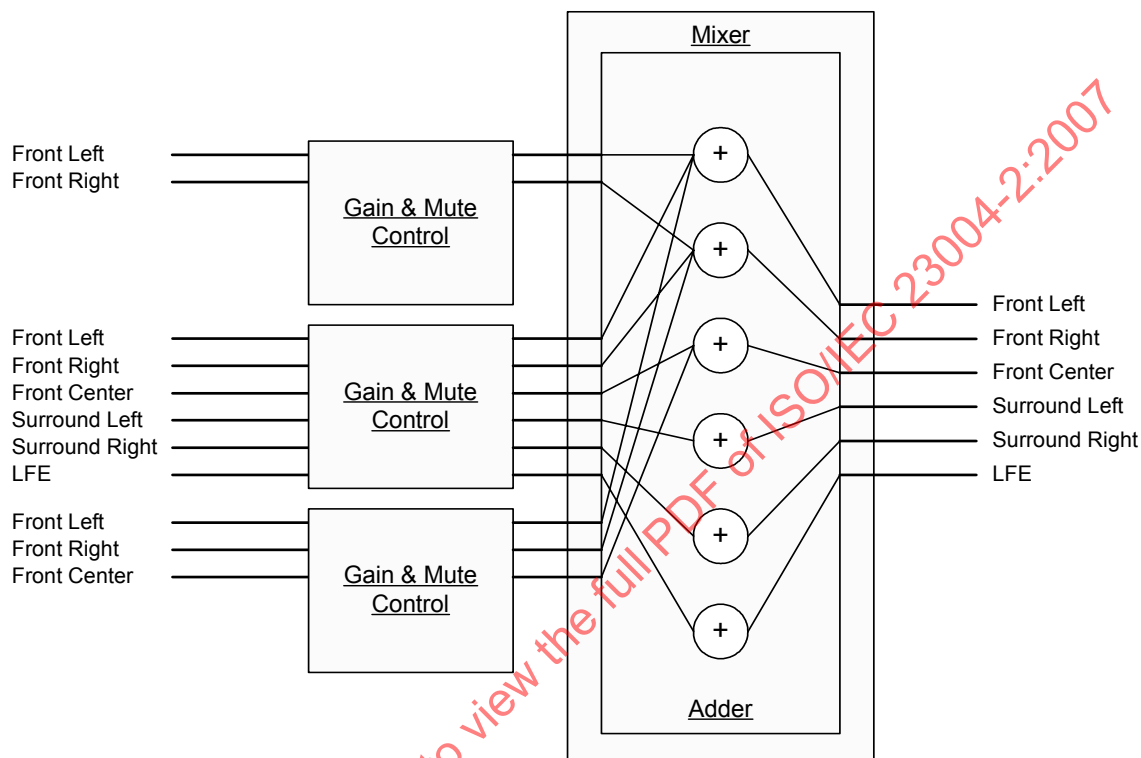


**Figure 42 — Mixing input signals with different channel configurations**

When one of the audio input streams of the Audio Mixer contains a mono signal (i.e. only a single front channel) then three cases can be identified:

- At least one of the other audio input streams of the Audio Mixer contains a front center channel, then the mono signal will be added to the front center channel of the other (relevant) audio input stream(s); see Figure 43;
- None of the audio input streams of the Audio Mixer contains a front center channel, but at least one stream contains a front right and a front left channel, then the mono signal will be added after proper scaling (for total energy preservation) to the front left and to the front right channels of the other (relevant) audio input stream(s); see Figure 44;
- All the audio input streams of the Audio Mixer only contain a single front channel then all the (mono) signals are added together; see Figure 45.

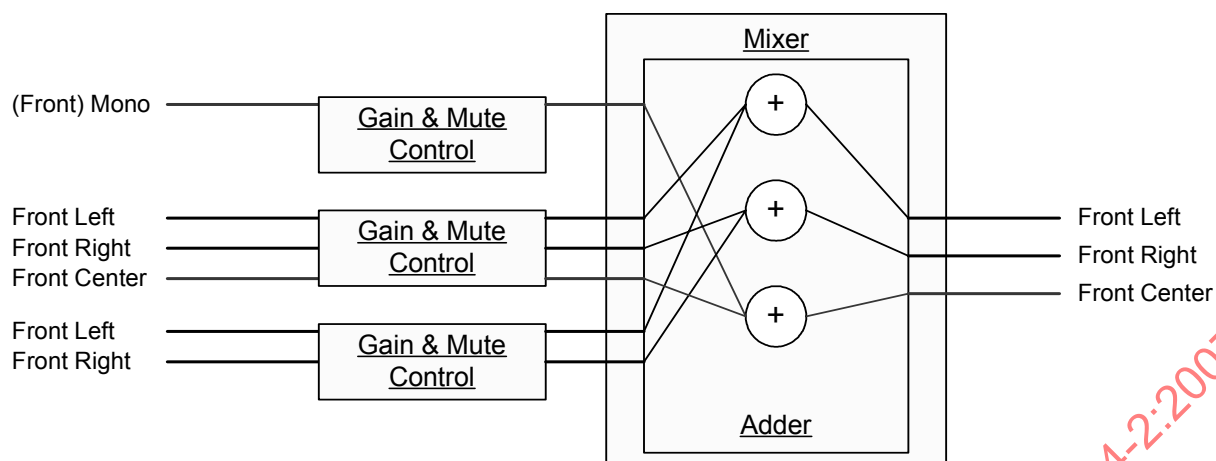


**Figure 43 — Mixing input signals when (at least) one of the input streams contains a (front) mono signal and (at least) one of the input streams contains a front center signal.**

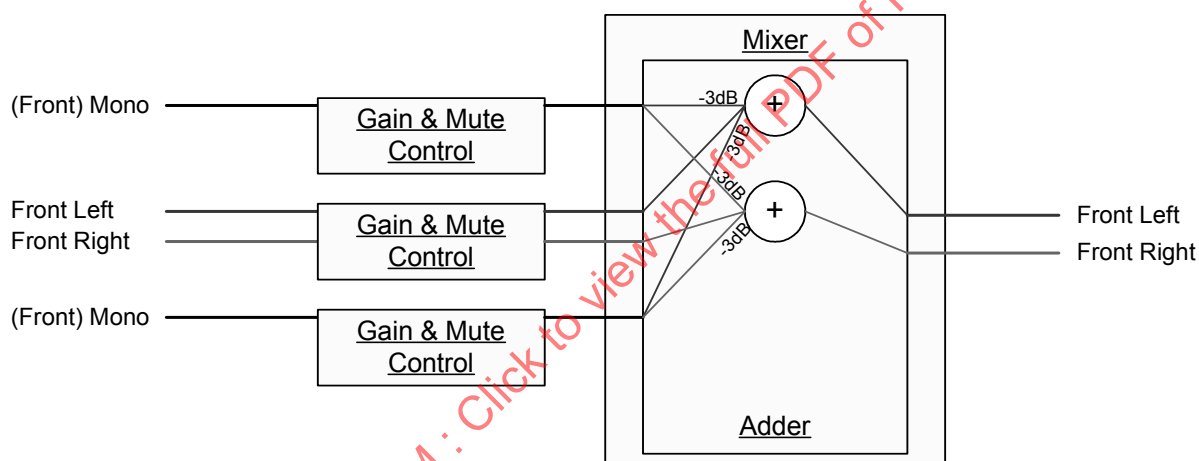


**Figure 44 — Mixing input signals when (at least) one of the input streams contains a (front) mono signal, (at least) one of the input streams contains stereo front signals but none of the input streams contains a front center signal.**

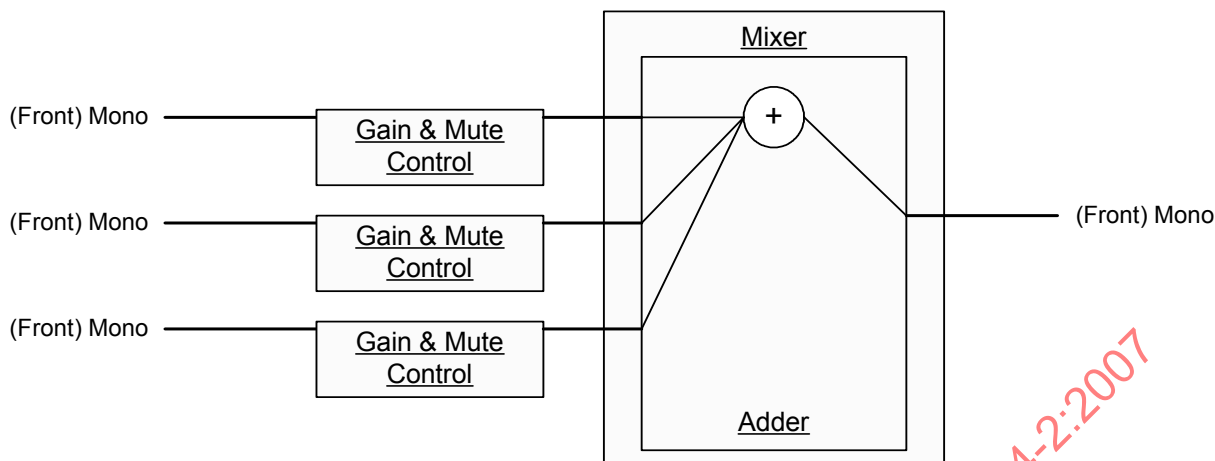


**Figure 45 — Mixing input signals when all the input streams contain a (front) mono signal.**

In the same way, when one of the audio input stream of the Audio Mixer contains a single surround (i.e. rear) channel then three cases can be identified:

- At least one of the other audio input streams of the Audio Mixer contains a surround center channel, then the surround mono signal will be added to the surround center channel of the other (relevant) audio input stream(s); see Figure 46;
- None of the audio input streams of the Audio Mixer contains a surround center channel, but at least one stream contains a surround right and a surround left channel, then the surround mono signal will be added after proper scaling (for total energy preservation) to the surround left and to the surround right channels of the other (relevant) audio input stream(s); see Figure 47;
- None of the audio input streams of the Audio Mixer contains either a surround center channel nor a surround right and a surround left channel, then all the (mono) surround signals are added together; see Figure 48.

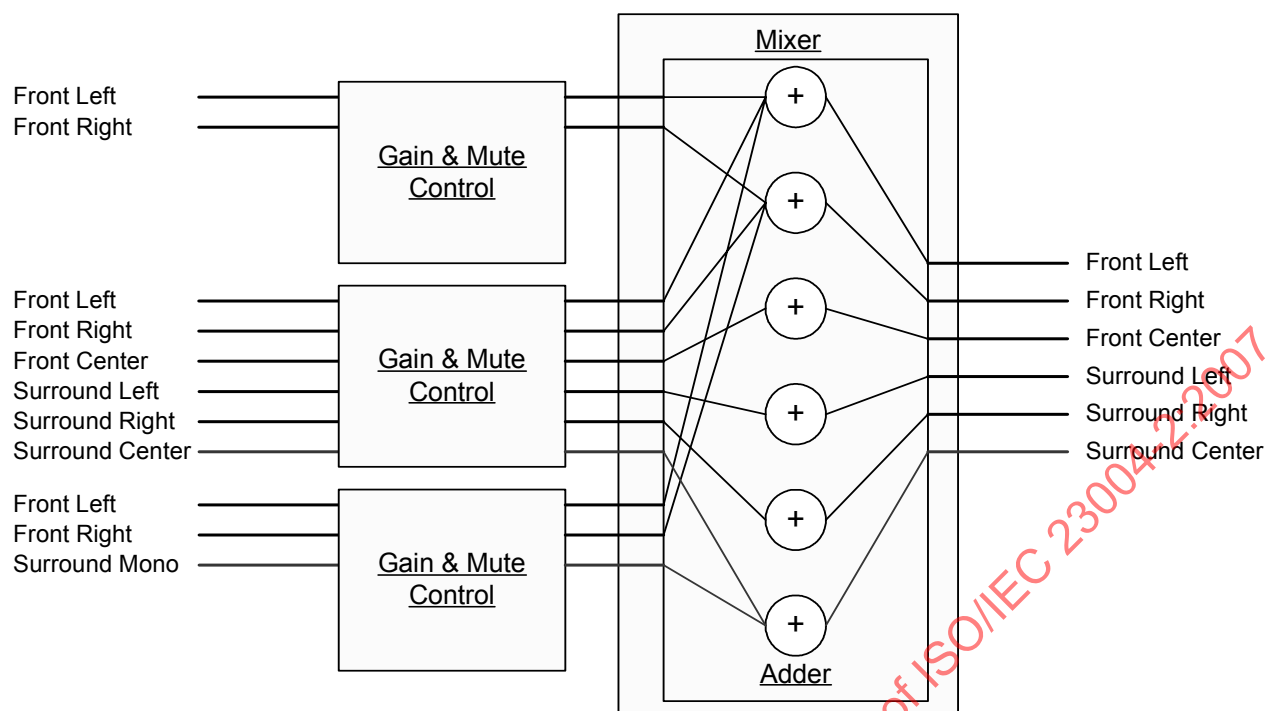


**Figure 46 — Mixing input signals when (at least) one of the input streams contains a surround mono signal and (at least) one of the input streams contains a surround center signal.**

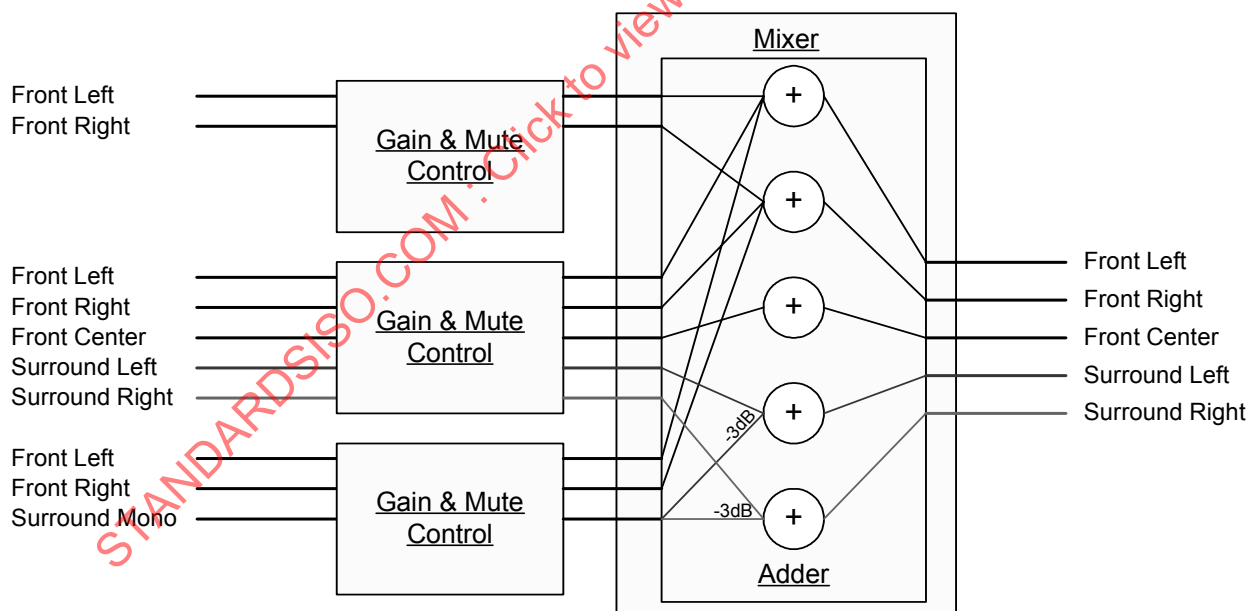


**Figure 47 — Mixing input signals when (at least) one of the input streams contains a surround mono signal, (at least) one of the input streams contains stereo surround signals but none of the input streams contains a surround center signal.**

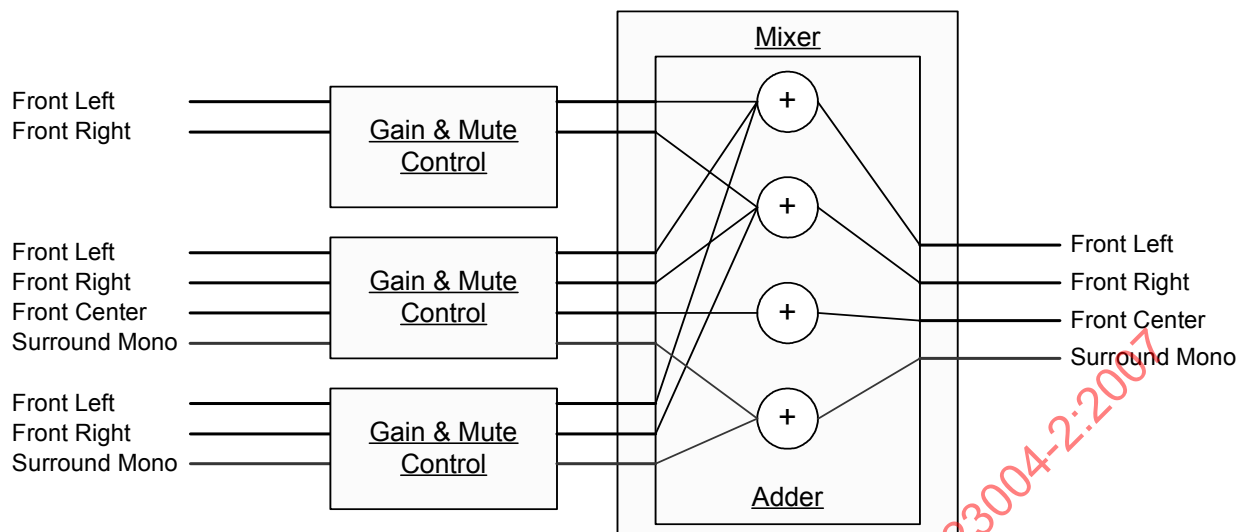


Figure 48 — Mixing input signals when the input streams contain at most a surround mono signal.

#### 7.2.4.2 Types & Constants

##### 7.2.4.2.1 Public Types & Constants

###### 7.2.4.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

###### 7.2.4.2.1.2 `uhAmix_InBase`

###### Signature

```
const UInt32 uhAmix_InBase = 0;
```

###### Qualifiers

None.

###### Description

Defines the constant that identifies the first input pin of an Audio Mixer.

##### 7.2.4.2.2 Model Types & Constants

None.

7.2.4.3 Logical Component

7.2.4.3.1 Interface-Role Model

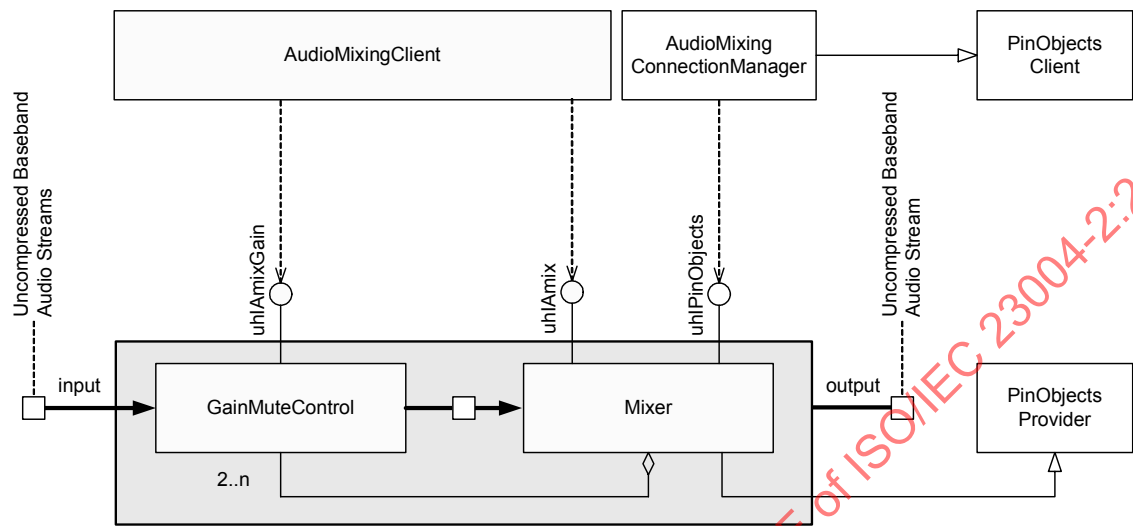


Figure 49 — Interface Role Model

An Audio Mixing Logical Component (the grey box in the Interface Role diagram) contains a Mixer (represented by the Mixer role) and two or more GainMuteControls (represented by the GainMuteControl role).

The GainMuteControls are part of the Mixer.

Each GainMuteControl has its own control interface (uhIAmix). This control interface is meant for use by the regular client (represented by the AudioMixingClient role).

Each Mixer has an interface (uhIPinObjects) that maps the pin ID of an audio input stream to the GainMuteControl processing this input stream. This interface is meant for exclusive use by the connection manager (represented by the AudioMixingConnectionManager role). The uhIAmixGain interface of a GainMuteControl can be obtained via the GetPinRelatedObject function of the uhIPinObjects interface; see 6.1.5.

The "base roles" PinObjectsClient and PinObjectsProvider are defined in 6.1.5.

7.2.4.3.2 Diversity

7.2.4.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 366

| Role            | Interface     | Presence  |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------|
| Mixer           | uhIAmix       | mandatory |
|                 | uhIPinObjects | mandatory |
| GainMuteControl | uhIAmixGain   | mandatory |



### 7.2.4.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 367

| Role            | Attribute     |
|-----------------|---------------|
| Mixer           | nrGmControls  |
| GainMuteControl | minGain       |
|                 | maxGain       |
|                 | unityGain     |
|                 | muteSupported |

### 7.2.4.3.2.3 Constraints

```

— nrGmControls ≥ 2
— For each i in {0 .. mix.nrGmControls-1}
  — mix.gmc[i].minGain ≤ mix.gmc[i].unityGain ≤ mix.gmc[i].maxGain
— For i & j in {0 .. mix.nrGmControls-1}
  — mix.gmc[i].minGain == mix.gmc[j].minGain
  — mix.gmc[i].maxGain == mix.gmc[j].maxGain
  — mix.gmc[i].unityGain == mix.gmc[j].unityGain

```

### 7.2.4.3.3 Instantiation

#### 7.2.4.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 368

| Type            | Object | Multiplicity     |
|-----------------|--------|------------------|
| Mixer           | mix    | 1                |
| GainMuteControl | gmc[]  | mix.nrGmControls |

#### 7.2.4.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

```

— mix.pinIds == mix.inputPinIds
— For each i in {0 .. mix.nrGmControls-1}
  — mix.pinObject[uhAmix_InBase+i] == gmc[i]
  — mix.gmControls == {gmc[0] .. gmc[mix.nrGmControls-1]}
— For each i in {0 .. mix.nrGmControls-1}
  — gmc[i].mixer == mix
  — gmc[i].gain == gmc[i].unityGain
— If (gmc[i].muteSupported)
  — gmc[i].mute == True
  else
  — gmc[i].mute == False

```

7.2.4.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

7.2.4.4 Roles

7.2.4.4.1 Mixer

Signature

```
role Mixer specializes PinObjectsProvider {
    const UInt32          nrGmControls;
    const setof{GainMuteControl} gmControls;
    const setof{PinId}      inputPinIds;
}
```

Qualifiers

— root

Description

A Mixer role adds its multiple audio input signals into a single audio signal, matching the audio channels together.

For connection management purposes, the Mixer maintains the relation between the input ids of the Audio Mixer and the GainMuteControls associated with them.

Independent Attributes

Table 369

| Name         | Description                                               |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| nrGmControls | The number of GainMuteControls associated with the Mixer. |
| gmControls   | The set of GainMuteControls associated with the Mixer.    |

Dependent Attributes

Table 370

| Name        | Description                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| inputPinIds | The set of pin ids of the GainMuteControls associated with the Mixer, which is equal to {uhAmix_InBase + i for which 0 ≤ i < nrGmControls}. |

Invariants

None.

Instantiation

A Mixer is always instantiated as part of an Audio Mixer; see subclause 7.2.4.3.3.

Streaming Behavior

The Mixer has nrGmControls audio input streams. It adds these multiple audio signals into a single audio signal, matching the channels together and outputs a single audio stream. See subclause 7.2.4.1.3 for details about the specifics of mixing when at least one input stream contains a single front or a single surround (i.e. rear) audio channel.

**Active Behavior**

None.

**Execution Constraints**

None.

**Remarks**

- The constant attributes `pinIds` and `pinObject` are inherited from the `PinObjectProvider` role defined in 6.1.5 which specifies no values for these attributes; see subclause 7.2.4.3.3.2 for the initial value of `pinIds` and `pinObject`.

**7.2.4.4.2 GainMuteControl****Signature**

```

role GainMuteControl {
    const Mixer          mixer;
    const Int32           minGain;
    const Int32           maxGain;
    const Int32           unityGain;
    Int32                 gain;
    const Bool            muteSupported;
    Bool                  mute;
}

```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

A `GainMuteControl` provides the following functionality:

- Muting and unmuting its audio input stream, if supported;
- Applying a gain to its audio input stream.

**Independent Attributes****Table 371**

| Name                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>mixer</code>         | The Mixer with which this <code>GainMuteControl</code> is associated.                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>minGain</code>       | The minimum gain that can be applied to the audio input stream of the <code>GainMuteControl</code> . Minimum gain is not necessarily equivalent to mute activated, at minimum gain an audio signal can still be audible. |
| <code>maxGain</code>       | The maximum gain that can be applied to the audio input stream of the <code>GainMuteControl</code> .                                                                                                                     |
| <code>unityGain</code>     | The unity gain of the <code>GainMuteControl</code> , for which the audio input stream is passed on unchanged, i.e. neither amplified, nor attenuated.                                                                    |
| <code>gain</code>          | The gain applied to the audio input stream of the <code>GainMuteControl</code> , when the audio input stream of the <code>GainMuteControl</code> is not muted.                                                           |
| <code>muteSupported</code> | Describes whether mute control is supported by the <code>GainMuteControl</code> .                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>mute</code>          | Describes whether the input stream of the <code>GainMuteControl</code> is muted or not.                                                                                                                                  |

### Dependent Attributes

None.

### Invariants

- $\text{minGain} \leq \text{gain} \leq \text{maxGain}$
- If  $(\text{!muteSupported})$ 
  - $\text{mute} == \text{False}$

### Instantiation

A GainMuteControl is always instantiated as part of an Audio Mixer; see subclause 7.2.4.3.3.

### Streaming Behavior

A GainMuteControl has an audio signal as input stream. When its gain (*gain*) is different from the unity gain (*unityGain*), the GainMuteControl attenuates the audio signal if  $\text{gain} < \text{unityGain}$  or amplifies the audio signal if  $\text{gain} > \text{unityGain}$ .

No output data is produced when the GainMuteControl is muted.

The GainMuteControl takes care of a "smooth" transition while muting or un-muting, meaning that audible artefacts like "clicks" do not occur.

### Active Behavior

None.

### Execution Constraints

None.

#### 7.2.4.4.3 AudioMixingClient

### Signature

**role** AudioMixingClient {}

### Qualifiers

- actor

### Description

An Audio Mixing Client represents a user of the *uhIAmix* and *uhIAmixGain* interfaces.

### Execution Constraints

None.

#### 7.2.4.4.4 AudioMixingConnectionManager

### Signature

**role** AudioMixingConnectionManager **specializes** PinObjectsClient {}

### Qualifiers

- actor

**Description**

An Audio Mixing Connection Manager represents an user of the `uhIPinObjects` interface, which will normally be the connection manager responsible for establishing signal paths between logical components.

**Execution Constraints**

None.

**7.2.4.5 Interfaces****7.2.4.5.1 Mixer::uhIPinObjects****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of a Mixer is a specialization of the `uhIPinObjects` interface as defined in 6.1.5. The specialization is defined by the specific values of the `pinIds` and `pinObject` attributes of the Mixer. These attributes are inherited from `PinObjectsProvider` and their values are set at instantiation time of a Mixer; see subclause 7.2.4.3.3.2.

**Interface ID**

See 6.1.5.

**7.2.4.5.2 uhIAmix****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of a Mixer provides functionality to query the number of GainMuteControls it supports.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( 454B03DE-A493-4573-86C2-8B21D1070CDB )`

**7.2.4.5.2.1 GetSuppNrControls****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppNrControls ( [out] pUInt32 pNrControls );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the number of GainMuteControls supported by the Audio Mixer.

Parameters

Table 372

| Name        | Description                                                                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pNrControls | Output parameter returning the number of GainMuteControls supported by the Audio Mixer. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pNrControls == mix.nrGmControls`

**Remarks**  
— The number of GainMuteControls will be at least 2.

7.2.4.5.3 uhlAmixGain

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This interface of a GainMuteControl provides functionality to control the gain applied to the audio input stream. It also provides functionality to mute the audio input stream.

**Interface ID**  
`uuid( D209FD3D-8D0C-481D-AA8A-EA401E8259F6 )`

7.2.4.5.3.1 GetGainRange

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t GetGainRange (`  
    `[out] pInt32 pMinGain,`  
    `[out] pInt32 pMaxGain );`

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the minimum and the maximum gain that can be applied to the audio input stream of the GainMuteControl.

**Parameters****Table 373**

| Name     | Description                                                                                                       |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMinGain | Output parameter returning the minimum gain that can be applied to the audio input stream of the GainMuteControl. |
| pMaxGain | Output parameter returning the maximum gain that can be applied to the audio input stream of the GainMuteControl. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- Let gmc be the GainMuteControl object on which this interface operates
- \*pMinGain == gmc.minGain
- \*pMaxGain == gmc.maxGain

**7.2.4.5.3.2 GetUnityGain****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetUnityGain ( [out] pInt32 pUnityGain );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the unity gain.

**Parameters****Table 374**

| Name       | Description                                                       |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pUnityGain | Output parameter returning the unity gain of the GainMuteControl. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

### Precondition

True

### Action

None.

### Postcondition

- Let `gmc` be the `GainMuteControl` object on which this interface operates
- `*pUnityGain == gmc.unityGain`

### Remarks

- At unity gain the audio signal is passed on unchanged: the audio signal is neither amplified, nor attenuated.

## 7.2.4.5.3.3 SetGain

### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t SetGain ( [in] Int32 gain );
```

### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

### Description

Sets the gain that should be applied to the audio input stream of the `GainMuteControl` when the audio input stream of the `GainMuteControl` is not muted.

### Parameters

Table 375

#### Name

`gain`

#### Description

Indicates the gain that should be applied to the audio input stream of the `GainMuteControl` when the audio input stream of the `GainMuteControl` is not muted.

### Return Values

Standard.

### Precondition

- Let `gmc` be the `GainMuteControl` object on which this interface operates
- `gmc.minGain ≤ gain ≤ gmc.maxGain`

### Action

- Modify `gmc.gain`

### Postcondition

`gmc.gain == gain`



7.2.4.5.3.4      **GetGain**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetGain ( [out] pInt32 pGain );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the gain that should be applied to the audio input stream of the GainMuteControl when the audio input stream of the GainMuteControl is not muted.

**Parameters**

**Table 376**

| Name  | Description                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pGain | Output parameter returning the gain that should be applied to the audio input stream of the GainMuteControl when the audio input stream of the GainMuteControl is not muted. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- Let gmc be the GainMuteControl object on which this interface operates
- \*pGain == gmc.gain

7.2.4.5.3.5      **GetMuteSupported**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMuteSupported ( [out] pBool pMuteSupported );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns whether mute control is supported by the GainMuteControl.

**Parameters****Table 377**

| Name                        | Description                                                                          |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pMuteSupported</code> | Output parameter returning whether mute control is supported by the GainMuteControl. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
`True`

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**

- Let `gmc` be the GainMuteControl object on which this interface operates
- `*pMuteSupported == gmc.muteSupported`

**7.2.4.5.3.6 SetMute****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetMute ( [in] Bool mute );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets whether the audio input stream of the GainMuteControl should be muted or not.

If the GainMuteControl is muted, no output data is produced.

The GainMuteControl takes care of a "smooth" transition while muting or un-muting, meaning that audible artefacts like "clicks" do not occur.

**Parameters****Table 378**

| Name              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>mute</code> | Defines whether the audio input stream of the GainMuteControl should be muted or not. It is <code>True</code> when the audio input stream should be muted. It is <code>False</code> when the audio input stream should not be muted. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**

- Let `gmc` be the `GainMuteControl` object on which this interface operates
- `gmc.supportedMute == True`

**Action**

- Modify `gmc.mute`

**Postcondition**

`gmc.mute == mute`

**7.2.4.5.3.7      GetMuted**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t GetMuted ( [out] pBool pMuted );`

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns whether the audio input stream of the `GainMuteControl` is currently muted or not.

**Parameters**

**Table 379**

| Name                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pMuted</code> | Output parameter that indicates whether the audio input stream of the <code>GainMuteControl</code> is currently muted or not. It is <code>True</code> when the audio input stream is muted. It is <code>False</code> when the audio input stream is not muted. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

`True`

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- Let `gmc` be the `GainMuteControl` object on which this interface operates
- `*pMuted == gmc.mute`

## 7.2.5 UhlAnoiseGen

### 7.2.5.1 Concepts

#### 7.2.5.1.1 Introduction

Noise generation (NG) is used for setting speaker trim levels at the time of installation<sup>9</sup> to position the speaker in the audio sweet spot (region of best surround effects). The logical model for an ANG comprises a filter, which switches between the input audio data and a noise source depending on whether the generation functionality is activated. In the latter case, the noise signal is generated on one output channel at a time, while the others are muted. When the noise generator is switched off, the LC functions as a “through” component, meaning that the audio stream at the input is replicated at the output. The behaviour is illustrated in the following figure.

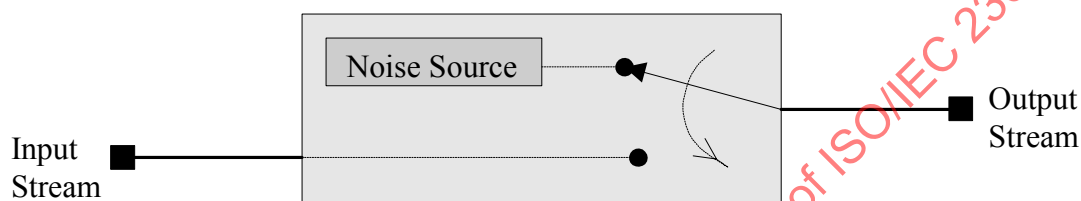


Figure 50 — Conceptual block diagram for the noise generator.

#### 7.2.5.1.2 Operation Mode for ANG

The ANG can function in the “manual” mode only, meaning that the user has to specify the channel on which noise is generated on being switched on. Timing management for the duration of noise generation has to be performed by the user. The channel for noise generation can be selected by the user before activating noise generation, or during operation in the active mode.

#### 7.2.5.1.3 Noise Characteristics

The noise generated by the ANG usually is centered around a given frequency, which is selectable by the user. The slope and bandwidth of the spectral wave-shape of the “noise” signal is usually platform dependent, and the specifics will not be programmable by the user.

<sup>9</sup> More details about the use of noise generators can be found in reference [6].

## 7.2.5.2 Types & Constants

### 7.2.5.2.1 Public Types & Constants

#### 7.2.5.2.1.1 uhAnoiseGen\_NoiseType\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAnoiseGen_NoiseType_t {
    uhAnoiseGen_Woofers = 0x00000001,
    uhAnoiseGen_Normal = 0x00000002,
    uhAnoiseGen_Tweeter = 0x00000004
} uhAnoiseGen_NoiseType_t, *puhAnoiseGen_NoiseType_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

##### Description

Values of this type represent the different kinds of noise signals based on their center frequency characterization.

##### Values

**Table 380**

##### Name

uhAnoiseGen\_Woofers

uhAnoiseGen\_Normal

uhAnoiseGen\_Tweeter

##### Description

Corresponds to noise generator center frequency of about 70 Hz. This is mainly used to calibrate subwoofers.

Corresponds to noise generator center frequency of about 700 Hz. This is the most commonly used noise signal used for calibrating speakers. This is the noise type to which the noise generator is initialized; hence, it is mandatory for the platform instance to supply this noise type.

Corresponds to noise generator center frequency of about 10000 Hz. This can be used to calibrate high-frequency speakers (tweeters).

#### 7.2.5.2.1.2 uhAnoiseGen\_NoiseTypeSet\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef UInt32 uhAnoiseGen_NoiseTypeSet_t, *puhAnoiseGen_NoiseTypeSet_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of noise types that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type uhAnoiseGen\_NoiseType\_t.

## 7.2.5.2.1.3 uhAnoiseGen\_ChanIndex\_t

## Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAnoiseGen_ChanIndex_t {
    uhAnoiseGen_None          = 0,
    uhAnoiseGen_Left          = 1,
    uhAnoiseGen_Right         = 2,
    uhAnoiseGen_Center        = 3,
    uhAnoiseGen_Surround      = 4,
    uhAnoiseGen_LeftSurround  = 5,
    uhAnoiseGen_RightSurround = 6,
    uhAnoiseGen_CenterSurround = 7,
    uhAnoiseGen_LeftCenter    = 8,
    uhAnoiseGen_RightCenter   = 9,
    uhAnoiseGen_Lfe           = 10
} uhAnoiseGen_ChanIndex_t, *puhAnoiseGen_ChanIndex_t;
```

## Qualifiers

None.

## Description

This type is used to denote the input/output (stream) audio channels. The audio channels form a superset of different prevalent channel configurations. E.g. a Dolby prologic decoded output would use the Left, Right, Center and Surround channels, a typical Dolby AC3 5.1 decoded output would use the Left, Right, Center, LeftSurround, RightSurround and LFE channels, and a typical 7.1 output would use Left, Right, Center, LeftSurround, RightSurround, LeftCenter, RightCenter and LFE channels.

## Values

Table 381

| Name                       | Description                                            |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAnoiseGen_None           | Value used corresponding to no channel being selected. |
| uhAnoiseGen_Left           | Left channel.                                          |
| uhAnoiseGen_Right          | Right channel.                                         |
| uhAnoiseGen_Center         | Center channel.                                        |
| uhAnoiseGen_Surround       | Surround channel.                                      |
| uhAnoiseGen_LeftSurround   | Left surround channel.                                 |
| uhAnoiseGen_RightSurround  | Right surround channel.                                |
| uhAnoiseGen_CenterSurround | Center surround channel.                               |
| uhAnoiseGen_LeftCenter     | Left center channel.                                   |
| uhAnoiseGen_RightCenter    | Right center channel.                                  |
| uhAnoiseGen_Lfe            | Low frequency effects channel.                         |

## 7.2.5.2.2 Model Types &amp; Constants

None.

7.2.5.3 Logical Component

7.2.5.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 51 depicts the interface-role model of the ANG logical component. It shows the interfaces and the roles involved with this component.

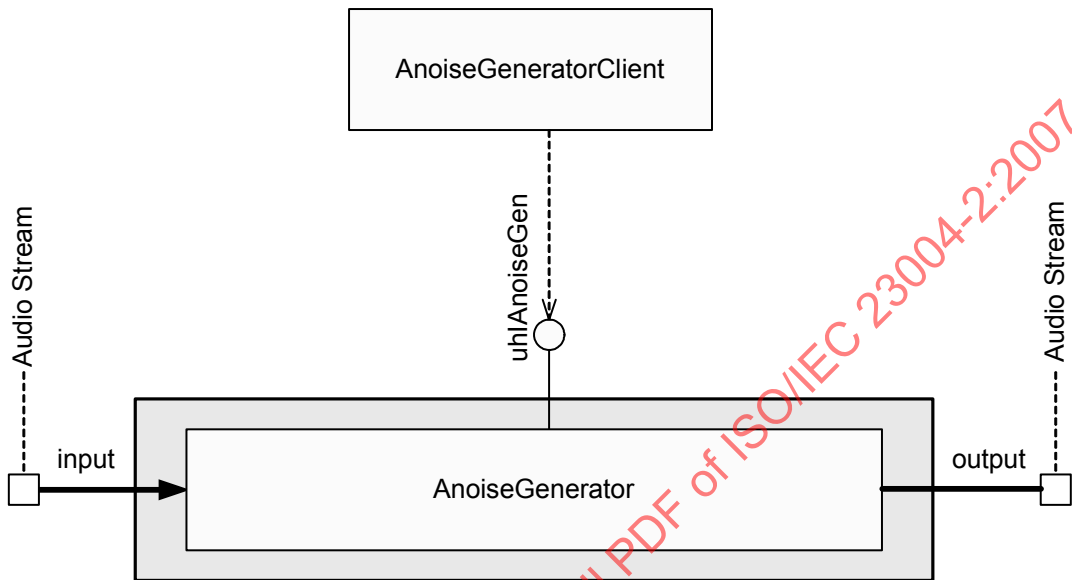


Figure 51 — Interface Role Model

The grey box in Figure 51 denotes an **Audio Noise Generator** logical component containing a single `AnoiseGenerator` role. This role provides one mandatory (solid line) control interface called `UhIAnoiseGen` to its client, the `AnoiseGeneratorClient`. There are no notification interfaces since the control is an open-loop one.

7.2.5.3.2 Diversity

7.2.5.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 382

| Role            | Interface    | Presence  |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------|
| AnoiseGenerator | UhIAnoiseGen | mandatory |

7.2.5.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 383

| Role            | Attribute      |
|-----------------|----------------|
| AnoiseGenerator | suppNoiseTypes |

7.2.5.3.2.3 Constraints

`suppNoiseTypes & uhAnoiseGen_Normal != 0x00000000`

7.2.5.3.3 Instantiation

7.2.5.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 384

| Type            | Object | Multiplicity |
|-----------------|--------|--------------|
| AnoiseGenerator | ang    | 1            |

7.2.5.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- ang.currentNoiseType = uhAnoiseGen\_Normal
- ang.currentNoiseGenChan = uhAnoiseGen\_None
- ang.generatorState = False

7.2.5.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier “thread-safe”.

7.2.5.4 Roles

7.2.5.4.1 AnoiseGenerator

Signature

```
role AnoiseGenerator {
    const uhAnoiseGen_NoiseTypeSet_t suppNoiseTypes;
    uhAnoiseGen_NoiseType_t currentNoiseType;
    uhAnoiseGen_ChanIndex_t currentNoiseGenChan;
    Bool generatorState;
}
```

Qualifiers

- root

Description

The AnoiseGenerator role performs the function of accepting NG settings from the user, and executing noise generation function in the specified output audio channel.

Independent Attributes

Table 385

| Name             | Description                                          |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| suppNoiseTypes   | The set of supported noise types for the ANG.        |
| currentNoiseType | The user setting for the noise type used by the ANG. |



| Name                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>currentNoiseGenChan</code> | The current channel into which noise is injected in the active (ON) state.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>generatorState</code>      | Indicates whether the noise generator is activated (TRUE) or deactivated (FALSE). When the noise generator is switched on, it outputs noise signal on the channel specified in <code>currentNoiseGenChan</code> . A channel may be selected during the ON state. When the noise generator is switched off, the audio data presented at the input is provided at the output without modification. |

**Invariants**

— `currentNoiseType` in `suppNoiseTypes`

**Instantiation**

An `AnoiseGenerator` is always instantiated as part of an Audio Noise Generator; see subclause 7.2.5.3.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

The speaker role assumes a single input stream to the LC as well as a single output stream. The consumption by the LC on the input side is discontinued when the NG functionality is activated. The noise generator does not need to be deactivated for the noise output to switch to a different channel.

**Active Behavior**

None.

**Execution Constraints**

None.

**7.2.5.4.2 AnoiseGeneratorClient****Signature**

```
role AnoiseGeneratorClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

— actor

**Description**

A Noise-Generator Client represents a user of the `UhlAnoiseGen` interface.

**Execution Constraints**

None.

**7.2.5.5 Interfaces****7.2.5.5.1 uhlAnoiseGen****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of an Audio Noise Generator provides functions to set and retrieve NG preferences.

**Interface ID**

uuid(E206129C-62CB-458E-B69E-04A1CA5AEF97)

**7.2.5.5.1.1 NoiseGeneratorEnable**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t NoiseGeneratorEnable ( [in] Bool state );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Activates or deactivates the noise generator.

**Parameters**

**Table 386**

| Name  | Description                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| state | Indicates whether the noise generator should be activated or deactivated. If True, the noise generator is activated. If False the noise generator is deactivated. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- Modify ang.generatorState

**Postcondition**

ang.generatorState == state

**7.2.5.5.1.2 GetNoiseGeneratorEnabled**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t GetNoiseGeneratorEnabled ( [out] pBool pState );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**  
Indicates whether noise generation is active.

**Parameters**

Table 387

| Name   | Description                                                                              |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pState | Output parameter returning the state of the ANG. A value of True indicates NG is active. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pState == ang.generatorState`

7.2.5.5.1.3      **GetSuppNoiseTypes**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t GetSuppNoiseTypes ( [out] puhAnoiseGen_NoiseTypeSet_t pNoiseTypes );`

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns the set of noise types supported by the ANG.

**Parameters**

Table 388

| Name        | Description                                                             |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pNoiseTypes | Output parameter returning the set of noise types supported by the ANG. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

Action  
None

Postcondition  
`*pNoiseTypes == ang.supNoiseTypes`

7.2.5.5.1.4      **SetNoise**

Signature  
`uhErrorCode_t SetNoise (  
    [in] uhAnoiseGen_NoiseType_t noiseType,  
    [in] uhAnoiseGen_ChanIndex_t chan );`

- Qualifiers
- synchronous
  - single-threaded

Description  
Sets the type of noise signal to be generated, and the audio channel on which noise will be injected on activation of the ANG.

Parameters

Table 389

| Name                   | Description                                                          |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>noiseType</code> | The type of noise signal to be generated on activation of the ANG.   |
| <code>chan</code>      | The channel on which noise will be sourced in the active (ON) state. |

Return Values  
Standard.

Precondition  
`(noiseType & ang.supNoiseTypes) != 0`

- Action
- Modify `ang.currentNoiseType`
  - Modify `ang.currentNoiseGenChan`

Postcondition

- `ang.currentNoiseType == noiseType`
- `ang.currentNoiseGenChan == chan`

7.2.5.5.1.5      **GetNoise**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetNoise (  
    [out] puhAnoiseGen_NoiseType_t pNoiseType,  
    [out] puhAnoiseGen_ChainIndex_t pChan );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Retrieves the current noise type and channel setting for the ANG.

**Parameters**

**Table 390**

| Name       | Description                                                                                      |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pNoiseType | Output parameter returning the current noise type setting for the ANG.                           |
| pChan      | Output parameter returning the channel in which noise will be injected on activation of the ANG. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- None

**Postcondition**

- \*pNoiseType == ang.currentNoiseType
- \*pChan == ang.currentNoiseGenChan

**7.2.6 UhlAprogSel**

**7.2.6.1 Concepts**

**7.2.6.1.1 Introduction**

The Audio Program Selector logical component is designed to provide program selection control for analogue audio transmissions, analogue baseband inputs, and digital audio streams.

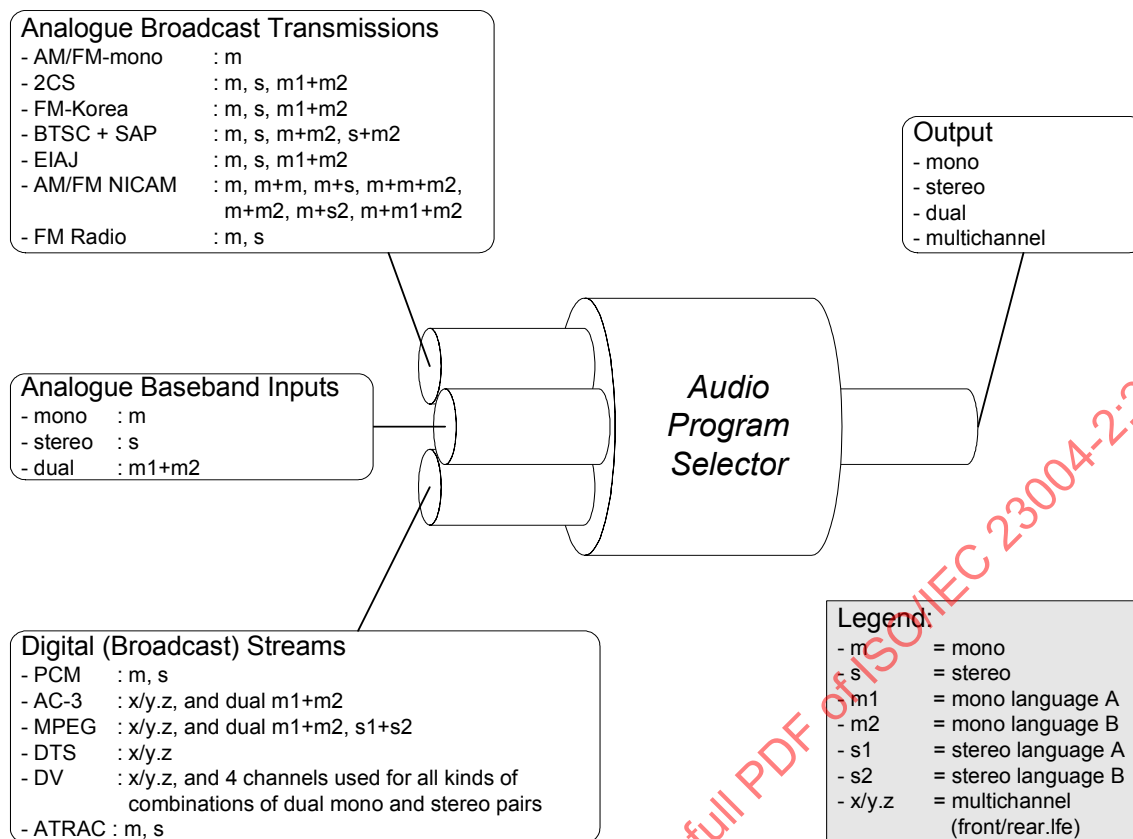


**Figure 52 — Schematic overview of the Audio Program Selector.**

Figure 52 depicts the Audio Program Selector with on the left hand side the possible input streams and their program capabilities and on the right hand side the capabilities of the resulting stream after selection.

#### 7.2.6.1.2 Program Selection

In the context of the Audio Program Selector logical component, the concept of program is defined as follows:

A program is defined as a gathering (a set) of one or more audio channels with a unique audio content (often unique language) associated with it.

Consequently, an audio stream containing a mono, a stereo or a multi-channel signal (e.g. three front channels, two rear channels) constitutes a single program, while an audio stream containing a dual language signal constitutes two programs, with different languages.

For example within the AC-3 standard, in all "audio coding modes" the number of program in the decoded audio signal is one, except for the "1+1" audio coding mode where the decoded audio signal contains two programs.

A user of the program selection process is given the possibility to give a preference towards the program that should be further processed. The preference can be given among a range of program numbers supported by the platform realization.

For instance, a system supporting the DV standard may allow program choices in a range extending from the first program until the fourth program; a system supporting only AC-3 decoding, PCM and decoding of analogue broadcast transmission signals might then only allow a program choice between the first and the second program.

If the program preference is not applicable for the current audio stream, because the program is not present, then a fallback scenario should determine which other program to select.

The fallback scenario is the following: if the program preference is set to the  $n^{\text{th}}$  program and this program is not present, then the  $(n-1)^{\text{th}}$  program becomes the (temporary) preferred choice, if this program is not present, the fallback scenario continues with the  $(n-2)^{\text{th}}$  program and so forth until a program is finally present; see Figure 53.

When a change occurs in the number of programs in the audio stream or in the category of the audio signal, then the initial program preference is again considered. If with this inputs change the initial program preference is valid (i.e. the  $n^{\text{th}}$  program is present), then the preferred program is directly selected, otherwise the fallback scenario starts again (i.e. the  $(n-1)^{\text{th}}$  program is checked for presence), without taking into account what the temporary program preference could have been before the inputs change occurred.

For analogue audio transmission signals, it must also be possible to suppress the additional carrier containing the stereo or additional language information in case of bad (noisy) reception. In this case, the first carrier must be selectable, which is also known as a “forced mono” selection. This is realized by selecting the “Program Base” as the preferred program. The “Program Base” can only be available for analogue audio transmission signals. The fallback scenario does not apply when this program preference is selected.

For some applications (e.g. recording), it can be necessary to have also the choice of selecting the entire content of the audio stream. This is realized by selecting the “Program Full” as the preferred program; the output stream is then equal to what is applied at the input of the Audio Program Selector. The fallback scenario does not apply when this program preference is selected.

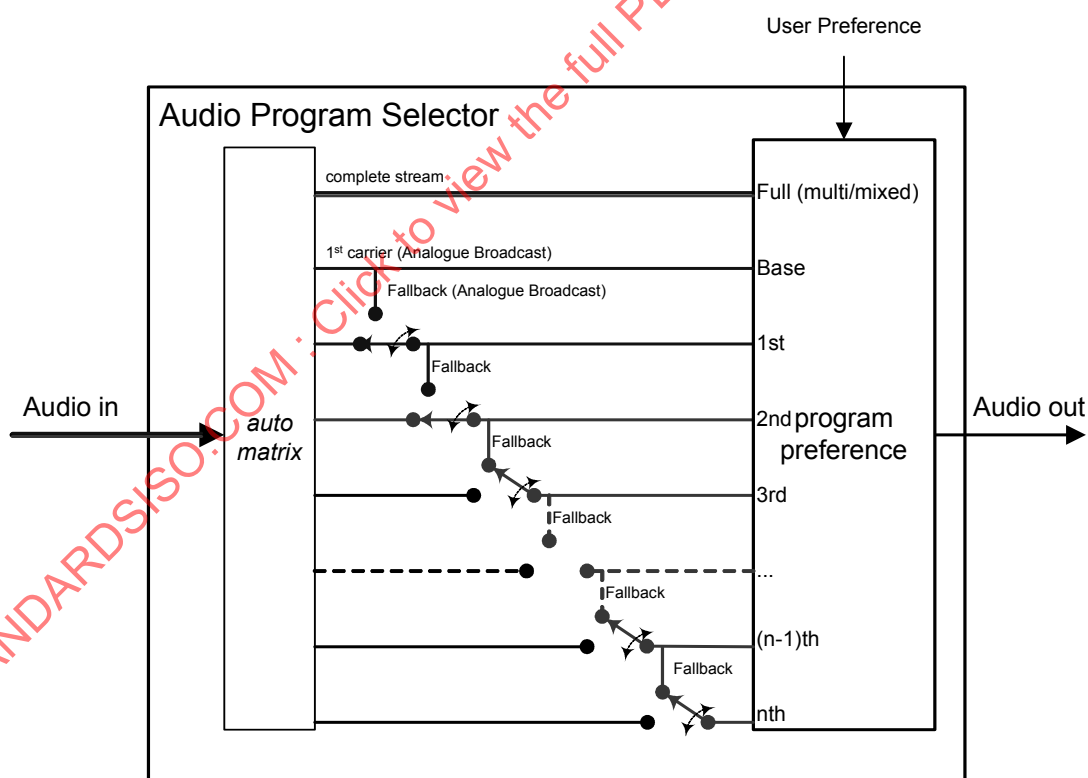


**Figure 53 — Example of the structure of the Audio Program Selector: “Program Full”, “Program Base”, and “1<sup>st</sup> Program” until “n<sup>th</sup> Program” can be selected.**

In the example of Figure 53, the input stream contains two programs (the 1<sup>st</sup> Program depicted in blue, the 2<sup>nd</sup> Program in red), a preference for the  $m^{\text{th}}$  program with  $m > 2$ , will imply the application of the fallback scenario, resulting in the selection of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Program.

For each of the category of audio signals (i.e. signals from analogue audio transmissions, signals from analogue baseband inputs, and digital audio signals) a control is provided to the client to set a preference among the set of supported programs.

When the audio signal changes from one category to another category the program preference set for the new category is selected and applied.

The Audio Program Selector only selects programs, consequently the channel configuration of the program selected remains unchanged by the selection process: a stereo program that has been selected from a dual stereo stream stays a stereo program and is outputted in that way. The only exception is in the case of digital streams, when "Program Full" is the preferred Program and when the Output mode is set to the mixed mode; see subclause 7.2.6.1.5.1 for details.

### 7.2.6.1.3 Analogue broadcast transmissions

Besides a mono or stereo audio program, an analogue audio transmission can contain up to 3 different audio programs:

- FM 2CS : Language I and Language II.
- FM Korea : Language I and Language II.
- FM BTSC : Main program and Second Audio Program (SAP).
- FM EIAJ : Language I and Language II.
- AM/FM NICAM : Main program (language I), Language A and Language B.

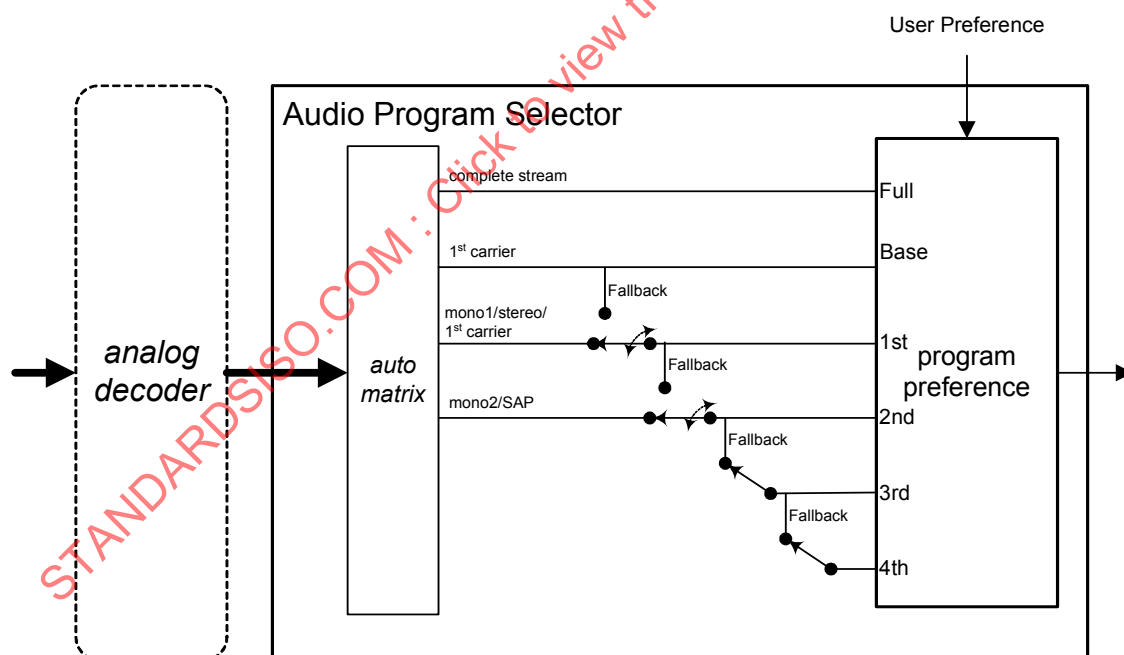


Figure 54 — General structure of the Audio Program Selector for analogue broadcast input signals.

- In Figure 54 the analog audio decoder is providing the programs from which the Program Selector can select. The Program Selector can have until six different choices representing the possible programs.



- “Program Full” is used to skip the selection of programs in the audio input stream: the output is equal to what is applied at the input.
- “Program Base” represents the “forced mono” program, which is one to one related with the 1<sup>st</sup> sound carrier of the analog audio broadcast.
- Typically “Program First” is predestined for selecting the first program in the audio stream, i.e. the main program, or the ‘language A’ program in case of a bilingual audio stream.
- “Program Second” is predestined for selecting the second program in the audio stream, i.e. the ‘language B’ program in case of a bilingual audio stream.
- For analogue audio transmission inputs, “Program Third” and “Program Fourth” always fall back at least to “Program Second”, and can fall back to “Program First”; see Table 391.
- In the case of a NICAM transmission, the digital quality audio signal (i.e. the NICAM audio signal) is to be selected by giving the preference to the “Program First” (or “Program Second” if the Language B is preferred over the Language A in the case of a Bilingual audio stream). The base mono channel (1<sup>st</sup> carrier) will be selected if the preference is given to the “Program Base” (a.k.a. forced mono). The base mono channel (1<sup>st</sup> carrier) will also be selected in case the NICAM signal contains data, with the preference given to the “Program First” or the “Program Second”. This is shown in Table 391.
- The selected program is set as a preference; in that way, the Audio Program Selector can select the proper program(s) to output when the input signal changes without client interaction.
- Except for the situation where a NICAM transmission changes from ‘related’ to ‘unrelated’; in such a case the selected program may be autonomously overruled by the platform selecting the “Program Base”, such that the audio output signal remains related to the video program.

**Table 391 — The program selection for analogue broadcast input signals.**

| Input signal                       | Program Full                       | Program Base         | Program First       | Program Second      | Program Third | Program Fourth |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------|----------------|
| AM/FM Mono                         | Mono                               | Mono                 |                     |                     |               |                |
| 2CS Stereo                         | Stereo                             | Mono                 | Stereo              |                     |               |                |
| 2CS Bilingual                      | Bilingual<br>(Dual-mono)           | Mono<br>(Language A) | Language A          | Language B          |               |                |
| AM/FM +<br>NICAM Mono              | AM/FM +<br>NICAM Mono              | Mono<br>(AM/FM)      | NICAM Mono          |                     |               |                |
| AM/FM +<br>NICAM Stereo            | AM/FM +<br>NICAM Stereo            | Mono<br>(AM/FM)      | NICAM Stereo        |                     |               |                |
| AM/FM +<br>NICAM Bilingual         | AM/FM +<br>NICAM Bilingual         | Mono<br>(AM/FM)      | NICAM<br>Language A | NICAM<br>Language B |               |                |
| AM/FM +<br>NICAM Data              | AM/FM +<br>NICAM Data              | Mono<br>(AM/FM)      |                     |                     |               |                |
| AM/FM +<br>NICAM unrelated<br>Mono | AM/FM +<br>NICAM unrelated<br>Mono | Mono<br>(AM/FM)      | NICAM Mono          |                     |               |                |

| Input signal      |           | Program<br>Full          |           | Program<br>Base      | Program<br>First | Program<br>Second | Program<br>Third | Program<br>Fourth |
|-------------------|-----------|--------------------------|-----------|----------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| AM/FM +           |           | AM/FM +                  |           | Mono                 | NICAM Stereo     |                   |                  |                   |
| NICAM Stereo      | unrelated | NICAM Stereo             | unrelated | (AM/FM)              |                  |                   |                  |                   |
| AM/FM +           |           | AM/FM +                  |           | Mono                 | NICAM Language A | NICAM Language B  |                  |                   |
| NICAM Bilingual   | unrelated | NICAM Bilingual          | unrelated | (AM/FM)              |                  |                   |                  |                   |
| AM/FM +           |           | AM/FM +                  |           | Mono                 |                  |                   |                  |                   |
| NICAM Data        | unrelated | NICAM Data               | unrelated | (AM/FM)              |                  |                   |                  |                   |
| BTSC Stereo       |           | Stereo                   |           | Mono                 | Stereo           |                   |                  |                   |
| BTSC Mono + SAP   |           | Mono + SAP               |           | Mono                 |                  | SAP               |                  |                   |
| BTSC Stereo + SAP |           | Stereo + SAP             |           | Mono                 | Stereo           | SAP               |                  |                   |
| EIAJ Stereo       |           | Stereo                   |           | Mono                 | Stereo           |                   |                  |                   |
| EIAJ Bilingual    |           | Bilingual<br>(Dual-mono) |           | Mono<br>(Language A) | Language A       | Language B        |                  |                   |
| FM-Radio Mono     |           | Mono                     |           | Mono                 |                  |                   |                  |                   |
| FM-Radio Stereo   |           | Stereo                   |           | Mono                 | Stereo           |                   |                  |                   |

#### 7.2.6.1.4 Analogue baseband inputs

- In the case of a baseband input, the audio stream is considered an audio input comprising one program for the 'left' audio signal and one program for the 'right' audio signal. The common assumption is that such input is used for feeding in stereo signals only, but it could as well be dual language or mono (e.g. mono on 'left' or mono on 'right').

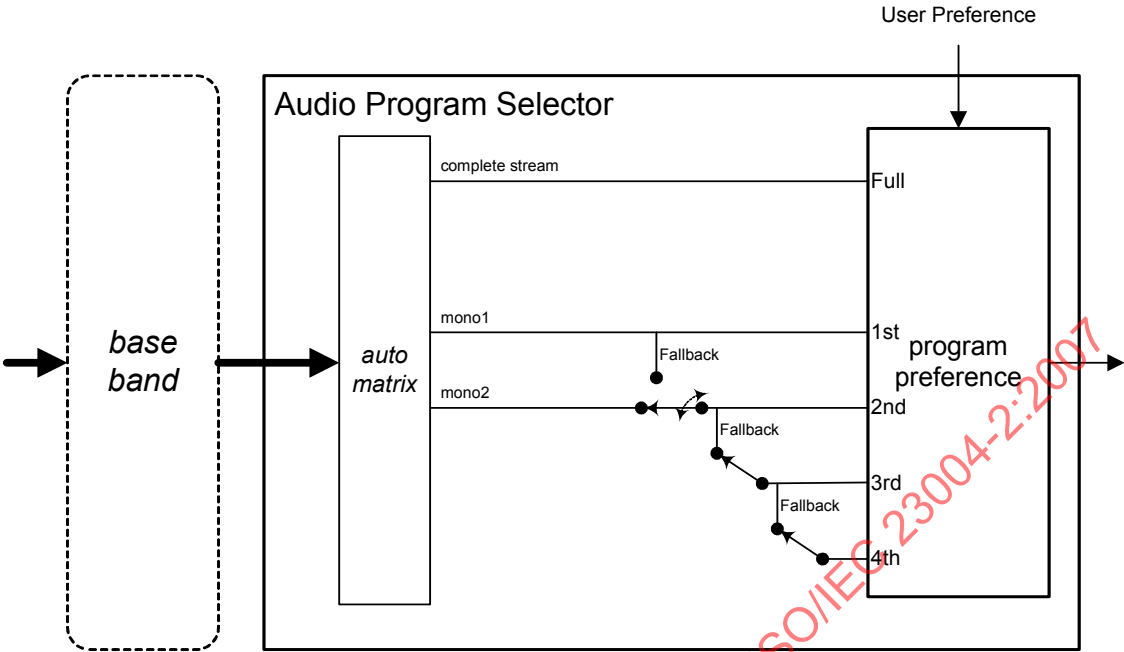


Figure 55 — General structure of the Audio Program Selector for analogue baseband input signals.

- Selecting “Program Full” the output will always be equal to what is applied at the input.
- For analogue baseband inputs, “Program Base” is not available since there is no need to select between signal quality alternatives (e.g. 1<sup>st</sup> (mono) carrier versus stereo or dual carrier).
- Selecting “Program First” will result in a mono output signal representing the main (language) program.
- Selecting “Program Second” will again represent the secondary (language) program.
- For analogue baseband inputs, “Program Third” and “Program Fourth” always fall back at least to “Program Second”, and can fall back to “Program First”; see Table 392.

Table 392 — The program selection for analogue baseband input signals.

| Input signal <sup>10</sup> | Program   | Program | Program                               | Program                                | Program | Program |
|----------------------------|-----------|---------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------|---------|
|                            | Full      | Base    | First                                 | Second                                 | Third   | Fourth  |
| Mono                       | Mono      |         | Mono                                  |                                        |         |         |
| Stereo                     | Stereo    |         | Mono<br>(Left channel)                | Mono<br>(Right channel)                |         |         |
| Dual-mono                  | Dual-mono |         | Mono<br>(Left channel/<br>Language A) | Mono<br>(Right channel/<br>Language B) |         |         |

<sup>10</sup> Input signals mono, stereo, dual, ‘mono on left only’, and ‘mono on right only’ are considered signal properties that can not be detected reliably, but added here for completeness.

| Input signal <sup>10</sup>              | Program<br>Full                          | Program<br>Base | Program<br>First       | Program<br>Second       | Program<br>Third | Program<br>Fourth |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|-------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| Mono on left only<br>(silence on right) | Mono on left only<br>(silence on right)  |                 | Mono<br>(Left channel) | Mono<br>(silence)       |                  |                   |
| Mono on right only<br>(silence on left) | Mono on right only<br>(silence on right) |                 | Mono<br>(silence)      | Mono<br>(Right channel) |                  |                   |

7.2.6.1.5 Digital (broadcast) streams

Besides mono, stereo and multichannel programs a digital stream can also provide dual and up to four language programs.

- AC-3 : Language I and Language II (2x mono).
- MPEG audio : Language I and Language II (2x mono, 2x stereo, 1 mono + 1 stereo, multi-channel (3/0) + 1 mono), optionally Language III (2x mono + stereo). 1
- DV audio : Language I and Language II, optionally Language III and Language IV (multiple combinations of mono and/or stereo).

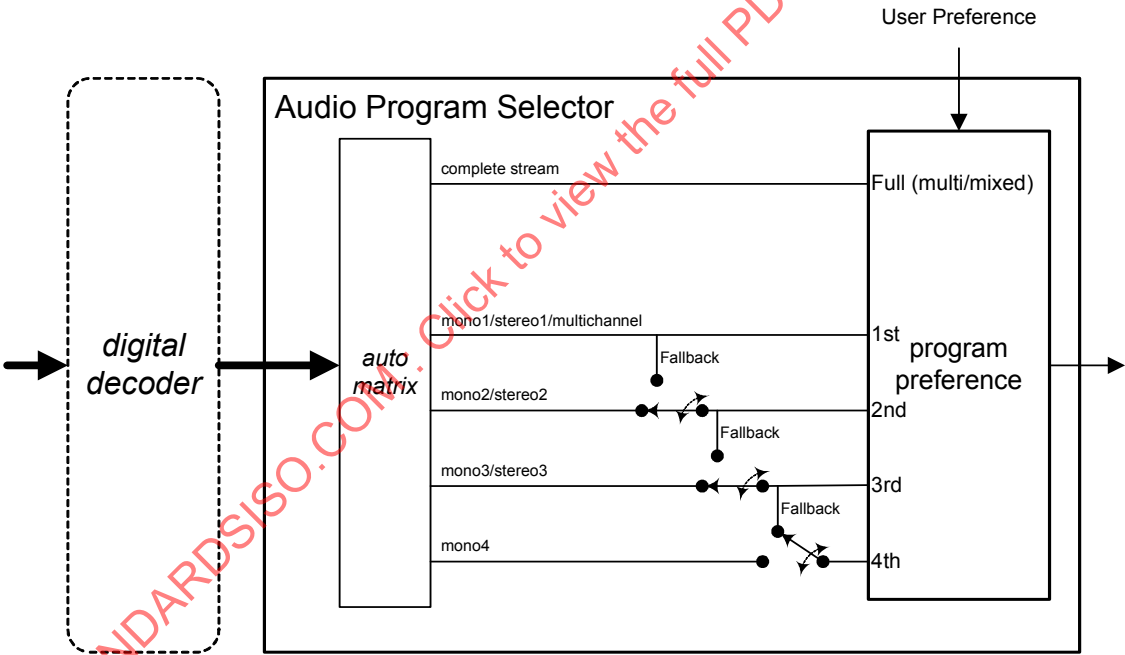


Figure 56 — General structure of the Audio Program Selector for digital (broadcast) signals.

- The program selection closely follows the partitioning as used for the analog broadcast and baseband signals.
- Selecting “Program Full” the output will contain what is applied at the input.
- For digital (broadcast) streams, “Program Base” is not available since there is no need to select between signal quality alternatives (e.g. 1<sup>st</sup> (mono) carrier versus stereo or dual carrier).
- Selecting “Program First” will result in an output signal containing the main (language) program.

- Selecting “Program Second” will again result in an output signal containing the secondary (language) program.
- Selecting “Program Third” or “Program Fourth” will result in an output signal containing the third (language) program or the fourth (language) program, respectively.
- For digital streams, “Program Second”, “Program Third”, and “Program Fourth” always fall back to “Program First” in case of a mono, a stereo or a multichannel input signal; see Table 393. In those cases there is no actual effect on the input signal, which will be forwarded to the output via a loop through.

**Table 393 — The program selection for digital (broadcast) signals.**

| Input signal                |        | Prog<br>Full          | Prog<br>Base | Prog<br>First         | Prog<br>Second | Prog<br>Third | Prog<br>Fourth |
|-----------------------------|--------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| PCM, Mono                   | DV-2ch | Mono                  |              | Mono                  |                |               |                |
| PCM, Stereo                 | DV-2ch | Stereo                |              | Stereo                |                |               |                |
| AC-3, DTS, MPEG, DV-4ch 1/0 |        | Mono center           |              | Mono center           |                |               |                |
| AC-3, DTS, MPEG, DV-4ch 2/0 |        | Stereo                |              | Stereo                |                |               |                |
| AC-3, MPEG, DTS 2/1         |        | Multichannel<br>(2/1) |              | Multichannel<br>(2/1) |                |               |                |
| AC-3, DTS, MPEG, DV-4ch 2/2 |        | Multichannel<br>(2/2) |              | Multichannel<br>(2/2) |                |               |                |
| AC-3, DTS, MPEG, DV-4ch 3/0 |        | Multichannel<br>(3/0) |              | Multichannel<br>(3/0) |                |               |                |
| AC-3, DTS, MPEG, DV-4ch 3/1 |        | Multichannel<br>(3/1) |              | Multichannel<br>(3/1) |                |               |                |
| AC-3, MPEG, DTS 3/2         |        | Multichannel<br>(3/2) |              | Multichannel<br>(3/2) |                |               |                |
| DTS 3/3                     |        | Multichannel<br>(3/3) |              | Multichannel<br>(3/3) |                |               |                |
| DTS 3/4                     |        | Multichannel<br>(3/4) |              | Multichannel<br>(3/4) |                |               |                |
| DTS 4/2                     |        | Multichannel<br>(4/2) |              | Multichannel<br>(4/2) |                |               |                |
| DTS 4/4                     |        | Multichannel<br>(4/4) |              | Multichannel<br>(4/4) |                |               |                |
| MPEG, DTS 5/2               |        | Multichannel<br>(5/2) |              | Multichannel<br>(5/2) |                |               |                |
| DTS 5/3                     |        | Multichannel<br>(5/3) |              | Multichannel<br>(5/3) |                |               |                |
| AC-3 karaoke                |        | Multichannel          |              | Multichannel          |                |               |                |

| Input signal           | Prog<br>Full       | Prog<br>Base | Prog<br>First                           | Prog<br>Second           | Prog<br>Third            | Prog<br>Fourth         |
|------------------------|--------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| AC-3, MPEG, DV-2ch 1+1 | Dual-mono          |              | Language A                              | Language B               |                          |                        |
| MPEG 1+2               | MPEG 1+2           |              | Mono 1<br>(Language A)                  | Stereo 2<br>(Language B) |                          |                        |
| MPEG, DV-4ch 2+2       | Dual-stereo        |              | Stereo 1<br>(Language A)                | Stereo 2<br>(Language B) |                          |                        |
| DV-4ch 3+1             | DV-4ch 3+1         |              | MultiChannel 1<br>(3/0)<br>(Language A) | Mono 2<br>(Language B)   |                          |                        |
| MPEG 3+2               | MPEG 3+2           |              | MultiChannel 1<br>(3/0)<br>(Language A) | Stereo 2<br>(Language B) |                          |                        |
| DV-4ch 1+1+0+0         | DV-4ch 1+1+0+0     |              | Mono 1<br>(Language A)                  | Mono 2<br>(Language B)   |                          |                        |
| DV-4ch 1+0+1+0         | DV-4ch 1+0+1+0     |              | Mono 1<br>(Language A)                  |                          | Mono 3<br>(Language C)   |                        |
| DV-4ch 1+1+1+0         | DV-4ch 1+1+1+0     |              | Mono 1<br>(Language A)                  | Mono 2<br>(Language B)   | Mono 3<br>(Language C)   |                        |
| DV-4ch 1+0+1+1         | DV-4ch 1+0+1+1     |              | Mono 1<br>(Language A)                  |                          | Mono 3<br>(Language C)   | Mono 4<br>(Language D) |
| DV-4ch 1+1+1+1         | DV-4ch 1+1+1+1     |              | Mono 1<br>(Language A)                  | Mono 2<br>(Language B)   | Mono 3<br>(Language C)   | Mono 4<br>(Language D) |
| DV-4ch 1+0+2           | DV-4ch 1+0+2       |              | Mono 1<br>(Language A)                  |                          | Stereo 3<br>(Language C) |                        |
| MPEG, DV-4ch 1+1+2     | MPEG, DV-4ch 1+1+2 |              | Mono 1<br>(Language A)                  | Mono 2<br>(Language B)   | Stereo 3<br>(Language C) |                        |
| DV-4ch 2+1+0           | DV-4ch 2+1+0       |              | Stereo 1<br>(Language A)                | Mono 2<br>(Language B)   |                          |                        |
| DV-4ch 2+1+1           | DV-4ch 2+1+1       |              | Stereo 1<br>(Language A)                | Mono 2<br>(Language B)   | Mono 3<br>(Language C)   |                        |

#### 7.2.6.1.5.1 Mixing mode

In the particular case of digital (broadcast) signals, the output can be configured to two modes when “Program Full” is selected, one mode where the programs in the audio stream remain separated and another mode where the programs are mixed into a single program.

When the programs are mixed into a single program, matching audio channels are added together, i.e. left channels are added to left channels, right channels are added to right channels, etc. The output signal will have the superset of the audio channels of the programs.

When one of the audio programs is a mono signal then three cases can be identified:

- At least one of the other audio programs is a multichannel program and contains a front center channel, then the mono signal will be added to the front center channel of the other (relevant) audio program(s);

- None of the other audio programs contains a front center channel, but at least one program is a stereo signal, then the mono signal will be added after proper scaling (for total energy preservation) to the front left and to the front right channels of the other (relevant) audio program(s);
- All the audio programs are mono signals then all the (mono) signals are added together.

### 7.2.6.2 Types & Constants

#### 7.2.6.2.1 Public Types & Constants

##### 7.2.6.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

##### 7.2.6.2.1.2 `uhAprogSel_Category_t`

###### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAprogSel_Category_t {
    uhAprogSel_CategoryInvalid      = -2,
    uhAprogSel_CategoryUnknown      = -1,
    uhAprogSel_CategoryAnaBroadcast = 0,
    uhAprogSel_CategoryAnaBaseBand  = 1,
    uhAprogSel_CategoryDigitalAudio = 2
} uhAprogSel_Category_t, *puhAprogSel_Category_t;
```

###### Qualifiers

None.

###### Description

Values of this type represent the categories of audio signal the audio input stream can belong to.

###### Values

**Table 394**

###### Name

`uhAprogSel_CategoryInvalid`  
`uhAprogSel_CategoryUnknown`  
`uhAprogSel_CategoryAnaBroadcast`  
`uhAprogSel_CategoryAnaBaseBand`  
`uhAprogSel_CategoryDigitalAudio`

###### Description

The category of the audio signal is temporarily not available.  
The category of the audio signal is available, yet it could not be determined.  
The audio input stream contains a signal from analogue audio transmission origin.  
The audio input stream contains an analogue baseband signal.  
The audio input stream contains a digital audio signal.

## 7.2.6.2.1.3 uhAprogSel\_Program\_t

**Signature**

```
typedef enum uhAprogSel_Program_t {
    uhAprogSel_ProgInvalid      = 0x80000000,
    uhAprogSel_ProgUnknown     = 0x40000000,
    uhAprogSel_ProgFull        = 0x00000001,
    uhAprogSel_ProgBase        = 0x00000002,
    uhAprogSel_ProgFirst       = 0x00000004,
    uhAprogSel_ProgSecond      = 0x00000008,
    uhAprogSel_ProgThird       = 0x00000010,
    uhAprogSel_ProgFourth      = 0x00000020
} uhAprogSel_Program_t, *puhAprogSel_Program_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the selectable programs from analogue broadcast, baseband input signals, and digital (broadcast) input streams.

**Values****Table 395****Name****Description**

uhAprogSel\_ProgInvalid

The information over the selected program is temporarily not available.

uhAprogSel\_ProgUnknown

The information over the selected program is available, yet it could not be determined.

uhAprogSel\_ProgFull

No program selection is performed: the input signal is forwarded to the output via a loop through.

uhAprogSel\_ProgBase

“Forced mono” selection: the 1<sup>st</sup> sound carrier of the analog audio broadcast is selected. This selection is only available for analog audio broadcast inputs.

uhAprogSel\_ProgFirst

First stream (main language/“stereo” if available) preferred.

uhAprogSel\_ProgSecond

Second stream (second language) preferred.

uhAprogSel\_ProgThird

Third stream (third language) preferred.

uhAprogSel\_ProgFourth

Fourth stream (fourth language) preferred.

**Remarks**

— For a conceptual description please refer to the concept subclause 7.2.6.1.2.

## 7.2.6.2.1.4 uhAprogSel\_ProgramSet\_t

**Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAprogSel_ProgramSet_t, *puhAprogSel_ProgramSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set



**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of programs.

**Constraints**

None.

**7.2.6.2.1.5      uhAprogSel\_OutputMode\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAprogSel_OutputMode_t {
    uhAprogSel_OutputModeMulti = 0,
    uhAprogSel_OutputModeMixed = 1
} uhAprogSel_OutputMode_t, *puhAprogSel_OutputMode_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the output operation modes that can be used when “Program Full” is selected in case of audio input signals belonging to the digital (broadcast) signals category.

**Values****Table 396****Name****Description**

uhAprogSel\_OutputModeMulti

The programs in the audio output stream remain separated, as they were in the audio input stream.

uhAprogSel\_OutputModeMixed

The output stream contains a single program that is the result of the mixing of the audio programs contained in the input stream.

**Remarks**

— For a conceptual description please refer to the Concept section.

**7.2.6.2.1.6      uhAprogSel\_Quality\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAprogSel_Quality_t {
    uhAprogSel_QualityInvalid      = -2,
    uhAprogSel_QualityUnknown      = -1,
    uhAprogSel_QualityNormal       = 0,
    uhAprogSel_QualityDual         = 1,
    uhAprogSel_QualitySurround     = 2,
    uhAprogSel_QualityMultiChannel = 3,
    uhAprogSel_QualityMultiLanguage = 4,
    uhAprogSel_QualityKaraoke      = 5
} uhAprogSel_Quality_t, *puhAprogSel_Quality_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the quality of audio streams with respect to the elementary particularities and capabilities of an audio stream.

**Values****Table 397**

| <b>Name</b>                     | <b>Description</b>                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAprogSel_QualityInvalid       | The quality of the audio stream is temporarily not available.                                                    |
| uhAprogSel_QualityUnknown       | The quality of the audio stream is available, yet it could not be determined.                                    |
| uhAprogSel_QualityNormal        | The signal is a standard mono or stereo signal without additional capabilities.                                  |
| uhAprogSel_QualityDual          | The signal provides two separate languages.                                                                      |
| uhAprogSel_QualitySurround      | The signal is a Dolby Surround or Dolby Pro-Logic encoded stereo signal.                                         |
| uhAprogSel_QualityMultiChannel  | The signal provides separate audio channels containing the individual front and rear audio channels.             |
| uhAprogSel_QualityMultiLanguage | The signal provides separate audio channels containing three or more languages.                                  |
| uhAprogSel_QualityKaraoke       | The signal provides separate audio channels containing the instrument and voice programs of the singalong music. |

**7.2.6.2.1.7 uhAprogSel\_Standard\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum uhAprogSel_Standard_t {
    uhAprogSel_StandardInvalid = -2,
    uhAprogSel_StandardUnknown = -1,
    uhAprogSel_StandardAmMono = 0,
    uhAprogSel_StandardFmMono = 1,
    uhAprogSel_StandardFm2Cs = 2,
    uhAprogSel_StandardFmKorea = 3,
    uhAprogSel_StandardAmNicam = 4,
    uhAprogSel_StandardFmNicam = 5,
    uhAprogSel_StandardBtsc = 6,
    uhAprogSel_StandardEiaj = 7,
    uhAprogSel_StandardFmRadio = 8,
    uhAprogSel_StandardLrBaseBand = 9,
    uhAprogSel_StandardAc3 = 10,
    uhAprogSel_StandardMpeg = 11,
    uhAprogSel_StandardDts = 12,
    uhAprogSel_StandardDv2ch = 13,
    uhAprogSel_StandardDv4ch = 14,
    uhAprogSel_StandardAtrac = 15,
    uhAprogSel_StandardPcm = 16
} uhAprogSel_Standard_t, *puhAprogSel_Standard_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The values of this type represent audio signal standards.

**Values****Table 398****Name**

uhAprogSel\_StandardInvalid

uhAprogSel\_StandardUnknown

uhAprogSel\_StandardAmMono

uhAprogSel\_StandardFmMono

uhAprogSel\_StandardFm2Cs

uhAprogSel\_StandardFmKorea

uhAprogSel\_StandardAmNicom

uhAprogSel\_StandardFmNicom

uhAprogSel\_StandardBtsc

uhAprogSel\_StandardEiaj

uhAprogSel\_StandardFmRadio

uhAprogSel\_StandardLrBaseBand

uhAprogSel\_StandardAc3

uhAprogSel\_StandardMpeg

uhAprogSel\_StandardDts

uhAprogSel\_StandardDv2ch

uhAprogSel\_StandardDv4ch

uhAprogSel\_StandardAtrac

uhAprogSel\_StandardPcm

**Description**

The standard of the audio signal is temporarily not available.

The standard of the audio signal is available, yet it could not be determined.

The signal is analogue amplitude modulated (AM) mono.

The signal is analogue frequency modulated (FM) mono.

The signal is analogue frequency modulated 2-Carrier Sound (2CS) also known as German Stereo, with stereo or dual language capabilities.

The signal is analogue frequency modulated 2-carrier sound also known as Korean Stereo, with stereo and dual language capabilities.

The signal is a combination of an analogue amplitude modulated (AM) mono with additional NICAM signal, providing digital mono, stereo and dual language capabilities.

The signal is a combination of an analogue frequency modulated (FM) mono with additional NICAM signal, providing digital mono, stereo and dual language capabilities.

The signal is analogue frequency modulated (FM) with mono and stereo capabilities and optionally provided SAP mono.

The signal is analogue frequency modulated (FM) also known as Japan Stereo with mono, stereo and dual capabilities.

The signal an analogue frequency modulated (FM) radio with mono or stereo capabilities.

The signal is analogue baseband (left/right) with mono, stereo and dual capabilities.

The signal is digital encoded AC-3 (Dolby Digital) multichannel.

The signal is digital encoded MPEG multichannel.

The signal is digital encoded DTS multichannel.

The signal is digital encoded DV SD 2-channel audio with mono, stereo and dual capabilities.

The signal is digital encoded DV SD multichannel.

The signal is digital encoded ATRAC signal.

The signal is digital PCM signal.

## 7.2.6.2.1.8 uhAprogSel\_Config\_t

## Signature

```
typedef enum uhAprogSel_Config_t {
    uhAprogSel_ConfigInvalid = -2,
    uhAprogSel_ConfigUnknown = -1,
    uhAprogSel_Config1s0      = 0,
    uhAprogSel_Config2s0      = 1,
    uhAprogSel_Config2s1      = 2,
    uhAprogSel_Config2s2      = 3,
    uhAprogSel_Config3s0      = 4,
    uhAprogSel_Config3s1      = 5,
    uhAprogSel_Config3s2      = 6,
    uhAprogSel_Config3s3      = 7,
    uhAprogSel_Config3s4      = 8,
    uhAprogSel_Config4s2      = 9,
    uhAprogSel_Config4s4      = 10,
    uhAprogSel_Config5s2      = 11,
    uhAprogSel_Config5s3      = 12,
    uhAprogSel_Config1p1      = 13,
    uhAprogSel_Config1p2      = 14,
    uhAprogSel_Config2p2      = 15,
    uhAprogSel_Config3p1      = 16,
    uhAprogSel_Config3p2      = 17,
    uhAprogSel_Config1p1p0p0 = 18,
    uhAprogSel_Config1p0p1p0 = 19,
    uhAprogSel_Config1p1p1p0 = 20,
    uhAprogSel_Config1p0p1p1 = 21,
    uhAprogSel_Config1p1p1p1 = 22,
    uhAprogSel_Config1p0p2    = 23,
    uhAprogSel_Config1p1p2    = 24,
    uhAprogSel_Config2p1p0    = 25,
    uhAprogSel_Config2p1p1    = 26
} uhAprogSel_Config_t, *puhAprogSel_Config_t;
```

## Qualifiers

None.

## Description

Values of this type represent channel configurations of audio streams.

## Values

Table 399

## Name

## Description

uhAprogSel\_ConfigInvalid

The channel configuration of the audio stream is temporarily not available.

uhAprogSel\_ConfigUnknown

The channel configuration of the audio stream is available, yet it could not be determined.

uhAprogSel\_Config1s0

The signal is encoded as 1/0 multichannel, providing one front (center) signal.

uhAprogSel\_Config2s0

The signal is encoded as 2/0 multichannel, providing two front (left/right) signals.

| Name                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAprogSel_Config2s1     | The signal is encoded as 2/1 multichannel, providing two front (left/right) and one rear (surround) signals.                                                                                     |
| uhAprogSel_Config2s2     | The signal is encoded as 2/2 multichannel, providing two front (left/right) and two rear (surround left/right) signals.                                                                          |
| uhAprogSel_Config3s0     | The signal is encoded as 3/0 multichannel, providing three front (left/center/right) signals.                                                                                                    |
| uhAprogSel_Config3s1     | The signal is encoded as 3/1 multichannel, providing three front (left/center/right) and one rear (surround) signals.                                                                            |
| uhAprogSel_Config3s2     | The signal is encoded as 3/2 multichannel, providing three front (left/center/right) and two rear (surround left/right) signals.                                                                 |
| uhAprogSel_Config3s3     | The signal is encoded as 3/3 multichannel, providing three front (left/center/right), and three rear (surround left/center/right) signals.                                                       |
| uhAprogSel_Config3s4     | The signal is encoded as 3/4 multichannel, providing three front (left/center/right), and four rear (surround left/left-back/right-back/surround right) signals.                                 |
| uhAprogSel_Config4s2     | The signal is encoded as 4/2 multichannel, providing four front (left/left-center/right-center/right), and two rear (surround left/right) signals.                                               |
| uhAprogSel_Config4s4     | The signal is encoded as 4/4 multichannel, providing four front (left/left-center/right-center/right), and four rear (first and second surround left/ first and second surround right) signals.  |
| uhAprogSel_Config5s2     | The signal is encoded as 5/2 multichannel, providing three front (left/center/right), two side (center left/right) and two rear (surround left/right) signals.                                   |
| uhAprogSel_Config5s3     | The signal is encoded as 5/3 multichannel, providing three front (left/center/right), two side (center left/right) and three rear (surround left/center/right) signals.                          |
| uhAprogSel_Config1p1     | The signal is encoded as 1+1 multichannel, providing two mono programs (language A/B).                                                                                                           |
| uhAprogSel_Config1p2     | The signal is encoded as 1+2 multichannel, providing one mono and one stereo program (language A/B).                                                                                             |
| uhAprogSel_Config2p2     | The signal is encoded as 2+2 multichannel, providing two stereo programs (language A/B).                                                                                                         |
| uhAprogSel_Config3p1     | The signal is encoded as 3+1 multichannel, providing two programs. First program provides three front (left/center/right) stereo (language A) signals and second program is mono (language B).   |
| uhAprogSel_Config3p2     | The signal is encoded as 3+2 multichannel, providing two programs. First program provides three front (left/center/right) stereo (language A) signals and second program is stereo (language B). |
| uhAprogSel_Config1p1p0p0 | The signal is encoded as 1+1+0+0 multichannel, providing two mono programs (language A/B).                                                                                                       |
| uhAprogSel_Config1p0p1p0 | The signal is encoded as 1+0+1+0 multichannel, providing two mono programs (language A/C).                                                                                                       |
| uhAprogSel_Config1p1p1p0 | The signal is encoded as 1+1+1+0 multichannel, providing three mono programs (language A/B/C).                                                                                                   |
| uhAprogSel_Config1p0p1p1 | The signal is encoded as 1+0+1+1 multichannel, providing three mono programs (language A/C/D).                                                                                                   |
| uhAprogSel_Config1p1p1p1 | The signal is encoded as 1+1+1+1 multichannel, providing four mono programs (language A/B/C/D).                                                                                                  |

| Name                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAprogSel_Config1p0p2 | The signal is encoded as 1+0+2 multichannel, providing three programs. First program provides one mono (language A) signal, second program is not in use and third program is stereo (language C).  |
| uhAprogSel_Config1p1p2 | The signal is encoded as 1+1+2 multichannel, providing three programs. First and second program provide a mono (language A/B) signal, third program is stereo (language C).                         |
| uhAprogSel_Config2p1p0 | The signal is encoded as 2+1+0 multichannel, providing three programs. First program provides a stereo (language A) signal, second a mono (language C) signal and the third program is not in use.  |
| uhAprogSel_Config2p1p1 | The signal is encoded as 2+1+1 multichannel, providing three programs. First program provides a stereo (language A) signal, followed by two programs with two separate mono (language B/C) signals. |

#### 7.2.6.2.1.9 uhAprogSel\_Language\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum uhAprogSel_Language_t {
    uhAprogSel_LanguageInvalid = -2,
    uhAprogSel_LanguageUnknown = -1,
    uhAprogSel_LanguageNone = 0,
    uhAprogSel_LanguageA = 1,
    uhAprogSel_LanguageB = 2,
    uhAprogSel_LanguageC = 3,
    uhAprogSel_LanguageD = 4,
    uhAprogSel_LanguageAB = 5,
    uhAprogSel_LanguageAC = 6,
    uhAprogSel_LanguageABC = 7,
    uhAprogSel_LanguageACD = 8,
    uhAprogSel_LanguageABCD = 9
} uhAprogSel_Language_t, *puhAprogSel_Language_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Values of this type specify the content of the audio output streams.

##### Values

**Table 400**

| Name                       | Description                                                                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAprogSel_LanguageInvalid | The content of the audio output stream is temporarily not available.                 |
| uhAprogSel_LanguageUnknown | The content of the audio output stream is available, yet it could not be determined. |
| uhAprogSel_LanguageNone    | The output is not a specific language signal.                                        |
| uhAprogSel_LanguageA       | The output represents the language A signal.                                         |
| uhAprogSel_LanguageB       | The output represents the language B signal.                                         |

| Name                    | Description                                               |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAprogSel_LanguageC    | The output represents the language C signal.              |
| uhAprogSel_LanguageD    | The output represents the language D signal.              |
| uhAprogSel_LanguageAB   | The output represents the language A and B signals.       |
| uhAprogSel_LanguageAC   | The output represents the language A and C signals.       |
| uhAprogSel_LanguageABC  | The output represents the language A, B and C signals.    |
| uhAprogSel_LanguageACD  | The output represents the language A, C and D signals.    |
| uhAprogSel_LanguageABCD | The output represents the language A, B, C and D signals. |

#### 7.2.6.2.1.10 uhAprogSel\_InputSignal\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef struct _uhAprogSel_InputSignal_t {
    uhAprogSel_Category_t    category;

    uhAprogSel_Standard_t    standard;
    uhAprogSel_Quality_t     quality;

    uhAprogSel_Config_t      config;
} uhAprogSel_InputSignal_t, *puhAprogSel_InputSignal_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

The fields in this structure represent the input stream properties.

##### Fields

Table 401

| Name     | Description                                                                          |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| category | The category of audio signal the audio input stream is belonging to.                 |
| standard | The (original) standard of the audio input stream.                                   |
| quality  | The elementary quality (particularities and capabilities) of the audio input stream. |
| config   | The channel configuration of the audio input stream.                                 |

#### 7.2.6.2.1.11 uhAprogSel\_OutputSignal\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef struct _uhAprogSel_OutputSignal_t {
    uhAprogSel_Quality_t     quality;

    uhAprogSel_Language_t    language;

    uhAprogSel_Config_t      config;
} uhAprogSel_OutputSignal_t, *puhAprogSel_OutputSignal_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

Description

The fields in this structure represent the output signal properties.

Fields

Table 402

| Name     | Description                                                                           |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| quality  | The elementary quality (particularities and capabilities) of the audio output stream. |
| language | The language (if any) of the audio output stream.                                     |
| config   | The channel configuration of the audio output stream.                                 |

7.2.6.2.1.12    uhAprogSel\_Ntf\_t

Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAprogSel_Ntf_t {  
    uhAprogSel_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,  
    uhAprogSel_InputSignalChanged  = 0x00000002,  
    uhAprogSel_OutputSignalChanged = 0x00000004,  
    uhAprogSel_ActualProgramChanged = 0x00000008  
} uhAprogSel_Ntf_t, *puhAprogSel_Ntf_t;
```

Qualifiers

— enum-element

Description

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface uhIAprogSelNtf.

Values

Table 403

| Name                            | Description                        |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| uhAprogSel_SubscriptionChanged  | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged.  |
| uhAprogSel_InputSignalChanged   | Represents OnInputSignalChanged.   |
| uhAprogSel_OutputSignalChanged  | Represents OnOutputSignalChanged.  |
| uhAprogSel_ActualProgramChanged | Represents OnActualProgramChanged. |

7.2.6.2.1.13    uhAprogSel\_NtfSet\_t

Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhAprogSel_NtfSet_t, *puhAprogSel_NtfSet_t;
```

Qualifiers

— enum-set



**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhAprogSel_Ntf_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**Constraints**

None.

**7.2.6.2.1.14 uhAprogSel\_AllNtfs****Signature**

```
const uhAprogSel_NtfSet_t uhAprogSel_AllNtfs = 0x0000000F;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhAprogSel_Ntf_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**7.2.6.2.2 Model Types & Constants**

None.

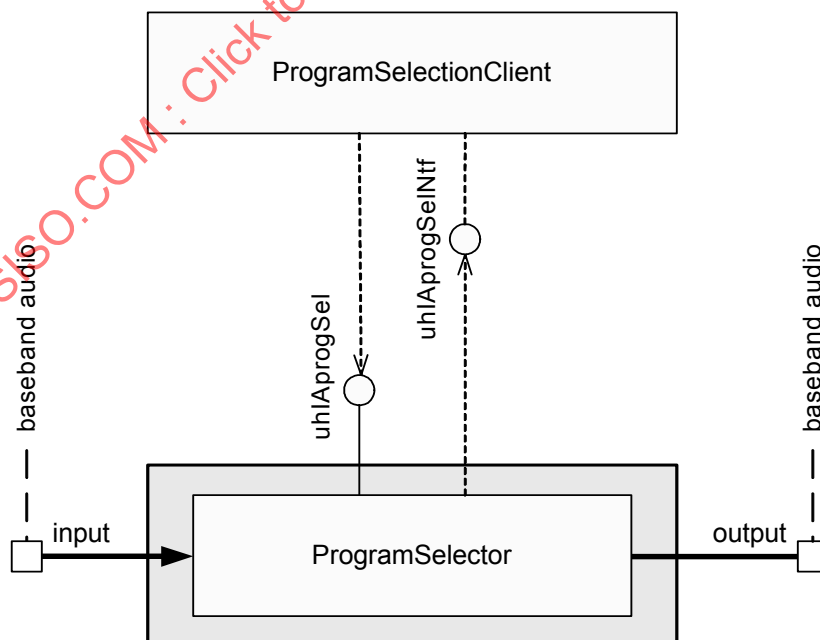
**7.2.6.3 Logical Component****7.2.6.3.1 Interface-Role Model**

**Figure 57 — Interface Role Model**

The grey box in Figure 57 denotes an Audio Program Selector logical component containing a single `ProgramSelector` role.

This role provides one mandatory (solid line) control interface (UhIAprogSel).

A client can optionally provide a call-back (dotted lines) interface uhIAprogSelNtf. This allows the client to receive notifications of events in the Audio Program Selector.

7.2.6.3.2 Diversity

7.2.6.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 404

| Role                   | Interface      | Presence  |
|------------------------|----------------|-----------|
| ProgramSelector        | UhIAprogSel    | mandatory |
| ProgramSelectionClient | uhIAprogSelNtf | optional  |

7.2.6.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 405

| Role            | Attribute              |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| ProgramSelector | suppCategories         |
|                 | suppPrograms           |
|                 | suppOutputModes        |
|                 | isNicomFallbackEnabled |

7.2.6.3.2.3 Constraints

```
— !(suppCategories[uhAprogSel_CategoryInvalid])
— !(suppCategories[uhAprogSel_CategoryUnknown])
— For each c in uhAprogSel_Category_t
  — (suppPrograms[c] & uhAprogSel_ProgFull)
  — !(suppPrograms[c] & uhAprogSel_ProgInvalid)
  — !(suppPrograms[c] & uhAprogSel_ProgUnknown)
  — !(suppPrograms[uhAprogSel_CategoryAnaBaseBand] & uhAprogSel_ProgBase)
  — !(suppPrograms[uhAprogSel_CategoryDigitalAudio] & uhAprogSel_ProgBase)
  — (suppOutputModes[uhAprogSel_OutputModeMulti]
    suppOutputModes[uhAprogSel_OutputModeMixed])
— If !(suppCategories[uhAprogSel_CategoryAnaBroadcast])
  — isNicomFallbackEnabled == False
```

7.2.6.3.3 Instantiation

7.2.6.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 406

| Type            | Object | Multiplicity |
|-----------------|--------|--------------|
| ProgramSelector | aps    | 1            |

### 7.2.6.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

```

— aps.inputSignal.category == uhAprogSel_CategoryInvalid
— aps.inputSignal.standard == uhAprogSel_StandardInvalid
— aps.inputSignal.quality == uhAprogSel_QualityInvalid
— aps.inputSignal.config == uhAprogSel_ConfigInvalid
— aps.outputSignal.quality == uhAprogSel_QualityInvalid
— aps.outputSignal.language == uhAprogSel_LanguageInvalid
— aps.outputSignal.config == uhAprogSel_ConfigInvalid
— For each i in uhAprogSel_Category_t
  — aps.prefProgram[i] == uhAprogSel_ProgFull
  — aps.currentProgram == uhAprogSel_ProgInvalid
— If suppOutputModes[uhAprogSel_OutputModeMulti]
  — aps.outputMode == uhAprogSel_OutputModeMulti
else
  — aps.outputMode == uhAprogSel_OutputModeMixed

```

### 7.2.6.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

### 7.2.6.4 Roles

#### 7.2.6.4.1 ProgramSelector

##### Signature

```

role ProgramSelector {
    uhAprogSel_InputSignal_t      inputSignal;
    uhAprogSel_OutputSignal_t     outputSignal;
    const Bool                    suppCategories[uhAprogSel_Category_t];
    const uhAprogSel_ProgramSet_t  suppPrograms[uhAprogSel_Category_t];
    uhAprogSel_Program_t          prefProgram[uhAprogSel_Category_t];
    uhAprogSel_Program_t          currentProgram;
    const Bool                    suppOutputModes[uhAprogSel_OutputMode_t];
    uhAprogSel_OutputMode_t       outputMode;
    const Bool                    isNicamFallbackEnabled;
}

```

##### Qualifiers

— root

##### Description

A Program Selector selects, according to the user preference, the program that it should stream out among the audio programs present in its audio input stream. A Program Selector provides functionality to the client(s)

to select the program to be streamed out for each category of audio input streams: signals from analogue audio transmissions, signals from analogue baseband inputs, and digital audio signals.

A Program Selector provides notifications of changes in the program that is selected and hence streamed out.

### Independent Attributes

**Table 407**

| Name                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| inputSignal            | The properties of the audio input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| outputSignal           | The properties of the audio output stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| suppCategories         | Array indicating for each category of audio signals whether the setting of a preference for a program is supported by the Program Selector.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| suppPrograms           | For each category of audio signals, the set of programs for which selection is supported by the Program Selector.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| prefProgram            | For each category of audio signals, the program that should preferably be selected whenever an audio input stream of this category is present.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| currentProgram         | The program that is actually selected for the audio input stream. The actual program selected may not be equal to the preferred program for the current audio input stream: if the preferred program is not present, a fallback program is selected; see subclause 7.2.6.1.2 for a complete description of the fallback scenario.                                                                                                                                                                         |
| suppOutputModes        | Array indicating for each output operation mode whether this output operation mode is supported by the Program Selector.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| outputMode             | Indicates the output operation mode that should be used when “Program Full” is selected in the case of an audio input signal belonging to the digital (broadcast) signals category.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| isNicamFallbackEnabled | Indicates whether the platform will or not autonomously overrule the preferred program with the “Program Base” in the case that the NICAM signal changes from 'related' to 'unrelated' NICAM. This indicates that the analogue mono (the still 'related' part) is preferred if this situation occurs.<br><br>It is <code>True</code> when the platform will autonomously overrule the preferred program; it is <code>False</code> when the platform will not autonomously overrule the preferred program. |

### Dependent Attributes

None.

### Invariants

```

— For each c in uhAprogSel_Category_t
  — prefProgram[c] in suppPrograms[c]
  — currentProgram in (suppPrograms[inputSignal.category] |
    uhAprogSel_ProgInvalid | uhAprogSel_ProgUnknown)
— If ! (suppOutputModes[uhAprogSel_OutputModeMulti])
  — outputMode == uhAprogSel_OutputModeMixed
— If ! (suppOutputModes[uhAprogSel_OutputModeMixed])
  — outputMode == uhAprogSel_OutputModeMulti

```

### Instantiation

A Program Selector is always instantiated as part of an Audio Program Selector; see subclause 7.2.6.3.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

The Program Selector selects among the audio program(s) that are present in its audio input stream the `currentProgram` program and streams only this `currentProgram` program out.

In general, the `currentProgram` program corresponds to the preference set in `prefProgram[inputSignal.category]` for the current audio input stream with `inputSignal.category` being the category to which the current audio input signal belongs. However the actual program selected may not be equal to the preferred program for the current audio input stream: if the preferred program is not present, a fallback program is selected; see subclause 7.2.6.1.2 for a complete description of the fallback scenario.

The actual program selected may also not be equal to the preferred program in case of a NICAM transmission with a change from 'related' to 'unrelated'. If `isNicamFallbackEnabled` is `True`, in such a case the selected program is autonomously overruled by the platform by selecting the "Program Base", such that the audio output signal remains related to the video program, otherwise the preferred program in `prefProgram[uhAprogSel_CategoryAnaBroadcast]` is selected.

**Active Behavior**

The Program Selector has standard notification behavior (see `uhIAprogSelNtf`).

**Execution Constraints**

None.

**7.2.6.4.2 ProgramSelectionClient****Signature**

```
role ProgramSelectionClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

— actor

**Description**

A Program Selection Client represents a user of the `UhIAprogSel` interface.

**Execution Constraints**

None.

**7.2.6.5 Interfaces****7.2.6.5.1 uhIAprogSel****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of the Audio Program Selector provides functionality to select a certain audio program (e.g. languages) from any analogue or digital audio stream. Next to that it also provides information about the input signal (before the program selection) and the output signal (after the program selection is performed).

Interface ID

uuid( 3292C759-A7F5-418E-99EE-9FA5F44B0BBC )

7.2.6.5.1.1      Subscribe

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhIAprogSelNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32              cookie,
    [in] uhAprogSel_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

7.2.6.5.1.2      Unsubscribe

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhIAprogSelNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32              cookie,
    [in] uhAprogSel_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

7.2.6.5.1.3      IsCategorySupported

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t IsCategorySupported (
    [in] uhAprogSel_Category_t category,
    [out] pBool pSupported );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns whether setting a preference for a program is supported for the specified category of audio signals.

Parameters

Table 408

| Name       | Description                                                                                                                                 |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| category   | The category of audio signals.                                                                                                              |
| pSupported | Output parameter returning whether setting a preference for a program is supported for the specified category of audio signals in category. |

Return Values

Standard.

**Precondition**

- category != uhAprogSel\_CategoryInvalid
- category != uhAprogSel\_CategoryUnknown

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pSupported == aps.supCategories[category]

**7.2.6.5.1.4      GetNicamFbEnabled**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t GetNicamFbEnabled ( [out] pBool pNicamFallbackEnabled );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns whether the platform will or not autonomously overrule the preferred program with the "Program Base" in the case that the NICAM signal changes from 'related' to 'unrelated' NICAM. This indicates that the analogue mono (the still 'related' part) is preferred if this situation occurs.

**Parameters**

**Table 409**

| Name                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pNicamFallbackEnabled | Output parameter returning whether the platform will or not autonomously overrule the preferred program with the "Program Base" in the case that the NICAM signal changes from 'related' to 'unrelated' NICAM. It is <code>True</code> when the platform will autonomously overrule the preferred program; it is <code>False</code> when the platform will not autonomously overrule the preferred program. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

aps.supCategories[uhAprogSel\_CategoryAnaBroadcast]

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pNicamFallbackEnabled == aps.isNicamFallbackEnabled

Remarks

- When the platform does not overrule the preferred program in the case that the NICAM signal changes from 'related' to 'unrelated' NICAM (i.e. when \*pNicamFallbackEnabled is False), it is the responsibility of the client to select the appropriate program, if this is necessary.

7.2.6.5.1.5      **GetInputSignal**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetInputSignal ( [out] puhAprogSel_InputSignal_t pSignal );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the signal properties of the audio input stream.

**Parameters**

Table 410

| Name    | Description                                                          |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSignal | Output parameter returning the properties of the audio input stream. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```
*pSignal == aps.inputSignal
```

7.2.6.5.1.6      **GetOutputSignal**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetOutputSignal ( [out] puhAprogSel_OutputSignal_t pSignal );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the signal properties of the audio output stream.



**Parameters****Table 411**

| Name                 | Description                                                           |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pSignal</code> | Output parameter returning the properties of the audio output stream. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pSignal == aps.outputSignal`

**7.2.6.5.1.7 GetSuppPrograms****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppPrograms (
    [in] uhAprogSel_Category_t inputCategory,
    [out] puhAprogSel_ProgramSet_t pSupportedPrograms );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the set of programs for which selection is supported by the Program Selector for the specified category of audio signals.

**Parameters****Table 412**

| Name                            | Description                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>inputCategory</code>      | The category of audio signals for which the set of programs for which selection is supported is requested.   |
| <code>pSupportedPrograms</code> | Output parameter returning for the set of programs for which selection is supported by the Program Selector. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
`aps.supportCategories[inputCategory]`

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pSupportedPrograms == aps.supportPrograms[inputCategory]`

7.2.6.5.1.8      **SetProgram**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t SetProgram (  
    [in] uhAprogSel_Category_t inputCategory,  
    [in] uhAprogSel_Program_t program );`

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - single-threaded

**Description**  
Sets the program that should preferably be selected for the specified category of audio signals.

**Parameters**

Table 413

| Name          | Description                                                                                        |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| inputCategory | The category of audio signals for which the program to be selected is set.                         |
| program       | The program that should be preferably selected for the category of audio signals<br>inputCategory. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

- Precondition**
- `aps.supportCategories[inputCategory]`
  - `program in aps.supportPrograms[inputCategory]`

- Action**
- Modify `aps.prefProgram[inputCategory]`

**Postcondition**  
`aps.prefProgram[inputCategory] == program`

7.2.6.5.1.9      **GetProgram**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetProgram (
    [in] uhAprogSel_Category_t inputCategory,
    [out] puhAprogSel_Program_t pProgram );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the program that should be preferably selected whenever an audio input stream of the specified category of audio signals is present.

**Parameters**

**Table 414**

| Name          | Description                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| inputCategory | The category of audio signal for which the program that should be preferably used is requested.                                                                                      |
| pProgram      | Output parameter returning the program that should be preferably selected whenever an audio stream of the specified category of audio signals <code>inputCategory</code> is present. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

`aps.supCategories[inputCategory]`

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

`*pProgram == aps.prefProgram[inputCategory]`

7.2.6.5.1.10      **GetActualProgram**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualProgram ( [out] puhAprogSel_Program_t pActualProgram );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the actual program selected by the Program Selector for the audio input stream. The actual program selected may not be equal to the preferred program for the current audio input stream: if the preferred program is not present, a fallback program is selected; see subclause 7.2.6.1.2 for a complete description of the fallback scenario.

**Parameters**

**Table 415**

| Name                                  | Description                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pActualProgram                        | Output parameter returning the actual program selected for the audio input stream. |
| <b>Return Values</b>                  |                                                                                    |
| Standard.                             |                                                                                    |
| <b>Precondition</b>                   |                                                                                    |
| True                                  |                                                                                    |
| <b>Action</b>                         |                                                                                    |
| None.                                 |                                                                                    |
| <b>Postcondition</b>                  |                                                                                    |
| *pActualProgram == aps.currentProgram |                                                                                    |

**7.2.6.5.1.11 IsOutputModeSupported**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t IsOutputModeSupported (  
    [in] uhAprogSel_OutputMode_t outputMode,  
    [out] pBool pSupported);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns whether the specified output mode is supported.

**Parameters**

**Table 416**

| Name       | Description                                                                |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| outputMode | The output mode for which the support is requested.                        |
| pSupported | Output parameter returning whether the outputmode outputMode is supported. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

aps.supportCategories[uhAprogSel\_CategoryDigitalAudio]

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pSupported == aps.supportOutputModes[outputMode]

**7.2.6.5.1.12 SetOutputMode**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t SetOutputMode ( [in] uhAprogSel\_OutputMode\_t outputModeSelected );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the output mode that should be used when “Program Full” is selected in case of audio input signals belonging to the digital (broadcast) signals category.

**Parameters**

**Table 417**

| Name               | Description                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| outputModeSelected | The output operation mode that should be used when “Program Full” is selected in the case of an audio input signal belonging to the digital (broadcast) signals category. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- aps.supportCategories[uhAprogSel\_CategoryDigitalAudio]
- aps.supportOutputModes[outputModeSelected]

**Action**

- Modify aps.outputMode

**Postcondition**

aps.outputMode == outputModeSelected

### 7.2.6.5.1.13 GetOutputMode

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetOutputMode ( [out] puhAprogSel_OutputMode_t pOutputMode );
```

#### Qualifiers

— synchronous

— thread-safe

#### Description

Returns the output mode that should be used when “Program Full” is selected in case of audio input signals belonging to the digital (broadcast) signals category.

#### Parameters

Table 418

| Name        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pOutputMode | Output parameter returning the output operation mode that should be used when “Program Full” is selected in the case of an audio input signal belonging to the digital (broadcast) signals category. |

#### Return Values

Standard.

#### Precondition

```
aps.supCategories[uhAprogSel_CategoryDigitalAudio]
```

#### Action

None.

#### Postcondition

```
*pOutputMode == aps.outputMode
```

### 7.2.6.5.2 uhlAprogSelNtf

#### Qualifiers

— callback

#### Description

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in the audio program selector. The `Subscribe` function of the `UhlAprogSel` interface can be used to subscribe to these events.

#### Interface ID

```
uuid( A7D93188-05C3-400B-BAA2-65818FDA8C8A )
```

7.2.6.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAprogSel\_NtfSet\_t notifs );

**Qualifiers**  
— onsubscriptionchanged-function

7.2.6.5.2.2 OnInputSignalChanged

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnInputSignalChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAprogSel\_InputSignal\_t signal );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is called by the program selector whenever it detects a change in the property of the audio input stream.

Parameters

Table 419

| Name   | Description                                                     |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.   |
| signal | A structure providing the properties of the audio input stream. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

7.2.6.5.2.3 OnOutputSignalChanged

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnOutputSignalChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAprogSel\_OutputSignal\_t signal );

```
[in] UInt32 cookie,  
[in] uhAprogSel_OutputSignal_t signal );
```

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is called by the program selector whenever a change occurs in the properties of the audio output stream.

**Parameters**

Table 420

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| signal | A structure providing properties of the audio output stream.  |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

7.2.6.5.2.4 OnActualProgramChanged

**Signature**  
[**async**] Void OnActualProgramChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAprogSel\_Program\_t program );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is called by the program selector whenever the currently selected program for the audio input stream has changed.

**Parameters**

Table 421

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |



| Name    | Description                                                       |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| program | The new value of the selected program for the audio input stream. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

## 7.2.7 UhlAvoICtrl

### 7.2.7.1 Concepts

#### 7.2.7.1.1 Introduction

This document defines the Audio Volume Control (AVC) logical component, and describes its user interfaces. Volume control is directly related to the sound level of the audio signal outputted by the audio playback system. This logical component can also provide the improvement functionality, termed Loudness-Processing, that ensures that the relative perceptual loudness levels for different frequencies are maintained across volume settings for the same musical piece. Mute control usually accompanies volume control, and interfaces for this functionality are also provided.

##### 7.2.7.1.1.1 Loudness-Processing

Perceptual loudness of sound has a relationship to the ear's listening curves. In particular, when the volume is set to low levels, sounds at the very low and high frequencies often fall below the threshold of audibility. Loudness-Processing remedies this problem by boosting these frequency bands differently when the volume is set to low levels. As the volume setting is increased, the utility of Loudness-Processing steadily decreases. The volume setting is therefore a prime determinant in Loudness-Processing.

##### 7.2.7.1.2 Operational Mode for AVC

The AVC LC comprises a filter with one logical input pin and one logical output pin.

The AVC provides a master volume setting, i.e a volume setting common to all audio channels in the input stream. Volume settings are allowed within a specific range only.

The on-off mute control, when provided, is at the stream level: the mute setting is the same for all the audio channels in the input stream.

Only an on-off control may be provided for Loudness-Processing through an optional interface.

7.2.7.2 Types & Constants

7.2.7.2.1 Public Types & Constants

None.

7.2.7.2.2 Model Types & Constants

None.

7.2.7.3 Logical Component

7.2.7.3.1 Interface-Role Model

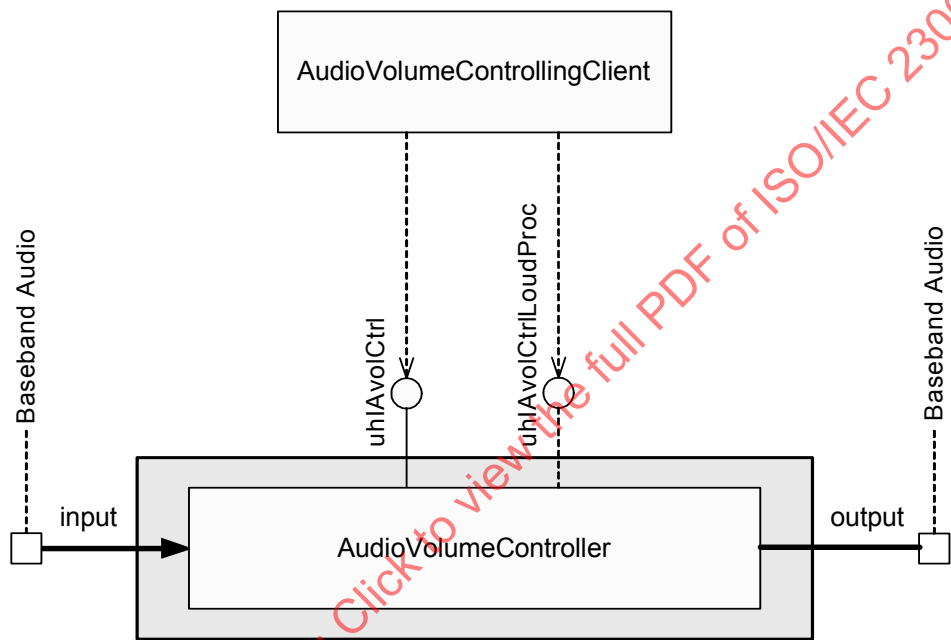


Figure 58 — Interface Role Model

The grey box in Figure 58 denotes an Audio Volume Control logical component containing a single AudioVolumeController role. This role provides one mandatory (solid line) control interface called UhIAvolCtrl and one optional interface called uhIAvolCtrlLoudProc to its client, the AudioVolumeControllingClient.

7.2.7.3.2 Diversity

7.2.7.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 422

| Role                  | Interface           | Presence  |
|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------|
| AudioVolumeController | UhIAvolCtrl         | mandatory |
|                       | uhIAvolCtrlLoudProc | optional  |

7.2.7.3.2.2      Configurable Items

Table 423

| Role                  | Attribute     |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| AudioVolumeController | minVolSetting |
|                       | maxVolSetting |
|                       | muteSupported |

7.2.7.3.2.3      Constraints

minVolSetting ≤ maxVolSetting

7.2.7.3.3      Instantiation

7.2.7.3.3.1      Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 424

| Type                  | Object | Multiplicity |
|-----------------------|--------|--------------|
| AudioVolumeController | avc    | 1            |

7.2.7.3.3.2      Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

```
— avc.volume == minVolSetting
— if (muteSupported)
  — avc.mutedState == True
  else
  — avc.mutedState == False
— avc.loudnessState == False
```

7.2.7.3.4      Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

## 7.2.7.4 Roles

### 7.2.7.4.1 AudioVolumeController

#### Signature

```
role AudioVolumeController {
    const Int32    minVolSetting;
    const Int32    maxVolSetting;
    Int32          volume;
    const Bool     muteSupported;
    Bool           mutedState;
    Bool           loudnessState;
}
```

#### Qualifiers

— root

#### Description

The `AudioVolumeController` role performs the function of accepting and executing volume, mute and loudness settings from the user.

#### Independent Attributes

Table 425

| Name                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>minVolSetting</code> | The minimum volume that can be set by the user. Minimum volume is not necessarily equivalent to mute activated; at minimum volume an audio signal can still be audible.                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>maxVolSetting</code> | The maximum volume that can be set by the user.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>volume</code>        | The master volume setting for the audio input stream, in integral steps. The user can make volume settings between (and including) <code>minVolSetting</code> and <code>maxVolSetting</code> in integral steps. How this is mapping into a physical volume parameter e.g. in dB, can be described in a platform instance document. |
| <code>muteSupported</code> | Describes whether mute control is supported by the <code>AudioVolumeController</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>mutedState</code>    | Describes whether the input stream is muted or not. It is <code>True</code> if the audio stream is muted; it is <code>False</code> if the audio stream is not muted.                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>loudnessState</code> | Describes whether Loudness-processing is switched on or not. It is <code>True</code> if Loudness-processing is switched on; it is <code>False</code> if Loudness-processing is switched off.                                                                                                                                       |

#### Dependent Attributes

None.

#### Invariants

—  $\text{minVolSetting} \leq \text{volume} \leq \text{maxVolSetting}$   
 — If (`!muteSupported`)  
   — `mutedState == False`

#### Instantiation

An `AudioVolumeController` is always instantiated as part of an Audio Volume Control; see subclause 7.2.7.3.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

An `AudioVolumeController` has an audio signal as input stream. It adapts the signal level of the audio signal according to the volume set in `volume`. This volume setting applies for all the channels of the audio stream since the `AudioVolumeController` provides a master volume control. Volume settings are allowed within a specific range only, between (and including) `minVolSetting` and `maxVolSetting`.

When `loudnessState` is `True`, Loudness-Processing is also applied to the audio stream: sounds at the very low and high frequencies are boosted, the level of boosting being determined by the volume setting.

No output data is produced when the `AudioVolumeController` is in the state muted, i.e. when `mutedState` is `True`. When `mutedState` is `False`, the `AudioVolumeController` is not in the state muted and therefore audio signal is streamed out.

The `AudioVolumeController` takes care of a "smooth" transition while muting or un-muting, meaning that audible artefacts like "clicks" do not occur.

**Active Behavior**

None.

**Execution Constraints**

None.

**7.2.7.4.2 AudioVolumeControllingClient****Signature**

```
role AudioVolumeControllingClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

— actor

**Description**

An Audio Volume Controlling Client represents a user of the `UhIAvolCtrl` and `uhIAvolCtrlLoudProc` interfaces.

**Execution Constraints**

None.

**7.2.7.5 Interfaces****7.2.7.5.1 uhIAvolCtrl****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of an AVC provides functions to set and retrieve volume and mute settings. Volume setting as well as muting apply to the entire stream, and not to individual channels.

Interface ID

uuid( E82C5629-AD94-4BB1-AB0F-A2E0DD5E7C3C )

7.2.7.5.1.1      GetVolRange

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetVolRange (
    [out] pInt32 pMinVol,
    [out] pInt32 pMaxVol );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function returns the range over which volume settings can be made.

Parameters

Table 426

| Name    | Description                                            |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| pMinVol | Output parameter returning the minimum volume setting. |
| pMaxVol | Output parameter returning the maximum volume setting. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

True

Action

None.

Postcondition

- \*pMinVol == avc.minVolSetting
- \*pMaxVol == avc.maxVolSetting

7.2.7.5.1.2      SetVol

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t SetVol ( [in] Int32 volume );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function sets the master volume setting. The volume setting can be made in integral steps in the range [avc.minVolSetting, avc.maxVolSetting]. Setting the volume will not unmute the audio, if it is currently muted.

**Parameters****Table 427**

| Name   | Description                                                                                                                                   |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| volume | The master volume setting. How this is mapping into a physical volume parameter e.g. in dB, can be described in a platform instance document. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

$\text{avc.minVolSetting} \leq \text{volume} \leq \text{avc.maxVolSetting}$

**Action**

— Modify `avc.volume`

**Postcondition**

`avc.volume == volume`

**7.2.7.5.1.3 GetVol****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetVol ( [out] pInt32 pVolume );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the current master volume setting.

**Parameters****Table 428**

| Name    | Description                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pVolume | Output parameter returning the current master volume setting. How this is mapping into a physical volume parameter e.g. in dB, can be described in a platform instance document. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

## Action

None.

## Postcondition

\*pVolume == avc.volume

### 7.2.7.5.1.4 GetMuteSupported

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMuteSupported ( [out] pBool pMuteSupported );
```

## Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

## Description

Returns whether mute control is supported by the AVC.

## Parameters

Table 429

| Name           | Description                                                              |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMuteSupported | Output parameter returning whether mute control is supported by the AVC. |

## Return Values

Standard.

## Precondition

True

## Action

None.

## Postcondition

\*pMuteSupported == avc.muteSupported

### 7.2.7.5.1.5 SetMute

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t SetMute ( [in] Bool mute );
```

## Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded



**Description**

Sets whether the audio input stream of the AVC should be muted or not.

**Parameters**

**Table 430**

| Name              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>mute</code> | Defines whether the audio input stream of the AVC should be muted or not. It is <code>True</code> when the audio input stream should be muted. It is <code>False</code> when the audio input stream should not be muted. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

`avc.muteSupported == True`

**Action**

— `Modify` `avc.mutedState`

**Postcondition**

`avc.mutedState == mute`

**7.2.7.5.1.6 GetMuted**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t GetMuted ( [out] pBool pMuted );`

**Qualifiers**

- `synchronous`
- `thread-safe`

**Description**

Returns whether the audio input stream of the AVC is currently muted or not.

**Parameters**

**Table 431**

| Name                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pMuted</code> | Output parameter that indicates whether the audio input stream of the AVC is currently muted or not. It is <code>True</code> when the audio input stream is muted. It is <code>False</code> when the audio input stream is not muted. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

`True`

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pMuted == avc.mutedState`

7.2.7.5.2    **uhlAvolCtrlLoudProc**

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This interface provides control for switching-on (or off) Loudness-processing.

**Interface ID**  
`uuid( BE7AAE44-F02A-4C04-BADC-6BB5DD070B45 )`

7.2.7.5.2.1    **SetLoudProc**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t SetLoudProc ( [in] Bool loudProc );`

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - single-threaded

**Description**  
Sets whether Loudness-processing functionality should be switched on or off.

**Parameters**

**Table 432**

| Name                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>loudProc</code> | Defines whether Loudness-processing functionality should be switched on or off. It is <code>True</code> when Loudness-processing functionality should be switched on. It is <code>False</code> when Loudness-processing functionality should be switched off. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
`True`

- Action**
- Modify `avc.loudnessState`

**Postcondition**

avc.loudnessState == loudProc

**7.2.7.5.2.2      GetLoudProc**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t GetLoudProc ( [out] pBool pLoudProc );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns whether Loudness-processing is switched on or off.

**Parameters**

**Table 433**

| Name      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pLoudProc | Output parameter that indicates whether Loudness-processing is currently switched on or off. It is True when the Loudness-processing is currently switched on. It is False when Loudness-processing is currently switched off. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pLoudProc == avc.loudnessState

**7.2.8      UhlEqualizer**

**7.2.8.1      IConcepts**

**7.2.8.1.1      Introduction**

Equalization allows the user to vary the tonal characteristics of the signal being reproduced in an audio chain or system. This is achieved by dividing the input signal into (overlapping) frequency bands and varying the gain in each of the frequency bands.

Depending on the platform realization, the channels of a multi-channel input might be grouped in so called channel sets. The channels within a set have the same frequency bands and the same adjustments (for these frequency bands). Different channel sets can have independent adjustments.

The interface specification defined in this document provides the ability to apply tonal control on a multi-channel audio input using an equalizer.

**NOTE** This interface does not provide an explicit Tone Control interface. However, Tone Control functionality can be realised using this interface via a 2 or 3 bands Equalizer.

## 7.2.8.2 Types & Constants

### 7.2.8.2.1 Public Types & Constants

#### 7.2.8.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

#### 7.2.8.2.1.2 uhEqualizer\_Channel\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhEqualizer_Channel_t {
    uhEqualizer_ChanelLeft      = 0x00000001,
    uhEqualizer_ChanelRight     = 0x00000002,
    uhEqualizer_ChanelCenter    = 0x00000004,
    uhEqualizer_ChanelSurround  = 0x00000008,
    uhEqualizer_ChanelLeftSurround = 0x00000010,
    uhEqualizer_ChanelRightSurround = 0x00000020,
    uhEqualizer_ChanelCenterSurround = 0x00000040,
    uhEqualizer_ChanelLeftCenter = 0x00000080,
    uhEqualizer_ChanelRightCenter = 0x00000100
} uhEqualizer_Channel_t, *puhEqualizer_Channel_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

##### Description

Values of this type represent channels of the audio input stream.

This type allows the user to identify a channel on which given set of gains can be applied for equalization.

##### Values

**Table 434**

| Name                             | Description              |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| uhEqualizer_ChanelLeft           | Left channel.            |
| uhEqualizer_ChanelRight          | Right channel.           |
| uhEqualizer_ChanelCenter         | Center channel.          |
| uhEqualizer_ChanelSurround       | Surround channel.        |
| uhEqualizer_ChanelLeftSurround   | Left surround channel.   |
| uhEqualizer_ChanelRightSurround  | Right surround channel.  |
| uhEqualizer_ChanelCenterSurround | Center surround channel. |
| uhEqualizer_ChanelLeftCenter     | Left center channel.     |

| Name                        | Description           |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| uhEqualizer_ChanRightCenter | Right center channel. |

7.2.8.2.1.3      **uhEqualizer\_ChannelSet\_t**

**Signature**  
**typedef** Int32 uhEqualizer\_ChannelSet\_t, \*puhEqualizer\_ChannelSet\_t;

**Qualifiers**  
— enum-set

**Description**  
Values of this type represent sets of channels of the audio input stream.  
  
This type allows the user to identify a set of channels on which specified gain can be applied for equalization.

**Constraints**  
None.

7.2.8.2.1.4      **uhEqualizer\_Ntf\_t**

**Signature**  
**typedef enum** \_uhEqualizer\_Ntf\_t {  
    uhEqualizer\_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,  
    uhEqualizer\_GainChanged = 0x00000002  
} uhEqualizer\_Ntf\_t, \*uhEqualizer\_Ntf\_t;

**Qualifiers**  
— enum-element

**Description**  
Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface uhlAdrcNtf.

**Values**

**Table 435**

| Name                            | Description                       |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhEqualizer_SubscriptionChanged | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged. |
| uhEqualizer_GainChanged         | Represents OnGainChanged.         |

#### 7.2.8.2.1.5      **uhEqualizer\_NtfSet\_t**

##### **Signature**

**typedef** Int32 uhEqualizer\_NtfSet\_t, \*puhEqualizer\_NtfSet\_t;

##### **Qualifiers**

— enum-set

##### **Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhEqualizer_Ntf_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

##### **Constraints**

None.

#### 7.2.8.2.1.6      **uhEqualizer\_AllNtfs**

##### **Signature**

**const** uhEqualizer\_NtfSet\_t uhEqualizer\_AllNtfs = 0x00000003;

##### **Qualifiers**

None.

##### **Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhEqualizer_Ntf_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

#### 7.2.8.2.2      **Model Types & Constants**

None.

### 7.2.8.3      **Logical Component**

#### 7.2.8.3.1      **Interface-Role Model**

Figure 59 depicts the interface-role model of the Equalizer Logical Component.

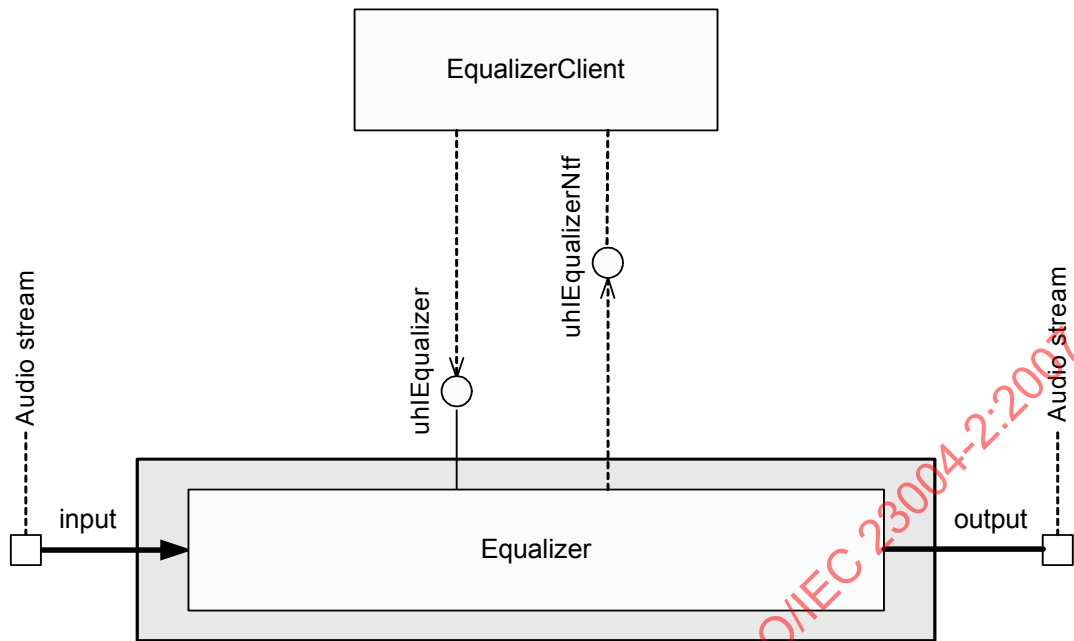


Figure 59 — Interface Role Model

The Equalizer Logical Component consists of the `Equalizer` role.

The role provides a control interface (`UhIEqualizer`). The `UhIEqualizer` interface allows the user to query the Equalizer parameters and to adjust the signal level of the audio input stream in defined frequency bands. This control interface is meant for use by the Equalizer client (represented by `EqualizerClient` role). An `EqualizerClient` can optionally provide call back interface `uhIEqualizerNtf`. This allows it to receive notifications of events in the Equalizer.

7.2.8.3.2 Diversity

7.2.8.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 436

| Role            | Interface       | Presence  |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------|
| Equalizer       | UhIEqualizer    | mandatory |
| EqualizerClient | uhIEqualizerNtf | optional  |

7.2.8.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 437

| Role      | Attribute   |
|-----------|-------------|
| Equalizer | nrFreqBands |
|           | minGain     |
|           | maxGain     |
|           | minFreq     |
|           | maxFreq     |

| Role | Attribute          |
|------|--------------------|
|      | centerFreq         |
|      | maxFreqBandNum     |
|      | numSuppChannelSets |
|      | pChannelSet        |

### 7.2.8.3.2.3 Constraints

- numSuppChannelSets  $\geq 1$
- maxFreqBandNum  $\geq 1$
- minGain  $\leq$  maxGain
- For each c1 in {0 .. numSuppChannelSets -1}
  - For each c2 in {0 .. numSuppChannelSets -1}
    - If c1  $\neq$  c2
      - pChannelSet[c1] & pChannelSet[c2] = 0
- For each c in {0 .. numSuppChannelSets -1}
  - $1 \leq \text{nrFreqBands}[c] \leq \text{maxFreqBandNum}$
- For each c in {0 .. numSuppChannelSets -1}
  - For each i in {0 .. nrFreqBands[c] -1}
    - minFreq[c][i]  $\leq$  centerFreq[c][i]
    - centerFreq[c][i]  $\leq$  maxFreq[c][i]
    - minFreq[c][i]  $\leq$  minFreq[c][i+1]
    - centerFreq[c][i]  $\leq$  centerFreq[c][i+1]
    - maxFreq[c][i]  $\leq$  maxFreq[c][i+1]

### 7.2.8.3.3 Instantiation

#### 7.2.8.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 438**

| Type      | Object | Multiplicity |
|-----------|--------|--------------|
| Equalizer | eq     | 1            |

#### 7.2.8.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- For each c in {0 .. numSuppChannelSets -1}
  - For each i in {0 .. nrFreqBands[c] -1}
    - gain[c][i] == minGain

#### 7.2.8.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".



## 7.2.8.4 Roles

### 7.2.8.4.1 Equalizer

#### Signature

```
role Equalizer {
    const UInt32      numSuppChannelSets;
    const uhEqualizer_ChannelSet_t  pChannelSet[numSuppChannelSets];
    const UInt32      nrFreqBands[numSuppChannelSets];
    const UInt32      maxFreqBandNum;
    const UInt32      minFreq[numSuppChannelSets][maxFreqBandNum];
    const UInt32      centerFreq[numSuppChannelSets][maxFreqBandNum];
    const UInt32      maxFreq[numSuppChannelSets][maxFreqBandNum];
    const Int32       minGain;
    const Int32       maxGain;
    Int32             gain[numSuppChannelSets][maxFreqBandNum];
}
```

#### Qualifiers

— root

#### Description

The `Equalizer` role adjusts the signal level of the audio input stream in defined frequency bands. Depending on the platform realization, the channels of a multi-channel input might be grouped in so called channel sets. The channels within a set have the same frequency bands and the same adjustments (for these frequency bands). Different channel sets can have independent adjustments.

#### Independent Attributes

Table 439

| Name                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>numSuppChannelSets</code> | Number of supported channel-sets.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>pChannelSet</code>        | Array of length <code>numSuppChannelSets</code> containing the channel-sets provided by the platform instance.                                                                                                          |
| <code>nrFreqBands</code>        | Array containing the number of frequency bands for every channel-set.                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>maxFreqBandNum</code>     | Maximum number of supported frequency bands that can possibly occur in the equalizer for any channel-set.                                                                                                               |
| <code>minFreq</code>            | Lower frequency cutoff per frequency band and per channel-set.                                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>centerFreq</code>         | Centre frequency value per frequency band and per channel-set.                                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>maxFreq</code>            | Higher frequency cutoff per frequency band and per channel-set.                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>minGain</code>            | The minimum gain that can be applied to the audio input stream of the Equalizer. How the integer gain value translates into physical gain value for example in dB, will be described in the platform instance document. |
| <code>maxGain</code>            | The maximum gain that can be applied to the audio input stream of the Equalizer. How the integer gain value translates into physical gain value for example in dB, will be described in the platform instance document. |
| <code>gain</code>               | Current gains associated with a frequency band and channel-set. How the integer gain value translates into physical gain value for example in dB, will be described in the platform instance document.                  |

#### Dependent Attributes

None.

Invariants

- For each *c* in {0 .. numSuppChannelSets -1}
  - For each *i* in {0 to nrFreqBands[*c*] -1}
    - minGain ≤ gain[*c*][*i*] ≤ maxGain

Instantiation

See subclause 7.2.8.3.3

Streaming Behavior

Equalizer has an audio signal as input stream. Signal frequency components inside equalizer frequency band, for the specified channels are adjusted (attenuated or amplified) based on the Equalizer gain settings and audio data is sent on the output streaming path.

Active Behavior

The main event associated with the Equalizer role is as follows:

Table 440

| Event                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Action        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Whenever Equalizer detects a change in the gain for a channel-set and a frequency band, it notifies the EqualizerClient (see uhIEqualizerNtf). Such a change is necessarily the effect of an equalizer setting made by the user; it does not autonomously originate from the stream. | OnGainChanged |

Execution Constraints

None.

7.2.8.4.2 EqualizerClient

Signature

role EqualizerClient {}

Qualifiers

- actor

Description

An Equalizer Client represents a user of UhIEqualizer interface.

Execution Constraints

None.

7.2.8.5 Interfaces

7.2.8.5.1 uhIEqualizer

Qualifiers

None.

**Description**

This interface provides functions to query the `Equalizer` parameters and control the gain applied on the input stream.

**Interface ID**

uuid(37B9694E-15F9-47F6-92A3-CB0D91ADE964)

**7.2.8.5.1.1      Subscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhIEqualizerNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhEqualizer_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**7.2.8.5.1.2      Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe(
    [in] uhIEqualizerNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhEqualizer_NtfSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function.

**7.2.8.5.1.3      GetNumSuppChannelSets**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetNumSuppChannelSets ([out] pUInt32 pNumSuppChannelSets);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the number of supported channel-sets

**Parameters**

**Table 441**

| Name                | Description                                                      |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pNumSuppChannelSets | Output parameter returning the number of supported channel-sets. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

Precondition

True

Action

None.

Postcondition

\*pNumSuppChannelSets == eq.numSuppChannelSets

7.2.8.5.1.4 GetSuppChannelSets

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppChannelSets (  
    [in] UInt32 number,  
    [out, size_is(number)] puhEqualizer_ChannelSet_t pChannelSet);
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function returns the supported channel-sets.

Parameters

Table 442

| Name        | Description                                                                   |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| number      | Parameter specifying the number of elements in the output channel-set array.  |
| pChannelSet | Output parameter returning a pointer to an array with supported channel-sets. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

number ≥ eq.numSuppChannelSets

Action

None.

Postcondition

- For each c in {0 .. eq.numSuppChannelSets -1}
  - \*pChannelSet[c] == eq.pChannelSet[c]
- For each c in {eq.numSuppChannelSets .. number -1}
  - \*pChannelSet[c] == 0

7.2.8.5.1.5      **GetNrFreqBands**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetNrFreqBands(  
    [in] uhEqualizer_ChannelSet_t  channelSet,  
    [out] pUInt32                   pNrFreqBands);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the number of frequency bands available for the specified channel set in the Equalizer.

**Parameters**

**Table 443**

| Name         | Description                                                       |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| channelSet   | Channel-set for which the number of frequency bands is requested. |
| pNrFreqBands | Output parameter returning the number of frequency bands.         |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

```
channelSet in eq.pChannelSet[]
```

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- Let *c* be the index of channelSet in eq.pChannelSet[]
- \*pNrFreqBands == eq.nrFreqBands[c]

7.2.8.5.1.6      **GetBandRange**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetBandRange(  
    [in] uhEqualizer_ChannelSet_t  channelSet,  
    [in] UInt32                    freqBand,  
    [out] pUInt32                  pMinFreq,  
    [out] pUInt32                  pMaxFreq,  
    [out] pUInt32                  pCenterFreq);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the minimum and maximum range as well as the center frequency for the specified frequency band and channel-set.

**Parameters****Table 444**

| Name        | Description                                                                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| channelSet  | Channel-set for which the frequency range is requested.                                   |
| freqBand    | Frequency band for which the frequency range is requested.                                |
| pMinFreq    | Output parameter specifying the minimum frequency value for the specified frequency band. |
| pMaxFreq    | Output parameter specifying the maximum frequency value for the specified frequency band. |
| pCenterFreq | Output parameter specifying the center frequency value for the specified frequency band.  |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- channelSet in eq.pChannelSet[]
- Let c be the index of channelSet in eq.pChannelSet[]
- $0 \leq \text{freqBand} < \text{eq.nrFreqBands}[c]$

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pMinFreq == eq.minFreq[c][freqBand]
- \*pMaxFreq == eq.maxFreq[c][freqBand]
- \*pCenterFreq == eq.centerFreq[c][freqBand]

**7.2.8.5.1.7 GetGainRange****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetGainRange(
    [out] pInt32 pMinGain,
    [out] pInt32 pMaxGain);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the minimum and the maximum value of the gain of the Equalizer.

**Parameters****Table 445**

| Name     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMinGain | Output parameter that indicates the minimum gain that can be applied to the audio input stream of the Equalizer. How the integer gain value translates into physical gain value for example in dB, will be described in the platform instance document. |
| pMaxGain | Output parameter that indicates the maximum gain that can be applied to the audio input stream of the Equalizer. How the integer gain value translates into physical gain value for example in dB, will be described in the platform instance document. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pMinGain == eq.minGain
- \*pMaxGain == eq.maxGain

**7.2.8.5.1.8 SetGain****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetGain (
    [in] uhEqualizer_ChannelSet_t  channelSet,
    [in] UInt32                     freqBand,
    [in] Int32                      gain );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the gain for the specified channel-set in the specified frequency band.

**Parameters****Table 446**

| Name       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| channelSet | The channel-set for which to set the gain.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| freqBand   | The frequency band for which to set the gain.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| gain       | The gain value to be applied to the channels of the specified channel-set and the specified frequency band. How the integer gain value translates into physical gain value for example in dB, will be described in the platform instance document. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
— channelSet in eq.pChannelSet[]  
— Let c be the index of channelSet in eq.pChannelSet[]  
—  $0 \leq \text{freqBand} < \text{eq.nrFreqBands}[c]$   
—  $\text{eq.minGain} \leq \text{gain} \leq \text{eq.maxGain}$

**Action**  
Modify eq.gain[c][freqBand]

**Postcondition**  
eq.gain[c][freqBand] == gain

7.2.8.5.1.9      **GetGain**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetGain(  
    [in]    uhEqualizer\_ChannelSet\_t    channelSet,  
    [in]    UInt32                      freqBand,  
    [out] pInt32                        pGain);

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
— thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns the gain for the specified channel-set and the specified frequency band.

**Parameters**

Table 447

| Name       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| channelSet | The channel-set for which the gain is requested.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| freqBand   | The frequency band for which the gain is requested.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| pGain      | Output parameter returning the gain value applied to the channels of the specified channel-set and the specified frequency band. How the integer gain value translates into physical gain value for example in dB, will be described in the platform instance document. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
— channelSet in eq.pChannelSet[]  
— Let c be the index of channelSet in eq.pChannelSet[]  
—  $0 \leq \text{freqBand} < \text{eq.nrFreqBands}[c]$



**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```
*pGain == eq.gain[c][freqBand]
```

**7.2.8.5.2 uhEqualizerNtf****Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in an `Equalizer`. The `Subscribe` function of `UhEqualizer` can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**

```
uuid(9FE97C31-2AEA-46A3-9113-5B811CE3E6EC)
```

**7.2.8.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged(
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhEqualizer_NtfSet_t notif);
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

**7.2.8.5.2.2 OnGainChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnGainChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhEqualizer_ChannelSet_t channelSet,
    [in] UInt32 freqBand,
    [in] Int32 gain);
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the `Equalizer` to notify a client that the gain of a frequency band of a channel-set has changed.

## Parameters

Table 448

| Name       | Description                                                   |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie     | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| channelSet | The channel-set for which the gain has changed.               |
| freqBand   | The frequency band for which the gain has changed.            |
| gain       | The new gain value.                                           |

## Return Values

None.

## Precondition

True

## Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

## Postcondition

True

## 7.2.9 UhlOutConf

See 6.1.4.

## 7.2.10 UhlSpkr

## 7.2.10.1 Concepts

## 7.2.10.1.1 Introduction

The current specification details the software interfaces for the Speaker-set logical component. The following subclauses detail the basics of the construct.

## 7.2.10.1.1.1 Speaker Pins

A speaker set is a set of loudspeakers that have a functional relation, for example: the 5.1-channel speaker installation, or the headphones. In the current context, a Speaker-set is the logical component (LC) that acts as a **sink in the audio playback chain**. Since the actual speakers are located external to the audio processing platform, each speaker is represented as a "speaker pin" (SP) internal to the Speaker-set LC. A speaker pin therefore has attributes that are settable by the user.

## 7.2.10.1.1.2 Functionality Associated with the Speaker-set

The Speaker-set LC provides the following functionality and associated control for inputs into speaker pins:

- **Bass-redirection:** direction of low frequency audio into speaker pins that support low-frequency playback [6]. Bass redirection has an on-off control for operation. The LC implementation will use internal logic to choose an appropriate bass-redirection scheme for the given speaker capabilities and the input stream configuration. This internal logic may be compliant with bass redirection modes in use in the industry (e.g.

the Dolby Digital bass-redirection modes) or not. The LC therefore provides the user with interfaces to specify speaker capabilities<sup>11</sup>, but explicit bass-redirection modes e.g. corresponding to the Dolby specifications are not programmable by the user. Further details are provided in subclause Bass Redirection.

- **Trim control**: a boost or attenuation provided per speaker pin to fine-tune speaker output levels during set-up, and to provide differential volume setting (between speakers) at run-time.
- **Delay**: To compensate for speaker placement in appropriate use context. The delay setting is provided to the user under the assumption that the user has the relevant knowledge for his choice of parameters.

The model for this logical component is illustrated in Figure 60. The association of input channels to speaker pins is a fixed one, see Table 449, and becomes active at the input of the bass-redirection module although the physical connection to the speaker pins happens further downstream. What this essentially means is that bass-redirection, trim and delay settings are speaker pin specific rather than being channel-specific for all practical purposes.

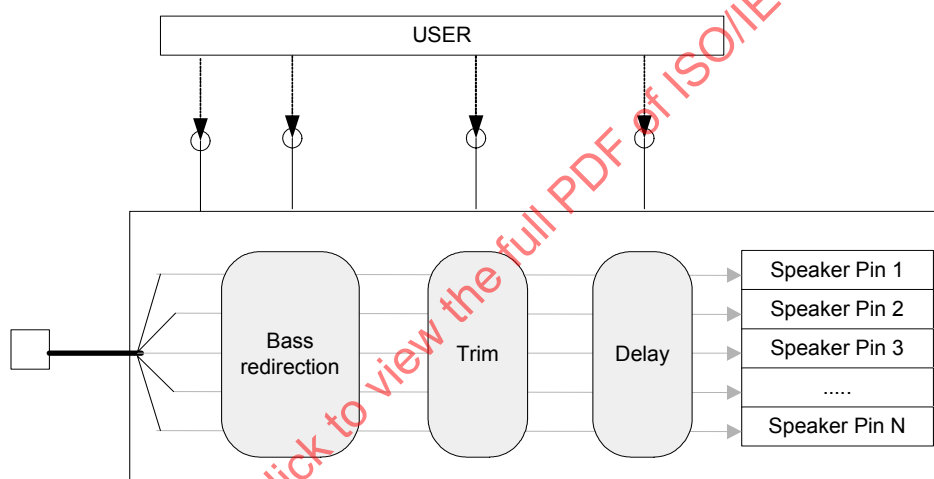


**Figure 60 — Functional model for the Speaker-set / headphones LC. Trim and delay are logically executed after bass redirection. The horizontal lines denote audio channels. The interface notations are to be taken notionally to understand control links.**

**Table 449 — Channel-to-speaker association**

| Channel         | Speaker Pin               | Speaker Pin Description      |
|-----------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| Left            | uhSpkr_SpkrLeft           | Left speaker pin.            |
| Right           | uhSpkr_SpkrRight          | Right speaker pin.           |
| Center          | uhSpkr_SpkrCenter         | Center speaker pin.          |
| Surround        | uhSpkr_SpkrSurround       | Surround speaker pin.        |
| Left surround   | uhSpkr_SpkrLeftSurround   | Left surround speaker pin.   |
| Right surround  | uhSpkr_SpkrRightSurround  | Right surround speaker pin.  |
| Center surround | uhSpkr_SpkrCenterSurround | Center surround speaker pin. |

<sup>11</sup> This is an implicit way of specifying bass redirection requirements.

| Channel      | Speaker Pin            | Speaker Pin Description   |
|--------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| Left center  | uhSpkr_SpkrLeftCenter  | Left center speaker pin.  |
| Right center | uhSpkr_SpkrRightCenter | Right center speaker pin. |
| Lfe          | uhSpkr_SpkrSubWoofer   | Sub-woofer speaker pin.   |

### Trim Control and Delay

Trim control and delay are set for a speaker system for a given room placement during set-up. This allows the user to get best surround effects over a central region commonly termed as the "sweet spot", where listeners are expected to be seated. During the set-up of the speakers, the trim (and delay) settings can be performed: this requires the bass-redirection processing to be turned off. There is no autonomous deactivation (and reactivation) of the bass-redirection processing. It is up to the client to deactivate the bass-redirection processing (if at that moment it is applied) before trim settings are done and to reactive it (if it was previously applied) after trim settings are done.

Trim control doubles up as a mechanism to provide differential volume control between speakers over and above a master volume control. This is because trim settings are made for specific speaker pins, and it is therefore possible to derive "balance" controls or separate volume settings for speaker-pairs from these at the level of the end-user.

### Bass Redirection

Bass redirection involves direction of the bass signal component from audio channels to speakers that can play it. The speaker configuration is sufficient for determining how bass redirection should be done. E.g., if a 5.1 channel stream is played through a speaker configuration comprising 5 satellite speakers (mid-range) and a sub-woofer, bass redirection would involve collecting the low-frequency signals from all the 5 channels, adding these to the LFE channel and (re)directing the result into the sub-woofer. For the current LC, speaker characterization is therefore clubbed into the bass redirection interface.

Characterization of generic bass-redirection modes (i.e. the routing of bass to speakers that can play the same) may be made independently by a platform provider in the platform instance document or may be compliant with modes in use in the industry. The most common example of bass redirection modes in use in the industry are the ones from Dolby, detailed in Appendix D of the Dolby licensee information manual [22]<sup>12</sup>.

## 7.2.10.2 Types & Constants

### 7.2.10.2.1 Public Types & Constants

#### 7.2.10.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

---

<sup>12</sup> The Dolby LIM uses the term "large" to denote speakers that can play the full range of audio signals, and "small" to denote speakers that cannot play frequencies below 120 Hz. The corresponding terminology in this specification comprises "full-range" and "mid-range" respectively.

### 7.2.10.2.1.2 uhSpkr\_SpkrPinIndex\_t

#### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhSpkr_SpkrPinIndex_t {
    uhSpkr_SpkrLeft           = 0x00000001,
    uhSpkr_SpkrRight          = 0x00000002,
    uhSpkr_SpkrCenter         = 0x00000004,
    uhSpkr_SpkrSurround       = 0x00000008,
    uhSpkr_SpkrLeftSurround   = 0x00000010,
    uhSpkr_SpkrRightSurround  = 0x00000020,
    uhSpkr_SpkrCenterSurround = 0x00000040,
    uhSpkr_SpkrLeftCenter     = 0x00000080,
    uhSpkr_SpkrRightCenter    = 0x00000100,
    uhSpkr_SpkrSubWoofers     = 0x00000200
} uhSpkr_SpkrPinIndex_t, *puhSpkr_SpkrPinIndex_t;
```

#### Qualifiers

— enum-element

#### Description

This type is used to denote the speaker pins. It is assumed that a maximum of 10 speaker pins needs to be addressed.

#### Values

Table 450

| Name                      | Description                  |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| uhSpkr_SpkrLeft           | Left speaker pin.            |
| uhSpkr_SpkrRight          | Right speaker pin.           |
| uhSpkr_SpkrCenter         | Center speaker pin.          |
| uhSpkr_SpkrSurround       | Surround speaker pin.        |
| uhSpkr_SpkrLeftSurround   | Left surround speaker pin.   |
| uhSpkr_SpkrRightSurround  | Right surround speaker pin.  |
| uhSpkr_SpkrCenterSurround | Center surround speaker pin. |
| uhSpkr_SpkrLeftCenter     | Left center speaker pin.     |
| uhSpkr_SpkrRightCenter    | Right center speaker pin.    |
| uhSpkr_SpkrSubWoofers     | Sub-woofer speaker pin.      |

### 7.2.10.2.1.3 uhSpkr\_SpkrPinIndexSet\_t

#### Signature

```
typedef Int32
uhSpkr_SpkrPinIndexSet_t, *p
uhSpkr_SpkrPinIndexSet_t;
```

#### Qualifiers

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of speaker pins.

**Constraints**

None.

**7.2.10.2.1.4    uhSpkr\_SpkrType\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpkr_SpkrType_t {
    uhSpkr_TypeFullRange = 0,
    uhSpkr_TypeMidRange  = 1,
    uhSpkr_TypeSubWoofers = 2
} uhSpkr_SpkrType_t, *puhSpkr_SpkrType_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This type is used to denote the speaker frequency response range.

**Values****Table 451**

| Name                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpkr_TypeFullRange  | Denotes speakers that can handle the entire range of audio signals (20-20000 Hz), including the sub-woofer range (less than 120 Hz). These are referred to as "large" in Dolby context, because of their usual size. |
| uhSpkr_TypeMidRange   | Denotes speakers that have impaired capabilities in the sub-woofer range of frequencies (less than 120 Hz). These are referred to as "small" in Dolby context.                                                       |
| uhSpkr_TypeSubWoofers | Sub-woofer, catering to the very low frequency range only. Usually associated with the LFE component in multi-channel audio.                                                                                         |

**Remarks**

- In terms of bass-redirection, the sub-woofer can only play 120 Hz low-pass filtered audio signals, the mid-range speaker 120 Hz high-pass filtered signals and the full-range speaker can play the complete signal.

**7.2.10.2.1.5    uhSpkr\_BassRedirStdCompliance\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSpkr_BassRedirStdCompliance_t {
    uhSpkr_StdNone = 0,
    uhSpkr_StdDolby = 1
} uhSpkr_BassRedirStdCompliance_t, *puhSpkr_BassRedirStdCompliance_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent standards to which the mapping between the speaker configuration and the routing of the bass signal is compliant.

**Values****Table 452**

| <b>Name</b>     | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhSpkr_StdNone  | The mapping between the speaker configuration and the routing of the bass signal does not follow any specific standard. The actual mapping is determined by the platform implementation and may be indicated in the related platform instance document.        |
| uhSpkr_StdDolby | The mapping between the speaker configuration and the routing of the bass signal follows the specification of the Dolby Digital standard; see Appendix D of [22] for details over the bass redirection mode corresponding to a specific speaker configuration. |

**7.2.10.2.2 Model Types & Constants****7.2.10.2.2.1 SpkrAttrib****Signature**

```
typedef struct {
    uhSpkr_SpkrType_t    speakerType;
    Int32                 trim;
    UInt32                delay;
    Bool                  active;
} SpkrAttrib;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This structure captures the attributes associated with each speaker pin.

**Fields****Table 453**

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| speakerType | The type of speaker connected to the speaker pin in terms of frequency response.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| trim        | The trim setting of the speaker pin in integral steps.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| delay       | The delay setting associated with the speaker pin in integral steps.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| active      | This value indicates whether the speaker pin is active (i.e. in use) in the LC instance. When it is <b>True</b> the speaker pin is active (i.e. in use) and audio data can be outputted on it. When it is <b>False</b> the speaker pin is not active (i.e. not in use) and no audio data can be outputted on it. |

**Constraints**

None.

7.2.10.3 Logical Component

7.2.10.3.1 Interface-Role Model

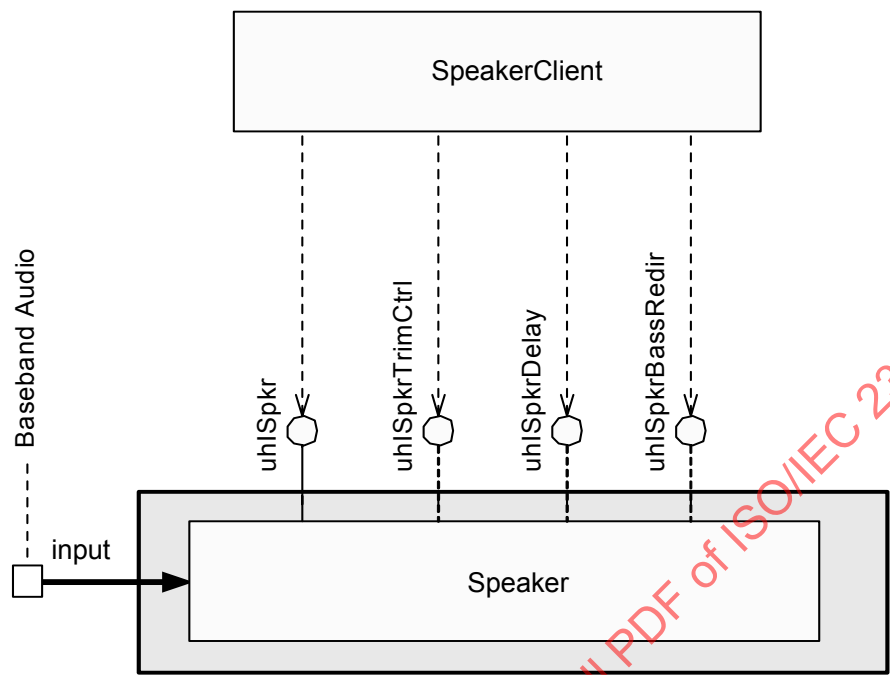


Figure 61 — Interface Role Model for Speaker-set logical component.

The grey box in Figure 61 denotes a Speaker-set logical component containing a single Speaker role.

This role provides one mandatory (solid line) control interface called UhISpkr and three optional interfaces called uhISpkrTrimCtrl, uhISpkrDelay and

uhISpkrBassRedir to its client, the SpeakerClient.

7.2.10.3.2 Diversity

7.2.10.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 454

| Role    | Interface        | Presence  |
|---------|------------------|-----------|
| Speaker | UhISpkr          | mandatory |
|         | uhISpkrTrimCtrl  | optional  |
|         | uhISpkrDelay     | optional  |
|         |                  | optional  |
|         | uhISpkrBassRedir |           |



7.2.10.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 455

| Role    | Attribute              |
|---------|------------------------|
| Speaker | suppSpeakerPins        |
|         | minTrim                |
|         | maxTrim                |
|         | minDelay               |
|         | maxDelay               |
|         | bassRedirStdCompliance |

7.2.10.3.2.3 Constraints

- minTrim ≤ maxTrim
- minDelay ≤ maxDelay
- suppSpeakerPins != 0x00000000

7.2.10.3.3 Instantiation

7.2.10.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 456

| Type    | Object | Multiplicity |
|---------|--------|--------------|
| Speaker | spkr   | 1            |

7.2.10.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- For each *j* in *uhSpkr\_SpkrPinIndex\_t*
  - *spkr.pSpeakers[j].speakerType* == *uhSpkr\_TypeFullRange*
  - *spkr.pSpeakers[j].trim* == *minTrim*
  - *spkr.pSpeakers[j].delay* == *minDelay*
  - *spkr.pSpeakers[j].active* == *False*
  - *spkr.currentBassRedirectionState* == *False*

7.2.10.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

7.2.10.4 Roles

7.2.10.4.1 Speaker

Signature

```
role Speaker {
  const
  uhSpkr_SpkrPinIndexSet_t          suppSpeakerPins;
  SpkrAttrib                         pSpeakers[uhSpkr_SpkrPinIndex_t];
  const Int32                        minTrim;
  const Int32                        maxTrim;
  const UInt32                       minDelay;
  const UInt32                       maxDelay;
  Bool                               currentBassRedirectionState;
  const uhSpkr_BassRedirStdCompliance bassRedirStdCompliance;
}
```

Qualifiers

— root

Description

The `Speaker` role provides (de)activation of individual speaker pins. In addition, it provides interfaces for bass-redirection, trim control and delay functionality<sup>13</sup>.

Independent Attributes

Table 457

| Name                                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>suppSpeakerPins</code>             | The set of speaker pins that are available and for which activation is supported.                                                                                                                  |
| <code>pSpeakers</code>                   | Array containing speaker pin attributes. Each element of this array corresponds to one speaker pin.                                                                                                |
| <code>minTrim</code>                     | The minimum trim setting possible for the speaker pins. The actual translation of this value into a gain (e.g. in dB) will be provided in the platform instance document.                          |
| <code>maxTrim</code>                     | The maximum trim setting possible for the speaker pins. The actual translation of this value into a gain (e.g. in dB) will be provided in the platform instance document.                          |
| <code>minDelay</code>                    | The minimum delay setting possible for the speaker pins. The actual translation of this value into an absolute delay (e.g. in ms) will be provided in the platform instance document.              |
| <code>maxDelay</code>                    | The maximum delay setting possible for the speaker pins. The actual translation of this value into an absolute delay (e.g. in ms) will be provided in the platform instance document.              |
| <code>currentBassRedirectionState</code> | The current bass redirection state i.e. whether bass redirection is active. It is <code>True</code> when bass redirection is active. It is <code>False</code> when bass redirection is not active. |
| <code>bassRedirStdCompliance</code>      | The standard to which the mapping between the speaker configuration and the routing of the bass signal is compliant.                                                                               |

13 Details of these functions are provided in subclause 7.2.10.1.1.2.

**Dependent Attributes**

None.

**Invariants**

- For each *j* in *uhSpkr\_SpkrPinIndex\_t*
  - If *j* in *suppSpeakerPins*
    - $\text{minTrim} \leq \text{pSpeakers}[j].\text{trim} \leq \text{maxTrim}$
    - $\text{minDelay} \leq \text{pSpeakers}[j].\text{delay} \leq \text{maxDelay}$
  - else
    - $\text{pSpeakers}[j].\text{speakerType} == \text{uhSpkr\_TypeFullRange}$
    - $\text{pSpeakers}[j].\text{trim} == \text{minTrim}$
    - $\text{pSpeakers}[j].\text{delay} == \text{minDelay}$
    - $\text{pSpeakers}[j].\text{active} == \text{False}$

**Instantiation**

A *Speaker* role is always instantiated as part of a *Speaker-set* logical component; see subclause 7.2.10.3.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

The *Speaker* role has only one streaming input and no streaming output. The input stream contains uncompressed audio data.

The *Speaker* role applies if necessary bass redirection, trim and/or delay to the audio input stream.

The *Speaker* role has one or more speaker pins. Audio channels of the audio input stream are coupled to specific speaker pins according to a fixed scheme, see Table 449.

When a speaker pin is inactive, no audio data can be outputted on it.

When a speaker pin is active, audio data is only outputted when the associated channel contains data, otherwise the speaker pin is muted and no data is outputted.

Speakers can be connected to the speaker pins to reproduce the processed audio stream.

**Active Behavior**

None.

**Execution Constraints**

None.

**7.2.10.4.2 SpeakerClient****Signature**

```
role SpeakerClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

- actor

**Description**

A *Speaker Client* represents a user of the *UhISpkr* (and optionally of *uhISpkrTrimCtrl*, *uhISpkrDelay* and

uhISpkrBassRedir) interface.

Execution Constraints

None.

7.2.10.5 Interfaces

7.2.10.5.1 uhlSpkr

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This interface is used to (de)activate speaker pins.

Interface ID

uuid( E7E1DADC-1E42-47B3-B808-B35849AFBA02 )

Remarks

— The logical model follows the depiction in Figure 60.

7.2.10.5.1.1 GetSuppSpkrPins

Signature

uhErrorCode\_t GetSuppSpkrPins ( [out] p  
uhSpkr\_SpkrPinIndexSet\_t pSuppSpkrPins );

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function returns the set of speaker pins that are available and for which activation is supported.

Parameters

Table 458

| Name          | Description                                                                                                  |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSuppSpkrPins | Output parameter returning the set of speaker pins that are available and for which activation is supported. |

Return Values

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

`*pSuppSpkrPins == spkr.suppSpeakerPins`

**7.2.10.5.1.2 SetSpkrActive**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetSpkrActive (  
    [in] uhSpkr_SpkrPinIndex_t spkrPinIndex,  
    [in] Bool active );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function activates or deactivates a given speaker pin in the LC instance.

**Parameters**

**Table 459**

| Name                      | Description                                                       |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>spkrPinIndex</code> | The speaker pin for which the activation/deactivation is queried. |
| <code>active</code>       | Variable specifying the speaker pin activation.                   |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

`(spkr.suppSpeakerPins & spkrPinIndex) == spkrPinIndex`

**Action**

- `Modify spkr.pSpeakers[spkrPinIndex].active`

**Postcondition**

`spkr.pSpeakers[spkrPinIndex].active == active`

7.2.10.5.1.3    **GetSpkrActive**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSpkrActive (  
    [in] uhSpkr_SpkrPinIndex_t spkrPinIndex,  
    [out] pBool pActive );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns whether a given speaker pin is active in the LC instance.

**Parameters**

**Table 460**

| Name         | Description                                                                     |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| spkrPinIndex | The speaker pin for which the current activation/deactivation state is queried. |
| pActive      | Output parameter stating whether the speaker pin is activated.                  |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

```
(spkr.suppSpeakerPins & spkrPinIndex) == spkrPinIndex
```

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```
*pActive == spkr.pSpeakers[spkrPinIndex].active
```

7.2.10.5.2    **uhlSpkrTrimCtrl**

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface is used to make and query trim settings for the speaker set<sup>14</sup>. Trim settings are individualized to speaker pins.

<sup>14</sup> Refer to subclause 7.2.10.1.1.2 Trim Control and Delay.

Interface ID

uuid( 956D698A-13D2-44C2-8BA0-78E19617B243 )

7.2.10.5.2.1 GetTrimRange

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetTrimRange (
    [out] pInt32 pMinTrim,
    [out] pInt32 pMaxTrim );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function returns the range over which trim settings can be made in integral steps. The actual trim values (e.g. in dB) for this range will be specified in the platform instance document.

Parameters

Table 461

| Name     | Description                                           |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| pMinTrim | Output parameter specifying the minimum trim setting. |
| pMaxTrim | Output parameter specifying the maximum trim setting. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

True

Action

None.

Postcondition

- \*pMinTrim == spkr.minTrim
- \*pMaxTrim == spkr.maxTrim

Remarks

- The range is common to all speaker pins.

**7.2.10.5.2.2 SetTrim****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetTrim (
    [in] uhSpkr_SpkrPinIndex_t spkrPinIndex,
    [in] Int32 trim );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function sets the trim for a given speaker pin in integral steps in the range [spkr.minTrim, spkr.maxTrim].

**Parameters****Table 462**

| Name         | Description                                                                             |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| spkrPinIndex | The speaker pin for which trim is set.                                                  |
| trim         | The trim setting specified in integral steps in the range [spkr.minTrim, spkr.maxTrim]. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- (spkr.suppSpeakerPins & spkrPinIndex) == spkrPinIndex
- spkr.minTrim ≤ trim ≤ spkr.maxTrim

**Action**

- Modify spkr.pSpeakers[spkrPinIndex].trim

**Postcondition**

- spkr.pSpeakers[spkrPinIndex].trim == trim

**7.2.10.5.2.3 GetTrim****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetTrim (
    [in] uhSpkr_SpkrPinIndex_t spkrPinIndex,
    [out] pInt32 pTrim );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe



**Description**

This function returns the current trim setting for a given speaker pin.

**Parameters**

**Table 463**

| Name         | Description                                                                                                       |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| spkrPinIndex | The speaker pin for which the trim setting is queried.                                                            |
| pTrim        | Output parameter specifying the current trim setting in integral steps in the range [spkr.minTrim, spkr.maxTrim]. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

(spkr.suppSpeakerPins & spkrPinIndex) == spkrPinIndex

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pTrim == spkr.pSpeakers[spkrPinIndex].trim

**7.2.10.5.3 uhlSpkrDelay**

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface is used to make and query delay settings for the speaker set. Delay settings are individualized to speaker pins based on speaker placement.

**Interface ID**

uuid( BEDE30FA-BD66-4176-9009-F4A6FEE1AAA2 )

**7.2.10.5.3.1 GetDelayRange**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetDelayRange (
    [out] pUInt32 pMinDelay,
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxDelay );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the range of delay settings that can be made on the path to a speaker pin in integral steps. The actual delay values (e.g. in ms) for this range will be specified in the platform instance document.

**Parameters****Table 464**

| Name      | Description                                            |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| pMinDelay | Output parameter specifying the minimum delay setting. |
| pMaxDelay | Output parameter specifying the maximum delay setting. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pMinDelay == spkr.minDelay
- \*pMaxDelay == spkr.maxDelay

**Remarks**

- The range is common to all speaker pins.

**7.2.10.5.3.2 SetDelay****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetDelay (
    [in] uhSpkr_SpkrPinIndex_t spkrPinIndex,
    [in] UInt32 delay );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function sets a delay on the path to a given speaker pin in integral steps in the range [spkr.minDelay, spkr.maxDelay].

**Parameters****Table 465**

| Name                      | Description                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>spkrPinIndex</code> | The speaker pin for which delay is set.                                                                                       |
| <code>delay</code>        | The delay setting on the path to the speaker pin in integral steps in the range <code>[spkr.minDelay, spkr.maxDelay]</code> . |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `(spkr.suppSpeakerPins & spkrPinIndex) == spkrPinIndex`
- `spkr.minDelay <= delay <= spkr.maxDelay`

**Action**

- Modify `spkr.pSpeakers[spkrPinIndex].delay`

**Postcondition**

`spkr.pSpeakers[spkrPinIndex].delay == delay`

**7.2.10.5.3.3 GetDelay****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetDelay (
    [in] uhSpkr_SpkrPinIndex_t spkrPinIndex,
    [out] pUInt32 pDelay );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the current delay setting for a given speaker pin.

**Parameters****Table 466**

| Name                      | Description                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>spkrPinIndex</code> | The speaker pin for which the delay setting is queried.                                                                                                           |
| <code>pDelay</code>       | Output parameter specifying the current delay setting on the path to the speaker pin in integral steps in the range <code>[spkr.minDelay, spkr.maxDelay]</code> . |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `(spkr.suppSpeakerPins & spkrPinIndex) == spkrPinIndex`

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
— `*pDelay == spkr.pSpeakers[spkrPinIndex].delay`

7.2.10.5.4 `uhISpkrBassRedir`

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This interface is used to enable or disable bass redirection functionality. The bass redirection routing is selected by the implementation in best conformity with the speaker-set specified<sup>15</sup>.

**Interface ID**  
`uuid( 882AC8EE-4B37-4251-8A25-8939D5CEEFB8 )`

7.2.10.5.4.1 **Enable**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t Enable ( [in] Bool active );`

**Qualifiers**  
— `synchronous`  
— `single-threaded`

**Description**  
This function activates or deactivates bass redirection. When bass-redirection is activated, a best match is found between the speaker set and the input stream configuration.

**Parameters**

Table 467

| Name                | Description                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>active</code> | Bass redirection activation set by the user. It is <code>True</code> when bass-redirection needs to be activated. It is <code>False</code> when bass-redirection needs to be deactivated |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

<sup>15</sup> Refer to subclause 7.2.10.1.1.2 Bas Redirection.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Modify `spkr.currentBassRedirectionState`

**Postcondition**

`spkr.currentBassRedirectionState == active`

**7.2.10.5.4.2    GetEnabled**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t GetEnabled ( [out] pBool pActive );`

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the current bass redirection activation setting.

**Parameters**

**Table 468**

| Name                 | Description                                                                  |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pActive</code> | Output parameter indicating the current bass redirection activation setting. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

`*pActive == spkr.currentBassRedirectionState`

**7.2.10.5.4.3    SetSpkrType**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t SetSpkrType (`  
    `[in] uhSpkr_SpkrPinIndex_t spkrPinIndex,`  
    `[in] uhSpkr_SpkrType_t spkrType );`

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

This function sets the speaker type for a given speaker pin. The bass redirection routing is automatically decided by the LC based on the speaker pin type specification.

**Parameters**

Table 469

| Name         | Description                                      |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| spkrPinIndex | The speaker pin for which the type is specified. |
| spkrType     | The speaker type specification.                  |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

(spkr.suppSpeakerPins & spkrPinIndex) == spkrPinIndex

**Action**

— Modify spkr.pSpeakers[spkrPinIndex].speakerType

**Postcondition**

spkr.pSpeakers[spkrPinIndex].speakerType == spkrType

7.2.10.5.4.4    **GetSpkrType**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSpkrType (
    [in] uhSpkr_SpkrPinIndex_t spkrPinIndex,
    [out] puhSpkr_SpkrType_t pSpkrType );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the current speaker type for a given speaker pin.

**Parameters**

Table 470

| Name         | Description                                            |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| spkrPinIndex | The speaker pin for which the speaker type is queried. |
| pSpkrType    | Output parameter specifying the current speaker type.  |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
(spkr.suppSpeakerPins & spkrPinIndex) == spkrPinIndex

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
\*pSpkrType == spkr.pSpeakers[spkrPinIndex].speakerType

7.2.10.5.4.5     **GetStandardCompliance**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetStandardCompliance (  
    [out] puhSpkr\_BassRedirStdCompliance\_t pStandard),

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - thread-safe

**Description**  
This function returns the standard to which the mapping between the speaker configuration and the routing of the bass signal is compliant, when bass redirection is activated.

**Parameters**

Table 471

| Name      | Description                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStandard | Output parameter returning the standard to which the mapping between the speaker configuration and the routing of the bass signal is compliant, when bass redirection is activated. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
\*pStandard == spkr.bassRedirStdCompliance

8 Video interface suites

8.1 Broadcast Video decoding

8.1.1 UhlAnaAvDem

8.1.1.1 Concepts

8.1.1.1.1 Introduction

The function of an audio and video demodulator is to receive an IF, demodulate the signal, and output the resulting Y/CVBS video and encoded audio signal.

Apart from analog demodulation, the analog audio & video demodulator determines the TV system of the incoming signal so the sound carrier can be located.

8.1.1.2 Types & Constants

8.1.1.2.1 Public Types & Constants

8.1.1.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

8.1.1.2.1.2 uhAnaAvDem\_Notification\_t

Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAnaAvDem_Notification_t {
    uhAnaAvDem_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemFound       = 0x00000002,
    uhAnaAvDem_CarrierFound        = 0x00000004
} uhAnaAvDem_Notification_t, *puhAnaAvDem_Notification_t;
```

Qualifiers

— enum-element

Description

Values of this type represent the notification functions in the interface uhIAnaAvDemNtf. They can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

Values

Table 472

| Name                           | Description                       |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhAnaAvDem_SubscriptionChanged | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged. |
| uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemFound       | Represents OnTvSystemDetected.    |
| uhAnaAvDem_CarrierFound        | Represents OnCarrierFound.        |



**8.1.1.2.1.3      uhAnaAvDem\_Notifications\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAnaAvDem_Notifications_t, *puhAnaAvDem_Notifications_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Defines the set-type for uhAnaAvDem\_Notification\_t.

**8.1.1.2.1.4      uhAnaAvDem\_AllNotifications****Signature**

```
const uhAnaAvDem_Notifications_t uhAnaAvDem_AllNotifications = 0x00000007;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The set of all notifications of uhAnaAvDem\_Notification\_t.

**8.1.1.2.1.5      uhAnaAvDem\_TvSystem\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAnaAvDem_TvSystem_t {
    uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemInvalid = 0x80000000,
    uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemUnknown = 0x40000000,
    uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemBG      = 0x00000001,
    uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemDK      = 0x00000002,
    uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemI       = 0x00000004,
    uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemH       = 0x00000008,
    uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemL       = 0x00000010,
    uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemL1      = 0x00000020,
    uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemM       = 0x00000040,
    uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemN       = 0x00000080
} uhAnaAvDem_TvSystem_t, *puhAnaAvDem_TvSystem_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the possible TV systems for the platform. Not all these TV systems have to be supported.

**Values****Table 473****Name**

uhAnaAvDem\_TvSystemInvalid

**Description**

The TV system property is temporarily not available.

| Name                       | Description                                                                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemUnknown | The TV system property is available, yet could not be determined.             |
| uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemBG      | TV system BG: 50 Hz, 625 lines, sound carrier at 5.5 MHz                      |
| uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemDK      | TV system DK: 50 Hz, 625 lines, sound carrier at 6.5 MHz                      |
| uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemI       | TV system I: 50 Hz, 625 lines, sound carrier at 6.0 MHz                       |
| uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemH       | TV system H: 50 Hz, 625 lines, sound carrier at 5.5 MHz                       |
| uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemL       | TV system L: 50 Hz, 625 lines, sound carrier at 6.5 MHz (positive modulated)  |
| uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemL1      | TV system L: 50 Hz, 625 lines, sound carrier at -6.5 MHz (positive modulated) |
| uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemM       | TV system M: 60 Hz, 525 lines, sound carrier at 4.5 MHz                       |
| uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemN       | TV system N: 50 Hz, 625 lines, sound carrier at 4.5 MHz                       |

#### 8.1.1.2.1.6 uhAnaAvDem\_TvSystemSet\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemSet_t, *puhAnaAvDem_TvSystemSet_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Defines the set-type for uhAnaAvDem\_TvSystem\_t.

#### 8.1.1.2.1.7 uhAnaAvDem\_Modulation\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAnaAvDem_Modulation_t {
    uhAnaAvDem_ModulationUnknown = 0,
    uhAnaAvDem_ModulationPositive = 1,
    uhAnaAvDem_ModulationNegative = 2
} uhAnaAvDem_Modulation_t, *puhAnaAvDem_Modulation_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum

##### Description

Values of this type represent the supported analog modulation types for the platform.

##### Values

**Table 474**

| Name                          | Description                       |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhAnaAvDem_ModulationUnknown  | The modulation type is not known. |
| uhAnaAvDem_ModulationPositive | Positive modulation.              |
| uhAnaAvDem_ModulationNegative | Negative modulation.              |

8.1.1.2.2 Model Types & Constants

None.

8.1.1.3 Logical Component

8.1.1.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 62 depicts the interface-role model of the analog audio & video demodulator logical component. It shows the control and notification interfaces and the roles involved with this logical component.

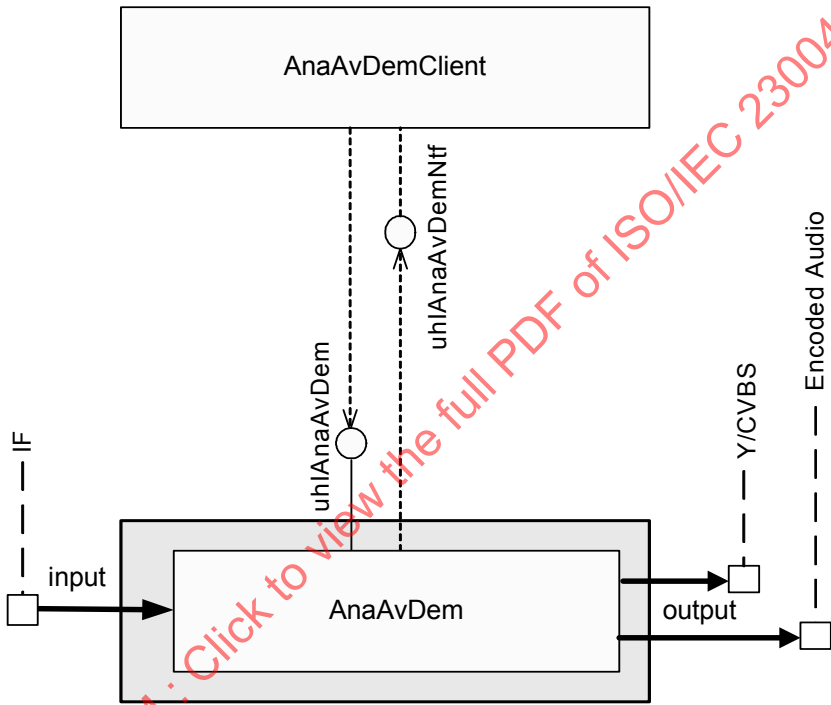


Figure 62 — Interface Role Model

The grey box in Figure 62 denotes an analogue audio & video demodulator logical component containing the AnaAvDem role providing one mandatory (solid line) control interfaces to its clients.

Clients can optionally provide call-back interfaces allowing them to receive notifications of events in the AnaAvDem.

8.1.1.3.2 Diversity

8.1.1.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 475

| Role     | Interface      | Presence  |
|----------|----------------|-----------|
| AnaAvDem | uhIAnaAvDem    | mandatory |
| AnaAvDem | uhIAnaAvDemNtf | optional  |

#### 8.1.1.3.2.2 Configurable Items

The following table contains a list of role attributes that can be given a value upon creation of the logical component. For a description of the attributes see Roles subclause, and for how they are initialized see subclause 8.1.1.3.3.

**Table 476**

| Role     | Attribute     |
|----------|---------------|
| AnaAvDem | suppTvSystems |

#### 8.1.1.3.2.3 Constraints

The set of supported TV systems `tun.suppTvSystems` does not include `uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemUnknown` or `uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemInvalid` but only existing TV systems from the range `[uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemBG..uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemN]`. See the *Invariants* of AnaAvDem role (subclause 8.1.1.4) for the complete constraints.

#### 8.1.1.3.3 Instantiation

##### 8.1.1.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 477**

| Type     | Object | Multiplicity |
|----------|--------|--------------|
| AnaAvDem | Aavd   | 1            |

##### 8.1.1.3.3.2 Initial State

`Aavd.setTvSystem == uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemUnknown`

`Aavd.actualTvSystem == uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemUnknown`

`Aavd.currentModulation == uhAnaAvDem_ModulationUnknown`

`Aavd.carrierPresent == False`

##### 8.1.1.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

8.1.1.4 Roles

8.1.1.4.1 AnaAvDem

Signature

```
role AnaAvDem {
    const uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemSet_t suppTvSystems;
    uhAnaAvDem_TvSystem_t          setTvSystem;
    uhAnaAvDem_TvSystem_t          actualTvSystem;
    uhAnaAvDem_Modulation_t        currentModulation;
    Bool                            carrierPresent;
}
```

Qualifiers

— root

Description

An AnaAvDem controls the analog demodulation attributes.

Independent Attributes

Table 478

| Name              | Description                                              |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| suppTvSystems     | The supported TV systems.                                |
| setTvSystem       | The TV system as it is set via the SetTvSystem function. |
| actualTvSystem    | The detected TV system.                                  |
| currentModulation | The current modulation.                                  |
| carrierPresent    | The presence (absence) of a valid signal                 |

Invariants

```
setTvSystem in suppTvSystems or
actualTvSystem == uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemUnknown

actualTvSystem in suppTvSystems or
actualTvSystem == uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemUnknown or
actualTvSystem == uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemInvalid
```

Instantiation

A AnaAvDem role is always instantiated as part of an analog audio & video demodulator logical component; see subclause 8.1.1.3.3.

Streaming Behavior

The AnaAvDem role tunes the incoming IF signal into a demodulated signal that can be handled by analog audio and video decoder.

Active Behavior

The AnaAvDem has standard notification behavior (see uhIAnaAvDemNtf) except for the following event:

Table 479

| Event                                                                                     | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A TV system is detected on the input after automatic detection was requested.             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Modify <code>actualTvSystem</code></li> <li>— Notify <code>OnTvSystemDetected( True, actualTvSystem )</code></li> </ul>                                             |
| The TV system detection has been aborted via a new <code>SetTvSystem</code> function call | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Modify <code>setTvSystem</code></li> <li>— Modify <code>actualTvSystem</code></li> <li>— Notify <code>OnTvSystemDetected( False, actualTvSystem )</code></li> </ul> |
| A signal (carrier) has been found after a new frequency has been set into the tuner       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Modify <code>carrierPresent</code></li> <li>— Notify <code>OnCarrierFound( cookie, True );</code></li> </ul>                                                        |

#### 8.1.1.4.2 AnaAvDemClient

##### Signature

**role** `AnaAvDemClient {}`

##### Qualifiers

— actor

##### Description

A `AnaAvDemClient` role represents a user of the control interfaces offered by the `AnaAvDem` role. It can optionally provide the notification interfaces to receive notifications of events generated by the `AnaAvDem` role. No constraints apply to the behavior of the `AnaAvDemClient` role other than those implied by Figure 62.

#### 8.1.1.5 Interfaces

##### 8.1.1.5.1 uhlAnaAvDem

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This interface of the `AnaAvDem` role provides control of the demodulation parameters.

##### Interface ID

`uuid( 6A14206F-794E-4224-A139-180FCFB2F32F )`

##### Remarks

— In the following function specifications the name `Aavd` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface.

8.1.1.5.1.1      **Subscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (  
    [in] uhIAAnaAvDemNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAnaAvDem_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

8.1.1.5.1.2      **Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhIAAnaAvDemNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAnaAvDem_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

8.1.1.5.1.3      **GetSuppTvSystems**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppTvSystems ( [out] puhAnaAvDem_TvSystemSet_t pSystems );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the TV systems that are supported.

**Parameters**

Table 480

| Name     | Description                                                   |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSystems | Output parameter returning the TV systems that are supported. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

## Postcondition

`*pSystems == Aavd.supptvSystems`

### 8.1.1.5.1.4 SetTvSystem

## Signature

`uhErrorCode_t SetTvSystem ( [in] uhAnaAvDem_TvSystem_t system );`

## Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

## Description

This function sets the TV system into the hardware. `Aavd.setTvSystem` and `Aavd.actualTvSystem` are changed to the new value. Any current TV system detection is interrupted.

## Parameters

Table 481

| Name                | Description                                   |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <code>system</code> | Input parameter indicating the new TV system. |

## Return Values

Standard.

## Precondition

`system in Aavd.supptvSystems`

## Action

- Modify `Aavd.setTvSystem`
- Modify `Aavd.actualTvSystem`

## Postcondition

- `Aavd.setTvSystem == system`
- `Aavd.actualTvSystem == system`

### 8.1.1.5.1.5 DetectTvSystem

## Signature

`uhErrorCode_t DetectTvSystem ( );`

## Qualifiers

- asynchronous

## Description

This function starts the TV system detection. After the detection finishes the notification `OnTvSystemDetected` is generated.



**Precondition**

carrierPresent == True

**Action**

— Modify actualTvSystem

**Postcondition**

actualTvSystem == uhAnaAvDem\_TvSystemUnknown

**Asynchronous Action**

— Modify actualTvSystem

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

True

**8.1.1.5.1.6      GetTvSystem**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t GetTvSystem ( [out] puhAnaAvDem\_TvSystem\_t pSystem );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the TV system as it was set via the SetTvSystem function.

**Parameters**

**Table 482**

| Name    | Description                                            |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| pSystem | Output parameter returning the TV system that was set. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pSystem == Aavd.setTvSystem

8.1.1.5.1.7      **GetActualTvSystem**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t GetActualTvSystem ( [out] puhAnaAvDem\_TvSystem\_t pSystem );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the current TV system.

**Parameters**

**Table 483**

| Name    | Description                                       |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------|
| pSystem | Output parameter returning the current TV system. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pSystem == Aavd.actualTvSystem

8.1.1.5.1.8      **SetModulation**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t SetModulation ( [in] uhAnaAvDem\_Modulation\_t modulation );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function sets the modulation to positive or negative.

**Parameters****Table 484**

| Name                    | Description                                                 |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>modulation</code> | Input parameter indicating positive or negative modulation. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**`modulation ≠ uhAnaAvDem_ModulationUnknown`**Action**— Modify `Aavd.currentModulation`**Postcondition**`Aavd.currentModulation == modulation`**Remarks**

— Often, the modulation can not be detected by the underlying hardware and must be set to the right type before any other preset related action is done.

**8.1.1.5.1.9 GetModulation****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetModulation ( [out] puhAnaAvDem_Modulation_t pModulation );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the modulation as it was set via the `SetModulation` function.

**Parameters****Table 485**

| Name                     | Description                                             |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pModulation</code> | Output parameter returning the modulation that was set. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

## Action

None.

## Postcondition

\*pModulation == Aavd.currentModulation

### 8.1.1.5.1.10 GetCarrierPresence

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetCarrierPresence ( [out] pBool pCarrier );
```

## Qualifiers

— synchronous

## Description

The function returns the presence of a signal carrier.

## Parameters

Table 486

| Name     | Description                                        |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------|
| pCarrier | The presence (True) or absence (False) of a signal |

## Precondition

True

## Postcondition

\*pCarrier == carrierPresent

### 8.1.1.5.2 uhlAnaAvDemNtf

## Qualifiers

None.

## Description

This interface can be provided by each instance of an AnaAvDemClient role that wants to receive notifications of events that occur in the AnaAvDem. The Subscribe function of uhlAnaAvDem can be used to subscribe to these events.

## Interface ID

uuid( 2F5B3F55-FDD7-43b1-BE36-E002E992969F )

### 8.1.1.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

## Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
```

```
[in] UInt32 cookie,  
[in] uhAnaAvDem_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**  
— onsubscriptionchanged-function

8.1.1.5.2.2      **OnTvSystemDetected**

**Signature**  
[**async**] Void OnTvSystemDetected (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] Bool result,  
    [in] uhAnaAvDem\_TvSystem\_t tvSystem );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function notifies subscribed clients that the detection of a new TV system is finished or aborted.

**Parameters**

Table 487

| Name     | Description                                                                                                                |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie   | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                              |
| result   | The detection did find a supported TV system (True) or the detection did not succeed or the detection was aborted (False). |
| tvSystem | The actual TV system.                                                                                                      |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

8.1.1.5.2.3      **OnCarrierFound**

**Signature**  
[**async**] Void OnCarrierFound (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] Bool carrier );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**

This function notifies subscribed clients that a transition from no carrier to a carrier has been detected on the input. After this notification the client can start detection of signal properties like color system and TV system.

**Parameters****Table 488**

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Description</b>                                            |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie      | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| carrier     | The presence (True) or absence (False) of the carrier.        |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.2 UhlAnaVdec****8.1.2.1 Concepts****8.1.2.1.1 Introduction**

Video signals are a way of transferring visual information from one point to another. The information may be from a VCR, channel broadcast, DVD player, game computer, or many other sources. The receiving device is usually a display like a television or monitor. On the sources side the signal is encoded, on the receiving side the signal is decoded first in order to display it. In case the signal is analog, the decoding can be done by an AVD. There are many ways of encoding the video data into an analog video signal, so the input of the AVD may be varied. Its output is always a video signal according the YUV video format, which is suitable for further processing in the video path. The AVD supplies information about the video signal to the AVD client and can be controlled by AVD client by means of its interfaces. The concepts relevant to understanding the AVD will be explained in the remainder of this subclause.

**8.1.2.1.2 Video Coding Formats****8.1.2.1.2.1 Color data**

Basically, the information in the video signal has to tell what (color data) and when (video timing) to display. The color can be expressed completely by using three orthogonal color components, setting up a color space.

Used color spaces for video coding are:

- RGB: Color space of basic colors red, green, and blue.
- YUV: Twisted and scaled RGB space, such that one component contains the luminance (black and white) information, U and V the chrominance (color type) information.

- YPbPr: Scaled version of the YUV color space.
- YCbCr: Digital version of the YPbPr color space, not detectable for an AVD (mentioned only for completeness).

The highest quality of video is obtained when the three components of the color space are transmitted separately, so using three signals. Video coding formats using three signals for color are called component video formats or CVI formats. They are named according to the color space used, so RGB, YUV, or YPbPr format. However, three separate signals take a lot of bandwidth, which was especially a problem in the early days of video. Therefore, a so-called composite format, CVBS, was defined, where all color data is contained in one signal. In this case the AVD has to separate the several components upon reception of the data. Because the different components in one signal may interfere with one another, the picture quality of a composite video signal is often less than that of a component video signal. An improvement of the CVBS format is the Y/C format, where two signals are used for transmitting the color data, one for the luminance (Y) and one for the chrominance (C). This is a format based on the YUV color space, where the U and V component are still together in a composite signal. Because the Y/C format is still partly composite, we will treat it in this specification as a composite video format.

#### 8.1.2.1.2.2 Video Timing

Of course, the color data only cannot specify a moving picture. Therefore, it has to be specified when the color is to be displayed. The notion of a moving picture is obtained by transmitting a series of still images. The start of a new image is indicated by adding timing information to the video signal, called vertical sync. The image in turn is composed of several scan lines, transmitted from top to bottom, where each start of a new line is indicated in the video signal with horizontal sync information. The sync information may be transmitted with the color data, like in the CVBS format, or in separate signal(s), like in the RGB format.

#### 8.1.2.1.2.3 Interlaced versus progressive scan

In order to save bandwidth, a technique has been defined called interlacing. Here the images contain alternately just the odd or just the even lines. On the other hand, when each image contains all lines, the technique is called progressive scan or progressive in short. A full image, containing all lines, is called a frame, and an image composed of just the even or odd lines is called a field. By definition, two fields make up a frame. The speed at which the images are sent is called the vertical frequency or field frequency (which is actually the frame frequency for progressive). Typical field frequencies used for television are 50Hz or 60Hz, meaning 50 or 60 fields per second. Note that with displaying a 50Hz progressive signal twice as much information is processed per second as with displaying a 50Hz interlaced signal. This becomes clear when defining the horizontal frequency or line frequency: this is the field frequency multiplied with the number of lines per field. Since the progressive field contains twice as many lines as the interlaced field, the horizontal frequency is also twice as high with progressive. Typically, the number of lines per field is 525 or 625 for progressive and 262.5 or 312.5 for interlaced. So for example, the horizontal frequency for a 50Hz progressive signal with 625 lines per field is 31250 Hz. In order to express the horizontal frequency independent of the exact number of lines and field frequency, it is also written as 1Fh for interlaced and 2Fh for progressive. An interlaced signal can also be 2Fh, if each field is encoded twice in the video signal, doubling the field frequency. In the same way, even 3Fh signals exist. Finally, there exists a signal, which is produced by some game computers and is called non-interlaced. This is much like a normal interlaced signal, where all fields just contain the odd lines, or all fields contain the even lines. Like with a normal interlaced signal the horizontal frequency is 1Fh. The AVD considers this kind of signal to be interlaced.

#### 8.1.2.1.2.4 Video properties

The video properties are information about the video signal that may be useful to know for the AVD client. Most of the properties tell something about the video timing.

They are:

- Video presence: indicates whether a video signal is present at all. Usually this is derived from the detection of sync and color system.

- Video coding type: one of the types as defined in subclause 8.1.2.1.2.1.
- Interlaced mode: indicates whether the mode is interlaced or progressive, see subclause 8.1.2.1.2.3.
- Field frequency: see subclause 8.1.2.1.2.3.
- Number of frame lines: see subclause 8.1.2.1.2.3.
- VCR signal presence: indicates whether the video signal is coming from a VCR or not. The AVD is able to detect this because such signal often suffers from so called phase jumps. This means that the VCR tape is stretched, and consequently the sync is not in place anymore. Maybe for this reason, maybe for another reason, it can be useful for the AVD client to know that the signal is from a VCR.
- Copy protection: Indicates that a copy-protected signal has been detected, that is, the signal may be played but not be provided for recording on any of the outputs.

#### 8.1.2.1.2.5 Comb filter

A comb filter can separate the luminance and chrominance component of a CVBS video signal, improving the resulting picture quality. The filter is named a comb filter because pieces of the luminance and chrominance signal appear alternately in the CVBS video signal. So in order to filter one of them the filter needs a comb-like shape. The comb filter is only applicable in case of a video signal according the PAL or NTSC color system standard, SECAM signals cannot be “combed”. A Y/C coded signal and component video signals do not need to be “combed”, because the luminance and chrominance are already separated in those signals. The AVD client can enable or disable the comb filter of the AVD. Usually it will be desirable to enable the comb filter because (in most cases) it improves the picture quality. In some cases however, this improvement may be undesirable. For example, when the picture is displayed in two windows at the same time (double window) and the picture in one window can be improved with the comb filter, but not in the other window. This would show annoying quality differences between the two pictures. For that reason the client would like to disable the comb filter for the window that can be “combed”.

#### 8.1.2.1.2.6 Hue

Technically, hue is defined as the wavelength of the color. It is the type of color, independent of the luminance. Thus, it is specified by the angle (or phase) between the U and V component when taking the YUV color space as a basis. As the U and V information is combined in composite video signals, phase errors may occur with encoding or decoding, yielding a wrong hue. The AVD offers means to adjust the hue in order to compensate for phase errors. Usually this function is only relevant for video signals according the NTSC color system standard, because in PAL or SECAM signals phase errors are cancelled out by definition.

#### 8.1.2.1.3 Color systems

Historically, three basic color systems for transmitting color TV signals have been developed: NTSC, PAL and SECAM. All three color systems use a composite video format, based on the YUV color space. The luminance information is transmitted on the so-called carrier frequency, the chrominance information on the sub-carrier frequency or frequencies. Several variants of the basic color systems exist, indicated by a letter like B, M, K, etc. These letters refer to the way the audio is encoded in the signal and are as such beyond the scope of this specification. However, in some of these variants, the color information is on a different sub-carrier frequency also making them also relevant for this specification. We will describe all combinations of basic color system and sub-carrier frequency in the remainder of this paragraph.

##### 8.1.2.1.3.1 NTSC

NTSC was the first color system to be developed for television in the United States of America. Several variants exist, but all have a field frequency of 60 Hz and a number of frame lines of 525. The color sub-carrier frequency is located at 3.579545 or at 4.433619 MHz. The last variant never occurs in broadcasts anymore, it is only transmitted by some multi-standard VCR's.



### 8.1.2.1.3.2 PAL

PAL was developed in Europe to be an improvement of the NTSC color system, with respect to the hue errors. In PAL signals, the phase of the V component is reversed every line, producing complementary errors. This enables the receiver to average the phase errors and cancel them out. This is the reason why hue control is not needed with PAL signals. PAL color systems have a field frequency of 50 or 60 Hz, and a number of frame lines of 525 or 625. The color sub-carrier frequency can be at 3.575611, 3.582056, or 4.433619 MHz.

### 8.1.2.1.3.3 SECAM

SECAM was developed in France, and like PAL, to be an improvement of the NTSC color system with respect to the hue errors. This is achieved by sending the U and V information each alternating line. By comparing two consecutive fields the receiver can cancel out the phase errors, so also SECAM signals need no hue correction. All SECAM variants have a field frequency of 60 Hz and transmit 625 lines per frame. The SECAM color system standard sends the U and V information on two different sub-carrier frequencies, being 4.250000 and 4.406250 MHz respectively.

## 8.1.2.2 Types & Constants

### 8.1.2.2.1 Public Types & Constants

#### 8.1.2.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

#### 8.1.2.2.1.2 uhAnaVdec\_ValStat\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAnaVdec_ValStat_t {
    uhAnaVdec_ValStatInvalid = -2,
    uhAnaVdec_ValStatUnknown = -1,
    uhAnaVdec_ValStatKnown = 1
} uhAnaVdec_ValStat_t, *puhAnaVdec_ValStat_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This type represents the validity status of the related property/properties.

##### Values

Table 489

| Name                     | Description                                                              |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAnaVdec_ValStatInvalid | The property/properties are temporarily not available.                   |
| uhAnaVdec_ValStatUnknown | The property/properties are available, yet they could not be determined. |
| uhAnaVdec_ValStatKnown   | The property/properties are available and determined.                    |

8.1.2.2.1.3 **uhAnaVdec\_VideoCoding\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAnaVdec_VideoCoding_t {
    uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingInvalid = -2,
    uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingUnknown = -1,
    uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingCVBS    = 1,
    uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingYC      = 2,
    uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingYUV     = 3,
    uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingYPbPr   = 4,
    uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingRGB     = 5
} uhAnaVdec_VideoCoding_t, *puhAnaVdec_VideoCoding_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type describe the video coding used for the analogue video signal input.

**Values****Table 490**

| Name                         | Description                                                             |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingInvalid | The video coding property is temporarily not available.                 |
| uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingUnknown | The video coding property is available, yet it could not be determined. |
| uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingCVBS    | CVBS video coding.                                                      |
| uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingYC      | Y/C video coding.                                                       |
| uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingYUV     | YUV video coding.                                                       |
| uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingYPbPr   | YPbPr video coding.                                                     |
| uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingRGB     | RGB video coding.                                                       |

8.1.2.2.1.4 **uhAnaVdec\_ScanType\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAnaVdec_ScanType_t {
    uhAnaVdec_ScanTypeInvalid = -2,
    uhAnaVdec_ScanTypeUnknown = -1,
    uhAnaVdec_ScanTypeInterlaced = 1,
    uhAnaVdec_ScanTypeProgressive = 2
} uhAnaVdec_ScanType_t, *puhAnaVdec_ScanType_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type describe the way the field(s) of the analogue video signal input are constructed into frames.

**Values****Name**

uhAnaVdec\_ScanTypeInvalid  
 uhAnaVdec\_ScanTypeUnknown  
 uhAnaVdec\_ScanTypeInterlaced  
 uhAnaVdec\_ScanTypeProgressive

**Table 491****Description**

The scan type property is temporarily not available.  
 The scan type property is available, yet it could not be determined.  
 Each frame consists of two fields.  
 Each frame consists of one field.

**8.1.2.2.1.5      uhAnaVdec\_ColorSystem\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAnaVdec_ColorSystem_t {
    uhAnaVdec_ColorSystemInvalid    = 0x80000000,
    uhAnaVdec_ColorSystemUnknown    = 0x40000000,
    uhAnaVdec_ColorSystemAuto       = 0x00000001,
    uhAnaVdec_ColorSystemPal        = 0x00000002,
    uhAnaVdec_ColorSystemSecam      = 0x00000004,
    uhAnaVdec_ColorSystemNtsc       = 0x00000008
} uhAnaVdec_ColorSystem_t, *puhAnaVdec_ColorSystem_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type describe in which way the color information of the analogue video signal input is coded.

**Values****Table 492****Name**

uhAnaVdec\_ColorSystemInvalid  
 uhAnaVdec\_ColorSystemUnknown  
 uhAnaVdec\_ColorSystemAuto  
 uhAnaVdec\_ColorSystemPal  
 uhAnaVdec\_ColorSystemSecam  
 uhAnaVdec\_ColorSystemNtsc

**Description**

The color system property is temporarily not available.  
 The color system property is available, yet it could not be determined.  
 The color system will be determined automatically and changes will be notified.  
 Color system PAL.  
 Color system SECAM.  
 Color system NTSC.

**8.1.2.2.1.6      uhAnaVdec\_ColorSystemSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAnaVdec_ColorSystemSet_t, *puhAnaVdec_ColorSystemSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

This type represents sets of type uhAnaVdec\_ColorSystem\_t.

8.1.2.2.1.7 **uhAnaVdec\_LineFreq\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAnaVdec_LineFreq_t {
    uhAnaVdec_LineFreqInvalid = -2,
    uhAnaVdec_LineFreqUnknown = -1,
    uhAnaVdec_LineFreq1Fh     = 1,
    uhAnaVdec_LineFreq2Fh     = 2,
    uhAnaVdec_LineFreq3Fh     = 3
} uhAnaVdec_LineFreq_t, *puhAnaVdec_LineFreq_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type describe the horizontal or line frequency of the analogue video signal input.

**Values****Table 493****Name****Description**

uhAnaVdec\_LineFreqInvalid

The line frequency property is temporarily not available.

uhAnaVdec\_LineFreqUnknown

The line frequency property is available, yet it could not be determined.

uhAnaVdec\_LineFreq1Fh

1Fh video input signal.

uhAnaVdec\_LineFreq2Fh

2Fh video input signal.

uhAnaVdec\_LineFreq3Fh

3Fh video input signal.

8.1.2.2.1.8 **uhAnaVdec\_Protection\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAnaVdec_Protection_t {
    uhAnaVdec_ProtectionInvalid      = 0x80000000,
    uhAnaVdec_ProtectionUnknown      = 0x40000000,
    uhAnaVdec_ProtectionNone         = 0x00000001,
    uhAnaVdec_ProtectionCopy         = 0x00000002,
    uhAnaVdec_ProtectionScrambled    = 0x00000004,
    uhAnaVdec_ProtectionMacro        = 0x00000008,
    uhAnaVdec_ProtectionMacroType1   = 0x00000010,
    uhAnaVdec_ProtectionMacroType2   = 0x00000020,
    uhAnaVdec_ProtectionMacroType3   = 0x00000040
} uhAnaVdec_Protection_t, *puhAnaVdec_Protection_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

The different protection mechanisms that can be determined. The values of this type are OR-able. If a copy protection is present this should always be indicated by `uhAnaVdec_ProtectionCopy`. Next to that, the content can also be scrambled, which should be indicated by `uhAnaVdec_ProtectionScrambled`. If the type of copy protection is Macrovision, this should also be indicated by `uhAnaVdec_ProtectionMacro`.

together with an indication of the exact type of Macrovision used (if this information is available/could be determined).

## Values

### Name

uhAnaVdec\_ProtectionInvalid  
uhAnaVdec\_ProtectionUnknown  
uhAnaVdec\_ProtectionNone  
uhAnaVdec\_ProtectionCopy  
uhAnaVdec\_ProtectionScrambled  
uhAnaVdec\_ProtectionMacro  
uhAnaVdec\_ProtectionMacroType1  
uhAnaVdec\_ProtectionMacroType2  
uhAnaVdec\_ProtectionMacroType3

**Table 494**

### Description

The protection property is temporarily not available.  
The protection property is available, yet it could not be determined.  
The signal is not protected  
Indicates that the video signal is copy-protected.  
Indicates that the video signal is protection by scrambling, e.g. the signal has to be de-scrambled before it can be rendered.  
Indicates that the video signal is protected using Macrovision.  
Indicates that the video signal is protected using Macrovision Type 1: AGC pulses/pseudo syncs present.  
Indicates that the video signal is protected using Macrovision Type 2: AGC pulses/pseudo syncs and 2-line color striping present.  
Indicates that the video signal is protected using Macrovision Type 3: AGC pulses/pseudo syncs and 4-line color striping present.

### 8.1.2.2.1.9 uhAnaVdec\_ColorFreq\_t

### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq_t {
    uhAnaVdec_ColorFreqInvalid = 0x80000000,
    uhAnaVdec_ColorFreqUnknown = 0x40000000,
    uhAnaVdec_ColorFreqAuto = 0x00000001,
    uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq3575611 = 0x00000002,
    uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq3579545 = 0x00000004,
    uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq3582056 = 0x00000008,
    uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq4250000 = 0x00000010,
    uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq4406250 = 0x00000020,
    uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq4433619 = 0x00000040
} uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq_t, *puhAnaVdec_ColorFreq_t;
```

### Qualifiers

— enum element

### Description

Values of this type describe which sub-carrier frequencies are used for the known color systems. The values are OR-able because in case of SECAM there are two color sub-carrier frequencies used, instead of one as with PAL and NTSC. The SECAM color sub-carrier frequencies can thus be indicated by OR-ing both frequencies.

## Values

Table 495

| Name                       | Description                                                             |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhAnaVdec_ColorFreqInvalid | The sub-carrier frequency is temporarily not available.                 |
| uhAnaVdec_ColorFreqUnknown | The sub-carrier frequency is available, yet it could not be determined. |
| uhAnaVdec_ColorFreqAuto    | The sub-carrier frequency is determined automatically.                  |
| uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq3575611 | Represents a sub-carrier frequency of 3575611 Hz (PAL).                 |
| uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq3579545 | Represents a sub-carrier frequency of 3579545 Hz (NTSC).                |
| uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq3582056 | Represents a sub-carrier frequency of 3582056 Hz (PAL).                 |
| uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq4250000 | Represents a sub-carrier frequency of 4250000 Hz (SECAM).               |
| uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq4406250 | Represents a sub-carrier frequency of 4406250 Hz (SECAM).               |
| uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq4433619 | Represents a sub-carrier frequency of 4433619 Hz (PAL and NTSC).        |

## 8.1.2.2.1.10 uhAnaVdec\_ColorFreqSet\_t

## Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhAnaVdec_ColorFreqSet_t, *puhAnaVdec_ColorFreqSet_t;
```

## Qualifiers

— enum-set

## Description

This type represents sets of type uhAnaVdec\_ColorFreq\_t.

## 8.1.2.2.1.11 uhAnaVdec\_Notification\_t

## Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAnaVdec_Notification_t {
    uhAnaVdec_SubscriptionChanged          = 0x00000001,
    uhAnaVdec_VideoPresenceChanged         = 0x00000002,
    uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingChanged           = 0x00000004,
    uhAnaVdec_LineFrequencyChanged         = 0x00000008,
    uhAnaVdec_VideoTimingChanged           = 0x00000010,
    uhAnaVdec_VcrSignalPresenceChanged     = 0x00000020,
    uhAnaVdec_ProtectionChanged             = 0x00000040,
    uhAnaVdec_PixelsPerLineChanged         = 0x00000080,
    uhAnaVdec_StableOutput                  = 0x00000100
} uhAnaVdec_Notification_t, *puhAnaVdec_Notification_t;
```

## Qualifiers

— enum-element

## Description

Values of this type represent the notification functions in the interface uhIAnaVdecNtf. They can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

## Values

Table 496

| Name                               | Description                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| uhAnaVdec_SubscriptionChanged      | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged      |
| uhAnaVdec_VideoPresenceChanged     | Represents OnVideoPresenceChanged.    |
| uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingChanged       | Represents OnVideoCodingChanged.      |
| uhAnaVdec_LineFrequencyChanged     | Represents OnLineFrequencyChanged.    |
| uhAnaVdec_VideoTimingChanged       | Represents OnVideoTimingChanged.      |
| uhAnaVdec_VcrSignalPresenceChanged | Represents OnVcrSignalPresenceChanged |
| uhAnaVdec_ProtectionChanged        | Represents OnProtectionChanged        |
| uhAnaVdec_PixelsPerLineChanged     | Represents OnPixelsPerLineChanged     |
| uhAnaVdec_StableOutput             | Represents OnStableOutput.            |

**8.1.2.2.1.12 uhAnaVdec\_Notifications\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAnaVdec_Notifications_t, *puhAnaVdec_Notifications_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Defines the set-type for uhAnaVdec\_Notification\_t.

**8.1.2.2.1.13 uhAnaVdec\_AllNotifications****Signature**

```
const uhAnaVdec_Notifications_t uhAnaVdec_AllNotifications = 0x000001FF;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The set of all notifications of uhIAnaVdecNtf. Defines the set of all values of type uhAnaVdec\_Notifications\_t. This constant can be used in calls of the Subscribe and Unsubscribe functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**8.1.2.2.1.14 uhAnaVdec\_CombFilterNotification\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAnaVdec_CombFilterNotification_t {
    uhAnaVdec_CombFilterSubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhAnaVdec_CombFilterChanged             = 0x00000002
} uhAnaVdec_CombFilterNotification_t, *puhAnaVdec_CombFilterNotification_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the notification functions in the interface `uhIAnaVdecCombFilterNtf`. They can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

**Values****Table 497**

| Name                                                 | Description                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhAnaVdec_CombFilterSubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> . |
| <code>uhAnaVdec_CombFilterChanged</code>             | Represents <code>OnCombFilterChanged</code> .   |

**8.1.2.2.1.15 uhAnaVdec\_CombFilterNotifications\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAnaVdec_CombFilterNotifications_t,
*puhAnaVdec_CombFilterNotifications_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions, which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhAnaVdec_CombFilterNotification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**8.1.2.2.1.16 uhAnaVdec\_CombFilterAllNotifications****Signature**

```
const uhAnaVdec_CombFilterNotifications_t uhAnaVdec_CombFilterAllNotifications =
0x00000003;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhAnaVdec_CombFilterNotification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**8.1.2.2.1.17 uhAnaVdec\_ColDecNotification\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum uhAnaVdec_ColDecNotification_t {
    uhAnaVdec_ColDecSubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhAnaVdec_ColorSystemChanged       = 0x00000002
} uhAnaVdec_ColDecNotification_t, *puhAnaVdec_ColDecNotification_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element



**Description**

Values of this type represent the notification functions in the interface `uhIAnaVdecColDecNtf`. They can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

**Values**

**Table 498**

| Name                                             | Description                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhAnaVdec_ColDecSubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> . |
| <code>uhAnaVdec_ColorSystemChanged</code>        | Represents <code>OnColorSystemChanged</code> .  |

**8.1.2.2.1.18    `uhAnaVdec_ColDecNotifications_t`**

**Signature**

**typedef** `Int32 uhAnaVdec_ColDecNotifications_t,`  
          `*puhAnaVdec_ColDecNotifications_t;`

**Qualifiers**

— `enum-set`

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions, which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhAnaVdec_ColDecNotification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**8.1.2.2.1.19    `uhAnaVdec_ColDecAllNotifications`**

**Signature**

**const** `uhAnaVdec_ColDecNotifications_t`  
          `uhAnaVdec_ColDecAllNotifications = 0x00000003;`

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhAnaVdec_ColDecNotification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**8.1.2.2.2    Model Types & Constants**

None.

**8.1.2.3    Logical Component**

**8.1.2.3.1    Interface-Role Model**

Figure 59 shows the interface-role model of the AVD. It shows the interfaces, roles, attributes, and input and output streams used in the specification of the AVD.

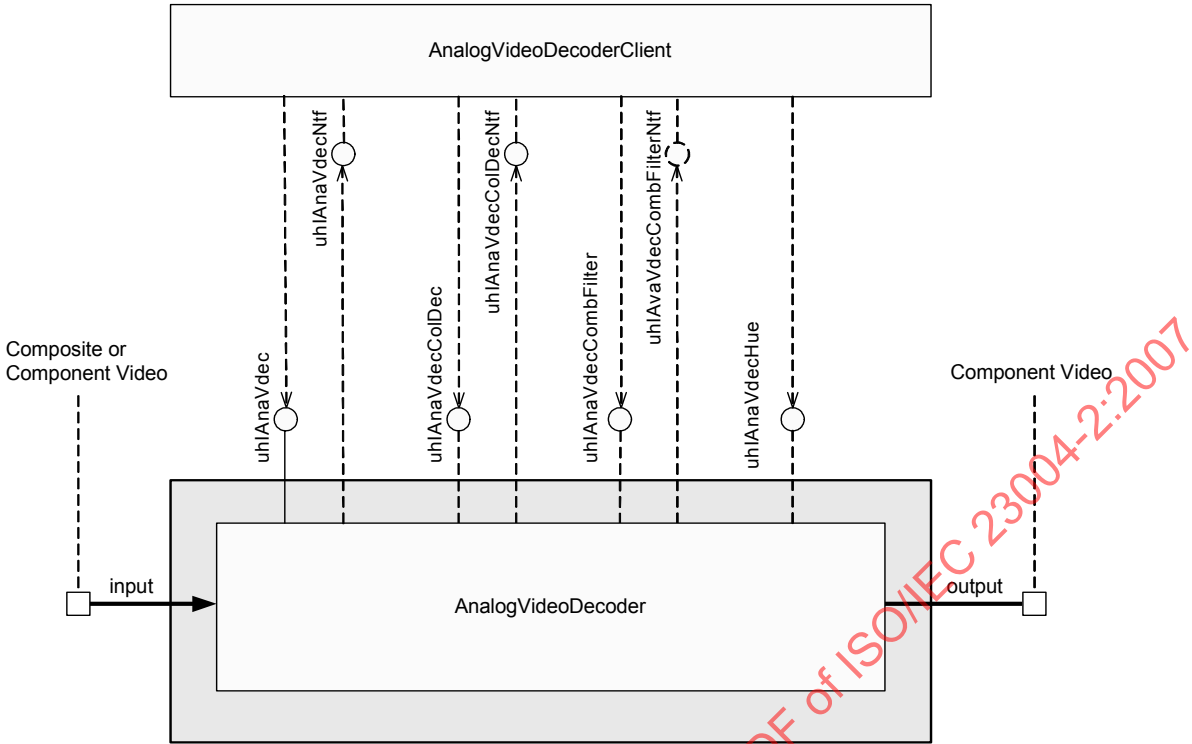


Figure 63 — Interface-Role Model of the Analog Video Decoder

8.1.2.3.2 Diversity

8.1.2.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

The following table defines which interfaces are optional and which ones are mandatory:

Table 499

| Role                     | Interface               | Presence  |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|-----------|
| AnalogVideoDecoder       | uhIAnaVdec              | Mandatory |
| AnalogVideoDecoderClient | uhIAnaVdecNtf           | Optional  |
| AnalogVideoDecoder       | uhIAnaVdecColDec        | Optional  |
| AnalogVideoDecoderClient | uhIAnaVdecColDecNtf     | Optional  |
| AnalogVideoDecoder       | uhIAnaVdecCombFilter    | Optional  |
| AnalogVideoDecoderClient | uhIAnaVdecCombFilterNtf | Optional  |
| AnalogVideoDecoder       | uhIAnaVdecHue           | Optional  |

8.1.2.3.2.2 Configurable Items

The configurable items of an AVD are represented by the following attributes, which are set at creation time of an AVD:

**Table 500**

| Role               | Attribute            |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| AnalogVideoDecoder | minHue               |
| AnalogVideoDecoder | maxHue               |
| AnalogVideoDecoder | suppColorSystems     |
| AnalogVideoDecoder | suppColorFrequencies |

**8.1.2.3.2.3 Constraints**

- uhAnaVdec\_ColorSystemInvalid not in suppColorSystems
- uhAnaVdec\_ColorSystemUnknown not in suppColorSystems
- uhAnaVdec\_ColorFreqInvalid not in suppColorFrequencies
- uhAnaVdec\_ColorFreqUnknown not in suppColorFrequencies

**8.1.2.3.3 Instantiation****8.1.2.3.3.1 Objects Created**

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 501**

| Type               | Object | Multiplicity |
|--------------------|--------|--------------|
| AnalogVideoDecoder | avdec  | 1            |

**8.1.2.3.3.2 Initial State**

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- avdec.videoPresenceStatus == uhAnaVdec\_ValStatInvalid
- avdec.videoPresence == determined at instantiation
- avdec.videoTimingStatus == uhAnaVdec\_ValStatInvalid
- avdec.fieldFrequency == determined at instantiation
- avdec.linesPerFrame == determined at instantiation
- avdec.scanType == determined at instantiation
- avdec.videoCoding == determined at instantiation
- avdec.lineFrequency == determined at instantiation
- avdec.protection == determined at instantiation
- avdec.vcrSignalStatus == uhAnaVdec\_ValStatInvalid
- avdec.vcrSignalPresence == determined at instantiation
- avdec.pixelsPerLineStatus == uhAnaVdec\_ValStatInvalid
- avdec.pixelsPerLine == determined at instantiation
- avdec.hueStatus == uhAnaVdec\_ValStatInvalid
- avdec.hue == avd.hueNeutral
- avdec.setColorSystem == uhAnaVdec\_ColorSystemInvalid
- avdec.actualColorSystem == uhAnaVdec\_ColorSystemInvalid
- avdec.setColorFrequency == uhAnaVdec\_ColorFreqInvalid
- avdec.actualColorFrequency == uhAnaVdec\_ColorFreqInvalid

```

— avdec.combActiveStatus == uhAnaVdec_ValStatInvalid
— avdec.combFilterEnabled == False
— avdec.combFilterActive == False
— avdec.stableOutput == False

```

#### 8.1.2.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by a decoder may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier “thread-safe”.

#### 8.1.2.4 Roles

##### 8.1.2.4.1 AnalogVideoDecoder

##### Signature

```

role AnalogVideoDecoder {
    uhAnaVdec_ValStat_t          videoPresenceStatus;
    Bool                          videoPresence;
    uhAnaVdec_ValStat_t          videoTimingStatus;
    Int32                         fieldFrequency;
    Int32                         linesPerFrame;
    uhAnaVdec_ScanType_t         scanType;
    uhTuning_ValStatUnknown      videoCoding;
    uhAnaVdec_LineFreq_t         lineFrequency;
    uhAnaVdec_ValStat_t          vcrSignalStatus;
    Bool                          vcrSignalPresence;
    uhAnaVdec_Protection_t       protection;
    uhAnaVdec_ValStat_t          hueStatus;
    Int32                         hue;
    const Int32                  minHue;
    const Int32                  maxHue;
    const Int32                  hueNeutral;
    Bool                          hueAvailable;
    uhAnaVdec_ColorSystem_t      setColorSystem;
    uhAnaVdec_ColorSystem_t      actualColorSystem;
    uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq_t        setColorFrequency;
    uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq_t        actualColorFrequency;
    uhAnaVdec_ValStat_t          combActiveStatus;
    Bool                          combFilterEnabled;
    Bool                          combFilterActive;
    uhAnaVdec_ValStat_t          pixelsPerLineStatus;
    Int32                         pixelsPerLine;
    const uhAnaVdec_ColorSystemSet_t suppColorSystems;
    const uhAnaVdec_ColorFreqSet_t  suppColorFrequencies;
    Bool                          stableOutput;
}

```

##### Qualifiers

```

— root

```

**Description**

An Analog Video Decoder offers the following functionality:

- Video property observation.
- Color decoding (optional).
- Comb filtering (optional).
- Hue control (optional).

**Independent Attributes****Table 502**

| <b>Name</b>          | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| videoPresenceStatus  | Validity state of the video presence property.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| videoPresence        | Boolean indicating whether a video signal is present on the input.                                                                                                                                                                                |
| videoTimingStatus    | Validity state of the field frequency and lines per frame properties.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| fieldFrequency       | The field frequency of the video signal.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| linesPerFrame        | The number of lines per frame of the video signal.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| scanType             | The type of scan of the video signal.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| videoCoding          | The video coding of the video signal.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| lineFrequency        | The line frequency of the video signal.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| vcrSignalStatus      | Validity state of the vcr signal presence property.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| vcrSignalPresence    | Boolean indicating if the input signal is coming from a VCR.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| protection           | The type of protection used for the video signal.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| hueStatus            | Validity state of the hue avail property.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| hue                  | The current hue value to be applied.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| minHue               | The minimum value for hue that can be set (lower limit).                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| maxHue               | The maximum value for hue that can be set (upper limit).                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| hueAvailable         | Boolean indicating if hue can be controlled.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| setColorSystem       | The color system of the video signal as it was set by the client.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| actualColorSystem    | The actual color system of the video signal.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| setColorFrequency    | The color sub-carrier frequency of the video signal as it was set by the client.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| actualColorFrequency | The actual color sub-carrier frequency of the video signal.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| combActiveStatus     | Validity state of the comb filter active property.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| combFilterEnabled    | Boolean indicating whether the Comb Filter is enabled.                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| combFilterActive     | Boolean indicating whether the Comb Filter is actually active.                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| pixelsPerLineStatus  | Validity state of the pixels per line property.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| pixelsPerLine        | The number of pixels per line of the video signal.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| suppColorSystems     | The supported color systems.                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| suppColorFrequencies | The supported color frequencies.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| stableOutput         | Indicates whether the analog video decoder is outputting decoded video long enough so that the client can safely unblank the corresponding output at the appropriate logical component(s) downstream (True if this is the case, False otherwise). |

## Dependent Attributes

Table 503

| Name                          | Description                                                  |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>combFilterActive</code> | Boolean indicating whether the Comb Filter is active.        |
| <code>hueNeutral</code>       | Neutral hue value (value that implies no signal correction). |

## Invariants

```

— if ( combFilterEnabled == False ) combFilterActive == False
  — minHue ≤ hue ≤ maxHue
  — hueNeutral == (maxHue - minHue) / 2

```

## Instantiation

An `AnalogVideoDecoder` is instantiated as one object with initial attribute values as defined in subclause 8.1.2.3.3.

## Streaming Behavior

The Video Properties are continuously monitored by the component. The type of color system and the color sub-carrier frequency can be set explicitly by the client or can be determined automatically (if supported).

When the Comb Filter is not active the Comb Filter is by-passed and the input stream is not comb filtered. Whether the Comb filter should be activated is determined by the platform. The Comb Filter can only be activated when it has been enabled by the client

## Active Behavior

Table 504

| Event                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Action                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A change in video presence has occurred.                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Notify <code>OnVideoPresenceChanged</code>                                              |
| A change in the video coding has occurred.                                                                                                                                                                                                | Notify <code>OnVideoCodingChanged</code>                                                |
| A change in the line frequency has occurred.                                                                                                                                                                                              | Notify <code>OnLineFrequencyChanged</code>                                              |
| A change in one or more of the video timing properties occurred.                                                                                                                                                                          | Notify <code>OnVideoTimingChanged</code>                                                |
| A change in the VCR signal presence has occurred.                                                                                                                                                                                         | Notify <code>OnVcrSignalPresenceChanged</code>                                          |
| A change in the protection of the video signal has occurred.                                                                                                                                                                              | Notify <code>OnProtectionChanged</code>                                                 |
| A change in the active state of the Comb Filter has occurred.                                                                                                                                                                             | Notify <code>OnCombFilterChanged</code>                                                 |
| A change in the Color System has occurred.                                                                                                                                                                                                | Notify <code>OnColorSystemChanged</code>                                                |
| A change in the number of pixels per line has occurred.                                                                                                                                                                                   | Notify <code>OnPixelsPerLineChanged</code>                                              |
| The analog video decoder is outputting decoded video long enough so that the client can safely unblank the corresponding output at the appropriate logical component(s) downstream. (avdec.stableOutput == False when this event occurs). | <code>avdec.stableOutput = True</code><br>— <code>notify OnStableOutput(*, True)</code> |

**Event**

The analog video decoder is no longer outputting a stable (decoded) video stream (avdec.stableOutput == True when this event occurs).

**Action**

```
avdec.stableOutput = False
— notify OnStableOutput(*, False)
```

**8.1.2.4.2 AnalogVideoDecoderClient****Signature**

```
role AnalogVideoDecoderClient { }
```

**Qualifiers**

— actor

**Description**

An `AnalogVideoDecoderClient` role represents a user of the control interfaces offered by the `AnalogVideoDecoder` role. It can optionally provide the notification interfaces to receive notifications of events generated by the `AnalogVideoDecoder` role. No constraints apply to the behavior of the `AnalogVideoDecoderClient` role other than those implied by Figure 63.

**8.1.2.5 Interfaces****8.1.2.5.1 uhlAnaVdec****Qualifiers**

— None.

**Description**

This interface can be used to retrieve properties of the analogue video input signal or to subscribe or unsubscribe to notifications.

**Interface ID**

```
uuid( E23FCCAD-8602-4034-83FD-A3009E455AB2 )
```

**8.1.2.5.1.1 Subscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhIAnaVdecNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAnaVdec_Notification_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

8.1.2.5.1.2      **Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhIAnaVdecNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAnaVdec_Notification_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

- unsubscribe-function

8.1.2.5.1.3      **GetVideoPresence**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetVideoPresence (  
    [out] puhAnaVdec_ValStat_t pStatus,  
    [out] pBool                pVideoPresence );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns whether a video signal is present.

**Parameters**

**Table 505**

| Name           | Description                                                                   |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStatus        | Output parameter that indicates the validity of the video presence parameter. |
| pVideoPresence | Video signal presence (True indicates present, False not present).            |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pStatus == avdec.videoPresenceStatus
- \*pVideoPresence == avdec.videoPresence



8.1.2.5.1.4      **GetVideoCoding**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetVideoCoding ([out] p
uhAnaVdec_VideoCoding_t pVideoCoding );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the video coding of the video signal.

**Parameters**

**Table 506**

| Name         | Description                           |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|
| pVideoCoding | The video coding of the video signal. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- None.

**Postcondition**

```
*pVideoCoding == avdec.videoCoding
```

8.1.2.5.1.5      **GetLineFrequency**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetLineFrequency ([out] puhAnaVdec_LineFreq_t pLineFrequency );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the line frequency of the video signal.

**Parameters****Table 507**

| Name           | Description                             |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------|
| pLineFrequency | The line frequency of the video signal. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— None.

**Postcondition**  
\*pLineFrequency == avdec.lineFrequency

**8.1.2.5.1.6 GetVideoTiming****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetVideoTiming (
    [out] puhAnaVdec_ValStat_t pStatus,
    [out] pInt32                pFieldFrequency,
    [out] pInt32                pLinesPerFrame,
    [out] puhAnaVdec_ScanType_t pScanType
);
```

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
— thread-safe

**Description**  
This function returns the video timing properties of the video signal.

**Parameters****Table 508**

| Name            | Description                                                                                         |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStatus         | Output parameter that indicates the validity of the field frequency and lines per frame parameters. |
| pFieldFrequency | The field frequency in Hz.                                                                          |
| pLinesPerFrame  | The number of lines per frame.                                                                      |
| pScanType       | The type of scan.                                                                                   |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pStatus == avdec.videoTimingStatus
- \*pFieldFrequency == avdec.fieldFrequency
- \*pLinesPerFrame == avdec.linesPerFrame
- \*pScanType == avdec.scanType

**8.1.2.5.1.7      GetVcrSignalPresence**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetVcrSignalPresence (  
    [out] puhAnaVdec_ValStat_t pStatus,  
    [out] pBool                pVcrSignalPresence )
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns whether the video input signal is coming from a VCR .

**Parameters**

**Table 509**

| Name               | Description                                                                        |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStatus            | Output parameter that indicates the validity of the vcr signal presence parameter. |
| pVcrSignalPresence | If True the signal is coming from a VCR.                                           |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pStatus == avdec.vcrSignalStatus
- \*pVcrSignalPresence == avdec.vcrSignalPresence

#### 8.1.2.5.1.8 GetProtection

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetProtection ([out] puhAnaVdec_Protection_t pProtection );
```

##### Qualifiers

— synchronous

— thread-safe

##### Description

Returns the protection mechanism used for the video signal.

##### Parameters

Table 510

| Name        | Description                    |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| pProtection | The protection mechanism used. |

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

True

##### Action

— None.

##### Postcondition

\*pProtection == avdec.protection

#### 8.1.2.5.1.9 GetPixelsPerLine

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetPixelsPerLine (
    [out] puhAnaVdec_ValStat_t pStatus,
    [out] pInt32                pPixelsPerLine );
```

##### Qualifiers

— synchronous

— thread-safe

##### Description

This function returns the number of pixels per line.

**Parameters****Table 511**

| <b>Name</b>                 | <b>Description</b>                                                             |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pStatus</code>        | Output parameter that indicates the validity of the pixels per line parameter. |
| <code>pPixelsPerLine</code> | The number of pixels per line.                                                 |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None.

**Postcondition**

- `*pStatus == avdec.pixelsPerLineStatus`
- `*pPixelsPerLine == avd.pixelsPerLine`

**8.1.2.5.1.10 GetStableOutput****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetStableOutput (
    [out] pBool pStableOutput);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns whether the analog video decoder has currently stable output.

**Parameters****Table 512**

| <b>Name</b>                | <b>Description</b>                                                                       |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pStableOutput</code> | Output parameter returning whether the analog video decoder has currently stable output. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

Action  
None.

Postcondition  
`*pStableOutput == avdec.stableOutput`

8.1.2.5.2 uhlAnaVdecNtf

Qualifiers  
— callback

Description  
This interface reports changes in the video properties of the signal.

Interface ID  
`uuid( 9B8FFF6E-E6FD-4543-A567-646881342E70 )`

8.1.2.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

Signature  
`[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (`  
    `[in] UInt32 cookie,`  
    `[in] uhAnaVdec_Notifications_t notif;`  
`);`

Qualifiers  
— onsubscriptionchanged-function

8.1.2.5.2.2 OnVideoPresenceChanged

Signature  
`[async] Void OnVideoPresenceChanged (`  
    `[in] UInt32 cookie,`  
    `[in] uhAnaVdec_ValStat_t status,`  
    `[in] Bool videoPresence );`

Qualifiers  
— callback

Description  
This funtion gets called when a change in video presence has occured.

Parameters

Table 513

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

| Name          | Description                                                            |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| status        | Parameter that indicates the validity of the video presence parameter. |
| videoPresence | The new video presence.                                                |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

8.1.2.5.2.3      **OnVideoCodingChanged**

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnVideoCodingChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in]  
uhAnaVdec\_VideoCoding\_t videoCoding );

**Qualifiers**  
— callback

**Description**  
This function get called when a change in the video coding has occurred.

**Parameters**

Table 514

| Name        | Description                                                   |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie      | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| videoCoding | The new video coding.                                         |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

8.1.2.5.2.4      **OnLineFrequencyChanged**

**Signature**  
[**async**] Void OnLineFrequencyChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAnaVdec\_LineFreq\_t lineFrequency );

**Qualifiers**  
— callback

**Description**  
This function get called when a change in the line frequency has occured.

**Parameters**

**Table 515**

| Name          | Description                                                   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie        | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| lineFrequency | The new line frequency.                                       |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

8.1.2.5.2.5      **OnVideoTimingChanged**

**Signature**  
[**async**] Void OnVideoTimingChanged (  
    [in] UInt32                      cookie,  
    [in] uhAnaVdec\_ValStat\_t      status,  
    [in] Int32                      fieldFrequency,  
    [in] Int32                      linesPerFrame,  
    [in] uhAnaVdec\_ScanType\_t      scanType );

**Qualifiers**  
— callback



**Description**

This function gets called when a change in one or more of the timing properties of the video signal has occurred.

**Parameters****Table 516**

| Name           | Description                                                                                  |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie         | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                |
| status         | Parameter that indicates the validity of the field frequency and lines per frame parameters. |
| fieldFrequency | The current field frequency (Hz).                                                            |
| linesPerFrame  | The current number of lines per frame.                                                       |
| scanType       | The current scan type.                                                                       |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.2.5.2.6 OnVcrSignalPresenceChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnVcrSignalPresenceChanged (
    [in] UInt32          cookie,
    [in] uhAnaVdec_ValStat_t status,
    [in] Bool            vcrSignalPresence );
```

**Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This function get called when a change in the fact whether the signal is coming from a VCR or not has occurred.

**Parameters****Table 517**

| Name   | Description                                                                 |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.               |
| status | Parameter that indicates the validity of the vcr signal presence parameter. |

| Name              | Description                                            |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| vcrSignalPresence | The signal is coming from a VCR (True) or not (False). |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

8.1.2.5.2.7      OnProtectionChanged

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnProtectionChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAnaVdec\_Protection\_t protection );

**Qualifiers**  
— callback

**Description**  
This function gets called when a change in the protection mechanism of the video signal has occurred.

**Parameters**

Table 518

| Name       | Description                                                   |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie     | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| protection | The new protection mechanism.                                 |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

8.1.2.5.2.8 OnPixelsPerLineChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnPixelsPerLineChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAnaVdec_ValStat_t status,  
    [in] Int32 pixelsPerLine);
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function gets called when a change occurs in the number of pixels per line.

Parameters

Table 519

| Name          | Description                                                            |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie        | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.          |
| status        | Parameter that indicates the validity of the pixel per line parameter. |
| pixelsPerLine | The new number of pixels per line.                                     |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any call-back compliant action.

Postcondition

True

8.1.2.5.2.9 OnStableOutput

Signature

```
[async] Void OnStableOutput (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] Bool stableOutput );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function gets called when there is a change in the stability of output of the analog video decoder.

Parameters

Table 520

| Name         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie       | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| stableOutput | If <b>True</b> : the analog video decoder is outputting decoded video long enough so that the client can safely unblank the corresponding output at the appropriate logical component(s) downstream.<br><br>If <b>False</b> : the analog video decoder is no longer outputting a stable (decoded) video stream. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
**True**

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
**True**

8.1.2.5.3 uhlAnaVdecHue

**Qualifiers**  
— None.

**Description**  
This interface offers control to set the hue.

**Interface ID**  
uuid( 55E44962-4E34-4fea-AE9B-B63CCECF8521 )

8.1.2.5.3.1 GetHueRange

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetHueRange (  
    [out] pInt32 pMinHue,  
    [out] pInt32 pMaxHue );

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
  
— thread-safe

**Description**  
This function returns the minimum and maximum hue value that can be set.

Parameters

Table 521

| Name    | Description                                 |
|---------|---------------------------------------------|
| pMinHue | The minimal hue value to set (lower limit). |
| pMaxHue | The maximal hue value to set (upper limit). |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— None.

**Postcondition**  
— \*pMinHue == avdec.minHue  
— \*pMaxHue == avdec.maxHue

8.1.2.5.3.2     SetHue

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t SetHue ( [in] Int32 hue );

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous

**Description**  
This function sets the hue value. If GetHueAvail returns False the value will have no effect until hue control becomes available (when SetHueAvail returns True).

Parameters

Table 522

| Name | Description                  |
|------|------------------------------|
| hue  | The new hue value to be set. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
avdec.minHue ≤ hue ≤ avdec.maxHue

**Action**  
— Modify avdec.hue.

Postcondition

avdec.hue == hue

8.1.2.5.3.3      GetHue

Signature

uhErrorCode\_t GetHue ( [out] pInt32 pHue );

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function returns the hue value as set by the client.

Parameters

Table 523

| Name | Description                         |
|------|-------------------------------------|
| pHue | The hue value as set by the client. |

Return Values  
Standard.

Precondition  
True

Action  
— None.

Postcondition  
\*pHue == avdec.hue

8.1.2.5.3.4      GetHueAvail

Signature

uhErrorCode\_t GetHueAvail ( [out] puhAnaVdec\_ValStat\_t pStatus, [out] pBool pHueAvail );

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function returns whether hue control is available for the current video signal.

**Parameters****Table 524**

| <b>Name</b>            | <b>Description</b>                                                           |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pStatus</code>   | Output parameter that indicates the validity of the hue available parameter. |
| <code>pHueAvail</code> | Indicates whether hue control is available.                                  |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None.

**Postcondition**

— `*pStatus == avdec.hueStatus`  
 — `*pHueAvail == avdec.hueAvailable`

**8.1.2.5.4 uhlAnaVdecCombFilter****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface provides functionality to control the Comb Filter, retrieve its current state and to subscribe and unsubscribe to notifications.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( CD19C0F9-C5D4-46e9-A2CD-2FEEF9FAF4DE )`

**8.1.2.5.4.1 Subscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhlAnaVdecCombFilterNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAnaVdec_CombFilterNotifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**8.1.2.5.4.2 Unsubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhIAnaVdecCombFilterNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAnaVdec_CombFilterNotifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

**8.1.2.5.4.3 SetEnable****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetEnable ( [in] Bool enable );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

**Description**

Enables or disables the Comb Filter. If the Comb Filter is enabled it will only be activate if it can be used for the current input signal.

**Parameters****Table 525**

| Name   | Description                                              |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| enable | The new enable value (True will enable the Comb Filter). |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Modify avdec.combFilterEnabled

**Postcondition**

avdec.combFilterEnabled == enable

**8.1.2.5.4.4 GetEnabled****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetEnabled ( [out] pBool pEnabled );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous



— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the enable setting of the Comb Filter as set by the client. If the Comb Filter is enabled it will only be activate if it can be used for the current input signal.

**Parameters**

Table 526

| Name     | Description                                                     |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| pEnabled | Output parameter indicating whether the Comb Filter is enabled. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
\*pEnabled == avdec.combFilterEnabled

**8.1.2.5.4.5      GetActive**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetActive (  
    [out] puhAnaVdec\_ValStat\_t pStatus,  
    [out] pBool                    pActive );

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
  
— thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns whether the Comb Filter is currently active. The Comb Filter can only be active when it has been enabled. An enabled Comb filter will be inactive when the input signal is not to be Comb filtered (determined by the platform) and is by-passed.

**Parameters**

Table 527

| Name    | Description                                                           |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStatus | Output parameter that indicates the validity of the active parameter. |
| pActive | Output parameter indicating whether the Comb Filter is active.        |

### Return Values

Standard.

### Precondition

True

### Action

None.

### Postcondition

- \*pStatus == avdec.combActiveStatus
- \*pActive == avdec.combFilterActive

#### 8.1.2.5.5 uhlAnaVdecCombFilterNtf

### Qualifiers

- callback

### Description

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events related to the Comb Filter.

### Interface ID

uuid( 632E02F5-1D71-4a68-AD91-9E404DD18631 )

#### 8.1.2.5.5.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

### Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAnaVdec_CombFilterNotifications_t notifs );
```

### Qualifiers

- onsubscriptionchanged-function

#### 8.1.2.5.5.2 OnCombFilterChanged

### Signature

```
[async] Void OnCombFilterChanged (
    [in] UInt32          cookie,
    [in] uhAnaVdec_ValStat_t status,
    [in] Bool           active );
```

### Qualifiers

- callback

**Description**

This function is gets called when there is a change in the active state of the enabled Comb Filter. If the Com Filter is not enabled this function is not called.

**Parameters**

Table 528

| Name   | Description                                                    |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.  |
| status | Parameter that indicates the validity of the active parameter. |
| active | New value indicating whether the Comb Filter is active.        |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

8.1.2.5.6    uhlAnaVdecColDec

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface provides functions to control the Color Decoder and to subscribe and unsubscribe to notifications.

**Interface ID**

uuid( 38958059-6D54-4bb7-A40F-6F332C94D46C )

8.1.2.5.6.1    **Subscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhlAnaVdecColDecNtf *pNotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhlAnaVdec_ColDecNotifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

8.1.2.5.6.2      **Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhIAnaVdecColDecNtf *pNotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhAnaVdec_ColDecNotifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

- unsubscribe-function

8.1.2.5.6.3      **GetSuppColorSystems**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppColorSystems (  
    [out] puhAnaVdec_ColorSystemSet_t pColorSystems );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the supported color systems.

**Parameters**

Table 529

| Name          | Description                  |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| pColorSystems | The supported color systems. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- None

**Postcondition**

\*pColorSystems == avdec.suppColorSystems

#### 8.1.2.5.6.4 GetSuppColorFreqs

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppColorFreqs (
    [out] puhAnaVdec_ColorFreqSet_t pColorFreqs );
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

This function returns the supported color systems.

##### Parameters

Table 530

| Name        | Description                      |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| pColorFreqs | The supported color frequencies. |

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

True

##### Action

- None

##### Postcondition

\*pColorFreqs == avdec.suppColorFrequencies

#### 8.1.2.5.6.5 GetColorSystemSupported

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetColorSystemSupported (
    [in] uhAnaVdec_ColorSystem_t colorSystem,
    [in] uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq_t colorFrequency,
    [out] pBool pSupported );
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

This function checks whether the combination of the color sub-carrier frequency and the color system is supported by the platform. If the color system is SECAM, the color sub-carrier frequency should be the OR-ed value of both color sub-carrier frequency values.

**Parameters****Table 531**

| <b>Name</b>                 | <b>Description</b>                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>colorSystem</code>    | The color system.                                                                                            |
| <code>colorFrequency</code> | The color sub-carrier frequency.                                                                             |
| <code>pSupported</code>     | Boolean indicating if the <code>colorSystem</code> and <code>colorFrequency</code> combination is supported. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**

- `colorSystem` in `avdec.suppColorSystems`
- `colorFrequency` in `avdec.suppColorFrequencies`

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**

- if (the combination of `colorSystem` and `colorFrequency` is supported)
  - `*pSupported == True`
  - else
    - `*pSupported == False`

**8.1.2.5.6.6 SetColorSystem****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetColorSystem (
    [in] uhAnaVdec_ColorSystem_t colorSystem,
    [in] uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq_t colorFrequency );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous

**Description**

This function sets the color system and the color sub-carrier frequency. If the `colorSystem`, `colorFrequency` or both are set to auto the value of the parameter set to auto is automatically determined and the result notified. If the color system is SECAM the color sub-carrier frequency should be the OR-ed value of both color sub-carrier frequencies.

**Parameters****Table 532**

| <b>Name</b>                 | <b>Description</b>                                           |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>colorSystem</code>    | The new value of the color system to be used.                |
| <code>colorFrequency</code> | The new value of the color sub-carrier frequency to be used. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- colorSystem in avdec.supColorSystems
- colorFrequency in avdec.supColorFrequencies

**Action**

- Modify avdec.setColorSystem
- Modify avdec.actualColorSystem
- Modify avdec.setColorFrequency
- Modify avdec.actualColorFrequency

**Postcondition**

- avdec.setColorSystem == colorSystem
- avdec.setColorFrequency == colorFrequency
- if (colorSystem == uhAnaVdec\_ColorSystemAuto)
  - avdec.actualColorSystem = uhAnaVdec\_ColorSystemUnknown
  - else
    - avdec.actualColorSystem = colorSystem
- if (colorFrequency == uhAnaVdec\_ColorFreqAuto)
  - avdec.actualColorFrequency = uhAnaVdec\_ColorFreqUnknown
  - else
    - avdec.actualColorFrequency = colorFrequency

**8.1.2.5.6.7 GetColorSystem****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetColorSystem (
    [out] puhAnaVdec_ColorSystem_t pColorSystem,
    [out] puhAnaVdec_ColorFreq_t   pColorFrequency );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the values of the color system and color sub-carrier frequency as set by the client.

**Parameters****Table 533**

| Name            | Description                                                                      |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pColorSystem    | Output parameter returning the color system as set by the client.                |
| pColorFrequency | Output parameter returning the color sub-carrier frequency as set by the client. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pColorSystem == avdec.setColorSystem
- \*pColorFrequency == avdec.setColorFrequency

**8.1.2.5.6.8      GetActualColorSystem****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualColorSystem (
    [out] puhAnaVdec_ColorSystem_t pColorSystem,
    [out] puhAnaVdec_ColorFreq_t   pColorFrequency );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the actual color system and color sub-carrier frequency. If the `colorSystem`, `colorFrequency` or both are set to `auto` the determined value of the parameter set to `auto` is returned. If determination is still busy or in a transient state `uhAnaVdec_ColorSystemUnknown` and/or `uhAnaVdec_ColorFreqUnknown` is returned. If a value could not be determined `uhAnaVdec_ColorSystemInvalid` and/or `uhAnaVdec_ColorFreqInvalid` is returned. If in the case of the SECAM color system a color sub-carrier frequency value is returned, that frequency is the OR-ed value of both SECAM color sub-carrier frequencies.

**Parameters****Table 534**

| Name                         | Description                                                        |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pColorSystem</code>    | Output parameter returning the actual color system.                |
| <code>pColorFrequency</code> | Output parameter returning the actual color sub-carrier frequency. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.



**Postcondition**

- \*pColorSystem == avdec.actualColorSystem
- \*pColorFrequency == avdec.actualColorFrequency

**8.1.2.5.7    uhIAnaVdecColDecNtf**

**Qualifiers**

- callback

**Description**

This interface should be provided by each AVDC that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in the Color Decoder. uhIAnaVdecColDecNtf is subscribed to via the Subscribe function of uhIAnaVdecColDec.

**Interface ID**

uuid( 647D0CB7-B46A-4a9d-B74B-C3481920F3E9 )

**8.1.2.5.7.1    OnSubscriptionChanged**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAnaVdec_ColDecNotifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

- onsubscriptionchanged-function

**8.1.2.5.7.2    OnColorSystemChanged**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnColorSystemChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAnaVdec_ColorSystem_t colorSystem,
    [in] uhAnaVdec_ColorFreq_t colorFrequency);
```

**Qualifiers**

- callback

**Description**

This function gets called when a change in the color system has occurred.

**Parameters**

Table 535

| Name        | Description                                                   |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie      | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| colorSystem | The current color system.                                     |

| Name           | Description                              |
|----------------|------------------------------------------|
| colorFrequency | The current color sub-carrier frequency. |

#### Return Values

None.

#### Precondition

True

#### Action

Any callback-compliant action.

#### Postcondition

True

### 8.1.3 UhlAtscDec

See 7.1.2.

### 8.1.4 UhlAvIn

#### 8.1.4.1 Concepts

##### 8.1.4.1.1 Introduction

Base band analogue audio and video inputs are often clustered together. Typically, the input signals of a cluster originate from a single source and give access the same signal at different quality levels (i.e. using different types of video coding). In most cases input pins of the socket are used to indicate the available quality levels next to other input signal properties like for instance the aspect ratio of the input signal. Which input signal properties can be detected depend on the actual AV input cluster and hardware configuration. For example: sometimes a S-VHS (YC) socket is part of an AV input cluster and can have the possibility to detect the presence of a plug inserted in the socket instead of the actual presence of a signal indicated by the input source.

An example of a typical AV input cluster is a SCART socket consisting of Y/CVBS and RGB input in combination with one base band stereo input. Several pins (pin 8, pin 16, pin 15 and 20) might be used on a SCART socket to indicate signal properties. Some properties are indicated using the same pin by means of multiple voltage levels of which some can be manufacturer and/or vendor specific. Using these SCART pins it is possible to indicate the following input signal properties:

- Available video coding types of the input signal (i.e. CVBS, RGB, YC)
- Current aspect ratio of the input signal (i.e. 4:3, 16:9, letterbox)
- Input signal presence.

### 8.1.4.2 Types & Constants

#### 8.1.4.2.1 Public Types & Constants

##### 8.1.4.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

##### 8.1.4.2.1.2 uhAvIn\_Presence\_t

###### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAvIn_Presence_t {
    uhAvIn_PresenceInvalid    = -2,
    uhAvIn_PresenceUnknown    = -1,
    uhAvIn_PresenceFalse      =  0,
    uhAvIn_PresenceTrue       =  1
} uhAvIn_Presence_t, *puhAvIn_Presence_t;
```

###### Qualifiers

None.

###### Description

The detected signal presence on the analog AV input cluster.

###### Values

**Table 536**

###### Name

uhAvIn\_PresenceInvalid  
uhAvIn\_PresenceUnknown  
uhAvIn\_PresenceFalse  
uhAvIn\_PresenceTrue

###### Description

The signal presence is temporarily not available.  
The signal presence is available, yet could not be determined.  
There is no signal present.  
There is a signal present.

##### 8.1.4.2.1.3 uhAvIn\_AspectRatio\_t

###### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAvIn_AspectRatio_t {
    uhAnaAvDem_TvSystemInvalid    = -2,
    uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingInvalid  = -1,
    uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingCVBS     =  0,
    uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingYC       =  1,
    uhAvIn_AspectRatioLetterBox    =  2
} uhAvIn_AspectRatio_t, *puhAvIn_AspectRatio_t;
```

###### Qualifiers

None.

###### Description

The detected aspect ratio of the input signal on the analog AV input cluster.

**Values****Name**

uhAvIn\_AspectRatioInvalid  
 uhAvIn\_AspectRatioUnknown  
 uhAvIn\_AspectRatio4by3  
 uhAvIn\_AspectRatio16by9  
 uhAvIn\_AspectRatioLetterBox

**Table 537****Description**

The aspect ratio is temporarily not available.  
 The aspect ratio is available, yet could not be determined.  
 The signal has a 4 by 3 aspect ratio.  
 The signal has a 16 by 9 (widescreen) aspect ratio.  
 The signal has a letterboxed aspect ratio. (16 by 9 content within a 4 by 3 aspect ratio).

**8.1.4.2.1.4      uhAvIn\_VideoCoding\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAvIn_VideoCoding_t {
    uhAvIn_VideoCodingInvalid= 0x80000000,
    uhAvIn_VideoCodingUnknown = 0x40000000,
    uhAvIn_VideoCodingCvbs    = 0x00000001,
    uhAvIn_VideoCodingYc      = 0x00000002,
    uhAvIn_VideoCodingYuv     = 0x00000004,
    uhAvIn_VideoCodingYPbPr   = 0x00000008,
    uhAvIn_VideoCodingRgb     = 0x00000010
} uhAvIn_VideoCoding_t, *puhAvIn_VideoCoding_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

The detected video coding of the input signal on the analog AV input cluster.

**Values****Table 538****Name**

uhAvIn\_VideoCodingInvalid  
 uhAvIn\_VideoCodingUnknown  
 uhAvIn\_VideoCodingCvbs  
 uhAvIn\_VideoCodingYc  
 uhAvIn\_VideoCodingYuv  
 uhAvIn\_VideoCodingYPbPr  
 uhAvIn\_VideoCodingRgb

**Description**

The video coding is temporarily not available.  
 The video coding is available, yet could not be determined.  
 CVBS  
 Y/C  
 YUV  
 YP<sub>B</sub>Pr  
 RGB

**8.1.4.2.1.5      uhAvIn\_StatusNotification\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAvIn_StatusNotification_t {
    uhAvIn_StatusSubscriptionChanged      = 0x00000001,
    uhAvIn_PresenceChanged                 = 0x00000002,
    uhAvIn_AspectRatioChanged              = 0x00000004,
    uhAvIn_VideoCodingChanged              = 0x00000008
} uhAvIn_StatusNotification_t, *puhAvIn_StatusNotification_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIAvInNtf`.

**Values****Table 539**

| Name                                          | Description                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhAvIn_StatusSubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> |
| <code>uhAvIn_PresenceChanged</code>           | Represents <code>OnPresenceChanged</code>     |
| <code>uhAvIn_AspectRatioChanged</code>        | Represents <code>OnAspectRatioChanged</code>  |
| <code>uhAvIn_VideoCodingChanged</code>        | Represents <code>OnVideoCodingChanged</code>  |

**8.1.4.2.1.6      uhAvIn\_StatusNotificationSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAvIn_StatusNotificationSet_t, *puhAvIn_StatusNotificationSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type

`uhAvIn_StatusNotification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**Constraints**

None.

8.1.4.2.1.7      uhAvIn\_StatusAllNotifications

Signature

`const` uhAvIn\_StatusNotificationSet\_t uhAvIn\_StatusAllNotifications = 0x0000000F;

Qualifiers

None.

Description

Defines the set of all values of type

uhAvIn\_StatusNotification\_t. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

8.1.4.2.2      Model Types & Constants

None.

8.1.4.3      Logical Component

8.1.4.3.1      Interface-Role Model

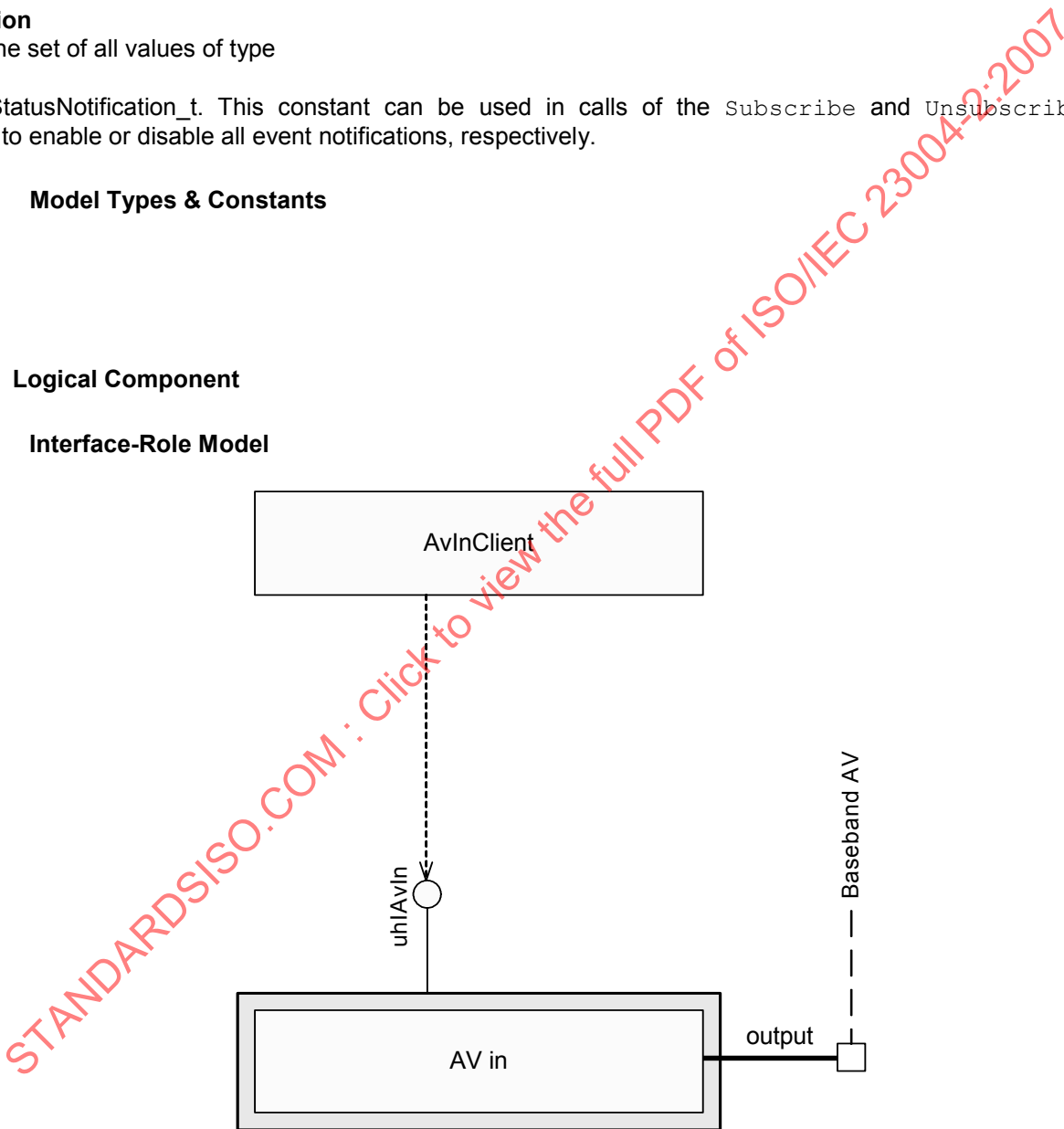


Figure 64 — Interface Role Model

8.1.4.3.2      Diversity

8.1.4.3.2.1      Provided Interfaces

The following table lists the required and provided interfaces:

Table 540

| Role       | Interface  | Presence  |
|------------|------------|-----------|
| AvIn       | uhIAvIn    | Mandatory |
| AvInClient | uhIAvInNtf | optional  |

#### 8.1.4.3.2.2 Configurable Items

None.

#### 8.1.4.3.2.3 Constraints

None.

#### 8.1.4.3.3 Instantiation

##### 8.1.4.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 541

| Type | Object | Multiplicity |
|------|--------|--------------|
| AvIn | avin   | 1            |

##### 8.1.4.3.3.2 Initial State

`avin.Presence == uhAvIn_PresenceInvalid`

`avin.aspectRatio == uhAvIn_AspectRatioInvalid`

`avin.videoCoding == uhAvIn_VideoCodingInvalid`

##### 8.1.4.3.4 Execution Constraints

At instantiation of the logical component no notifications are generated to report the initial state. These values must be obtained via the Get functions of the interface(s).

#### 8.1.4.4 Roles

##### 8.1.4.4.1 AvIn

#### Signature

```
role AvIn {
    uhAvIn_Presence_t      Presence;
    uhAvIn_AspectRatio_t   aspectRatio;
    uhAvIn_VideoCoding_t   videoCoding;
}
```

#### Qualifiers

— root

#### Description

An **AvIn** reports the properties of input signal of the analog AV input cluster.

#### Dependent Attributes

**Table 542**

| Name        | Description                           |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| Presence    | The presence of the input signal.     |
| aspectRatio | The aspect ratio of the input signal. |
| videoCoding | The video coding of the input signal. |

#### Invariants

```
— if ( Presence == uhAvIn_PresenceFalse )
  — aspectRatio == uhAvIn_AspectRatioUnknown
  — videoCoding == uhAvIn_VideoCodingUnknown
```

#### Instantiation

An **AvIn** is always instantiated as part of an Analog AV Input logical component.

#### Streaming Behavior

The **AvIn** monitors the properties of the input signal of the analog AV input cluster. Changes in the properties are reported via **uhIAvInNtf**. Current properties can be obtained via **uhIAvIn**.

#### Active Behavior

**Table 543**

| Event                                         | Action                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The presence of the input signal changed.     | Modify <b>avin.Presence</b><br>Notify <b>OnPresenceChanged</b>       |
| The aspect ratio of the input signal changed. | Modify <b>avin.aspectRatio</b><br>Notify <b>OnAspectRatioChanged</b> |
| The video coding of the input signal changed. | Modify <b>avin.videoCoding</b><br>Notify <b>OnVideoCodingChanged</b> |



#### 8.1.4.4.2 AvInClient

##### Signature

role

AvInClient { }

##### Qualifiers

— actor

##### Description

— A

— AvInClient role represents a user of the control interfaces offered by the AvIn role. It can optionally provide the notification interfaces to receive notifications of events generated by the AvIn role. No constraints apply to the behavior of the

— AvInClient role other than those implied by Figure 64.

—

#### 8.1.4.5 Interfaces

##### 8.1.4.5.1 uhIAvIn

##### Qualifiers

— None.

##### Description

The uhIAvIn interface can be used to obtain the current input signal properties of the analog AV cluster and to subscribe/unsubscribe for notifications with respect to property changes.

##### Interface ID

uuid( 41E6F09A-6142-4671-8E47-CEB2DFFD5EE4 )

##### 8.1.4.5.1.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhIAvInNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAvIn_StatusNotificationSet_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

8.1.4.5.1.2      **Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhIAvInNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAvIn_StatusNotificationSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

- unsubscribe-function

8.1.4.5.1.3      **GetPresence**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetPresence( [out] puhAvIn_Presence_t pPresence);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the current presence of the input signal on the analog AV cluster.

**Parameters**

**Table 544**

| Name      | Description                                                          |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pPresence | Output parameter returning the current presence of the input signal. |

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- None

**Postcondition**

\*pPresence == avin.Presence

8.1.4.5.1.4      **GetAspectRatio**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetAspectRatio ( [out] puhAvIn_AspectRatio_t pAspectRatio );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the current aspect ratio of the input signal on the analog AV cluster.

**Parameters**

Table 545

| Name         | Description                                                              |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pAspectRatio | Output parameter returning the current aspect ratio of the input signal. |

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None

**Postcondition**

\*pAspectRatio == avin.aspectRatio

**8.1.4.5.1.5      GetVideoCoding**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t GetVideoCoding ( [out] puhAvIn\_VideoCoding\_t pVideoCoding );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current video coding formats of the input signal on the analog AV cluster.

**Parameters**

Table 546

| Name         | Description                                                                      |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pVideoCoding | Output parameter returning the current video coding formats of the input signal. |

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None

**Postcondition**

\*pVideoCoding == avin.videoCoding

8.1.4.5.2 uhlAvInNtf

Qualifiers

— callback

Description

Notifies changes in the input signal properties of the analog AV input cluster.

Interface ID

uuid( 831D3BD9-A0AF-471e-A7DA-6405736DF5C1 )

8.1.4.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhAvIn_StatusNotificationSet_t notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

8.1.4.5.2.2 OnPresenceChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnPresenceChanged(
    [in] UInt32 Cookie,
    [in] uhAvIn_Presence_t Presence);
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called when a change in the presence or absence of the input signal has been detected.

Parameters

Table 547

| Name     | Description                                                   |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cookie   | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| Presence | The new presence of the input signal.                         |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

**Action**  
— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

8.1.4.5.2.3      **OnAspectRatioChanged**

**Signature**  
[**async**] Void OnAspectRatioChanged (   
    [in] UInt32 cookie,   
    [in] uhAvIn\_AspectRatio\_t Aspectratio );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is called when a change in aspect ratio of the input signal has been detected.

**Parameters**

Table 548

| Name        | Description                                                   |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cookie      | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| Aspectratio | The new aspect ratio of the input signal.                     |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

8.1.4.5.2.4      **OnVideoCodingChanged**

**Signature**  
[**async**] Void OnVideoCodingChanged(   
    [in] UInt32 cookie,   
    [in] uhAvIn\_VideoCoding\_t Videocoding );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**

This function is called when a change in video coding of the input signal has been detected.

**Parameters**

**Table 549**

| Name        | Description                                                   |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cookie      | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| Videocoding | The new video coding formats of the input signal.             |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any call back compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.5 UhlAvOut**

**8.1.5.1 Concepts**

**8.1.5.1.1 Introduction**

Base band analogue audio and video outputs are often clustered together. Typically, the output signals of a cluster are directed to a single sink and give access the same source signal at different quality levels (i.e. using different types of video coding). In most cases, output pins of the socket are used to indicate/signal the available quality levels next to other output signal properties like for instance the aspect ratio of the output signal. Which output signal properties can be indicated/signalled depend on the actual AV output cluster and hardware configuration. This interface gives a client (if supported) control over the muting of audio and/or video outputs of the AV output cluster and the signalling of video output signal properties.

An example of a typical AV output cluster is a SCART socket consisting of Y/CVBS and RGB output in combination with one base band stereo output. Several pins (pin 8, pin 16, pin 15 and 20) might be used on a SCART socket to indicate/signal signal properties. Some properties are indicated/signalled using the same pin by means of multiple voltage levels of which some can be manufacturer and/or vendor specific. Using these SCART pins it is possible to indicate/signal the following output signal properties:

- Available video coding types of the output signal (i.e. CVBS, RGB, YC). Since signalling of the video condong type is considered the responsibiltiy of the platform no interface is provided to control the signalling of video coding types.
- Aspect ratio of the output signal (i.e. 4:3, 16:9, letterbox).

### 8.1.5.2 Types & Constants

#### 8.1.5.2.1 Public Types & Constants

##### 8.1.5.2.1.1 Error Codes

— None.

##### 8.1.5.2.1.2 `uhAvOut_AspectRatio_t`

###### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAvOut_AspectRatio_t {
    uhAvOut_AspectRatioUnknown    = 0,
    uhAvOut_AspectRatio4by3       = 1,
    uhAvOut_AspectRatio16by9      = 2,
    uhAvOut_AspectRatioLetterBox  = 3
} uhAvOut_AspectRatio_t, *puhAvOut_AspectRatio_t;
```

###### Qualifiers

None.

###### Description

The video aspect ratio types.

###### Values

**Table 550**

###### Name

`uhAvOut_AspectRatioUnknown`  
`uhAvOut_AspectRatio4by3`  
`uhAvOut_AspectRatio16by9`  
`uhAvOut_AspectRatioLetterBox`

###### Description

An unknown aspect ration (determined by the platform).  
 An aspect ration of 4 by 3.  
 An aspect ration of 16 by 9 (widescreen).  
 A letterboxed aspect ratio (16 by 9 content within a 4 by 3 aspect ratio).

##### 8.1.5.2.2 Model Types & Constants

None.

8.1.5.3 Logical Component

8.1.5.3.1 Interface-Role Model

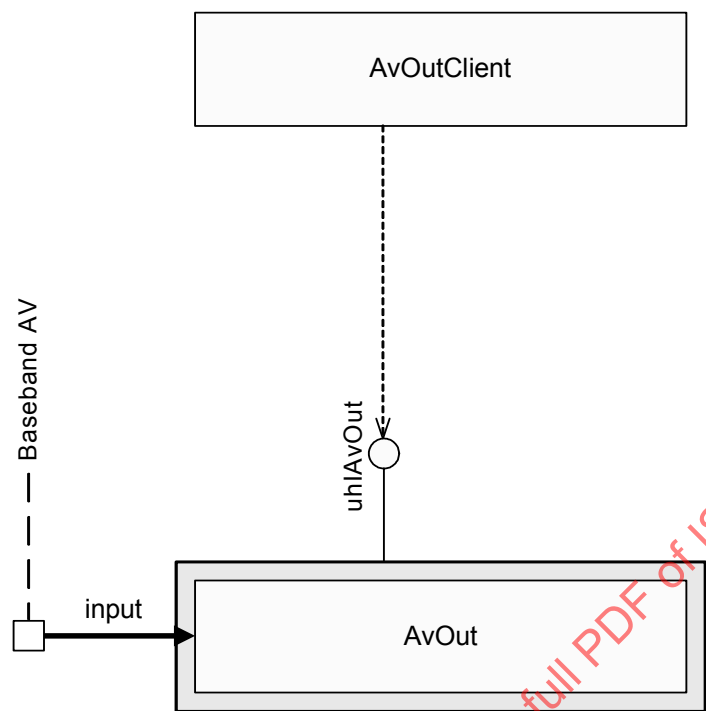


Figure 65 — Interface Role Model

Figure 65 shows the interface role model for the analog AV output.

8.1.5.3.2 Diversity

8.1.5.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 551

| Role  | Interface | Presence  |
|-------|-----------|-----------|
| AvOut | uhIAvOut  | mandatory |

8.1.5.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 552

| Role  | Attribute            |
|-------|----------------------|
| AvOut | muteVideoSupported   |
| AvOut | muteAudioSupported   |
| AvOut | aspectRatioSupported |



8.1.5.3.2.3 Constraints

— None.

8.1.5.3.3 Instantiation

8.1.5.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 553

| Type  | Object | Multiplicity |
|-------|--------|--------------|
| AvOut | avout  | 1            |

8.1.5.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

```
— if (avout.muteVideoSupported)
  — avout.muteVideo == True
— else
  — avout.muteVideo == False

— if (avout.muteAudioSupported)
  — avout.muteAudio == True
— else
  — avout.muteAudio == False
— avout.aspectRatio == uhAvOut.AspectRatioUnknown
```

8.1.5.3.4 Execution Constraints

None.

8.1.5.4 Roles

8.1.5.4.1 AvOut

Signature

```
role AvOut {
  Bool muteVideo;
  const Bool muteVideoSupported;
  Bool muteAudio;
  const Bool muteAudioSupported;
  Bool aspectRatio;
  const Bool aspectRatioSupported;
}
```

Qualifiers

— Root

**Description**

The Analog AV Output controls the baseband audio and/or video output related to a certain analog AV output cluster. If supported, the audio and/or video output can be muted and the signalling of aspect ratio can be controlled.

**Independent Attributes****Table 554**

| <b>Name</b>              | <b>Description</b>                                      |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>muteVideo</code>   | The mute status of the video of the AV output cluster.  |
| <code>muteAudio</code>   | The mute status of the audio of the AV output cluster.  |
| <code>aspectRatio</code> | The aspect ratio of the video of the AV output cluster. |

**Invariants**

- if (`avout.muteVideo == True`)
  - `avout.muteVideoSupported == True`
- if (`avout.muteAudio == True`)
  - `avout.muteAudioSupported == True`

**Instantiation**

An `AvOut` is always instantiated as part of an Analog AV Output logical component.

**Active Behavior**

The `AvOut` has no active behavior.

**8.1.5.4.2 AvOutClient****Signature**

```
role AvOutClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

- actor

**Description**

An `AvOutClient` role represents a user of the control interface offered by the `AvOut` role. No constraints apply to the behavior of the `AvOutClient` role other than those implied by Figure 65.

**8.1.5.5 Interfaces****8.1.5.5.1 uhlAvOut****Qualifiers**

- None.

**Description**

The `uhlAvOut` interface provides control over the muting of the audio and video and control over the signaling of video properties using the analog AV output cluster.

**Interface ID**

uuid( 6155F81B-BA6D-4758-A8B7-43FA46DE16AE )

**8.1.5.5.1.1 VideoMuteSupported**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t VideoMuteSupported ( [out] pBool pSupported );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function indicates if muting of the video output(s) of the output cluster is supported or not.

**Parameters**

**Table 555**

| Name       | Description                                                               |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSupported | Output parameter indicating if muting is supported (True) or not (False). |

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- None.

**Postcondition**

\*pSupported == avout.muteVideoSupported

**8.1.5.5.1.2 SetVideoMute**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t SetVideoMute ([in] Bool mute);

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous

**Description**

This function mutes or unmutes the video output(s) of the output cluster.

Parameters

Table 556

| Name              | Description                                                                                                              |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>mute</code> | Input parameter indicating if the video output(s) must be muted ( <code>True</code> ) or unmuted ( <code>False</code> ). |

Precondition

`avout.muteVideoSupported == True`

Action

— Modify `avout.muteVideo`

Postcondition

`avout.muteVideo == mute`

8.1.5.5.1.3      **GetVideoMute**

Signature

`uhErrorCode_t GetVideoMute ( [out] pBool pVideoMute )`

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function returns the mute status of the video output(s) of the output cluster.

Parameters

Table 557

| Name                    | Description                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pVideoMute</code> | Output parameter returning the mute status of the video output(s) ( <code>True</code> indicates muted, <code>False</code> indicates unmuted). |

Precondition

`True`

Action

— None.

Postcondition

`*pVideoMute == avout.muteVideo`

8.1.5.5.1.4      **AudioMuteSupported**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t AudioMuteSupported ( [out] pBool pSupported );

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - thread-safe

**Description**  
This function indicates if muting of the audio output(s) of the output cluster is supported or not.

**Parameters**

Table 558

| Name       | Description                                                                                      |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSupported | Output parameter indicating if muting of the audio output(s) is supported (True) or not (False). |

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— None.

**Postcondition**  
\*pSupported == avout.muteAudioSupported

8.1.5.5.1.5      **SetAudioMute**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t SetAudioMute ([in] Bool mute);

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous

**Description**  
This function mutes or unmutes the audio of the output cluster.

**Parameters**

Table 559

| Name | Description                                                                                |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| mute | Input parameter indicating if the audio output(s) must be muted (True) or unmuted (False). |

**Precondition**  
avout.muteAudioSupported == True

Action

— Modify `avout.muteAudio`

Postcondition

`avout.muteAudio == mute`

8.1.5.5.1.6      **GetAudioMute**

Signature

`uhErrorCode_t GetAudioMute ( [out] pBool pAudioMute );`

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function returns the mute status of the audio output(s) of the output cluster.

Parameters

Table 560

| Name                    | Description                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pAudioMute</code> | Output parameter returning the mute status of the audio output(s) ( <code>True</code> indicates muted, <code>False</code> indicates unmuted). |

Precondition

`True`

Action

— None.

Postcondition

`*pAudioMute == avout.audioMute`

8.1.5.5.1.7      **AspectRatioSupported**

Signature

`uhErrorCode_t AspectRatioSupported ( [out] pBool pSupported );`

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function indicates if signaling of the aspect ratio of the video signal of the output cluster is supported or not.

**Parameters****Table 561**

| <b>Name</b>             | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pSupported</code> | Output parameter that indicates if signaling of the aspect ratio of the video signal(s) is supported (True) or not (False). |

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None.

**Postcondition**

`*pSupported == avout.aspectRatioSupported`

**8.1.5.5.1.8      SetAspectRatio****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetAspectRatio ([in] uhAvOut_AspectRatio_t aspectRatio);
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

**Description**

This function sets the aspect ratio that must be signalled for the video signal of the output cluster.

**Parameters****Table 562**

| <b>Name</b>              | <b>Description</b>                                                                      |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>aspectRatio</code> | Input parameter indicating the aspect ratio of the video signal that must be signalled. |

**Precondition**

`avout.aspectRatioSupported == True`

**Action**

— Modify `avout.aspectRatio`

**Postcondition**

`avout.aspectRatio == aspectRatio`

8.1.5.5.1.9      **GetAspectRatio**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t GetAspectRatio ( [out] puhAvOut\_AspectRatio\_t pAspectRatio );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the aspect ratio being signalled for the video signal of the output cluster.

**Parameters**

**Table 563**

| Name         | Description                                                  |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| pAspectRatio | Output parameter returning the aspect ratio being signalled. |

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- None.

**Postcondition**

\*pAspectRatio == avout.aspectRatio

8.1.6      **UhlChanDec**

8.1.6.1      **Concepts**

8.1.6.1.1      **Introduction**

The function of a CHD is to receive an IF, demodulate and decode it, and output the resulting packets.

8.1.6.1.2      **Demodulation & Decoding**

Channel decoding (also called digital demodulation & decoding) is the process of translating an incoming digital IF to packets that can be demultiplexed and/or descrambled.

A carrier can be modulated by changing it's frequency, phase (PSK), or amplitude (ASK). Frequency and phase modulation are very close modulation techniques, and typically treated as the same type of modulation.

The following figure shows how the signal is modulated.



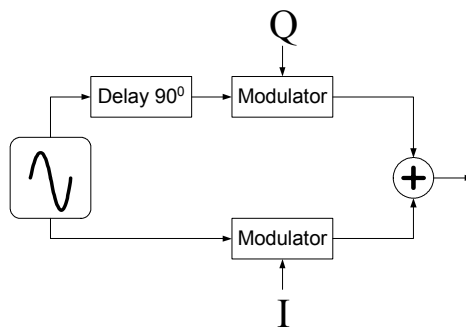


Figure 66 — Typical modulation scheme

A single carrier is split into two paths. The phase of one path is shifted for 90 degrees. Two carriers are amplitude modulated using vector I and vector Q. Possible values for I and Q vectors are normally drawn on two-dimensional graph which is called constellation. If the I axis is the horizontal and Q the vertical one or vice versa determines the IQ mode.

The decoding is channel decoding, which is totally independent from source encoding like MPEG and so on, and consist of analog to digital conversion, filtering, formatting, and forward error correction. The control and level of control for these operations differ between DvbC, DvbT, and DvbS and are described in the following subclauses. The level of control provided by this interface suite is sufficient to implement products based on ATSC and Open Cable standards as well.

During demodulation and decoding, the number of bits that is incorrectly received should be low. An indication for the number of incorrectly received bits is the BER, which denotes the ratio of the number of erroneous bits to the total number of bits transmitted. How low the BER should be is indicated by the BER threshold.

#### 8.1.6.1.3 DVB Cable (DvbC)

DvbC requires little control. In order to do decoding, it is only required to configure the symbol rate correctly, where the symbol rate is the number of symbols transmitted per second. A symbol denotes a number of bits depending on the modulation method that is used. For QPSK a symbol is 2 bits ( $2^2 = 4$ , QAM-4 which is the same as QPSK), for QAM-64 it is 6 bits ( $2^6 = 64$ ). The symbol rate is available in the NIT.

#### 8.1.6.1.4 DVB Terrestrial (DvbT)

Controlling DvbT is more complex. The following information, which is all available in the NIT, has to be provided correctly to the platform:

- **Code Rate:** In the case of terrestrial reception, a high and low priority stream is available. For each of these streams, the inner FEC has to be undone (decoding). For this purpose the code rate has to be configured. The code rate denotes the ratio of the useful bit-rate to the transmitted bit-rate.
- **Hierarchy Mode:** Terrestrial transmission with QAM modulation can be hierarchical and non-hierarchical. In the case of hierarchical transmission, the alpha value has to be configured. This value is the minimum distance separating two constellation points carrying different high-priority bit values divided by the minimum distance separating any two constellation points.
- **Guard Interval:** This is the ratio of the duration of the guard interval ( $T_g$ ) to the duration of the useful part of an OFDM symbol ( $T_u$ ). The duration of an OFDM symbol is equal to  $T_g + T_u$ .
- **Transmission Mode:** This mode determines the number of carriers in an OFDM symbol.
- **Channel Bandwidth:** This is the width of the incoming IF band that has to be demodulated and decoded.

#### 8.1.6.1.5 DVB Satellite (DvbS)

Controlling DvbS is done by providing the following information, which is available in the NIT, correctly to the platform:

- **Depuncture rate:** This is the scheme needed to undo (decode) the inner FEC of the incoming stream. It denotes the ratio of the useful bit-rate to the transmitted bit-rate.
- **Symbol rate:** This is the number of symbols transmitted per second.
- **Polarization:** This is the polarization of the transmitted signal.

Furthermore, the following LNB related information has to be provided:

- **Transmission band switch mode:** This defines how the transmission band selection of the transmitted signal is effectuated in the LNB that is used.
- **Polarization switch mode:** This defines how the polarization of the transmitted signal is effectuated in the LNB that is used.
- **Transmission band:** This defines the transmission band that is used to select the appropriate local oscillator in the LNB.
- **Power loop through:** If power loop through is enabled, the power to the LNB is supplied from an external receiver.

#### 8.1.6.2 Types & Constants

##### 8.1.6.2.1 Public Types & Constants

###### 8.1.6.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

###### 8.1.6.2.1.2 uhChanDec\_Notification\_t

###### Signature

```
typedef enum uhChanDec_Notification_t {
    uhChanDec_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhChanDec_ConstellationDetected = 0x00000002,
    uhChanDec_IqModeDetected = 0x00000004,
    uhChanDec_CodeRateDetected = 0x00000008,
    uhChanDec_HierarchyModeDetected = 0x00000010,
    uhChanDec_GuardIntervalDetected = 0x00000020,
    uhChanDec_TxModeDetected = 0x00000040,
    uhChanDec_ChanBandwidthDetected = 0x00000080,
    uhChanDec_DepunctureRateDetected = 0x00000100,
    uhChanDec_PolarizationDetected = 0x00000200,
    uhChanDec_CarrierPresentChanged = 0x00000400,
    uhChanDec_BerThresholdCrossed = 0x00000800
} uhChanDec_Notification_t, *puhChanDec_Notification_t;
```

###### Qualifiers

- enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the notification functions in the `uhChanDecNtf` interface. They can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

**Values****Table 564****Name**

`uhChanDec_SubscriptionChanged`  
`uhChanDec_ConstellationDetected`  
`uhChanDec_IqModeDetected`  
`uhChanDec_CodeRateDetected`  
`uhChanDec_HierarchyModeDetected`  
`uhChanDec_GuardIntervalDetected`  
`uhChanDec_TxModeDetected`  
`uhChanDec_ChanBandwidthDetected`  
`uhChanDec_DepunctureRateDetected`  
`uhChanDec_PolarizationDetected`  
`uhChanDec_CarrierPresentChanged`  
`uhChanDec_BerThresholdCrossed`

**Description**

Represents `OnSubscriptionChanged`.  
 Represents `OnConstellationDetected`.  
 Represents `OnIqModeDetected`.  
 Represents `OnCodeRateDetected`.  
 Represents `OnHierarchyModeDetected`.  
 Represents `OnGuardIntervalDetected`.  
 Represents `OnTxModeDetected`.  
 Represents `OnChanBandwidthDetected`.  
 Represents `OnDepunctureRateDetected`.  
 Represents `OnPolarizationDetected`.  
 Represents `OnCarrierPresentChanged`.  
 Represents `OnBerThresholdCrossed`.

**8.1.6.2.1.3      `uhChanDec_Notifications_t`****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhChanDec_Notifications_t, *puhChanDec_Notifications_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— `enum-set`

**Description**

Defines the set-type for `uhChanDec_Notifications_t`.

**8.1.6.2.1.4      `uhChanDec_AllNotifications`****Signature**

```
const uhChanDec_Notifications_t uhChanDec_AllNotifications = 0x00000FFF;
```

**Qualifiers**

— `none`

**Description**

The set of all notifications of `uhChanDec_Notifications_t`.

## 8.1.6.2.1.5 uhChanDec\_Constellation\_t

**Signature**

```
typedef enum uhChanDec_Constellation_t {
    uhChanDec_ConstellationInvalid    = 0x80000000,
    uhChanDec_ConstellationUnknown    = 0x40000000,
    uhChanDec_ConstellationAuto       = 0x00000001,
    uhChanDec_ConstellationBpsk       = 0x00000002,
    uhChanDec_ConstellationQpsk       = 0x00000004,
    uhChanDec_Constellation8psk       = 0x00000008,
    uhChanDec_ConstellationQam16      = 0x00000010,
    uhChanDec_ConstellationQam64      = 0x00000020,
    uhChanDec_ConstellationQam128     = 0x00000040,
    uhChanDec_ConstellationQam256     = 0x00000080,
    uhChanDec_ConstellationQam512     = 0x00000100,
    uhChanDec_ConstellationQam1024    = 0x00000200,
    uhChanDec_Constellation8Vsb       = 0x00000400,
    uhChanDec_Constellation16Vsb      = 0x00000800
} uhChanDec_Constellation_t, *puhChanDec_Constellation_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the constellation.

**Values****Table 565**

| Name                           | Description                                                  |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhChanDec_ConstellationInvalid | The constellation is temporarily not available.              |
| uhChanDec_ConstellationUnknown | The constellation is available, yet could not be determined. |
| uhChanDec_ConstellationAuto    | The constellation is automatically detected.                 |
| uhChanDec_ConstellationBpsk    | Binary Phase Shift Keying; phase modulation with two states. |
| uhChanDec_ConstellationQpsk    | Phase modulation with four states (equivalent to QAM-4).     |
| uhChanDec_Constellation8psk    | 8-Phase Shift Keying; phase modulation with eight states.    |
| uhChanDec_ConstellationQam16   | QAM with 16 states.                                          |
| uhChanDec_ConstellationQam64   | QAM with 64 states.                                          |
| uhChanDec_ConstellationQam128  | QAM with 128 states.                                         |
| uhChanDec_ConstellationQam256  | QAM with 256 states.                                         |
| uhChanDec_ConstellationQam512  | QAM with 512 states.                                         |
| uhChanDec_ConstellationQam1024 | QAM with 1024 states.                                        |
| uhChanDec_Constellation8Vsb    | VSB with 8 states.                                           |
| uhChanDec_Constellation16Vsb   | VSB with 16 states.                                          |

**8.1.6.2.1.6      uhChanDec\_ConstellationSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhChanDec_ConstellationSet_t, *puhChanDec_ConstellationSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Defines the set-type for uhChanDec\_Constellation\_t.

**8.1.6.2.1.7      uhChanDec\_IqMode\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhChanDec_IqMode_t {
    uhChanDec_IqModeInvalid   = 0x80000000,
    uhChanDec_IqModeUnknown   = 0x40000000,
    uhChanDec_IqModeAuto      = 0x00000001,
    uhChanDec_IqModeNormal    = 0x00000002,
    uhChanDec_IqModeInverse    = 0x00000004
} uhChanDec_IqMode_t, *puhChanDec_IqMode_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the IQ mode.

**Values****Table 566****Name**

```
uhChanDec_IqModeInvalid
uhChanDec_IqModeUnknown
uhChanDec_IqModeAuto
uhChanDec_IqModeNormal
uhChanDec_IqModeInverse
```

**Description**

The IQ mode is temporarily not available.

The IQ mode is available, yet could not be determined.

The IQ mode is automatically detected.

IQ mode in which I is the horizontal axis and Q the vertical.

IQ mode in which I is the vertical axis and Q the horizontal.

**8.1.6.2.1.8      uhChanDec\_IqModeSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhChanDec_IqModeSet_t, *puhChanDec_IqModeSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Defines the set-type for uhChanDec\_IqMode\_t.

8.1.6.2.1.9 **uhChanDec\_CodeRate\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum uhChanDec_CodeRate_t {
    uhChanDec_CodeRateInvalid = 0x80000000,
    uhChanDec_CodeRateUnknown = 0x40000000,
    uhChanDec_CodeRateAuto    = 0x00000001,
    uhChanDec_CodeRateNone    = 0x00000002,
    uhChanDec_CodeRate1_2     = 0x00000004,
    uhChanDec_CodeRate2_3     = 0x00000008,
    uhChanDec_CodeRate3_4     = 0x00000010,
    uhChanDec_CodeRate5_6     = 0x00000020,
    uhChanDec_CodeRate6_7     = 0x00000040,
    uhChanDec_CodeRate7_8     = 0x00000080,
    uhChanDec_CodeRate8_9     = 0x00000100
} uhChanDec_CodeRate_t, *puhChanDec_CodeRate_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the inner FEC scheme in case of terrestrial reception.

**Values****Table 567****Name****Description**

|                           |                                                          |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| uhChanDec_CodeRateInvalid | The code rate is temporarily not available.              |
| uhChanDec_CodeRateUnknown | The code rate is available, yet could not be determined. |
| uhChanDec_CodeRateAuto    | The code rate is automatically detected.                 |
| uhChanDec_CodeRateNone    | The code rate cannot be set.                             |
| uhChanDec_CodeRate1_2     | Code rate 1/2.                                           |
| uhChanDec_CodeRate2_3     | Code rate 2/3.                                           |
| uhChanDec_CodeRate3_4     | Code rate 3/4.                                           |
| uhChanDec_CodeRate5_6     | Code rate 5/6.                                           |
| uhChanDec_CodeRate6_7     | Code rate 6/7.                                           |
| uhChanDec_CodeRate7_8     | Code rate 7/8.                                           |
| uhChanDec_CodeRate8_9     | Code rate 8/9.                                           |

8.1.6.2.1.10 **uhChanDec\_CodeRateSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhChanDec_CodeRateSet_t, *puhChanDec_CodeRateSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Defines the set-type for `uhChanDec_CodeRate_t`.

**8.1.6.2.1.11 `uhChanDec_HierarchyMode_t`****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhChanDec_HierarchyMode_t {
    uhChanDec_HierarchyModeInvalid    = 0x80000000,
    uhChanDec_HierarchyModeUnknown    = 0x40000000,
    uhChanDec_HierarchyModeAuto       = 0x00000001,
    uhChanDec_HierarchyAlpha1         = 0x00000002,
    uhChanDec_HierarchyAlpha2         = 0x00000004,
    uhChanDec_HierarchyAlpha4         = 0x00000008,
    uhChanDec_HierarchyNone           = 0x00000010
} uhChanDec_HierarchyMode_t, *puhChanDec_HierarchyMode_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the hierarchy mode.

**Values****Table 568****Name****Description**

`uhChanDec_HierarchyModeInvalid`

The hierarchy mode is temporarily not available.

`uhChanDec_HierarchyModeUnknown`

The hierarchy mode is available, yet could not be determined.

`uhChanDec_HierarchyModeAuto`

The hierarchy mode is automatically detected.

`uhChanDec_HierarchyAlpha1`

Hierarchical transmission with alpha is 1.

`uhChanDec_HierarchyAlpha2`

Hierarchical transmission with alpha is 2.

`uhChanDec_HierarchyAlpha4`

Hierarchical transmission with alpha is 4.

`uhChanDec_HierarchyNone`

Non-hierarchical transmission.

**8.1.6.2.1.12 `uhChanDec_HierarchyModeSet_t`****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhChanDec_HierarchyModeSet_t, *puhChanDec_HierarchyModeSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Defines the set-type for `uhChanDec_HierarchyModeSet_t`.

8.1.6.2.1.13 **uhChanDec\_GuardInterval\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhChanDec_GuardInterval_t {
    uhChanDec_GuardIntervalInvalid = 0x80000000,
    uhChanDec_GuardIntervalUnknown = 0x40000000,
    uhChanDec_GuardIntervalAuto    = 0x00000001,
    uhChanDec_GuardInterval1_32   = 0x00000002,
    uhChanDec_GuardInterval1_16   = 0x00000004,
    uhChanDec_GuardInterval1_8    = 0x00000008,
    uhChanDec_GuardInterval1_4    = 0x00000010
} uhChanDec_GuardInterval_t, *puhChanDec_GuardInterval_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the guard interval.

**Values****Table 569**

| Name                           | Description                                                   |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhChanDec_GuardIntervalInvalid | The guard interval is temporarily not available.              |
| uhChanDec_GuardIntervalUnknown | The guard interval is available, yet could not be determined. |
| uhChanDec_GuardIntervalAuto    | The guard interval is automatically detected.                 |
| uhChanDec_GuardInterval1_32    | Guard interval 1/32.                                          |
| uhChanDec_GuardInterval1_16    | Guard interval 1/16.                                          |
| uhChanDec_GuardInterval1_8     | Guard interval 1/8.                                           |
| uhChanDec_GuardInterval1_4     | Guard interval 1/4.                                           |

8.1.6.2.1.14 **uhChanDec\_GuardIntervalSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhChanDec_GuardIntervalSet_t, *puhChanDec_GuardIntervalSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Defines the set-type for uhChanDec\_GuardInterval\_t.



8.1.6.2.1.15    **uhChanDec\_TxMode\_t**

**Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhChanDec_TxMode_t {
    uhChanDec_TxModeInvalid    = 0x80000000,
    uhChanDec_TxModeUnknown    = 0x40000000,
    uhChanDec_TxModeAuto       = 0x00000001,
    uhChanDec_TxMode2k         = 0x00000002,
    uhChanDec_TxMode8k         = 0x00000004
} uhChanDec_TxMode_t, *puhChanDec_TxMode_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the transmission mode.

**Values**

**Table 570**

| Name                    | Description                                                      |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhChanDec_TxModeInvalid | The transmission mode is temporarily not available.              |
| uhChanDec_TxModeUnknown | The transmission mode is available, yet could not be determined. |
| uhChanDec_TxModeAuto    | The transmission mode is automatically detected.                 |
| uhChanDec_TxMode2k      | 2k transmission mode.                                            |
| uhChanDec_TxMode8k      | 8k transmission mode.                                            |

8.1.6.2.1.16    **uhChanDec\_TxModeSet\_t**

**Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhChanDec_TxModeSet_t, *puhChanDec_TxModeSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Defines the set-type for uhChanDec\_TxMode\_t.

8.1.6.2.1.17    uhChanDec\_ChanBandwidth\_t

Signature

```
typedef enum _uhChanDec_ChanBandwidth_t {
    uhChanDec_ChanBandwidthInvalid    = 0x80000000,
    uhChanDec_ChanBandwidthUnknown    = 0x40000000,
    uhChanDec_ChanBandwidthAuto       = 0x00000001,
    uhChanDec_ChanBandwidth6MHz       = 0x00000002,
    uhChanDec_ChanBandwidth7MHz       = 0x00000004,
    uhChanDec_ChanBandwidth8MHz       = 0x00000008
} uhChanDec_ChanBandwidth_t, *puhChanDec_ChanBandwidth_t;
```

Qualifiers

— enum-element

Description

Values of this type represent the channel bandwidth.

Values

Table 571

| Name                           | Description                                                      |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhChanDec_ChanBandwidthInvalid | The channel bandwidth is temporarily not available.              |
| uhChanDec_ChanBandwidthUnknown | The channel bandwidth is available, yet could not be determined. |
| uhChanDec_ChanBandwidthAuto    | The channel bandwidth is automatically detected.                 |
| uhChanDec_ChanBandwidth6MHz    | 6 MHz channel bandwidth.                                         |
| uhChanDec_ChanBandwidth7MHz    | 7 MHz channel bandwidth.                                         |
| uhChanDec_ChanBandwidth8MHz    | 8 MHz channel bandwidth.                                         |

8.1.6.2.1.18    uhChanDec\_ChanBandwidthSet\_t

Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhChanDec_ChanBandwidthSet_t, *puhChanDec_ChanBandwidthSet_t;
```

Qualifiers

— enum-set

Description

Defines the set-type for uhChanDec\_ChanBandwidth\_t.

**8.1.6.2.1.19    uhChanDec\_DepunctureRate\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhChanDec_DepunctureRate_t {
    uhChanDec_DepunctureRateInvalid    = 0x80000000,
    uhChanDec_DepunctureRateUnknown    = 0x40000000,
    uhChanDec_DepunctureRateAuto       = 0x00000001,
    uhChanDec_DepunctureRate1_2        = 0x00000002,
    uhChanDec_DepunctureRate2_3        = 0x00000004,
    uhChanDec_DepunctureRate3_4        = 0x00000008,
    uhChanDec_DepunctureRate5_6        = 0x00000010,
    uhChanDec_DepunctureRate6_7        = 0x00000020,
    uhChanDec_DepunctureRate7_8        = 0x00000040
} uhChanDec_DepunctureRate_t, *puhChanDec_DepunctureRate_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the inner FEC scheme in case of satellite reception.

**Values****Table 572****Name****Description**

|                                 |                                                                |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhChanDec_DepunctureRateInvalid | The depuncture rate is temporarily not available.              |
| uhChanDec_DepunctureRateUnknown | The depuncture rate is available, yet could not be determined. |
| uhChanDec_DepunctureRateAuto    | The depuncture rate is automatically detected.                 |
| uhChanDec_DepunctureRate1_2     | Depuncture rate 1/2.                                           |
| uhChanDec_DepunctureRate2_3     | Depuncture rate 2/3.                                           |
| uhChanDec_DepunctureRate3_4     | Depuncture rate 3/4.                                           |
| uhChanDec_DepunctureRate5_6     | Depuncture rate 5/6.                                           |
| uhChanDec_DepunctureRate6_7     | Depuncture rate 6/7.                                           |
| uhChanDec_DepunctureRate7_8     | Depuncture rate 7/8.                                           |

**8.1.6.2.1.20    uhChanDec\_DepunctureRateSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhChanDec_DepunctureRateSet_t, *puhChanDec_DepunctureRateSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Defines the set-type for uhChanDec\_DepunctureRate\_t.

8.1.6.2.1.21 **uhChanDec\_PolarizationSwitchMode\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhChanDec_PolarizationSwitchMode_t {
    uhChanDec_PolarizationSwitchModeNone    = 0,
    uhChanDec_PolarizationSwitchModeVolts    = 1,
    uhChanDec_PolarizationSwitchModeDiseqc   = 2
} uhChanDec_PolarizationSwitchMode_t, *puhChanDec_PolarizationSwitchMode_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— none

**Description**

Values of this type represent the polarization switch mode.

**Values****Table 573**

| Name                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhChanDec_PolarizationSwitchModeNone   | No switch can be done, because only one type of polarization supported.                                                                                                                                                                            |
| uhChanDec_PolarizationSwitchModeVolts  | Switching is done using either 13V or 18V. uhChanDec_PolarizationLinearVertical and uhChanDec_PolarizationCircularRight coincide with 13V whereas uhChanDec_PolarizationLinearHorizontal and uhChanDec_PolarizationCircularLeft coincide with 18V. |
| uhChanDec_PolarizationSwitchModeDiseqc | Switching is done according to the DiSEqC standard.                                                                                                                                                                                                |

8.1.6.2.1.22 **uhChanDec\_TxBandSwitchMode\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhChanDec_TxBandSwitchMode_t {
    uhChanDec_TxBandSwitchModeNone    = 0,
    uhChanDec_TxBandSwitchModeTone    = 1,
    uhChanDec_TxBandSwitchModeDiseqc  = 2
} uhChanDec_TxBandSwitchMode_t, *puhChanDec_TxBandSwitchMode_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the transmission band switch mode.

**Values****Table 574****Name****Description**

uhChanDec\_TxBandSwitchModeNone

No switch can be done, because only one transmission band supported.

uhChanDec\_TxBandSwitchModeTone

Switching is done by superimposing either 0kHz or 22kHz. uhChanDec\_TxBandHigh coincides with 22 KHz and uhChanDec\_TxBandLow coincides with 0 KHz.

uhChanDec\_TxBandSwitchModeDiseqc

Switching is done according to the DiSEqC standard.

**8.1.6.2.1.23 uhChanDec\_Polarization\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhChanDec_Polarization_t {
    uhChanDec_PolarizationInvalid          = 0x80000000,
    uhChanDec_PolarizationUnknown          = 0x40000000,
    uhChanDec_PolarizationAuto              = 0x00000001,
    uhChanDec_PolarizationLinearHorizontal = 0x00000002,
    uhChanDec_PolarizationLinearVertical   = 0x00000004,
    uhChanDec_PolarizationCircularLeft     = 0x00000008,
    uhChanDec_PolarizationCircularRight    = 0x00000010
} uhChanDec_Polarization_t, *puhChanDec_Polarization_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the polarization.

**Values****Table 575****Name****Description**

uhChanDec\_PolarizationInvalid

The polarization is temporarily not available.

uhChanDec\_PolarizationUnknown

The polarization is available, yet could not be determined.

uhChanDec\_PolarizationAuto

The polarization is automatically detected.

uhChanDec\_PolarizationLinearHorizontal

The polarization is linear and horizontal.

uhChanDec\_PolarizationLinearVertical

The polarization is linear and vertical.

uhChanDec\_PolarizationCircularLeft

The polarization is circular and left.

uhChanDec\_PolarizationCircularRight

The polarization is circular and right.

**8.1.6.2.1.24 uhChanDec\_PolarizationSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhChanDec_PolarizationSet_t, *puhChanDec_PolarizationSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Defines the set-type for `uhChanDec_Polarization_t`.

**8.1.6.2.1.25    `uhChanDec_TxBand_t`****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhChanDec_TxBand_t {
    uhChanDec_TxBandHigh = 0x00000001,
    uhChanDec_TxBandLow  = 0x00000002
} uhChanDec_TxBand_t, *puhChanDec_TxBand_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the transmission band.

**Values****Table 576****Name**

`uhChanDec_TxBandHigh`

`uhChanDec_TxBandLow`

**Description**

The high transmission band is used.

The low transmission band is used.

**8.1.6.2.1.26    `uhChanDec_TxBandSet_t`****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhChanDec_TxBandSet_t, *puhChanDec_TxBandSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Defines the set-type for `uhChanDec_TxBand_t`.

**8.1.6.2.1.27    `uhChanDec_ValStat_t`****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhChanDec_ValStat_t {
    uhChanDec_ValStatInvalid = -2,
    uhChanDec_ValStatUnknown = -1,
    uhChanDec_ValStaKnown    = 1
} uhChanDec_ValStat_t, *puhChanDec_ValStat_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This type represents the validity status of the related property/properties.

Values

Table 577

| Name                     | Description                                                             |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhChanDec_ValStatInvalid | The signal strength property is temporarily not available.              |
| uhChanDec_ValStatUnknown | The signal strength property is available, yet could not be determined. |
| uhChanDec_ValStatKnown   | The signal strength property is available and determined.               |

8.1.6.2.2 Model Types & Constants

None.

8.1.6.3 Logical Component

8.1.6.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 67 depicts the interface-role model of the CHD logical component. It shows the control and notification interfaces and the roles involved with this logical component.

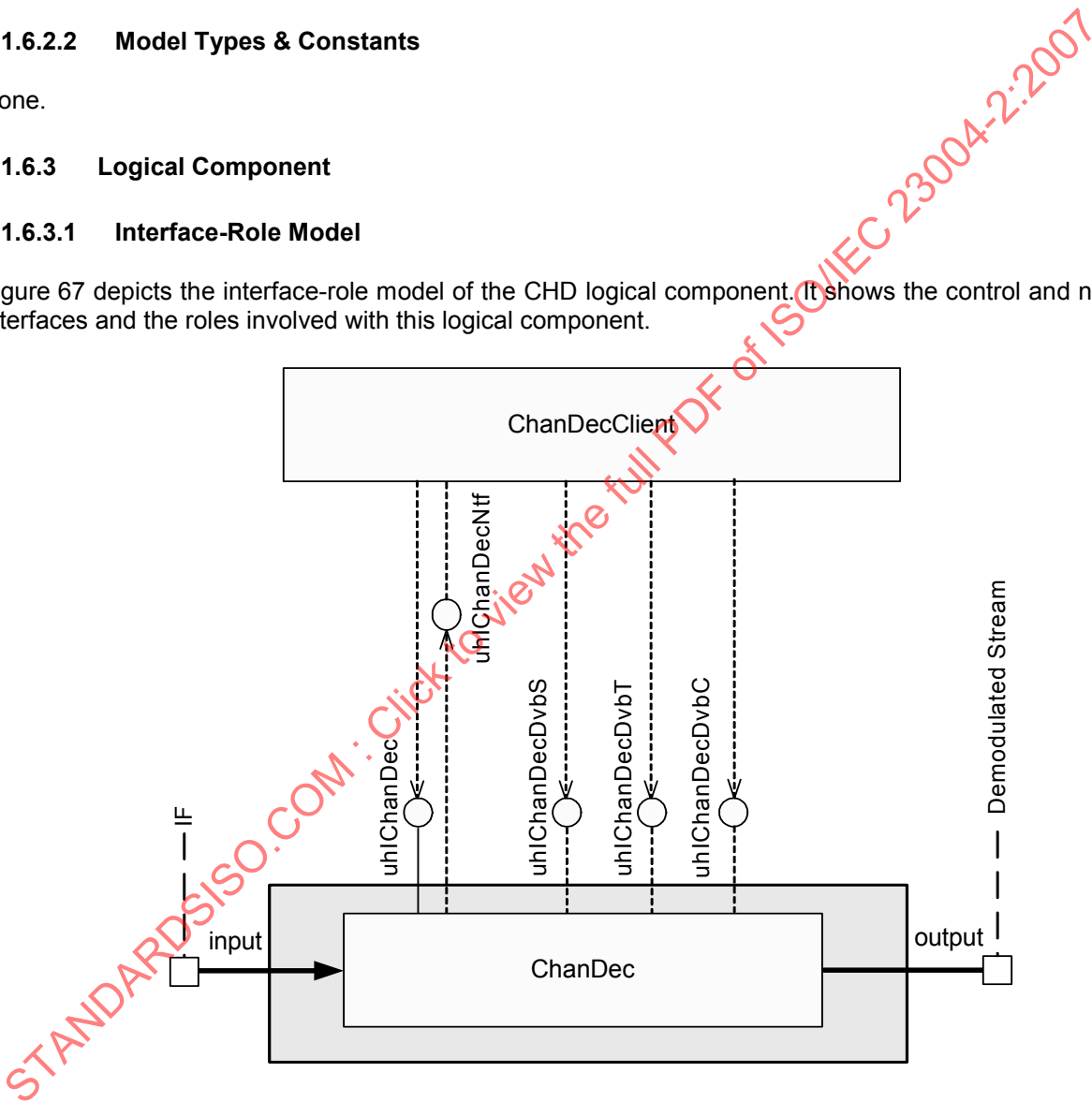


Figure 67 — Interface-Role Model

The grey box in Figure 67 denotes a CHD logical component containing the ChanDec role providing the mandatory (solid line) and optional (dotted line) control interfaces to the clients.

Clients can optionally provide notification interfaces allowing them to receive notifications of events in the ChanDec.

## 8.1.6.3.2 Diversity

## 8.1.6.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 578

| Role    | Interface      | Presence  |
|---------|----------------|-----------|
| ChanDec | uhIChanDec     | mandatory |
| ChanDec | uhIChanDecDvbC | optional  |
| ChanDec | uhIChanDecDvbT | optional  |
| ChanDec | uhIChanDecDvbS | optional  |
| ChanDec | uhIChanDecNtf  | optional  |

## 8.1.6.3.2.2 Configurable Items

The following table contains a list of role attributes that can be given a value upon creation of the logical component. For a description of the attributes see Roles subclause, and for how they are initialized, see subclause 8.1.6.3.3

Table 579

| Role    | Attribute              |
|---------|------------------------|
| ChanDec | suppConstellations     |
| ChanDec | suppIqModes            |
| ChanDec | minBerThreshold        |
| ChanDec | maxBerThreshold        |
| ChanDec | suppCodeRates          |
| ChanDec | suppHierarchyModes     |
| ChanDec | suppGuardIntervals     |
| ChanDec | suppTxModes            |
| ChanDec | suppChannelBandwidths  |
| ChanDec | suppDepunctureRates    |
| ChanDec | suppNrLocalOscillators |
| ChanDec | suppPolarizations      |
| ChanDec | suppTxBands            |
| ChanDec | powerLoopThroughSupp   |

## 8.1.6.3.2.3 Constraints

- Only one of the uhIChanDecDvbC, uhIChanDecDvbT, and uhIChanDecDvbS interfaces can be present on an instance of the ChanDec role.
- suppConstellations does not contain uhChanDec\_ConstellationUnknown
- suppConstellations does not contain uhChanDec\_ConstellationInvalid
- suppIqModes does not contain uhChanDec\_IqModeUnknown
- suppIqModes does not contain uhChanDec\_IqModeInvalid
- $\text{minBerThreshold} \leq \text{maxBerThreshold}$



— suppCodeRates **does not contain** uhChanDec\_CodeRateUnknown  
 — suppCodeRates **does not contain** uhChanDec\_CodeRateInvalid  
 — suppHierarchyModes **does not contain** uhChanDec\_HierarchyModeUnknown  
 — suppHierarchyModes **does not contain** uhChanDec\_HierarchyModeInvalid  
 — suppGuardIntervals **does not contain** uhChanDec\_GuardIntervalUnknown  
 — suppGuardIntervals **does not contain** uhChanDec\_GuardIntervalInvalid  
 — suppTxModes **does not contain** uhChanDec\_TxModeUnknown  
 — suppTxModes **does not contain** uhChanDec\_TxModeInvalid  
 — suppChannelBandwidths **does not contain** uhChanDec\_ChannelsBandwidthUnknown  
 — suppChannelBandwidths **does not contain** uhChanDec\_ChannelsBandwidthInvalid  
 — suppDepunctureRates **does not contain** uhChanDec\_DepunctureRateUnknown  
 — suppDepunctureRates **does not contain** uhChanDec\_DepunctureRateInvalid  
 — suppNrLocalOscillators != 0  
 — suppPolarizations **does not contain** uhChanDec\_PolarizationUnknown  
 — suppPolarizations **does not contain** uhChanDec\_PolarizationInvalid

### 8.1.6.3.3 Instantiation

#### 8.1.6.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 580**

| Type    | Object | Multiplicity |
|---------|--------|--------------|
| ChanDec | chd    | 1            |

#### 8.1.6.3.3.2 Initial State

— chd.setConstellation == uhChanDec\_ConstellationUnknown  
 — chd.actualConstellation == uhChanDec\_ConstellationInvalid  
 — chd.setIqMode == uhChanDec\_IqModeUnknown  
 — chd.actualIqMode == uhChanDec\_IqModeInvalid  
 — chd.setBerThreshold == chd.minBerThreshold  
 — chd.actualBerStatus == uhChanDec\_ValStatInvalid  
 — chd.actualBer == 0  
 — chd.carrierPresentStatus == uhChanDec\_ValStatInvalid  
 — chd.symbolRateC == 0  
 — chd.setHighPrioCodeRate == uhChanDec\_CodeRateUnknown  
 — chd.actualHighPrioCodeRate == uhChanDec\_CodeRateInvalid  
 — chd.setLowPrioCodeRate == uhChanDec\_CodeRateUnknown  
 — chd.actualLowPrioCodeRate == uhChanDec\_CodeRateInvalid  
 — chd.setHierarchyMode == uhChanDec\_HierarchyModeUnknown  
 — chd.actualHierarchyMode == uhChanDec\_HierarchyModeInvalid  
 — chd.setGuardInterval == uhChanDec\_GuardIntervalUnknown  
 — chd.actualGuardInterval == uhChanDec\_GuardIntervalInvalid  
 — chd.setTxMode == uhChanDec\_TxModeUnknown  
 — chd.actualTxMode == uhChanDec\_TxModeInvalid  
 — chd.setChannelBandwidth == uhChanDec\_ChannelsBandwidthUnknown  
 — chd.actualChannelBandwidth == uhChanDec\_ChannelsBandwidthInvalid

```

— chd.setDepunctureRate == uhChanDec_DepunctureRateUnknown
— chd.actualDepunctureRate == uhChanDec_DepunctureRateInvalid
— chd.symbolRateS == 0
— chd.polarizationSwitchMode == uhChanDec_PolarizationSwitchModeNone
— chd.txBandSwitchMode == uhChanDec_TxBandSwitchModeNone
— chd.nrLocalOscillators == chd.supplyNrLocalOscillators
— for i = [0..chd.supplyNrLocalOscillators-1]
  — chd.oscillatorFrequencies[i] == 0
— chd.setPolarization == uhChanDec_PolarizationUnknown
— chd.actualPolarization == uhChanDec_PolarizationInvalid
— chd.setTxBand == undefined
— chd.powerLoopThroughEnabled == False
—

```

#### 8.1.6.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

#### 8.1.6.4 Roles

##### 8.1.6.4.1 ChanDec

Signature

```

role ChanDec {
    const uhChanDec_ConstellationSet_t    suppConstellations;
    uhChanDec_Constellation_t             setConstellation;
    uhChanDec_Constellation_t             actualConstellation;
    const uhChanDec_IqModeSet_t            suppIqModes;
    uhChanDec_IqMode_t                    setIqMode;
    uhChanDec_IqMode_t                    actualIqMode;
    const UInt32                            minBerThreshold;
    const UInt32                            maxBerThreshold;
    UInt32                                setBerThreshold;
    uhChanDec_ValStat_t                    actualBerStatus;
    UInt32                                actualBer;
    uhChanDec_ValStat_t                    carrierPresentStatus;
    Bool                                  carrierPresent;
    UInt32                                symbolRateC;
    const uhChanDec_CodeRateSet_t           suppCodeRates;
    uhChanDec_CodeRate_t                  setHighPrioCodeRate;
    uhChanDec_CodeRate_t                  actualHighPrioCodeRate;
    uhChanDec_CodeRate_t                  setLowPrioCodeRate;
    uhChanDec_CodeRate_t                  actualLowPrioCodeRate;
    const uhChanDec_HierarchyModeSet_t      suppHierarchyModes;
    uhChanDec_HierarchyMode_t             setHierarchyMode;
    uhChanDec_HierarchyMode_t             actualHierarchyMode;
    const uhChanDec_GuardIntervalSet_t      suppGuardIntervals;
    uhChanDec_GuardInterval_t             setGuardInterval;
    uhChanDec_GuardInterval_t             actualGuardInterval;
    const uhChanDec_TxModeSet_t             suppTxModes;
    uhChanDec_TxMode_t                    setTxMode;
    uhChanDec_TxMode_t                    actualTxMode;
    const uhChanDec_ChannelsBandwidthSet_t  suppChannelBandwidths;
    uhChanDec_ChannelsBandwidth_t          setChannelBandwidth;
    uhChanDec_ChannelsBandwidth_t          actualChannelBandwidth;
    const uhChanDec_DepunctureRateSet_t     suppDepunctureRates;
    uhChanDec_DepunctureRate_t             setDepunctureRate;
    uhChanDec_DepunctureRate_t             actualDepunctureRate;
    UInt32                                symbolRateS;
    const UInt32                            suppNrLocalOscillators;
    uhChanDec_PolarizationSwitchMode_t     polarizationSwitchMode;
    uhChanDec_TxBandSwitchMode_t           txBandSwitchMode;
    UInt32                                nrLocalOscillators;
    UInt32                                oscillatorFrequencies
                                         [nrLocalOscillators];
    const uhChanDec_PolarizationSet_t       suppPolarizations;
    uhChanDec_Polarization_t               setPolarization;
    uhChanDec_Polarization_t               actualPolarization;
    const uhChanDec_TxBandSet_t             suppTxBands;
    uhChanDec_TxBand_t                     setTxBand;
    const Bool                              powerLoopThroughSupp;
    Bool                                  powerLoopThroughEnabled;
}

```

### Qualifiers

— actor

### Description

A ChanDec role controls the demodulation and decoding parameters of the front end.

## Independent Attributes

Table 581

| Name                   | Description                                                                                          |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| suppConstellations     | The supported constellations.                                                                        |
| setConstellation       | The constellation as it was set via the <code>SetConstellation</code> function.                      |
| actualConstellation    | The actual constellation.                                                                            |
| suppIqModes            | The supported IQ modes.                                                                              |
| setIqMode              | The IQ mode as it was set via the <code>SetIqMode</code> function.                                   |
| actualIqMode           | The actual IQ mode.                                                                                  |
| minBerThreshold        | The minimum value for BER threshold.                                                                 |
| maxBerThreshold        | The maximum value for BER threshold.                                                                 |
| setBerThreshold        | The BER threshold as it was set via the <code>SetBerThreshold</code> function.                       |
| actualBerStatus        | The validity status of the BER.                                                                      |
| actualBer              | The actual value of the BER.                                                                         |
| carrierPresentStatus   | The validity status of the presence of the carrier.                                                  |
| carrierPresent         | Presence (True) or absence (False) of the carrier                                                    |
| symbolRateC            | The symbol rate for DvbC as it was set via the <code>SetSymbolRate</code> function.                  |
| suppCodeRates          | The supported code rates.                                                                            |
| setHighPrioCodeRate    | The code rate for the high priority stream as it was set via the <code>SetCodeRates</code> function. |
| actualHighPrioCodeRate | The actual code rate for the high priority stream.                                                   |
| setLowPrioCodeRate     | The code rate for the low priority stream as it was set via the <code>SetCodeRates</code> function.  |
| actualLowPrioCodeRate  | The actual code rate for the low priority stream.                                                    |
| suppHierarchyModes     | The supported hierarchy modes.                                                                       |
| setHierarchyMode       | The hierarchy mode as it was set via the <code>SetHierarchyMode</code> function.                     |
| actualHierarchyMode    | The actual hierarchy mode.                                                                           |
| suppGuardIntervals     | The supported guard intervals.                                                                       |
| setGuardInterval       | The guard interval as it was set via the <code>SetGuardInterval</code> function.                     |
| actualGuardInterval    | The actual guard interval.                                                                           |
| suppTxModes            | The supported transmission modes.                                                                    |
| setTxMode              | The transmission mode as it was set via the <code>SetTxMode</code> function.                         |
| actualTxMode           | The actual transmission mode.                                                                        |
| suppChannelBandwidths  | The supported channel bandwidth.                                                                     |
| setChannelBandwidth    | The channel bandwidth as it was set via the <code>SetChanBandwidth</code> function.                  |
| actualChannelBandwidth | The actual channel bandwidth.                                                                        |
| suppDepunctureRates    | The supported depuncture rates.                                                                      |
| setDepunctureRate      | The depuncture rate as it was set via the <code>SetDepunctureRate</code> function.                   |
| actualDepunctureRate   | The actual depuncture rate.                                                                          |
| symbolRateS            | The symbol rate for DvbS as it was set via the <code>SetSymbolRate</code> function.                  |
| suppNrLocalOscillators | The supported number of local oscillators.                                                           |
| polarizationSwitchMode | The polarization switch mode as it was set via the <code>ConfigureDish</code> function.              |

| Name                    | Description                                                                                    |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| txBandSwitchMode        | The band switch mode as it was set via the <code>ConfigureDish</code> function.                |
| nrLocalOscillators      | The number of local oscillators.                                                               |
| oscillatorFrequencies   | Array containing the frequencies in Hz of the available local oscillators.                     |
| suppPolarizations       | The supported polarizations.                                                                   |
| setPolarization         | The polarization as it was set via the <code>SetPolarization</code> function.                  |
| actualPolarization      | The actual polarization.                                                                       |
| suppTxBands             | The supported transmission bands.                                                              |
| setTxBand               | The transmission band as it was set via the <code>SetTxBand</code> function.                   |
| powerLoopThroughSupp    | Indicates if loop through is supported ( <code>True</code> ) or not ( <code>False</code> ).    |
| powerLoopThroughEnabled | Indicates if loop through is enabled ( <code>True</code> ) or disabled ( <code>False</code> ). |

### Invariants

```

— (setConstellation in suppConstellations) || (setConstellation ==
  uhChanDec_ConstellationUnknown)
— (setIqMode in suppIqModes) || (setIqMode == uhChanDec_IqModeUnknown)
— minBerThreshold ≤ setBerThreshold ≤ maxBerThreshold
— (setHighPrioCodeRate in suppCodeRates) || (setHighPrioCodeRate ==
  uhChanDec_CodeRateUnknown)
— (setLowPrioCodeRate in suppCodeRates) || (setLowPrioCodeRate ==
  uhChanDec_CodeRateUnknown)
— (setHierarchyMode in suppHierarchyModes) || (setHierarchyMode ==
  uhChanDec_HierarchyModeUnknown)
— (setGuardInterval in suppGuardIntervals) || (setGuardInterval ==
  uhChanDec_GuardIntervalUnknown)
— (setTxMode in suppTxModes) || (setTxMode == uhChanDec_TxModeUnknown)
— (setChannelBandwidth in suppChannelBandwidths) || (setChannelBandwidth ==
  uhChanDec_ChannBandwidthUnknown)
— (setDepunctureRate in suppDepunctureRates) || (setDepunctureRate ==
  uhChanDec_DepunctureRateUnknown)
— 0 < nrLocalOscillators ≤ suppNrLocalOscillators
— (setPolarization in suppPolarizations) || (setPolarization ==
  uhChanDec_PolarizationUnknown)
— setTxBand in suppTxBands

```

### Instantiation

A `ChanDec` role is always instantiated as part of a CHD logical component see subclause 8.1.6.3.3.

### Streaming Behavior

The `ChanDec` role demodulates the incoming IF and outputs a signal that can be handled by a demultiplexer.

### Active Behavior

The `ChanDec` has standard notification behavior (see `uhIAdrcNtf`) except for the following events:

Table 582

| Event                                                                                      | Action                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The platform has determined the constellation after automatic detection was requested.     | Modify <code>actualConstellation</code><br>Notify <code>OnConstellationDetected</code>                                            |
| The platform has determined the IQ mode after automatic detection was requested.           | Modify <code>actualIqMode</code><br>Notify <code>OnIqModeDetected</code>                                                          |
| The platform has determined the code rate after automatic detection was requested.         | Modify <code>actualHighPrioCodeRate</code><br>Modify <code>actualLowPrioCodeRate</code><br>Notify <code>OnCodeRateDetected</code> |
| The platform has determined the hierarchy mode after automatic detection was requested.    | Modify <code>actualHierarchyMode</code><br>Notify <code>OnHierarchyModeDetected</code>                                            |
| The platform has determined the guard interval after automatic detection was requested.    | Modify <code>actualGuardInterval</code><br>Notify <code>OnGuardIntervalDetected</code>                                            |
| The platform has determined the transmission mode after automatic detection was requested. | Modify <code>actualTxMode</code><br>Notify <code>OnTxModeDetected</code>                                                          |
| The platform has determined the channel bandwidth after automatic detection was requested. | Modify <code>actualChannelBandwidth</code><br>Notify <code>OnChanBandwidthDetected</code>                                         |
| The platform has determined the depuncture rate after automatic detection was requested.   | Modify <code>actualDepunctureRate</code><br>Notify <code>OnDepunctureRateDetected</code>                                          |
| The platform has determined the polarization after automatic detection was requested.      | Modify <code>actualPolarization</code><br>Notify <code>OnPolarizationDetected</code>                                              |
| The platform has found or lost a carrier lock.                                             | Modify <code>carrierPresent</code><br>Notify <code>OnCarrierPresentChanged</code>                                                 |
| The BER crossed one of its threshold                                                       | Notify <code>OnBerThresholdCrossed</code>                                                                                         |

#### 8.1.6.4.2 ChanDecClient

##### Signature

```
role ChanDecClient {}
```

##### Qualifiers

— actor

##### Description

A `ChanDecClient` role represents a user of the control interfaces offered by the `ChanDec` role. It can optionally provide the notification interfaces to receive notifications of events generated by the `ChanDec` role. No constraints apply to the behavior of the `ChanDecClient` role other than those implied by Figure 67.

### 8.1.6.5 Interfaces

#### 8.1.6.5.1 uhIChanDec

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This interface of a ChanDec role provides control of the generic digital demodulation and decoding parameters.

##### Interface ID

uuid( 334C6950-A635-4deb-A0DC-622DD61D62BC )

##### Remarks

In the following function specifications, the name `chd` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface.

#### 8.1.6.5.1.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhIChanDecNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhChanDec_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

#### 8.1.6.5.1.2 Unsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhIChanDecNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhChanDec_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

#### 8.1.6.5.1.3 GetSuppConstellations

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppConstellations (
    [out] puhChanDec_ConstellationSet_t pConstellations );
```

##### Qualifiers

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the constellations that are supported.

**Parameters**

**Table 583**

| Name            | Description                                                       |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pConstellations | Output parameter returning the constellations that are supported. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pConstellations == chd.suppConstellations

**8.1.6.5.1.4 SetConstellation**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t SetConstellation ( [in] uhChanDec\_Constellation\_t constellation );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function sets the constellation.

**Parameters**

**Table 584**

| Name          | Description                                       |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| constellation | Input parameter indicating the new constellation. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

constellation in chd.suppConstellations



**Action**

- Modify `chd.setConstellation`
- Modify `chd.actualConstellation`

**Postcondition**

`chd.setConstellation == constellation`

`chd.actualConstellation == constellation`

**8.1.6.5.1.5      GetConstellation**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t GetConstellation (`  
    `[out] puhChanDec_Constellation_t pConstellation );`

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the constellation, as it was set via the `SetConstellation` function.

**Parameters**

**Table 585**

| Name                        | Description                                                |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pConstellation</code> | Output parameter returning the constellation that was set. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

`*pConstellation == chd.setConstellation`

### 8.1.6.5.1.6 GetActualConstellation

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualConstellation (
    [out] puhChanDec_Constellation_t pConstellation );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

#### Description

This function returns the actual constellation. If automatic detection is supported and enabled this function will return `uhChanDec_ConstellationAuto` if the detection is busy and `uhChanDec_ConstellationUnknown` if the automatic detection was unsuccessful or has been aborted.

#### Parameters

Table 586

| Name                        | Description                                          |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pConstellation</code> | Output parameter returning the actual constellation. |

#### Return Values

Standard.

#### Precondition

True

#### Action

None.

#### Postcondition

`*pConstellation == chd.actualConstellation`

### 8.1.6.5.1.7 GetSupplqModes

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSupplqModes ( [out] puhChanDec_IqModeSet_t pIqModes );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

#### Description

This function returns the IQ modes that are supported.

Parameters

Table 587

| Name     | Description                                                 |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| pIqModes | Output parameter returning the IQ modes that are supported. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pIqModes == chd.suppIqModes`

8.1.6.5.1.8      **SetIqMode**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t SetIqMode ( [in] uhChanDec_IqMode_t iqMode );`

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - single-threaded

**Description**  
This function sets the IQ mode.

Parameters

Table 588

| Name   | Description                                 |
|--------|---------------------------------------------|
| iqMode | Input parameter indicating the new IQ mode. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
`iqMode in chd.suppIqModes`

- Action**
- Modify `chd.setIqMode`
  - Modify `chd.actualIqMode`

Postcondition

- `chd.setIqMode == iqMode`
- `chd.actualIqMode == iqMode`

8.1.6.5.1.9      **GetIqMode**

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetIqMode ( [out] puhChanDec_IqMode_t pIqMode );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function returns the IQ mode, as it was set via the `SetIqMode` function.

Parameters

Table 589

| Name                 | Description                                          |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pIqMode</code> | Output parameter returning the IQ mode that was set. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
`True`

**Action**  
— None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pIqMode == chd.setIqMode`

8.1.6.5.1.10      **GetActualIqMode**

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualIqMode ( [out] puhChanDec_IqMode_t pIqMode );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the actual IQ mode. If automatic detection is supported and enabled this function will return `uhChanDec_IqModeAuto` if the detection is busy and `uhChanDec_IqModeUnknown` if the automatic detection was unsuccessful or has been aborted.

**Parameters**

Table 590

| Name                 | Description                                    |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pIqMode</code> | Output parameter returning the actual IQ mode. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
`True`

**Action**  
— `None`.

**Postcondition**  
`*pIqMode == chd.actualIqMode`

**8.1.6.5.1.11     GetBerThresholdRange**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t GetBerThresholdRange ( [out] pUInt32 pMinThreshold,  
                                         [out] pUInt32 pMaxThreshold );`

- Qualifiers**
- `synchronous`
  - `thread-safe`

**Description**  
This function returns the boundaries for the BER threshold in units of  $10^{-8}$ .

**Parameters**

Table 591

| Name                       | Description                                                                  |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pMinThreshold</code> | Output parameter returning the minimum BER threshold in units of $10^{-8}$ . |
| <code>pMaxThreshold</code> | Output parameter returning the maximum BER threshold in units of $10^{-8}$ . |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None.

**Postcondition**

- `*pMinThreshold == chd.minBerThreshold`
- `*pMaxThreshold == chd.maxBerThreshold`

**8.1.6.5.1.12 SetBerThreshold**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t SetBerThreshold ( [in] UInt32 threshold );`

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function sets the BER threshold in units of  $10^{-8}$ .

**Parameters**

**Table 592**

| Name                   | Description                                                              |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>threshold</code> | Input parameter indicating the new BER threshold in units of $10^{-8}$ . |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `chd.minBerThreshold ≤ threshold ≤ chd.maxBerThreshold`

**Action**

- Modify `chd.setBerThreshold`

**Postcondition**

- `chd.setBerThreshold == threshold`

8.1.6.5.1.13     **GetBerThreshold**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetBerThreshold ( [out] pUInt32 pThreshold );

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - thread-safe

**Description**  
This function returns the BER threshold in units of  $10^{-8}$ , as it was set via the SetBerThreshold function.

**Parameters**

Table 593

| Name       | Description                                                          |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pThreshold | Output parameter returning the BER threshold in units of $10^{-8}$ . |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pThreshold == chd.setBerThreshold`

8.1.6.5.1.14     **GetBer**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetBer ( [out] puhChanDec\_ValStat\_t pStatus, [out] pUInt32 pBer );

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - thread-safe

**Description**  
This function returns the current BER in units of  $10^{-8}$ .

## Parameters

Table 594

| Name    | Description                                                        |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStatus | Output parameter returning the validity status of the BER.         |
| pBer    | Output parameter returning the current BER in units of $10^{-8}$ . |

## Return Values

Standard.

## Precondition

True

## Action

— None.

## Postcondition

\*pStatus == chd.actualBerStatus

\*pBer == chd.actualBer

### 8.1.6.5.1.15 GetCarrierPresent

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetVideoPresen (
    [out] puhChanDec_ValStat_t pStatus,
    [out] pBool pPresent );
```

## Qualifiers

— synchronous

## Description

Returns the presence of a carrier (demodulator has been able to lock onto valid data).

## Parameters

Table 595

| Name     | Description                                                                    |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStatus  | Output parameter returning the validity status of the presence of the carrier. |
| pPresent | Returns the presence (True) or absence (False) of a carrier.                   |

## Precondition

True

## Action

— None.



**Postcondition**

— \*pStatus == chd.carrierPresentStatus  
 — \*pPresent == chd.carrierPresent

**8.1.6.5.2 uhIChanDecNtf****Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This interface can be provided by an instance of the ChanDecClient role that wants to receive notifications of events that occur in the ChanDec. The Subscribe function of the uhIChanDec interface can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**

uuid( 4B08494D-2D35-4dda-9FE7-7D9FED4A7A77 )

**Execution Constraints**

— none

**8.1.6.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhChanDec_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

**8.1.6.5.2.2 OnConstellationDetected****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnConstellationDetected (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhChanDec_Constellation_t constellation );
```

**Qualifiers**

— None

**Description**

This function notifies subscribed clients that a constellation has been detected.

Parameters

Table 596

| Name          | Description                                                                              |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie        | The value that was passed by an instance of the ChanDecClient role at subscription time. |
| constellation | Input parameter indicating detected constellation.                                       |

Return Values  
None.

Precondition  
True

Action  
— Any call-back compliant action.

Postcondition  
True

8.1.6.5.2.3      OnIqModeDetected

Signature  
[async] Void OnIqModeDetected (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhChanDec\_IqMode\_t mode );

Qualifiers  
— None.

Description  
This function notifies subscribed clients that the IQ mode has been determined after requesting automatic detection.

Parameters

Table 597

| Name   | Description                                                                              |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by an instance of the ChanDecClient role at subscription time. |
| mode   | Input parameter indicating detected IQ mode.                                             |

Return Values  
None.

Precondition  
True

Action  
— Any callback compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

**8.1.6.5.2.4      OnCodeRateDetected**

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnCodeRateDetected (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhChanDec\_CodeRate\_t highPrioRate,  
    [in] uhChanDec\_CodeRate\_t lowPrioRate );

**Qualifiers**  
—      None.

**Description**  
This function notifies subscribed clients that the code rate has been determined after requesting automatic detection. In case only one bit stream is received, this is considered the high priority stream and the code rate for the low priority stream is set to uhChanDec\_CodeRateNone.

**Parameters**

**Table 598**

| Name         | Description                                                                              |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie       | The value that was passed by an instance of the ChanDecClient role at subscription time. |
| highPrioRate | Input parameter indicating detected high priority code rate.                             |
| lowPrioRate  | Input parameter indicating detected low priority code rate.                              |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
—      Any callback compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

**8.1.6.5.2.5      OnHierarchyModeDetected**

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnHierarchyModeDetected (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhChanDec\_HierarchyMode\_t mode );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**

This function notifies subscribed clients that the hierarchy mode has been determined after requesting automatic detection.

**Parameters****Table 599**

| Name                | Description                                                                                           |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by an instance of the <code>ChanDecClient</code> role at subscription time. |
| <code>mode</code>   | Input parameter indicating detected hierarchy mode.                                                   |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.6.5.2.6 OnGuardIntervalDetected****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnGuardIntervalDetected (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhChanDec_GuardInterval_t interval );
```

**Qualifiers**

— None.

**Description**

This function notifies subscribed clients that the guard interval has been determined after requesting automatic detection.

**Parameters****Table 600**

| Name                  | Description                                                                                           |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>   | The value that was passed by an instance of the <code>ChanDecClient</code> role at subscription time. |
| <code>interval</code> | Input parameter indicating the detected guard interval.                                               |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.6.5.2.7 OnTxModeDetected**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnTxModeDetected (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhChanDec_TxMode_t mode );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function notifies subscribed clients that the transmission mode has been determined after requesting automatic detection.

**Parameters**

**Table 601**

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| mode   | Input parameter indicating the detected transmission mode.    |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.6.5.2.8 OnChanBandwidthDetected**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnChanBandwidthDetected (
```

```
[in] UInt32 cookie,  
[in] uhChanDec_ChanBandwidth_t bandwidth );
```

**Qualifiers**  
— None.

**Description**  
This function notifies subscribed clients that the channel bandwidth has been determined after requesting automatic detection.

**Parameters**

Table 602

| Name      | Description                                                                              |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie    | The value that was passed by an instance of the ChanDecClient role at subscription time. |
| bandwidth | Input parameter indicating detected channel bandwidth.                                   |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

8.1.6.5.2.9 OnDepunctureRateDetected

```
Signature  
[async] Void OnDepunctureRateDetected (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhChanDec_DepunctureRate_t rate );
```

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function notifies subscribed clients that the depuncture rate has been determined after requesting automatic detection.

**Parameters**

Table 603

| Name   | Description                                                                              |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by an instance of the ChanDecClient role at subscription time. |

| Name | Description                                          |
|------|------------------------------------------------------|
| rate | Input parameter indicating detected depuncture rate. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

**8.1.6.5.2.10 OnPolarizationDetected**

**Signature**  
**[async]** Void OnPolarizationDetected (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhChanDec\_Polarization\_t polarization );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function notifies subscribed clients that the IQ mode has been determined after requesting automatic detection.

**Parameters**

**Table 604**

| Name         | Description                                                                              |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie       | The value that was passed by an instance of the ChanDecClient role at subscription time. |
| polarization | Input parameter indicating detected IQ mode.                                             |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

**8.1.6.5.2.11 OnCarrierPresentChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnCarrierPresentChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhChanDec_ValStat_t status,
    [in] Bool carrier );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function notifies subscribed clients that a transition from no carrier to a carrier has been detected on the input. Carrier present means that the demodulator has been able to lock onto valid data on the input.

**Parameters****Table 605**

| Name    | Description                                                                              |
|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie  | The value that was passed by an instance of the ChanDecClient role at subscription time. |
| status  | The validity status of the notified carrier presence.                                    |
| carrier | The presence (True) or absence (False) of the carrier.                                   |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.6.5.2.12 OnBerThresholdCrossed****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnBerThresholdCrossed (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhChanDec_ValStat_t status,
    [in] UInt32 ber,
    [in] UInt32 berThreshold );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function notifies subscribed clients that the current BER crossed a BER threshold.



**Parameters****Table 606**

| <b>Name</b>               | <b>Description</b>                                                                       |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>       | The value that was passed by an instance of the ChanDecClient role at subscription time. |
| <code>status</code>       | The validity status of the notified BER.                                                 |
| <code>ber</code>          | Input parameter returning the BER in units of $10^{-8}$ .                                |
| <code>berThreshold</code> | Input parameter returning the BER threshold that was crossed in units of $10^{-8}$ .     |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.6.5.3 uhlChanDecDvbC****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of a ChanDec role provides control of the DVB cable parameters.

**Interface ID**`uuid( CB163A49-3747-48d0-AC7B-43B63735118D )`**Remarks**In the following function specifications, the name `chd` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface.**8.1.6.5.3.1 SetSymbolRate****Signature**`uhErrorCode_t SetSymbolRate ( [in] UInt32 rate );`**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

This function sets the symbol rate in symbols/second.

**Parameters**

Table 607

| Name | Description                                                       |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| rate | Input parameter indicating the new symbol rate in symbols/second. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Modify `chd.symbolRateC`

**Postcondition**

`chd.symbolRateC == rate`

**8.1.6.5.3.2      GetSymbolRate**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t GetSymbolRate ( [out] pUInt32 pRate );`

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the symbol rate in symbols per second as it was set via the `SetSymbolRate` function.

**Parameters**

Table 608

| Name  | Description                                                           |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pRate | Output parameter returning the set symbol rate in symbols per second. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pRate == chd.symbolRateC`

8.1.6.5.4    **uhlChanDecDvbT**

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This interface of a `ChanDec` role provides control of the DVB terrestrial parameters.

**Interface ID**  
`uuid( BD238F95-5912-4246-84FD-BA480800BB70 )`

**Remarks**  
In the following function specifications the name `chd` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface.

8.1.6.5.4.1    **GetSuppCodeRates**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t GetSuppCodeRates( [out] puhChanDec_CodeRateSet_t pRates );`

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - thread-safe

**Description**  
This function returns the code rates that are supported.

**Parameters**

Table 609

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pRates</code> | Output parameter returning the code rates that are supported. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
`True`

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**`*pRates == chd.suppCodeRates`**8.1.6.5.4.2 SetCodeRates****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetCodeRates (
    [in] uhChanDec_CodeRate_t highPrioRate,
    [in] uhChanDec_CodeRate_t lowPrioRate );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function sets the code rates for the received high and low priority bit streams. In case only one bit stream is received, this is considered the high priority stream and the code rate for the low priority stream should be set to `uhChanDec_CodeRateNone`.

**Parameters****Table 610**

| Name                      | Description                                                                |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>highPrioRate</code> | Input parameter indicating the code rate for the high priority bit stream. |
| <code>lowPrioRate</code>  | Input parameter indicating the code rate for the low priority bit stream.  |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `highPrioRate` in `suppCodeRates`
- `lowPrioRate` in `suppCodeRates`

**Action**

- Modify `chd.setHighPrioCodeRate`
- Modify `chd.actualHighPrioCodeRate`
- Modify `chd.setLowPrioCodeRate`
- Modify `chd.actualLowPrioCodeRate`

**Postcondition**

- `chd.setHighPrioCodeRate == highPrioRate`
- `chd.actualHighPrioCodeRate == highPrioRate`
- `chd.setLowPrioCodeRate == lowPrioRate`
- `chd.actualLowPrioCodeRate == lowPrioRate`

#### 8.1.6.5.4.3 GetCodeRates

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetCodeRates (
    [out] puhChanDec_CodeRate_t pHighPrioRate,
    [out] puhChanDec_CodeRate_t pLowPrioRate );
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

This function returns the code rates of the received high and low priority bit streams, as they were set via the SetCodeRates function.

##### Parameters

Table 611

| Name          | Description                                                               |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pHighPrioRate | Output parameter returning the code rate of the high priority bit stream. |
| pLowPrioRate  | Output parameter returning the code rate of the low priority bit stream.  |

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

True

##### Action

None.

##### Postcondition

- \*pHighPrioRate == chd.setHighPrioCodeRate
- \*pLowPrioRate == chd.setLowPrioCodeRate

#### 8.1.6.5.4.4 GetActualCodeRates

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualCodeRates (
    [out] puhChanDec_CodeRate_t pHighPrioRate,
    [out] puhChanDec_CodeRate_t pLowPrioRate );
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the actual code rates for the high and low priority bit stream. If automatic detection is supported and enabled this function will return `uhChanDec_CodeRateAuto` if the detection is busy and `uhChanDec_CodeRateUnknown` if the automatic detection was unsuccessful or has been aborted.

**Parameters****Table 612**

| Name                       | Description                                                                      |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pHighPrioRate</code> | Output parameter returning the actual code rate of the high priority bit stream. |
| <code>pLowPrioRate</code>  | Output parameter returning the actual code rate of the low priority bit stream.  |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— `*pHighPrioRate == chd.actualHighPrioCodeRate`  
 — `*pLowPrioRate == chd.actualLowPrioCodeRate`

**8.1.6.5.4.5 GetSuppHierarchyModes****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppHierarchyModes (
    [out] puhChanDec_HierarchyModeSet_t pModes );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous  
 — thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the hierarchy modes that are supported.

**Parameters****Table 613**

| Name                | Description                                                        |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pModes</code> | Output parameter returning the hierarchy modes that are supported. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pModes == chd.supHierarchyModes

**8.1.6.5.4.6      SetHierarchyMode**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t SetHierarchyMode ( [in] uhChanDec\_HierarchyMode\_t mode );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function sets the hierarchy mode.

**Parameters**

**Table 614**

| Name | Description                                        |
|------|----------------------------------------------------|
| mode | Input parameter indicating the new hierarchy mode. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

mode in chd.supHierarchyModes

**Action**

- Modify chd.setHierarchyMode
- Modify chd.actualHierarchyMode

**Postcondition**

- chd.setHierarchyMode == mode
- chd.actualHierarchyMode == mode

#### 8.1.6.5.4.7 GetHierarchyMode

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetHierarchyMode ( [out] puhChanDec_HierarchyMode_t pMode );
```

##### Qualifiers

— synchronous

— thread-safe

##### Description

This function returns the hierarchy mode, as it was set via the SetHierarchyMode function.

##### Parameters

Table 615

| Name  | Description                                                 |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMode | Output parameter returning the hierarchy mode that was set. |

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

True

##### Action

None.

##### Postcondition

\*pMode == chd.setHierarchyMode

#### 8.1.6.5.4.8 GetActualHierarchyMode

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualHierarchyMode ( [out] puhChanDec_HierarchyMode_t pMode );
```

##### Qualifiers

— synchronous

— thread-safe

##### Description

This function returns the actual hierarchy mode. If automatic detection is supported and enabled this function will return uhChanDec\_HierarchyModeAuto if the detection is busy and uhChanDec\_HierarchyModeUnknown if the automatic detection was unsuccessful or has been aborted.



**Parameters****Table 616**

| Name               | Description                                           |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pMode</code> | Output parameter returning the actual hierarchy mode. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**`*pMode == chd.actualHierarchyMode`**8.1.6.5.4.9      GetSuppGuardIntervals****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppGuardIntervals (
    [out] puhChanDec_GuardIntervalSet_t pIntervals );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the guard intervals that are supported.

**Parameters****Table 617**

| Name                    | Description                                                        |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pIntervals</code> | Output parameter returning the guard intervals that are supported. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

#### Postcondition

\*pIntervals == chd.suppGuardIntervals

#### 8.1.6.5.4.10 SetGuardInterval

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t SetGuardInterval( [in] uhChanDec_GuardInterval_t interval );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

#### Description

This function sets the guard interval.

#### Parameters

Table 618

| Name     | Description                                        |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------|
| interval | Input parameter indicating the new guard interval. |

#### Return Values

Standard.

#### Precondition

interval in chd.suppGuardIntervals

#### Action

- Modify chd.setGuardInterval
- Modify chd.actualGuardInterval

#### Postcondition

- chd.setGuardInterval == interval
- chd.actualGuardInterval == interval

#### 8.1.6.5.4.11 GetGuardInterval

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetGuardInterval ( [out] puhChanDec_GuardInterval_t pInterval );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

#### Description

This function returns the guard interval, as it was set via the SetGuardInterval function.

**Parameters****Table 619**

| Name                   | Description                                                 |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pInterval</code> | Output parameter returning the guard interval that was set. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pInterval == chd.setGuardInterval`

**8.1.6.5.4.12 GetActualGuardInterval****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualGuardInterval (
    [out] puhChanDec_GuardInterval_t pInterval );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the actual guard interval. If automatic detection is supported and enabled this function will return `uhChanDec_GuardIntervalAuto` if the detection is busy and `uhChanDec_GuardIntervalUnknown` if the automatic detection was unsuccessful or has been aborted.

**Parameters****Table 620**

| Name                   | Description                                           |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pInterval</code> | Output parameter returning the actual guard interval. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

## Postcondition

\*pInterval == chd.actualGuardInterval

### 8.1.6.5.4.13 GetSuppTxModes

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppTxModes ( [out] puhChanDec_TxModeSet_t pModes );
```

## Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

## Description

This function returns the transmission modes that are supported.

## Parameters

Table 621

| Name   | Description                                                           |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pModes | Output parameter returning the transmission modes that are supported. |

## Return Values

Standard.

## Precondition

True

## Action

None.

## Postcondition

\*pModes == chd.suppTxModes

### 8.1.6.5.4.14 SetTxMode

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t SetTxMode ( [in] uhChanDec_TxMode_t mode );
```

## Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

## Description

This function sets the transmission mode.

Parameters

Table 622

| Name | Description                                           |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| mode | Input parameter indicating the new transmission mode. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
— mode in chd.suppTxModes

**Action**  
— Modify chd.setTxMode  
— Modify chd.actualTxMode

**Postcondition**  
— chd.setTxMode == mode  
— chd.actualTxMode == mode

8.1.6.5.4.15    GetTxMode

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetTxMode ( [out] puhChanDec\_TxMode\_t pMode );

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
  
— thread-safe

**Description**  
This function returns the transmission mode, as it was set via the SetTxMode function.

Parameters

Table 623

| Name  | Description                                                    |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMode | Output parameter returning the transmission mode that was set. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

## Postcondition

\*pMode == chd.setTxMode

### 8.1.6.5.4.16 GetActualTxMode

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualTxMode ( [out] puhChanDec_TxMode_t pMode );
```

## Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

## Description

This function returns the actual transmission mode. If automatic detection is supported and enabled this function will return `uhChanDec_TxModeAuto` if the detection is busy and `uhChanDec_TxModeUnknown` if the automatic detection was unsuccessful or has been aborted.

## Parameters

Table 624

| Name  | Description                                              |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| pMode | Output parameter returning the actual transmission mode. |

## Return Values

Standard.

## Precondition

True

## Action

None.

## Postcondition

\*pMode == chd.actualTxMode

### 8.1.6.5.4.17 GetSuppChanBandwidths

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppChanBandwidths (
    [out] puhChanDec_Ch bandwidthSet_t pBandwidths );
```

## Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

## Description

This function returns the channel bandwidths that are supported.

Parameters

Table 625

| Name        | Description                                                           |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pBandwidths | Output parameter returning the channel bandwidths that are supported. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pBandwidths == chd.supChannelBandwidths`

8.1.6.5.4.18     **SetChanBandwidth**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t SetChanBandwidth ( [in] uhChanDec_ChanBandwidth_t bandwidth );`

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - single-threaded

**Description**  
This function sets the channel bandwidth.

Parameters

Table 626

| Name      | Description                                           |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| bandwidth | Input parameter indicating the new channel bandwidth. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
`bandwidth in chd.supChannelBandwidths`

- Action**
- Modify `chd.setChannelBandwidth`
  - Modify `chd.actualChannelBandwidth`

Postcondition

- `chd.setChannelBandwidth == bandwidth`
- `chd.actualChannelBandwidth == bandwidth`

8.1.6.5.4.19    **GetChanBandwidth**

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetChanBandwidth ( [out] puhChanDec_ChanBandwidth_t pBandwidth );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function returns the channel bandwidth, as it was set via the `SetChanBandwidth` function.

Parameters

Table 627

| Name                    | Description                                                    |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pBandwidth</code> | Output parameter returning the channel bandwidth that was set. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
`True`

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
— `*pBandwidth == chd.setChannelBandwidth`

8.1.6.5.4.20    **GetActualChanBandwidth**

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualChanBandwidth ( [out] puhChanDec_ChanBandwidth_t pBandwidth );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe



**Description**

This function returns the actual channel bandwidth. If automatic detection is supported and enabled this function will return `uhChanDec_ChanBandwidthAuto` if the detection is busy and `uhChanDec_ChanBandwidthUnknown` if the automatic detection was unsuccessful or has been aborted.

**Parameters****Table 628**

| Name                    | Description                                              |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pBandwidth</code> | Output parameter returning the actual channel bandwidth. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

`*pBandwidth == chd.actualChannelBandwidth`

**8.1.6.5.5 uhlChanDecDvbS****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of a `ChanDec` role provides functionality to control the DVB satellite parameters.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( 1CEA64C2-E4A4-4eca-B07B-28B3454C6A00 )`

**Remarks**

— In the following function specifications the name `chd` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface.

**8.1.6.5.5.1 GetSuppDepunctureRates****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppDepunctureRates (
    [out] puhChanDec_DepunctureRateSet_t pRates );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the depuncture rates that are supported.

**Parameters**

Table 629

| Name   | Description                                                         |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pRates | Output parameter returning the depuncture rates that are supported. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pRates == chd.suppDepunctureRates

**8.1.6.5.5.2 SetDepunctureRate**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t SetDepunctureRate ( [in] uhChanDec\_DepunctureRate\_t rate );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function sets the depuncture rate.

**Parameters**

Table 630

| Name | Description                                         |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| rate | Input parameter indicating the new depuncture rate. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

— rate in chd.suppDepunctureRates

**Action**

— Modify chd.setDepunctureRate

— Modify `chd.actualDepunctureRate`

**Postcondition**

- `chd.setDepunctureRate == rate`
- `chd.actualDepunctureRate == rate`

**8.1.6.5.5.3      GetDepunctureRate**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t GetDepunctureRate ( [out] puhChanDec_DepunctureRate_t pRate );`

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the depuncture rate, as it was set via the `SetDepunctureRate` function.

**Parameters**

**Table 631**

| Name               | Description                                                  |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pRate</code> | Output parameter returning the depuncture rate that was set. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

`*pRate == chd.setDepunctureRate`

**8.1.6.5.5.4      GetActualDepunctureRate**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t GetActualDepunctureRate ( [out] puhChanDec_DepunctureRate_t pRate );`

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the actual depuncture rate. If automatic detection is supported and enabled this function will return `uhChanDec_DepunctureRateAuto` if the detection is busy and `uhChanDec_DepunctureRateUnknown` if the automatic detection was unsuccessful or has been aborted.

**Parameters**

Table 632

| Name               | Description                                            |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pRate</code> | Output parameter returning the actual depuncture rate. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
`True`

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pRate == chd.actualDepunctureRate`

**8.1.6.5.5 SetSymbolRate**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t SetSymbolRate ( [in] UInt32 rate );`

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - single-threaded

**Description**  
This function sets the symbol rate in symbols/second.

**Parameters**

Table 633

| Name              | Description                                                       |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>rate</code> | Input parameter indicating the new symbol rate in symbols/second. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
`True`

Action

— Modify `chd.symbolRateS`

Postcondition

`chd.symbolRateS == rate`

8.1.6.5.5.6      **GetSymbolRate**

Signature

`uhErrorCode_t GetSymbolRate ( [out] pUInt32 pRate );`

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function returns the symbol rate in symbols per second, as it was set via the `SetSymbolRate` function.

Parameters

Table 634

| Name               | Description                                                           |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pRate</code> | Output parameter returning the set symbol rate in symbols per second. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

True

Action

None.

Postcondition

`*pRate == chd.symbolRateS`

8.1.6.5.5.7      **GetSuppNrLocalOscillators**

Signature

`uhErrorCode_t GetSuppNrLocalOscillators ( [out] pUInt32 pNr );`

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the number of local oscillators that are supported.

**Parameters****Table 635**

| Name | Description                                                                    |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pNr  | Output parameter returning the number of local oscillators that are supported. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pNr == chd.suppNrLocalOscillators

**8.1.6.5.5.8 ConfigureDish****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t ConfigureDish (
    [in] uhChanDec_TxBandSwitchMode_t txBandSwitchMode,
    [in] uhChanDec_PolarizationSwitchMode_t polarizationSwitchMode,
    [in] UInt32 nrLocalOscillators,
    [in, size_is(nrLocalOscillators)] const pUInt32 pOscillatorFrequencies );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function configures the satellite dish that is currently being used.

**Parameters****Table 636**

| Name                   | Description                                                                                                 |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| txBandSwitchMode       | Input parameter indicating the way transmission band switching is done.                                     |
| polarizationSwitchMode | Input parameter indicating the way polarization switching is done.                                          |
| nrLocalOscillators     | Input parameter indicating the number of local oscillators that must be configured.                         |
| pOscillatorFrequencies | Input parameter indicating the frequency in Hz for each of the local oscillators that has to be configured. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
— 0 < nrLocalOscillators ≤ chd.suppNrLocalOscillators

**Action**  
— Modify chd.txBandSwitchMode  
— Modify chd.polarizationSwitchMode  
— Modify chd.nrLocalOscillators  
— Modify chd.oscillatorFrequencies

**Postcondition**  
— chd.txBandSwitchMode == txBandSwitchMode  
— chd.polarizationSwitchMode == polarizationSwitchMode  
— chd.nrLocalOscillators == nrLocalOscillators  
— for i = [0..nrLocalOscillators-1]  
  — chd.oscillatorFrequencies[i] == pOscillatorFrequencies[i]

**8.1.6.5.5.9      GetSuppPolarizations**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetSuppPolarizations (  
    [out] puhChanDec\_PolarizationSet\_t pPolarizations );

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
  
— thread-safe

**Description**  
This function returns the polarizations that are supported.

**Parameters**

**Table 637**

| Name           | Description                                                      |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pPolarizations | Output parameter returning the polarizations that are supported. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

#### Postcondition

\*pPolarizations == chd.suppPolarizations

#### 8.1.6.5.5.10 SetPolarization

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t SetPolarization ( [in] uhChanDec_Polarization_t polarization );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

#### Description

This function sets the polarization.

#### Parameters

Table 638

| Name         | Description                                      |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| polarization | Input parameter indicating the new polarization. |

#### Return Values

Standard.

#### Precondition

- polarization in chd.suppPolarizations

#### Action

- Modify chd.setPolarization
- Modify chd.actualPolarization

#### Postcondition

- chd.setPolarization == polarization
- chd.actualPolarization == polarization

#### 8.1.6.5.5.11 GetPolarization

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetPolarization ( [out] puhChanDec_Polarization_t pPolarization );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

#### Description

This function returns the polarization, as it was set via the SetPolarization function.



**Parameters****Table 639**

| Name          | Description                                               |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| pPolarization | Output parameter returning the polarization that was set. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pPolarization == chd.setPolarization`

**8.1.6.5.5.12 GetActualPolarization****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualPolarization (
    [out] puhChanDec_Polarization_t pPolarization );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the actual polarization. If automatic detection is supported and enabled this function will return `uhChanDec_PolarizationAuto` if the detection is busy and `uhChanDec_PolarizationUnknown` if the automatic detection was unsuccessful or has been aborted.

**Parameters****Table 640**

| Name          | Description                                         |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| pPolarization | Output parameter returning the actual polarization. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

## Postcondition

\*pPolarization == chd.actualPolarization

### 8.1.6.5.5.13 GetSuppTxBands

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppTxBands ( [out] puhChanDec_TxBandSet_t pBands);
```

## Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

## Description

This function returns the transmission bands that are supported.

## Parameters

Table 641

| Name   | Description                                                           |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pBands | Output parameter returning the transmission bands that are supported. |

## Return Values

Standard.

## Precondition

True

## Action

None.

## Postcondition

\*pBands == chd.suppTxBands

### 8.1.6.5.5.14 SetTxBand

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t SetTxBand ( [in] uhChanDec_TxBand_t band );
```

## Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

## Description

This function sets the transmission band to high or low.

**Parameters****Table 642**

| Name              | Description                                           |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>band</code> | Input parameter indicating the new transmission band. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**`band` in `chd.suppTxBands`**Action**— Modify `chd.setTxBand`**Postcondition**`chd.setTxBand == band`**8.1.6.5.5.15 GetTxBand****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetTxBand ( [out] puhChanDec_TxBand_t pBand );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**This function returns the transmission band, as it was set via the `SetTxBand` function.**Parameters****Table 643**

| Name               | Description                                                    |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pBand</code> | Output parameter returning the transmission band that was set. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**`True`**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**`*pBand == chd.setTxBand`

#### 8.1.6.5.5.16 GetPowerLoopThroughSupp

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetPowerLoopThroughSupp ( [out] pBool pSupp );
```

##### Qualifiers

— synchronous

— thread-safe

##### Description

This function returns whether or not power loop through is supported.

##### Parameters

Table 644

| Name  | Description                                                                          |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSupp | Output parameter returning if power loop through is supported (True) or not (False). |

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

True

##### Action

None.

##### Postcondition

\*pSupp == chd.powerLoopThroughSupp

#### 8.1.6.5.5.17 EnablePowerLoopThrough

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t EnablePowerLoopThrough ( [in] Bool enable );
```

##### Qualifiers

— synchronous

— single-threaded

##### Description

This function enables (True) or disables (False) loop through.

**Parameters****Table 645**

| <b>Name</b>         | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                     |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>enable</code> | Input parameter indicating if loop through has to be enabled ( <code>True</code> ) or disabled ( <code>False</code> ). |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**`chd.powerLoopThroughSupp == True`**Action**— Modify `chd.powerLoopThroughEnabled`**Postcondition**`chd.powerLoopThroughEnabled == enable`**8.1.6.5.5.18 GetPowerLoopThroughEnabled****Signature**`uhErrorCode_t GetPowerLoopThroughEnabled ([out] pBool pEnabled );`**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

The function returns whether or not power loop through is currently enabled.

**Parameters****Table 646**

| <b>Name</b>           | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pEnabled</code> | Output parameter returning if power loop through is currently enabled ( <code>True</code> ) or disabled ( <code>False</code> ). |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**`True`**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```
*pEnabled == chd.powerLoopThroughEnabled
```

**8.1.7 UhlHdmiln****8.1.7.1 Concepts****8.1.7.1.1 Introduction**

The input for the Hdmiln is an uncompressed digital input stream, which can contain HDMI InfoFrames. The Hdmiln extracts the InfoFrames from the HDMI stream and passes them on to the client. InfoFrames of several types can be extracted. The variety of InfoFrames that can be extracted depends on the source, which provides the HDMI stream.

The following InfoFrames can be captured:

- Auxiliary Video Information InfoFrame
- Audio InfoFrame
- HDMI Source InfoFrame
- Source Product Description InfoFrame
- Vendor Specific InfoFrame

The Hdmiln can notify the client whenever new InfoFrames of a HDMI stream are captured, see Figure 68.

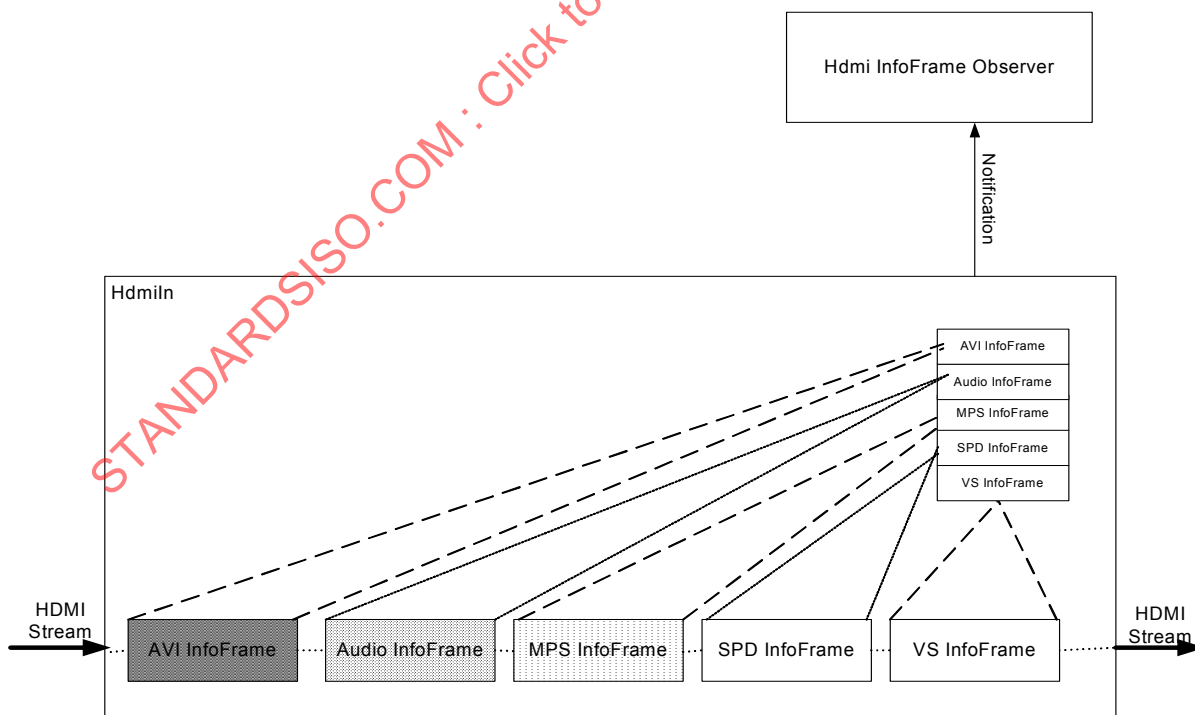


**Figure 68 — Behavior of the Hdmiln**

### 8.1.7.2 Types & Constants

#### 8.1.7.2.1 Public Types & Constants

##### 8.1.7.2.1.1 uhHdmiIn\_Notification\_t

###### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhHdmiIn_Notification_t {
    uhHdmiIn_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhHdmiIn_AviInfoFrame       = 0x00000002,
    uhHdmiIn_AudioInfoFrame     = 0x00000004,
    uhHdmiIn_MSInfoFrame        = 0x00000008,
    uhHdmiIn_SpdInfoFrame       = 0x00000010,
    uhHdmiIn_VsInfoFrame        = 0x00000020
} uhHdmiIn_Notification_t, *puhHdmiIn_Notification_t;
```

###### Qualifiers

— enum-element

###### Description

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhHdmiInNtf`.

###### Values

Table 647

| Name                                      | Description                                   |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhHdmiIn_SubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> |
| <code>uhHdmiIn_AviInfoFrame</code>        | Represents <code>OnAviInfoFrame</code>        |
| <code>uhHdmiIn_AudioInfoFrame</code>      | Represents <code>OnAudioInfoFrame</code>      |
| <code>uhHdmiIn_MSInfoFrame</code>         | Represents <code>OnMsInfoFrame</code>         |
| <code>uhHdmiIn_SpdInfoFrame</code>        | Represents <code>OnSpdInfoFrame</code>        |
| <code>uhHdmiIn_VsInfoFrame</code>         | Represents <code>OnVsInfoFrame</code>         |

##### 8.1.7.2.1.2 uhHdmiIn\_Notifications\_t

###### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhHdmiIn_Notifications_t, *puhHdmiIn_Notifications_t;
```

###### Qualifiers

— enum-set

###### Description

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhHdmiIn_Notification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**Constraints**  
None

8.1.7.2.1.3      **uhHdmiIn\_AllNotifications**

**Signature**  
`const uhHdmiIn_Notifications_t uhHdmiIn_AllNotifications = 0x00000003F;`

**Qualifiers**  
None

**Description**  
Defines the set of all values of type `uhHdmiIn_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

8.1.7.2.1.4      **uhHdmiIn\_ValStat\_t**

**Signature**  
`typedef enum _uhHdmiIn_ValStat_t {  
    uhHdmiIn_ValStatInvalid = -2,  
    uhHdmiIn_ValStatKnown    = 1  
} uhHdmiIn_ValStat_t, *puhHdmiIn_ValStat_t;`

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This type represents the validity status of the related property/properties.

**Values**

**Table 648**

| Name                                 | Description                                                |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhHdmiIn_ValStatInvalid</code> | The signal strength property is temporarily not available. |
| <code>uhHdmiIn_ValStatKnown</code>   | The signal strength property is available and determined.  |

8.1.7.2.2      **Model Types & Constants**

None



8.1.7.3 Logical Component

8.1.7.3.1 Interface-Role Model

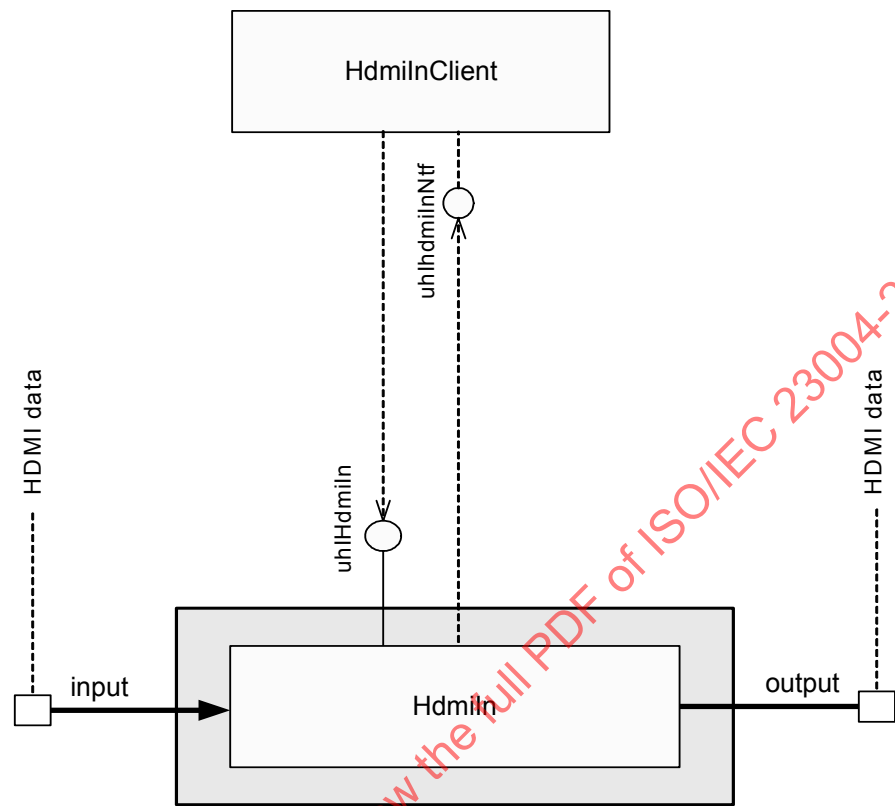


Figure 69 — Interface Role Model

Figure 69 depicts the interface-role model of the HdmiIn. It shows the control and notification interfaces and the roles that the HdmiIn and HdmiInClient can have. In this logical model the HDMI data is transparent. The notifications contain the data of the info frames as specified in [17] and [18]. The HdmiIn is represented by the HdmiIn role.

The HdmiIn provides facilities to subscribe/unsubscribe to notifications of events related to the extraction of InfoFrame data through its UhIHdmiIn interface. Client(s) (represented by the HdmiInClient role) can optionally provide one notification interface (uhIHdmiInNtf). This interface contains functions that will be called by the HdmiIn to notify events.

8.1.7.3.2 Diversity

8.1.7.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 649

| Role       | Interface    | Presence  |
|------------|--------------|-----------|
| HdmiIn     | uhIHdmiIn    | mandatory |
| HdmiClient | uhIHdmiInNtf | optional  |

**8.1.7.3.2.2 Configurable Items**

None

**8.1.7.3.2.3 Constraints**

None

**8.1.7.3.3 Instantiation****8.1.7.3.3.1 Objects Created**

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 650**

| Type   | Object | Multiplicity |
|--------|--------|--------------|
| HdmiIn | hio    | 1            |

**8.1.7.3.3.2 Initial State**

*The HdmiIn starts monitoring its uncompressed digital input stream for HDMI InfoFrames.*

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

```

— hio.aviInfoFrameStatus == uhHdmiIn_ValStatInvalid
— hio.audioInfoFrameStatus == uhHdmiIn_ValStatInvalid
— hio.msInfoFrameStatus == uhHdmiIn_ValStatInvalid
— hio.spdInfoFrameStatus == uhHdmiIn_ValStatInvalid
— hio.vsInfoFrameStatus == uhHdmiIn_ValStatInvalid

```

**8.1.7.3.4 Execution Constraints**

The interface provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier “thread-safe”.

**8.1.7.4 Roles**

HdmiIn

**Signature**

```

role HdmiIn {
    ValStat          aviInfoFrameStatus;
    ValStat          audioInfoFrameStatus;
    ValStat          msInfoFrameStatus;
    ValStat          spdInfoFrameStatus;
    ValStat          vsInfoFrameStatus;
}

```

**Qualifiers**

— root

**Description**

An `HdmiIn` monitors an uncompressed digital input stream for HDMI InfoFrames.

This stream can be either HDMI or DVI, see ref [17] (subclause 8.3.3 DVI/ HDMI Device Discrimination). The `HdmiIn` can extract InfoFrames from the input stream, when present.

The `HdmiIn` provides notifications when it captured an InfoFrame for the specific type(s) the client is subscribed to. All InfoFrames being notified have been checked for validity based on their checksum.

**Independent Attributes****Table 651**

| Name                              | Description                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <code>aviInfoFrameStatus</code>   | The validity status of the AVI Info Frame.   |
| <code>audioInfoFrameStatus</code> | The validity status of the Audio Info Frame. |
| <code>msInfoFrameStatus</code>    | The validity status of the MS Info Frame.    |
| <code>spdInfoFrameStatus</code>   | The validity status of the SPD Info frame.   |
| <code>vsInfoFrameStatus</code>    | The validity status of the VS Info Frame.    |

**Dependent Attributes**

None.

**Invariants**

None.

**Instantiation**

See subclause 8.1.7.3.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

The `HdmiIn` continually monitors its uncompressed digital input stream and performs the following actions:

Extracting InfoFrames (AVI, Audio, MS, SPD, and VS) from the HDMI stream and raising an event when it has captured an InfoFrame.

**Active Behavior**

The `HdmiIn` has standard notification behavior (`uhIHdmiInNtf`).

**Remarks**

The `HdmiIn` starts passing InfoFrame data to a client only after this client has subscribed to the notifications of the type `OnAviInfoFrame`, `OnAudioInfoFrame`, `OnMsInfoFrame` or `OnSpdInfoFrame`.

#### 8.1.7.4.1 HdmiInClient

##### Signature

```
role HdmiInClient {}
```

##### Qualifiers

— actor

##### Description

An `HdmiInClient` represents a user of the `uhIHdmiIn` interface. No constraints apply to the behavior of the `HdmiInClient` other than those implied by Figure 69.

#### 8.1.7.5 Interfaces

##### 8.1.7.5.1 uIHdmiIn

##### Qualifiers

— None

##### Description

This interface of an `HdmiIn` provides facilities to subscribe/unsubscribe to notifications of events related to the extraction of the AVI, Audio, SPD, MS and VS InfoFrames.

##### Interface ID

```
uuid( 5560ACCB-113B-43c0-B853-87F39F51E345 )
```

##### 8.1.7.5.1.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe(
    [in] uhIHdmiInNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhHdmiIn_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

##### 8.1.7.5.1.2 Unsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe(
    [in] uhIHdmiInNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhHdmiIn_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

8.1.7.5.2    uhHdmiInNtf

Qualifiers

—    callback

Description

This interface should be provided by each HdmiInClient that wants to subscribe to notifications of events related to InfoFrame data that occur in the HdmiIn.

Interface ID

uuid( 721F61A0-9348-42b4-8C5C-78A028760804 )

8.1.7.5.2.1    OnSubscriptionChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged(  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhHdmiIn_Notifications_t notifs );
```

Qualifiers

—    onsubscriptionchanged-function

8.1.7.5.2.2    OnAviInfoFrame

Signature

```
[async] Void OnAviInfoFrame(  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhHdmiIn_ValStat_t status,  
    [in] UInt8 size,  
    [in, size_is(size)] const UInt8 *pBuffer );
```

Qualifiers

None

Description

This function is called by the HdmiIn each time it has monitored an HDMI InfoFrame of its HDMI input stream. The passed pointer points to the AVI InfoFrame of the monitored frame. The HdmiIn owns the storage space occupied by the data. The storage space is only valid during this function call.

Parameters

Table 652

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| status | The validity status of the notified AVI InfoFrame.            |

| Name                 | Description                                                                                                               |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>size</code>    | The size in bytes of the <code>InfoFrame_length</code> contents + 4 (InfoFrame Type, InfoFrame_version InfoFrame_length). |
| <code>pBuffer</code> | Pointer to a size bytes buffer of valid data.                                                                             |

**Return Values**  
None

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any call-back-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

**Remarks**  
 — The first byte of the `pBuffer` corresponds to the packet header of the AVI InfoFrame.  
 — The layout of the bytes follows the HDMI standard, see [17] and [18].

#### 8.1.7.5.2.3 OnAudioInfoFrame

##### Signature

```
[async] Void OnAudioInfoFrame(
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhHdmiIn_ValStat_t status,
    [in] UInt8 size,
    [in, size_is(size)] const UInt8 *pBuffer );
```

**Qualifiers**  
None

##### Description

This function is called by the `HdmiIn` each time it has monitored an Audio InfoFrame of its HDMI input stream. The passed pointer points to the Audio InfoFrame of the monitored frame. The `HdmiIn` owns the storage space occupied by the data. The storage space is only valid during this function call.

##### Parameters

**Table 653**

| Name                 | Description                                                                                                               |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>  | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                             |
| <code>status</code>  | The validity status of the notified Audio InfoFrame.                                                                      |
| <code>size</code>    | The size in bytes of the <code>InfoFrame_length</code> contents + 4 (InfoFrame Type, InfoFrame_version InfoFrame_length). |
| <code>pBuffer</code> | Pointer to a size bytes buffer of valid data.                                                                             |

**Return Values**  
None

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any call-back-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

**Remarks**  
— The first byte of the `pBuffer` corresponds to the packet header of the Audio InfoFrame.  
— The layout of the bytes follows the HDMI standard, see [17] and [18].

**8.1.7.5.2.4 OnMsInfoFrame**

**Signature**  
`[async] Void OnMsInfoFrame(  
[in] UInt32 cookie,  
[in] uhHdmiIn_ValStat_t status,  
[in] UInt8 size,  
[in, size_is(size)] const UInt8 *pBuffer );`

**Qualifiers**  
None

**Description**  
This function is called by the `HdmiIn` each time it has monitored a MS InfoFrame of its HDMI input stream. The passed pointer points to the MS InfoFrame of the monitored frame. The `HdmiIn` owns the storage space occupied by the data. The storage space is only valid during this function call.

**Parameters**

**Table 654**

| Name                 | Description                                                                                                               |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>  | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                             |
| <code>status</code>  | The validity status of the notified MS Info InfoFrame.                                                                    |
| <code>size</code>    | The size in bytes of the <code>InfoFrame_length</code> contents + 4 (InfoFrame Type, InfoFrame_version InfoFrame_length). |
| <code>pBuffer</code> | Pointer to a size bytes buffer of valid data.                                                                             |

**Return Values**  
None

Precondition

True

Action

— Any call-back-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

Remarks

- The first byte of the `pBuffer` corresponds to the packet header of the MS InfoFrame.
- The layout of the bytes follows the HDMI standard, see [17] and [18].

8.1.7.5.2.5 OnSpdInfoFrame

Signature

```
[async] Void OnSpdInfoFrame(  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhHdmiIn_ValStat_t status,  
    [in] UInt8 size,  
    [in, size_is(size)] const UInt8 *pBuffer );
```

Qualifiers

None

Description

This function is called by the `HdmiIn` each time it has monitored an SPD InfoFrame of its HDMI input stream. The passed pointer points to the SPD InfoFrame of the monitored frame. The `HdmiIn` owns the storage space occupied by the data. The storage space is only valid during this function call.

Parameters

Table 655

| Name    | Description                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie  | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                                         |
| status  | The validity status of the notified SPD InfoFrame.                                                                                                                    |
| size    | The size in bytes of the <code>InfoFrame_length</code> contents + 4 ( <code>InfoFrame_Type</code> , <code>InfoFrame_version</code> , <code>InfoFrame_length</code> ). |
| pBuffer | Pointer to a size bytes buffer of valid data.                                                                                                                         |

Return Values

None

Precondition

True



Action

— Any call-back-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

Remarks

- The first byte of the `pBuffer` corresponds to the packet header of the SPD InfoFrame.
- The layout of the bytes follows the HDMI standard, see [17] and [18].

8.1.7.5.2.6 OnVsInfoFrame

Signature

```
[async] Void OnVsInfoFrame(  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhHdmiIn_ValStat_t status,  
    [in] UInt8 size,  
    [in, size_is(size)] const UInt8 *pBuffer );
```

Qualifiers

None

Description

This function is called by the `HdmiIn` each time it has monitored a VS InfoFrame of its HDMI input stream. The passed pointer points to the VS InfoFrame of the monitored frame. The `HdmiIn` owns the storage space occupied by the data. The storage space is only valid during this function call.

Parameters

Table 656

| Name    | Description                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie  | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                                         |
| status  | The validity status of the notified VS InfoFrame.                                                                                                                     |
| size    | The size in bytes of the <code>InfoFrame_length</code> contents + 4 ( <code>InfoFrame_Type</code> , <code>InfoFrame_version</code> , <code>InfoFrame_length</code> ). |
| pBuffer | Pointer to a size bytes buffer of valid data.                                                                                                                         |

Return Values

None

Precondition

True

Action

— Any call-back-compliant action.

## Postcondition

True

## Remarks

- The number of bytes of the VS InfoFrame is known: 31 bytes.
- The first byte of the `pBuffer` corresponds to the packet header of the VS InfoFrame.
- The layout of the bytes follows the HDMI standard, see [17] and [18].

## 8.1.8 UhlImageDec

### 8.1.8.1 UhlImageConcepts

#### 8.1.8.1.1 Introduction

The function of an Image Decoding logical component is to decode encoded images. It can decode full images to a requested format, get thumbnails in a requested format via decoding or extraction, and extract raw meta-data. It will scale the image after decoding when the original and requested resolutions differ.

An Image Decoding logical component takes encoded image data as input and sends the decoded image to the client via a notification function. The decoder is based on a logical streaming model and can therefore process the provided input data only once for the input. When input data needs to be processed a second time, the input data has to be provided to the component anew.

The image decoder is modeled using the following processes:

- Obtainment of basic encoded image information i.e. image resolution, aspect ratio and orientation. This process can be triggered by calling the `GetOrgFullResolution` function and needs to be called before any requests to decode the main image can be made.
- Detection of thumbnail presence and obtainment of basic thumbnail image information i.e. thumbnail resolution. This process can be triggered by calling the `GetThumbnailPresent` function and needs to be called before any requests to decode or extract a thumbnail can be made.
- Main image decoding process; this process can be triggered by calling the `DecodeImage` function.
- Thumbnail image decoding/extraction process; this process can be triggered by calling the `DecodeThumbnail` function.
- Raw meta-data extraction, if this is possible depends on the image format and the policy of the platform (not all meta-data might be available for retrieval by the client as raw data). Whether raw meta-data, for retrieval by the client is present can be queried by calling the `GetMetaDataPresent` function. If this function returns True, the raw meta-data extraction process can be triggered by calling the `GetRawMetaData` function.

All the processes mentioned above when triggered wait for input data to arrive in order to start processing. How long a process will wait before indicating a failure is context/implementation dependent and not part of this specification.

### 8.1.8.2 Types & Constants

#### 8.1.8.2.1 Public Types & Constants

##### 8.1.8.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

##### 8.1.8.2.1.2 uhImageDec2\_Notification\_t

###### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhImageDec2_Notification_t {
    uhImageDec2_SubscriptionChanged    = 0x00000001,
    uhImageDec2_FullImageDecoded       = 0x00000002,
    uhImageDec2_ThumbnailDecoded       = 0x00000004,
    uhImageDec2_MetaDataFound          = 0x00000008,
    uhImageDec2_EndMetaData            = 0x00000010,
    uhImageDec2_ResolutionObtained     = 0x00000020,
    uhImageDec2_ThumbnailPresence      = 0x00000040
} uhImageDec2_Notification_t, *puhImageDec2_Notification_t;
```

###### Qualifiers

— enum-element

###### Description

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIImageDec2Ntf`.

###### Values

**Table 657**

| Name                                         | Description                                     |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhImageDec2_SubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> . |
| <code>uhImageDec2_FullImageDecoded</code>    | Represents <code>OnFullImageDecoded</code> .    |
| <code>uhImageDec2_ThumbnailDecoded</code>    | Represents <code>OnThumbnailDecoded</code> .    |
| <code>uhImageDec2_MetaDataFound</code>       | Represents <code>OnMetaDataFound</code> .       |
| <code>uhImageDec2_EndMetaData</code>         | Represents <code>OnEndMetaData</code> .         |
| <code>uhImageDec2_ResolutionObtained</code>  | Represents <code>OnResolutionObtained</code> .  |
| <code>uhImageDec2_ThumbnailPresence</code>   | Represents <code>OnThumbnailPresence</code> .   |

##### 8.1.8.2.1.3 uhImageDec2\_Notifications\_t

###### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhImageDec2_Notifications_t, *puhImageDec2_Notifications_t;
```

###### Qualifiers

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhImageDec2_Notification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**Constraints**

None.

**8.1.8.2.1.4      `uhImageDec2_AllNotifications`****Signature**

```
const uhImageDec2_Notifications_t uhImageDec2_AllNotifications = 0x0000007F;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhImageDec2_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**8.1.8.2.1.5      `uhImageDec2_ImageFormat_t`****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhImageDec2_ImageFormat_t {
    uhImageDec2_JpegExif      = 0x00000001,
    uhImageDec2_ProgJpegExif = 0x00000002,
    uhImageDec2_JpegJfif      = 0x00000004,
    uhImageDec2_ProgJpegJfif  = 0x00000008,
    uhImageDec2_JpegSpiff     = 0x00000010,
    uhImageDec2_ProgJpegSpiff = 0x00000020,
    uhImageDec2_Jpeg2k        = 0x00000040,
    uhImageDec2_Gif           = 0x00000080,
    uhImageDec2_InterlacedGif = 0x00000100,
    uhImageDec2_AnimatedGif   = 0x00000200,
    uhImageDec2_Bmp           = 0x00000400,
    uhImageDec2_Png           = 0x00000800,
    uhImageDec2_Tiff          = 0x00001000,
    uhImageDec2_Targa         = 0x00002000,
    uhImageDec2_Pcd           = 0x00004000,
    uhImageDec2_Jpeg          = 0x00008000,
    uhImageDec2_ProgJpeg      = 0x00010000
} uhImageDec2_ImageFormat_t, *puhImageDec2_ImageFormat_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent commonly used graphics content and file formats.

**Values****Name**

uhImageDec2\_JpegExif  
 uhImageDec2\_ProgJpegExif  
 uhImageDec2\_JpegJfif  
 uhImageDec2\_ProgJpegJfif  
 uhImageDec2\_JpegSpiff  
 uhImageDec2\_ProgJpegSpiff  
 uhImageDec2\_Jpeg2k  
 uhImageDec2\_Gif  
 uhImageDec2\_InterlacedGif  
 uhImageDec2\_AnimatedGif  
 uhImageDec2\_Bmp  
 uhImageDec2\_Png  
 uhImageDec2\_Tiff  
 uhImageDec2\_Targa  
 uhImageDec2\_Pcd  
 uhImageDec2\_Jpeg  
 uhImageDec2\_ProgJpeg

**Table 658****Description**

JPEG encoded EXIF compliant content.  
 Progressive JPEG encoded EXIF compliant content.  
 JPEG encoded JFIF compliant content.  
 Progressive JPEG encoded JFIF compliant content.  
 JPEG encoded SPIFF compliant content.  
 Progressive JPEG encoded SPIFF compliant content.  
 JPEG 2000 encoded content.  
 GIF encoded content.  
 Interlaced GIF encoded content.  
 Animated GIF encoded content.  
 Bitmap graphics content.  
 PNG compliant content.  
 TIFF compliant content.  
 Truevision Targa compliant content.  
 Kodak Photo CD compliant content.  
 JPEG encoded content without any file format.  
 Progressive JPEG encoded content without any file format.

**8.1.8.2.1.6 uhImageDec2\_ImageFormats\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhImageDec2_ImageFormats_t, *puhImageDec2_ImageFormats_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of image formats that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type uhImageDec2\_ImageFormat\_t.

**Constraints**

None.

**8.1.8.2.1.7      uhImageDec2\_Status\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhImageDec2_Status_t {
    uhImageDec2_Successful      = 1,
    uhImageDec2_Failed          = 2,
    uhImageDec2_UnsupportedFormat = 3,
    uhImageDec2_CorruptData     = 4
} uhImageDec2_Status_t, *puhImageDec2_Status_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the status of a completed action.

**Values****Table 659****Name****Description**

uhImageDec2\_Successful

The action was successful.

uhImageDec2\_Failed

The action failed.

uhImageDec2\_UnsupportedFormat

The action failed; the format of the input data is not supported.

uhImageDec2\_CorruptData

The action failed; the input data is corrupt.

**8.1.8.2.1.8      uhImageDec2\_Orientation\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhImageDec2_Orientation_t {
    uhImageDec2_Default          = 1,
    uhImageDec2_90ClockWise      = 2,
    uhImageDec2_180ClockWise     = 3,
    uhImageDec2_270ClockWise     = 4,
    uhImageDec2_FlipHorizontal   = 5,
    uhImageDec2_FlipVertical     = 6,
    uhImageDec2_FlipHorizontal_90ClockWise = 7,
    uhImageDec2_FlipVertical_90ClockWise = 8
} uhImageDec2_Orientation_t, *puhImageDec2_Orientation_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the image orientation. This type of value indicates the required rotation for the image.

**Values****Table 660****Name****Description**

uhImageDec2\_Default

Default orientation

| Name                                   | Description                                       |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| uhImageDec2_90ClockWise                | 90 degree clock wise rotation                     |
| uhImageDec2_180ClockWise               | 180 degree clock wise rotation                    |
| uhImageDec2_270ClockWise               | 270 degree clock wise rotation                    |
| uhImageDec2_FlipHorizontal             | Horizontal flip                                   |
| uhImageDec2_FlipVertical               | Vertical flip                                     |
| uhImageDec2_FlipHorizontal_90ClockWise | Flip horizontal and 90 degree clock wise rotation |
| uhImageDec2_FlipVertical_90ClockWise   | Flip Vertical and 90 degree rotation              |

#### 8.1.8.2.1.9      **uhImageDec2\_RotationMode\_t**

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhImageDec2_RotationMode_t {
    uhImageDec2_NoRotation          = 0x00000001,
    uhImageDec2_UseRotationBits    = 0x00000002,
    uhImageDec2_ForcedRotation     = 0x00000004
} uhImageDec2_RotationMode_t, *puhImageDec2_RotationMode_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element.

##### Description

Values of this type represent the image rotation mode.

##### Values

**Table 661**

| Name                        | Description                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhImageDec2_NoRotation      | No rotation to be performed. The rotation bits present in the image to be ignored.                                                                      |
| uhImageDec2_UseRotationBits | The main image to be rotated as per the rotation bits present in the image. Thumbnail also to be rotated as per the rotation bits present in the image. |
| uhImageDec2_ForcedRotation  | The main image to be rotated as per the rotation specified by the client. No rotation to be performed on thumbnail.                                     |

#### 8.1.8.2.1.10      **uhImageDec2\_RotationModes\_t**

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhImageDec2_RotationModes_t, *puhImageDec2_RotationModes_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent the set of rotation modes that are constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhImageDec2_RotationMode_t`.

8.1.8.2.1.11     uhlImageDec2\_ImageArea\_t

Signature

```
typedef struct _uhlImageDec2_ImageArea_t {
    UInt32 topLeftX;
    UInt32 topLeftY;
    UInt32 bottomRightX;
    UInt32 bottomRightY;
} uhlImageDec2_ImageArea_t, *puhlImageDec2_ImageArea_t;
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This type of structure represent the window of the encoded image. Typically it will be used to indicate the image area of the encoded image to be decoded.

Fields

Table 662

| Name         | Description                                        |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| topLeftX     | Top left X coordinate within the encoded image     |
| topLeftY     | Top left Y coordinate within the encoded image     |
| bottomRightX | Bottom right X coordinate within the encoded image |
| bottomRightY | Bottom right Y coordinate within the encoded image |

Constraints

```
( bottomRightX >= topLeftX ) AND ( topLeftY >= bottomRightY )
```

8.1.8.2.2     Model Types & Constants

None.

8.1.8.3     Logical Component

8.1.8.3.1     Interface-Role Model

Figure 70 depicts the interface-role model of the Image Decoding logical component (grey box). It shows the interfaces and the roles involved with this component.



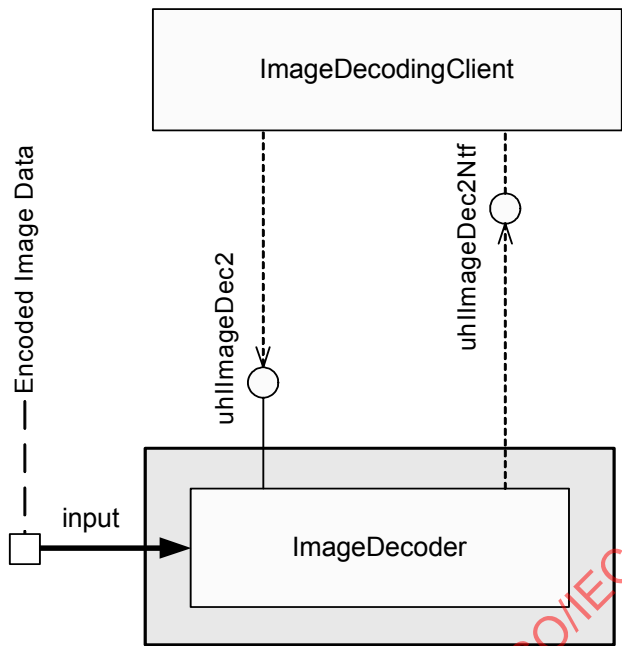


Figure 70 — Interface-Role Model

An Image Decoding logical component contains the ImageDecoder role that provides the control interface uhImageDec2. As input, it takes encoded image data. The client can optionally provide a notification interface (uhImageDec2Ntf) allowing it to receive notifications of events in the Image Decoding logical component.

8.1.8.3.2 Diversity

8.1.8.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 663

| Role                | Interface      | Presence  |
|---------------------|----------------|-----------|
| ImageDecoder        | uhImageDec2    | mandatory |
| ImageDecodingClient | uhImageDec2Ntf | optional  |

8.1.8.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 664

| Role         | Attribute              |
|--------------|------------------------|
| ImageDecoder | suppImageFormats       |
| ImageDecoder | bufAlignment           |
| ImageDecoder | suppPixelFormatTypes   |
| ImageDecoder | minHorScalePercentage  |
| ImageDecoder | minVertScalePercentage |
| ImageDecoder | maxHorScalePercentage  |
| ImageDecoder | maxVertScalePercentage |

| Role         | Attribute         |
|--------------|-------------------|
| ImageDecoder | maxHorRes         |
| ImageDecoder | maxVertRes        |
| ImageDecoder | suppRotationModes |

### 8.1.8.3.2.3 Constraints

1 <= bufAlignment

### 8.1.8.3.3 Instantiation

#### 8.1.8.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 665**

| Type         | Object | Multiplicity |
|--------------|--------|--------------|
| ImageDecoder | id     | 1            |

#### 8.1.8.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

```

— id.currImageFormat == undefined
— id.pixelFormatClass == undefined
— id.pixelFormatType == undefined
— id.orgHorResFullImage == 0
— id.orgVertResFullImage == 0
— id.thumbnailPresent == False
— id.orgHorResThumbnail == 0
— id.orgVertResThumbnail == 0
— id.metaDataPresent == False
— id.currRotationMode == uhImageDec2_NoRotation
— id.orgImageOrientation == uhImageDec2_Default
— id.orgImageAspectRatioNum == 0
— id.orgImageAspectRatioDenom == 1
— imageInfoPending == False
— imageInfoObtained == False
— thumbnailPresencePending == False
— fullImagePending == False
— thumbnailPending == False
— metaDataPending == False

```

#### 8.1.8.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

### 8.1.8.4 Roles

#### 8.1.8.4.1 ImageDecoder

##### Signature

```

role ImageDecoder {
    const uhImageDec2_ImageFormats_t    suppImageFormats;
    uhImageDec2_ImageFormat_t            currImageFormat;
    const UInt32                          bufAlignment;
    const uhPixFmtClsSet_t                 suppPixelFormatClasses;
    const uhPixFmtTypeSet_t                suppPixelFormatTypes[uhPixFmtCls_t];
    uhPixFmtCls_t                         pixelFormatClass;
    uhPixFmtType_t                        pixelFormatType;
    const UInt32                          minHorScalePercentage;
    const UInt32                          minVertScalePercentage;
    const UInt32                          maxHorScalePercentage;
    const UInt32                          maxVertScalePercentage;
    const UInt32                          maxHorRes;
    const UInt32                          maxVertRes;
    UInt32                                orgHorResFullImage;
    UInt32                                orgVertResFullImage;
    Bool                                  thumbnailPresent;
    UInt32                                orgHorResThumbnail;
    UInt32                                orgVertResThumbnail;
    Bool                                  metaDataPresent;
    const uhImageDec2_RotationModes_t      suppRotationModes;
    uhImageDec2_RotationMode_t            currRotationMode;
    uhImageDec2_Orientation_t              orgImageOrientation;
    uhImageDec2_Orientation_t              currForcedImageOrientation;
    UInt16                                 orgImageAspectRatioNum;
    UInt16                                 orgImageAspectRatioDenom;
    Bool                                  imageInfoPending;
    Bool                                  imageInfoObtained;
    Bool                                  thumbnailPresencePending;
    Bool                                  fullImagePending;
    Bool                                  thumbnailPending;
    Bool                                  metaDataPending;
}

```

##### Qualifiers

— root

##### Description

The ImageDecoder role provides functionality to decode images, decode and extract thumbnails, and get raw meta-data.

##### Independent Attributes

Table 666

| Name             | Description                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| suppImageFormats | The supported image formats.                                                                                                                              |
| currImageFormat  | The current image format.                                                                                                                                 |
| bufAlignment     | The byte alignment of a line in an image buffer. The alignment can pose restrictions on the image buffers the client can pass to the ImageDecoder object. |

| Name                       | Description                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| suppPixelFormatTypes       | A mapping giving the pixel format types for each pixel format class. The returned types can be used for the result of the decoding.        |
| pixelFormatClass           | The current pixel format class.                                                                                                            |
| pixelFormatType            | The current pixel format type.                                                                                                             |
| minHorScalePercentage      | The minimal horizontal scale factor in percentages.                                                                                        |
| minVertScalePercentage     | The minimal vertical scale factor in percentages.                                                                                          |
| maxHorScalePercentage      | The maximal horizontal scale factor in percentages.                                                                                        |
| maxVertScalePercentage     | The maximal vertical scale factor in percentages.                                                                                          |
| maxHorRes                  | The maximal horizontal output resolution expressed in the number of pixels per line.                                                       |
| maxVertRes                 | The maximal vertical output resolution expressed in the number of lines.                                                                   |
| orgHorResFullImage         | The original horizontal resolution of the full image received via the input. The resolution is expressed in the number of pixels per line. |
| orgVertResFullImage        | The original vertical resolution of the full image received via the input. The resolution is expressed in the number of lines.             |
| thumbnailPresent           | Indicates whether the input contains a thumbnail (True) or not (False).                                                                    |
| orgHorResThumbnail         | The original horizontal resolution of the thumbnail received via the input. The resolution is expressed in the number of pixels per line.  |
| orgVertResThumbnail        | The original vertical resolution of the thumbnail received via the input. The resolution is expressed in the number of lines.              |
| metaDataPresent            | Indicates whether raw meta-data is present (True) or not (False).                                                                          |
| suppRotationModes          | The supported rotation modes.                                                                                                              |
| currRotationMode           | The current rotation mode.                                                                                                                 |
| orgImageOrientation        | The original orientation of the image received via the input.                                                                              |
| currForcedImageOrientation | The current forced orientation of the image.                                                                                               |
| orgImageAspectRatioNum     | The numerator of the aspect ratio of the original image received via the input.                                                            |
| orgImageAspectRatioDenom   | The denominator of the aspect ratio of the original image received via the input.                                                          |
| imageInfoPending           | Indicates whether a request for obtaining basic information about the image is pending (True) or not (False).                              |
| imageInfoObtained          | Indicates whether basic information about the image has been obtained (True) or not (False).                                               |
| thumbnailPresencePending   | Indicates whether a request for thumbnail presence detection is pending (True) or not (False).                                             |
| fullImagePending           | Indicates whether a decoding request for a full image is pending (True) or not (False).                                                    |
| thumbnailPending           | Indicates whether a decoding request for a thumbnail image is pending (True) or not (False).                                               |
| metaDataPending            | Indicates whether a request for extracted raw meta-data is pending (True) or not (False).                                                  |

Dependent Attributes

Table 667

| Name                   | Description                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| suppPixelFormatClasses | The supported pixel format classes for decoded images: a class c is in suppPixelFormatClasses if and only if suppPixelFormatTypes[c] is not empty. |

Invariants

- 1 <= bufAlignment
- orgImageAspectRatioDenom > 0

Instantiation

See subclause 8.1.8.3.3

Streaming Behavior

Encoded image data is streamed into the ImageDecoder. The ImageDecoder decodes the data and sends the result to the client via a notification function. It has no streaming output.

Active Behavior

The ImageDecoder has standard notification behavior (see uhIImageDec2Ntf).

8.1.8.4.2 ImageDecodingClient

Signature

role ImageDecodingClient{}

Qualifiers

- actor

Description

An ImageDecodingClient represents a user of the uhIImageDec2 interface. No constraints apply to the behavior of the ImageDecodingClient other than those implied by Figure 70.

8.1.8.5 Interfaces

8.1.8.5.1 uhIImageDec2

Qualifiers

- None

Description

This interface provides functionality to decode images, decode and extract thumbnails, and get raw meta-data.

Interface ID

uuid( 8F71C7D0-768E-4444-9FC3-2CC63D595861 )

#### 8.1.8.5.1.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhImageDec2Ntf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhImageDec2_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

#### 8.1.8.5.1.2 Unsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhImageDec2Ntf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhImageDec2_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

#### 8.1.8.5.1.3 GetSuppImageFormats

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppImageFormats (
    [out] puhImageDec2_ImageFormats_t pFormats );
```

##### Qualifiers

— synchronous

— thread-safe

##### Description

This function returns the supported image formats. The returned integer value represents the OR-ed supported image formats.

##### Parameters

Table 668

##### Name

pFormats

##### Description

Output parameter returning the supported image formats.

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pFormats == id.suppImageFormats`

**8.1.8.5.1.4      GetBufAlignment**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t GetBufAlignment ( [out] pUInt32 pBufAlignment );`

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - thread-safe

**Description**  
This function returns the byte alignment required of image buffer lines. The byte alignment poses restrictions on the stride the client specifies for image buffers (see `DecodeImage` and `DecodeThumbnail`).

**Parameters**

**Table 669**

| Name                       | Description                                                                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pBufAlignment</code> | Output parameter returning the byte alignment of the lines of an image buffer. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pBufAlignment == id.bufAlignment`

**8.1.8.5.1.5      GetSuppFormatClasses**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t GetSuppFormatClasses ( [out] puhPixFmtClsSet_t pFormatClasses );`

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the supported format classes to which an image can be decoded. The returned integer value represents the OR-ed supported format classes.

**Parameters****Table 670**

| Name                        | Description                                                                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pFormatClasses</code> | Output parameter returning the supported format classes to which an image can be decoded. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

`*pFormatClasses == id.suppPixelFormatClasses`

**8.1.8.5.1.6 GetSuppFormatTypes****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppFormatTypes (
    [in] uhPixFmtCls_t formatClass,
    [out] puhPixFmtTypeSet_t pFormatTypes );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the supported format types of the specified pixel format class to which an image can be decoded. The returned integer value represents the OR-ed supported format types.

**Parameters****Table 671**

| Name                      | Description                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>formatClass</code>  | The pixel class for which the supported pixel format types are requested.                                         |
| <code>pFormatTypes</code> | Output parameter returning the supported pixel format types for the pixel format class <code>formatClass</code> . |

**Return Values**

Standard.



**Precondition**

— formatClass in id.suppPixelFormatClasses

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pFormatTypes == id.suppPixelFormatTypes[formatClass]

**8.1.8.5.1.7      GetScaleRange**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetScaleRange (
    [out] pUInt32 pMinHorPercentage,
    [out] pUInt32 pMinVertPercentage,
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxHorPercentage,
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxVertPercentage );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the minimal and maximal horizontal and vertical scale factors in percentages that images can be scaled to after decoding. A number higher than 100 indicates up-scaling, equal to 100 indicates no scaling, and lower than 100 indicates down scaling.

**Parameters**

**Table 672**

| Name               | Description                                                                    |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMinHorPercentage  | Output parameter returning the minimal horizontal scale factor in percentages. |
| pMinVertPercentage | Output parameter returning the minimal vertical scale factor in percentages.   |
| pMaxHorPercentage  | Output parameter returning the maximal horizontal scale factor in percentages. |
| pMaxVertPercentage | Output parameter returning the maximal vertical scale factor in percentages.   |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— \*pMinHorPercentage == id.minHorScalePercentage

- \*pMinVertPercentage == id.minVertScalePercentage
- \*pMaxHorPercentage == id.maxHorScalePercentage
- \*pMaxVertPercentage == id.maxVertScalePercentage

#### 8.1.8.5.1.8 GetMaxResolution

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMaxResolution (
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxHorRes,
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxVertRes );
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

This function returns the maximal horizontal and vertical resolution that images can be decoded to.

##### Parameters

Table 673

| Name        | Description                                                   |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMaxHorRes  | Output parameter returning the maximal horizontal resolution. |
| pMaxVertRes | Output parameter returning the maximal vertical resolution.   |

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

True

##### Action

None.

##### Postcondition

- \*pMaxHorRes == id.maxHorRes
- \*pMaxVertRes == id.maxVertRes

#### 8.1.8.5.1.9 GetOrgFullResolution

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetOrgFullResolution ( );
```

##### Qualifiers

- asynchronous

— thread-safe

### Description

This function triggers the retrieval of the original resolution of the full image. Before calling this function, the client needs to be subscribed to `OnResolutionObtained`.

### Parameters

None.

### Return Values

Standard.

### Precondition

`id.imageInfoPending == False`

### Action

— Modify `id.imageInfoPending`

### Postcondition

— `id.imageInfoPending == True`

### Asynchronous Action

— Modify `id.imageInfoPending`  
 — Modify `id.imageInfoObtained`  
 — Modify `id.orgHorResFullImage`  
 — Modify `id.orgVertResFullImage`  
 — Notify `OnResolutionObtained`

### Asynchronous Postcondition

— `id.imageInfoPending == False`  
 — if the resolution has been obtained  
   — `id.imageInfoObtained == True`  
   — `id.orgHorResFullImage != 0`  
   — `id.orgVertResFullImage != 0`  
 — else  
   — `id.imageInfoObtained == False`  
   — `id.orgHorResFullImage == 0`  
   — `id.orgVertResFullImage == 0`

8.1.8.5.1.10 DecodeImage

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t DecodeImage (  
    [in] UInt32 requestedHorRes,  
    [in] UInt32 requestedVertRes,  
    [in] UInt32 stride,  
    [in] uhPixFmtCls_t formatClass,  
    [in] uhPixFmtType_t formatType,  
    [in] Bool useImageArea,  
    [in] uhImageDec2_ImageArea_t requestedImageArea,  
    [in] UInt32 bufferSize,  
    [out, size_is(bufferSize)] pUInt8 pBuffer );
```

Qualifiers

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

Description

This function requests the decoding of an image in the requested format and resolution. A partial area of the encoded image may be selected for decoding. The coordinates of the partial area are with respect to the encoded image. When the requested resolution differs from the resolution of the encoded image, or from the resolution of the requested encoded image area, the image is scaled to the requested resolution. It is the client's responsibility to assure that the resulting scale factor including the effects of applied rotation (see SetRotationMode) is within the supported range (see GetScaleRange). There is no support for pixel formats requiring multiple buffers (e.g. one for Y, one for UV).

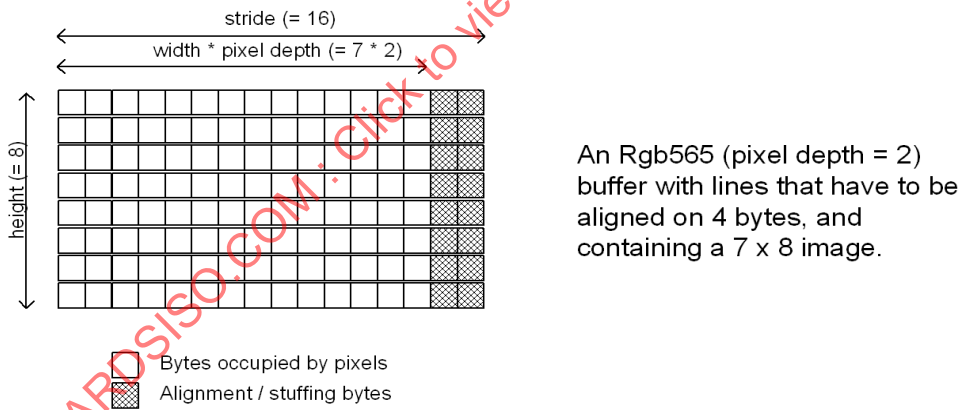


Figure 71 — An example showing the relation between pixel type, image size, buffer size and stride.

Parameters

Table 674

| Name             | Description                                                                                                  |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| requestedHorRes  | The requested horizontal resolution (width in Figure 71) of the returned image in number of pixels per line. |
| requestedVertRes | The requested vertical resolution (height in Figure 71) of the returned image in number of lines.            |
| stride           | The stride (in bytes) of the image. See Figure 71.                                                           |

| Name                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>formatClass</code>        | The requested pixel format class.                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>formatType</code>         | The requested pixel format type.                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>useImageArea</code>       | Flag indicating if the encoded image should be partially decoded (True) or not (False). The area of the encoded image to be decoded is indicated by <code>requestedImageArea</code> . |
| <code>requestedImageArea</code> | The area of the encoded image to be decoded if <code>useImageArea</code> equals True.                                                                                                 |
| <code>bufferSize</code>         | The size of the buffer where image is to be decoded in bytes.                                                                                                                         |
| <code>pBuffer</code>            | Pointer to the first element of the client's buffer where image is to be decoded.                                                                                                     |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

```

— id.fullImagePending == False
— requestedHorRes <= id.maxHorRes
— requestedVertRes <= id.maxVertRes
— stride >= requestedHorRes * pixel depth of formatType
— stride mod id.bufAlignment == 0
— bufferSize == stride * requestedVertRes
— formatClass in id.suppPixelFormatClasses (see function GetSuppFormatClasses)
— formatType in id.suppPixelFormatTypes[formatClass] (see function
  GetSuppFormatTypes)
— if ( useImageArea == True )
  — 0 <= requestedImageArea.topLeftX < id.orgHorResFullImage
  — 0 <= requestedImageArea.topLeftY < id.orgVertResFullImage
  — 0 < requestedImageArea.bottomRightX <= id.orgHorResFullImage
  — 0 < requestedImageArea.bottomRightY <= id.orgVertResFullImage
— if ( useImageArea == True )
  — let horInputRes = requestedImageArea.bottomRightX -
    requestedImageArea.topLeftX
  — let vertInputRes = requestedImageArea.bottomRightY -
    requestedImageArea.topLeftY
— else
  — let horInputRes = id.orgHorResFullImage
  — let vertInputRes = id.orgVertResFullImage
— let rotDeg = the applied rotation in degrees
— if ( rotDeg == 0 modulo 180 )
  — id.minHorScalePercentage <= ( requestedHorRes / horInputRes ) * 100 <=
    id.maxHorScalePercentage
  — id.minVertScalePercentage <= ( requestedVertRes / vertInputRes ) * 100 <=
    id.maxVertScalePercentage
— if ( rotDeg == 90 modulo 180 )
  — id.minHorScalePercentage <= ( requestedVertRes / horInputRes ) * 100 <=
    id.maxHorScalePercentage
  — id.minVertScalePercentage <= ( requestedHorRes / vertInputRes ) * 100 <=
    id.maxVertScalePercentage

```

**Action**Modify `id.fullImagePending`**Postcondition**

`id.fullImagePending == True`

#### Asynchronous Action

- Modify `id.fullImagePending`
- Notify `OnFullImageDecoded`

#### Asynchronous Postcondition

- `id.fullImagePending == False`
- If decoding was successful
  - `pBuffer` points to the decoded full image.

#### 8.1.8.5.1.11 GetThumbnailPresent

##### Signature

`uhErrorCode_t GetThumbnailPresent ( );`

##### Qualifiers

- asynchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

This function triggers the detection of thumbnail presence. Before calling this function, the client needs to be subscribed to `OnThumbnailPresence`.

##### Parameters

None.

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

`id.thumbnailPresencePending == False`

##### Action

- Modify `id.thumbnailPresencePending`

##### Postcondition

`id.thumbnailPresencePending == True`

#### Asynchronous Action

- Modify `id.thumbnailPresencePending`
- Modify `id.thumbnailPresent`
- Notify `OnThumbnailPresence`

#### Asynchronous Postcondition

- `id.thumbnailPresencePending == False`

```
— if thumbnail is present
  — id.thumbnailPresent == True
— else
  — id.thumbnailPresent == False
```

8.1.8.5.1.12    **GetOrgThumbnailResolution**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetOrgThumbnailResolution (
    [out] pUInt32 pHorRes,
    [out] pUInt32 pVertRes );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the original resolution of the thumbnail.

**Parameters**

**Table 675**

| Name     | Description                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pHorRes  | Output parameter returning the original horizontal resolution of the thumbnail received via the input. The resolution is expressed in number of pixels per line. |
| pVertRes | Output parameter returning the original vertical resolution of the thumbnail received via the input. The resolution is expressed in number of lines.             |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

```
id.thumbnailPresent == True
```

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```
— *pHorRes == id.orgHorResThumbnail
— *pVertRes == id.orgVertResThumbnail
```

## 8.1.8.5.1.13 DecodeThumbnail

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t DecodeThumbnail (
    [in] UInt32 requestedHorRes,
    [in] UInt32 requestedVertRes,
    [in] UInt32 stride,
    [in] uhPixFmtCls_t formatClass,
    [in] uhPixFmtType_t formatType,
    [in] UInt32 bufferSize,
    [out, size_is(bufferSize)] pUInt8 pBuffer );
```

## Qualifiers

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

## Description

This function requests the decoding or extraction of a thumbnail in the requested format and resolution. When the requested resolution differs from the resolution of the encoded image, the image is scaled to the requested resolution. It is the client's responsibility to assure that the resulting scale factor including the effects of applied rotation (see `SetRotationMode`) is within the supported range (see `GetScaleRange`). There is no support for pixel formats requiring multiple buffers (e.g. one for Y, one for UV).

## Parameters

Table 676

| Name                          | Description                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>requestedHorRes</code>  | The requested horizontal resolution (width in Figure 71) of the returned image in number of pixels per line. |
| <code>requestedVertRes</code> | The requested vertical resolution (height in Figure 71) of the returned image in number of lines.            |
| <code>stride</code>           | The stride (in bytes) of the thumbnail. See Figure 71.                                                       |
| <code>formatClass</code>      | The requested pixel format class.                                                                            |
| <code>formatType</code>       | The requested pixel format type.                                                                             |
| <code>bufferSize</code>       | The size of the buffer where thumbnail is to be decoded or extracted in bytes.                               |
| <code>pBuffer</code>          | Pointer to the first element of the client's buffer where thumbnail is to be decoded or extracted.           |

## Return Values

Standard.

## Precondition

- `id.thumbnailPending == False`
- `id.thumbnailPresent == True`
- `requestedHorRes <= id.maxHorRes`
- `requestedVertRes <= id.maxVertRes`
- `stride >= requestedHorRes * pixel depth of formatType`
- `stride mod id.bufAlignment == 0`
- `bufferSize == stride * requestedVertRes`
- `formatClass in id.supportPixelFormatClasses` (see function `GetSuppFormatClasses`)



```

— formatType      in      id.supPixelFormatTypes[formatClass]      (see      function
  GetSuppFormatTypes )
— let rotDeg = the applied rotation in degrees
— if ( rotDeg == 0 modulo 180 )
  — id.minHorScalePercentage <= ( requestedHorRes / id.orgHorResThumbnail ) *
    100 <= id.maxHorScalePercentage
  — id.minVertScalePercentage <= ( requestedVertRes / id.orgVertResThumbnail )
    * 100 <= id.maxVertScalePercentage
— if ( rotDeg == 90 modulo 180 )
  — id.minHorScalePercentage <= ( requestedVertRes / id.orgHorResThumbnail ) *
    100 <= id.maxHorScalePercentage
  — id.minVertScalePercentage <= ( requestedHorRes / id.orgVertResThumbnail )
    * 100 <= id.maxVertScalePercentage

```

**Action**

Modify id.thumbnailPending

**Postcondition**

id.thumbnailPending == True

**Asynchronous Action**

```

— Modify id.thumbnailPending
— Notify OnThumbnailDecoded

```

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

```

— id.thumbnailPending == False
— if decoding or extraction was successful
  — pBuffer points to the decoded or extracted thumbnail.

```

**8.1.8.5.1.14 GetMetaDataPresent****Signature**

```

uhErrorCode_t GetMetaDataPresent (
  [out] pBool pMetaDataPresent );

```

**Qualifiers**

```

— synchronous
— thread-safe

```

**Description**

This function returns whether meta-data is present that can be retrieved by the client as raw meta-data. When meta-data is present, the raw meta-data can be retrieved by subscribing to OnMetaDataFound and OnEndMetaData and calling GetRawMetaData.

**Parameters****Table 677**

| Name             | Description                                                                                  |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMetaDataPresent | Output parameter returning whether extracted raw meta-data is present (True) or not (False). |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pMetaDataPresent == id.metaDataPresent

**8.1.8.5.1.15 GetRawMetaData****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetRawMetaData (
    [out] puhImageDec2_ImageFormat_t pImageFormat );
```

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function requests the retrieval of raw meta-data. Before calling this function, a client needs to check if meta-data is present by calling `GetMetaDataPresent`. To receive the meta-data, the client has to subscribe to `uhImageDec2_MetaDataFound` and `uhImageDec2_EndMetaData`. After calling this function, extracted meta-data will be notified by calling the `OnMetaDataFound` function of the client one or more times. When no more meta-data is present, the `OnEndMetaData` function of the client will be called.

**Parameters****Table 678**

| Name         | Description                                          |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| pImageFormat | Output parameter indicating the format of the image. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- id.metaDataPending == False
- id.metaDataPresent == True

**Action**

— Modify `id.metaDataPending`

**Postcondition**

— `id.metaDataPending == True`  
— `*pImageFormat` in `suppImageFormats`

**Asynchronous Action**

— if no more meta-data will be notified  
  — Modify `id.metaDataPending`  
  — Notify `OnMetaDataFound`  
— else  
  — Notify `OnMetaDataFound`

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

— if no more meta-data will be notified

`id.metaDataPending == False`

**8.1.8.5.1.16      GetOrgImageOrientation**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetOrgImageOrientation (  
    [out] puhImageDec2_Orientation_t pOrientation );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous  
  
— thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the orientation of the image as described in the rotation bits of the image.

**Parameters**

**Table 679**

| Name                      | Description                                              |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pOrientation</code> | Output parameter providing the orientation of the image. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

`id.imageInfoObtained == True`

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

`*pOrientation == id.orgImageOrientation`

8.1.8.5.1.17    **GetOrgImageAspectRatio**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetOrgImageAspectRatio(  
    [out] pUInt16 pNumerator,  
    [out] pUInt16 pDenominator );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the aspect ratio of the original image.

**Parameters**

**Table 680**

| Name         | Description                                                                  |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pNumerator   | Output parameter returning the numerator of the aspect ratio of the input.   |
| pDenominator | Output parameter returning the denominator of the aspect ratio of the input. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

```
id.imageInfoObtained == True
```

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pNumerator == id.orgImageAspectRatioNum
- \*pDenominator == id.orgImageAspectRatioDenom

8.1.8.5.1.18    **GetSupportedRotationModes**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSupportedRotationModes (  
    [out] puhImageDec2_RotationModes_t pModes );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the rotation modes supported by the Image Decoder. The returned integer value represents the OR-ed supported rotation modes.

**Parameters**

Table 681

| Name   | Description                                                               |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pModes | Output parameter providing rotation modes supported by the image decoder. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pModes == id.suppRotationModes

**8.1.8.5.1.19 SetRotationMode**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetRotationMode (
    [in] uhImageDec2_RotationMode_t mode,
    [in] uhImageDec2_Orientation_t orientation );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function sets the rotation mode. The rotation mode will be used for decoding the main image and the thumbnail. If the mode parameter is set to forced rotation mode, the orientation parameter specifies the orientation for the rotation. For all other rotation modes the orientation parameter is ignored.

**Parameters**

Table 682

| Name        | Description                                                                |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| mode        | The rotation mode to be used                                               |
| orientation | The orientation to be used if the rotation mode specifies forced rotation. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

— mode in id.supRotationModes

**Action**

- Modify id.currRotationMode
- Modify id.currForcedImageOrientation

**Postcondition**

- id.currRotationMode == mode
- id.currForcedImageOrientation == orientation

**8.1.8.5.1.20      GetRotationMode**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetRotationMode (  
    [out] puhImageDec2_RotationMode_t pMode,  
    [out] puhImageDec2_Orientation_t pOrientation );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the rotation mode used for decoding the main image and the thumbnail.

**Parameters**

**Table 683**

| Name         | Description                                                                                                             |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMode        | The rotation mode that is currently set.                                                                                |
| pOrientation | The orientation that is currently set. This orientation is only applied if the rotation mode specifies forced rotation. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pMode == id.currRotationMode
- \*pOrientation == id.currForcedImageOrientation

8.1.8.5.2    uhlImageDec2Ntf

Qualifiers

—    callback

Description

This is a notification interface to be provided by clients of the Image Decoding logical component that wish to receive notifications of Image Decoding related events.

Interface ID

uuid( A182567C-FAA3-48d3-A5A6-2CD827893203 )

8.1.8.5.2.1    OnSubscriptionChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhImageDec2_Notifications_t notifs );
```

Qualifiers

—    onsubscriptionchanged-function

8.1.8.5.2.2    OnFullImageDecoded

Signature

```
[async] Void OnFullImageDecoded (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhImageDec2_Status_t status );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called by the ImageDecoder when it has either successfully decoded a full image or failed to do so. Failure to decode is reported via the status parameter. On success, the decoded image is present in the buffer passed with DecodeImage. Otherwise, this buffer is left as it was.

Parameters

Table 684

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| status | The status of the image decoding.                             |

Return Values

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.8.5.2.3 OnThumbnailDecoded**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnThumbnailDecoded (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhImageDec2_Status_t status );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the `ImageDecoder` when it has either decoded or extracted a thumbnail or failed to do so. Failure to decode or extract is reported via the `status` parameter. On success, the decoded or extracted thumbnail is present in the buffer passed with `DecodeThumbnail`. Otherwise, this buffer is left as it was.

**Parameters**

**Table 685**

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| status | The status of the thumbnail decoding.                         |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True



**8.1.8.5.2.4 OnMetaDataFound****Signature**

```
Void OnMetaDataFound (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] UInt32 size,
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pRawData );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the `ImageDecoder` when it has found raw meta-data in the input stream. The format of the raw meta-data is compliant with the specification of the image type and its file format. The client is expected to copy the meta-data from the buffer pointed to by `pRawData`. When this function returns the buffer pointed to by `pRawData` will no longer be valid.

**Parameters****Table 686**

| Name                  | Description                                                              |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>   | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.            |
| <code>size</code>     | The size of the buffer containing the meta-data.                         |
| <code>pRawData</code> | Pointer to the buffer of the image decoder containing the raw meta-data. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.8.5.2.5 OnEndMetaData****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnEndMetaData (
    [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the `ImageDecoder` when no more meta-data is available in the input stream.

**Parameters****Table 687**

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Description</b>                                            |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie      | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.8.5.2.6 OnResolutionObtained****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnResolutionObtained (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhImageDec2_Status_t status,
    [in] UInt32 horRes,
    [in] UInt32 vertRes );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the `ImageDecoder` when the process to determine the resolution, aspect ratio and orientation of the encoded image in the input stream has finished.

**Parameters****Table 688**

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Description</b>                                                                                        |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie      | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                             |
| status      | The status of the resolution obtainment.                                                                  |
| horRes      | Parameter indicating the horizontal resolution. The resolution is expressed in number of pixels per line. |
| vertRes     | Parameter indicating the vertical resolution. The resolution is expressed in number of lines.             |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.8.5.2.7 OnThumbnailPresence**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnThumbnailPresence (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhImageDec2_Status_t status,  
    [in] Bool presence );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the ImageDecoder when the process to detect the presence of a thumbnail in the input stream has finished.

**Parameters**

**Table 689**

| Name     | Description                                                                |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie   | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.              |
| status   | The status of the thumbnail presence detection.                            |
| presence | Parameter indicating whether a thumbnail is present (True) or not (False). |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

## 8.1.9 UhlOob

### 8.1.9.1 Concepts

#### 8.1.9.1.1 Introduction

The function of an OOBTD is to receive an external out of band signal, tune to the correct frequency and demodulate that signal.

The out of band signal is a separate signal with a small frequency bandwidth that is used to send metadata that is applicable to multiple channels in the in-band signal. Out of band tuning and demodulation is typically much faster than in-band tuning and demodulation.

This specification is typically used by clients that adhere to the OpenCable POD host control interface standard.

### 8.1.9.2 Types & Constants

#### 8.1.9.2.1 Public Types & Constants

##### 8.1.9.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

##### 8.1.9.2.1.2 uhOob\_DataRate\_t

#### Signature

```
typedef enum uhOob_DataRate_t {
    uhOob_DataRateUnknown          = 0,
    uhOob_DataRateDvs167_1544      = 1,
    uhOob_DataRateDvs178_2048      = 2,
    uhOob_DataRateDvs167_3088      = 3
} uhOob_DataRate_t, *puhOob_DataRate_t;
```

#### Qualifiers

— enum

#### Description

Values of this type represent the receiver data rates according to the DVS167 and DVS178 standards (OpenCable POD host control interface standards on OOB reception).

#### Values

**Table 690**

#### Name

uhOob\_DataRateUnknown  
uhOob\_DataRateDvs167\_1544  
uhOob\_DataRateDvs178\_2048  
uhOob\_DataRateDvs167\_3088

#### Description

The data rate is not known (initial value).  
OpenCable POD DVS167 1544 rate.  
OpenCable POD DVS178 2048 rate.  
OpenCable POD DVS167 3088 rate.

8.1.9.3 Logical Component

8.1.9.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 72 Depicts the interface-role model of the OOBTD logical component. It shows the control interfaces and the roles involved with this logical component.

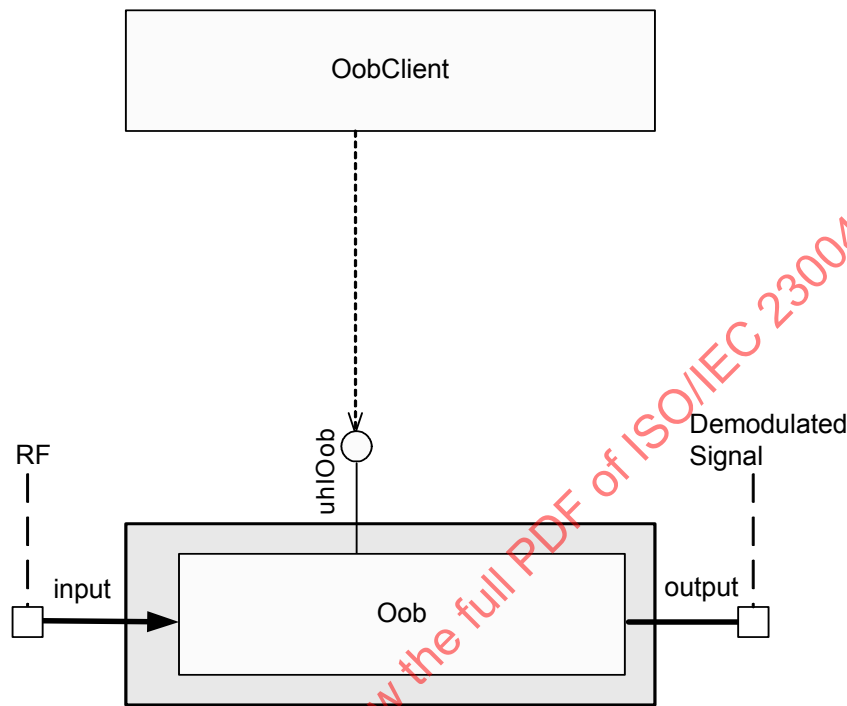


Figure 72 — Interface-Role Model

The grey box in Figure 72 denotes an OOBTD logical component containing the Oob role providing one mandatory (solid line) control interfaces to its clients.

8.1.9.3.2 Diversity

8.1.9.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 691

| Role | Interface | Presence  |
|------|-----------|-----------|
| Oob  | uhIOob    | Mandatory |

8.1.9.3.2.2 Configurable Items

The following table contains a list of role attributes that can be given a value upon creation of the logical component. For a description of the attributes see Roles subclause, and for how they are initialized see subclause 8.1.9.3.3.

Table 692

| Role | Attribute    |
|------|--------------|
| Oob  | minFrequency |

| Role | Attribute    |
|------|--------------|
| Oob  | maxFrequency |

8.1.9.3.2.3 Constraints

See the InvariantsT of the Oob role (subclause 8.1.9.4.1).

8.1.9.3.3 Instantiation

8.1.9.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 693

| Type | Object | Multiplicity |
|------|--------|--------------|
| Oob  | oob    | 1            |

8.1.9.3.3.2 Initial State

- Toob.setFrequency == oob.minFrequency
- oob.setDataRate == uhOob\_DataRateUnknown
- oob.spectralInversionEnabled == False

8.1.9.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier “thread-safe”.

8.1.9.4 Roles

8.1.9.4.1 Oob

Signature

```
role Oob {
  const UInt32 minFrequency;
  const UInt32 maxFrequency;
  UInt32 setFrequency;
  uhOob_DataRate_t actualTvSystem;
  Bool spectralInversionEnabled;
}
```

Qualifiers

- root

Description

A Oob controls the tuning and demodulation attributes.

**Independent Attributes****Table 694**

| <b>Name</b>                           | <b>Description</b>                                               |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>minFrequency</code>             | The minimum OOB frequency.                                       |
| <code>maxFrequency</code>             | The maximum OOB frequency.                                       |
| <code>setFrequency</code>             | The current OOB frequency.                                       |
| <code>setDataRate</code>              | The current OOB data rate.                                       |
| <code>spectralInversionEnabled</code> | Indicates if spectral inversion is enabled (True) or not (False) |

**Invariants**

— `oob.minFrequency ≤ oob.setFrequency ≤ oob.maxFrequency`

**Instantiation**

A Oob role is always instantiated as part of an OOBTD logical component; see subclause 8.1.9.3.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

The Oob role tunes to the correct frequency in the incoming signal, demodulates that signal, and outputs the result.

**8.1.9.4.2 OobClient****Signature**

```
role OobClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

— actor

**Description**

An `OobClient` role represents a user of the control interfaces offered by the Oob Trole. No constraints apply to the behavior of the `OobClient` role other than those implied by Figure 72.

**8.1.9.5 Interfaces****8.1.9.5.1 uhlOob****Qualifiers**

— None.

**Description**

This interface of the Oob role provides control of the out of band tuning and demodulation parameters.

**Interface ID**

```
uuid( E657A803-C4CD-403b-9EC7-4E696FE6E290 )
```

**Remarks**

In the following function specifications, the name `oob` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface.

**8.1.9.5.1.1      GetFrequencyRange****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetFrequencyRange (
    [out] pUInt32 pMinFreq,
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxFreq );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the boundaries for the out of band frequency in Hz.

**Parameters****Table 695**

| Name                  | Description                                                 |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pMinFreq</code> | Output parameter returning the minimum OOB frequency in Hz. |
| <code>pMaxFreq</code> | Output parameter returning the maximum OOB frequency in Hz. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- None.

**Postcondition**

- `*pMinFreq == oob.minFrequency`
- `*pMaxFreq == oob.maxFrequency`

**8.1.9.5.1.2      SetFrequency****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetFrequency ( [in] UInt32 freq );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded



**Description**

This function sets the out of band frequency in Hz.

**Parameters****Table 696**

| Name              | Description                                             |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>freq</code> | Input parameter indicating the new OOB frequency in Hz. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

`oob.minFrequency ≤ freq ≤ oob.maxFrequency`

**Action**

— Modify `oob.setFrequency`

**Postcondition**

`oob.setFrequency == freq`

**8.1.9.5.1.3 GetFrequency****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetFrequency ( [out] pUInt32 pFreq );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the out of band frequency in Hz as it was set via the `SetFrequency` function.

**Parameters****Table 697**

| Name               | Description                                                     |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pFreq</code> | Output parameter returning the set out of band frequency in Hz. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

Action

— None.

Postcondition

\*pFreq == oob.setFrequency

8.1.9.5.1.4      SetDataRate

Signature

uhErrorCode\_t SetDataRate ( [in] uhOob\_DataRate\_t rate );

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

Description

This function sets the out of band data rate.

Parameters

Table 698

| Name | Description                                   |
|------|-----------------------------------------------|
| rate | Input parameter indicating the new data rate. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

rate != uhOob\_DataRateUnknown

Action

— Modify oob.actualTvSystem

Postcondition

oob.actualTvSystem == rate

8.1.9.5.1.5      GetDataRate

Signature

uhErrorCode\_t GetDataRate ( [out] puhOob\_DataRate\_t pRate );

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the out of band data rate, as it was set via the `SetDataRate` function.

**Parameters**

Table 699

| Name               | Description                                                        |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pRate</code> | Output parameter returning the out of band data rate that was set. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
`True`

**Action**  
— `None`.

**Postcondition**  
`*pRate == oob.actualTvSystem`

**8.1.9.5.1.6      EnableSpectralInversion**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t EnableSpectralInversion ( [in] Bool enable );`

- Qualifiers**
- `synchronous`
  - `single-threaded`

**Description**  
This function enables (`True`) or disables (`False`) spectral inversion.

**Parameters**

Table 700

| Name                | Description                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>enable</code> | Input parameter indicating if spectral inversion has to be enabled ( <code>True</code> ) or disabled ( <code>False</code> ). |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
`True`

Action

— Modify oob.spectralInversionEnabled

Postcondition

oob.spectralInversionEnabled == enable

8.1.9.5.1.7      GetSpectralInversionEnabled

Signature

uhErrorCode\_t GetSpectralInversionEnabled ( [out] pBool pEnabled );

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function returns whether or not spectral inversion is currently enabled.

Parameters

Table 701

| Name     | Description                                                                                        |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pEnabled | Output parameter indicating if spectral inversion is currently enabled (True) or disabled (False). |

Return Values  
Standard.

Precondition  
True

Action  
— None.

Postcondition  
\*pEnabled == oob.spectralInversionEnabled

8.1.10 UHfRfAmp

8.1.10.1 Concepts

8.1.10.1.1 Introduction

The function of an RFA is to control the amplification of an incoming RF signal in order to optimize the signal processing by a tuner. Pre-amplification or attenuation is typically needed in regions where transmissions are weak, over modulated, or heavily distorted.

### 8.1.10.2 Types & Constants

#### 8.1.10.2.1 Public Types & Constants

None

#### 8.1.10.2.2 Model Types & Constants

None

### 8.1.10.3 Logical Component

#### 8.1.10.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 73 depicts the interface-role model of the RFA. It shows the control interface and the roles involved with this logical component.

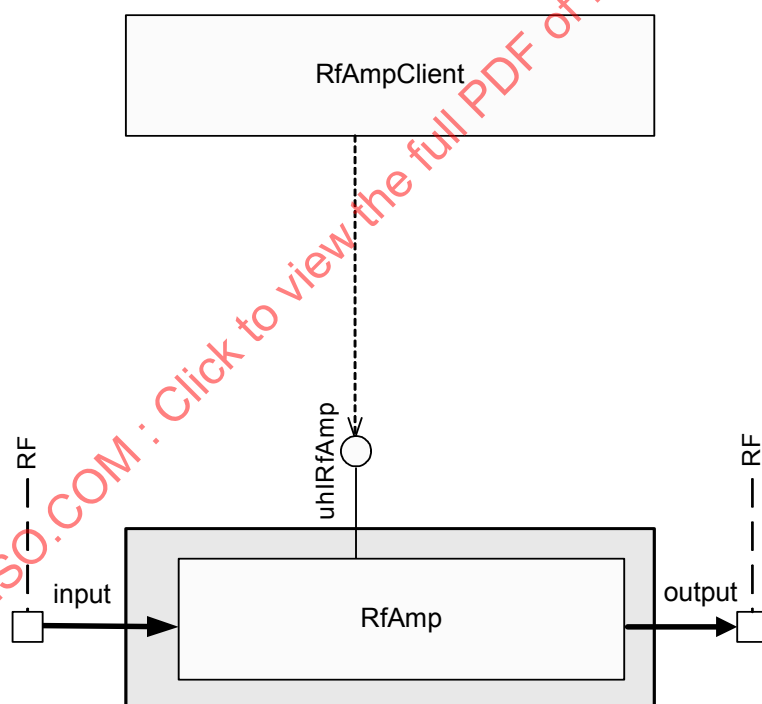


**Figure 73 — Interface Role Model**

The grey box in Figure 73 denotes an RFA logical component containing the RfAmp role providing one mandatory (solid line) control interface to the RfAmpClient.

## 8.1.10.3.2 Diversity

## 8.1.10.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 702

| Role  | Interface | Presence  |
|-------|-----------|-----------|
| RfAmp | uhIRfAmp  | mandatory |

## 8.1.10.3.2.2 Configurable Items

The following table contains a list of role attributes that can be given a value upon creation of the logical component. For a description of the attributes see the Roles subclause, and for how they are initialized, see subclause 8.1.10.3.3.

Table 703

| Role  | Attribute |
|-------|-----------|
| RfAmp | minAmp    |
| RfAmp | maxAmp    |

## 8.1.10.3.2.3 Constraints

— See the Invariants of the RfAmp role (subclause 8.1.10.4.1).

## 8.1.10.3.3 Instantiation

## 8.1.10.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 704

| Type  | Object | Multiplicity |
|-------|--------|--------------|
| RfAmp | ra     | 1            |

## 8.1.10.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

```
ra.currentAmp == 0
```

## 8.1.10.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

8.1.10.4 Roles

8.1.10.4.1 RfAmp

Signature

```
role RfAmp {
    const Int32 minAmp;
    const Int32 maxAmp;
    Int32 currentAmp;
}
```

Qualifiers

— root

Description

An RfAmp controls the RF amplification attributes.

Independent Attributes

Table 705

| Name       | Description                  |
|------------|------------------------------|
| minAmp     | Minimum amplification level. |
| maxAmp     | Maximum amplification level. |
| currentAmp | Current amplification level. |

Dependent Attributes

None.

Invariants

- minAmp ≤ currentAmp ≤ maxAmp
- minAmp ≤ 0
- maxAmp ≥ 0

Instantiation

An RfAmp role is always instantiated as part of an RFA; see subclause 8.1.10.3.3.

Streaming Behavior

The RfAmp role amplifies or attenuates the incoming RF signal so an RF signal with an acceptable level can be sent to the tuner.

8.1.10.4.2 RfAmpClient

Signature

```
role RfAmpClient {}
```

Qualifiers

— actor

**Description**

An `RfAmpClient` role represents a user of the control interfaces offered by the `RfAmp` role. No constraints apply to the behavior of the `RfAmpClient` role other than those implied by Figure 73.

**8.1.10.5 Interfaces**

**8.1.10.5.1 uhlRfAmp**

**Qualifiers**

— None.

**Description**

This interface of an `RfAmp` role provides control of the RF amplification parameters.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( BF703DFC-8B25-4936-A067-4B1EE831FA2D )`

**Remarks**

— In the following function specifications, the name `ra` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface.

**8.1.10.5.1.1 GetRange**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetRange (
    [out] pInt32 pMinAmp,
    [out] pInt32 pMaxAmp );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the boundaries for the RF amplification level. A negative value indicates attenuation; a positive value indicates amplification. The value 0, always part of the range, indicates no amplification/attenuation.

**Parameters**

**Table 706**

| Name                 | Description                                                 |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pMinAmp</code> | Output parameter returning the minimum amplification level. |
| <code>pMaxAmp</code> | Output parameter returning the maximum amplification level. |

**Return Values**

Standard.



**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None

**Postcondition**

- \*pMinAmp == ra.minAmp
- \*pMaxAmp == ra.maxAmp

**8.1.10.5.1.2 Set**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t Set ( [in] Int32 amp );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function sets the RF amplification level. A negative value indicates attenuation; a positive value indicates amplification. The value 0 indicates no amplification or attenuation.

**Parameters**

Table 707

| Name | Description                                             |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| amp  | Input parameter indicating the new amplification level. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

ra.minAmp ≤ amp ≤ ra.maxAmp

**Action**

- Modify ra.currentAmp

**Postcondition**

ra.currentAmp == amp

## 8.1.10.5.1.3 Get

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Get ( [out] pInt32 pAmp );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the RF amplification level, as it was set via the Set function. A negative value indicates attenuation; a positive value indicates amplification. The value 0 indicates no amplification or attenuation.

**Parameters**

Table 708

| Name | Description                                             |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| pAmp | Output parameter returning the set amplification level. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None

**Postcondition**

\*pAmp == ra.currentAmp

## 8.1.11 UhlSigStrength

## 8.1.11.1 Concepts

## 8.1.11.1.1 Introduction

The function of a `SigStrength` is to measure the strength of an IF signal. The strength is measured in logical units. The higher the value the stronger is the signal. The relationship between logical unit and physical value is platform-specific and does not covered in this interface.

Measured strength can be used for sorting of signals or for distinction between signal and noise.

The measurement of signal strength can influence the signal coming out of component. The signal becomes stable again as soon as measurement is completed or abort of measurement proceed.

### 8.1.11.2 Types & Constants

#### 8.1.11.2.1 Public Types & Constants

##### 8.1.11.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

##### 8.1.11.2.1.2 uhSigStrength\_Notification\_t

###### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhSigStrength_Notification_t {
    uhSigStrength_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhSigStrength_MeasReady           = 0x00000002,
    uhSigStrength_MeasAborted         = 0x00000004
} uhSigStrength_Notification_t, *puhSigStrength_Notification_t;
```

###### Qualifiers

— enum-element

###### Description

Values of this type represent the notification functions in the interface uhISigStrengthNtf. They can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

###### Values

Table 709

| Name                              | Description                       |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhSigStrength_SubscriptionChanged | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged. |
| uhSigStrength_MeasReady           | Represents OnMeasReady.           |
| uhSigStrength_MeasAborted         | Represents OnMeasAborted.         |

##### 8.1.11.2.1.3 uhSigStrength\_Notifications\_t

###### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhSigStrength_Notifications_t, *puhSigStrength_Notifications_t;
```

###### Qualifiers

— enum-set

###### Description

Defines the set-type for uhSigStrength\_Notification\_t.

##### 8.1.11.2.1.4 uhSigStrength\_AllNotifications

###### Signature

```
const uhSigStrength_Notifications_t uhSigStrength_AllNotifications = 0x00000007;
```

###### Qualifiers

None.

Description

The set of all notifications of `uhSigStrength_Notification_t`.

8.1.11.2.1.5 `uhSigStrength_ValStat_t`

Signature

```
typedef enum _uhSigStrength_ValStat_t {
    uhSigStrength_ValStatInvalid = -2,
    uhSigStrength_ValStatUnknown = -1,
    uhSigStrength_ValStatKnown    = 1
} uhSigStrength_ValStat_t, *puhSigStrength_ValStat_t;
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This type represents the validity status of the related property/properties.

Values

Table 710

| Name                                      | Description                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhSigStrength_ValStatInvalid</code> | The signal strength property is temporarily not available.              |
| <code>uhSigStrength_ValStatUnknown</code> | The signal strength property is available, yet could not be determined. |
| <code>uhSigStrength_ValStatKnown</code>   | The signal strength property is available and determined.               |

8.1.11.3 Logical Component

8.1.11.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 74 depicts the interface-role model of the `SignalStrength` logical component. It shows the control and notification interfaces and the roles involved with this logical component.

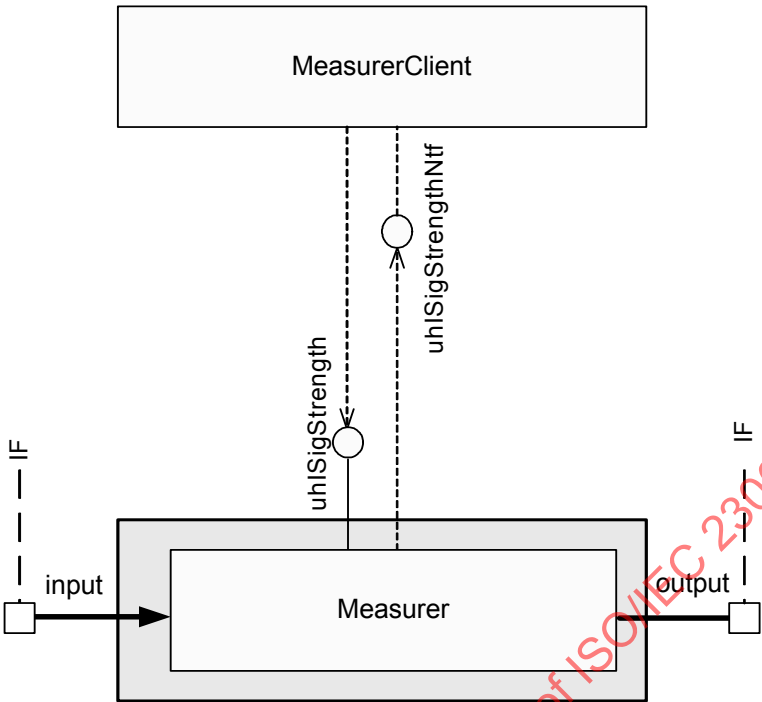


Figure 74 — Interface-Role Model

The grey box in Figure 74 denotes a `SigStrength` logical component containing the `Measurer` role providing one mandatory (solid line) control interface to the clients.

Clients can optionally provide a notification interface allowing them to receive notifications of events in the `Measurer`.

8.1.11.3.2 Diversity

8.1.11.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 711

| Role           | Interface         | Presence  |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------|
| Measurer       | uhISigStrength    | mandatory |
| MeasurerClient | uhISigStrengthNtf | optional  |

8.1.11.3.2.2 Configurable Items

The following table contains a list of role attributes that can be given a value upon creation of the logical component. For a description of the attributes see 7.2.1.4 Roles, and for how they are initialized see subclause 8.1.11.3.3.

Table 712

| Role     | Attribute      |
|----------|----------------|
| Measurer | minSigStrength |
| Measurer | maxSigStrength |

8.1.11.3.2.3 Constraints

See the Invariants of the `Measurer` (subclause 8.1.11.4.1) role.

8.1.11.3.3 Instantiation

8.1.11.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 713

| Type                  | Object            | Multiplicity |
|-----------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| <code>Measurer</code> | <code>meas</code> | 1            |

8.1.11.3.3.2 Initial State

```
meas.currentSigStrengthStatus == uhSigStrength_ValStatUnknown
meas.currentSigStrength == meas.minSigStrength
meas.measOngoing == False
```

8.1.11.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

8.1.11.4 Roles

8.1.11.4.1 Measurer

Signature

```
role Measurer {
    const UInt32 minSigStrength;
    const UInt32 maxSigStrength;
    uhSigStrength_ValStat_t currentSigStrengthStatus;
    UInt32 currentSigStrength;
    Bool measOngoing;
}
```

Qualifiers

— root

Description

A `Measurer` controls the signal strength attributes.

**Independent Attributes****Table 714**

| <b>Name</b>                           | <b>Description</b>                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>minSigStrength</code>           | The minimum signal strength.                                                               |
| <code>maxSigStrength</code>           | The maximum signal strength.                                                               |
| <code>currentSigStrengthStatus</code> | The validity status of the signal strength.                                                |
| <code>currentSigStrength</code>       | The current value of the signal strength.                                                  |
| <code>measOngoing</code>              | Indicates if a measurement is ongoing ( <code>True</code> ) or not ( <code>False</code> ). |

**Invariants**

`minSigStrength <= currentSigStrength <= maxSigStrength`

**Instantiation**

A `Measurer` role is always instantiated as part of a `SigStrength` logical component; see subclause 8.1.11.3.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

The `Measurer` role can distort output signal by doing measurement.

**Active Behavior**

The `Measurer` has standard notification behavior (see `uhISigStrengthNtf`).

**8.1.11.4.2 MeasurerClient****Signature**

**role** `MeasurerClient` {}

**Qualifiers**

— actor

**Description**

A `MeasurerClient` role represents a user of the control interfaces offered by the `Measurer` role. It can optionally provide the notification interfaces to receive notifications of events generated by the `Measurer` role. No constraints apply to the behavior of the `MeasurerClient` role other than those implied by Figure 74.

**8.1.11.5 Interfaces****8.1.11.5.1 uhISigStrength****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of a `Measurer` role provides control over signal strength measurement process.

**Interface ID**

uuid( 1ACB1CF4-BE6F-4645-83BA-849DC485571D )

**Remarks**

— In the following function specifications the name `meas` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface.

**8.1.11.5.1.1 Subscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhISigStrengthNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhSigStrength_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**8.1.11.5.1.2 Unsubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhISigStrengthNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhSigStrength_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

**8.1.11.5.1.3 GetSigStrengthRange****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSigStrengthRange (
    [out] pUInt32 pMinStrength,
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxStrength );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the minimum and maximum signal strength. The value of the minimum and maximum signal strength denotes a logical number, where the minimum represents the weakest and the maximum represents the strongest signal strength.

**Parameters****Table 715**

| Name                      | Description                                             |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pMinStrength</code> | Output parameter returning the minimum signal strength. |
| <code>pMaxStrength</code> | Output parameter returning the maximum signal strength. |



**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pMinStrength == meas.minSigStrength
- \*pMaxStrength == meas.maxSigStrength

**8.1.11.5.1.4 Measure****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Measure ( );
```

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Starts the measurement of the signal strength. When the measurement is ready, this is notified to the client. When this function is called again before the previous measurement is finished, the second call has no effect. If signal is too weak to be measured, then `meas.minSigStrength` is returned. If signal is too strong to be measured, then `meas.maxSigStrength` is returned.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- If (`meas.measOngoing == False`)
  - Modify `meas.measOngoing`

**Postcondition**

- `meas.currentSigStrengthStatus == uhSigStrength_ValStatUnknown`
- `meas.measOngoing == True`

#### Asynchronous Action

- Modify meas.measOngoing
- Modify meas.currentSigStrengthStatus
- Modify meas.currentSigStrength
- Notify OnMeasReady

#### Asynchronous Postcondition

- meas.measOngoing == False
- meas.currentSigStrengthStatus != uhSigStrength\_ValStatUnknown
- meas.currentSigStrength == newly measured signal strength or meas.minSigStrength or meas.maxSigStrength

#### 8.1.11.5.1.5 Abort

##### Signature

uhErrorCode\_t Abort ( );

##### Qualifiers

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

##### Description

Aborts an ongoing signal strength measurement.

##### Parameters

None.

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

True

##### Action

- If (meas.measOngoing == True)
  - stop the measurement

##### Postcondition

True

#### Asynchronous Action

- Modify meas.measOngoing
- Modify meas.currentSigStrengthStatus
- Modify meas.currentSigStrength
- Notify OnMeasAborted

#### Asynchronous Postcondition

- meas.measOngoing == False

```

— meas.currentSigStrengthStatus != uhSigStrength_ValStatKnown
— meas.currentSigStrength == meas.minSigStrength

```

#### 8.1.11.5.1.6 GetSigStrength

##### Signature

```

uhErrorCode_t GetSigStrength (
    [out] pBool pMeasOngoing,
    [out] puhSigStrength_ValStat_t pStatus,
    [out] pUInt32 pSigStrength );

```

##### Qualifiers

```

— synchronous

— thread-safe

```

##### Description

Function returning the current signal strength including its validity status and if the measurement is ongoing or not. For example, when a measurement is ongoing the value of returned signal strength will not be reliable. The returned signal strength is a logical value that lies between the minimum and maximum signal strength. The higher the value of the returned signal strength the stronger the incoming signal is.

##### Parameters

Table 716

| Name         | Description                                                                        |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMeasOngoing | Output parameter indicating if measurement is still ongoing (True) or not (False). |
| pStatus      | Output parameter returning the validity status of the signal strength.             |
| pSigStrength | Output parameter returning the current signal strength.                            |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

##### Postcondition

```

— *pMeasOngoing == meas.measOngoing
— *pStatus       == meas.currentSigStrengthStatus
— *pSigStrength  == meas.currentSigStrength

```

8.1.11.5.2 uhISigStrengthNtf

Qualifiers

— callback

Description

This interface can be provided by an instance of the `MeasurerClient` role that wants to receive notifications of events that occur in the `Measurer`. The `Subscribe` function of the `uhISigStrength` interface can be used to subscribe to these events.

Interface ID

uuid( 9FA9E45D-81C1-4da8-AB42-938AAE39462D )

8.1.11.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhSigStrength_Notifications_t notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

8.1.11.5.2.2 OnMeasReady

Signature

```
[async] Void OnMeasReady (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhSigStrength_ValStat_t status,
    [in] UInt32 sigStrength );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

Notifies that a measurement is ready, and provides the measured signal strength including its validity status.

Parameters

Table 717

| Name        | Description                                                                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie      | The value that was passed by an instance of the <code>MeasurerClient</code> role at subscription time. |
| status      | The validity status of the notified signal strength.                                                   |
| sigStrength | The signal strength.                                                                                   |

Return Values

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.11.5.2.3 OnMeasAborted**

**Signature**

**[async]** Void OnMeasAborted ( [in] UInt32 cookie );

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Notifies that the ongoing measurement is aborted.

**Parameters**

**Table 718**

| Name   | Description                                                                                            |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by an instance of the <code>MeasurerClient</code> role at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.12 hIStcDec**

**8.1.12.1 Concepts**

**8.1.12.1.1 Introduction**

This document describes the API of the STC Decoder logical component. A STC Decoder is associated with a de-multiplexer present in the system.

The STC decoder can operate in one of two modes: push or pull. In both modes, the STC decoder maintains the STC clock.

In push mode, the frequency and actual values of STC clock are locked to the incoming PCR values. The push mode is used for instance when the transport stream is received by a tuner.

In pull mode, the frequency is determined by the platform<sup>16</sup>, and the actual values are linked to the PTS values of either the video or audio elementary stream. The pull mode is for instance often used when the client injects a Single Program Transport Stream (which it for example read from a hard disk) into the platform for playback.

Whether the STC decoder operates in push or pull mode depends on the context in which it is used (it should be evident from the context whether the STC decoder will operate in push or pull mode). The STC decoder does not provide control to enable push or pull mode.

The STC decoder also provides functions to set alarms.

#### 8.1.12.1.2 STC Decoder

A digital MPEG stream contains different components that are decoded separately. Typical components are:

- video
- audio
- DVB subtitling
- closed captioning
- Teletext
- other private data streams

In general, presentation of this data should be synchronized. To achieve this, MPEG PES packets contain time references. In general, two time references are used:

- a) Decoding Time Stamp (DTS), which defines the moment that decoding of the encoded data of the PES packet should be started.
- b) Presentation Time Stamp (PTS), which defines the moment that the decoded data of the PES packet should be presented.

The time base is equal for all components that make up a program. Data containing the same PTS value must be presented at the same time. Therefore, a System Time Clock (STC) is associated with the MPEG stream, which provides this time base.

In push mode, the STC is a 27 MHz clock that has to be recovered from the Program Clock References (PCR) that, at a regular basis, have been put in the stream by the network operator (where a PCR is just a sample of a 27 MHz clock), see Figure 75. The STC Decoder (STCD) maintains the STC clock, the frequency and actual values of which are locked to the incoming PCR values<sup>17</sup>. Though the STC is a 27 MHz clock, time values that are used in the control interface of STCD are 90 kHz values, 33-bit wide, as a resolution of 27 MHz is too fine grained to communicate to a middleware stack (see also Figure 75).

---

<sup>16</sup> Although the platform determines the frequency of the STC clock, the frequency will be (within certain bounds) 27MHz.

<sup>17</sup> The frequency of PCR is not exactly 27MHz. It may vary within certain bounds. Therefore, the actual speed of the STC is derived from the PCRs

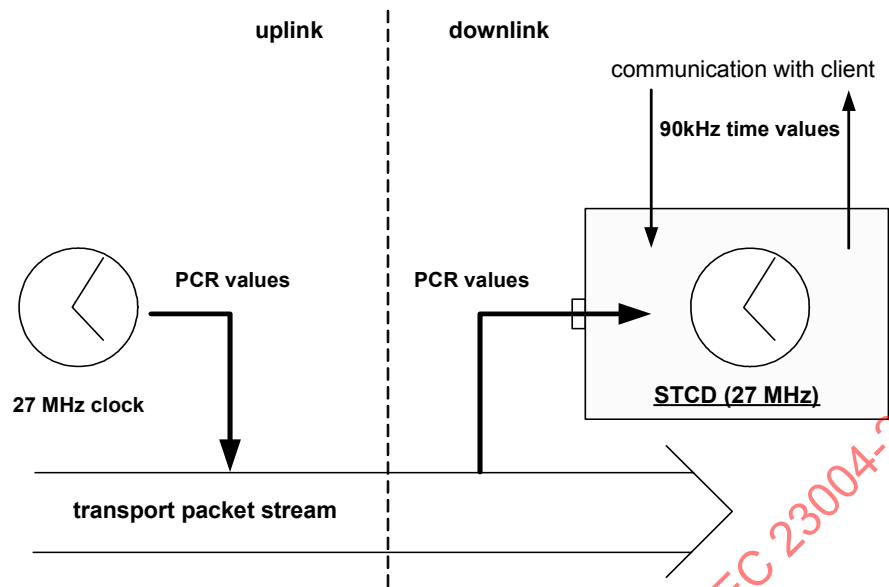


Figure 75 — General model of STC synchronization (in case of push mode).

In pull mode, the STC is a 27MHz autonomously running clock (when playing at normal speed) whose values in time are linked to the PTS values of the video or audio elementary stream (i.e., when a frame with a particular PTS is rendered, the STC value will match the PTS<sup>18</sup>). The STC decoder ignores the PCR values in pull mode.

In pull mode, certain trick modes are possible. Which trick modes are possible depends upon the context in which the STC decoder is used. For instance, the ATSC decoder 7.1.2, which uses this STC decoder specification, offers a number of trick modes. Table 719 shows the relation between the trick modes and the STC decoder.

Table 719 — Relation between trick modes and the STC decoder.

| Trick mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Relation with STC decoder                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Playback with a different speed (either slower or faster than normal playback)                                                                                                                                             | The STC clock is slowed down or sped up accordingly. For instance, when playing back at ½ speed, the STC runs at ½ speed (i.e., 13.5MHz).             |
| Pause                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | The STC clock is paused as well (on the presentation time of the paused frame).                                                                       |
| Decoding of one I-frame at a time.                                                                                                                                                                                         | The STC clock is not maintained (its value is invalid), as maintaining it does not make sense (STC is not used to determine when to present a frame). |
| Decoding of only the I-frames in a stream, where the frames are rendered without regard to the PTS values (but as soon as possible) and where the input stream may leave out frames that do not need to be decoded.        | The STC clock is not maintained (its value is invalid), as maintaining it does not make sense (STC is not used to determine when to present a frame). |
| Decoding of only the I- and P-frames in a stream, where the frames are rendered without regard to the PTS values (but as soon as possible) and where the input stream may leave out frames that do not need to be decoded. | The STC clock is not maintained (its value is invalid), as maintaining it does not make sense (STC is not used to determine when to present a frame). |

18 In case of a unannounced discontinuity this may be different, as explained in subclause 8.1.12.1.3.

## 8.1.12.1.3 Irregularities

Normally, the difference between subsequently received PCR or PTS values corresponds to the elapsed time between their respective receptions. Sometimes, this may not be the case. If the deviation of a received PCR or PTS value from the expected value is not within certain bounds, that PCR or PTS is regarded as the start of a new time base. This is called a *discontinuity*. We distinguish two kinds of discontinuity: announced and unannounced discontinuities. The former are intended discontinuities; there is an indication in the stream that a discontinuity is about to occur. The latter are not predicted and could be the result of some error. In case of an announced discontinuity, the STC will “jump” to the new PCR or PTS value. Its frequency remains the same until the next PCR or PTS is received and a reliable derivation of the actual frequency can be made again. If there is an unannounced discontinuity, the STC becomes *unlocked*, meaning that the coupling of STC and PCRs or PTSs is lost. The STC clock becomes free running in that state. When a number of PCRs or PTSs have been received that are within bounds, the STC will become *locked* again. See Figure 76 (In this example, the number of well-behaved PCRs or PTSs that have to be received to become locked again is 3). Another way of becoming unlocked is when PCRs or PTSs are late. Within 100 ms of the reception of the last PCR or within 700 ms of the reception of the last PTS, a new one must arrive. As with unannounced discontinuities the STC becomes locked again when a number of well-behaved PCRs or PTSs have been received.

NOTE The STC can make jumps that are the start of a new time base when an announced discontinuity occurs or when it becomes locked after having been unlocked for a while.

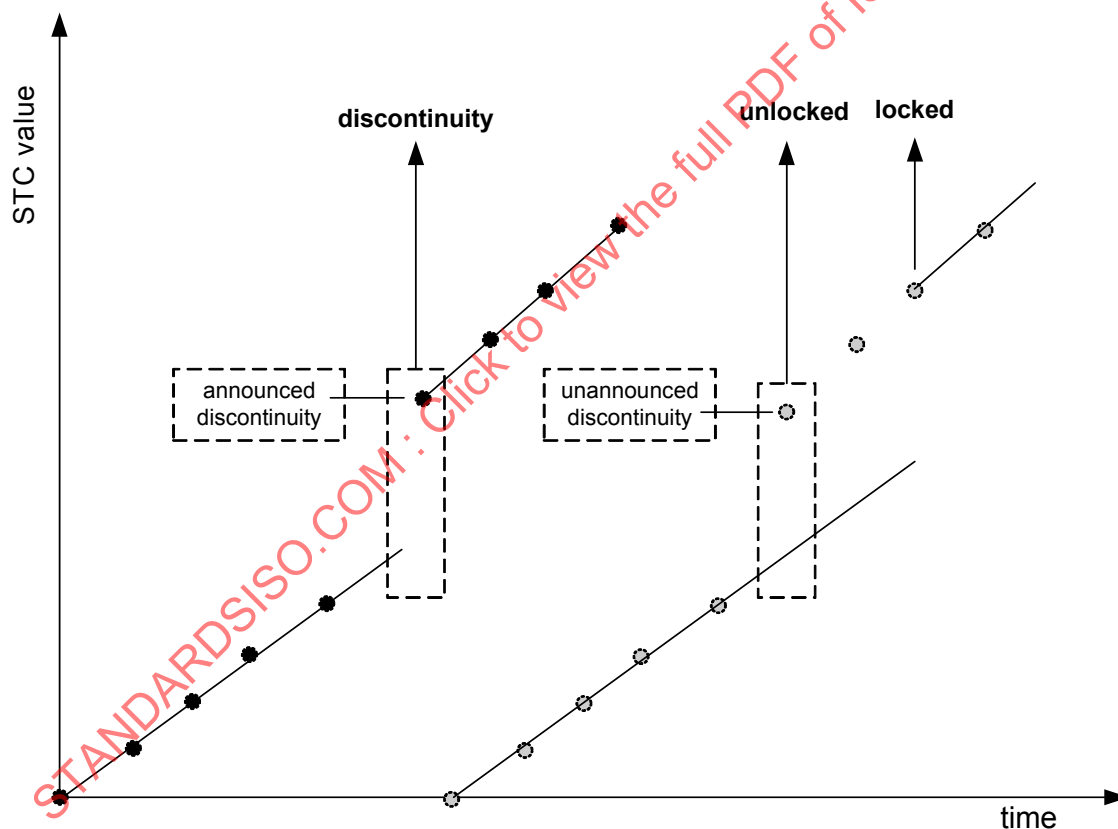


Figure 76 — STC behavior in case of discontinuities.



## 8.1.12.2 Types & Constants

### 8.1.12.2.1 Public Types & Constants

#### 8.1.12.2.1.1 Error Codes

##### Signature

```
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_STCDEC_ALARM_NOT_AVAILABLE = 0x00000001;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_STCDEC_ALARM_IN_PAST      = 0x00000002;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_STCDEC_ALARM_EXPIRED      = 0x00000003;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_STCDEC_NOT_LOCKED         = 0x00000004;
```

##### Qualifiers

— error-codes

##### Description

Defines all the non-standard error codes, returned by the functions of the interface(s) of a STC decoder.

##### Constants

Table 720

##### Name

UH\_ERR\_STCDEC\_ALARM\_NOT\_AVAILABLE  
UH\_ERR\_STCDEC\_ALARM\_IN\_PAST  
UH\_ERR\_STCDEC\_ALARM\_EXPIRED  
UH\_ERR\_STCDEC\_NOT\_LOCKED

##### Description

Alarm is not available.  
The alarm time is in the past.  
The alarm has expired.  
The STC decoder is not locked

#### 8.1.12.2.1.2 uhStcDec\_Notification\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhStcDec_Notification_t {
    uhStcDec_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhStcDec_Locked              = 0x00000002,
    uhStcDec_Unlocked            = 0x00000004,
    uhStcDec_Discontinuity       = 0x00000008,
    uhStcDec_Invalid             = 0x00000010
} uhStcDec_Notification_t, *puhStcDec_Notification_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

##### Description

Values of this type represents notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIStcDecNtf`. These values can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

## Values

Table 721

| Name                         | Description                       |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhStcDec_SubscriptionChanged | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged. |
| uhStcDec_Locked              | Represents OnLocked               |
| uhStcDec_Unlocked            | Represents OnUnlocked.            |
| uhStcDec_Discontinuity       | Represents OnDiscontinuity        |
| uhStcDec_Invalid             | Represents OnInvalid              |

## 8.1.12.2.1.3 uhStcDec\_Notifications\_t

## Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhStcDec_Notifications_t, *puhStcDec_Notifications_t;
```

## Qualifiers

— enum-set

## Description

Values of this type represents sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type uhStcDec\_Notification\_t. These values are used in the Subscribe and Unsubscribe functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

## 8.1.12.2.1.4 uhStcDec\_AllNotifications

## Signature

```
const uhStcDec_Notifications_t uhStcDec_AllNotifications = 0x0000001F;
```

## Qualifiers

none.

## Description

Defines the set of all values of type uhStcDec\_Notification\_t. This constant can be used in calls of the Subscribe and Unsubscribe functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

## 8.1.12.2.1.5 uhStcDec\_AlarmNotification\_t

## Signature

```
typedef enum uhStcDec_AlarmNotification_t {
    uhStcDec_AlarmSubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhStcDec_AlarmExpired              = 0x00000002,
    uhStcDec_AlarmCancelled            = 0x00000004
} uhStcDec_AlarmNotification_t, *puhStcDec_AlarmNotification_t;
```

## Qualifiers

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represents notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIStcDecAlarmNtf`. These values can be used to individually turn on and off notifications..

**Values****Table 722**

| <b>Name</b>                                    | <b>Description</b>                              |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhStcDec_AlarmSubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> . |
| <code>uhStcDec_AlarmExpired</code>             | Represents <code>OnExpired</code> .             |
| <code>uhStcDec_AlarmCancelled</code>           | Represents <code>OnCancelled</code> .           |

**8.1.12.2.1.6    `uhStcDec_AlarmNotifications_t`****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhStcDec_AlarmNotifications_t, *puhStcDec_AlarmNotifications_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represents sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhStcDec_AlarmNotification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**8.1.12.2.1.7    `uhStcDec_AlarmAllNotifications`****Signature**

```
const uhStcDec_AlarmNotifications_t uhStcDec_AlarmAllNotifications = 0x00000007;
```

**Qualifiers**

none.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhStcDec_AlarmNotification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

## 8.1.12.2.1.8 uhStcDec\_ValStat\_t

**Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhStcDec_ValStat_t {
    uhStcDec_ValStatInvalid = -2,
    uhStcDec_ValStatKnown   = 1
} uhStcDec_ValStat_t, *puhStcDec_ValStat_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This type represents the validity status of the related property/properties.

**Values**

Table 723

| Name                    | Description                                            |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| uhStcDec_ValStatInvalid | The property/properties are temporarily not available. |
| uhStcDec_ValStatKnown   | The property/properties are available and determined.  |

## 8.1.12.2.2 Model Types &amp; Constants

## 8.1.12.2.2.1 AlarmState\_t

**Signature**

```
typedef enum {
    AlarmInactive,
    AlarmActive,
    AlarmCancelRequested
} AlarmState_t, *pAlarmState_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The AlarmState\_t type represents the state of the alarm.

Table 724

| Name                 | Description                               |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| AlarmInactive        | Alarm has been created, but not active.   |
| AlarmActive          | Alarm is currently active.                |
| AlarmCancelRequested | A cancel has been requested on the alarm. |

8.1.12.2.2 LockStatus\_t

**Signature**

```
typedef enum {
    Invalid,
    Unlocked,
    Locked
} LockStatus_t, *pLockStatus_t;
```

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This type represents the lock status of the STC.

**Values**

Table 725

| Name     | Description                                              |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Invalid  | The lock status of the STC is temporarily not available. |
| Unlocked | The STC is unlocked.                                     |
| Locked   | The STC is locked.                                       |

8.1.12.3 Logical Component

8.1.12.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 77 defines the interface-role model of STCD. It shows the interfaces, role and input used in the specification of STCD.

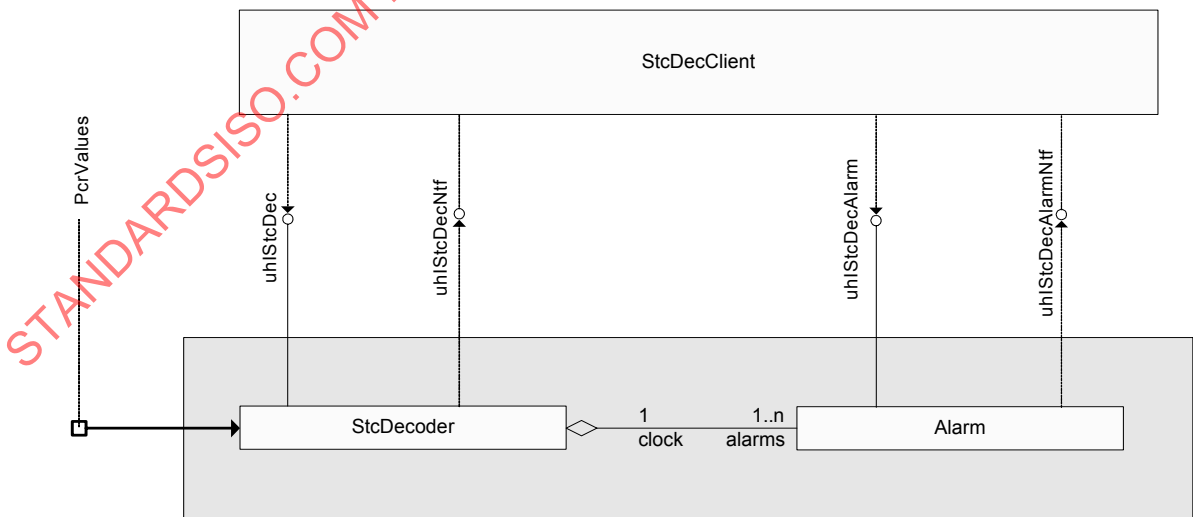


Figure 77 — Interface-Role Model of STC Decoder

8.1.12.3.2 Diversity

8.1.12.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 726

| Role         | Interface         | Presence  |
|--------------|-------------------|-----------|
| StcDecoder   | uhIStcDec         | Mandatory |
| Alarm        | uhIStcDecAlarm    | Mandatory |
| StcDecClient | uhIStcDecNtf      | Optional  |
|              | uhIStcDecAlarmNtf | Optional  |

8.1.12.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 727

| Role       | Attribute   |
|------------|-------------|
| StcDecoder | maxNrAlarms |

8.1.12.3.2.3 Constraints

— maxNrAlarms ≥ 0

8.1.12.3.3 Instantiation

8.1.12.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 728

| Type        | Object     | Multiplicity           |
|-------------|------------|------------------------|
| StcDec      | stcDecoder | 1                      |
| StcDecAlarm | alarm[]    | stcDecoder.maxNrAlarms |

8.1.12.3.3.2 Initial State

The STC Decoder is created by the Demux instance.

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- stcDecoder.nrAlarms == 0
- stcDecoder.lockStatus == Invalid
- stcDecoder.discontinuityStatus == uhStcDec\_ValStatInvalid
- stcDecoder.currentValue == <platform specific>
- stcDecoder.currentValueStatus == uhStcDec\_ValStatInvalid
- For each i in {0 .. stcDecoder.maxNrAlarms-1}
  - alarm[i].alarmState == AlarmInActive.

#### 8.1.12.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

#### 8.1.12.4 Roles

##### 8.1.12.4.1 StcDecoder

##### Signature

```
role StcDecoder {
    const UInt32      maxNrAlarms;
    UInt32            nrAlarms;
    setof(Alarm)      alarm;
    uhStcDec_ValStat_t currentValueStatus;
    uhTimeStamp_t     currentValue;
    LockStatus_t      lockStatus;
    uhStcDec_ValStat_t discontinuityStatus;
}
```

##### Qualifiers

— root

##### Description

An STC Decoder provides the following functionality:

- Synchronization of the STC with the incoming PCR or PTS values.
- Facilities for monitoring the STC.
- Detection and notification of irregularities in the incoming PCR or PTS values.

##### Independent Attributes

Table 729

| Name                | Description                                                                                                               |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| maxNrAlarms         | The maximum number of supported alarms.                                                                                   |
| alarm               | The set of all alarms.                                                                                                    |
| currentValueStatus  | The validity status of the STC value.                                                                                     |
| currentValue        | The current value of the STC. Maintains a 33 bit time counter running at ~90KHz frequency based on incoming PCRs or PTSS. |
| lockStatus          | The lock status of the STC.                                                                                               |
| discontinuityStatus | The validity status of the STC discontinuity status.                                                                      |

##### Dependent Attributes

Table 730

| Name     | Description                     |
|----------|---------------------------------|
| nrAlarms | The number of allocated alarms. |

**Invariants**

```
nrAlarms <= maxNrAlarms
```

**Streaming Behavior**

The STCD receives PCR or PTS values, with which it recovers the STC (currentValue). With each incoming PCR or PTS, the desired frequency for the STC is calculated. Ideally,  $PCR_t$  or  $PTS_t == STC_t$  should hold, where  $PCR_t$  is the PCR received at time  $t$ ,  $PTS_t$  is the PTS received at time  $t$  and  $STC_t$  is the value of the STC at time  $t$ . It is guaranteed that  $|PCR_t \text{ or } PTS_t - STC_t| \leq \delta$  for some  $\delta$ . In case of an announced discontinuity ( $|PCR_t \text{ or } PTS_t - STC_t| > \delta$ ), the STC jumps to  $PCR_t$  or  $PTS_t$ . When an unannounced discontinuity is detected or 100ms have passed since the reception of the last PCR or 700 ms since the reception of the last PTS<sup>19</sup>, the STC becomes unlocked (`lockStatus == Unlocked`). In that state, no guarantees are made on the value of the STC. When sufficient (sufficient is platform instance specific) PCRs or PTSs that arrived in time and did not show any unannounced discontinuities have been received, the STC becomes locked again (`lockStatus == Locked`).

**Active Behavior**

The StcDecoder has standard notification behavior; see `uhIStcDecNtf` for the events that can be notified

**8.1.12.4.2 StcDecClient****Signature**

```
role StcDecClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

— actor

**Description**

A STC Decoder Client represents a user of the `uhIStcDec` and `uhIStcDecAlarm` interface.

**8.1.12.4.3 Alarm****Signature**

```
role Alarm {
    uhTimeStamp_t minExpireTime;
    uhTimeStamp_t maxExpireTime;
    AlarmState_t alarmState;
}
```

**Qualifiers**

— None.

**Description**

The client can set a STC alarm time window and by this activating an alarm. When the STC is in this time window, the client will be notified. The alarm can still be cancelled until the alarm expired notification occurs. When the STC becomes unlocked, the alarms are still active and expire based on a free running clock. If the client wants, he may cancel the alarms on receiving the unlocked notification.

---

<sup>19</sup> The 700ms time period is adapted according to the actual playback speed. For example, when playing at half speed, the 700ms becomes 1400ms.



**Independent Attributes****Table 731**

| <b>Name</b>                | <b>Description</b>                                     |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>minExpireTime</code> | The minimum value of STC when the alarm should expire  |
| <code>expireTime</code>    | The maximum value of STC when the alarm should expire. |
| <code>alarmState</code>    | The state the alarm is in.                             |

**Instantiation**

An alarm is created when the client makes a successful call to `AllocateAlarm`.

**Streaming Behavior**

None.

**Active Behavior**

The Alarm has standard notification behavior; see `uhIStcDecAlarmNtf` for the events that can be notified

**Remarks on Cancellation**

As the cancellation of alarms is asynchronous, the client registers for the cancellation of the alarm by calling `CancelAlarm` of interface `uhIStcDecAlarm`. The actual cancellation will be notified by an `OnCancelled` notification by the STCD

Noteworthy transitions are:

- If the alarm expires in the `AlarmCancelRequested` state, the client will be notified of the cancellation and not of the expiration.
- If `CancelAlarm()` is called in state `AlarmCancelRequested` leaves the state unchanged and does not produce an error message.

**Remarks on Expiration**

Due to discontinuities, the STC does not behave like an ideal continuous clock. It can become unlocked and locked repeatedly, and can make jumps (back and forth). This has an impact on the behavior of alarms. In Figure 78 an erratic STC is shown and the effect of its behavior on three alarms: A, B and C. Alarm A expires at the "expected" time. Alarm B expires earlier and Alarm C expires much later than would be expected. Theoretically an alarm could never expire, because the STC keeps jumping back before it reaches the expire time. Via the `OnDiscontinuity` and `OnLocked` events the client can be warned of erratic STC behavior and can chose to cancel the alarms.

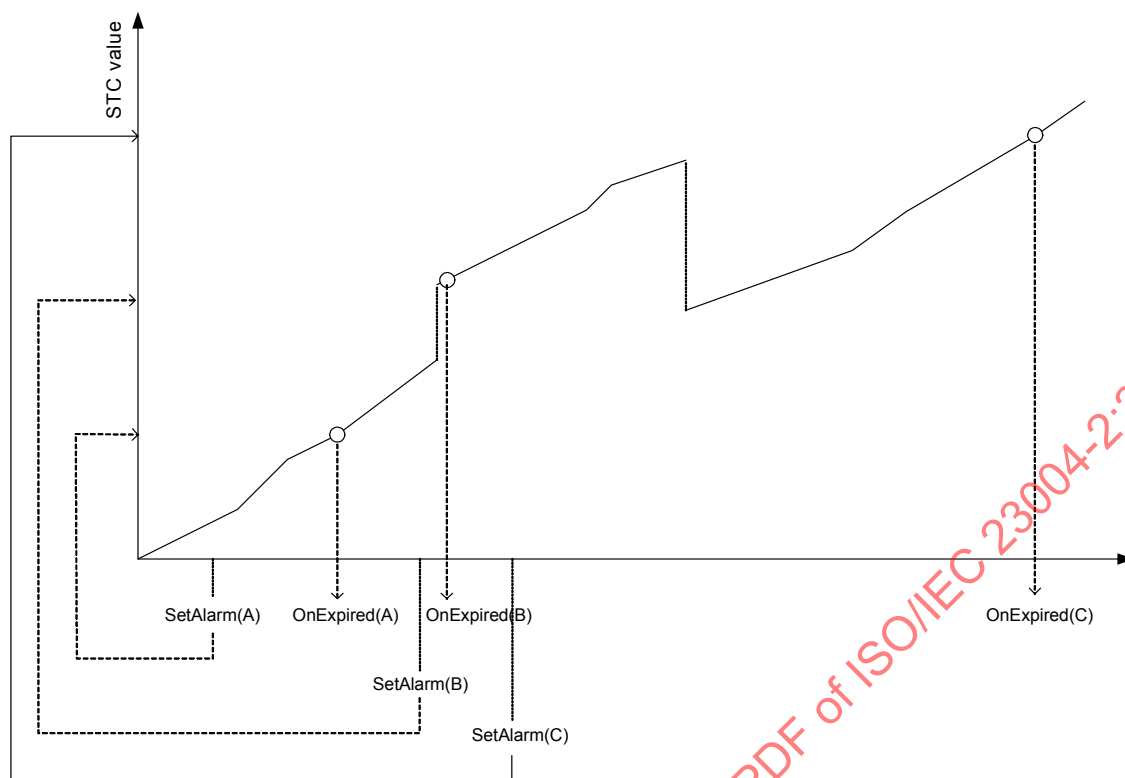


Figure 78 — Behavior of alarms in the presence of discontinuities.

#### 8.1.12.5 Interfaces

##### 8.1.12.5.1 uhlStcDec

#### Qualifiers

None

#### Description

This interface of an STCD provides means to monitor the STC.

#### Interface ID

uuid( 3CEC6780-85DC-4d60-AF8F-6C55FC298E91 )

**8.1.12.5.1.1 Subscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhIStcDecNtf          *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                cookie,
    [in] uhStcDec_Notifications_t notifs
);
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**8.1.12.5.1.2 Unsubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhIStcDecNtf          *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                cookie,
    [in] uhStcDec_Notifications_t notifs
);
```

**Qualifiers**

unsubscribe-function

**8.1.12.5.1.3 GetTime****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetTime (
    [out] puhStcDec_ValStat_t pStatus,
    [out] puhTimeStamp_t     pValue
);
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— threaded-safe

**Description**

The current value of the STC is returned. The clock is a 33 bit value running at 90KHz, based on the incoming PCRs or PTSS.

**Parameters****Table 732**

| Name    | Description                                                  |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStatus | Output parameter returning the validity status of the clock. |
| pValue  | Output parameter returning the current value of the clock.   |

**Return Values**

Only non-standard return values are listed

Table 733

| Value                    | Description            |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| uh_ERR_STCDEC_NOT_LOCKED | The STC is not locked. |

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None

**Postcondition**— *\*pStatus* == stcDecoder.currentValueStatus— *\*pValue* == stcDecoder.currentValue**Remarks**

— If STC decoder is not locked, then the current free running value will be returned. The return value just provides a warning that this clock value may be unreliable.

**8.1.12.5.1.4 GetMaxNrAlarms****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMaxNrAlarms (
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxNrAlarms
);
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the maximum number of alarms that can be allocated.

**Parameters**

Table 734

| Name         | Description                                              |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| pMaxNrAlarms | Output parameter returning the maximum number of alarms. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None

**Postcondition**

— `*pMaxNrAlarms == stcDecoder.maxNrAlarms`

**8.1.12.5.1.5 GetAvailableNrAlarms****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetAvailableNrAlarms (
    [out] pUInt32 pAvailableNrAlarms
);
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the available number of alarms that can be allocated.

**Parameters****Table 735**

| Name                            | Description                                                |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pAvailableNrAlarms</code> | Output parameter returning the available number of alarms. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None

**Postcondition**

— `*pAvailableNrAlarms == stcDecoder.maxNrAlarms - stcDecoder.nrAlarms.`

**8.1.12.5.1.6 AllocateAlarm****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t AllocateAlarm (
    [out] uhIStcDecAlarm **ppIAlarm
);
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Allocates one of the available alarms and returns a pointer to the `uhIStcDecAlarm` interface of the allocated alarm.

**Parameters****Table 736**

| Name                  | Description                                                                                               |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>ppIAlarm</code> | Output parameter returning a pointer to the interface <code>uhIStcDecAlarm</code> of the allocated alarm. |

**Return Values**

Only non-standard return values are listed

**Table 737**

| Value                                          | Description                       |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <code>uh_ERR_STCDEC_ALARM_NOT_AVAILABLE</code> | Maximum number of alarms reached. |

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- If `stcDecoder.nrAlarms < stcDecoder.maxNrAlarms`
- **Modify** `stcDecoder.nrAlarms`

**Postcondition**

- If `stcDecoder.nrAlarms < stcDecoder.maxNrAlarms`
- `*ppIAlarm` contains a pointer to the `uhIStcDecAlarm` interface of the allocated alarm.
- alarm belongs to the set of alarms associated with the `stcDecoder`.
- `stcDecoder.nrAlarms = stcDecoder.nrAlarms + 1`.
- `alarm.alarmState = AlarmInactive`.

**Remarks**

The `StcDecoder.nrAlarms` shall be decremented when the Alarm interface is released.

**8.1.12.5.2 uhIStcDecAlarm****Qualifiers**

None

**Description**

This interface of an STC Decoder provides means to setting, cancelling and monitoring alarms (getting its current value, setting and cancelling alarms).

**Interface ID**

`uuid( 6838E328-C304-427c-A2F4-7077AE50A129 )`

**8.1.12.5.2.1 Subscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhIStcDecAlarmNtf          *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                     cookie,
    [in] uhStcDec_AlarmNotifications_t notifs
);
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**8.1.12.5.2.2 Unsubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhIStcDecAlarmNtf          *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                     cookie,
    [in] uhStcDec_AlarmNotifications_t notifs
);
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

**8.1.12.5.2.3 ActivateAlarm****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t ActivateAlarm (
    [in] uhTimeStamp_t minValue,
    [in] uhTimeStamp_t maxValue,
    [in] Bool absolute
);
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

Sets an alarm on a specified STC time window and activates it. If the specified minimum value has been reached or passed by the STC but is less than the maximum value, the function `OnExpired` on the corresponding notification interface is invoked by the Alarm.

The value of timestamp identifies a 33-bit value representing the STC in 90 kHz. Time stamps have a notion of past and future. The maximum value of the time stamp is  $2^{33}-1$ . When the time stamp value indicates now, then the window

$[ \text{now} + 1, (\text{now} + \text{max}/2) \bmod (\text{max} + 1) )$

is in the future, and

[ (now + max/2) mod (max + 1), now)  
is in the past (see Figure 79).

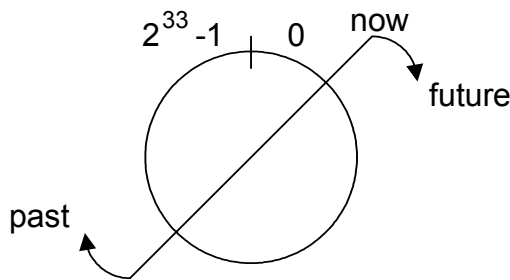


Figure 79 — The notion of past and future for time stamps.

Parameters

Table 738

| Name     | Description                                                                                                                           |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| minValue | The STC minimum value at which the alarm should expire.                                                                               |
| maxValue | The STC maximum value at which the alarm should expire.                                                                               |
| absolute | When True, the alarm is considered always to be in the future and the concept of past is ignored (resulting in an “extended future”). |

Return Values

Only non standard return values are listed

Table 739

| Value                    | Description            |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| uh_ERR_STCDEC_NOT_LOCKED | The STC is not locked. |

Precondition

— Alarm.alarmState in { AlarmInactive }

Action

- Alarm.minExpireTime = MinValue
- Alarm.maxExpireTime = MaxValue

Postcondition

- Alarm.expireTime == value
- Alarm.alarmState == AlarmActive

Remarks

- The client must subscribe to the OnExpired notification.
- If the alarm is already active, ie., alarm.alarmState == AlarmActive, then the new value replaces the existing expireTime



#### 8.1.12.5.2.4 CancelAlarm

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t CancelAlarm (
);
```

##### Qualifiers

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

##### Description

Cancels an alarm set by the client.

##### Parameters

None

##### Return Values

Only non-standard return values are listed

Table 740

| Value                       | Description                |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| UH_ERR_STCDEC_ALARM_EXPIRED | Alarm has already expired. |

##### Precondition

- True

##### Action

- If alarm.alarmState == AlarmActive
  - modify alarm.alarmState

##### Postcondition

- If previous alarm.alarmState == AlarmActive
  - alarm.alarmState = AlarmCancelRequested

##### Asynchronous Action

- If alarm.alarmState == AlarmCancelRequested
  - alarm.alarmState = AlarmInactive
  - Notify OnCancelled.

##### Asynchronous PostCondition

- alarm.alarmState = AlarmInactive

#### 8.1.12.5.3 uhIStcDecNtf

##### Qualifiers

- callback

**Description**

This interface should be provided by each STC Decoder Client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events related to the STC decoder. The `Subscribe` function of `StcDecoder` can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( 420276B5-0E71-4efd-82B6-447157EFA113 )`

**8.1.12.5.3.1 OnSubscriptionChanged**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhStcDec_Notifications_t notifs
);
```

**Qualifiers**

— `onsubscriptionchanged`-function

**8.1.12.5.3.2 OnLocked**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnLocked (
    [in] UInt32 cookie
);
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called when the STC has become locked.

**Parameters**

**Table 741**

| Name                | Description                                                               |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the STC Decoder Client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

— `True`

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

— True

**8.1.12.5.3.3 OnUnlocked**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnUnlocked (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie  
);
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called when the STC has become unlocked.

**Parameters**

**Table 742**

| Name   | Description                                                               |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the STC Decoder Client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

— True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

— True

**8.1.12.5.3.4 OnInvalid**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnInvalid (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie  
);
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called when the lock status of the STC has become invalid.

Parameters

Table 743

| Name   | Description                                                               |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the STC Decoder Client at subscription time. |

Return Values  
None.

Precondition  
— True

Action  
— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition  
— True

8.1.12.5.3.5 OnDiscontinuity

Signature  
[**async**] Void OnDiscontinuity (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhStcDec\_ValStat\_t status  
);

Qualifiers  
None.

Description  
This function is called when an earlier announced discontinuity occurred.

Parameters

Table 744

| Name   | Description                                                               |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the STC Decoder Client at subscription time. |
| status | The validity status of the notified discontinuity status.                 |

Return Values  
None.

Precondition  
— True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

— True

**8.1.12.5.4 uhStcDecAlarmNtf****Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This interface should be provided by each SDC that wants to subscribe to notifications of events related to the Alarm.

**Interface ID**

uuid( EBC45552-C689-4208-845A-C1DCF0D1630C )

**8.1.12.5.4.1 OnSubscriptionChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhStcDec_AlarmNotifications_t notifs
);
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

**8.1.12.5.4.2 OnExpired****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnExpired (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] Bool lockState
);
```

**Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This function is called when the alarm has expired.

Parameters

Table 745

| Name      | Description                                                               |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie    | The value that was passed by the STC decoder Client at subscription time. |
| lockState | Current lock state of STC.                                                |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
— True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
— True

**Remarks**  
Note that alarms can expire quite unexpectedly; see Figure 78.

8.1.12.5.4.3 OnCancelled

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnCancelled (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie  
);

**Qualifiers**  
— callback

**Description**  
This function is called when the alarm has been cancelled.

Parameters

Table 746

| Name   | Description                                                               |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the STC decoder Client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
— True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
— True

**Remarks**  
None.

8.1.13 UhlTsDmx

8.1.13.1 Concepts

8.1.13.1.1 Introduction

This document describes the API of a demultiplexer for MPEG transport streams.

The function of a TS Demux is to filter specific content (e.g. PES packets, sections) from one transport stream (TS). The client can specify several criteria for filtering. The filtered data is routed to decoders or (client) middleware stacks. Several types of filters exist, each with their own filter criteria.

8.1.13.1.2 Demultiplexing

Stream and buffer

The TS Demux can have a number of Streams. A Stream models a stream of data. One buffer is being used per Stream for all data that is being filtered by the filters associated with this Stream. This buffer is not explicitly modelled. When the data is actually being routed to a client, the client has to manage the buffer explicitly.

TPH and PID Filter

A TPH Filter is a transport packet header filter that allows setting of filter criteria on some other fields than the PID. Figure 80 shows the structure of a transport packet header.

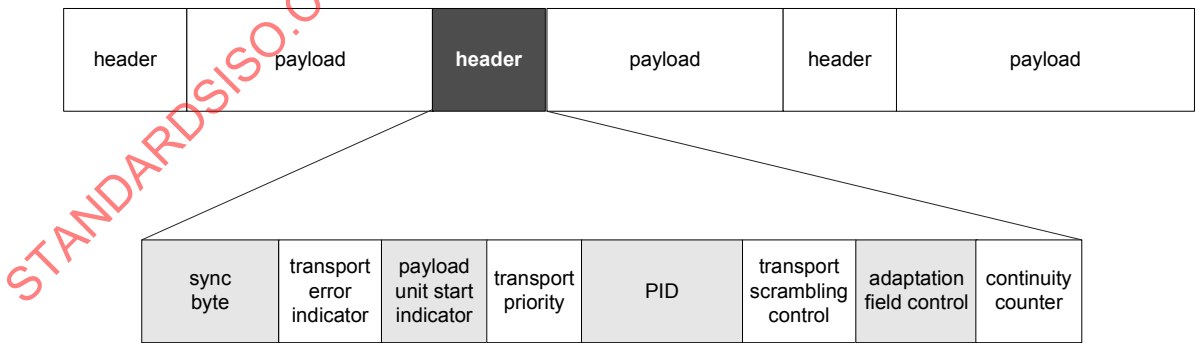


Figure 80 — Structure of a transport packet header

Typically, a Stream has one PID or TPH Filter. Only for remultiplexing of a single program, a Stream can have more of these filters. Each component of a program is conveyed on a separate PID. So, a PID or TPH Filter is needed for each component to be filtered.

### Section Filter, PES Filter, PES Notifier

Each PID Filter can have specialized filters attached to do additional filtering on the output of the PID Filters. These specialized filters are the following:

- PES Filters to filter PES packets,
- PES Notifiers to notify PES packets to clients,
- Section Filters for filtering of MPEG-2 sections.

TPH Filters can only have PES Filters and Notifiers attached. Each PID or TPH Filter can have at most one PES Notifier attached to notify PES packets to clients.

PID or TPH Filters can only have one type of specialized filters attached.

### PCR Filter

The demultiplexer also has PCR Filters. A PCR Filter is used for filtering Program Clock Reference (PCR) data and routing it to a System Time Clock recovery mechanism. A PCR is a time stamp from which the timing of decoders is derived.

### Descrambler

The descrambler and the demultiplexer are tightly bound and come in dedicated pairs (e.g. the TS demultiplexer and the DVB descrambler). That is why the interface of the Descrambler is also described in this document.

Content providers can protect their content through scrambling. The Descrambler descrambles streams at various levels (TS, PES, and section). Descrambling is only possible if the Descrambler has the right descrambling keys. If a customer is entitled to get access to the descrambled content, the client can get access to the proper descrambling keys which will then be fed to the Descrambler.

Figure 81 shows some TS Demux concepts.

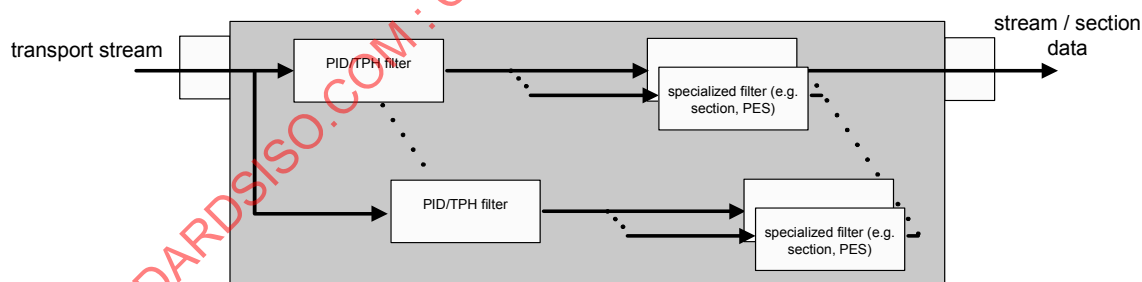


**Figure 81 — Demultiplexer concepts**

#### 8.1.13.1.3 Typical scenario: playing a program

Figure 82 shows a typical scenario: playing a program. The thin arrows indicate associations among objects and the thick ones the direction of filtered data.

Streams 'stream1', 'stream2', and 'stream3' extract respectively video, audio, and subtitles from the incoming transport stream and route their data to the respective decoders. Stream 'stream4' filters Teletext data and routes it to memory after applying PES header filtering using a PES Filter. Streams 'stream5' and 'stream6' filter meta-data from the incoming transport stream that tells among other things on which PIDs the



components of the program are conveyed. Stream 'stream7' filters ECMs from the incoming transport stream. For filtering EMMs another Stream with a Section Filter is needed. This is not shown in the picture as it would make it too crowded. This meta-data is packed in sections.

STANDARDSISO.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO/IEC 23004-2:2007

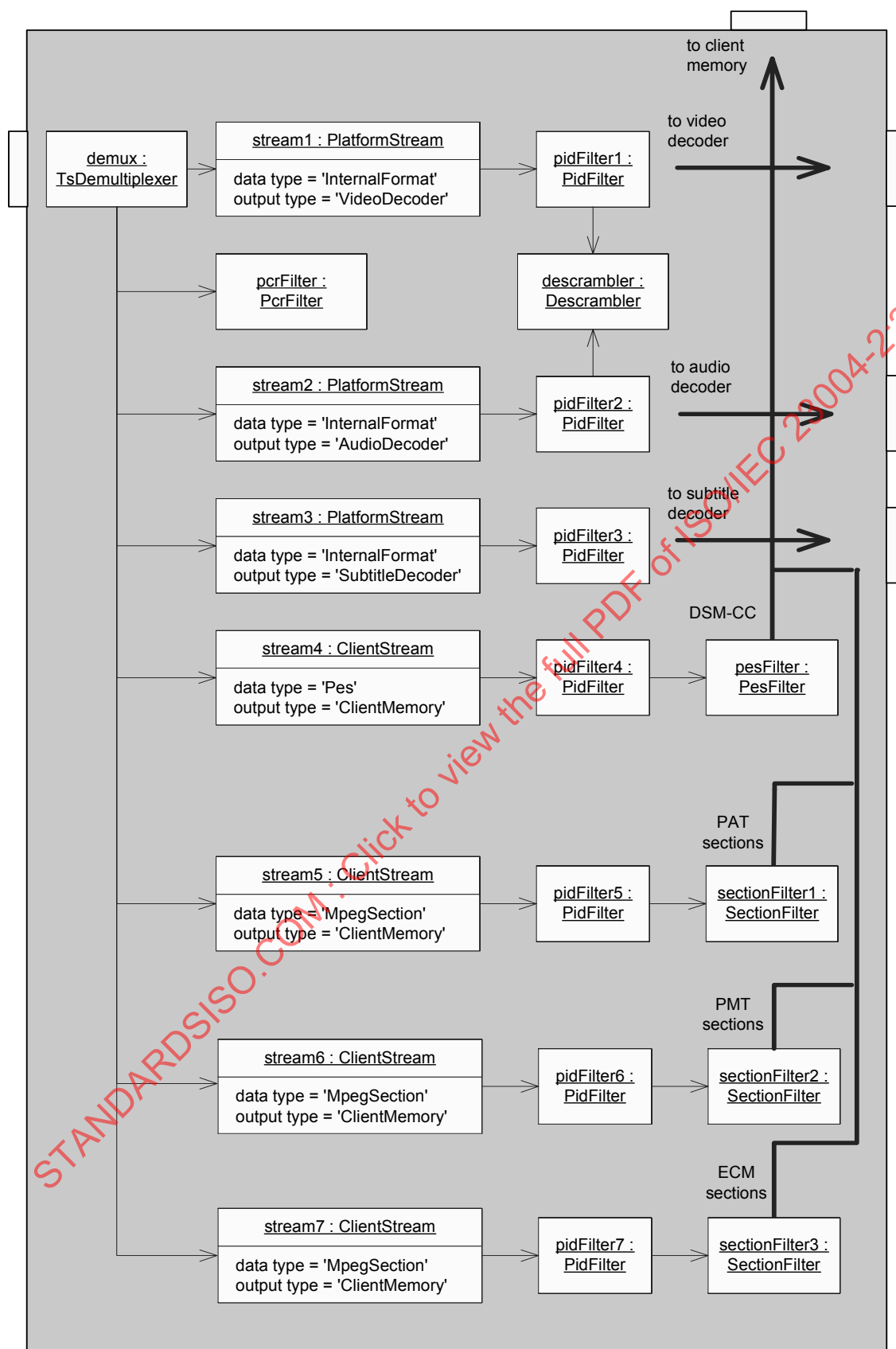


Figure 82 — Program play scenario

#### 8.1.13.1.4 Single Program Transport Stream (SPTS) remultiplexing

Figure 83 depicts a SPTS generation scenario. This Single Program Transport Stream (SPTS) is routed to a remultiplexer.

Stream 'stream1' is used for generating a SPTS and routing it to a remultiplexer. This SPTS is composed of one video component including PCR data, one audio component, one subtitle component, and DSM-CC data. Video and audio are descrambled before they are routed to the remultiplexer.

Furthermore, the two Streams 'stream2' and 'stream3' are for PAT and PMT section data retrieval respectively to client memory. The client can modify these sections and then re-insert them. Stream 'stream4' filters ECMs from the incoming transport stream. For filtering EMMs another Stream with a Section Filter is needed. This is not shown in the picture as it would make it too crowded.

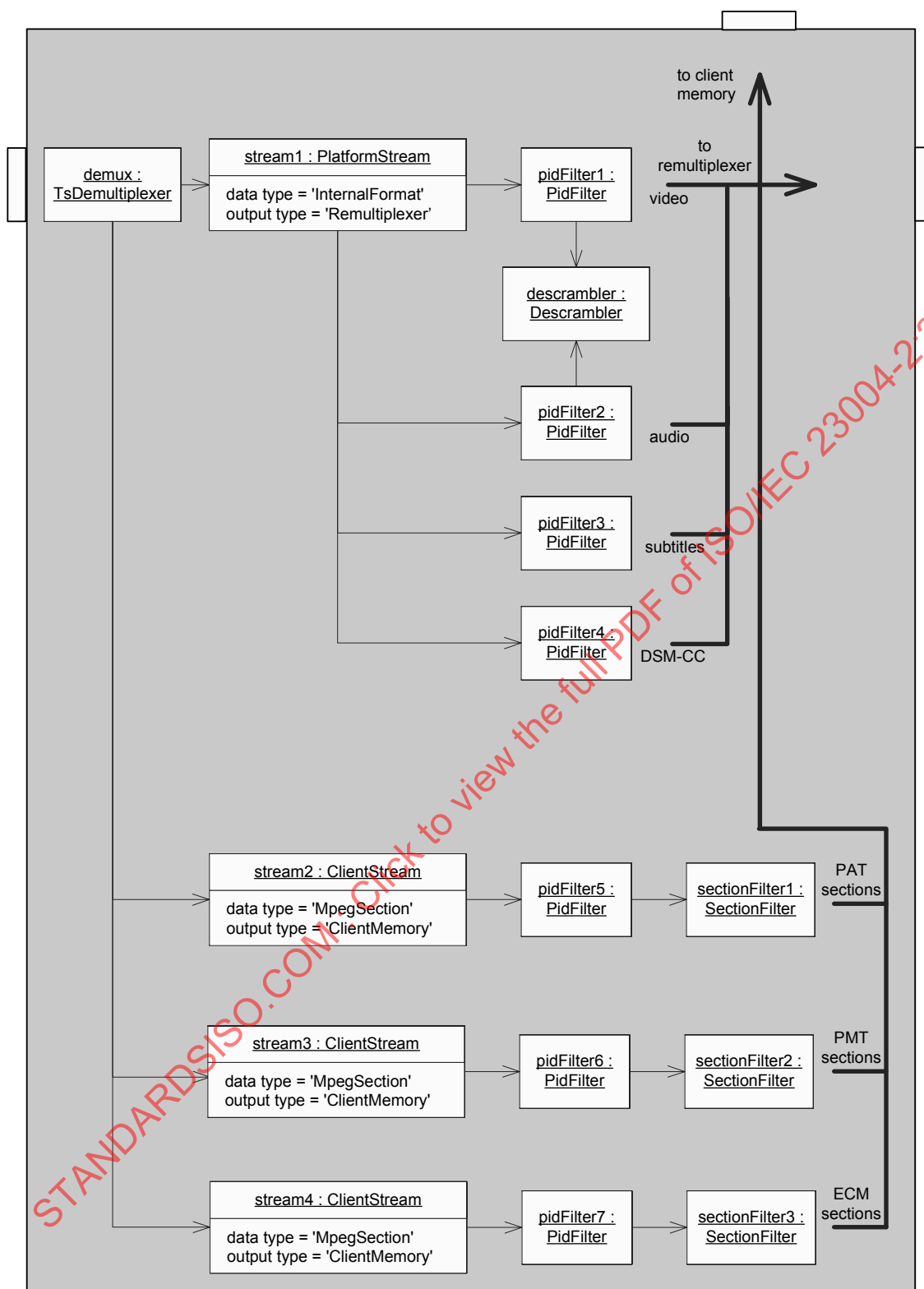


Figure 83 — SPTS generation scenario

### 8.1.13.1.5 Timestamped TS or SPTS

In a Transport Stream, either all of the Transport Packets (TPs) have a time stamp, or none of them. A time stamp indicates the relative timing of when a TP should be processed by the TS demultiplexer. Time stamps are based on a 27 MHz clock. See [16] for more details on time stamps.

A control can be provided by the TS demultiplexer to Clients so that they can indicate whether the input has time-stamps or not and whether, if present, they must be used. If they are not present, or if they must not be used, then the input rate of the TS determines when the TPs are demultiplexed (this is for example the case when the source of the input is a broadcast input), or the platform autonomously determines that.

Another control can be provided by the TS demultiplexer to Clients so that they can indicate whether the output SPTS has time-stamped TS packets or not. Some applications, e.g. some that conform to specific profiles of DLNA, require a time-stamped TS.

### 8.1.13.2 Types & Constants

#### 8.1.13.2.1 Public Types & Constants

##### 8.1.13.2.1.1 Error Codes

###### Signature

```
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_TSDMX_PCR_FILTER_NOT_AVAILABLE = 0x00000801;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_TSDMX_DESCR_NOT_AVAILABLE   = 0x00000802;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_TSDMX_PID_FILTER_NOT_AVAILABLE = 0x00000803;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_TSDMX_TPH_FILTER_NOT_AVAILABLE = 0x00000804;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_TSDMX_SCT_FILTER_NOT_AVAILABLE = 0x00000805;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_TSDMX_PES_FILTER_NOT_AVAILABLE = 0x00000806;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_TSDMX_FILTER_NOT_STARTED      = 0x00000807;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_TSDMX_TIME_STAMP_MODE_NOT_SET  = 0x00000808;
```

###### Qualifiers

— error-codes

###### Description

Definition of all non-standard errors that might be returned by the functions of the interfaces of a TS Demux.

###### Constants

**Table 747**

###### Name

UH\_ERR\_TSDMX\_PCR\_FILTER\_NOT\_AVAILABLE

UH\_ERR\_TSDMX\_DESCR\_NOT\_AVAILABLE

UH\_ERR\_TSDMX\_PID\_FILTER\_NOT\_AVAILABLE

UH\_ERR\_TSDMX\_TPH\_FILTER\_NOT\_AVAILABLE

UH\_ERR\_TSDMX\_SCT\_FILTER\_NOT\_AVAILABLE

###### Description

The allocation of a PCR Filter failed due to a lack of available PCR Filter objects.

The allocation of a Descrambler failed due to a lack of available Descrambler objects.

The allocation of a PID Filter failed due to a lack of available PID Filter objects.

The allocation of a TPH Filter failed due to a lack of available TPH Filter objects.

The allocation of a Section Filter failed due to a lack of available Section Filter objects.

**Name**

UH\_ERR\_TSDMX\_PES\_FILTER\_NOT\_AVAILABLE

**Description**

The allocation of a PES Filter/Notifier failed due to a lack of available PES Filter objects.

UH\_ERR\_TSDMX\_FILTER\_NOT\_STARTED

Starting the PID or TPH Filter failed.

UH\_ERR\_TSDMX\_TIME\_STAMP\_MODE\_NOT\_SET

The update of the time stamp mode of the TS Demux did not occur: setting the time stamp mode of the TS Demux can be effectively performed only when the TS Demux is not actively processing an input transport stream.

**8.1.13.2.1.2    uhTsDmx\_OutBase****Signature**

```
const UInt8
uhTsDmx_OutBase = 1;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the constant that identifies the first output pin of a Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.

**8.1.13.2.1.3    uhTsDmx\_Notification\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum uhTsDmx_Notification_t {
    uhTsDmx_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhTsDmx_SyncLost           = 0x00000002,
    uhTsDmx_SyncLock           = 0x00000004,
    uhTsDmx_SyncInvalid        = 0x00000008,
    uhTsDmx_InputOverflow      = 0x00000010
} uhTsDmx_Notification_t, *puhTsDmx_Notification_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhITsDmxNtf`. The values can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

**Values****Table 748****Name**

uhTsDmx\_SubscriptionChanged

**Description**

Represents OnSubscriptionChanged.

uhTsDmx\_SyncLost

Represents OnSyncLost.

uhTsDmx\_SyncLock

Represents OnSyncLock.

uhTsDmx\_SyncInvalid

Represents OnSyncInvalid.

| Name                  | Description                 |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| uhTsDmx_InputOverflow | Represents OnInputOverflow. |

#### 8.1.13.2.1.4 uhTsDmx\_Notifications\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhTsDmx_Notifications_t, *puhTsDmx_Notifications_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhTsDmx_Notification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

#### 8.1.13.2.1.5 uhTsDmx\_AllNotifications

##### Signature

```
const uhTsDmx_Notifications_t uhTsDmx_AllNotifications = 0x0000001F;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Defines the set of all values of type `uhTsDmx_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

#### 8.1.13.2.1.6 uhTsDmx\_StreamBufferNotification\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_StreamBufferNotification_t {
    uhTsDmx_StreamBufferSubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhTsDmx_StreamBufferFull                = 0x00000002
} uhTsDmx_StreamBufferNotification_t, *puhTsDmx_StreamBufferNotification_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

##### Description

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhITsDmxStreamBufferNtf`. The values can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

##### Values

Table 749

| Name                                    | Description                       |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhTsDmx_StreamBufferSubscriptionChanged | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged. |
| uhTsDmx_StreamBufferFull                | Represents OnBufferFull.          |

8.1.13.2.1.7 **uhTsDmx\_StreamBufferNotifications\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhTsDmx_StreamBufferNotifications_t,
*puhTsDmx_StreamBufferNotifications_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhTsDmx_StreamBufferNotification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

8.1.13.2.1.8 **uhTsDmx\_StreamBufferAllNotifications****Signature**

```
const uhTsDmx_StreamBufferNotifications_t uhTsDmx_StreamBufferAllNotifications =
0x00000003;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhTsDmx_StreamBufferNotification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

8.1.13.2.1.9 **uhTsDmx\_PcrNotification\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_PcrNotification_t {
    uhTsDmx_PcrSubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhTsDmx_PcrFilterStopped       = 0x00000002
} uhTsDmx_PcrNotification_t, *puhTsDmx_PcrNotification_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhITsDmxPcrFilterNtf`. The values can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

**Values****Table 750**

| Name                                        | Description                                     |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhTsDmx_PcrSubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> . |



| Name                     | Description           |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| uhTsDmx_PcrFilterStopped | Represents OnStopped. |

#### 8.1.13.2.1.10 uhTsDmx\_PcrNotifications\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhTsDmx_PcrNotifications_t, *puhTsDmx_PcrNotifications_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type uhTsDmx\_PcrNotification\_t. These values are used in the Subscribe and Unsubscribe functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

#### 8.1.13.2.1.11 uhTsDmx\_PcrAllNotifications

##### Signature

```
const uhTsDmx_PcrNotifications_t uhTsDmx_PcrAllNotifications = 0x00000003;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Defines the set of all values of type uhTsDmx\_PcrNotification\_t. This constant can be used in calls of the Subscribe and Unsubscribe functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

#### 8.1.13.2.1.12 uhTsDmx\_PidNotification\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_PidNotification_t {
    uhTsDmx_PidSubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhTsDmx_PidFilterStopped       = 0x00000002
} uhTsDmx_PidNotification_t, *puhTsDmx_PidNotification_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

##### Description

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface uhITsDmxPidFilterNtf. The values can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

##### Values

**Table 751**

| Name                           | Description                       |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhTsDmx_PidSubscriptionChanged | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged. |

| Name                     | Description           |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| uhTsDmx_PidFilterStopped | Represents OnStopped. |

**8.1.13.2.1.13 uhTsDmx\_PidNotifications\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhTsDmx_PidNotifications_t, *puhTsDmx_PidNotifications_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type uhTsDmx\_PidNotification\_t. These values are used in the Subscribe and Unsubscribe functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**8.1.13.2.1.14 uhTsDmx\_PidAllNotifications****Signature**

```
const uhTsDmx_PidNotifications_t uhTsDmx_PidAllNotifications = 0x00000003;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type uhTsDmx\_PidNotification\_t. This constant can be used in calls of the Subscribe and Unsubscribe functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**8.1.13.2.1.15 uhTsDmx\_SectionNotification\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_SectionNotification_t {
    uhTsDmx_SectionSubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhTsDmx_SectionFilterStopped       = 0x00000002,
    uhTsDmx_SectionArrived             = 0x00000004
} uhTsDmx_SectionNotification_t, *puhTsDmx_SectionNotification_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface uhITsDmxSectionFilterNtf. The values can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

**Values****Table 752**

| Name                               | Description                       |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhTsDmx_SectionSubscriptionChanged | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged. |

| Name                         | Description                  |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| uhTsDmx_SectionFilterStopped | Represents OnStopped.        |
| uhTsDmx_SectionArrived       | Represents OnSectionArrived. |

#### 8.1.13.2.1.16 uhTsDmx\_SectionNotifications\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhTsDmx_SectionNotifications_t, *puhTsDmx_SectionNotifications_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhTsDmx_SectionNotification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

#### 8.1.13.2.1.17 uhTsDmx\_SectionAllNotifications

##### Signature

```
const uhTsDmx_SectionNotifications_t uhTsDmx_SectionAllNotifications = 0x00000007;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Defines the set of all values of type `uhTsDmx_SectionNotification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

#### 8.1.13.2.1.18 uhTsDmx\_PesNotification\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_PesNotification_t {
    uhTsDmx_PesSubscriptionChanged      = 0x00000001,
    uhTsDmx_PesNotifierStopped          = 0x00000002,
    uhTsDmx_PesCompletePacketArrived    = 0x00000004,
    uhTsDmx_PesPartialPacketArrived     = 0x00000008,
    uhTsDmx_PesPacketCorrupt            = 0x00000010,
    uhTsDmx_PesStreamIdChanged          = 0x00000020
} uhTsDmx_PesNotification_t, *puhTsDmx_PesNotification_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

##### Description

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhITsDmxPesNotifierNtf`. The values can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

Values

Table 753

| Name                             | Description                        |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| uhTsDmx_PesSubscriptionChanged   | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged   |
| uhTsDmx_PesNotifierStopped       | Represents OnStopped               |
| uhTsDmx_PesCompletePacketArrived | Represents OnCompletePacketArrived |
| uhTsDmx_PesPartialPacketArrived  | Represents OnPartialPacketArrived. |
| uhTsDmx_PesPacketCorrupt         | Represents OnPacketCorrupt         |
| uhTsDmx_PesStreamIdChanged       | Represents OnStreamIdChanged       |

8.1.13.2.1.19 uhTsDmx\_PesNotifications\_t

Signature

**typedef** Int32 uhTsDmx\_PesNotifications\_t, \*puhTsDmx\_PesNotifications\_t;

Qualifiers

— enum-set

Description

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type uhTsDmx\_PesNotification\_t. These values are used in the Subscribe and Unsubscribe functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

8.1.13.2.1.20 uhTsDmx\_PesAllNotifications

Signature

**const** uhTsDmx\_PesNotifications\_t uhTsDmx\_PesAllNotifications = 0x0000003F;

Qualifiers

None.

Description

Defines the set of all values of type uhTsDmx\_PesNotification\_t. This constant can be used in calls of the Subscribe and Unsubscribe functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

## 8.1.13.2.1.21 uhTsDmx\_DescramblerType\_t

**Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_DescramblerType_t {
    uhTsDmx_TdesFbEcbRbNoneSbNone      = 0x00000001,
    uhTsDmx_TdesFbEcbRbOfbIvSbNone     = 0x00000002,
    uhTsDmx_TdesFbEcbRbOfbPbSbNone     = 0x00000004,
    uhTsDmx_TdesFbEcbRbOfbIvSbOfbIv    = 0x00000008,
    uhTsDmx_TdesFbEcbRbOfbPbSbOfbIv    = 0x00000010,
    uhTsDmx_TdesFbCbcRbNoneSbNone      = 0x00000020,
    uhTsDmx_TdesFbCbcRbOfbIvSbNone     = 0x00000040,
    uhTsDmx_TdesFbCbcRbOfbPbSbNone     = 0x00000080,
    uhTsDmx_TdesFbCbcRbOfbIvSbOfbIv    = 0x00000100,
    uhTsDmx_TdesFbCbcRbOfbPbSbOfbIv    = 0x00000200,
    uhTsDmx_SdesFbEcbRbNoneSbNone      = 0x00000400,
    uhTsDmx_SdesFbEcbRbOfbIvSbNone     = 0x00000800,
    uhTsDmx_SdesFbEcbRbOfbPbSbNone     = 0x00001000,
    uhTsDmx_SdesFbEcbRbOfbIvSbOfbIv    = 0x00002000,
    uhTsDmx_SdesFbEcbRbOfbPbSbOfbIv    = 0x00004000,
    uhTsDmx_SdesFbCbcRbNoneSbNone      = 0x00008000,
    uhTsDmx_SdesFbCbcRbOfbIvSbNone     = 0x00010000,
    uhTsDmx_SdesFbCbcRbOfbPbSbNone     = 0x00020000,
    uhTsDmx_SdesFbCbcRbOfbIvSbOfbIv    = 0x00040000,
    uhTsDmx_SdesFbCbcRbOfbPbSbOfbIv    = 0x00080000,
    uhTsDmx_Dvb                         = 0x00100000,
    uhTsDmx_Multi2                      = 0x00200000
} uhTsDmx_DescramblerType_t, *puhTsDmx_DescramblerType_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the different Descrambler types. The DES decryption algorithm described in [24] and [25] supports different decryption modes:

- Electronic Code Book (ECB),
- Cipher Block Chain (CBC), and
- Output FeedBack (OFB).

Both ECB and CBC modes operate on 64 bit blocks, while OFB can handle arbitrary block sizes. When DES scrambling has been applied on MPEG-2 transport packets, only the transport packet payload is encrypted.

During DES scrambling, the payload (which is variable in size, as the adaptation field is never scrambled) is split up in a number of 64-bit blocks and a remainder block less than 64 bit. The 64-bit blocks (or full blocks) are typically scrambled according the ECB or CBC mode. The remainder (or residual block) is scrambled according the OFB mode or not scrambled at all.

In case the payload size is less than 64 bit, the payload (or solitary block) is scrambled according the OFB mode as well or not scrambled at all.

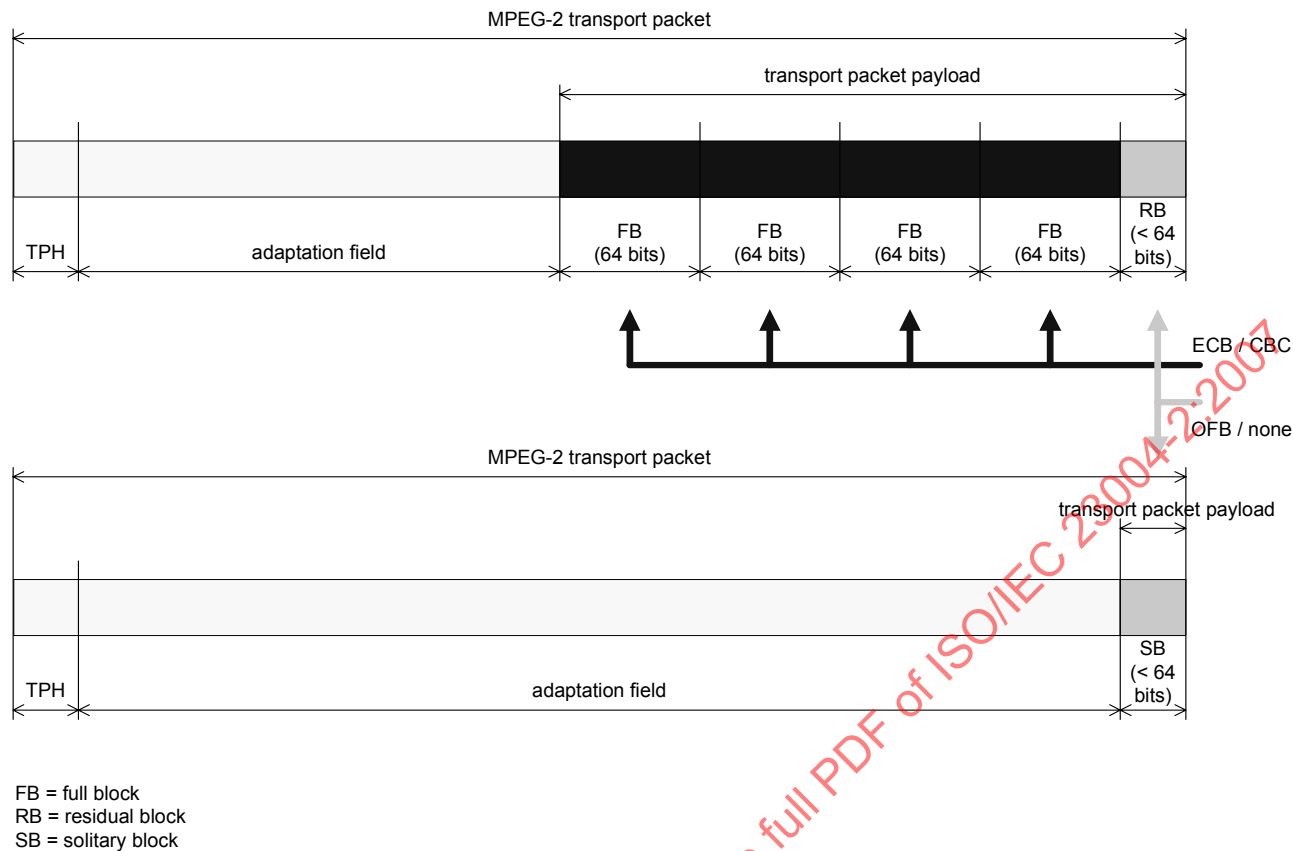


Figure 84 — DES and MPEG-2

Values

Table 754

| Name                            | Description                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhTsDmx_TdesFbEcbRbNoneSbNone   | Triple DES, Electronic Codebook on full blocks, none on residual blocks, none on solitary blocks.                                                           |
| uhTsDmx_TdesFbEcbRbOfbIvSbNone  | Triple DES, Electronic Codebook on full blocks, Output Feedback with IV on residual blocks, none on solitary blocks.                                        |
| uhTsDmx_TdesFbEcbRbOfbPbSbNone  | Triple DES, Electronic Codebook on full blocks, Output Feedback with previous block (as IV) on residual blocks, none on solitary blocks.                    |
| uhTsDmx_TdesFbEcbRbOfbIvSbOfbIv | Triple DES, Electronic Codebook on full blocks, Output Feedback with IV on residual blocks, Output Feedback with IV on solitary blocks.                     |
| uhTsDmx_TdesFbEcbRbOfbPbSbOfbIv | Triple DES, Electronic Codebook on full blocks, Output Feedback with previous block (as IV) on residual blocks, Output Feedback with IV on solitary blocks. |
| uhTsDmx_TdesFbCbcRbNoneSbNone   | Triple DES, Cipher Block Chaining on full blocks, none on residual blocks, none on solitary blocks.                                                         |
| uhTsDmx_TdesFbCbcRbOfbIvSbNone  | Triple DES, Cipher Block Chaining on full blocks, Output Feedback with IV on residual blocks, none on solitary blocks.                                      |
| uhTsDmx_TdesFbCbcRbOfbPbSbNone  | Triple DES, Cipher Block Chaining on full blocks, Output Feedback with previous block (as IV) on residual blocks, none on solitary blocks.                  |

| Name                            | Description                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhTsDmx_TdesFbCbcRbOfbIvSbOfbIv | Triple DES, Cipher Block Chaining on full blocks, Output Feedback with IV on residual blocks, Output Feedback with IV on solitary blocks.                     |
| uhTsDmx_TdesFbCbcRbOfbPbSbOfbIv | Triple DES, Cipher Block Chaining on full blocks, Output Feedback with previous block (as IV) on residual blocks, Output Feedback with IV on solitary blocks. |
| uhTsDmx_SdesFbEcbRbNoneSbNone   | Single DES, Electronic Codebook on full blocks, none on residual blocks, none on solitary blocks.                                                             |
| uhTsDmx_SdesFbEcbRbOfbIvSbNone  | Single DES, Electronic Codebook on full blocks, Output Feedback with IV on residual blocks, none on solitary blocks.                                          |
| uhTsDmx_SdesFbEcbRbOfbPbSbNone  | Single DES, Electronic Codebook on full blocks, Output Feedback with previous block (as IV) on residual blocks, none on solitary blocks.                      |
| uhTsDmx_SdesFbEcbRbOfbIvSbOfbIv | Single DES, Electronic Codebook on full blocks, Output Feedback with IV on residual blocks, Output Feedback with IV on solitary blocks.                       |
| uhTsDmx_SdesFbEcbRbOfbPbSbOfbIv | Single DES, Electronic Codebook on full blocks, Output Feedback with previous block (as IV) on residual blocks, Output Feedback with IV on solitary blocks.   |
| uhTsDmx_SdesFbCbcRbNoneSbNone   | Single DES, Cipher Block Chaining on full blocks, none on residual blocks, none on solitary blocks.                                                           |
| uhTsDmx_SdesFbCbcRbOfbIvSbNone  | Single DES, Cipher Block Chaining on full blocks, Output Feedback with IV on residual blocks, none on solitary blocks.                                        |
| uhTsDmx_SdesFbCbcRbOfbPbSbNone  | Single DES, Cipher Block Chaining on full blocks, Output Feedback with previous block (as IV) on residual blocks, none on solitary blocks.                    |
| uhTsDmx_SdesFbCbcRbOfbIvSbOfbIv | Single DES, Cipher Block Chaining on full blocks, Output Feedback with IV on residual blocks, Output Feedback with IV on solitary blocks.                     |
| uhTsDmx_SdesFbCbcRbOfbPbSbOfbIv | Single DES, Cipher Block Chaining on full blocks, Output Feedback with previous block (as IV) on residual blocks, Output Feedback with IV on solitary blocks. |
| uhTsDmx_Dvb                     | DVB descrambling.                                                                                                                                             |
| uhTsDmx_Multi2                  | Multi2 descrambling.                                                                                                                                          |

#### 8.1.13.2.1.22 uhTsDmx\_DescramblerTypes\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhTsDmx_DescramblerTypes_t,
*puhTsDmx_DescramblerTypes_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of descrambler types.

**8.1.13.2.1.23 uhTsDmx\_StreamDataType\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_StreamDataType_t {
    uhTsDmx_InternalFormat = 0x00000001,
    uhTsDmx_Pes             = 0x00000002,
    uhTsDmx_Tp              = 0x00000003,
    uhTsDmx_MpegSection     = 0x00000004
} uhTsDmx_StreamDataType_t, *puhTsDmx_StreamDataType_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the Stream data types.

**Values****Table 755**

| Name                   | Description                                                                                       |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhTsDmx_InternalFormat | Format used when data does not have to be routed to the client, but is streaming in the platform. |
| uhTsDmx_Pes            | Packetized Elementary Stream.                                                                     |
| uhTsDmx_Tp             | Transport Packet / (Single Program) Transport Stream.                                             |
| uhTsDmx_MpegSection    | MPEG-2 sections.                                                                                  |

**8.1.13.2.1.24 uhTsDmx\_BufferType\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_BufferType_t {
    uhTsDmx_Linear      = 0x00000001,
    uhTsDmx_Circular    = 0x00000002
} uhTsDmx_BufferType_t, *puhTsDmx_BufferType_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the buffer types.

**Values****Table 756**

| Name             | Description      |
|------------------|------------------|
| uhTsDmx_Linear   | Linear buffer.   |
| uhTsDmx_Circular | Circular buffer. |



**8.1.13.2.1.25 uhTsDmx\_BufferTypes\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhTsDmx_BufferTypes_t, *puhTsDmx_BufferTypes_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of buffer types.

**8.1.13.2.1.26 uhTsDmx\_CrcMode\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_CrcMode_t {
    uhTsDmx_SkipBadSections    = 0x00000001,
    uhTsDmx_AcceptAllSections = 0x00000002,
    uhTsDmx_DontCheckCrc      = 0x00000003
} uhTsDmx_CrcMode_t, *puhTsDmx_CrcMode_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the CRC modes.

**Values****Table 757****Name**

uhTsDmx\_SkipBadSections

uhTsDmx\_AcceptAllSections

uhTsDmx\_DontCheckCrc

**Description**

A CRC check is performed autonomously by the demultiplexer. Sections with an invalid CRC value are automatically discarded. That means they will never appear in a buffer. The notification of the arrival of a section indicates the result of the CRC check.

A CRC check is performed autonomously by the demultiplexer. All sections - regardless of the result of the CRC check - are written to a buffer. The notification of the arrival of a section indicates the result of the CRC check.

A CRC check is not performed. All sections are written to a buffer. This is the default CRC mode.

8.1.13.2.1.27 **uhTsDmx\_CrcStatus\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_CrcStatus_t {
    uhTsDmx_CrcOk           = 0x00000001,
    uhTsDmx_CrcNotOk        = 0x00000002,
    uhTsDmx_CrcNotChecked   = 0x00000003,
    uhTsDmx_NoCrc           = 0x00000004
} uhTsDmx_CrcStatus_t, *puhTsDmx_CrcStatus_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the CRC status.

**Values****Table 758****Name****Description**

uhTsDmx\_CrcOk

The CRC check on the accompanying section was successful.

uhTsDmx\_CrcNotOk

The CRC check on the accompanying section failed.

uhTsDmx\_CrcNotChecked

The CRC check on the accompanying section has not been done yet, but it can be checked by calling the `CheckCrc` function of the `uhITsDmxSectionFilter` interface.

uhTsDmx\_NoCrc

The CRC check could not be done because either the accompanying section has no CRC field or the CRC field cannot be detected because the `section_syntax_indicator` equals 0.8.1.13.2.1.28 **uhTsDmx\_FilterMode\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_FilterMode_t {
    uhTsDmx_OneShot          = 0x00000001,
    uhTsDmx_Continuous       = 0x00000002
} uhTsDmx_FilterMode_t, *puhTsDmx_FilterMode_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the filter modes.

**Values****Table 759****Name****Description**

uhTsDmx\_OneShot

Setting the filter mode to 'one shot' results in automatically stopping the filter as soon as one of the requested data units (e.g. a PES packet or a section) is actually filtered and signaled to the client.

| Name               | Description                                                                                      |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhTsDmx_Continuous | A filter keeps on filtering until a client explicitly stops it. This is the default filter mode. |

#### 8.1.13.2.1.29 uhTsDmx\_ScramblingStatus\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_ScramblingStatus_t {
    uhTsDmx_ScramblingInvalid    = -2,
    uhTsDmx_ScramblingUnknown    = -1,
    uhTsDmx_NotScrambled         =  2,
    uhTsDmx_Scrambled            =  3
} uhTsDmx_ScramblingStatus_t, *puhTsDmx_ScramblingStatus_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Values of this type represent the scrambling status.

##### Values

Table 760

| Name                      | Description                                                                                               |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhTsDmx_ScramblingInvalid | The data - that is currently filtered by the PID Filter or the TPH Filter – is not temporarily available. |
| uhTsDmx_ScramblingUnknown | There is no data filtered by the filter. Therefore, the scrambling status is unknown.                     |
| uhTsDmx_NotScrambled      | The data - that is currently filtered by the PID Filter or the TPH Filter - is not scrambled.             |
| uhTsDmx_Scrambled         | The data - that is currently filtered by the PID Filter or the TPH Filter - is scrambled.                 |

#### 8.1.13.2.1.30 uhTsDmx\_CwType\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_CwType_t {
    uhTsDmx_OddKey                = 0x00000001,
    uhTsDmx_EvenKey               = 0x00000002,
    uhTsDmx_SystemKey             = 0x00000003,
    uhTsDmx_InitVectorCbc         = 0x00000004,
    uhTsDmx_InitVectorOfb         = 0x00000005
} uhTsDmx_CwType_t, *puhTsDmx_CwType_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Values of this type represent the control word types.

**Values****Table 761**

| <b>Name</b>           | <b>Description</b>             |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| uhTsDmx_OddKey        | Odd key.                       |
| uhTsDmx_EvenKey       | Even key.                      |
| uhTsDmx_SystemKey     | System key.                    |
| uhTsDmx_InitVectorCbc | Initialization vector for CBC. |
| uhTsDmx_InitVectorOfb | Initialization vector for OFB. |

**8.1.13.2.1.31 uhTsDmx\_ValStat\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_ValStat_t {
    uhTsDmx_ValStatInvalid = -2,
    uhTsDmx_ValStatKnown   = 1
} uhTsDmx_ValStat_t, *puhTsDmx_ValStat_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This type represents the validity status of the related property/properties.

**Values****Table 762**

| <b>Name</b>            | <b>Description</b>                                     |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| uhTsDmx_ValStatInvalid | The property/properties are temporarily not available. |
| uhTsDmx_ValStatKnown   | The property/properties are available and determined.  |

**8.1.13.2.1.32 uhTsDmx\_TimeStampMode\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_TimeStampMode_t {
    uhTsDmx_NonTimeStampMode    = 0,
    uhTsDmx_TimeStampMode      = 1,
    uhTsDmx_TimeStampIgnoreMode = 2
} uhTsDmx_TimeStampMode_t, *puhTsDmx_TimeStampMode_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent time stamp modes.

**Values****Table 763**

| <b>Name</b>                 | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhTsDmx_NonTimeStampMode    | In this mode, Transport Stream packets are according to ISO 138181 TS format (Transport Stream packet size 188 bytes). Transport Stream packets do not have time stamps.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| uhTsDmx_TimeStampMode       | In this mode, each Transport Stream packet is preceded by 4 bytes of time stamp value (Transport Stream packet size 192 (4+188) bytes). The time stamps determine when TS packets will be de-multiplexed and sent out on the output(s) of the TsDemultiplexer. For this the time stamps are matched to an internal clock running at 27 MHz. |
| uhTsDmx_TimeStampIgnoreMode | In this mode, each Transport Stream packet is preceded by 4 bytes of time stamp value (Transport Stream packet size 192 (4+188) bytes), but the time stamp shall be ignored.                                                                                                                                                                |

**8.1.13.2.1.33 uhTsDmx\_SyncStatus\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhTsDmx_SyncStatus_t {
    uhTsDmx_SyncStatusInvalid = 0,
    uhTsDmx_SyncStatusLost    = 1,
    uhTsDmx_SyncStatusLock    = 2
} uhTsDmx_SyncStatus_t, *puhTsDmx_SyncStatus_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the synchronization status of the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component towards its input stream.

**Values****Table 764**

| <b>Name</b>               | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhTsDmx_SyncStatusInvalid | The synchronization status is invalid.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| uhTsDmx_SyncStatusLost    | The Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component is currently not synchronized with the input stream: it did not find the synchronization byte on several consecutive transport packets of the incoming transport stream after previously being synchronized, or in the invalid lock status.             |
| uhTsDmx_SyncStatusLock    | The Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component is currently synchronized with the input stream: it has previously encountered the synchronization byte on several consecutive transport packets of the incoming transport stream and is, currently, actively processing the incoming transport stream. |

8.1.13.2.2 Model Types & Constants

8.1.13.2.2.1 StreamType

Signature

```
typedef enum {
    ClientStream      = 0x00000001,
    PlatformStream    = 0x00000002
} StreamType;
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

Values of this type represent the type of the Stream object.

Values

Table 765

| Name           | Description                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ClientStream   | The Stream object is a Client Stream. It routes data to the client.                                                                                                                       |
| PlatformStream | The Stream object is a Platform Stream. It streams its output data in the platform. The client is not involved in collecting data and in forwarding it to decoders and/or remultiplexers. |

8.1.13.2.2.2 StreamOutputType\_t

Signature

```
typedef enum {
    ClientMemory      = 1,
    VideoDecoder      = 2,
    AudioDecoder       = 3,
    TeletextDecoder    = 4,
    SubtitleDecoder    = 5,
    Remultiplexer      = 6
}
StreamOutputType_t;
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

Values of this type represent the Stream output types. All output types - except ClientMemory - refer to data streaming in the platform. The client is not involved in collecting data and forwarding this data to decoders and remultiplexers.

Values

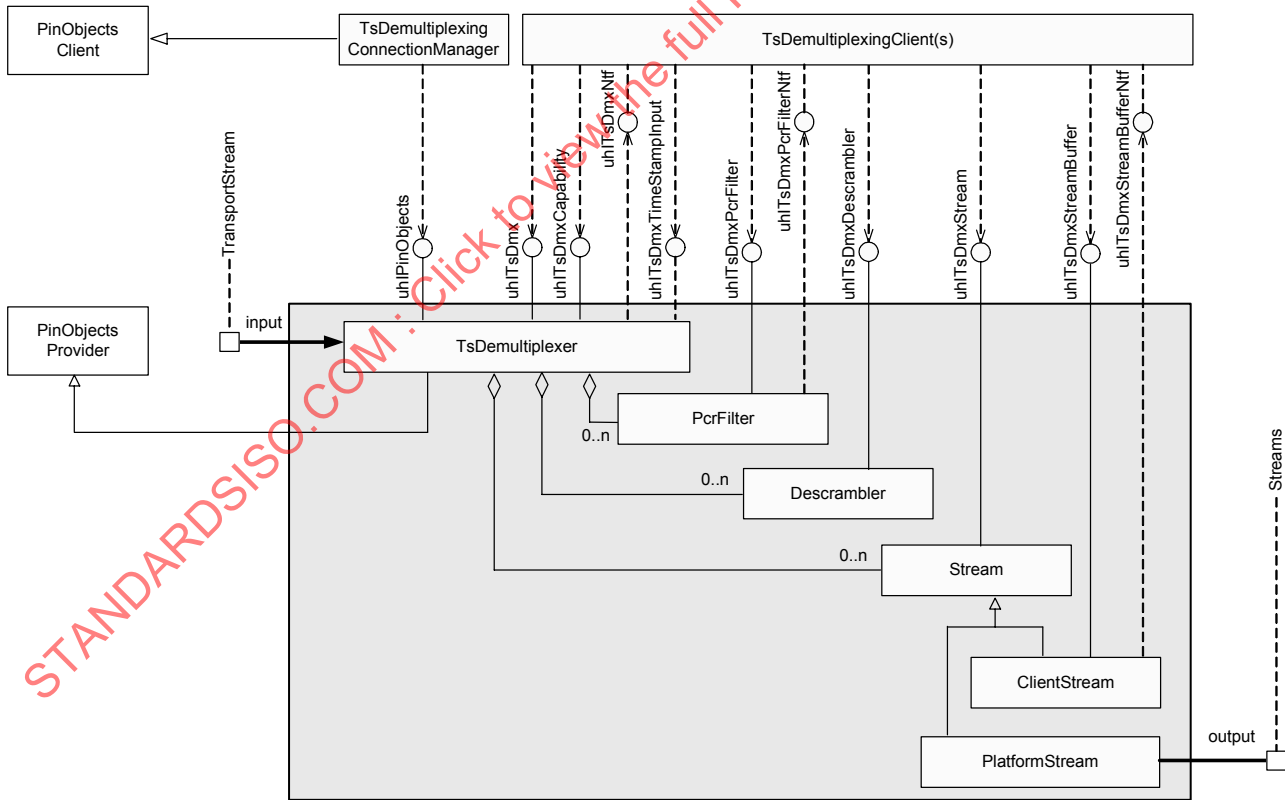
Table 766

| Name            | Description                                                                  |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ClientMemory    | Data is routed to client accessible memory.                                  |
| VideoDecoder    | Data is routed to a video decoder. The client has no access to this data.    |
| AudioDecoder    | Data is routed to an audio decoder. The client has no access to this data.   |
| TeletextDecoder | Data is routed to a teletext decoder. The client has no access to this data. |
| SubtitleDecoder | Data is routed to a subtitle decoder. The client has no access to this data. |
| Remultiplexer   | Data is routed to a remultiplexer. The client has no access to this data.    |

8.1.13.3 Logical Component

8.1.13.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 85 and Figure 86 depict the interface-role model of the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component. They show the control and notification interfaces and the roles involved with the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component. The role `TsDemultiplexingClient(s)` represents one or more clients of the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component. It is drawn as one box because otherwise it might suggest a certain partitioning of client software.



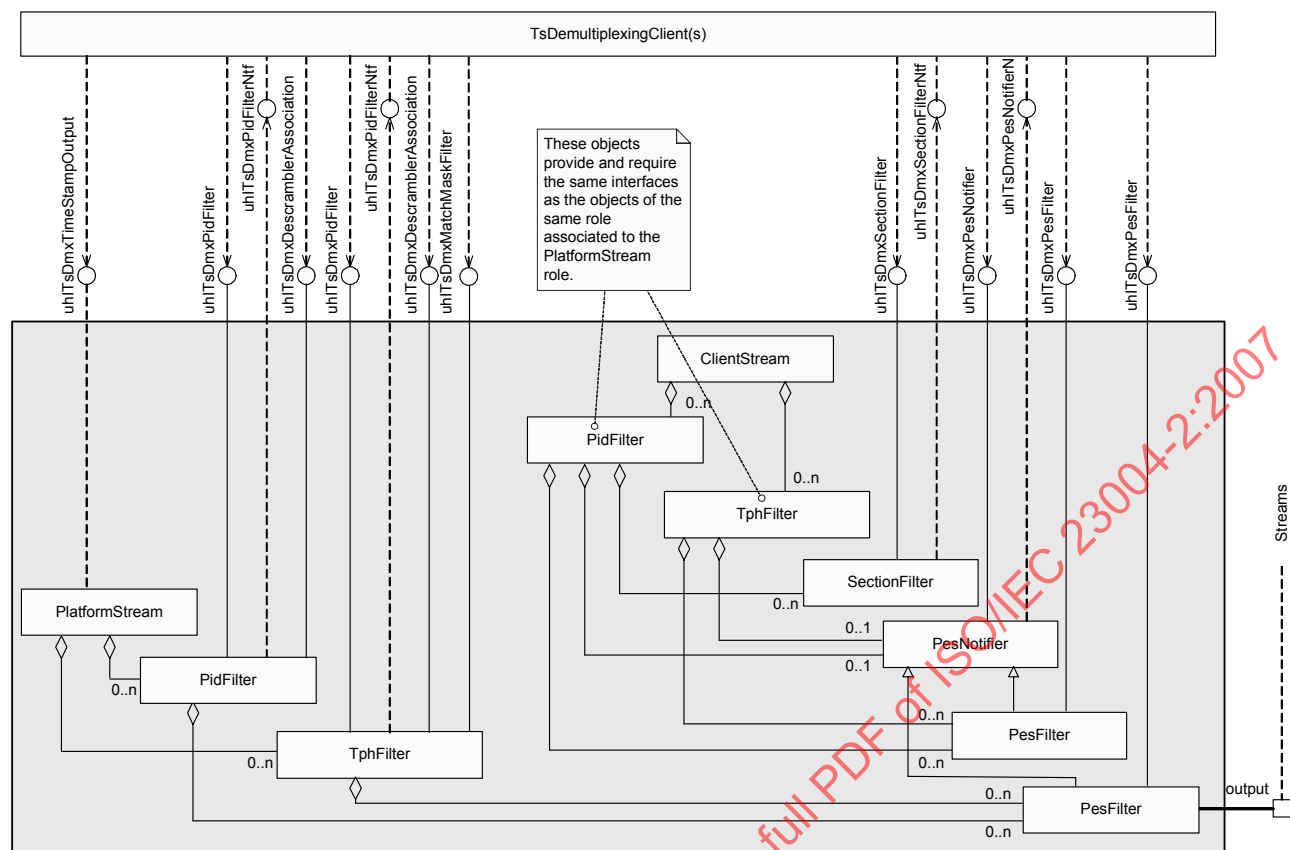


Figure 86 — Interface-Role Model (lower part)

In general, a TS Demux supports a number of filters (PCR, PID, TPH, PES, section) and descramblers. In practice, this number is dictated by the hardware. The supported number of filters and descramblers can be obtained via `uhITsDmxCapability`.

Using the `uhITsDmx` interface, PCR Filters, Descramblers and Client Streams can be allocated and the `uhITsDmxPcrFilter`, `uhITsDmxDescrambler`, or `uhITsDmxStream` interface of either a PCR Filter, Descrambler or a Client Stream can be obtained by a `TsDemultiplexingClient`.

A `TsDemultiplexingClient` can have two types of Streams. These types are represented by the `ClientStream` and the `PlatformStream` roles. These roles have common behavior which is captured in a general Stream role.

A `TsDemultiplexer` has an interface (`uhIPinObjects`) that maps the pin ID of an output stream to the `PlatformStream` delivering the output stream. This interface is meant for exclusive use by the connection manager (represented by the `TsDemultiplexingConnectionManager` role). The `uhITsDmxStream` interface of a Platform Stream can be obtained via the `GetPinRelatedObject` function of the `uhIPinObjects` interface; see 6.1.5.

The “base roles” `PinObjectsClient` and `PinObjectsProvider` are defined in 6.1.5.

The `uhITsDmxStreamBuffer` interface contains the functionality specific to a Client Stream (i.e. related to the buffer control). Functionality common to all Streams is provided on the `uhITsDmxStream` interface.

A Stream object can have two types of filters associated with it. These types are represented by the `PidFilter` and the `TphFilter` roles. These roles have common behavior. The `TphFilter` is a specialization of the `PidFilter` role.



Using the `uhITsDmxStream` interface, PID Filters and TPH Filters can be allocated and the `uhITsDmxPidFilter` interface of either a PID Filter or a TPH Filter can be obtained by a `TsDemultiplexingClient`.

Functionality common to PID Filters and TPH Filters is provided on the `uhITsDmxPidFilter` and `uhITsDmxDescramblerAssociation` interfaces. The latter provides functionality to associate a Descrambler to a PID Filter or to a TPH Filter. The `uhITsDmxMatchMaskFilter` interface contains the functionality specific to a TPH Filter.

A `PidFilter` object can have different types of filter associated with it. These types are represented by the `SectionFilter`, the `PesFilter`, and the `PesNotifier` roles. A `PidFilter` object can have zero or more `SectionFilter`, or zero or more `PesFilter`, or at most one `PesNotifier`. A `TphFilter` object can only have zero or more `PesFilter` or at most one `PesNotifier` associated with it.

Using the `uhITsDmxPidFilter` interface, `Section Filters`, `PES Filters` and `PES Notifiers` can be allocated and the `uhITsDmxSectionFilter`, `uhITsDmxPesFilter`, or `uhITsDmxPesNotifier` interface of either a `Section Filter`, a `PES Filter`, or a `PES Notifier` can be obtained by a `TsDemultiplexingClient`.

### 8.1.13.3.2 Diversity

#### 8.1.13.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 767

| Role                   | Interface                      | Presence               |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| TsDemultiplexer        | uhIPinObjects                  | mandatory              |
|                        | uhITsDmx                       | mandatory              |
|                        | uhITsDmxCapability             | mandatory              |
|                        | uhITsDmxTimeStampInput         | optional               |
| TsDemultiplexingClient | uhITsDmxNtf                    | optional               |
| PcrFilter              | uhITsDmxPcrFilter              | mandatory              |
| TsDemultiplexingClient | uhITsDmxPcrFilterNtf           | optional               |
| Descrambler            | uhITsDmxDescrambler            | mandatory              |
| Stream                 | uhITsDmxStream                 | mandatory              |
| PlatformStream         | uhITsDmxTimeStampOutput        | optional <sup>20</sup> |
| ClientStream           | uhITsDmxStreamBuffer           | mandatory              |
| TsDemultiplexingClient | uhITsDmxStreamBufferNtf        | optional               |
| PidFilter              | uhITsDmxPidFilter              | mandatory              |
|                        | uhITsDmxDescramblerAssociation | mandatory              |
| TphFilter              | uhITsDmxPidFilter              | mandatory              |
|                        | uhITsDmxDescramblerAssociation | mandatory              |
|                        | uhITsDmxMatchMaskFilter        | mandatory              |
| TsDemultiplexingClient | uhITsDmxPidFilterNtf           | optional               |
| SectionFilter          | uhITsDmxSectionFilter          | mandatory              |
| TsDemultiplexingClient | uhITsDmxSectionFilterNtf       | optional               |

<sup>20</sup> See the constraint on the presence of this interface in subclause 8.1.13.3.2.3.

| Role                   | Interface              | Presence  |
|------------------------|------------------------|-----------|
| PesFilter              | uhITsDmxPesNotifier    | mandatory |
|                        | uhITsDmxPesFilter      | mandatory |
| TsDemultiplexingClient | uhITsDmxPesNotifierNtf | optional  |
| PesNotifier            | uhITsDmxPesNotifier    | mandatory |

### 8.1.13.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 768

| Role            | Attribute                  |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
| TsDemultiplexer | suppDescramblerTypes       |
|                 | descramblerTypeRestriction |
|                 | suppBufferTypes            |
|                 | maxNrPcrFilters            |
|                 | maxNrDescramblers          |
|                 | maxNrPidFilters            |
|                 | maxNrTphFilters            |
|                 | MaxNrSectionFilters        |
|                 | maxNrPesFilters            |
|                 | nrPlatformStreams          |
|                 | cwDepth                    |
|                 | tphFilterDepth             |
|                 | sectionFilterDepth         |
|                 | pesFilterDepth             |
| PlatformStream  | pidRestriction             |
|                 | outputType                 |

### 8.1.13.3.2.3 Constraints

- $(\text{maxNrPidFilters} \geq 1) \parallel (\text{maxNrTphFilters} \geq 1)$
- The uhITsDmxTimeStampOutput interface may only be present and provided by a PlatformStream role if the outputType attribute for this PlatformStream equals Remultiplexer.

### 8.1.13.3.3 Instantiation

#### 8.1.13.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 769

| Type            | Object | Multiplicity |
|-----------------|--------|--------------|
| TsDemultiplexer | demux  | 1            |

| Type           | Object             | Multiplicity            |
|----------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| PlatformStream | pPlatformStreams[] | demux.nrPlatformStreams |

#### 8.1.13.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

```

— demux.pinIds == demux.outputPinIds
— For each i in {0 .. demux.nrPlatformStreams-1}
  — demux.pinObject[uhTsDmx_OutBase+i] == pPlatformStreams[i]
— demux.platformStreams == {pPlatformStreams[0] ..
  pPlatformStreams[demux.nrPlatformStreams-1]}
— demux.nrPcrFilters == 0
— demux.pcrFilters == {}
— For each t in uhTsDmx_DescramblerType_t
  — demux.nrDescramblers[t] == 0
— demux.descramblers == {}
— demux.nrPidFilters == 0
— demux.nrTphFilters == 0
— demux.nrSectionFilters == 0
— demux.nrPesFilters == 0
— demux.nrClientStreams == 0
— demux.clientStreams == {}
— demux.timeStampMode == uhTsDmx_NonTimeStampMode
— demux.syncLock == uhTsDmx_SyncStatusInvalid
— For each i in {0..demux.nrPlatformStreams-1}
  — pPlatformStreams[i].streamObjectType == PlatformStream
  — pPlatformStreams[i].dataType == uhTsDmx_InternalFormat
  — pPlatformStreams[i].nrPidFilters == 0
  — pPlatformStreams[i].pidFilters == {}
  — pPlatformStreams[i].nrTphFilters == 0
  — pPlatformStreams[i].tphFilters == {}
  — pPlatformStreams[i].nrTransportPackets == 0
  — pPlatformStreams[i].enableTimeStamps == False

```

#### 8.1.13.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by the roles of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

## 8.1.13.4 Roles

## 8.1.13.4.1 TsDemultiplexer

## Signature

```

role TsDemultiplexer specializes pinObjectsProvider {
    const uhTsDmx_DescramblerTypes_t    suppDescramblerTypes;
    const Bool                          descramblerTypeRestriction;
    const uhTsDmx_BufferTypes_t          suppBufferTypes;
    const UInt32                        maxNrPcrFilters;
    const UInt32                        maxNrDescramblers[uhTsDmx_DescramblerType_t];
    const UInt32                        maxNrPidFilters;
    const UInt32                        maxNrTphFilters;
    const UInt32                        maxNrSectionFilters;
    const UInt32                        maxNrPesFilters;
    UInt32                             nrPcrFilters;
    setof{PcrFilter}                    pcrFilters;
    UInt32                             nrDescramblers[uhTsDmx_DescramblerType_t];
    setof{Descrambler}                  descramblers;
    UInt32                             nrPidFilters;
    UInt32                             nrTphFilters;
    UInt32                             nrSectionFilters;
    UInt32                             nrPesFilters;
    const UInt32                        nrPlatformStreams;
    setof{PlatformStream}                platformStreams;
    UInt32                             nrClientStreams;
    setof{ClientStream}                  clientStreams;
    setof{PinId}                        outputPinIds;
    const UInt32                        cwDepth[uhTsDmx_DescramblerType_t];
    const UInt32                        tphFilterDepth;
    const UInt32                        sectionFilterDepth;
    const UInt32                        pesFilterDepth;
    const Bool                          pidRestriction;
    uhTsDmx_TimeStampMode_t             timeStampMode;
    uhTsDmx_SyncStatus_t                 syncLock;
}

```

## Qualifiers

— root

## Description

A TsDemultiplexer object contains a number of PcrFilter, Descrambler and Stream objects for which it is the resource server. A limited number of PcrFilters, Descrambler, PidFilter, TphFilter, SectionFilter, and PesFilter (and PesNotifier) objects are supported within a Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component. A TsDemultiplexer object provides facilities to allocate PcrFilter, Descrambler, and Stream objects. It also provides facilities to query the maximum number of filters/descramblers available and the number of filters/descramblers currently available.

## Independent Attributes

Table 770

| Name                 | Description                                                                               |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| suppDescramblerTypes | The descrambler types supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component. |

| Name                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| descramblerTypeRestriction | Indication whether at any point in time all of the allocated descramblers have to be of the same type. It is <code>True</code> when at any point in time all of the allocated descramblers have to be of the same type. It is <code>False</code> , otherwise.                                                                                                                                                             |
| suppBufferTypes            | The set of buffer types that can be handled by the platform.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| maxNrPcrFilters            | The maximum number of PCR Filters supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| maxNrDescramblers          | For each descrambler type, the maximum number of Descramblers supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| maxNrPidFilters            | The maximum number of PID Filters supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| maxNrTphFilters            | The maximum number of TPH Filters supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| maxNrSectionFilters        | The maximum number of Section Filters supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| maxNrPesFilters            | The maximum number of PES Filters and PES Notifiers supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| nrPcrFilters               | The number of PCR Filters actually used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| pcrFilters                 | The set of <code>nrPcrFilters</code> PCR Filters associated with the <code>TsDemultiplexer</code> object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| nrDescramblers             | For each descrambler type, the number of Descramblers actually used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| descramblers               | The set of Descramblers associated with the <code>TsDemultiplexer</code> object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| nrPidFilters               | The number of PID Filters actually used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| nrTphFilters               | The number of TPH Filters actually used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| nrSectionFilters           | The number of Section Filters actually used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| nrPesFilters               | The number of PES Filters and PES Notifiers actually used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| nrPlatformStreams          | The number of 'platform' Streams associated with the <code>TsDemultiplexer</code> , i.e. <code>#platformStreams</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| platformStreams            | The set of 'platform' Streams associated with the <code>TsDemultiplexer</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| nrClientStreams            | The number of Client Streams actually used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| clientStreams              | The set of Client Streams associated with the <code>TsDemultiplexer</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| cwDepth                    | For each type of descrambler, indicates the size in bytes (depth) of the control words.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| tphFilterDepth             | Size in bits (depth) of the match and mask values of TPH Filters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| sectionFilterDepth         | Size in bytes (depth) of the mode, match, and mask values of Section Filters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| pesFilterDepth             | Size in bytes (depth) of the match and mask values of PES Filters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| pidRestriction             | Indication whether there is a restriction on using at any point in time the same PID value on more than one started PID/TPH filter. It is <code>True</code> when the restriction applies: using the same PID value on more than one started PID/TPH filter is not supported. It is <code>False</code> when the restriction does not apply: using the same PID value on more than one started PID/TPH filter is supported. |
| timeStampMode              | The time stamp mode of the <code>TsDemultiplexer</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| syncLock                   | Indicates whether the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component has previously encountered the synchronization byte on several consecutive transport packets of the incoming transport stream and is, currently, actively processing the incoming transport stream.                                                                                                                                               |

## Dependent Attributes

Table 771

| Name         | Description                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| outputPinIds | The set of pin IDs of the PlatformStreams associated with the TsDemultiplexer, which is equal to {<br>uhTsDmx_OutBase + i for which $0 \leq i < \text{nrPlatformStreams}$ }. |

## Invariants

- $0 \leq \text{nrPcrFilters} \leq \text{maxNrPcrFilters}$
- For each t in uhTsDmx\_DescramblerType\_t
  - $0 \leq \text{nrDescramblers}[t] \leq \text{maxNrDescramblers}[t]$
- $0 \leq \text{nrPidFilters} \leq \text{maxNrPidFilters}$
- $0 \leq \text{nrTphFilters} \leq \text{maxNrTphFilters}$
- $0 \leq \text{nrSectionFilters} \leq \text{maxNrSectionFilters}$
- $0 \leq \text{nrPesFilters} \leq \text{maxNrPesFilters}$
- $(\text{maxNrPidFilters} \geq 1) \mid \mid (\text{maxNrTphFilters} \geq 1)$

## Instantiation

A TsDemultiplexer is always instantiated as part of a TS Demux; see subclause 8.1.13.3.2.

## Streaming Behavior

The TsDemultiplexer continually observes the incoming transport stream of the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component. It continually tries to find the synchronization byte of the transport packets of the transport stream. After encountering the synchronization byte on several consecutive transport packets, the TsDemultiplexer is synchronised. If the TsDemultiplexer does not find the synchronization byte on several consecutive transport packets of the incoming transport stream (anymore), it becomes out of sync.

## Active Behavior

The TsDemultiplexer has standard notification behavior (see uhITsDmxNtf for the events that can be notified), except for the events described below:

Table 772

| Event                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Action                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| The TsDemultiplexer encountered the synchronization byte on several consecutive transport packets of the incoming transport stream after previously being out of sync, or in the invalid lock status.   | syncLock = uhTsDmx_SyncStatusLock<br>Notify OnSyncLock(*) |
| The TsDemultiplexer did not find the synchronization byte on several consecutive transport packets of the incoming transport stream after previously being synchronized, or in the invalid lock status. | syncLock = uhTsDmx_SyncStatusLost<br>Notify OnSyncLost(*) |

## Remarks

- The constant attributes pinIds and pinObject are inherited from the pinObjectsProvider role defined in 6.1.5 which specifies no values for these attributes.

#### 8.1.13.4.2 PcrFilter

##### Signature

```
role PcrFilter {
    Uint16    pid;
    Bool      started;
}
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

The function of a `PcrFilter` is to filter Program Clock Reference (PCR) data from the input transport stream and route it to a System Time Clock recovery mechanism in order to keep the timing of the various decoders synchronized.

##### Independent Attributes

Table 773

| Name                 | Description                                                                                                    |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pid</code>     | PID of the PCR Filter.                                                                                         |
| <code>started</code> | Indicates whether the PCR Filter is started. It is <code>True</code> if and only if the PCR Filter is started. |

##### Dependent Attributes

None.

##### Invariants

$0x0000 \leq pid \leq 0x1FFF$

##### Instantiation

A `PcrFilter` is instantiated using the `AllocatePcrFilter` function of the `uhITsDmx` interface.

##### Streaming Behavior

As long as the `PcrFilter` is stopped, `started` is set to `False` and the `PcrFilter` does not filter Program Clock Reference (PCR) data from the output transport stream of the `TsDemultiplexer`.

When the client wants to start the `PcrFilter`, it can use the `Start` function of the `uhITsDmxPcrFilter` interface. As a consequence, `started` is set to `True` and the `PcrFilter` starts filtering PCRs on the given `pid` from the input transport stream.

Once filtered, PCR data is routed to a System Time Clock recovery mechanism.

If the client wants to stop the `PcrFilter`, it can use the `Stop` function of the `uhITsDmxPcrFilter` interface. When calling this function, the `PcrFilter` will stop as soon as possible. A notification `OnStopped` is sent to the client, if subscribed, when the `PcrFilter` has stopped, `started` is then set to `False`.

##### Active Behavior

A `PcrFilter` has standard notification behavior; see `uhITsDmxPcrFilterNtf` for the events that can be notified.

8.1.13.4.3 Descrambler

Signature

```
role Descrambler {
    const uhTsDmx_DescramblerType_t    descramblerType;
    UInt8*                               cw;
    uhTsDmx_CwType_t                   cwType;
    Bool                                defaultCwUsed;
}
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

A `Descrambler` can descramble streams whose content has been protected by the content provider through scrambling. A `Descrambler` can work for multiple streams concurrently and at various levels (TS, PES, and section). Descrambling is effective if the `Descrambler` has the right descrambling keys. A `Descrambler` provides facilities to set control words to be used for descrambling.

Independent Attributes

Table 774

| Name                         | Description                                                                                      |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>descramblerType</code> | The data type of the Descrambler.                                                                |
| <code>cw</code>              | Points to the control word with <code>demux.cwDepth[descramblerType]</code> bytes of valid data. |
| <code>cwType</code>          | The type of the control word.                                                                    |
| <code>defaultCwUsed</code>   | Indicates whether to use the default control word for descrambling.                              |

Dependent Attributes

None.

Invariants

None.

Instantiation

A `Descrambler` is instantiated using the `AllocateDescrambler` function of the `uhITsDmx` interface.

Streaming Behavior

For each PID and/or TPH Filter with which the `Descrambler` is associated, the `Descrambler` descrambles data of the stream associated with the filter as long as the `Descrambler` has the right descrambling keys (control words) for this particular stream.

Active Behavior

None.



#### 8.1.13.4.4 Stream

##### Signature

```

role Stream {
    const StreamType                streamObjectType;
    const uhTsDmx_StreamDataType_t  dataType;
    StreamOutputType_t              outputType;
    UInt32                          nrPidFilters;
    setof{PidFilter}                pidFilters;
    UInt32                          nrTphFilters;
    setof{TphFilter}                tphFilters;
    UInt32                          nrTransportPackets;
}

```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

A *Stream* models a stream of data of a particular type. Typically, a *Stream* has one PID or one TPH Filter. It only has more PID or TPH Filters when a *Stream* is used to filter a Single Program Transport Stream (SPTS), e.g. for remultiplexing. A *Stream* provides facilities to associate PID and/or TPH Filter(s).

##### Independent Attributes

Table 775

| Name               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| streamObjectType   | The type of the <i>Stream</i> object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| dataType           | The data type of the <i>Stream</i> object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| outputType         | The output type of the <i>Stream</i> object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| nrPidFilters       | The number of PID Filters associated with the <i>Stream</i> object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| pidFilters         | The set of nrPidFilters PID Filters associated with the <i>Stream</i> object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| nrTphFilters       | The number of TPH Filters associated with the <i>Stream</i> object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| tphFilters         | The set of nrTphFilters TPH Filters associated with the <i>Stream</i> object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| nrTransportPackets | The number of transport packets that passed the PID Filter condition set on a PID or TPH Filter object associated to the <i>Stream</i> object since the last time the <i>GetNrTransportPackets</i> function of the <i>uhITsDmxStream</i> interface was called.<br><br>For SPTS generation, the number of transport packets that passed the union of the PID Filter conditions of all PID and TPH Filters associated with the <i>Stream</i> object since the last time this function was called. |

##### Dependent Attributes

None.

##### Invariants

- Only some combinations of stream data type and stream output type are supported. In Figure 87, the combinations marked with 'Y' are valid, the combinations with 'N' are invalid.

|                 | uhTsDmx_Pes | uhTsDmx_Tp | uhTsDmx_MpegSection | uhTsDmx_InternalFormat |
|-----------------|-------------|------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| ClientMemory    | Y           | Y          | Y                   | N                      |
| VideoDecoder    | N           | N          | N                   | Y                      |
| AudioDecoder    | N           | N          | N                   | Y                      |
| TeletextDecoder | N           | N          | N                   | Y                      |
| SubtitleDecoder | N           | N          | N                   | Y                      |
| Remultiplexer   | N           | N          | N                   | Y                      |

**Figure 87 — Supported stream data type/stream output type combinations**

- If `dataType == uhTsDmx_InternalFormat`
- `streamObjectType == PlatformStream`
- else
- `streamObjectType == ClientStream`
- Figure 88 lists the number of PID plus TPH Filters that can be allocated per `Stream` object of a certain stream output and data type.

|                 | uhTsDmx_Pes | uhTsDmx_Tp | uhTsDmx_MpegSection | uhTsDmx_InternalFormat |
|-----------------|-------------|------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| ClientMemory    | 1           | >=1        | 1                   | 0                      |
| VideoDecoder    | 0           | 0          | 0                   | 1                      |
| AudioDecoder    | 0           | 0          | 0                   | 1                      |
| TeletextDecoder | 0           | 0          | 0                   | 1                      |
| SubtitleDecoder | 0           | 0          | 0                   | 1                      |
| Remultiplexer   | 0           | 0          | 0                   | >=1                    |

**Figure 88 — Number of PID plus TPH Filters allowed per Stream object per data type/ output type combination.**

—  $(nrPidFilters + nrTphFilters) \geq 1$

#### Instantiation

A `Stream` is either a `ClientStream` or a `PlatformStream`. A `ClientStream` is instantiated using the `AllocateStream` function of the `uhTsDmx` interface. A `PlatformStream` is always instantiated as part of a TS Demux; see subclause 8.1.13.3.2.

#### Streaming Behavior

A `Stream` models a stream of data. The `TsDemultiplexer` provides the incoming transport stream. The input data is filtered by the filters (PID, TPH, PES, section) associated with this `Stream` and one buffer is being used per `Stream` for all data that is being filtered by the filters. A `Stream` always has one buffer to store all its output data. This buffer is not explicitly modeled.

When the `outputType` of the `Stream` is `ClientMemory`, the filtered data is routed to a client. The client has to manage the buffer explicitly.

When the `outputType` of the `Stream` is not `ClientMemory`, the filtered data is routed to the output of the TS Demux to be decoded by an appropriate decoder or remultiplexed.

#### Active Behavior

None.

## 8.1.13.4.5 ClientStream

## Signature

```

role ClientStream specializes Stream {
    uhTsDmx_BufferType_t  bufferType;
    UInt32                bufferSize;
    UInt32                bufferGranularity;
    pUInt8                pStartAddressBuffer;
    pUInt8                pEndAddressBuffer;
}

```

## Qualifiers

None.

## Description

A `ClientStream` is a specialization of the `Stream` role. It is a `Stream` for which the data is actually being routed to a client. The data of all filters attached to the `Stream` end up in a single buffer. The client has to manage the buffer explicitly. A `ClientStream` provides facilities to control its associated buffer.

## Independent Attributes

Table 776

| Name                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>bufferType</code>          | The type of the buffer associated with the Client Stream object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>bufferSize</code>          | The size - in bytes - of the buffer associated with the Client Stream object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>bufferGranularity</code>   | The granularity - in bytes - of the buffer associated with the Client Stream object. The granularity specifies the rate at which packets will be notified. For example for transport packets, a granularity of 1880 bytes means a notification will be sent whenever 10 transport packets are received. |
| <code>pStartAddressBuffer</code> | Start address of the buffer associated with the Client Stream object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

## Dependent Attributes

Table 777

| Name                           | Description                                                        |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pEndAddressBuffer</code> | End address of the buffer associated with the Client Stream object |

## Invariants

- See Section Invariants of the `Stream` role.
- `bufferType` in `suppBufferTypes`
- `streamObjectType == ClientStream`
- `outputType == ClientMemory`
- Only buffers that are associated to a `ClientStream` object with data type `uhTsDmx_Pes` and `uhTsDmx_Tp` can have a granularity different from 0.

## Instantiation

A `ClientStream` is instantiated using the `AllocateStream` function of the `uhITsDmx` interface.

## Streaming Behavior

See Section Streaming Behavior of the `Stream` role.

The filtered data is routed to a client. The client has to manage the buffer explicitly.

### Active Behavior

A `ClientStream` has standard notification behavior; see `uhITsDmxStreamBufferNtf` for the events that can be notified.

### Remarks

- For PES data, the granularity specifies the size of a partial PES packet that will be notified. Partial PES packets will be notified by the `uhTsDmx_PesPartialPacketArrived` event.
- When `bufferGranularity == 0`, only complete PES packets can be notified through the `OnCompletePacketArrived` notification of the `uhITsDmxPesNotifierNtf` notification interface, no (partial) PES packets will be notified through the `OnPartialPacketArrived` notification.
- The minimum granularity for transport packets equals the transport packet size.

### 8.1.13.4.6 PlatformStream

#### Signature

```
role PlatformStream specializes Stream {
    Bool          enableTimeStamps;
}
```

#### Qualifiers

None.

#### Description

A `PlatformStream` is a specialization of the `Stream` role. It is a `Stream` for which the data is routed to an appropriate (with respect to the type of data, e.g. audio decoder for audio data) decoder or a remultiplexer.

#### Independent Attributes

Table 778

| Name                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>enableTimeStamps</code> | Indicates whether time stamps are enabled or disabled on the output stream of this platform stream. It is <code>True</code> if time Stamps are enabled. It is <code>False</code> otherwise. |

#### Dependent Attributes

None.

#### Invariants

- See Section Invariants of the `Stream` role.
- `streamObjectType == PlatformStream`
- `outputType != ClientMemory`

#### Instantiation

A `PlatformStream` is always instantiated as part of a TS Demux; see subclause 8.1.13.3.2.

#### Streaming Behavior

See Section Streaming Behavior of the `Stream` role.

The filtered data is routed to the output of the TS Demux to be decoded by an appropriate decoder or remultiplexed.

If (`enableTimeStamps == True`) then each outputted TS packet is preceded by a 4-bytes time stamp. This time stamp is based on a 27 MHz clock.

### Active Behavior

None.

#### 8.1.13.4.7 PidFilter

### Signature

```
role PidFilter {
    Uint16          pid;
    Bool            started;
    UInt32          nrSectionFilters;
    setof{SectionFilter} sectionFilters;
    UInt32          nrPesFilters;
    setof{PesFilter} pesFilters;
    puhITsDmxPesNotifier pIPesNotifier;
    uhTsDmx_ScramblingStatus_t scramblingStatus;
    puhITsDmxDescrambler pIDescrambler;
}
```

### Qualifiers

None.

### Description

A `PidFilter` extracts transport packets with a given PID from the input transport stream. A `PidFilter` can have specialized filters attached to do additional filtering on its output stream. The following specialized filters can be associated with a `PidFilter`:

- PES Filters to filter PES packets,
- Section Filters for filtering of MPEG-2 sections.

Moreover, a `PidFilter` can have an association with one PES Notifier. However, a `PidFilter` can only be associated with one type of filter / notifier at a time. So, a `PidFilter` can be associated with either multiple Section Filters, or multiple PES Filters, or one PES Notifier.

Since the content providers can protect content through scrambling, a `PidFilter` can be associated with a Descrambler to descramble the appropriate data from the input transport stream.

### Independent Attributes

Table 779

| Name                          | Description                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pid</code>              | PID of the PID Filter.                                                                            |
| <code>started</code>          | Indicates whether the PID Filter is started. It is True if and only if the PID Filter is started. |
| <code>nrSectionFilters</code> | The number of Section Filters associated with the PID Filter object.                              |
| <code>sectionFilters</code>   | The set of <code>nrSectionFilters</code> Section Filters associated with the PID Filter object.   |

| Name                          | Description                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>nrPesFilters</code>     | The number of PES Filters associated with the PID Filter object.                                                                  |
| <code>pesFilters</code>       | The set of <code>nrPesFilters</code> PES Filters associated with the PID Filter object.                                           |
| <code>pIPesNotifier</code>    | Interface pointer of a PES Notifier associated with the PID Filter object. It is Null when no PES Notifier is associated.         |
| <code>scramblingStatus</code> | Indicates whether the current stream that is filtered by the PID Filter is scrambled.                                             |
| <code>pIDescrambler</code>    | Interface pointer of a Descrambler associated with the PID Filter object. It is Null if and only if no Descrambler is associated. |

**Dependent Attributes**

None.

**Invariants**

- $0x0000 \leq pid \leq 0x1FFF$
- $0 \leq nrSectionFilters \leq demux.maxNrSectionFilters$
- $0 \leq nrPesFilters \leq demux.maxNrPesFilters$
- If `nrSectionFilters`  $\neq 0$ 
  - `nrPesFilters`  $== 0$
  - `pIPesNotifier`  $== \text{Null}$
- If `nrPesFilters`  $\neq 0$ 
  - `nrSectionFilters`  $== 0$
  - `pIPesNotifier`  $== \text{Null}$
- If `pIPesNotifier`  $\neq \text{Null}$ 
  - `nrSectionFilters`  $== 0$
  - `nrPesFilters`  $== 0$
- If the Stream object - that is associated with the PID Filter object - does not have (data type `uhTsDmx_MpegSection` and output type `ClientMemory`), then `nrSectionFilters`  $== 0$ .
- If the Stream object - that is associated with the PID Filter object - does not have:
  - data type `uhTsDmx_Pes`, and output type `ClientMemory` or
  - data type `uhTsDmx_InternalFormat` and (output type `VideoDecoder` or `AudioDecoder` or `TeletextDecoder` or `SubtitleDecoder`),
 then `nrPesFilters`  $== 0$ .
- If the Stream object - that is associated with the PID Filter object - does not have (data type `uhTsDmx_Pes` and output type `ClientMemory`), then `pIPesNotifier`  $== \text{Null}$ .

**Instantiation**

A `PidFilter` is instantiated using the `AllocatePidFilter` function of the `uhITsDmxStream` interface.

**Streaming Behavior**

As long as the `PidFilter` is stopped, `started` is set to `False` and the `PidFilter` does not extract transport packets with a given PID from the input transport stream of the `Stream` with which it is associated.

When the client wants to start the `PidFilter`, it can use the `Start` function of the `uhITsDmxPidFilter` interface. As a consequence, `started` is set to `True` and the `PidFilter` starts extracting transport packets with a given PID from the input transport stream.

Once filtered, the data is routed:

- to Section Filter(s), PES Filter(s), or a PES Notifier associated with the `PidFilter`;

- otherwise to a buffer that is explicitly managed by the client if the `dataType` of the Stream is not `uhTsDmx_InternalFormat`;
- otherwise to the output of the TS Demux (to be decoded by an appropriate decoder or to be remultiplexed), if the `dataType` of the Stream is `uhTsDmx_InternalFormat`.

If the client wants to stop the `PidFilter`, it can use the `Stop` function of the `uhITsDmxPidFilter` interface. When calling this function, the `PidFilter` will stop as soon as possible, and the data associated with this PID filter (in the buffer used by the Stream object associated with this PID Filter) is flushed if the Stream is a Platform Stream (i.e. `stream.StreamType == PlatformStream`). A notification `OnStopped` is sent to the client, if subscribed. When the `PidFilter` has stopped, `started` is then set to `False`.

### Active Behavior

A `PidFilter` has standard notification behavior; see `uhITsDmxPidFilterNtf` for the events that can be notified.

#### 8.1.13.4.8 TphFilter

##### Signature

```
role TphFilter {
    UInt16          pid;
    Bool            started;
    UInt32          nrPesFilters;
    setof{PesFilter} pesFilters;
    puhITsDmxPesNotifier pIPesNotifier;
    uhTsDmx_ScramblingStatus_t scramblingStatus;
    puhITsDmxDescrambler pIDescrambler;
    UInt8           pMatchValue[];
    UInt8           pMaskValue[];
}
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

A `TphFilter` extracts transport packets based on values of fields of the header and allows to set filter criteria on some other fields than the PID. A `TphFilter` can also have specialized filters attached to do additional filtering on its output stream. Only PES Filters can be associated with a `TphFilter`. Moreover, a `TphFilter` can have an association with one PES Notifier. However, a `TphFilter` can only be associated with one filter / notifier type at a time. So, a `TphFilter` can be associated with either multiple PES Filters or one PES Notifier.

Since the content providers can protect the content of programs through scrambling, a `TphFilter` can be associated with a `Descrambler` to descramble the appropriate transport packets from the input transport stream.

##### Independent Attributes

Table 780

| Name             | Description            |
|------------------|------------------------|
| <code>pid</code> | PID of the TPH Filter. |



| Name                          | Description                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>started</code>          | Indicates whether the TPH Filter is started. It is True if and only if the TPH Filter is started.                                 |
| <code>nrPesFilters</code>     | The number of PES Filters associated with the TPH Filter object.                                                                  |
| <code>pesFilters</code>       | The set of <code>nrPesFilters</code> PES Filters associated with the TPH Filter object.                                           |
| <code>pIPesNotifier</code>    | Interface pointer of a PES Notifier associated with the TPH Filter object. It is Null when no PES Notifier is associated.         |
| <code>scramblingStatus</code> | Indicates whether the current stream that is filtered by the TPH Filter is scrambled.                                             |
| <code>pidDescrambler</code>   | Interface pointer of a Descrambler associated with the TPH Filter object. It is Null if and only if no Descrambler is associated. |
| <code>pMatchValue</code>      | Match value.                                                                                                                      |
| <code>pMaskValue</code>       | Mask value.                                                                                                                       |

**Dependent Attributes**

None.

**Invariants**

- $0x0000 \leq pid \leq 0x1FFF$
- $0 \leq nrPesFilters \leq demux.maxNrPesFilters$
- If `nrPesFilters`  $\neq 0$ 
  - `pIPesNotifier`  $\neq$  Null
- If `pIPesNotifier`  $\neq$  Null
  - `nrPesFilters`  $\neq 0$
- If the `Stream` object - that is associated with the TPH Filter object - does not have:
  - data type `uhTsDmx_Pes` and output type `ClientMemory` or
  - data type `uhTsDmx_InternalFormat` and (output type `VideoDecoder` or `AudioDecoder` or `TeletextDecoder` or `SubtitleDecoder`),
 then `nrPesFilters`  $\neq 0$ .
- If the `Stream` object - that is associated with the TPH Filter object - does not have (data type `uhTsDmx_Pes` and output type `ClientMemory`), then `pIPesNotifier`  $\neq$  Null.

**Instantiation**

A `TphFilter` is instantiated using the `AllocateTphFilter` function of the `uhITsDmxStream` interface.

**Streaming Behavior**

As long as the `TphFilter` is stopped, `started` is set to False and the `TphFilter` does not extract transport packets from the input transport stream of the `Stream` with which it is associated.

When the client wants to start the `TphFilter`, it can use the `Start` function of the `uhITsDmxPidFilter` interface. As a consequence, `started` is set to True and the `TphFilter` starts extracting transport packets from the input transport stream.

Once filtered, the data is routed:

- to PES Filters(s) or a PES Notifier associated with the `TphFilter`;
- otherwise to a buffer that is explicitly managed by the client if the `dataType` of the `Stream` is not `uhTsDmx_InternalFormat`;
- otherwise to the output of the TS Demux (to be decoded by an appropriate decoder or to be remultiplexed), if the `dataType` of the `Stream` is `uhTsDmx_InternalFormat`.

If the client wants to stop the `TphFilter`, it can use the `Stop` function of the `uhITsDmxPidFilter` interface. When calling this function, the `TphFilter` will stop as soon as possible and the data associated with this TPH filter (in the buffer used by the `Stream` object associated with this TPH Filter) is flushed if the `Stream` is a Platform Stream (i.e. `stream.StreamType == PlatformStream`). A notification `OnStopped` is sent to the client, if subscribed. When the `TphFilter` has stopped, `started` is then set to `False`.

Active Behavior

A `TphFilter` has standard notification behavior; see `uhITsDmxPidFilterNtf` for the events that can be notified.

8.1.13.4.9 SectionFilter

Signature

```
role SectionFilter {
    Bool                started;
    uhTsDmx_FilterMode_t filterMode;
    UInt8               pModeValue[demux.sectionFilterDepth];
    UInt8               pMatchValue[demux.sectionFilterDepth];
    UInt8               pMaskValue[demux.sectionFilterDepth];
    uhTsDmx_CrcMode_t   crcMode;
    uhTsDmx_CrcStatus_t crc;
}
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

A `SectionFilter` filters sections from the output stream of the `ClientStream` with which it is associated. It provides facilities to control the filter mode and allows match/mask control on the filter. A `SectionFilter` also provides facilities to check the integrity of data.

Independent Attributes

Table 781

| Name                     | Description                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>started</code>     | Indicates whether the Section Filter is started. It is <code>True</code> if and only if the Section Filter is started. |
| <code>filterMode</code>  | Filter mode of the Section Filter.                                                                                     |
| <code>pModeValue</code>  | Mode value.                                                                                                            |
| <code>pMatchValue</code> | Match value.                                                                                                           |
| <code>pMaskValue</code>  | Mask value.                                                                                                            |
| <code>crcMode</code>     | The CRC checking mode of the Section Filter.                                                                           |
| <code>crc</code>         | CRC status of the CRC check on the last provided section from a client.                                                |

Dependent Attributes

None.

Invariants

None.

**Instantiation**

A `SectionFilter` is instantiated using the `AllocateSectionFilter` function of the `uhITsDmxPidFilter` interface.

**Streaming Behavior**

As long as the `SectionFilter` is stopped, `started` is set to `False` and the `SectionFilter` does not filter sections from the output stream of the `ClientStream` with which it is associated.

When the client wants to start the `SectionFilter`, it can use the `Start` function of the `uhITsDmxSectionFilter` interface. As a consequence, `started` is set to `True` and the `SectionFilter` starts filtering sections - provided that the PID or TPH Filter it is associated with is also started - and starts signaling sections extraction in the following way. If clients have subscribed to the appropriate notifications of events that occur in a Section Filter, a notification `OnSectionArrived` is signaled when a complete MPEG section has been filtered and written to a buffer that is explicitly managed by the client.

If the client wants to stop the `SectionFilter`, it can use the `Stop` function of the `uhITsDmxSectionFilter` interface. When calling this function, the `SectionFilter` will stop as soon as possible. A notification `OnStopped` is sent to the client, if subscribed, when the `SectionFilter` has stopped, `started` is then set to `False`.

**Active Behavior**

A `SectionFilter` has standard notification behavior; see `uhITsDmxSectionFilterNtf` for the events that can be notified.

**8.1.13.4.10 PesNotifier****Signature**

```
role PesNotifier {
    Bool          started;
    uhTsDmx_FilterMode_t filterMode;
}
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

A `PesNotifier` signals the reception of PES packets from the output stream of the `ClientStream` with which it is associated. It provides facilities to control the filter mode. A `PesNotifier` also provides facilities to subscribe and unsubscribe to notifications on events related to the arrival of PES packets.

**Independent Attributes**

Table 782

| Name                    | Description                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>started</code>    | Indicates whether the PES Notifier is started. It is <code>True</code> if and only if the PES Notifier is started. |
| <code>filterMode</code> | Filter mode of the PES Notifier.                                                                                   |

**Dependent Attributes**

None.

**Invariants**

None.

### Instantiation

A `PesNotifier` is instantiated using the `AllocatePesNotifier` function of the `uhITsDmxPidFilter` interface.

### Streaming Behavior

As long as the `PesNotifier` is stopped, `started` is set to `False` and the `PesNotifier` does not signal the reception of PES packets from the output stream of the `ClientStream` with which it is associated.

When the client wants to start the `PesNotifier`, it can use the `Start` function of the `uhITsDmxPesNotifier` interface. As a consequence `started` is set to `True` and the `PesNotifier` starts signaling the reception of PES packets - provided that the PID or TPH Filter it is associated with is also started - in the following way if clients are subscribe to the appropriate notifications of events that occur in a PES Notifier:

- A notification `OnCompletePacketArrived` is signaled when a complete PES packet has been captured and written to a buffer that is explicitly managed by the client.
- A notification `OnPartialPacketArrived` is signaled when a part of a PES packet has been captured and written to a buffer that is explicitly managed by the client.
- A notification `OnPacketCorrupt` is signaled when a partial or a complete PES packet has been flagged as corrupt due to a corruption of at least one transport packet part of this packet.
- A notification `OnStreamIdChanged` is signaled when the `'stream_id'` has changed. When the `PesNotifier` starts, this event will be fired as well on the arrival of the first PES packet.

If the client wants to stop the `PesNotifier`, it can use the `Stop` function of the `uhITsDmxPesNotifier` interface. When calling this function, the `PesNotifier` will stop as soon as possible. A notification `OnStopped` is sent to the client, if subscribed, when the `PesNotifier` has stopped, `started` is then set to `False`.

### Active Behavior

A `PesNotifier` has standard notification behavior; see `uhITsDmxPesNotifierNtf` for the events that can be notified.

#### 8.1.13.4.11 PesFilter

### Signature

```
role PesFilter specializes PesNotifier {
    UInt8      pMatchValue [demux.pesFilterDepth];
    UInt8      pMaskValue [demux.pesFilterDepth];
    uhTimeStamp_t minDts;
    uhTimeStamp_t maxDts;
    uhTimeStamp_t minPts;
    uhTimeStamp_t maxPts;
}
```

### Qualifiers

None.

**Description**

A `PesFilter` filters PES packets from the output stream of the `Stream` with which it is associated. It provides facilities for match/mask control on the filter. A `PesFilter` also provides facilities to control DTS/PTS ranges that are used as a filter criterion.

**Independent Attributes****Table 783**

| Name                     | Description                                                                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pMatchValue</code> | Match value.                                                                           |
| <code>pMaskValue</code>  | Mask value.                                                                            |
| <code>minDts</code>      | The minimum DTS value of the current range for DTS filtering of the PES Filter object. |
| <code>maxDts</code>      | The maximum DTS value of the current range for DTS filtering of the PES Filter object. |
| <code>minPts</code>      | The minimum PTS value of the current range for PTS filtering of the PES Filter object. |
| <code>maxPts</code>      | The maximum PTS value of the current range for PTS filtering of the PES Filter object. |

**Dependent Attributes**

None.

**Invariants**

- `minDts.timeStampHigh ≤ maxDts.timeStampHigh`
- **If** `minDts.timeStampHigh == maxDts.timeStampHigh`
  - `minDts.timeStampLow ≤ maxDts.timeStampLow`
  - `minPts.timeStampHigh ≤ maxPts.timeStampHigh`
- **If** `minPts.timeStampHigh == maxPts.timeStampHigh`
  - `minPts.timeStampLow ≤ maxPts.timeStampLow`

**Instantiation**

A `PesFilter` is instantiated using the `AllocatePesFilter` function of the `uhITsDmxPidFilter` interface.

**Streaming Behavior**

See Section *Streaming Behavior* of the `PesNotifier` role.

**Active Behavior**

A `PesFilter` has standard notification behavior; see `uhITsDmxPesNotifierNtf` for the events that can be notified.

**8.1.13.4.12 TsDemultiplexingClient****Signature**

```
role TsDemultiplexingClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

- actor

**Description**

A `TS Demultiplexing Client` represents a user or users of one or more of the following interfaces: `uhITsDmx`, `uhITsDmxCapability`, `uhITsDmxDescrambler`, `uhITsDmxStream`,

uhITsDmxStreamBuffer, uhITsDmxPcrFilter, uhITsDmxPidFilter,  
uhITsDmxDescramblerAssociation, uhITsDmxMatchMaskFilter, uhITsDmxSectionFilter,  
uhITsDmxPesFilter, and uhITsDmxPesNotifier interfaces.

#### 8.1.13.4.13 TsDemultiplexingConnectionManager

##### Signature

**role** TsDemultiplexingConnectionManager **specializes** PinObjectsClient {}

##### Qualifiers

— actor

##### Description

A TS Demultiplexing Connection Manager represents a user of the `uhIPinObjects` interface. This will normally be the connection manager responsible for establishing signal paths between logical components.

#### 8.1.13.5 Interfaces

##### 8.1.13.5.1 TsDemultiplexer::uhIPinObjects

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This interface of a TsDemultiplexer is a specialization of the `uhIPinObjects` interface as defined in 6.1.5. The specialization is defined by the specific values of the `pinIds` and the `pinObject` attributes of the TsDemultiplexer. These attributes are inherited from `PinObjectsProvider` and their values are set at instantiation time of a TsDemultiplexer; see subclause 8.1.13.3.2.

##### Interface ID

See 6.1.5.

##### 8.1.13.5.2 uhITsDmx

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This interface of a TsDemultiplexer provides facilities to allocate PCR Filters, Streams, and Descramblers. It also provides a `Subscribe` and an `Unsubscribe` function for notifications of events related to synchronization within the TsDemultiplexer.

##### Interface ID

`uuid( A9FD1A17-7E83-42A9-A9B9-98E1AABEF2D3 )`

**8.1.13.5.2.1 Subscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhITsDmxNtf          *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32               cookie,
    [in] uhTsDmx_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**8.1.13.5.2.2 Unsubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhITsDmxNtf          *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32               cookie,
    [in] uhTsDmx_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

**8.1.13.5.2.3 AllocatePcrFilter****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t AllocatePcrFilter ( [out] uhITsDmxPcrFilter **ppIPcrFilter );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Allocates a PCR Filter object and returns a pointer to the `uhITsDmxPcrFilter` interface of the allocated PCR Filter object.

**Parameters****Table 784**

| Name                      | Description                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>ppIPcrFilter</code> | Output parameter returning a pointer to the <code>uhITsDmxPcrFilter</code> interface of the allocated PCR Filter object if available. |

**Return Values**

Only non-standard error values are listed:

**Table 785**

| Name                                               | Description                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>UH_ERR_TSDMX_PCR_FILTER_NOT_AVAILABLE</code> | The allocation failed due to a lack of available PCR Filter objects. |

Precondition

True

Action

- If `demux.nrPcrFilters < demux.maxNrPcrFilters`
  - **Modify** `demux.nrPcrFilters`
  - **Modify** `demux.pcrFilters`

Postcondition

- If `demux.nrPcrFilters' < demux.maxNrPcrFilters`
  - `*ppIPcrFilter` contains a pointer to the `uhITsDmxPcrFilter` interface of the allocated PCR Filter object `pcrFilter`.
  - `pcrFilter` belongs to the set of PCR Filters `demux.pcrFilters` associated with the `TsDemultiplexer`.
  - `demux.nrPcrFilters == demux.nrPcrFilters' + 1`
  - `0x0000 ≤ pcrFilter.pid ≤ 0x1FFF`
  - `pcrFilter.started == False`
- else `*ppIPcrFilter == Null`

8.1.13.5.2.4 AllocateStream

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t AllocateStream (  
    [in] uhTsDmx_StreamDataType_t streamDataType,  
    [out] uhITsDmxStream **ppIStream );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Allocates a Client Stream object and returns a pointer to the `uhITsDmxStream` interface of the allocated Client Stream object.

Parameters

Table 786

| Name                        | Description                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>streamDataType</code> | The data type of the Client Stream object to allocate.                                                                   |
| <code>ppIStream</code>      | Output parameter returning a pointer to the <code>uhITsDmxStream</code> interface of the allocated Client Stream object. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

```
streamDataType != uhTsDmx_InternalFormat
```



**Action**

- Modify `demux.nrClientStreams`
- Modify `demux.clientStreams`

**Postcondition**

- `ppIStream` contains a pointer to the `uhITsDmxStream` interface of the allocated Client Stream object `clientStream`.
- `clientStream` belongs to the set of Client Streams `demux.clientStreams` associated with the `TsDemultiplexer`.
- `demux.nrClientStreams == demux.nrClientStreams' + 1`
- `clientStream.streamObjectType == ClientStream`
- `clientStream.dataType == streamDataType`
- `clientStream.outputType == ClientMemory`
- `clientStream.nrPidFilters == 0`
- `clientStream.pidFilters == {}`
- `clientStream.nrTphFilters == 0`
- `clientStream.tphFilters == {}`
- `clientStream.nrTransportPackets == 0`
- `clientStream.bufferType == undefined`
- `clientStream.bufferSize == 0`
- `clientStream.bufferGranularity == 0`
- `clientStream.pStartAddressBuffer == Null`
- `clientStream.pEndAddressBuffer == Null`

**Remarks**

- Only Client Stream objects can be allocated using this function. 'Platform' Stream objects can be accessed via the `GetPinRelatedObject` function (see 6.1.5) of the `uhIPinObjects` interface.

**8.1.13.5.2.5 AllocateDescrambler****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t AllocateDescrambler (
    [in] uhTsDmx_DescramblerType_t descramblerType,
    [out] uhITsDmxDescrambler      ** ppIDescrambler );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Allocates a Descrambler object and returns a pointer to the `uhITsDmxDescrambler` interface of the allocated Descrambler object.

**Parameters****Table 787**

| Name                         | Description                                          |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>descramblerType</code> | The data type of the Descrambler object to allocate. |

| Name                        | Description                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>ppIDescrambler</code> | Output parameter returning a pointer to the <code>uhTsDmxDescrambler</code> interface of the allocated Descrambler object if available. |

**Return Values**

Only non-standard error values are listed:

**Table 788**

| Name                                          | Description                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>UH_ERR_TSDMX_DESCR_NOT_AVAILABLE</code> | The allocation failed due to a lack of available Descrambler objects. |

**Precondition**

```

— descramblerType in demux.suppDescramblerTypes
— if demux.descramblerTypeRestriction == True
  — for each t in uhTsDmx_DescramblerType_t where t != descramblerType
    demux.nrDescramblers[t] == 0

```

**Action**

```

— If demux.nrDescramblers < demux.maxNrDescramblers
  — Modify demux.nrDescramblers
  — Modify demux.descramblers

```

**Postcondition**

```

— If demux.nrDescramblers' < demux.maxNrDescramblers
  — *ppIDescrambler contains a pointer to the uhTsDmxDescrambler interface of the allocated Descrambler object descrambler.
  — descrambler belongs to the set of Descramblers demux.descramblers associated with the TsDemultiplexer.
  — demux.nrDescramblers[descramblerType] == demux.nrDescramblers[descramblerType]' + 1
  — descrambler.descramblerType == descramblerType
  — descrambler.cw[] == undefined
  — descrambler.cwType == undefined
  — descrambler.defaultCwUsed == False
— else *ppIDescrambler == Null

```

**8.1.13.5.2.6 GetSyncLockStatus****Signature**

```

uhErrorCode_t GetSyncLockStatus (
    [out] puhTsDmx_SyncStatus_t pSyncLock );

```

**Qualifiers**

```

— synchronous

— thread-safe

```

**Description**

Returns whether the demultiplexer is currently synchronized with the input stream (i.e., it did encounter the synchronization byte on several consecutive transport packets) or not.

**Parameters****Table 789**

| <b>Name</b>            | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pSyncLock</code> | Output parameter returning whether the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component is currently synchronized with the input stream, i.e. whether it has previously encountered the synchronization byte on several consecutive transport packets of the incoming transport stream and is, currently, actively processing the incoming transport stream. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**`*pSyncLock == demux.syncLock`**8.1.13.5.3 uhITsDmxNtf****Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in a `TsDemultiplexer`. The `Subscribe` function of the `uhITsDmx` interface can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**`uuid( 00612F6D-1A38-44C8-A23B-69C5F305DB1B )`**8.1.13.5.3.1 OnSubscriptionChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32          cookie,
    [in] uhTsDmx_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

**8.1.13.5.3.2 OnSyncLost****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSyncLost ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is only called when subscribed to `uhTsDmx_SyncLost`. It is called when the `TsDemultiplexer` did not find the synchronization byte on several consecutive transport packets of the incoming transport stream after previously being synchronized, or in the invalid lock status.

**Parameters**

Table 790

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

8.1.13.5.3.3 OnSyncLock

**Signature**  
`[async] Void OnSyncLock ( [in] UInt32 cookie );`

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is only called when subscribed to `uhTsDmx_SyncLock`. It is called when the `TsDemultiplexer` did encounter the synchronization byte on several consecutive transport packets of the incoming transport stream after previously being out of sync, or in the invalid lock status.

**Parameters**

Table 791

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.13.5.3.4 OnSyncInvalid**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSyncInvalid (
    [in] UInt32 cookie
);
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is only called when subscribed to `uhTsDmx_SyncInvalid`. It is called when the sync lock status has become invalid.

**Parameters**

**Table 792**

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.13.5.3.5 OnInputOverflow**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnInputOverflow ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is only called when subscribed to `uhTsDmx_InputOverflow`. It is called when the `TsDemultiplexer` cannot become synchronized on the incoming transport stream due to its high bit rate.

**Parameters**

Table 793

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

8.1.13.5.4 `uhITsDmxCapability`

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This interface of a `TsDemultiplexer` provides facilities to retrieve the capability of filters and descramblers. For descramblers and each type of filter, the capabilities are the maximum number of filters and the number of currently available filters.

**Interface ID**  
`uuid( 8301FA19-B25D-46DD-BAAC-7E86C53BA83E )`

8.1.13.5.4.1 `GetSuppDescramblerTypes`

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t GetSuppDescramblerTypes (`  
    `[out] puhTsDmx_DescramblerTypes_t pSuppDescramblerTypes );`

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the descrambler types supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.

**Parameters**

Table 794

| Name                  | Description                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSuppDescramblerTypes | Output parameter returning the descrambler types supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— \*pSuppDescramblerTypes == demux.suppDescramblerTypes

**8.1.13.5.4.2    GetDescramblerTypeRestriction**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetDescramblerTypeRestriction (
    [out] pBool pRestriction );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns whether at any point in time all of the allocated descramblers have to be of the same type.

**Parameters**

Table 795

| Name         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pRestriction | Output parameter returning whether at any point in time all of the allocated descramblers have to be of the same type. It is <code>True</code> when at any point in time all of the allocated descramblers have to be of the same type. It is <code>False</code> , otherwise. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pRestriction == demux.descramblerTypeRestriction

**8.1.13.5.4.3     GetSuppBufferTypes**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppBufferTypes (
    [out] puhTsDmx_BufferTypes_t pSuppBufferTypes );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the set of buffer types supported by the platform.

**Parameters**

**Table 796**

| Name             | Description                                                                  |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSuppBufferTypes | Output parameter returning the set of buffer types supported by the platform |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

\*pSuppBufferTypes == demux.suppBufferTypes



**8.1.13.5.4.4 GetPidRestriction****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetPidRestriction (
    [out] pBool pRestriction );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns whether there is a restriction on using at any point in time the same PID value on more than one started PID/TPH filter.

**Parameters****Table 797**

| Name         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pRestriction | Output parameter returning whether there is a restriction on using at any point in time the same PID value on more than one started PID/TPH filter. It is <code>True</code> when the restriction applies: using the same PID value on more than one started PID/TPH filter is not supported. It is <code>False</code> when the restriction does not apply: using the same PID value on more than one started PID/TPH filter is supported. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

`True`

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

`*pRestriction == demux.pidRestriction`

**8.1.13.5.4.5 GetMaxNrPidFilters****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMaxNrPidFilters ( [out] pUInt32 pMaxNrPidFilters );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the maximum number of PID Filters supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.

## Parameters

Table 798

| Name             | Description                                                                                                                      |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMaxNrPidFilters | Output parameter returning the maximum number of PID Filters supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
— \*pMaxNrPidFilters == demux.maxNrPidFilters

### 8.1.13.5.4.6 GetAvailableNrPidFilters

#### Signature

```
uhErrorcode_t GetAvailableNrPidFilters (
    [out] pUInt32 pAvailableNrPidFilters );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns the number of available PID Filters.

## Parameters

Table 799

| Name                   | Description                                                     |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| pAvailableNrPidFilters | Output parameter returning the number of available PID Filters. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**

— \*pAvailableNrPidFilters == demux.maxNrPidFilters–demux.nrPidFilters

**8.1.13.5.4.7 GetMaxNrTphFilters****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMaxNrTphFilters ( [out] pUInt32 pMaxNrTphFilters );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the maximum number of TPH Filters supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.

**Parameters****Table 800****Name****Description**

pMaxNrTphFilters

Output parameter returning the maximum number of TPH Filters supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— \*pMaxNrTphFilters == demux.maxNrTphFilters

**8.1.13.5.4.8 GetAvailableNrTphFilters****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetAvailableNrTphFilters (
    [out] pUInt32 pAvailableNrTphFilters );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the number of available TPH Filters.

**Parameters****Table 801**

| Name                   | Description                                                     |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| pAvailableNrTphFilters | Output parameter returning the number of available TPH Filters. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
— \*pAvailableNrTphFilters == demux.maxNrTphFilters-demux.nrTphFilters

**8.1.13.5.4.9 GetMaxNrSectionFilters****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMaxNrSectionFilters ( [out] pUInt32 pMaxNrSectionFilters );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the maximum number of Section Filters supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.

**Parameters****Table 802**

| Name                 | Description                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMaxNrSectionFilters | Output parameter returning the maximum number of Section Filters supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**

— \*pMaxNrSectionFilters == demux.maxNrSectionFilters

**8.1.13.5.4.10 GetAvailableNrSectionFilters****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetAvailableNrSectionFilters (
    [out] pUInt32 pAvailableNrSectionFilters );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the number of available Section Filters.

**Parameters****Table 803****Name****Description**

pAvailableNrSectionFilters

Output parameter returning the number of available Section Filters.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— \*pAvailableNrSectionFilters == demux.maxNrSectionFilters - demux.nrSectionFilters

**8.1.13.5.4.11 GetMaxNrPesFilters****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMaxNrPesFilters ( [out] pUInt32 pMaxNrPesFilters );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the maximum number of PES Filters supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.

**Parameters****Table 804**

| Name             | Description                                                                                                                      |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMaxNrPesFilters | Output parameter returning the maximum number of PES Filters supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
— \*pMaxNrPesFilters == demux.maxNrPesFilters

**8.1.13.5.4.12 GetAvailableNrPesFilters****Signature**

```
uhErrorcode_t GetAvailableNrPesFilters (
    [out] pUInt32 pAvailableNrPesFilters );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns the number of available PES Filters.

**Parameters****Table 805**

| Name                   | Description                                                     |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| pAvailableNrPesFilters | Output parameter returning the number of available PES Filters. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**

— \*pAvailableNrPesFilters == demux.maxNrPesFilters-demux.nrPesFilters

**8.1.13.5.4.13 GetMaxNrPcrFilters****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMaxNrPcrFilters ( [out] pUInt32 pMaxNrPcrFilters );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the maximum number of PCR Filters supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.

**Parameters****Table 806****Name****Description**

pMaxNrPcrFilters

Output parameter returning the maximum number of PCR Filters supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— \*pMaxNrPcrFilters == demux.maxNrPcrFilters

**8.1.13.5.4.14 GetAvailableNrPcrFilters****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetAvailableNrPcrFilters (
    [out] pUInt32 pAvailableNrPcrFilters );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the number of available PCR Filters.

**Parameters****Table 807**

| Name                                | Description                                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pAvailableNrPcrFilters</code> | Output parameter returning the number of available PCR Filters. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
— `*pAvailableNrPcrFilters == demux.maxNrPcrFilters-demux.nrPcrFilters`

**8.1.13.5.4.15 GetMaxNrDescramblers****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMaxNrDescramblers (
    [in] uhTsDmx_DescramblerType_t descramblerType,
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxNrDescramblers );
```

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the maximum number of `Descramblers` of type `descramblerType` supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component.

**Parameters****Table 808**

| Name                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>descramblerType</code>    | The descrambler type.                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>pMaxNrDescramblers</code> | Output parameter returning the maximum number of <code>Descramblers</code> of type <code>descramblerType</code> supported by the Transport Stream Demultiplexing logical component. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True



**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
— \*pMaxNrDescramblers == demux.maxNrDescramblers[descramblerType]

8.1.13.5.4.16    **GetAvailableNrDescramblers**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetAvailableNrDescramblers (  
    [in] uhTsDmx\_DescramblerType\_t descramblerType,  
    [out] pUInt32                      pAvailableNrDescramblers );

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
  
— thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns the number of available Descramblers of type descramblerType.

**Parameters**

Table 809

| Name                     | Description                                                                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| descramblerType          | The descrambler type.                                                                    |
| pAvailableNrDescramblers | Output parameter returning the number of available Descramblers of type descramblerType. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
— \*pAvailableNrDescramblers == demux.maxNrDescramblers[descramblerType] -  
    demux.nrDescramblers[descramblerType]

8.1.13.5.5    **uhITsDmxTimeStampInput**

**Qualifiers**  
None.

Description

This interface of a `TsDemultiplexer` provides a means to control the time stamp mode in which the `TsDemultiplexer` works.

Interface ID

`uuid( A731D3CC-7AF2-4CF6-B091-660E09A3A837 )`

8.1.13.5.5.1     **SetTimeStampMode**

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t SetTimeStampMode (
    [in] uhTsDmx_TimeStampMode_t timeStampMode );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

Description

Sets the time stamp mode in which the `TsDemultiplexer` works.

Parameters

Table 810

| Name                       | Description                                                      |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>timeStampMode</code> | Time stamp mode in which the <code>TsDemultiplexer</code> works. |

Return Values

Only non-standard error values are listed:

Table 811

| Name                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>UH_ERR_TSDMX_TIME_STAMP_MODE_NOT_SET</code> | The update of the time stamp mode of the TS Demux did not occur: setting the time stamp mode of the TS Demux can be effectively performed only when the TS Demux is not actively processing an input transport stream, i.e. when <code>demux.syncLock == uhTsDmx_SyncStatusInvalid</code> , or when <code>demux.syncLock == uhTsDmx_SyncStatusLost</code> . |

Precondition

`True`

Action

- Modify `demux.timeStampMode`

Postcondition

`demux.timeStampMode == timeStampMode`

8.1.13.5.5.2     **GetTimeStampMode**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetTimeStampMode (
    [out] puhTsDmx_TimeStampMode_t pTimeStampMode );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current time stamp mode in which the `TsDemultiplexer` works.

**Parameters**

**Table 812**

| Name                        | Description                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pTimeStampMode</code> | Output parameter returning the current time stamp mode in which the <code>TsDemultiplexer</code> works. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pTimeStampMode == demux.timeStampMode`

8.1.13.5.6     **uhITsDmxDescrambler**

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**

This interface of a `Descrambler` provides facilities to set control words to be used for descrambling.

**Interface ID**

```
uuid( D365FEA1-BCB2-4d36-905F-156691B179C9 )
```

8.1.13.5.6.1    **SetControlWord**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetControlWord (
    [in] uhTsDmx_CwType_t          cwType,
    [in] UInt32                    size,
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pCw );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets a control word.

**Parameters**

**Table 813**

| Name                | Description                                              |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cwType</code> | The type of the control word.                            |
| <code>size</code>   | The size in bytes of the control word.                   |
| <code>pCw</code>    | Pointer to a control word with size bytes of valid data. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- Let `descrambler` be the `Descrambler` object on which this interface operates.
- `size == demux.cwDepth[descrambler.descramblerType]`
- `descrambler.defaultCwUsed == False`

**Action**

- Modify `descrambler.cwType`
- Modify `descrambler.cw`

**Postcondition**

- `descrambler.cwType == cwType`
- For each `i` in `{0 .. size-1}`
  - `descrambler.cw[i] == pCw[i]`

8.1.13.5.6.2    **UseDefaultControlWord**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t UseDefaultControlWord ( [in] Bool useDefaultCw );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous

— single-threaded

### Description

Sets whether to use the default control word for descrambling.

### Parameters

Table 814

| Name                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>useDefaultCw</code> | Indicates whether to use the default control word for descrambling. It is <code>True</code> when the default control word should be used. It is <code>False</code> when the default control word should not be used. |

### Return Values

Standard.

### Precondition

`True`

### Action

- Let `descrambler` be the `Descrambler` object on which this interface operates.
- Modify `descrambler.defaultCwUsed`

### Postcondition

- `descrambler.defaultCwUsed == useDefaultCw`

### 8.1.13.5.6.3 GetControlWordDepth

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetControlWordDepth (
    [out] pUInt32                                pControlWordDepth );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

### Description

Returns the control word depth - in bytes - of the `Descrambler` object. The control word depth is the size of a control word in bytes.

### Parameters

Table 815

| Name                           | Description                                             |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pControlWordDepth</code> | Output parameter returning the filter depth - in bytes. |

### Return Values

Standard.

## Precondition

True

## Action

None.

## Postcondition

- Let `descrambler` be the `Descrambler` object on which this interface operates.
- `*pControlWordDepth == demux.cwDepth[descrambler.descramblerType]`

### 8.1.13.5.7 uhITsDmxStream

## Qualifiers

None.

## Description

This interface of a Stream object provides facilities to allocate PID Filters and TPH Filters and to retrieve the number of transport packets that passed the PID Filter condition set on the associated PID or TPH Filter object(s).

## Interface ID

`uuid( 0A1FB286-9D06-4a4b-A124-B6D58AA352F4 )`

#### 8.1.13.5.7.1 AllocatePidFilter

## Signature

`uhErrorCode_t AllocatePidFilter( [out] uhITsDmxPidFilter **ppIPidFilter );`

## Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

## Description

Allocates a PID Filter object and returns a pointer to the `uhITsDmxPidFilter` interface of the allocated PID Filter object.

## Parameters

Table 816

### Name

### Description

`ppIPidFilter`

Output parameter returning a pointer to the `uhITsDmxPidFilter` interface of the allocated PID Filter object if available.

## Return Values

Only non-standard error values are listed:

Table 817

| Name                                  | Description                                                          |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UH_ERR_TSDMX_PID_FILTER_NOT_AVAILABLE | The allocation failed due to a lack of available PID Filter objects. |

**Precondition**

- The Stream object does not have an association with a PID or a TPH Filter object in case the data / output type of this Stream object differs from one of the following pairs (which are used for partial transport stream generation):
- (uhTsDmx\_Tp, ClientMemory),
- (uhTsDmx\_InternalFormat, Remultiplexer) (see Figure 88).

**Action**

- Let stream be the Stream object on which this interface operates.
- If demux.nrPidFilters < demux.maxNrPidFilters
  - Modify demux.nrPidFilters
  - Modify stream.nrPidFilters
  - Modify stream.pidFilters

**Postcondition**

- If demux.nrPidFilters' < demux.maxNrPidFilters
  - \*ppIPidFilter contains a pointer to the uhITsDmxPidFilter interface of the allocated PID Filter object pidFilter.
  - pidFilter belongs to the set of PID Filters stream.pidFilters associated with the Stream object stream.
  - demux.nrPidFilters == demux.nrPidFilters' + 1
  - stream.nrPidFilters == stream.nrPidFilters' + 1
  - 0x0000 ≤ pidFilter.pid ≤ 0x1FFF
  - pidFilter.started == False
  - pidFilter.nrSectionFilters == 0
  - pidFilter.sectionFilters == {}
  - pidFilter.nrPesFilters == 0
  - pidFilter.pesFilters == {}
  - pidFilter.pIPesNotifier == Null
  - pidFilter.scramblingStatus == uhTsDmx\_ScramblingUnknown
  - pidFilter.pIDescrambler == Null
- else \*ppIPidFilter == Null

**8.1.13.5.7.2 AllocateTphFilter****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t AllocateTphFilter ( [out] uhITsDmxPidFilter **ppITphFilter );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Allocates a TPH Filter object and returns a pointer to the uhITsDmxPidFilter interface of the allocated TPH Filter object.

## Parameters

Table 818

| Name         | Description                                                                                              |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ppITphFilter | Pointer to the <code>uhITsDmxPidFilter</code> interface of the allocated TPH Filter object if available. |

## Return Values

Only non-standard error values are listed:

Table 819

| Name                                  | Description                                                          |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UH_ERR_TSDMX_TPH_FILTER_NOT_AVAILABLE | The allocation failed due to a lack of available TPH Filter objects. |

## Precondition

- The Stream object does not have an association with a PID or a TPH Filter object in case the data / output type of this Stream object differs from one of the following pairs (which are used for partial transport stream generation):
- (`uhTsDmx_Tp`, `ClientMemory`),
- (`uhTsDmx_InternalFormat`, `Remultiplexer`) (see Figure 88).

## Action

- Let `stream` be the Stream object on which this interface operates.
- If `demux.nrTphFilters < demux.maxNrTphFilters`
  - **Modify** `demux.nrTphFilters`
  - **Modify** `stream.nrTphFilters`
  - **Modify** `stream.tphFilters`

## Postcondition

- If `demux.nrTphFilters' < demux.maxNrTphFilters`
  - `*ppITphFilter` contains a pointer to the `uhITsDmxPidFilter` interface of the allocated TPH Filter object `tphFilter`.
  - `tphFilter` belongs to the set of TPH Filters `stream.tphFilters` associated with the Stream object `stream`.
  - `demux.nrTphFilters == demux.nrTphFilters' + 1`
  - `stream.nrPidFilters == stream.nrPidFilters' + 1`
  - `0x0000 ≤ tphFilter.pid ≤ 0x1FFF`
  - `tphFilter.started == False`
  - `tphFilter.nrPesFilters == 0`
  - `tphFilter.pesFilters == {}`
  - `tphFilter.pIPesNotifier == Null`
  - `tphFilter.scramblingStatus == uhTsDmx_ScramblingUnknown`
  - `tphFilter.pIDescrambler == Null`
  - `tphFilter.pMatchValue[] == undefined`
  - `tphFilter.pMaskValue[] == undefined`
- **else** `*ppITphFilter == Null`



### 8.1.13.5.7.3 GetNrTransportPackets

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetNrTransportPackets ( [out] pUInt32 pNrTransportPackets );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

#### Description

For non-SPTS generation, it returns the number of transport packets that passed the PID Filter condition set on a PID or TPH Filter object associated to the Stream object since the last time this function was called.

For SPTS generation, this function returns the number of transport packets that passed the union of the PID Filter conditions of all PID and TPH Filter object associated to the Stream object since the last time this function was called.

#### Parameters

Table 820

| Name                | Description                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pNrTransportPackets | Output parameter returning the number of transport packets that passed the PID Filter condition set on the PID or TPH Filter since the last time this function was called. |

#### Return Values

Standard.

#### Precondition

- Let `stream` be the Stream object on which this interface operates.
- `stream.dataType == uhTsDmx_InternalFormat`

#### Action

- `dummyNrTp == stream.nrTransportPackets`
- Modify `stream.nrTransportPackets`

#### Postcondition

- `stream.nrTransportPackets == 0`
- `*pNrTransportPackets == dummyNrTp`

#### Remarks

- If the number of transport packets - received after the last time this function was called - exceeds the maximum number that a `UInt32` can hold, it will wrap around and restart from 0.

### 8.1.13.5.8 uhTsDmxStreamBuffer

#### Qualifiers

None.

**Description**

This interface of a Client Stream object provides facilities to retrieve and set the configuration of the buffer associated with the Client Stream object. It also contains a function to retrieve the pointers to the beginning and the end of the buffer and a function to release a lock on data that has been notified.

It also provides a `Subscribe` and an `Unsubscribe` function for notifications of events related to the buffer of the Client Stream object.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( D016F06A-1B4B-4377-88B8-A021922C7736 )`

**8.1.13.5.8.1 Subscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhITsDmxStreamBufferNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                        cookie,
    [in] uhTsDmx_StreamBufferNotifications_t notif );
```

**Qualifiers**

— `subscribe-function`

**8.1.13.5.8.2 Unsubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhITsDmxStreamBufferNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                        cookie,
    [in] uhTsDmx_StreamBufferNotifications_t notif );
```

**Qualifiers**

— `unsubscribe-function`

**8.1.13.5.8.3 GetBufferConfig****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetBufferConfig (
    [out] puhTsDmx_BufferType_t pBufferType,
    [out] pUInt32                pBufferSize,
    [out] pUInt32                pGranularity );
```

**Qualifiers**

— `synchronous`

— `thread-safe`

**Description**

Returns the configuration of the buffer associated with the Client Stream object.

**Parameters****Table 821**

| <b>Name</b>               | <b>Description</b>                                                                                              |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pBufferType</code>  | Output parameter returning the type of the buffer associated with the Client Stream object.                     |
| <code>pBufferSize</code>  | Output parameter returning the size - in bytes - of the buffer associated with the Client Stream object.        |
| <code>pGranularity</code> | Output parameter returning the granularity - in bytes - of the buffer associated with the Client Stream object. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- Let `stream` be the `ClientStream` object on which this interface operates.
- `*pBufferType == stream.bufferType`
- `*pBufferSize == stream.bufferSize`
- `*pGranularity == stream.bufferGranularity`

**Remarks**

When `*pGranularity == 0`, only complete PES packets are notified through the `OnCompletePacketArrived` notification of the `uhITsDmxPesNotifierNtf` notification interface, no (partial) PES packets will be notified through the `OnPartialPacketArrived` notification.

**8.1.13.5.8.4 SetBufferConfig****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetBufferConfig (
    [in] uhTSDmx_BufferType_t bufferType,
    [in] UInt32 requestedBufferSize,
    [in] UInt32 requestedGranularity,
    [out] pUInt32 pActualBufferSize,
    [out] pUInt32 pActualGranularity );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the configuration of the buffer associated with the Client Stream object.

## Parameters

Table 822

| Name                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>bufferType</code>           | The buffer type.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>requestedBufferSize</code>  | The requested size - in bytes - of the buffer associated with the Client Stream object.                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>requestedGranularity</code> | The requested granularity - in bytes - of the buffer associated with the Client Stream object. If partial packet notification is supported, it is a lower bound for the returned granularity $\ast pActualGranularity$ . |
| <code>pActualBufferSize</code>    | Output parameter returning the actual size - in bytes - of the buffer associated with the Client Stream object.                                                                                                          |
| <code>pActualGranularity</code>   | Output parameter returning the actual granularity - in bytes - of the buffer associated with the Client Stream object.                                                                                                   |

## Return Values

Standard.

## Precondition

- Only buffers that are associated to a Client Stream object of data type `uhTsDmx_Pes` or `uhTsDmx_Tp` can have a granularity different from 0. For all others, the granularity is 0.
- The minimum granularity for transport packets either equals the transport packet size or equals 0. The returned granularity will be always a multiple of the transport packet size or 0.
- `bufferType` in `stream.supBufferTypes`

## Action

- Let `stream` be the ClientStream object on which this interface operates.
- Modify `stream.bufferType`
- Modify `stream.bufferSize`
- Modify `stream.bufferGranularity`

## Postcondition

- `stream.bufferType == bufferType`
- `stream.bufferSize ==` a number greater or equal to 0 determined by the platform
- If partial packet notification is supported
  - `stream.bufferGranularity ≥ requestedGranularity`
- else
  - `stream.bufferGranularity == 0`
- `*pActualBufferSize == stream.bufferSize`
- `*pActualGranularity == stream.bufferGranularity`

## Remarks

- For PES data, the granularity specifies the size of a partial PES packet that will be notified.
- If partial packet notification is supported, then the requested granularity `requestedGranularity` is a lower bound for the returned granularity; if partial packet notification is not supported, then the returned granularity will be 0.
- If a client does not want any granularity for data of type `uhTsDmx_Pes` or `uhTsDmx_Tp`, the `requestedGranularity` should be 0.

- When `*pActualGranularity == 0`, only complete PES packets are notified through the `OnCompletePacketArrived` notification of the `uhITsDmxPesNotifierNtf` notification interface, no (partial) PES packets will be notified through the `OnPartialPacketArrived` notification.

#### 8.1.13.5.8.5 Free

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Free ( [in] UInt32 dataCookie );
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

##### Description

Releases a lock on notified data in the buffer associated with the Client Stream object. Only when all objects that have been notified for a certain data unit have released their lock on this data unit, this data unit will be freed.

##### Parameters

Table 823

| Name                    | Description                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>dataCookie</code> | Value passed via a notification function of a notify interface when a complete data unit has been filtered and written to a buffer. |

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

- `dataCookie` identifies a previously filtered, notified, and not yet released data unit that is present in the buffer associated with the Client Stream.

##### Action

None.

##### Postcondition

- A lock on the data identified by `dataCookie` has been released.

##### Remarks

- If a client unlocks a partial PES packet using this function, it implicitly unlocks all partial PES packets that are part of the same PES packet and that are notified and written to the buffer associated with the Client Stream object **prior** to this partial PES packet. The lock status of any PES packet data that are part of the same PES packet and that are notified and written to the buffer associated with the Client Stream object **after** to this partial PES packet remains unaffected.

8.1.13.5.9    uhITsDmxStreamBufferNtf

Qualifiers

—    callback

Description

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in a Client Stream object. The `Subscribe` function of the `uhITsDmxStreamBuffer` can be used to subscribe to these events.

Interface ID

`uuid( E7E489A8-2EB9-49f7-9FCE-1A5DC29ECB91 )`

8.1.13.5.9.1    OnSubscriptionChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhTsDmx_StreamBufferNotifications_t notif );
```

Qualifiers

—    onsubscriptionchanged-function

8.1.13.5.9.2    OnBufferFull

Signature

```
[async] Void OnBufferFull ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is only called when subscribed to `uhTsDmx_StreamBufferFull`. It is called if the Client Stream object does not have enough free space in its associated buffer for storing newly received data.

Parameters

Table 824

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

`True`

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**Remarks**

— In case a buffer does not hold enough free space to store data, this data is discarded and the filter process is paused. Furthermore, data which arrives after the pausing of the filter process will be discarded as well, even if this data is smaller in size and might fit in the remaining free buffer space. If the filter process is paused due to lack of free buffer space, it will be resumed in case a client releases the lock on some data and frees buffer space in a way that there is enough consecutive space from the position in the buffer where the last data has been written to store new data.

**8.1.13.5.10 uhITsDmxTimeStampOutput****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of a `PlatformStream` provides functionality to enable or disable the addition of time stamps to the outputted (platform) stream.

**Interface ID**

uuid( C3CF2E71-EF2D-417D-BF10-BEE6A30CB4DC )

**8.1.13.5.10.1 EnableTimeStamps****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t EnableTimeStamps (
    [in] Bool enable );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

This function is used by the client to indicate that the addition of time stamps to the outputted (platform) stream must be enabled or disabled.

**Parameters****Table 825**

| Name                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>enable</code> | Indication on whether the addition of time stamps to the outputted (platform) stream must be enabled or disabled. It is <code>True</code> if the addition of time stamps to the outputted (platform) stream must be enabled. It is <code>False</code> otherwise. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

- Let `stream` be the `PlatformStream` object on which this interface operates.
- for each `pidFilter` belonging to the set of PID Filters `stream.pidFilters` associated with `stream`:
  - `pidFilter.started == False`

Action

- Modify `stream.enableTimeStamps`

Postcondition

`stream.enableTimeStamps == enable`

8.1.13.5.10.2 GetTimeStampsEnabled

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetTimeStampsEnabled (  
    [out] pBool pEnable );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns the enable/disable setting set by the client on the addition of time stamps to the outputted (platform) stream.

Parameters

Table 826

| Name                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pEnable</code> | Output parameter returning whether the addition of time stamps to the outputted (platform) stream is enabled or disabled. It is <code>True</code> if the addition of time stamps to the outputted (platform) stream is enabled. It is <code>False</code> otherwise. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

- Let `stream` be the `PlatformStream` object on which this interface operates.

Action

None.

Postcondition

`*pEnable == stream.enableTimeStamps`



#### 8.1.13.5.11 uhITsDmxPcrFilter

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This interface of a PCR Filter provides facilities to start and to stop the PCR Filter and to retrieve and to set a PID. It also provides a `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` function on notifications of events that occur in the PCR Filter.

##### Interface ID

`uuid( 76E4B579-432F-43E2-8666-E372F36B9829 )`

#### 8.1.13.5.11.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhITsDmxPcrFilterNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                    cookie,
    [in] uhTsDmx_PcrNotifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— `subscribe-function`

#### 8.1.13.5.11.2 Unsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhITsDmxPcrFilterNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                    cookie,
    [in] uhTsDmx_PcrNotifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— `unsubscribe-function`

#### 8.1.13.5.11.3 Start

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Start ( );
```

##### Qualifiers

— `synchronous`

— `single-threaded`

##### Description

Starts the PCR Filter object on which this interface operates.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- Let `pcrFilter` be the `PcrFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- Modify `pcrFilter.started`

**Postcondition**

- `pcrFilter.started == True`

**8.1.13.5.11.4 Stop**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t Stop ( );`

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sends a stop request to the PCR Filter object on which this interface operates.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Asynchronous Action**

- Let `pcrFilter` be the `PcrFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- Modify `pcrFilter.started`
- Notify `OnStopped(*)`

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

— `pcrFilter.started == False`

**8.1.13.5.11.5   GetPid**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t GetPid ( [out] pUInt16 pPid );`

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current PID of the PCR Filter.

**Parameters**

**Table 827**

| Name              | Description                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <code>pPid</code> | Output parameter returning the current PID. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- Let `pcrFilter` be the `PcrFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- `*pPid == pcrFilter.pid`

**8.1.13.5.11.6   SetPid**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t SetPid ( [in] UInt16 pid );`

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the PID of the PCR Filter.

**Parameters****Table 828**

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Description</b> |
|-------------|--------------------|
| pid         | The PID.           |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- $0x0000 \leq \text{pid} \leq 0x1FFF$
- Let `pcrFilter` be the `PcrFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- `pcrFilter.started == False`

**Action**

- Modify `pcrFilter.pid`

**Postcondition**`pcrFilter.pid == pid`**8.1.13.5.12 uhITsDmxPcrFilterNtf****Qualifiers**

- callback

**Description**

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in a PCR Filter. The `Subscribe` function of the `uhITsDmxPcrFilter` interface can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**

```
uuid( 9FD894AC-B68F-40bb-AA82-9EB1C922CB94 )
```

**8.1.13.5.12.1 OnSubscriptionChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhTsDmx_PcrNotifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

- onsubscriptionchanged-function

**8.1.13.5.12.2 OnStopped****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnStopped ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is only called when subscribed to `uhTsDmx_PcrFilterStopped`. It is called in response to a `Stop` call to indicate that a filter object has stopped.

**Parameters**

Table 829

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**Remarks**

Once received, the client will not receive any other event from the filter object on which the corresponding control interface operates before being started again, except for `uhTsDmx_PcrFilterStopped` when an already stopped filter object is stopped again.

**8.1.13.5.13 uhITsDmxPidFilter****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of a PID or TPH Filter provides facilities to start and to stop the filter and to retrieve and to set a PID. It also provides a `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` function on notifications of events that occur in the filter.

This interface also provides facilities to allocate Section Filters, PES Filters, and PES Notifiers.

**Interface ID**

```
uuid( 42D98FE1-AF29-4C08-802A-EA2577266D3A )
```

#### 8.1.13.5.13.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhTsdmxPidFilterNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                   cookie,
    [in] uhTsdmx_PidNotifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

#### 8.1.13.5.13.2 Unsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhTsdmxPidFilterNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                   cookie,
    [in] uhTsdmx_PidNotifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

#### 8.1.13.5.13.3 Start

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Start ( );
```

##### Qualifiers

— synchronous

— single-threaded

##### Description

Starts the PID or TPH Filter object on which this interface operates. If the Stream object - that is associated with the PID or TPH Filter object on which this interface operates - has data type `uhTsdmx_MpegSection` and output type `ClientMemory`, then if no Section Filter is associated with the PID or TPH Filter object or no associated Section Filter is started, it filters nothing.

##### Parameters

None.

##### Return Values

Only non-standard error values are listed:

Table 830

| Name                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UH_ERR_TSDMX_FILTER_NOT_STARTED | Starting the PID or TPH Filter failed: the restriction on the use of the same PID value on more than one started PID/TPH filter applies (i.e. <code>demux.pidRestriction == True</code> ) and there is another PID or TPH Filter - associated with another Stream that has another data type - that is already filtering data (i.e. that is in the 'started' state) on the same PID. |

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- Let `filter` be the `PidFilter` or `TphFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- Modify `filter.started`

**Postcondition**

- `filter.started == True`

**8.1.13.5.13.4 Stop****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Stop ( );
```

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sends a stop request to the PID or TPH Filter object on which this interface operates.

If the Stream object - associated with the PID or TPH Filter object on which this interface operates - is a Platform Stream (i.e. `stream.StreamType == PlatformStream`), then the data associated with this PID or TPH filter in the buffer used by the Stream object is flushed.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Asynchronous Action**

- Let `pidTphFilter` be the `PidFilter` or `TphFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- Modify `pidTphFilter.started`
- Notify `OnStopped(*)`

## Asynchronous Postcondition

— `pidTphFilter.started == False`

### 8.1.13.5.13.5 GetPid

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetPid ( [out] pUInt16 pPid );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

#### Description

Returns the current PID of the PID or TPH Filter on which this interface operates.

#### Parameters

**Table 831**

##### Name

`pPid`

##### Description

Output parameter returning the current PID.

#### Return Values

Standard.

#### Precondition

True

#### Action

None.

#### Postcondition

- Let filter be the `PidFilter` or `TphFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- `*pPid == filter.pid`

### 8.1.13.5.13.6 SetPid

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t SetPid ( [in] UInt16 pid );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

#### Description

Sets the PID of the PID or TPH Filter on which this interface operates.



Parameters

Table 832

| Name | Description |
|------|-------------|
| pid  | The PID.    |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**

- 0x0000 <= pid <= 0x1FFF
- Let filter be the PidFilter or TphFilter object on which this interface operates.  
filter.started == False

**Action**

- Modify filter.pid

**Postcondition**

- filter.pid == pid

8.1.13.5.13.7 AllocateSectionFilter

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t AllocateSectionFilter (
    [out] uhITsDmxSectionFilter**ppISectionFilter );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Allocates a Section Filter object and returns a pointer to the uhITsDmxSectionFilter interface of the allocated Section Filter.

Parameters

Table 833

| Name             | Description                                                                                                         |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ppISectionFilter | Output parameter returning a pointer to the uhITsDmxSectionFilter interface of the allocated Section Filter object. |

**Return Values**

Only non-standard error values are listed:

Table 834

| Name                                  | Description                                                              |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UH_ERR_TSDMX_SCT_FILTER_NOT_AVAILABLE | The allocation failed due to a lack of available Section Filter objects. |

**Precondition**

- The `Stream` object - that is associated with the PID filter object on which this interface operates - has data type `uhTsDmx_MpegSection` and output type `ClientMemory`.
- The filter object on which this interface operates is a PID Filter.
- Let `filter` be the `PidFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- `filter.nrPesFilters == 0`
- `filter.pIPesNotifier == Null`

**Action**

- If `demux.nrSectionFilters < demux.maxNrSectionFilters`
  - Modify `demux.nrSectionFilters`
  - Modify `filter.nrSectionFilters`
  - Modify `filter.sectionFilters`

**Postcondition**

- If `demux.nrSectionFilters' < demux.maxNrSectionFilters`
  - `*ppISectionFilter` contains a pointer to the `uhITsDmxSectionFilter` interface of the allocated Section Filter object `sectionFilter`.
  - `demux.nrSectionFilters == demux.nrSectionFilters' + 1`
  - `sectionFilter` belongs to the set of Section Filters `filter.sectionFilters` associated with the PID Filter object on which this interface operates.
  - `filter.nrSectionFilters == filter.nrSectionFilters' + 1`
  - `sectionFilter.started == False`
  - `sectionFilter.filterMode == uhTsDmx_Continuous`
  - `sectionFilter.pModeValue == undefined`
  - `sectionFilter.pMatchValue == undefined`
  - `sectionFilter.pMaskValue == undefined`
  - `sectionFilter.crcMode == uhTsDmx_DontCheckCrc`
  - `sectionFilter.crc == undefined`
- else `*ppISectionFilter == Null`

**8.1.13.5.13.8 AllocatePesFilter****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t AllocatePesFilter ( [out] uhITsDmxPesFilter **ppIPesFilter );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Allocates a PES Filter object and returns a pointer to the `uhITsDmxPesFilter` interface of the allocated PES Filter object.

**Parameters****Table 835**

| Name                      | Description                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>ppIPesFilter</code> | Output parameter returning a pointer to the <code>uhITsDmxPesFilter</code> interface of the allocated PES Filter object. |

**Return Values**

Only non-standard error values are listed:

**Table 836**

| Name                                               | Description                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>UH_ERR_TSDMX_PES_FILTER_NOT_AVAILABLE</code> | The allocation failed due to a lack of available PES Filter objects. |

**Precondition**

- The Stream object - that is associated with the PID or TPH Filter object on which this interface operates - has:  
(data type `uhTsDmx_Pes` and output type `ClientMemory`) OR  
(data type `uhTsDmx_InternalFormat` and output type (`VideoDecoder` or `AudioDecoder` or `TeletextDecoder` or `SubtitleDecoder`)).
- Let filter be the `PidFilter` or `TphFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- `filter.pIPesNotifier == Null`
- If the filter object on which this interface operates is a PID Filter
  - `filter.nrSectionFilters == 0`

**Action**

- If `demux.nrPesFilters < demux.maxNrPesFilters`
  - Modify `demux.nrPesFilters`
  - Modify `filter.nrPesFilters`
  - Modify `filter.pesFilters`

**Postcondition**

- If `demux.nrPesFilters' < demux.maxNrPesFilters`
  - `*ppIPesFilter` contains a pointer to the `uhITsDmxPesFilter` interface of the allocated PES Filter object `pesFilter`.
  - `demux.nrPesFilters == demux.nrPesFilters' + 1`
  - `pesFilter` belongs to the set of PES Filters `filter.pesFilters` associated with the PID or TPH Filter object on which this interface operates.
  - `filter.nrPesFilters == filter.nrPesFilters' + 1`
  - `pesFilter.started == False`
  - `pesFilter.filterMode == uhTsDmx_Continuous`
  - `pesFilter.pMatchValue == undefined`
  - `pesFilter.pMaskValue == undefined`
  - `pesFilter.minDts.timeStampHigh == 0`
  - `pesFilter.minDts.timeStampLow == 0`
  - `pesFilter.maxDts.timeStampHigh == 1`
  - `pesFilter.maxDts.timeStampLow == 0xFFFFFFFF`
  - `pesFilter.minPts.timeStampHigh == 0`
  - `pesFilter.minPts.timeStampLow == 0`
  - `pesFilter.maxPts.timeStampHigh == 1`
  - `pesFilter.maxPts.timeStampLow == 0xFFFFFFFF`
- else `*ppIPesFilter == Null`

## 8.1.13.5.13.9 AllocatePesNotifier

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t AllocatePesNotifier ( [out] uhITsDmxPesNotifier **ppIPesNotifier );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Allocates a PES Notifier object and returns a pointer to the `uhITsDmxPesNotifier` interface of the allocated PES Notifier object.

**Parameters**

Table 837

| Name                        | Description                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>ppIPesNotifier</code> | Output parameter returning a pointer to the <code>uhITsDmxPesNotifier</code> interface of the allocated PES Notifier object. |

**Return Values**

Only non-standard error values are listed:

Table 838

| Name                                               | Description                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>UH_ERR_TSDMX_PES_FILTER_NOT_AVAILABLE</code> | The allocation failed due to a lack of available PES Notifier objects. |

**Precondition**

- The `Stream` object - that is associated with the PID or TPH Filter object on which this interface operates - has (data type `uhTsDmx_Pes` and output type `ClientMemory`).
- Let `filter` be the `PidFilter` or `TphFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- `filter.nrPesFilters == 0`
- `filter.pIPesNotifier == Null`
- If the filter object on which this interface operates is a PID Filter
  - `filter.nrSectionFilters == 0`

**Action**

- If `demux.nrPesFilters < demux.maxNrPesFilters`
  - **Modify** `demux.nrPesFilters`
  - **Modify** `filter.pIPesNotifier`

**Postcondition**

- If `demux.nrPesFilters' < demux.maxNrPesFilters`
  - `*ppIPesNotifier` contains a pointer to the `uhITsDmxPesNotifier` interface of the allocated PES Notifier object `pesNotifier`.
  - `demux.nrPesFilters == demux.nrPesFilters' + 1`
  - `filter.pIPesNotifier == *ppIPesNotifier`

```
— pesNotifier.started == False
— pesNotifier.filterMode == uhTsDmx_Continuous
— else *ppIPesNotifier == Null
```

8.1.13.5.14 uhITsDmxPidFilterNtf

Qualifiers

— callback

Description

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in a PID or a TPH Filter. The `Subscribe` function of the `uhITsDmxPidFilter` interface can be used to subscribe to these events.

Interface ID

`uuid( A279EA1C-971D-4af4-8AEA-B7B9D20DCBB1 )`

8.1.13.5.14.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhTsDmx_PidNotifications_t notif );
```

Qualifiers

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

8.1.13.5.14.2 OnStopped

Signature

```
[async] Void OnStopped ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is only called when subscribed to `uhTsDmx_PidFilterStopped`. It is called in response to a `Stop` call to indicate that a filter object has stopped.

Parameters

Table 839

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

Return Values

None.

## Precondition

True

## Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

## Postcondition

True

## Remarks

— Once received, the client will not receive any other event from the filter object on which the corresponding control interface operates before being started again, except for `uhTsDmx_PidFilterStopped` when an already stopped filter object is stopped again.

### 8.1.13.5.15 uhITsDmxDescramblerAssociation

## Qualifiers

None.

## Description

This interface of a PID or TPH Filter provides facilities to associate and disassociate a Descrambler to a PID or TPH Filter. It also provides a function to retrieve the scrambling status of a filtered component (e.g. a video PES).

## Interface ID

`uuid( 52F74362-677A-4d02-BEEF-8CA0332B1024 )`

### 8.1.13.5.15.1 AssociateDescrambler

## Signature

`uhErrorCode_t AssociateDescrambler ( [in] uhITsDmxDescrambler *pIDescrambler );`

## Qualifiers

— synchronous

— thread-safe

## Description

Associates an allocated `Descrambler` object with the PID or TPH Filter object on which this interface operates.

## Parameters

Table 840

## Name

`pIDescrambler`

## Description

The pointer to the `uhITsDmxDescrambler` interface of the `Descrambler` object to associate.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `pIDescrambler` is a pointer to the `uhITsDmxDescrambler` interface of an allocated `Descrambler` object.
- Let `filter` be the `PidFilter` or `TphFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- `filter.pIDescrambler == Null`

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

`filter.pIDescrambler == pIDescrambler`

**8.1.13.5.15.2 DisassociateDescrambler****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t DisassociateDescrambler ( );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Disassociates a `Descrambler` object from the PID or TPH Filter object on which this interface operates.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- Let `filter` be the `PidFilter` or `TphFilter` object on which this interface operates.

`filter.pIDescrambler == Null`

**Remarks**

- The disassociated `Descrambler` object will not be deallocated until its reference count becomes 0.

## 8.1.13.5.15.3 GetDescramblerAssociation

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetDescramblerAssociation (
    [out] uhITsDmxDescrambler **ppIDescrambler );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns whether a `Descrambler` object is associated with the PID or TPH Filter object on which this interface operates.

**Parameters**

Table 841

| Name                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>ppIDescrambler</code> | Output parameter returning a pointer to the <code>uhITsDmxDescrambler</code> interface of the associated Descrambler object. It is <code>NULL</code> when the PID or TPH Filter object on which this interface operates has no association with a <code>Descrambler</code> object. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- Let `filter` be the `PidFilter` or `TphFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- `*ppIDescrambler == filter.pIDescrambler`

## 8.1.13.5.15.4 GetScramblingStatus

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetScramblingStatus (
    [out] puhTsDmx_ScramblingStatus_t pScramblingStatus );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe



**Description**

Returns whether the current stream - filtered by the PID or TPH Filter object on which this interface operates - is scrambled.

**Parameters****Table 842**

| <b>Name</b>                    | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pScramblingStatus</code> | Output parameter returning whether the current stream - filtered by the PID or TPH Filter object on which this interface operates - is scrambled. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- Let `filter` be the `PidFilter` or `TphFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- `*pScramblingStatus == filter.scramblingStatus`

**8.1.13.5.16 uhITsDmxMatchMaskFilter****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of TPH Filter allows match/mask control on filters. A mask is a bit pattern. A '1' at bit 'x' of the mask means that the corresponding bit in the data to be filtered must match the value of bit 'x' of the match value. A '0' at bit 'x' of the mask means that the corresponding bit in the data to be filtered is a 'don't care' with respect to whether it will be passed by the filter or not.

A transport packet passes the match/mask criteria if all bits of the packet match with their corresponding bit of the match value if they are not masked out.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( D5B75802-FB6C-43E4-BAD2-A4292A0F450B )`

**8.1.13.5.16.1 GetMatchMask****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMatchMask (
    [in] UInt32          size,
    [out, size_is(size)] pUInt8 pMatchValue,
    [out, size_is(size)] pUInt8 pMaskValue );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current match and mask value of the TPH Filter.

**Parameters****Table 843**

| Name        | Description                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| size        | The size - in bytes - of *pMatchValue and *pMaskValue. |
| pMatchValue | Output parameters returning the current match value.   |
| pMaskValue  | Output parameters returning the current mask value.    |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- size == ceiling(demux.tphFilterDepth/8)

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- For each i in {0 .. size-1}
  - pMatchValue [i] == tphFilter.pMatchValue[i]
  - pMaskValue [i] == tphFilter.pMaskValue[i]

**8.1.13.5.16.2 SetMatchMask****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetMatchMask (
    [in] UInt32          size,
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pMatchValue,
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pMaskValue );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the match value and mask value of the TPH Filter.

**Parameters**

**Table 844**

| Name        | Description                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| size        | The size - in bytes - of *pMatchValue and *pMaskValue. |
| pMatchValue | Pointer to the match value to be set.                  |
| pMaskValue  | Pointer to the mask value to be set.                   |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- Let tphFilter be the TphFilter object on which this interface operates.
- $1 \leq \text{size} \leq \text{ceiling}(\text{demux.tphFilterDepth}/8)$

**Action**

- Modify tphFilter.pMatchValue
- Modify tphFilter.pMaskValue

**Postcondition**

- For each  $i$  in  $\{0 \dots \text{size}-1\}$ 
  - $\text{tphFilter.pMatchValue}[i] == \text{pMatchValue}[i]$
  - $\text{tphFilter.pMaskValue}[i] == \text{pMaskValue}[i]$

**Remarks**

- Figure 89 show the bit-mask for a TPH Filter. If a bit is excluded, it means that no match and mask filter criteria can be set on this bit.
- The sync\_byte, the PID, and the transport\_error\_indicator bit are excluded from the mask and match field. See Figure 89.

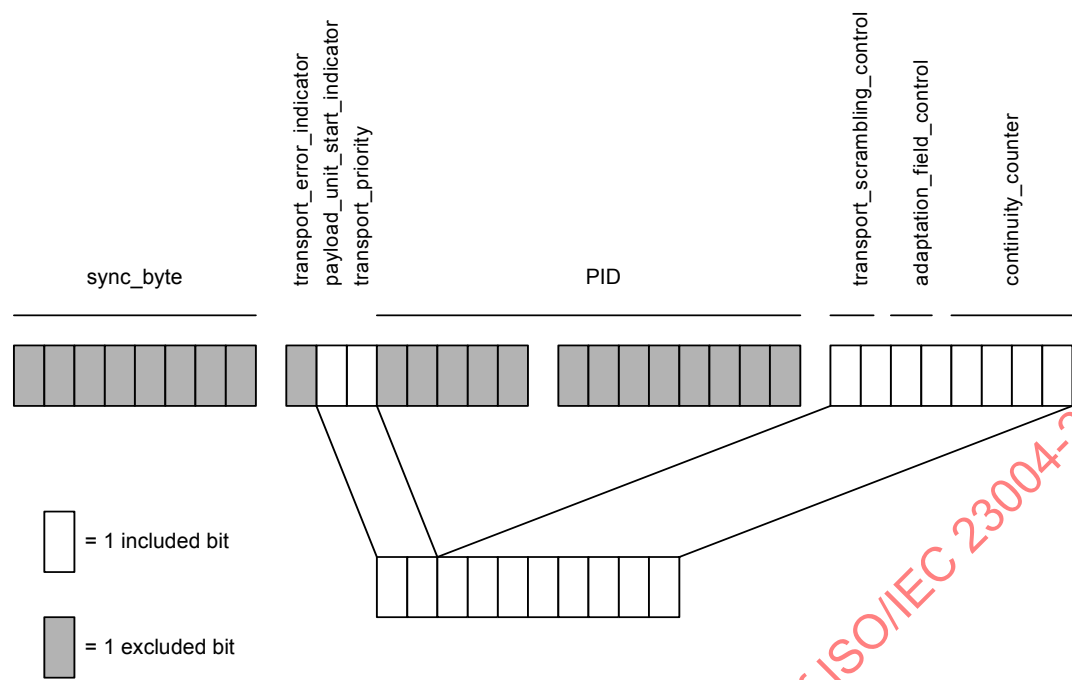


Figure 89 — The 10-bit mask for TPH Filters

8.1.13.5.16.3 GetFilterDepth

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetFilterDepth ( [out] pUInt32 pFilterDepth );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns the filter depth - in **bits** - of the TPH Filter object.

Parameters

Table 845

| Name         | Description                                                                            |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pFilterDepth | Output parameter returning the filter depth - in <b>bits</b> - of a TPH Filter object. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

True

Action

None.

**Postcondition**

— \*pFilterDepth == demux.tphFilterDepth

**8.1.13.5.17 uhITsDmxSectionFilter****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of a Section Filter provides facilities to start and to stop the filter. It provides also facilities to retrieve and to set the filter mode and allows match/mask control on the filter. It also provides a `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` function on notifications of events that occur in the Section Filter.

This interface also provides facilities to check the integrity of data. It allows CRC checks, setting and retrieval of the CRC mode.

**Interface ID**

uuid( B44FD7D1-D24B-4C50-9609-1DE7EA08CD23 )

**8.1.13.5.17.1 Subscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhITsDmxSectionFilterNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                        cookie,
    [in] uhTsDmx_SectionNotifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**8.1.13.5.17.2 Unsubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhITsDmxSectionFilterNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                        cookie,
    [in] uhTsDmx_SectionNotifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

**8.1.13.5.17.3 Start****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Start ( );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

Starts the Section Filter object on which this interface operates.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- Let `sectionFilter` be the `SectionFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- Modify `sectionFilter.started`

**Postcondition**

- `sectionFilter.started == True`

**8.1.13.5.17.4 Stop**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t Stop ( );`

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sends a stop request to the Section Filter object on which this interface operates.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Asynchronous Action**

- Let `sectionFilter` be the `SectionFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- Modify `sectionFilter.started`
- Notify `OnStopped(*)`

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

— sectionFilter.started == False

**8.1.13.5.17.5 GetFilterDepth**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t GetFilterDepth ( [out] pUInt32 pFilterDepth );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the filter depth - in bytes - of Section Filters.

**Parameters**

**Table 846**

| Name         | Description                                                                  |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pFilterDepth | Output parameter returning the filter depth - in bytes - of Section Filters. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- Let sectionFilter be the SectionFilter object on which this interface operates.
- \*pFilterDepth == demux.sectionFilterDepth

**8.1.13.5.17.6 GetFilterMode**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t GetFilterMode ( [out] puhTsDmx\_FilterMode\_t pFilterMode );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current filter mode of the Section Filter object.

**Parameters****Table 847**

| Name                     | Description                                         |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pFilterMode</code> | Output parameter returning the current filter mode. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
 — Let `sectionFilter` be the `SectionFilter` object on which this interface operates.  
 — `*pFilterMode == sectionFilter.filterMode`

**8.1.13.5.17.7 SetFilterMode****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetFilterMode ( [in] uhTsDmx_FilterMode_t filterMode );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the filter mode of the `SectionFilter` object.

**Parameters****Table 848**

| Name                    | Description      |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| <code>filterMode</code> | The filter mode. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**

- Let `sectionFilter` be the `SectionFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- Modify `sectionFilter.filterMode`



**Postcondition**

sectionFilter.filterMode == filterMode

**8.1.13.5.17.8 GetMatchMask**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMatchMask (  
    [in] UInt32          size,  
    [out, size_is(size)] pUInt8 pModeValue,  
    [out, size_is(size)] pUInt8 pMatchValue,  
    [out, size_is(size)] pUInt8 pMaskValue );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current mode value, match value, and mask value of the Section Filter.

**Parameters**

**Table 849**

| Name        | Description                                                               |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| size        | The size - in bytes - of *pModeValue, *pMatchValue and *pMaskValue.       |
| pModeValue  | Output parameters returning the start address of the current mode value.  |
| pMatchValue | Output parameters returning the start address of the current match value. |
| pMaskValue  | Output parameters returning the start address of the current mask value.  |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- Let sectionFilter be the SectionFilter object on which this interface operates.
- size == demux.sectionFilterDepth

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- For each i in {0 .. size -1}
  - pModeValue[i] == sectionFilter.pModeValue[i]
  - pMatchValue[i] == sectionFilter.pMatchValue[i]
  - pMaskValue[i] == sectionFilter.pMaskValue[i]

## 8.1.13.5.17.9 SetMatchMask

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetMatchMask (
    [in] UInt32 size,
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pModeValue,
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pMatchValue,
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pMaskValue );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the mode value, match value, and mask value of the Section Filter.

**Parameters****Table 850**

| Name        | Description                                                         |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| size        | The size - in bytes - of *pModeValue, *pMatchValue and *pMaskValue. |
| pModeValue  | Pointer to the mode value.                                          |
| pMatchValue | Pointer to the match value.                                         |
| pMaskValue  | Pointer to the mask value.                                          |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- Let sectionFilter be the SectionFilter object on which this interface operates.
- $1 \leq \text{size} \leq \text{demux.sectionFilterDepth}$

**Action**

- Modify sectionFilter.pModeValue
- Modify sectionFilter.pMatchValue
- Modify sectionFilter.pMaskValue

**Postcondition**

- For each  $i$  in  $\{0 \dots \text{size}-1\}$ 
  - $\text{sectionFilter.pModeValue}[i] == \text{pModeValue}[i]$
  - $\text{sectionFilter.pMatchValue}[i] == \text{pMatchValue}[i]$
  - $\text{sectionFilter.pMaskValue}[i] == \text{pMaskValue}[i]$

**Remarks**

- Figure 90 shows the byte-mask for the Section Filter. If a bit is excluded, it means that no match and mask filter criteria can be set on this bit.

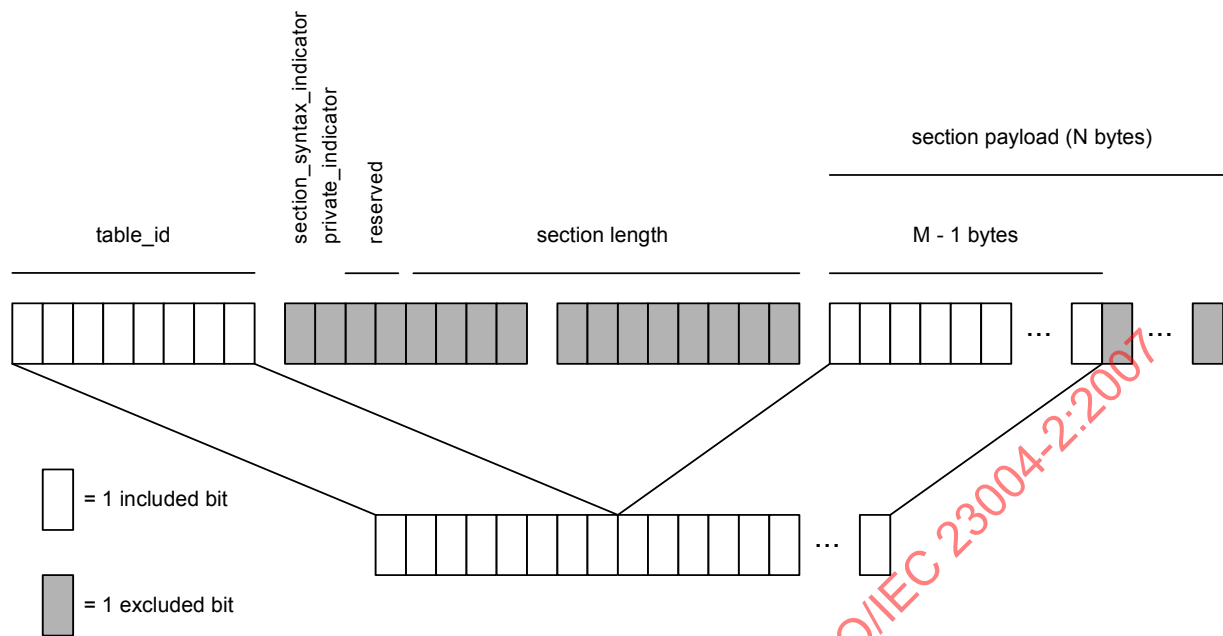


Figure 90 — M byte-mask for Section Filters ( M = the depth of Section Filters )

— A '1' at bit 'x' of the mode value means that negative filtering should be applied to the corresponding bit in the data. A '0' at bit 'x' of the mode value means that positive filtering should be applied to the corresponding bit in the data. Note that positive and negative filtering can be selected per bit. So, on the data entity on which the match, mask, and mode values apply, positive and negative filtering can be mixed.

8.1.13.5.17.10 GetCrcMode

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetCrcMode ( [out] puhTsDmx_CrcMode_t pCrcMode );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns the current CRC mode of the Section Filter object.

Parameters

Table 851

Name

pCrcMode

Description

Output parameter returning the current CRC mode.

Return Values

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- Let `sectionFilter` be the `SectionFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- `*pCrcMode == sectionFilter.crcMode`

**8.1.13.5.17.11 SetCrcMode**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t SetCrcMode ( [in] uhTsDmx_CrcMode_t crcMode );`

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the CRC mode of the Section Filter object.

**Parameters**

**Table 852**

| Name                 | Description   |
|----------------------|---------------|
| <code>crcMode</code> | The CRC mode. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- Let `sectionFilter` be the `SectionFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- Modify `sectionFilter.crcMode`

**Postcondition**

- `sectionFilter.crcMode == crcMode`

## 8.1.13.5.17.12 CheckCrc

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t CheckCrc (
    [in] UInt32 primarySectionSize,
    [in, size_is(primarySectionSize)] const pUInt8 pPrimarySectionStartAddress,
    [in] UInt32 secondarySectionSize,
    [in, size_is(secondarySectionSize)] const pUInt8 pSecondarySectionStartAddress,
    [out] puhTsDmx_CrcStatus_t pCrc );
```

## Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

## Description

Checks the CRC of the provided section. The check of the CRC can be done on some individual sections e.g. in case CRC checking on all sections is too expensive.

## Parameters

Table 853

| Name                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| primarySectionSize            | The size in bytes of valid section data excluding the second part of the section in case a wrap-around (in the buffer containing this data) occurred.                            |
| pPrimarySectionStartAddress   | Pointer to a 4 byte aligned buffer with primarySectionSize bytes of valid section data.                                                                                          |
| secondarySectionSize          | The size in bytes of the second part of valid section data in case a wrap-around (in the buffer containing this data) occurred.                                                  |
| pSecondarySectionStartAddress | Pointer to a 4 byte aligned buffer with secondarySectionSize bytes of the second part of valid section data in case a wrap-around (in the buffer containing this data) occurred. |
| pCrc                          | Output parameter returning the result of the CRC check to be returned.                                                                                                           |

## Return Values

Standard.

## Precondition

- secondarySectionSize is 0 for linear buffers.
- secondarySectionSize is 0 for circular buffers in case no wrap-around has occurred.
- If wrap-around occurred in the buffer in this section, pPrimarySectionStartAddress and pSecondarySectionStartAddress point to a previously filtered, notified, and not yet freed section. If no wrap-around occurred, only pPrimarySectionStartAddress points to a previously filtered, notified, and not yet freed section and pSecondarySectionStartAddress is irrelevant.

## Action

None.

Postcondition

- Let `sectionFilter` be the `SectionFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- `*pCrc == sectionFilter.crc`

8.1.13.5.18 `uhITsDmxSectionFilterNtf`

Qualifiers

- `callback`

Description

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in a Section Filter. The `Subscribe` function of the `uhITsDmxSectionFilter` can be used to subscribe to these events.

Interface ID

`uuid( 2B86BF80-7D24-4906-8359-EAE9DAF624EB )`

8.1.13.5.18.1 `OnSubscriptionChanged`

Signature

**[`async`]** `Void OnSubscriptionChanged (`  
    `[in] UInt32 cookie,`  
    `[in] uhTsDmx_SectionNotifications_t notif;`  
`);`

Qualifiers

- `onsubscriptionchanged-function`

8.1.13.5.18.2 `OnStopped`

Signature

**[`async`]** `Void OnStopped ( [in] UInt32 cookie );`

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is only called when subscribed to `uhTsDmx_SectionFilterStopped`. It is called in response to a `Stop` call to indicate that a Section Filter object has stopped.

Parameters

Table 854

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

**Remarks**  
Once received, the client will not receive any other event from the Section Filter object on which the corresponding control interface operates before being started again, except for `uhTsDmx_SectionFilterStopped` when an already stopped filter object is stopped again. This event is fired after a section has been filtered during a 'one shot' operation. In this case, the Section Filter object is stopped on reception of a complete data unit.

**8.1.13.5.18.3 OnSectionArrived**

**Signature**  
`[async] Void OnSectionArrived (`  
    `[in] UInt32 cookie,`  
    `[in] UInt32 dataCookie,`  
    `[in] UInt32 primarySectionSize,`  
    `[in, size_is(primarySectionSize)] const pUInt8 pPrimarySectionStartAddress,`  
    `[in] UInt32 secondarySectionSize,`  
    `[in, size_is(secondarySectionSize)] const pUInt8`  
`pSecondarySectionStartAddress,`  
    `[in] uhTsDmx_CrcStatus_t crc);`

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is only called when subscribed to `uhTsDmx_SectionArrived`. It is called when a complete MPEG section has been filtered and written to a buffer. Complete means starting from and including the 'table\_id' to the last byte of this section including the CRC field, i.e. 'section\_length' + 3 bytes of this section, if present.

**Parameters**

**Table 855**

| Name       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie     | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                                                                              |
| dataCookie | Value that should be returned as is (without any translation) when releasing a lock on this notified section data (via the <code>Free</code> function of the <code>uhITsDmxStreamBuffer</code> interface). |

| Name                                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>primarySectionSize</code>            | The size in bytes of valid section data excluding the second part of the section in case a wrap-around (in the buffer containing this data) occurred.                                                                         |
| <code>pPrimarySectionStartAddress</code>   | Pointer to a buffer with <code>primarySectionSize</code> bytes of valid section data.                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>secondarySectionSize</code>          | The size in bytes of the second part of valid section data in case a wrap-around (in the buffer containing this data) occurred. It is 0 for linear buffers. It is 0 for circular buffers in case no wrap-around has occurred. |
| <code>pSecondarySectionStartAddress</code> | Pointer to a buffer with <code>secondarySectionSize</code> bytes of the second part of valid section data in case a wrap-around (in the buffer containing this data) occurred.                                                |
| <code>crc</code>                           | The result of the CRC check on this notified section data.                                                                                                                                                                    |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**Remarks**

The data notified by this function is only freed when all notified clients have released the lock on this data by calling the `Free` function on the `uhITsDmxStreamBuffer` interface of the `ClientStream` object with which the Section Filter object on which the corresponding control interface operates is (indirectly) associated.

**8.1.13.5.19 uhITsDmxPesNotifier****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface of a PES Notifier or a PES Filter provides facilities to start and to stop the object on which this interface operates. It provides also facilities to retrieve and to set the filter mode. It also provides a `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` function on notifications of events that occur in the notifier.

**Interface ID**

```
uuid( 5D2C7794-C6BA-44be-9003-BF4EC697548A )
```



**8.1.13.5.19.1 Subscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhITsDmxPesNotifierNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                      cookie,
    [in] uhTsDmx_PesNotifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**8.1.13.5.19.2 Unsubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhITsDmxPesNotifierNtf      *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                      cookie,
    [in] uhTsDmx_PesNotifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

**8.1.13.5.19.3 Start****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Start ( );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

Starts the PES Notifier or PES Filter object on which this interface operates.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- Let `pesNotifierFilter` be the `PesNotifier` or `PesFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- Modify `pesNotifierFilter.started`

**Postcondition**

— `pesNotifierFilter.started == True`

**8.1.13.5.19.4 Stop**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t Stop ( );`

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sends a stop request to the PES Notifier or PES Filter object on which this interface operates.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Asynchronous Action**

- Let `pesNotifierFilter` be the `PesNotifier` or `PesFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- Modify `pesNotifierFilter.started`
- Notify `OnStopped(*)`

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

- `pesNotifierFilter.started == False`

**8.1.13.5.19.5 GetFilterMode**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t GetFilterMode ( [out] puhTsDmx_FilterMode_t pFilterMode );`

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current filter mode of the PES Notifier or PES Filter object on which this interface operates.

**Parameters****Table 856**

| Name                     | Description                                         |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pFilterMode</code> | Output parameter returning the current filter mode. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**

- Let `pesNotifierFilter` be the `PesNotifier` or `PesFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- `*pFilterMode == pesNotifierFilter.filterMode`

**8.1.13.5.19.6 SetFilterMode****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetFilterMode ( [in] uhTsdmx_FilterMode_t filterMode );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the filter mode of the PES Notifier or PES Filter object on which this interface operates.

**Parameters****Table 857**

| Name                    | Description      |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| <code>filterMode</code> | The filter mode. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**

- If the object on which this interface operates is a PES Filter, the output type of the associated `Stream` object (via the associated PID or TPH Filter object) is `ClientMemory`.

**Action**

- Let `pesNotifierFilter` be the `PesNotifier` or `PesFilter` object on which this interface operates.

— Modify `pesNotifierFilter.filterMode`

#### Postcondition

— `pesNotifierFilter.filterMode == filterMode`

### 8.1.13.5.20 `uhITsDmxPesNotifierNtf`

#### Qualifiers

— `callback`

#### Description

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in a PES Filter or a PES Notifier; the `Subscribe` function of the `uhITsDmxPesNotifier` interface can be used to subscribe to these events.

#### Interface ID

`uuid( 81E5B522-4A8B-444F-90B8-7AE1282059B1 )`

#### 8.1.13.5.20.1 `OnSubscriptionChanged`

#### Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhTsDmx_PesNotifications_t notif );
```

#### Qualifiers

— `onsubscriptionchanged-function`

#### 8.1.13.5.20.2 `OnStopped`

#### Signature

```
[async] Void OnStopped ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

#### Qualifiers

None.

#### Description

This function is only called when subscribed to `uhTsDmx_PesNotifierStopped`. It is called in response to a `Stop` call to indicate that a PES Filter or a PES Notifier object has stopped.

#### Parameters

**Table 858**

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**Remarks**

Once received, the client will not receive any other event from the filter object on which the corresponding control interface operates before being started again, except for `uhTsDmx_PesNotifierStopped` when an already stopped filter object is stopped again. This event is also fired after a PES packet has been filtered during a 'one shot' operation. In this case, the filter object on which this interface operates is stopped on reception of a complete data unit.

**8.1.13.5.20.3 OnCompletePacketArrived****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnCompletePacketArrived (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] UInt32 dataCookie,
    [in] UInt32 primaryPesSize,
    [in, size_is(primaryPesSize)] const pUInt8 pPrimaryPesStartAddress,
    [in] UInt32 secondaryPesSize,
    [in, size_is(secondaryPesSize)] const pUInt8 pSecondaryPesStartAddress );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is only called when subscribed to `uhTsDmx_PesCompletePacketArrived`. It is called when a complete PES packet has been filtered and written to a buffer. Complete means starting from and including the PES packet header to the last byte of this PES packet.

**Parameters****Table 859**

| Name                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>                  | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>dataCookie</code>              | Value that is returned as is (without any translation) when releasing a lock on this notified complete PES packet (via the <code>Free</code> function of the <code>uhITsDmxStreamBuffer</code> interface). |
| <code>primaryPesSize</code>          | The size in bytes of valid PES packet data excluding the second part of the PES packet in case a wrap-around (in the buffer containing this data) occurred.                                                |
| <code>pPrimaryPesStartAddress</code> | Pointer to a buffer with <code>primaryPesSize</code> bytes of valid PES packet data.                                                                                                                       |

| Name                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>secondaryPesSize</code>          | The size in bytes of the second part of valid PES packet data in case a wrap-around (in the buffer containing this data) occurred. It is 0 for linear buffers. It is 0 for circular buffers in case no wrap-around has occurred. |
| <code>pSecondaryPesStartAddress</code> | Pointer to a buffer with <code>secondaryPesSize</code> bytes of the second part of valid PES packet data in case a wrap-around (in the buffer containing this data) occurred.                                                    |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**Remarks**

The data notified by this function is only freed when all notified clients have released the lock on this data by calling the `Free` function on the `uhITsDmxStreamBuffer` interface of the `ClientStream` object with which the PES Filter or PES Notifier object on which the corresponding control interface operates is (indirectly) associated.

**8.1.13.5.20.4 OnPartialPacketArrived****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnPartialPacketArrived (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] UInt32 dataCookie,
    [in] UInt32 primaryPesSize,
    [in, size_is(primaryPesSize)] const pUInt8 pPrimaryPesStartAddress,
    [in] UInt32 secondaryPesSize,
    [in, size_is(secondaryPesSize)] const pUInt8 pSecondaryPesStartAddress );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is only called when subscribed to `uhTsDmx_PesPartialPacketArrived`. It is called when a part of a PES packet has been filtered and written to a buffer. The size of this block equals the actual granularity.

**Parameters****Table 860**

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

| Name                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>dataCookie</code>                | Value that is returned as is (without any translation) when releasing a lock on this notified partial PES packet (via the <code>Free</code> function of the <code>uhITsDmxStreamBuffer</code> interface).                                |
| <code>primaryPesSize</code>            | The size in bytes of valid partial PES packet data excluding the second part of the partial PES packet in case a wrap-around (in the buffer containing this data) occurred.                                                              |
| <code>pPrimaryPesStartAddress</code>   | Pointer to a buffer with <code>primaryPesSize</code> bytes of valid partial PES packet data.                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>secondaryPesSize</code>          | The size in bytes of the second part of valid partial PES packet data in case a wrap-around (in the buffer containing this data) occurred. It is 0 for linear buffers. It is 0 for circular buffers in case no wrap-around has occurred. |
| <code>pSecondaryPesStartAddress</code> | Pointer to a buffer with <code>secondaryPesSize</code> bytes of the second part of valid partial PES packet data in case a wrap-around (in the buffer containing this data) occurred.                                                    |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**Remarks**

- The data notified by this function is only freed when all notified clients have released the lock on this data by calling the `Free` function on the `uhITsDmxStreamBuffer` interface of the `ClientStream` object with which the PES Filter or PES Notifier object on which the corresponding control interface operates is (indirectly) associated.

**8.1.13.5.20.5 OnPacketCorrupt****Signature**

```
[async] void OnPacketCorrupt ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is only called when subscribed to `uhTsDmx_PesPacketCorrupt`. It is called when a partial or a complete PES packet has been flagged as corrupt due to a corruption of at least one transport packet that contains a part of this PES packet.

**Parameters****Table 861**

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.13.5.20.6 OnStreamIdChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnStreamIdChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] UInt8 streamId );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is only called when subscribed to `uhTsDmx_PesStreamIdChanged`. It is called when the `'stream_id'` has changed. If the PES Filter or the PES Notifier starts, this event will be fired as well on the arrival of the first PES packet. This can be viewed as a transition from an undefined to a defined `'stream_id'`.

**Parameters****Table 862**

| Name     | Description                                                   |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie   | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| streamId | The new <code>'stream_id'</code> value.                       |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.



**Postcondition**  
True

8.1.13.5.21 uhITsDmxPesFilter

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This interface of a PES Filter provides facilities for match/mask control on the filter. This interface also provides facilities to retrieve and set DTS/PTS ranges that are used as a filter criterion.

**Interface ID**  
uuid( FFD29485-242D-459B-A917-46BD8B00CD62 )

8.1.13.5.21.1 GetFilterDepth

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetFilterDepth ( [out] pUInt32 pFilterDepth );

- Qualifiers**
- synchronous
  - thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns the filter depth - in bytes - of PES Filters.

**Parameters**

Table 863

| Name         | Description                                                              |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pFilterDepth | Output parameter returning the filter depth - in bytes - of PES Filters. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**

- Let pesFilter be the PesFilter object on which this interface operates.
- \*pFilterDepth == demux.pesFilterDepth

8.1.13.5.21.2 GetMatchMask

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMatchMask (  
    [in] UInt32 size,  
    [out, size_is(size)] pUInt8 pMatchValue,  
    [out, size_is(size)] pUInt8 pMaskValue );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns the current match and mask value of the PES Filter.

Parameters

Table 864

| Name        | Description                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| size        | The size - in bytes - of *pMatchValue and *pMaskValue. |
| pMatchValue | Output parameters returning the current match value.   |
| pMaskValue  | Output parameters returning the current mask value.    |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

- Let pesFilter be the PesFilter object on which this interface operates.
- size == demux.pesFilterDepth.

Action

None.

Postcondition

- For each i in {0 .. size-1}
  - pMatchValue[i] == pesFilter.pMatchValue[i]
  - pMaskValue[i] == pesFilter.pMaskValue[i]

### 8.1.13.5.21.3 SetMatchMask

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t SetMatchMask (
    [in] UInt32 size,
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pMatchValue,
    [in, size_is(size)] const pUInt8 pMaskValue );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

#### Description

Sets the match value and mask value of the PES Filter.

#### Parameters

Table 865

| Name        | Description                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| size        | The size - in bytes - of *pMatchValue and *pMaskValue. |
| pMatchValue | Pointer to the requested match value.                  |
| pMaskValue  | Pointer to the requested mask value.                   |

#### Return Values

Standard.

#### Precondition

- Let `pesFilter` be the `PesFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- $1 \leq \text{size} \leq \text{demux.pesFilterDepth}$

#### Action

- Modify `pesFilter.pMatchValue`
- Modify `pesFilter.pMaskValue`

#### Postcondition

- For each `i` in  $\{0 \dots \text{size}-1\}$ 

```
pesFilter.pMatchValue[i] == pMatchValue[i]
pesFilter.pMaskValue[i] == pMaskValue[i]
```

#### Remarks

- Figure 91 shows the byte-mask for the PES Filter. If a bit is excluded, it means that no match and mask filter criteria can be set on this bit.
- Filtering on the trick mode field can be applied in case the match/mask bit on the `DSM_trick_mode_flag` is set in such a way that the presence of this trick mode field can be determined for each incoming PES packet. See Figure 91.

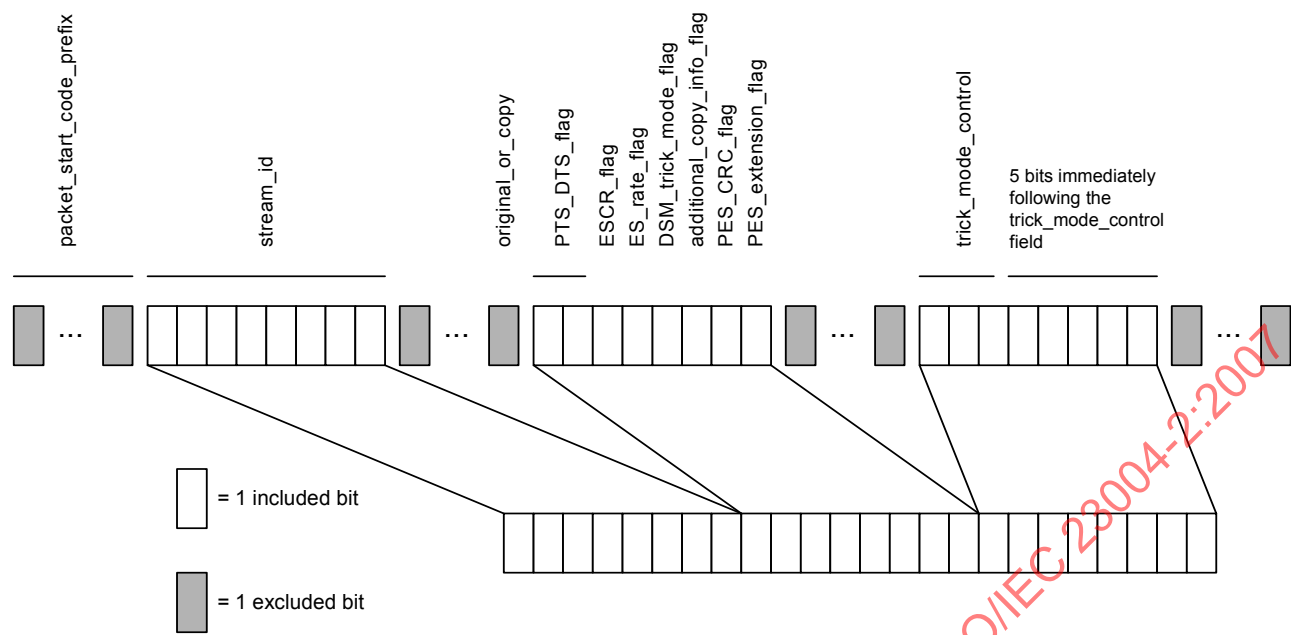


Figure 91 — bit-mask for PES Filters

8.1.13.5.21.4 GetDtsRange

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetDtsRange (
    [out] puhTimeStamp_t pMinDts,
    [out] puhTimeStamp_t pMaxDts );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns the minimum and maximum DTS value of the current range for DTS filtering of the PES Filter object.

Parameters

Table 866

| Name    | Description                                       |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------|
| pMinDts | Output parameter returning the minimum DTS value. |
| pMaxDts | Output parameter returning the maximum DTS value. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- Let `pesFilter` be the `PesFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- `*pMinDts == pesFilter.minDts`
- `*pMaxDts == pesFilter.maxDts`

**8.1.13.5.21.5 SetDtsRange****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetDtsRange (
    [in] uhTimeStamp_t minDts,
    [in] uhTimeStamp_t maxDts );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the minimum and maximum DTS value of the range for DTS filtering of the PES Filter object: PES packets that contain a DTS value will only pass the filter if the DTS values are within the specified range.

**Parameters****Table 867**

| Name                | Description            |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| <code>minDts</code> | The minimum DTS value. |
| <code>maxDts</code> | The maximum DTS value. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- Let `pesFilter` be the `PesFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- Modify `pesFilter.minDts`
- Modify `pesFilter.maxDts`

**Postcondition**

- `pesFilter.minDts == minDts`
- `pesFilter.maxDts == maxDts`

**Remarks**

- PES packets that do not contain a DTS will pass the filter criteria for DTS filtering.

8.1.13.5.21.6    **GetPtsRange**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetPtsRange (  
    [out] puhTimeStamp_t pMinPts,  
    [out] puhTimeStamp_t pMaxPts );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the minimum and maximum PTS value of the current range for PTS filtering of the PES Filter object.

**Parameters**

**Table 868**

| Name    | Description                                       |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------|
| pMinPts | Output parameter returning the minimum PTS value. |
| pMaxPts | Output parameter returning the maximum PTS value. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- Let `pesFilter` be the `PesFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- `*pMinPts == pesFilter.minPts`
- `*pMaxPts == pesFilter.maxPts`

8.1.13.5.21.7    **SetPtsRange**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetPtsRange (  
    [in] uhTimeStamp_t minPts,  
    [in] uhTimeStamp_t maxPts );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the minimum and maximum PTS value of the range for PTS filtering of the PES Filter object: PES packets that contain a PTS value will only pass the filter if the PTS values are within the specified range.

**Parameters****Table 869**

| Name                | Description            |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| <code>minPts</code> | The minimum PTS value. |
| <code>maxPts</code> | The maximum PTS value. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

— `True`

**Action**

- Let `pesFilter` be the `PesFilter` object on which this interface operates.
- Modify `pesFilter.minPts`
- Modify `pesFilter.maxPts`

**Postcondition**

- `pesFilter.minPts == minPts`
- `pesFilter.maxPts == maxPts`

**Remarks**

- PES packets that do not contain a PTS will pass the filter criteria for PTS filtering.

**8.1.14 UhlTsMux****8.1.14.1 Concepts****8.1.14.1.1 Introduction**

This document describes the API of a multiplexer for an MPEG-2 transport stream.

The function of a TS Mux is to input a transport stream, allow the client to control the rate and number of insertions per section into this transport stream and output this multiplexed transport stream.

**8.1.14.1.2 Multiplexing**

The TS Mux is responsible for inserting the PSI section data from the client into the TS (with out time stamps) or TS<sub>ts</sub> (with time stamps) input by an external component (e.g. TS Demux output). The TS/TS<sub>ts</sub> input normally contains only the PES data from a specific program (e.g. SPTS) and no PSI section data corresponding to that program. The client, who receives the PSI section data of the multi-program TS through the demultiplexing process (e.g. through TS Demux notifications), modifies the original PSI data to make it match the characteristics of the TS/TS<sub>ts</sub> being input to the TS Mux. The TS Mux role is to multiplex this modified PSI data, provided as sections by the client, into the input TS/TS<sub>ts</sub>. The TS Mux first converts the sections into transport packets of the appropriate PIDs (also provided by the client), calculates time-stamps to be appended

to these transport packets if the input is  $TS_{ts}$  and then insert these into the input stream. The TS Mux then streams out this section data multiplexed TS/ $TS_{ts}$ .

Next to PSI section data, the client can also insert other section data.

- An 'insertion point' is defined as a point suitable for a transport packet insertion if the time-stamp values associated with the two transport packets on either side of this point need not be changed to accommodate the transport packet to be inserted. Basically, this also means that the difference between time-stamp values, defined here as the 'time-stamp distance', between the inserted packet and the two transport packets on either side of it should satisfy the 'minimum time-stamp distance' requirement.
- For example let's assume the time-stamp values are derived from a 27 MHz clock counter and each transport packet in the output stream from the TS Mux is being consumed and/or transmitted at an 'output bit-rate'<sup>21</sup>. Let this output bit-rate be 24 Mbps. Also, each packet is consumed and/or transmitted only if the associated time-stamp matches the value of a clock counter running at 27 MHz. Then the 'minimum time-stamp distance' between the two consecutive transport packets should be greater than the
 
$$((\text{transport-packet-size-in-bits}) \times (\text{output bit-rate})) / (1\text{-tick-time-of-the-clock-counter}).$$
- With the above example values for clock counter frequency and output bit-rate speed:
- Minimum time-stamp distance =  $((188 \times 8) \times (1/24 \times 10^6)) / (1/27 \times 10^6) = 1692$ .
- In the above calculation 188 is the number of bytes in a MPEG-2 transport packet.
- In case, the time-stamps are derived from a 13.5 MHz clock:
- Minimum time-stamp distance =  $((188 \times 8) \times (1/24 \times 10^6)) / (1/13.5 \times 10^6) = 846$ .
- The 'minimum time-stamp distance' value used by the TS Mux is dependent on the hardware platform configuration in which it is used and cannot be controlled by the client.
- The input stream has time-stamps associated with each transport packet. Using the time-stamp information the TS Mux detects a suitable insertion point in the stream into which the transport packet containing a section can be inserted. For repeated insertion of a section the same technique is followed to find suitable insertion points in the stream wherein two such insertion points are separated by the cycle-period (insertion time interval) specified for this section by the client. The cycle-period in this case is actually the difference between the time-stamp values (translated into the cycle-period units) of the two consecutive insertion points.
- If a section spans more than one transport packet then the first packet is inserted at the first suitable insertion point found and the remaining are inserted at the suitable insertion points immediately following this first point. This also means that the cycle-period specified for repeated section insertion is only maintained between two consecutive transport packets containing the beginning of the section data.
- The time-stamp value attached to the transport packet containing a section is equal to the time-stamp value calculated for the insertion point at which the transport packet is being inserted. This time-stamp value is always calculated by taking the minimum time-stamp distance requirement into consideration. In addition, the time-stamp values of the original transport packets in the input stream are never altered.
- The cycle-period between repeated section insertion is not guaranteed to be always equal to the client set value. This is because the insertion is done on a best-effort basis in order to maintain the minimum time-stamp distance requirement between any two transport packets in the multiplexed transport stream output.

<sup>21</sup> For the transmission scenario, we can consider a specialized DMA device as an example. This device will read a transport packet output by the TS Mux, match the time-stamp associated with the packet with its clock counter and transmit it out as a bit-stream, at the 'output bit-rate', if the match result is positive.



- A section, spanning over two transport packets, being inserted two times at suitable insertion points in a TS<sub>is</sub> is illustrated in Figure 92 below.

The Figure 93 shows the actual meaning of cycle-period between two insertions of the same section. The output transport stream from the TS Mux is being transmitted and/or consumed at a rate determined by each packet's time-stamp value. That is, each packet output by TS Mux is transmitted and/or consumed only if its time-stamp value matches the clock counter (which has the same frequency as the one used for generating the time-stamps) value. Therefore, in the transmission and/or consumption time-domain, the time gap between two transport packets containing the same section will then be equal to the cycle-period.

### Section insertion into TS

For the timed and repeated insertion of a section into the TS the following conceptual points hold good:

- The input stream has transport packets without time-stamps associated with each packet. The TS Mux will insert transport packets containing sections at appropriate insertion points on a best-effort basis. The algorithm used for the detection of appropriate insertion points is an implementation defined behavior. For repeated insertion of a section the next insertion point used will be based on the cycle-period required between the next insertion point and the previous one.
- If a section spans more than one transport packet then the first packet is inserted at the first available insertion point in the stream and the remaining packets are inserted immediately following this first point. This also means that the cycle-period specified for repeated section insertion is only maintained between two consecutive transport packets containing the beginning of section data.
- The cycle-period between repeated section insertions is not guaranteed to be always equal to the client set value and is dependent on the implementation defined behavior.
- If the TS output by the TS Mux is transmitted and/or consumed at the correct bit-rate then the cycle-period between the same two sections extracted from this TS will be correct. Actually, if the transmission and/or consumption rate is not correct then depending on the transmission and/or consumption rate an extracted section may arrive sooner or later than the previously extracted section.

A section, spanning over two transport packets, being inserted into TS is illustrated in Figure 92.

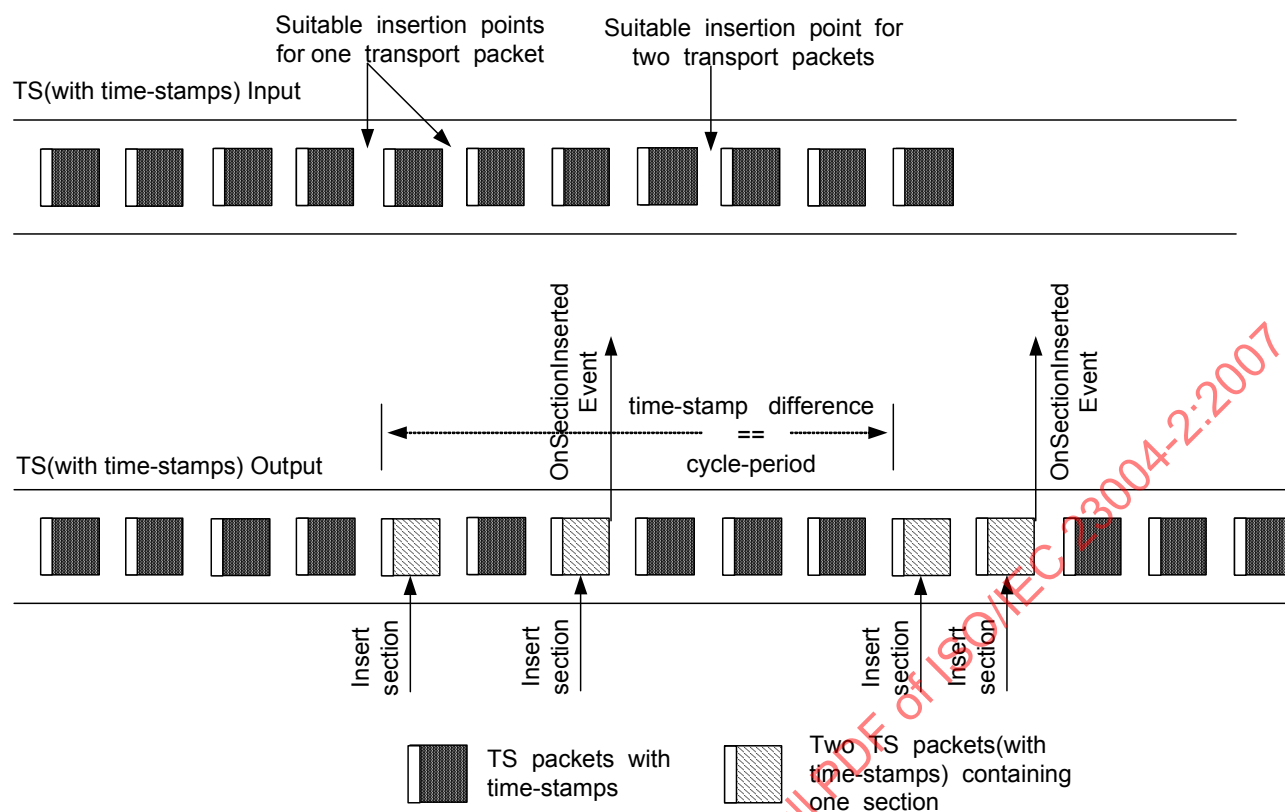


Figure 92 — Two times section data insertion into TS<sub>ts</sub>

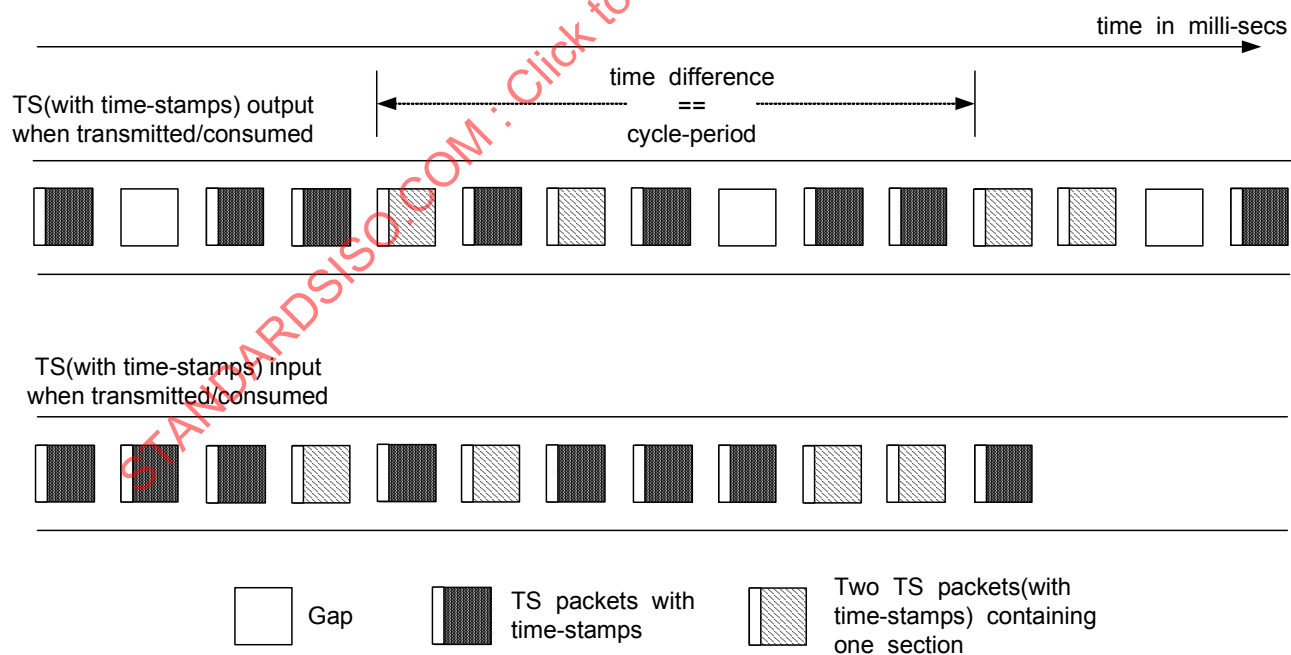


Figure 93 — TS<sub>ts</sub> output by TS Mux being transmitted and/or consumed using the packet

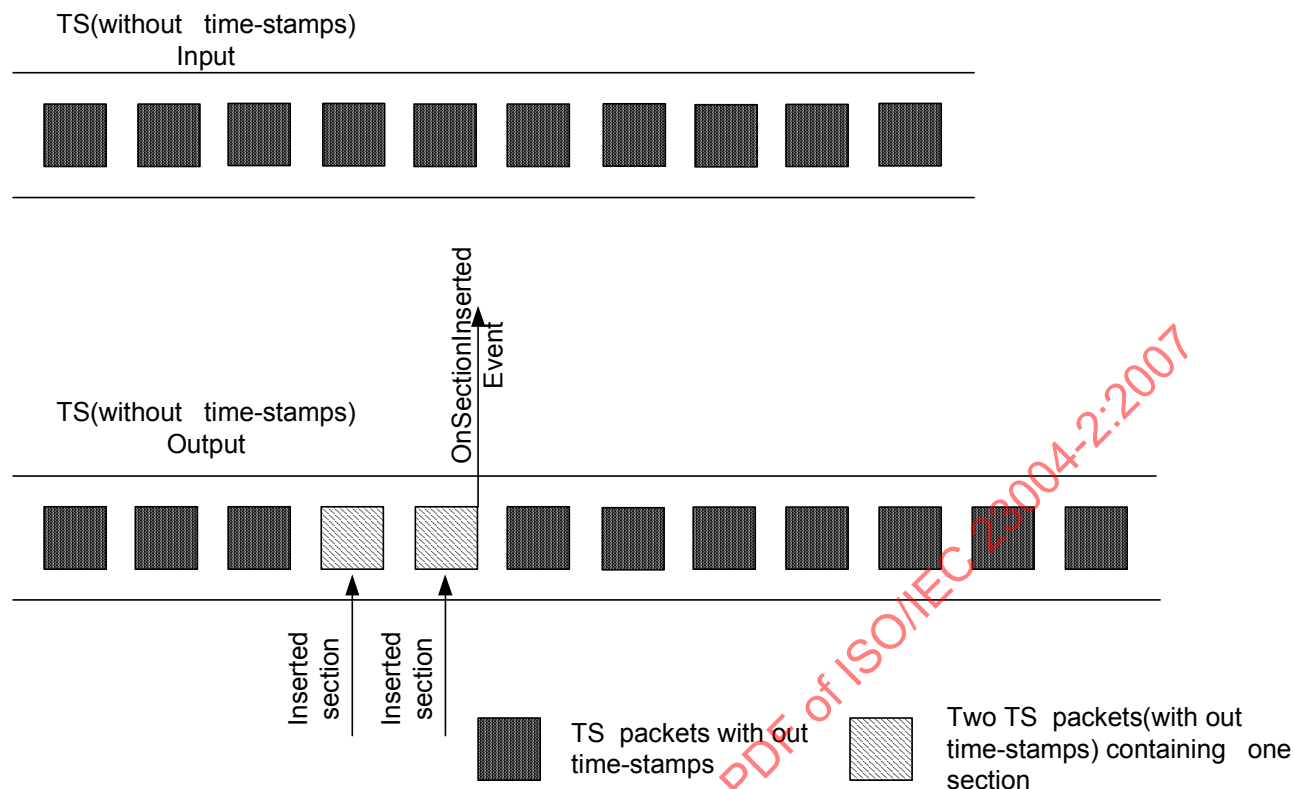


Figure 94 — One time section data insertion into TS

#### 8.1.14.2 Types & Constants

##### 8.1.14.2.1 Public Types & Constants

###### 8.1.14.2.1.1 uhTsMux\_Notification\_t

###### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhTsMux_Notification_t {
    uhTsMux_SubscriptionChanged    = 0x00000001,
    uhTsMux_SectionInserted        = 0x00000002,
    uhTsMux_SectionInsertStopped   = 0x00000004
} uhTsMux_Notification_t, *puhTsMux_Notification_t;
```

###### Qualifiers

— enum-element

###### Description

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhITsMuxNtf`. The values can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

## Values

Table 870

| Name                         | Description                       |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhTsMux_SubscriptionChanged  | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged  |
| uhTsMux_SectionInserted      | Represents OnSectionInserted      |
| uhTsMux_SectionInsertStopped | Represents OnSectionInsertStopped |

## 8.1.14.2.1.2 uhTsMux\_Notifications\_t

## Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhTsMux_Notifications_t, *puhTsMux_Notifications_t;
```

## Qualifiers

— enum-set

## Description

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhTsMux_Notification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

## 8.1.14.2.1.3 uhTsMux\_AllNotifications

## Signature

```
const uhTsMux_Notifications_t uhTsMux_AllNotifications = 0x00000007;
```

## Qualifiers

None.

## Description

Defines the set of all values of type `uhTsMux_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

### 8.1.14.2.2 Model Types & Constants

#### 8.1.14.2.2.1 InsertableSection

##### Signature

```
entity InsertableSection {
    const UInt32      sectionId;
    const UInt16      pid;
    const UInt16      sectionSize;
    const UInt8*      pSection;
    const Bool        unlimitedRepeat;
    const UInt32      repeatNumber;
    const UInt32      cyclePeriod;
    Bool              started;
}
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

Entities of this type represent a section insertable by the client into the TS/TS<sub>is</sub>. An insertable section is modeled with a unique identifier, PID value of the transport packet(s) which contain this section, its size and data pointer, one-time insertion or more, cycle-period between two insertions and whether the insertion has started or not. The `repeatNumber` is applicable only if `unlimitedRepeat` is `False`.

##### Independent Attributes

Table 871

| Name                         | Description                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>sectionId</code>       | Identifier which uniquely identifies the insertable section.                                                                                                   |
| <code>pid</code>             | Identifier which uniquely identifies the transport packet in which the insertable section will be contained.                                                   |
| <code>sectionSize</code>     | Size of the insertable section.                                                                                                                                |
| <code>pSection</code>        | Pointer to the data area containing the insertable section data.                                                                                               |
| <code>unlimitedRepeat</code> | Indicates whether the section needs to be inserted indefinitely or not.                                                                                        |
| <code>repeatNumber</code>    | Indicates the number of times the section needs to be inserted if <code>unlimitedRepeat</code> is <code>False</code> .                                         |
| <code>cyclePeriod</code>     | The cycle-period (time-gap) to be maintained between two insertions if <code>unlimitedRepeat</code> is <code>True</code> or <code>repeatNumber &gt; 0</code> . |
| <code>started</code>         | Indicates whether the section insertion has started or not.                                                                                                    |

8.1.14.3 Logical Component

8.1.14.3.1 Interface-Role Model

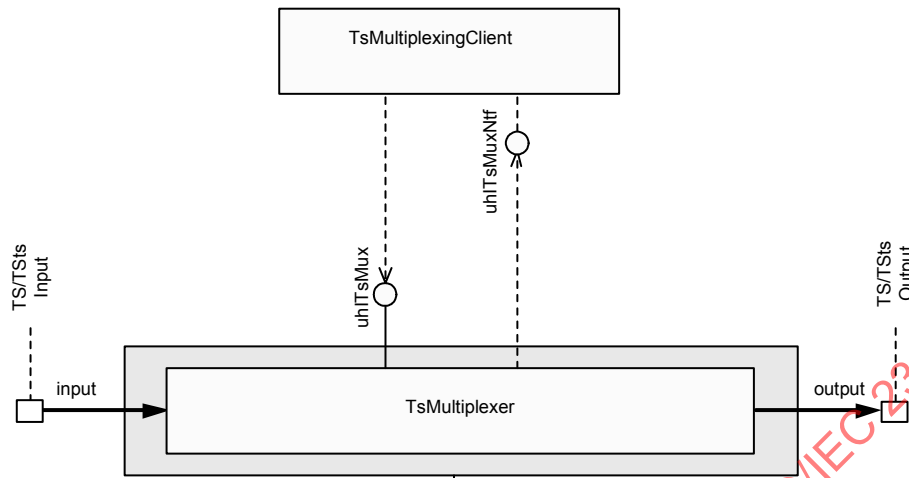


Figure 95 — Interface Role Model(TS Multiplexing)

Figure 95 depicts the interface-role model of the TS Mux logical component. It shows the control and notification interfaces and the roles involved with the TS Mux logical component. The Multiplexing role is represented by `TsMultiplexer` and the client of the TS Mux logical component is represented by `TsMultiplexingClient`.

The client can control the timed insertion of sections using the control interface `uhITsMux` provided by the `TsMultiplexer` role. The control interface can also be used to subscribe/unsubscribe to notifications of events related to section insertion. A client, represented by the `TsMultiplexingClient` role, can optionally provide a call-back interface `uhITsMuxNtf`. This interface contains functions that will be called by the `TsMultiplexer` role to notify multiplexing related events.

8.1.14.3.2 Diversity

8.1.14.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 872

| Role                              | Interface                | Presence  |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------|
| <code>TsMultiplexer</code>        | <code>uhITsMux</code>    | mandatory |
| <code>TsMultiplexingClient</code> | <code>uhITsMuxNtf</code> | optional  |

8.1.14.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 873

| Role                       | Attribute                  |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <code>TsMultiplexer</code> | <code>maxNrSections</code> |

8.1.14.3.2.3 Constraints

maxNrSections ≥ 1

8.1.14.3.3 Instantiation

8.1.14.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 874

| Type          | Object | Multiplicity |
|---------------|--------|--------------|
| TsMultiplexer | mux    | 1            |

8.1.14.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

mux.nrSections == 0

8.1.14.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by the roles of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier “thread-safe”.

8.1.14.4 Roles

8.1.14.4.1 TsMultiplexer

Signature

```
role TsMultiplexer {
    const UInt32 maxNrSections;
    setof{InsertableSection} sections;
    UInt32 nrSections;
}
```

Qualifiers

— root

Description

A TsMultiplexer object provides facilities to insert a number of independent sections of different lengths into the incoming TS/TS<sub>is</sub>. Each section can be inserted one or more times at appropriate locations in the TS/TS<sub>is</sub> according to the client specified time interval.

**Independent Attributes****Table 875**

| Name                       | Description                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>maxNrSections</code> | The maximum number of sections that can be requested by the client for insertion into the input TS/TS <sub>ts</sub> . |
| <code>sections</code>      | The set of sections that can be, or are, inserted in the input TS/TS <sub>ts</sub> .                                  |

**Dependent Attributes****Table 876**

| Name                    | Description                                       |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <code>nrSections</code> | The number of elements in <code>sections</code> . |

**Invariants**

`nrSections` ≤ `maxNrSections`

**Instantiation**

A `TsMultiplexer` is always instantiated as part of the instantiation of the TS Mux logical component; see subclause 8.1.14.3.3.1.

**Streaming Behavior**

The `TsMultiplexer` continually monitors the incoming TS/TS<sub>ts</sub> to find the appropriate insertion points in the stream. It then uses these insertion points to insert TS packetized sections. The `TsMultiplexer` inserts those sections into the incoming TS/TS<sub>ts</sub> that are in its set of insertable sections (`sections`) and that have their `started` attribute equal to `True`. The `TsMultiplexer` inserts each section based on the section's attributes.

**Active Behavior**

The `TsMultiplexer` has standard notification behavior (see `uhITsMuxNtf` for the events that can be notified) and the following event driven behavior:

**Table 877**

| Event                                                    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A section has been inserted into the TS/TS <sub>ts</sub> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Let <code>s</code> be the section in <code>sections</code> that has been inserted.</li> <li>— if (not <code>s.unlimitedRepeat</code>)               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— <code>s.repeatNumber</code> = <code>s.repeatNumber</code> - 1</li> </ul> </li> <li>— notify <code>OnSectionInserted(*)</code></li> <li>— if ((not <code>s.unlimitedRepeat</code>) and (<code>s.repeatNumber</code> == 0))               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— <code>s.started</code> = <code>False</code></li> <li>— notify <code>OnSectionInsertStopped(*)</code></li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

**8.1.14.4.2 TsMultiplexingClient****Signature**

```
role TsMultiplexingClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

— actor



**Description**

A `TsMultiplexingClient` represents a user of the interface `uhITsMux`.

**8.1.14.5 Interfaces****8.1.14.5.1 uhITsMux****Qualifiers**

None

**Description**

This interface of a `TsMultiplexer` provides facilities to add a section into the section insertion list, start/stop the insertion of a section and remove a section from the section insertion list. It also provides a `Subscribe` and an `Unsubscribe` function for notifications of events related to section insertion.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( 6B759ECB-1A61-48df-9605-D6B71B4E0D49 )`

**8.1.14.5.1.1 Subscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhITsMuxNtf          *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32               cookie,
    [in] uhTsMux_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**8.1.14.5.1.2 Unsubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhITsMuxNtf          *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32               cookie,
    [in] uhTsMux_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

**8.1.14.5.1.3 GetMaxNrSections****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetMaxNrSections (
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxNrSections );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the maximum number of sections that can be allocated for insertion.

**Parameters**

Table 878

| Name           | Description                                                                                                   |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMaxNrSections | Output parameter returning the maximum number of sections supported by the TS Multiplexing logical component. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
`*pMaxNrSections == mux.maxNrSections`

8.1.14.5.1.4    **GetAvailableNrSections**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetAvailableNrSections (  
    [out] pUInt32 pAvailableNrSections );
```

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the available number of sections that can be allocated for insertion.

**Parameters**

Table 879

| Name                 | Description                                                  |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| pAvailableNrSections | Output parameter returning the number of available sections. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```
* pAvailableNrSections == mux.maxNrSections - mux.nrSections
```

**8.1.14.5.1.5 AddSectionToInsert****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t AddSectionToInsert (
    [in]  UInt16      pid,
    [in]  UInt16      sectionSize,
    [in, size_is(sectionSize)] const pUInt8 pSection,
    [in]  Bool        unlimitedRepeat,
    [in]  UInt32      repeatNumber,
    [in]  UInt32      cyclePeriod,
    [out] pUInt32      pSectionId );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

**Description**Adds a section to the set of sections to be inserted into the TS/TS<sub>ts</sub> Input.**Parameters****Table 880**

| Name            | Description                                                                                              |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pid             | The PID value that must be used for the insertion of the section.                                        |
| sectionSize     | The size of the section to be inserted.                                                                  |
| pSection        | Pointer to the section data to be inserted.                                                              |
| unlimitedRepeat | Flag indicating whether the section must be inserted an unlimited number of times.                       |
| repeatNumber    | The number of times the section needs to be inserted. Parameter has no meaning if unlimitedRepeat==True. |
| cyclePeriod     | The time in milliseconds between two insertions of the added section.                                    |
| pSectionId      | The identification of the section that has been added.                                                   |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- mux.nrSections < mux.maxNrSections
- 0x0000 <= pid <= 0x1FFF
- sectionSize <= 4096

**Action**

- Create a new `InsertableSection s`, such that
  - `s.pid`, `s.sectionSize`, `s.unlimitedRepeat`, `s.repeatNumber`, `s.CyclePeriod` are initialized with the corresponding input parameters.
  - The data contained in `pSection` is copied to `s.pSection`.
  - `s.started == False`
  - `s.sectionId` is a unique number such that there is no `sExisting` in `mux.sections` with `sExisting.sectionId == s.sectionId`
- Add `s` to `mux.sections`.

**Postcondition**

- The section `s` identified by `sectionId` has been added to `mux.sections`.
- `*pSectionId == s.sectionId`

**Remarks**

- The section insertion starts only after the client starts the insertion, a `TS/TSts` input is available and a suitable insertion point is found. The `cyclePeriod` specified by the client for repeated section insertion is maintained by the TS Mux only in the best-effort mode and is not guaranteed to be the same for all the insertions of a particular section.

**8.1.14.5.1.6 DeleteSectionToInsert****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t DeleteSectionToInsert (
    [in] UInt32 sectionId );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous

**Description**

Deletes a section from the section insertion list.

**Parameters****Table 881**

| Name                   | Description                                      |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <code>sectionId</code> | The identification of the section to be deleted. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

- `sectionId` identifies a section `s` in `mux.sections` such that `s.sectionId == sectionId`.
- `s.started == False`

**Action**

- Modify `mux.sections`.

**Postcondition**

- The section `s` identified by `sectionId` has been removed from `mux.sections`.

**Remarks**

A section can be deleted only after the section insertion process has been stopped. The client, before deleting a section, can either use the stopped notification event `OnSectionInsertStopped` for the insertion process of a particular section that was requested to be stopped or poll for the stopped status by using the `GetSectionInsertionStatus()` function call.

**8.1.14.5.1.7 StartSectionInsertion****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t StartSectionInsertion (
    [in] UInt32 sectionId );
```

**Qualifiers**

— asynchronous

**Description**

Start the section insertion process for this section.

**Parameters****Table 882**

| Name                   | Description                                                                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>sectionId</code> | The identification of the section for which the insertion process needs to be started. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

— `sectionId` identifies a section `s` in `mux.sections` such that `s.sectionId == sectionId`.

**Action**

— Modify `s.started`.

**Postcondition**

`s.started == True`

**Asynchronous Action**

— Refer to the 'Active Behaviour' specified in the subclause 7.2.3.4.1 for the actions carried out asynchronously.

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

— Refer to the 'Active Behaviour' specified in the subclause 7.2.3.4.1 for the asynchronous actions and the corresponding postconditions.

**8.1.14.5.1.8 StopSectionInsertion****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t StopSectionInsertion (
    [in] UInt32  sectionId );
```

**Qualifiers**

— asynchronous

**Description**

Stop the section insertion process for this section.

**Parameters****Table 883**

| Name      | Description                                                                            |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sectionId | The identification of the section for which the insertion process needs to be stopped. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

— sectionId identifies a section s in mux.sections such that s.sectionId == sectionId.

**Asynchronous Action**

— Let s be the section in mux.sections whose insertion process needs to be stopped.

— Modify s.started.

— Notify OnSectionInsertStopped( \* ).

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

s.started == False

**8.1.14.5.1.9 GetSectionInsertionStatus****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSectionInsertionStatus (
    [in] UInt32  sectionId,
    [out] pBool   pSectionInsertionStatus );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current insertion status of the section.

**Parameters****Table 884**

| <b>Name</b>                          | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>sectionId</code>               | The identification of the section for which the insertion process status is requested.                                                                     |
| <code>pSectionInsertionStatus</code> | Output parameter returning the section insertion status. <code>True</code> if the insertion process of this section is ongoing, <code>False</code> if not. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**— `sectionId` identifies a section `s` in `mux.sections` such that `s.sectionId == sectionId`.**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**`*pSectionInsertionStatus == s.starteduhITsMuxNtf`**Qualifiers**— `callback`**Description**

This interface should be provided by each client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events that occur in a `TsMultiplexer`. The subscribe function of the `uhITsMux` interface can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**`uuid( CAFCB8DB-DE00-4250-99F1-73603DC11A16 )`**8.1.14.5.1.10 OnSubscriptionChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhTsMux_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**— `onsubscriptionchanged-function`**8.1.14.5.1.11 OnSectionInserted****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSectionInserted (
```

```
[in] UInt32  cookie,  
[in] UInt32  sectionId );
```

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
It is called when the `TsMultiplexer` successfully inserts a section into the TS/TS<sub>is</sub> Input.

**Parameters**

Table 885

| Name      | Description                                                   |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie    | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| sectionId | The identification of the section that was inserted.          |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

8.1.14.5.1.12 OnSectionInsertStopped

```
Signature  
[async] Void OnSectionInsertStopped (  
    [in] UInt32  cookie,  
    [in] UInt32  sectionId );
```

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
It is called when the `TsMultiplexer` stops the section insertion either because of the client's request or the client requested number of insertions is completed.

**Parameters**

Table 886

| Name      | Description                                                         |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie    | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.       |
| sectionId | The identification of the section whose insertion has been stopped. |



**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.15 UhlTuning****8.1.15.1 Concepts****8.1.15.1.1 Introduction**

A Tuning logical component receives Radio Frequency (RF) signals via an external input (i.e. an antenna, cable or satellite dish). It can perform many operations like tuning, fine-tuning and optionally Automatic Frequency Control (AFC) and searching on the input signal.

**8.1.15.1.2 Tuning and searching**

Tuning is extracting one modulated signal from the wide RF spectrum that is received and providing it at the output at an Intermediate Frequency (IF) so that it can be demodulated, split and processed by other logical components further on in the streaming path. Note that in our definition, a signal does not imply meaningful content, it simply means that we detect something else than noise on the input.

In order to get a signal with meaningful content, we need to tune to the correct frequency. A frequency can be set directly but also indirectly using a channel ID representing a frequency. In most cases to know the frequencies with meaningful content, we have to search the frequency band for them. With respect to searching, various algorithms are used depending on the hardware used and the region of the world the tuner has to operate in.

In order to start a search the following information is required: the start position, the search direction and the end position. For analog systems searching is also dependent on the modulation of the signal. It is possible to do a frequency search, which searches a given frequency range or a channel search, which allows a more optimal way of searching. After a search has started, notifications will indicate when the search has ended. A search will end when a signal has been found, the stop criteria was met or the search has been stopped by the client. If a search has ended because a signal has been found, it is possible to check more accurately if that signal represents meaningful content by inspecting properties of other logical components further on in the streaming path. Typically, these other logical components will also notify these properties.

**8.1.15.1.3 Frequencies and channels**

A frequency denotes an exact position in a frequency spectrum. A more abstract positioning in a frequency spectrum is possible by means of channels. A channel represents a frequency including a predefined lower and upper bound for that frequency. A channel is typically identified by an ID (a channel number). The mapping of channel numbers to frequencies is specified by means of a channel table. Channel tables can be different per country or region. A frequency can be set to any value (in Hertz) between a given minimum and maximum frequency depending on the capabilities of the tuner. Channel numbers also can be set between a

given minimum and maximum but do not have to form a consecutive list. Hence, a channel table can contain gaps and does not need to cover the complete frequency band depending on region or country.

#### 8.1.15.1.4 Fine-tuning

Fine-tuning is used to locate the carrier frequency of a signal in a predefined window around a given frequency as fast as possible. A fine-tuning action is executed once and is finished after the carrier frequency has been found. It is possible to fine-tuning when setting a channel as well as a frequency.

#### 8.1.15.1.5 AFC

The AFC is used to continuously monitor the carrier frequency of a signal tuned to. If the carrier frequency drifts, the tuning is adjusted. This way it is possible to follow/track drifting transmitters such as a VCR in order to keep optimal signal reception. The AFC can only track the frequency within a predefined window.

### 8.1.15.2 Types & Constants

#### 8.1.15.2.1 Public Types & Constants

##### 8.1.15.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

##### 8.1.15.2.1.2 uhTuning\_Notification\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhTuning_Notification_t {
    uhTuning_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhTuning_Tuned = 0x00000002,
    uhTuning_Aborted = 0x00000004,
    uhTuning_SignalPresence = 0x00000008,
    uhTuning_AfcFreqChanged = 0x00000010,
    uhTuning_AfcLimitReached = 0x00000020
} uhTuning_Notification_t; *puhTuning_Notification_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

##### Description

Values of this type represent the notification functions of the interface `uhITuningNtf`. They can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

##### Values

Table 887

| Name                                      | Description                                   |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhTuning_SubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> |
| <code>uhTuning_Tuned</code>               | Represents <code>OnActEnabledChanged</code>   |
| <code>uhTuning_Aborted</code>             | Represents <code>OnAborted</code>             |
| <code>uhTuning_SignalPresence</code>      | Represents <code>OnSignalPresence</code>      |

| Name                     | Description                  |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| uhTuning_AfcFreqChanged  | Represents OnAfcFreqChanged  |
| uhTuning_AfcLimitReached | Represents OnAfcLimitReached |

#### 8.1.15.2.1.3 uhTuning\_Notifications\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhTuning_Notifications_t, *puhTuning_Notifications_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing values of type `uhTuning_Notification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

#### 8.1.15.2.1.4 uhTuning\_AllNotifications

##### Signature

```
const uhTuning_Notifications_t uhTuning_AllNotifications = 0x0000003F;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

The set of all notifications of `uhTuning_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

#### 8.1.15.2.1.5 uhTuning\_SearchNotification\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhTuning_SearchNotification_t {
    uhTuning_SearchSubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhTuning_SignalDetected            = 0x00000002,
    uhTuning_Stopped                   = 0x00000004,
    uhTuning_EndPosReached              = 0x00000008,
    uhTuning_FreqChanged                = 0x00000010,
    uhTuning_ChannelChanged             = 0x00000020
} uhTuning_SearchNotification_t, *puhTuning_SearchNotification_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the notification functions in the interface uhIAdrcNtf. They can be used to individually turn on and off notifications.

**Values**

**Table 888**

| Name                               | Description                      |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| uhTuning_SearchSubscriptionChanged | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged |
| uhTuning_SignalDetected            | Represents OnSignalDetected.     |
| uhTuning_Stopped                   | Represents OnStopped             |
| uhTuning_EndPosReached             | Represents OnEndPosReached.      |
| uhTuning_FreqChanged               | Represents OnFreqChanged.        |
| uhTuning_ChannelChanged            | Represents OnChannelChanged      |

**8.1.15.2.1.6    uhTuning\_SearchNotifications\_t**

**Signature**

**typedef** Int32 uhTuning\_SearchNotifications\_t, \*puhTuning\_SearchNotifications\_t;

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of uhTuning\_SearchNotification\_t. These values are used in the Subscribe and Unsubscribe functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**8.1.15.2.1.7    uhTuning\_SearchAllNotifications**

**Signature**

**const** uhTuning\_SearchNotifications\_t  
uhTuning\_SearchAllNotifications = 0x0000003F;

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The set of all notifications of uhTuning\_SearchNotification\_t.

8.1.15.2.1.8 **uhTuning\_ChanTableType\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhTuning_ChanTableType_t {
    uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingCVBS = 1,
    uhAnaVdec_VideoCodingYC    = 2
} uhTuning_ChanTableType_t, *puhTuning_ChanTableType_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Possible channel table types based on input type. This information might be used for optimization purposes (i.e. the search algorithm used when searching).

**Values****Table 889****Name****Description**

uhTuning\_ChanTableTypeAntenna

The channel table type for antenna input.

uhTuning\_ChanTableTypeCable

The channel table type for cable input.

8.1.15.2.1.9 **uhTuning\_AfcValue\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhTuning_AfcValue_t {
    uhTuning_AfcValueInvalid = -2,
    uhTuning_AfcValueUnknown = -1,
    uhTuning_FarBelowIf      = 1,
    uhTuning_BelowIf         = 2,
    uhTuning_AboveIf         = 3,
    uhTuning_FarAboveIf      = 4
} uhTuning_AfcValue_t, *puhTuning_AfcValue_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type give an indication on how much the current frequency deviates from the IF due to AFC.

**Values****Table 890****Name****Description**

uhTuning\_AfcValueInvalid

The AFC value is temporarily not available.

uhTuning\_AfcValueUnknown

The AFC value is available, yet could not be determined.

uhTuning\_FarBelowIf

The current frequency is outside the AFC window and below IF.

uhTuning\_BelowIf

The current frequency is inside the AFC window and below IF.

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhTuning_AboveIf    | The current frequency is inside the AFC window and above IF.  |
| uhTuning_FarAboveIf | The current frequency is outside the AFC window and above IF. |

#### 8.1.15.2.1.10 uhTuning\_ChانTableData\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef struct _uhTuning_ChانTableData_t {
    UInt32 firstChan;
    UInt32 lowerFreq;
    UInt32 nrofChans;
    UInt32 freqWidth;
    UInt32 freqOffset;
} uhTuning_ChانTableData_t, *puhTuning_ChانTableData_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This type defines the layout of a single data entry of a channel table. A complete channel table will consist of an array of these structures. By using this layout, channel tables can be set in a compact and efficient way.

Example:

**Table 891**

| firstChan | lowerFreq  | nrofChans | freqWidth | freqOffset |
|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 2         | 70,250,000 | 1         | 4,000,000 | 3,000,000  |
| 3         | 52,250,000 | 2         | 6,000,000 | 3,000,000  |
| 9         | 90,250,000 | 4         | 6,000,000 | 3,000,000  |

This table is the short form of the following table:

**Table 892**

| channel | lowerFreq   | upperFreq   | carrierFreq |
|---------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 2       | 70,250,000  | 74,250,000  | 73,250,000  |
| 3       | 52,250,000  | 58,250,000  | 55,250,000  |
| 4       | 58,250,000  | 64,250,000  | 61,250,000  |
| 9       | 90,250,000  | 96,250,000  | 93,250,000  |
| 10      | 96,250,000  | 102,250,000 | 99,250,000  |
| 11      | 102,250,000 | 108,250,000 | 105,250,000 |
| 12      | 108,250,000 | 114,250,000 | 111,250,000 |

**Fields****Table 893**

| Name       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| firstChan  | The first channel in the sequence of channels represented by this data entry.                                                                                                                                      |
| lowerFreq  | The lower frequency in Hz for the sequence of channels.                                                                                                                                                            |
| nrofChans  | The number of channels in the sequence of channels. So <code>firstChan + nrofChans - 1 == lastChan</code> .                                                                                                        |
| freqWidth  | The frequency width in Hz for each channel in the sequence of channels. So <code>lowerFreq + freqWidth == upperFreq</code> for first channel in the sequence of channels (all in Hz).                              |
| freqOffset | The offset to reach the carrier frequency in Hz for each channel in the sequence of channels. So <code>lowerFreq + freqOffset == carrierFreq</code> for the first channel in the sequence of channels (all in Hz). |

**Constraints**

- Smallest frequency used in table  $\geq$  `Aavd.minAmp`
- Largest frequency used in table  $\leq$  `tuner.maxFreq`

**8.1.15.2.1.11 uhTuning\_SearchModeFlag\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum uhTuning_SearchModeFlag_t {
    uhTuning_ModulationNone = 0x00000001,
    uhTuning_ModulationNeg  = 0x00000002,
    uhTuning_ModulationPos  = 0x00000004,
    uhTuning_ChannelBased   = 0x00000008,
    uhTuning_FreqBased      = 0x00000010,
    uhTuning_DirectionUp    = 0x00000020,
    uhTuning_DirectionDown  = 0x00000040,
    uhTuning_CurrentIncl    = 0x00000080,
    uhTuning_CurrentExcl    = 0x00000100,
    uhTuning_FineTuneIncl   = 0x00000200,
    uhTuning_FineTuneExcl   = 0x00000400
} uhTuning_SearchModeFlag_t, *puhTuning_SearchModeFlag_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

- enum-element

**Description**

This type represents the possible search mode flags.

**Values****Table 894**

| Name                    | Description                                     |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| uhTuning_ModulationNone | Modulation type unspecified                     |
| uhTuning_ModulationNeg  | Search for negative modulated signals.          |
| uhTuning_ModulationPos  | Search for positive modulated signals.          |
| uhTuning_ChannelBased   | Search based on channels using a channel table. |
| uhTuning_FreqBased      | Search based on frequency.                      |

| Name                   | Description                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| uhTuning_DirectionUp   | Search in upward direction.            |
| uhTuning_DirectionDown | Search in downward direction.          |
| uhTuning_CurrentIncl   | Search with current position included. |
| uhTuning_CurrentExcl   | Search with current position excluded. |
| uhTuning_FineTuneIncl  | Search including a fine-tune action.   |
| uhTuning_FineTuneExcl  | Search excluding a fine-tune action.   |

#### 8.1.15.2.1.12 uhTuning\_SearchMode\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhTuning_SearchMode_t, *puhTuning_SearchMode_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of search mode flags that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing value of type uhTuning\_SearchModeFlag\_t.

#### 8.1.15.2.1.13 uhTuning\_ValStat\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhTuning_ValStat_t {
    uhTuning_ValStatInvalid = -2,
    uhTuning_ValStatUnknown = -1,
    uhTuning_ValStatKnown    = 1
} uhTuning_ValStat_t, *puhTuning_ValStat_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This type represents the validity status of the related property/properties.

##### Values

Table 895

| Name                    | Description                                                             |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhTuning_ValStatInvalid | The signal strength property is temporarily not available.              |
| uhTuning_ValStatUnknown | The signal strength property is available, yet could not be determined. |
| uhTuning_ValStatKnown   | The signal strength property is available and determined.               |

#### 8.1.15.2.2 Model Types & Constants

None.



8.1.15.3 Logical Component

8.1.15.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 96 depicts the interface-role model of the Tuning logical component. It shows the control and notification interfaces and the roles involved with this logical component.

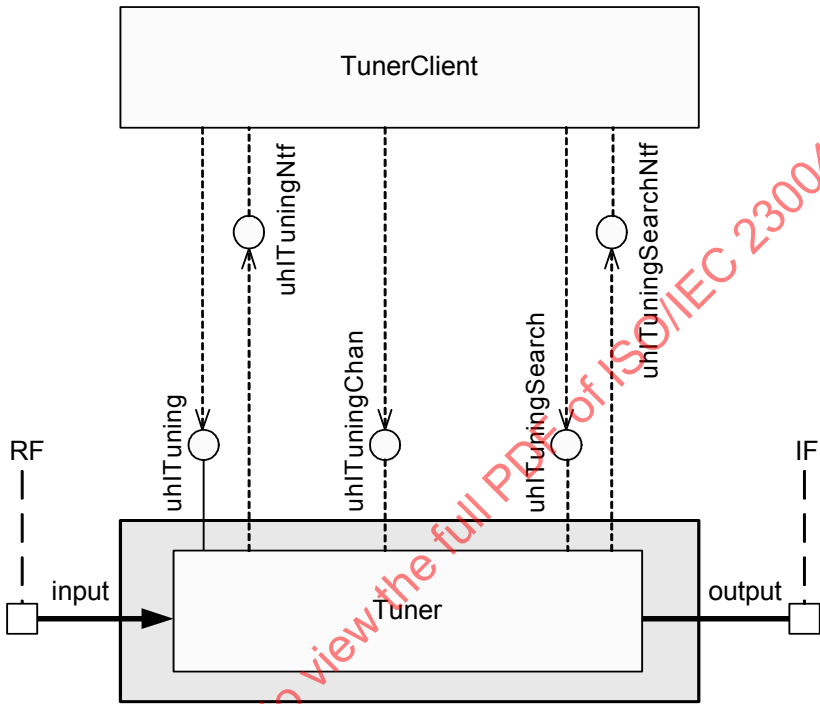


Figure 96 — Interface-Role Model

The grey box in Figure 96 denotes a Tuning logical component containing the `Tuner` role providing the mandatory (solid line) and optional (dotted line) control interfaces to the client.

The clients can optionally provide call-back interfaces to receive notifications of events in the `Tuner`.

8.1.15.3.2 Diversity

8.1.15.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 896

| Role               | Interface                  | Presence  |
|--------------------|----------------------------|-----------|
| <code>Tuner</code> | <code>uhITuning</code>     | mandatory |
| <code>Tuner</code> | <code>uhITuningChan</code> | optional  |

| Role        | Interface                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Presence |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Tuner       | <pre> if (tuner.tuning == True ) OR (tuner.searching == True )  — tuner.actChannelStatus          !=   uhTuning_ValStatKnown  — else if (tuner.actFreq not in channel of   channel table )   — tuner.actChannelStatus          !=     uhTuning_ValStatKnown  — else   — tuner.actChannelStatus          !=     uhTuning_ValStatUnknown  — *pChannelStatus == tuner.actChannelStatus — *pChannel == tuner.actChannel </pre> | optional |
|             | uhITuningSearch                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |          |
| TunerClient | uhITuningNtf                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | optional |
| TunerClient | uhITuningSearchNtf                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | optional |

#### 8.1.15.3.2.2 Configurable Items

The following table contains a list of role attributes that can be given a value upon creation of the logical component. For a description of the attributes see 8.1.15.4 and for how they are initialized see subclause 8.1.15.3.3.

**Table 897**

| Role  | Attribute           |
|-------|---------------------|
| Tuner | minAmp              |
| Tuner | maxFreq             |
| Tuner | afcSupported        |
| Tuner | maxChannelTableSize |
| Tuner | minChannelOffset    |
| Tuner | maxChannelOffset    |
| Tuner | suppSearchModes     |

#### 8.1.15.3.2.3 Constraints

See the *Invariants* of the Tuner role (8.1.15.4).

#### 8.1.15.3.3 Instantiation

##### 8.1.15.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 898

| Type  | Object | Multiplicity |
|-------|--------|--------------|
| Tuner | tuner  | 1            |

#### 8.1.15.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

```

— tuner.setFreq == tuner.minAmp
— tuner.actFreqStatus == uhTuning_ValStatInvalid
— tuner.actFreq == tuner.minAmp
— tuner.setFreqFineTune == False
— tuner.fineTune == False
— tuner.tuning == False
— tuner.presenceStatus == uhTuning_ValStatInvalid
— tuner.signalPresence == False
— tuner.enableAfc == False
— tuner.afcValue == uhTuning_AfcValueInvalid
— tuner.channelTableId == undefined
— tuner.channelTableType == undefined
— tuner.channelTableSize == 0
— tuner.channelTable == null
— tuner.setChannel == undefined
— tuner.actChannelStatus == uhTuning_ValStatInvalid
— tuner.actChannel == undefined
— tuner.channelOffset == 0
— tuner.setChannelFineTune == False
— tuner.searching == False
— tuner.stopSearch == False

```

#### 8.1.15.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

## 8.1.15.4 Roles

## 8.1.15.4.1 Tuner

## Signature

```

role Tuner {
    const UInt32          minAmp;
    const UInt32          maxFreq;
    UInt32               setFreq;
    uhTuning_ValStat_t   actFreqStatus;
    UInt32               actFreq;
    Bool                 setFreqFineTune;
    Bool                 fineTune;
    Bool                 tuning;
    uhTuning_ValStat_t   presenceStatus;
    Bool                 signalPresence;
    const Bool            afcSupported;
    Bool                 enableAfc;
    uhTuning_AfcValue_t   afcValue;
    const UInt32          maxChannelTableSize;
    UInt32               channelTableId;
    uhTuning_ChanTableType_t channelTableType;
    UInt32               channelTableSize;
    uhTuning_ChanTableData_t channelTable[channelTableSize];
    const Int32           minChannelOffset;
    const Int32           maxChannelOffset;
    UInt32               setChannel;
    uhTuning_ValStat_t   actChannelStatus;
    UInt32               actChannel;
    Int32                channelOffset;
    Bool                 setChannelFineTune;
    const uhTuning_SearchMode_t suppSearchModes;
    Bool                 searching;
    Bool                 stopSearch;
}

```

## Qualifiers

— root

## Description

A **Tuner** controls the tuning attributes of the front end.

## Independent Attributes

Table 899

| Name            | Description                                                                   |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| minFreq         | The minimum frequency that can be set (in Hz).                                |
| maxFreq         | The maximum frequency that can be set (in Hz).                                |
| setFreq         | The frequency as it is set by the client.                                     |
| actFreqStatus   | The validity status of the actual frequency.                                  |
| actFreq         | The actual frequency tuned to.                                                |
| setFreqFineTune | The fine tune parameter as set by the last <b>SetFreq</b> call of the client. |

| Name                             | Description                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>fineTune</code>            | Indicates if a fine tune needs to be done (True) or not (False)                                       |
| <code>tuning</code>              | Indicates if tuning is busy (True) or not (False).                                                    |
| <code>presenceStatus</code>      | The validity status of the signal presence.                                                           |
| <code>signalPresence</code>      | Indicates if on the actual frequency the presence of a signal has been detected (True) or not (False) |
| <code>afcSupported</code>        | Indicates if AFC control is supported (True) or not (False).                                          |
| <code>enableAfc</code>           | The setting as set by the client indicating if AFC should be enabled (True) or disabled (False).      |
| <code>afcValue</code>            | The AFC value indicating how much the actual frequency deviates from the IF.                          |
| <code>maxChannelTableSize</code> | The maximum channel table size (in table entries).                                                    |
| <code>channelTableId</code>      | The identification of the current channel table.                                                      |
| <code>channelTableType</code>    | The type of channel table currently in use.                                                           |
| <code>channelTableSize</code>    | The size (in table entries) of the current channel table.                                             |
| <code>channelTable</code>        | The current channel table.                                                                            |
| <code>minChannelOffset</code>    | The minimum offset for a channel.                                                                     |
| <code>maxChannelOffset</code>    | The maximum offset for a channel.                                                                     |
| <code>setChannel</code>          | The channel set by the client.                                                                        |
| <code>actChannelStatus</code>    | The validity status of the actual channel.                                                            |
| <code>actChannel</code>          | The actual channel.                                                                                   |
| <code>channelOffset</code>       | The frequency offset as set by the client.                                                            |
| <code>setChannelFineTune</code>  | The fine tune parameter as set by the last <code>SetChannel</code> call of the client.                |
| <code>suppSearchModes</code>     | The supported search modes.                                                                           |
| <code>searching</code>           | Indicates if a search is active (True) or not (False).                                                |
| <code>stopSearch</code>          | Indicates if the active search should be stopped (True) or not (False).                               |

### Invariants

— `maxFreq >= minAmp`  
 — `minAmp <= setFreq <= maxFreq`  
 — `minAmp <= actFreq <= maxFreq`  
 — `sizeof ( channelTable ) <= maxChannelTableSize`  
 — `minChannelOffset <= 0`  
 — `maxChannelOffset >= 0`  
 — `minChannelOffset <= channelOffset <= maxChannelOffset`  
 — `channelTableSize <= maxChannelTableSize`

### Instantiation

A `Tuner` role is always instantiated as part of a `Tuning` logical component; see subclause 8.1.15.3.3.

### Streaming Behavior

The `Tuner` role tunes to the incoming RF signal and outputs an IF signal that can be handled by a demodulator/decoder.

**Active Behavior**

The `Tuner` has standard notification behavior, except for the following events:

**Table 900**

| Event                                                                                   | Action                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| The actual frequency changed due to AFC.                                                | Notify <code>OnAfcFreqChanged</code>  |
| The actual frequency changed and reached a limit of the AFC window due to AFC.          | Notify <code>OnAfcLimitReached</code> |
| The actual frequency has changed during a frequency based search (progress indication). | Notify <code>OnFreqChanged</code>     |
| The channel changed during a channel based search (progress indication).                | Notify <code>OnChannelChanged</code>  |

**8.1.15.4.2 TunerClient****Signature**

```
role TunerClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

— actor

**Description**

A `TunerClient` represents a user of the control interfaces offered by the `Tuner`. It can optionally provide the notification interfaces to receive notifications of events generated by the `Tuner`. No constraints apply to the behavior of the `TunerClient` other than those implied by Figure 96.

**8.1.15.5 Interfaces****8.1.15.5.1 uhlTuning****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface provides control over basic tuning functionality.

Interface ID

uuid( AB238C03-4170-450b-AC2A-A91334C03BD2 )

8.1.15.5.1.1      **Subscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhITuningNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhTuning_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

8.1.15.5.1.2      **Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhITuningNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhTuning_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

8.1.15.5.1.3      **GetFreqRange**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetFreqRange (
    [out] pUInt32 pMinFreq,
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxFreq );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the boundaries for the frequency that can be set by client.

**Parameters**

Table 901

| Name     | Description                                             |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| pMinFreq | Output parameter returning the minimum frequency in Hz. |
| pMaxFreq | Output parameter returning the maximum frequency in Hz. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

## Action

None

## Postcondition

- \*pMinFreq == Aavd.minAmp
- \*pMaxFreq == tuner.maxFreq

### 8.1.15.5.1.4 SetFreq

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t SetFreq (
    [in] UInt32 freq,
    [in] Bool fineTune );
```

## Qualifiers

- asynchronous

## Description

This function sets the frequency. A client can request a fine tune action. If a search is in progress the search will be stopped by calling this function.

## Parameters

Table 902

| Name     | Description                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| freq     | Input parameter indicating the new frequency in Hz.                                                                                                         |
| fineTune | Input parameter indicating whether a fine-tune action should be done (True) or not (False). Tuners not capable of fine tuning should ignore this parameter. |

## Return Values

Standard

## Precondition

tuner.minAmp <= freq <= tuner.maxFreq

## Action

- if (tuner.tuning == True )
  - **Notify** OnAborted (tuner.actFreq )
- if (tuner.searching == True )
  - **Modify** tuner.stopSearch
- **Modify** tuner.setFreq
- **Modify** tuner.setFreqFineTune
- **Modify** tuner.fineTune
- **Modify** tuner.tuning

## Postcondition

- tuner.stopSearch == True
- tuner.setFreq == freq



```

— tuner.setFreqFineTune == fineTune
— tuner.fineTune == fineTune
— tuner.tuning == True

```

**Asynchronous Action**

```

— Execute tune action
— if (tuner.fineTune )
    — Execute fine tune action
— Modify tuner.actFreq
— Modify tuner.fineTune
— Modify tuner.tuning
— Modify tuner.signalPresence
— Notify OnTuned(tuner.actFreq )
— if ( signal found )
    — Notify OnSignalPresence(tuner.actFreq)

```

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

```

— if (tuner.fineTune )
    — tuner.actFreq == round( finetune( freq ) )
— else
    — tuner.actFreq == round( tune( freq ) )
— tuner.fineTune == False
— tuner.tuning == False
— if ( signal found )
    — tuner.signalPresence == True
— else
    — tuner.signalPresence == False

```

**Remarks**

— The actual frequency (tuner.actFreq) is rounded to the nearest frequency that is supported by the implementation.

**8.1.15.5.1.5 GetFreq****Signature**

```

uhErrorCode_t GetFreq (
    [out] pUInt32 pFreq,
    [out] pBool pFineTune );

```

**Qualifiers**

```

— synchronous
— thread-safe

```

**Description**

This function returns the frequency parameters as they were set by the last SetFreq function call.

**Parameters****Table 903**

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Description</b>                                                  |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pFreq       | Output parameter returning the frequency in Hz that was set.        |
| pFineTune   | Output parameter returning the fine tune parameter that was as set. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None

**Postcondition**

- \*pFreq == Aavd.setFreq
- \*pFineTune == tuner.setFreqFineTune

**8.1.15.5.1.6 GetActualFreq****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualFreq (
    [out] pBool    pTuned,
    [out] puhTuning_ValStat_t pActFreqStatus,
    [out] pUInt32 pFreq );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the actual frequency tuned to. The actual frequency depends on rounding, fine tuning and AFC.

**Parameters****Table 904**

| <b>Name</b>    | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pTuned         | Output parameter indicating whether a tune action is still busy (True) or not (False). If the tune action is still busy, the actual frequency has not settled yet.                                                                                                                               |
| pActFreqStatus | Output parameter returning the validity status of the actual frequency.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| pFreq          | Output parameter returning the actual frequency in Hz. If pTuned equals True, the frequency value has settled (is not in a transitory state). If pTuned equals False, the returned frequency value has not settled yet. If pTuned equals True the actual frequency may still vary due to of AFC. |

**Return Values**  
Standard

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None

**Postcondition**  
— \*pActFreqStatus == Aavd.actFreqStatus  
— \*pFreq == tuner.actFreq  
— if (tuner.tuning == True ) OR (tuner.searching == True )  
—     \* pTuned == False  
— else  
—     \* pTuned == True

**8.1.15.5.1.7     GetSignalPresence**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetSignalPresence (  
    [out] puhTuning\_ValStat\_t pPresenceStatus,  
    [out] pBool pPresence );

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
  
— thread-safe

**Description**  
This functions returns whether the presence of a signal was detected on the frequency currently tuned to.

**Parameters**

**Table 905**

| Name            | Description                                                                                      |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pPresenceStatus | Output parameter returning the validity status of the signal presence.                           |
| pPresence       | Output parameter indicating whether the presence of a signal was detected (True) or not (False). |

**Return Values**  
Standard

**Precondition**  
True

### Postcondition

```
— *pPresenceStatus == Aavd.presenceStatus
— *pPresence == tuner.signalPresence
```

#### 8.1.15.5.1.8 GetAfcSupported

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetAfcSupported ( [out] pBool pSupported );
```

## Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

### Description

This function returns if AFC control is supported.

## Parameters

### Table 906

| Name       | Description                                                                    |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSupported | Output parameter indicating if AFC control is supported (True) or not (False). |

## Return Values

### Standard

### Precondition

True

## Action

None

### Postcondition

```
*pSupported == tuner.afcSupported
```

#### 8.1.15.5.1.9 EnableAfc

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode t EnableAfc ( [in] Bool enable );
```

## Qualifiers

— synchronous

**Description**

This function is used by the client to indicate that AFC should be enabled (`True`) or disabled (`False`). If AFC is enabled by the client, the platform will activate the AFC but might decide to deactivate it temporarily if required (i.e. when fine tuning or searching etc).

The deactivation of the AFC is not directly observable by the client. When the AFC is active the actual frequency tuned to will possibly be influenced.

**Parameters****Table 907**

| Name                | Description                                                                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>enable</code> | Input parameter indicating if AFC has to be enabled ( <code>True</code> ) or disabled ( <code>False</code> ). |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

`Aavd.afcSupported == True`

**Action**

— Modify `tuner.enableAfc`

**Postcondition**

`tuner.enableAfc == enable`

**8.1.15.5.1.10 GetAfcEnabled****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetAfcEnabled ( [out] pBool pEnable );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the AFC enable setting as set by the client. If AFC is enabled by the client, the platform will activate the AFC but might decide to deactivate it temporarily if required (i.e. when fine tuning or searching etc). The deactivation of the AFC is not directly observable by the client.

**Parameters****Table 908**

| Name                 | Description                                                                                             |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pEnable</code> | Output parameter indicating if AFC is enabled ( <code>True</code> ) or disabled ( <code>False</code> ). |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

Aavd.afcSupported == True

**Action**

None

**Postcondition**

\*pEnable == tuner.enableAfc

**8.1.15.5.1.11    GetAfcValue**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t GetAfcValue ( [out] puhTuning\_AfcValue\_t pValue );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the AFC value. This value indicates how much the current frequency deviates from the IF due to AFC.

**Parameters**

**Table 909**

| Name   | Description                                                                                                      |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pValue | Output parameter returning the AFC value. If AFC is disabled this function will return uhTuning_AfcValueUnknown. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

Aavd.afcSupported == True

**Action**

None

**Postcondition**

\*pValue == tuner.afcValue

**8.1.15.5.2    uhITuningNtf**

**Qualifiers**

- callback

**Description**

This interface can be provided by a client that wants to receive notifications with respect to basic tuning.

**Interface ID**

uuid( D2AD0211-B451-455b-89EA-F7B3D3E2C438 )

**8.1.15.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhTuning_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

**8.1.15.5.2.2 OnTuned****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnTuned (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhTuning_ValStat_t actFreqStatus,
    [in] UInt32 actFreq );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function notifies subscribed clients that the tune action has finished.

**Parameters****Table 910**

| Name          | Description                                                   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie        | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| actFreqStatus | The validity status of the notified actual frequency.         |
| actFreq       | The actual frequency tuned to.                                |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback compliant action

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.15.5.2.3 OnAborted****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnAborted (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] UInt32 actFreq );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function notifies subscribed clients that the tune action has been aborted.

**Parameters****Table 911**

| Name    | Description                                                   |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie  | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| actFreq | The actual frequency tuned to.                                |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback compliant action

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.15.5.2.4 OnSignalPresence****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSignalPresence (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhTuning_ValStat_t status,
    [in] UInt32 actFreq,
    [in] Bool presence );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.



**Description**

This function notifies subscribed clients whether or not the presence of a signal has been detected on the frequency tuned to.

**Parameters****Table 912**

| Name     | Description                                                                                                                 |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie   | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                               |
| status   | The validity status of both the notified signal presence and the notified actual frequency.                                 |
| actFreq  | The actual frequency tuned to.                                                                                              |
| presence | A boolean indicating whether the presence of a signal (something other than noise) has been detected (True) or not (False). |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback compliant action

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.15.5.2.5 OnAfcFreqChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnAfcFreqChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhTuning_ValStat_t actFreqStatus,
    [in] UInt32 actFreq,
    [in] uhTuning_AfcValue_t afcValue );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function notifies subscribed clients that the actual frequency has changed due to AFC.

**Parameters****Table 913**

| Name          | Description                                                   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie        | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| actFreqStatus | The validity status of the notified actual frequency.         |
| actFreq       | Input parameter indicating the new actual frequency.          |

| Name     | Description                                       |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------|
| afcValue | Input parameter indicating the current AFC value. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

#### 8.1.15.5.2.6 OnAfcLimitReached

##### Signature

```
[async] Void OnLimitReached (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhTuning_ValStat_t actFreqStatus,
    [in] UInt32 actFreq,
    [in] uhTuning_AfcValue_t afcValue );
```

**Qualifiers**  
None.

##### Description

This function notifies subscribed clients that the frequency has reached one of the limits of the AFC window.

##### Parameters

**Table 914**

| Name          | Description                                                                 |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie        | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.               |
| actFreqStatus | The validity status of the notified actual frequency.                       |
| actFreq       | Input parameter indicating the actual frequency when the limit was reached. |
| afcValue      | Input parameter indicating the AFC value when the limit was reached.        |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any call-back compliant action.

Postcondition

True

8.1.15.5.3 uhITuningChan

Qualifiers

None

Description

This interface provides control with respect to channel based tuning and channel table insertion.

Interface ID

uuid( 31C0D868-CDF3-4a25-AB70-8A9162FD56F5 )

8.1.15.5.3.1 GetMaxTableSize

Signature

uhErrorCode\_t GetMaxTableSize ( [out] pUInt32 pFieldFrequency );

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns the maximum channel table size (in table entries).

Parameters

Table 915

| Name  | Description                                                |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSize | The maximum channel table size (in table entries) allowed. |

Return Values

Standard

Precondition

True

Action

None

Postcondition

\*pFieldFrequency == Aavd.maxChannelTableSize

8.1.15.5.3.2     **SetTable**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetTable (  
    [in] UInt32 id,  
    [in] uhTuning_ChanTableType_t type,  
    [in] UInt32 size,  
    [in, size_is(size)] puhTuning_ChanTableData_t pData );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

**Description**

This function sets the channel table that will be used for channel selection and searching.

**Parameters**

**Table 916**

| Name  | Description                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| id    | Input parameter indicating the identification of the channel table. The <code>GetTable</code> function will return this identification so that a client can check which table is set. |
| type  | The type of channel table based on input type.                                                                                                                                        |
| size  | Input parameter indicating the size (in table entries) of the channel table.                                                                                                          |
| pData | Input parameter indicating the channel table data.                                                                                                                                    |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

size <= tuner.maxChannelTableSize

**Action**

- Modify tuner.channelTableId
- Modify tuner.channelTableType
- Modify tuner.channelTableSize
- Modify tuner.channelTable

**Postcondition**

- tuner.channelTableId == id
- tuner.channelTableType == type
- tuner.channelTableSize == size
- For each i in {0..size-1}
  - tuner.channelTable[i] == pData[i]

### 8.1.15.5.3.3 GetTable

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetTable (
    [out] pUInt32 pId,
    [out] puhTuning_ChanTableType_t pType );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

#### Description

This function returns information about the channel table currently used for channel selection and searching.

#### Parameters

Table 917

| Name  | Description                                                                     |
|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pId   | Output parameter indicating the ID of the channel table as set by the client.   |
| pType | Output parameter indicating the type of the channel table as set by the client. |

#### Return Values

Standard

#### Precondition

Aavd.channelTableSize != 0

#### Action

None

#### Postcondition

- \*pId == tuner.channelTableId
- \*pType == tuner.channelTableType

### 8.1.15.5.3.4 GetOffsetRange

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetOffsetRange (
    [out] pInt32 pMinOffset,
    [out] pInt32 pMaxOffset );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

This function returns the boundaries for the channel offset in Hz. This offset can be used to adjust the frequency tuned to when a channel is set.

Parameters

Table 918

| Name       | Description                                                  |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMinOffset | Output parameter returning the minimum channel offset in Hz. |
| pMaxOffset | Output parameter returning the maximum channel offset in Hz. |

Return Values

Standard

Precondition

True

Action

None

Postcondition

- \*pMinOffset == Aavd.minChannelOffset
- \*pMaxOffset == tuner.maxChannelOffset

8.1.15.5.3.5 SetChannel

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t SetChannel (  
    [in] UInt32 channel,  
    [in] Int32 offset,  
    [in] Bool fineTune );
```

Qualifiers

- asynchronous

Description

This function sets a channel based on the current channel table. A client can influence the frequency tuned to by specifying a frequency offset or by requesting a fine-tune action. If another search was already in progress, that search will be stopped by calling this function.

The following combinations are allowed for the offset and fine-tune parameters:

Table 919

| offset            | fine-tune | effect                                                 |
|-------------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| [min .. max]      | False     | The indicated offset is applied, no fine-tune is done. |
| 0                 | False     | No offset is applied, no fine-tune is done.            |
| 0 or [min .. max] | True      | Offset is ignored, only a fine-tune is done.           |

**Parameters****Table 920**

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Description</b>                                                                     |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| channel     | Input parameter indicating the channel to set.                                         |
| offset      | Input parameter indicating the frequency offset in Hz to apply.                        |
| fineTune    | Input parameter indicating if a fine-tune action should be done (True) or not (False). |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

```

— tuner.channelTableSize != 0
— channel in Aavd.channelTable
— tuner.minChannelOffset ≤ offset ≤ tuner.maxChannelOffset

```

**Action**

```

— if (tuner.tuning == True )
  — Notify OnAborted (tuner.actFreq )
— if (tuner.searching == True )
  — Modify Aavd.stopSearch
— Modify tuner.setChannel
— Modify tuner.actChannel
— Modify tuner.channelOffset
— Modify tuner.setChannelFineTune
— Modify tuner.fineTune
— Modify tuner.tuning

```

**Postcondition**

```

— tuner.stopSearch == True
— tuner.setChannel == channel
— tuner.actChannelStatus != uhTuning_ValStatKnown
— tuner.channelOffset == offset
— tuner.setChannelFineTune == fineTune
— tuner.fineTune == fineTune
— tuner.tuning == True

```

**Asynchronous Action**

```

— Execute tune action
— if (tuner.fineTune )
  — Execute fine tune action
— Modify tuner.actFreq
— Modify tuner.actChannel
— Modify tuner.fineTune
— Modify tuner.tuning
— Notify OnTuned(tuner.actFreq )

```

**Asynchronous Postcondition**

```

— if (tuner.fineTune )
  — tuner.actFreq == round( finetune( carrier frequency of channel ) )

```

```

— else
— tuner.actFreq == round( tune( carrier frequency of channel +
  tuner.channelOffset ) )
— if ( Aavd.actFreq is not part of a channel defined within the current channel
  table )
— tuner.actChannelStatus != uhTuning_ValStatKnown
— else
— tuner.actChannelStatus != uhTuning_ValStatUnknown
— tuner.actChannel == channel ID for tuner.actFreq based on current channel
  table
— tuner.fineTune == False
— tuner.tuning == False

```

**Remarks**

— The actual frequency (`tuner.actFreq`) is rounded to the nearest frequency that is supported by the implementation.

**8.1.15.5.3.6 GetChannel****Signature**

```

uhErrorCode_t GetChannel (
  [out] pUInt32 pChannel,
  [out] pInt32  pOffset,
  [out] pBool   pFineTune );

```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the channel parameters as they were set by the last `SetChannel` function call.

**Parameters****Table 921**

| Name                   | Description                                                         |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pChannel</code>  | Output parameter returning the channel number that was set.         |
| <code>pOffset</code>   | Output parameter returning the frequency offset in Hz that was set. |
| <code>pFineTune</code> | Output parameter returning the fine tune parameter that was as set. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.



**Postcondition**

— \*pChannel == tuner.setChannel  
 — \*pOffset == tuner.channelOffset  
 — \*pFineTune == tuner.fineTune

**8.1.15.5.3.7 GetActualChannel****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualChannel (
    [out] puhTuning_ValStat_t pChannelStatus,
    [out] pUInt32 pChannel );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous  
 — thread-safe

**Description**

This function returns the actual channel based on the actual frequency tuned to.

**Parameters****Table 922**

| Name           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pChannelStatus | Output parameter returning the validity status of the actual channel.<br><br>If a tune action is still busy (the frequency has not settled yet), in that case the value of pChannelStatus will be set to uhTuning_ValStatUnknown. If the tune action has finished and the actual frequency tuned to is not part of a channel defined within the current channel table, pChannelStatus will indicate uhTuning_ValStatUnknown. |
| pChannel       | Output parameter returning the actual channel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None

**Postcondition**

— if (tuner.tuning == True ) OR (tuner.searching == True )  
   — tuner.actChannelStatus != uhTuning\_ValStatKnown  
 — else if (tuner.actFreq not in channel of channel table )  
   — tuner.actChannelStatus != uhTuning\_ValStatKnown  
 — else  
   — tuner.actChannelStatus != uhTuning\_ValStatUnknown  
 — \*pChannelStatus == tuner.actChannelStatus

— \*pChannel == tuner.actChannel

#### 8.1.15.5.4 uhlTuningSearch

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This interface provides control with respect to searching.

##### Interface ID

uuid( 505C46FA-EC96-422a-8907-BF5C102E7D18 )

#### 8.1.15.5.4.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (  
    [in] uhlTuningSearchNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhlTuning_SearchNotifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

#### 8.1.15.5.4.2 Unsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhlTuningSearchNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhlTuning_SearchNotifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

#### 8.1.15.5.4.3 GetSuppModes

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppModes (  
    [out] puhTuning_SearchMode_t pModes );
```

##### Qualifiers

— synchronous

— thread-safe

##### Description

This function returns the supported search modes.

**Parameters****Table 923**

| Name                | Description                                             |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pModes</code> | Output parameter indicating the supported search modes. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None

**Postcondition**`*pModes == Aavd.suppSearchModes`**8.1.15.5.4.4 Start****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Start (
    [in] uhTuning_SearchMode_t mode,
    [in] UInt32 endPos );
```

**Qualifiers**

— asynchronous

**Description**

This function starts a search from the current position using the specified search modes. The search ends when a signal is found, the end position has been reached or the search has been stopped. In all cases, a notification will indicate the termination of the search. When a search reaches the end of the search range (when searching upwards) the position will wrap to the beginning of the range and vice versa (when searching downwards). The following table gives an overview of the constraints with respect to the search mode flags that can be set in order to be valid.

**Table 924**

| Mode flags                | Constraint                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Modulation type           | If negative, positive modulation and modulation none is supported, they are mutually exclusive (the mode being set may not specify multiple at the same time).             |
| Search type               | If frequency and channel based searching is supported, they are mutually exclusive (the mode being set may not specify both at the same time).                             |
| Search direction          | If downward and upward searching is supported, they are mutually exclusive (the mode being set may not specify both at the same time).                                     |
| Current position included | If current position included and current position excluded searching is supported, they are mutually exclusive (the mode being set may not specify both at the same time). |
| FineTuning                | If fine-tune included and fine-tune excluded searching is supported, they are mutually exclusive (the mode being set may not specify both at the same time).               |

## Parameters

Table 925

| Name   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| mode   | Input parameter indicating the search mode. The mode that is set has to be supported and has to be valid.                                                                                                                                   |
| endPos | Input parameter indicating the position at which the search has to stop. The unit of the position depends on the type of search. For a frequency based search the unit is Hz and for a channel based search the unit is the channel number. |

## Return Values

Standard

## Precondition

```

— mode in tuner.suppSearchModes and valid (see constraints on mode flag
  parameters )
— if ( mode indicates a frequency based search )
  — tuner.minAmp ≤ endPos ≤ tuner.maxFreq
— else
  — tuner.channelTableSize != 0
  — endPos in the range of channel numbers of the current channel table

```

## Action

```

— if (tuner.stopSearch == True )
  — Modify tuner.stopSearch
  — Modify tuner.searching
  — Notify OnStopped(tuner.actFreq)
— else if ( tuner.searching == True )
  — Notify OnStopped(tuner.actFreq)
— else
  — Modify tuner.searching
  — Modify tuner.actChannel

```

## Postcondition

```

— if (tuner.stopSearch == True )
  — tuner.stopSearch == False
  — tuner.searching == False
  — Do not execute the asynchronous part
— else
  — tuner.searching == True
  — tuner.actChannelStatus != uhTuning_ValStatKnown

```

## Asynchronous Action

```

— Modify tuner.searching
— Modify tuner.actFreq
— Modify tuner.actChannel
— Modify tuner.signalPresence
— if (tuner.stopSearch == True )

```

```

— Modify tuner.stopSearch
— Notify OnStopped(tuner.actFreq)
— if ( signal found )
—   Notify OnSignalDetected(Aavd.actFreq)
— if (tuner.actFreq == frequency of endPos )
—   Notify OnEndPosReached(tuner.actFreq)

```

#### Asynchronous Postcondition

```

— tuner.searching == False
— tuner.actFreq == current frequency
— if ( Aavd.stopSearch == True )
—   tuner.stopSearch == False
— if (tuner.actFreq part of channel defined within current channel table )
—   tuner.actChannel == current channel based on channel table
— else
—   tuner.actChannelStatus != uhTuning_ValStatKnown
— if ( signal found )
—   tuner.signalPresence == True
— else
—   tuner.signalPresence == False

```

#### 8.1.15.5.4.5 Stop

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Stop ();
```

##### Qualifiers

— synchronous

##### Description

This function can be used to stop a search. If a search was in progress and has been stopped the client will be notified if subscribed to OnStopped.

##### Parameters

None.

##### Return Values

Standard

##### Precondition

True

##### Action

```

— if (tuner.searching == True )

—   Modify tuner.stopSearch

```

Postcondition

tuner.stopSearch == True

8.1.15.5.5    uhlTuningSearchNtf

Qualifiers

—    callback

Description

This interface can be provided by a client that wants to receive notifications with respect to searching.

Interface ID

uuid( F1EC46F5-FB4F-4f8c-B2AD-A443029B95B9 )

8.1.15.5.5.1    OnSubscriptionChanged

Signature

[**async**] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (   
     [in] UInt32 cookie,   
     [in] uhTuning\_SearchNotifications\_t notifs );

Qualifiers

—    onsubscriptionchanged-function

8.1.15.5.5.2    OnSignalDetected

Signature

[**async**] Void OnSignalDetected (   
     [in] UInt32 Cookie,   
     [in] uhTuning\_ValStat\_t actFreqStatus,   
     [in] UInt32 actFreq );

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function notifies subscribed clients that a signal has been detected and the search has been stopped.

Parameters

Table 926

| Name          | Description                                                                 |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie        | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.               |
| actFreqStatus | The validity status of the notified actual frequency.                       |
| actFreq       | Input parameter indicating the actual frequency the signal was detected on. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

**8.1.15.5.5.3 OnStopped**

**Signature**  
[**async**] Void OnStopped (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] UInt32 actFreq );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function notifies subscribed clients that the search has been stopped.

**Parameters**

**Table 927**

| Name    | Description                                                                           |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie  | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                         |
| actFreq | Input parameter indicating the actual frequency after the searching has been stopped. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

#### 8.1.15.5.4 OnEndPosReached

##### Signature

```
[async] Void OnEndPosReached (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] UInt32 freq );
```

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This function notifies subscribed clients that the search has stopped because the end position that was set using the `Start` function has been reached.

##### Parameters

Table 928

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| freq   | Input parameter indicating the frequency of the end position. |

##### Return Values

None.

##### Precondition

True

##### Action

— Any call-back compliant action.

##### Postcondition

True

#### 8.1.15.5.5 OnFreqChanged

##### Signature

```
[async] Void OnFreqChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] UInt32 freq );
```

##### Qualifiers

None

##### Description

This function notifies subscribed clients that the frequency has changed during searching. This function is intended for progress indication purposes.



**Parameters****Table 929**

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Description</b>                                            |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie      | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| freq        | Input parameter indicating the new frequency in Hz.           |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any call-back compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.15.5.5.6 OnChannelChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnChannelChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] UInt32 channel );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function notifies subscribed clients that the channel has changed during searching. This function is intended for progress indication purposes.

**Parameters****Table 930**

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Description</b>                                            |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie      | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| channel     | Input parameter indicating the new channel number.            |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any call-back compliant action

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.16 UhlUrlSrc****8.1.16.1 Concepts****8.1.16.1.1 Introduction**

The function of a URL Source is to stream data identified by a URL into the platform. A URL has the following format: `<scheme>://<scheme specific format>`<sup>22</sup>. The scheme, also called protocol, is used for accessing the data. Examples are: FILE, HTTP, and FTP. For the HTTP scheme, a URL will look like: `http://<hostport>[/<path>][?<search>]`<sup>23</sup>.

Based on the protocol, capabilities of the server, and content type of the data special operations can be applied to the data like pause, fast forward, go to position, and so on. These special operations are often referred to as trick modes. When a new URL is requested, the available trick modes may change. Clients have to take this into account. Note that linear playback of the data is always supported.

Accessing a server that provides a URL can be slow, especially when it points to a remote server. Therefore, gaining access is done in two steps. First, the URL is parsed to see if the requested scheme is available and the format of the URL is correct. This can be done locally and fast. Secondly, the server and the actual data will be accessed which might require remote access and can be slow.

When a URL identifies data on a remote server, the connection to the server may be lost. This will be signaled to the client. A number of retries will be performed before a definite connection lost notification is given. Furthermore, delays in the transmission can occur. These will not be signaled to the client but gracefully handled by the platform.

Data streaming from a server is subject to jitter. Therefore, an input buffer is modeled as part of URL Source. This buffer is used to compensate for this jitter, that is, to ensure a continuous playback. When the URL Source is put in play state, data streaming to the output only starts once the amount of data in the buffer has reached a nominal level. Then, the fullness level of the buffer fluctuates around (below and above) the nominal level. The detailed buffering model during trick modes is scheme-specific and not described further in this document.

The ratio between the nominal level and the total buffer size is URL scheme-specific. The total buffer size itself depends on the maximum possible jitter in the system and on the bit rate of the selected URL. The fullness level of the buffer is observable to the client (in % of nominal level).

---

<sup>22</sup>Terms in pointy brackets have to be substituted by an actual string and the brackets have to be removed.

<sup>23</sup>Terms in square brackets are optional and the brackets have to be removed.

## 8.1.16.2 Types & Constants

### 8.1.16.2.1 Public Types & Constants

#### 8.1.16.2.1.1 Error Codes

##### Signature

```
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_URLSRC_INVALID_URL      = 0x00000801;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_URLSRC_SCHEME_NOT_SUPP  = 0x00000802;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_URLSRC_ABORTED          = 0x00000803;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_URLSRC_NOT_ABORTED      = 0x00000804;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_URLSRC_END_OF_STREAM    = 0x00000805;
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_URLSRC_CONNECTION_LOST  = 0x00000806;
```

##### Qualifiers

— error-codes

##### Description

The non-standard error codes that can be returned by functions of this logical component.

##### Constants

Table 931

| Name                          | Description                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UH_ERR_URLSRC_INVALID_URL     | This error is returned when a URL cannot be parsed.                                                       |
| UH_ERR_URLSRC_SCHEME_NOT_SUPP | This error is returned when a scheme indicated in the URL is not supported.                               |
| UH_ERR_URLSRC_ABORTED         | A call to abort an action indeed aborted the action.                                                      |
| UH_ERR_URLSRC_NOT_ABORTED     | A call to abort an action did not abort the action.                                                       |
| UH_ERR_URLSRC_END_OF_STREAM   | A call to a single step function has reached the end of stream and thus the single step is not performed. |
| UH_ERR_URLSRC_CONNECTION_LOST | A call to a single step function is interrupted because of a lost connection.                             |

#### 8.1.16.2.1.2 uhUrlSrc\_Notification\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum uhUrlSrc_Notification_t {
    uhUrlSrc_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhUrlSrc_Accessible          = 0x00000002,
    uhUrlSrc_NotAccessible       = 0x00000004,
    uhUrlSrc_ConnectionRetry     = 0x00000008,
    uhUrlSrc_EndOfRendering      = 0x00000010,
    uhUrlSrc_EndOfInput          = 0x00000020,
    uhUrlSrc_DataConsumed        = 0x00000040,
    uhUrlSrc_PlayTimeChanged     = 0x00000080,
    uhUrlSrc_ActionAborted       = 0x00000100,
    uhUrlSrc_TrickControlLost    = 0x00000200
} uhUrlSrc_Notification_t, *puhUrlSrc_Notification_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhUrlSrcNtf`.

**Values****Table 932**

| <b>Name</b>                               | <b>Description</b>                              |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhUrlSrc_SubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> . |
| <code>uhUrlSrc_Accessible</code>          | Represents <code>OnAccessible</code> .          |
| <code>uhUrlSrc_NotAccessible</code>       | Represents <code>OnNotAccessible</code> .       |
| <code>uhUrlSrc_ConnectionRetry</code>     | Represents <code>OnConnectionRetry</code> .     |
| <code>uhUrlSrc_EndOfRendering</code>      | Represents <code>OnEndOfRendering</code> .      |
| <code>uhUrlSrc_EndOfInput</code>          | Represents <code>OnEndOfInput</code> .          |
| <code>uhUrlSrc_DataConsumed</code>        | Represents <code>OnDataConsumed</code> .        |
| <code>uhUrlSrc_PlayTimeChanged</code>     | Represents <code>OnPlayTimeChanged</code> .     |
| <code>uhUrlSrc_ActionAborted</code>       | Represents <code>OnActionAborted</code> .       |
| <code>uhUrlSrc_TrickControlLost</code>    | Represents <code>OnTrickControlLost</code> .    |

**8.1.16.2.1.3    `uhUrlSrc_Notifications_t`****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhUrlSrc_Notifications_t, *puhUrlSrc_Notifications_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhUrlSrc_Notification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**Constraints**

None.

**8.1.16.2.1.4    `uhUrlSrc_AllNotifications`****Signature**

```
const uhUrlSrc_Notifications_t uhUrlSrc_AllNotifications = 0x000003FF;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhUrlSrc_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**8.1.16.2.1.5 uhUrlSrc\_Scheme\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhUrlSrc_Scheme_t {
    uhUrlSrc_SchemeFtp      = 0x00000001,
    uhUrlSrc_SchemeHttp     = 0x00000002,
    uhUrlSrc_SchemeHttps    = 0x00000004,
    uhUrlSrc_SchemeGopher   = 0x00000008,
    uhUrlSrc_SchemeNews     = 0x00000010,
    uhUrlSrc_SchemeNntp     = 0x00000020,
    uhUrlSrc_SchemeFile     = 0x00000040,
    uhUrlSrc_SchemeProspero = 0x00000080,
    uhUrlSrc_SchemeRtsp     = 0x00000100,
    uhUrlSrc_SchemeRtspu    = 0x00000200
} uhUrlSrc_Scheme_t, *puhUrlSrc_Scheme_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values that describe the possible scheme supported by this URL Source component. The enumeration contains only the schemes for which this URL Source definition is an appropriate abstraction.

**Values****Table 933****Name****Description**

|                         |                                        |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| uhUrlSrc_SchemeFtp      | File transfer protocol.                |
| uhUrlSrc_SchemeHttp     | Hypertext Transfer Protocol.           |
| uhUrlSrc_SchemeHttps    | Secure HTTP.                           |
| uhUrlSrc_SchemeGopher   | The Gopher protocol.                   |
| uhUrlSrc_SchemeNews     | USENET news.                           |
| uhUrlSrc_SchemeNntp     | USENET news using NNTP access          |
| uhUrlSrc_SchemeFile     | Host-specific file names.              |
| uhUrlSrc_SchemeProspero | Prospero Directory Service.            |
| uhUrlSrc_SchemeRtsp     | Real-time Streaming Protocol using TCP |
| uhUrlSrc_SchemeRtspu    | Real-time Streaming Protocol using UDP |

**8.1.16.2.1.6 uhUrlSrc\_Schemes\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhUrlSrc_Schemes_t, *puhUrlSrc_Schemes_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of schemes.

**8.1.16.2.1.7    uhUrlSrc\_NotAccessibleCause\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhUrlSrc_NotAccessibleCause_t {
    uhUrlSrc_NacNotFound          = 0,
    uhUrlSrc_NacTimeOut           = 1,
    uhUrlSrc_NacConnectionLost    = 2,
    uhUrlSrc_NacConnectionTerminated = 3
} uhUrlSrc_NotAccessibleCause_t, *puhUrlSrc_NotAccessibleCause_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values that describe possible causes of a server not being accessible.

**Values****Table 934****Name****Description**

uhUrlSrc\_NacNotFound

The URL is not found.

uhUrlSrc\_NacTimeOut

The URL is not found in the specified time.

uhUrlSrc\_NacConnectionLost

The connection is lost (while it was previously established).

uhUrlSrc\_NacConnectionTerminated

The connection was terminated by the client.

**8.1.16.2.1.8    uhUrlSrc\_Rounding\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhUrlSrc_Rounding_t {
    uhUrlSrc_RoundUp      = 0,
    uhUrlSrc_RoundDown    = 1,
    uhUrlSrc_RoundNearest = 2
} uhUrlSrc_Rounding_t, *puhUrlSrc_Rounding_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values that describe the rounding technique used when setting a position in a stream.

**Values****Table 935****Name****Description**

uhUrlSrc\_RoundUp

Round up.

uhUrlSrc\_RoundDown

Round down.

uhUrlSrc\_RoundNearest

Round nearest.

**8.1.16.2.1.9    uhUrlSrc\_StepMode\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhUrlSrc_StepMode_t {
    uhUrlSrc_StepForward  = 0x00000001,
    uhUrlSrc_StepBackward = 0x00000002
} uhUrlSrc_StepMode_t, *puhUrlSrc_StepMode_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent step modes.

**Values****Table 936****Name****Description**

uhUrlSrc\_StepForward

Step forward.

uhUrlSrc\_StepBackward

Step backward.

**8.1.16.2.1.10    uhUrlSrc\_StepModes\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhUrlSrc_StepModes_t, *puhUrlSrc_StepModes_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of step modes.

**8.1.16.2.2    Model Types & Constants****8.1.16.2.2.1    AccessState\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _AccessState_t {
    AsNoAccess      = 0,
    AsAccessing     = 1,
    AsAccessible    = 2,
    AsRetrying      = 3
} AccessState_t, *pAccessState_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

Description

Values describing the states of the `UrlSrc` role regarding access.

Values

Table 937

| Name                      | Description                                                                |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>AsNoAccess</code>   | The URL is not accessible.                                                 |
| <code>AsAccessing</code>  | The component is trying to obtain access to a URL.                         |
| <code>AsAccessible</code> | The URL is accessible.                                                     |
| <code>AsRetrying</code>   | The <code>UrlSrc</code> role is trying to re-access the server of the URL. |

8.1.16.2.2 PlayState\_t

Signature

```
typedef enum _PlayState_t {
    PsStopped = 0,
    PsPlaying = 1,
    PsPaused = 2
} PlayState_t, *p PlayState_t;
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

Values describing the states of the `UrlSrc` role regarding playing.

Values

Table 938

| Name                   | Description                                                                    |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>PsStopped</code> | The <code>UrlSrc</code> role is not playing the data.                          |
| <code>PsPlaying</code> | The <code>UrlSrc</code> role is playing the data when there is input provided. |
| <code>PsPaused</code>  | The <code>UrlSrc</code> role is paused.                                        |

8.1.16.3 Logical Component

8.1.16.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 97 depicts the interface-role model of the URL Source logical component (grey box). It shows the interfaces and the roles involved with this component.



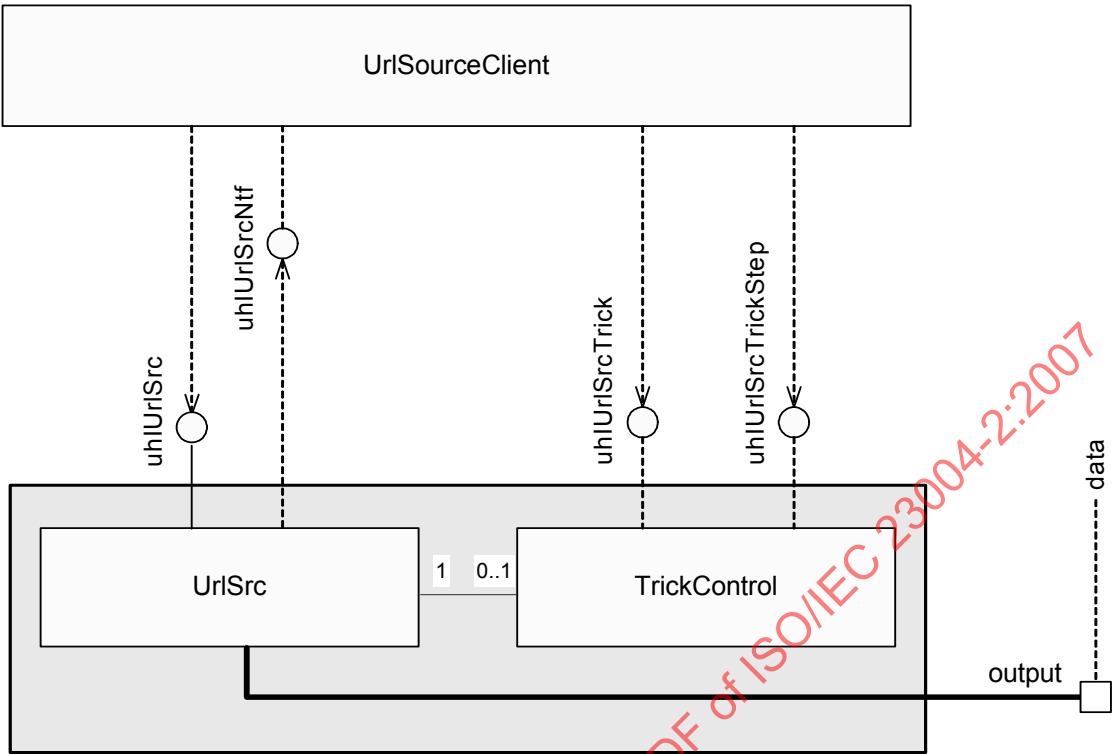


Figure 97 — Interface Role Model

A URL Source logical component contains the `UrlSrc` role that provides a mandatory control interface and can provide the client with notifications. It also contains the dynamic `ImageDecodingClient` role that only provides optional (dotted line) control interfaces. The `ImageDecodingClient` role is dynamic because it can become unavailable at run-time. When the role becomes unavailable, the interfaces it provides will also become unavailable and should be released by a client. The `ImageDecodingClient` role will be unavailable when the client sets a new URL, with the exception that when the new host serving the content has the same capabilities and the content type does not change. When the `ImageDecodingClient` role becomes unavailable, `OnTrickControlLost` is called.

A client (represented by the `UrlSourceClient` role) can use the provided control interfaces. The client can optionally provide a notification interface in order to receive notifications of events generated by the URL Source logical component.

8.1.16.3.2 Diversity

8.1.16.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 939

| Role                             | Interface                       | Presence  |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| <code>UrlSrc</code>              | <code>uhIUrlSrc</code>          | mandatory |
| <code>UrlSourceClient</code>     | <code>uhIUrlSrcNtf</code>       | optional  |
| <code>ImageDecodingClient</code> | <code>uhIUrlSrcTrick</code>     | optional  |
| <code>ImageDecodingClient</code> | <code>uhIUrlSrcTrickStep</code> | optional  |

**8.1.16.3.2.2 Configurable Items****Table 940**

| Role                | Attribute        |
|---------------------|------------------|
| UrlSrc              | callbackRate     |
| UrlSrc              | nrOfRetries      |
| UrlSrc              | supportedSchemes |
| ImageDecodingClient | availStepModes   |
| ImageDecodingClient | reverseSupp      |
| ImageDecodingClient | minSpeedNum      |
| ImageDecodingClient | minSpeedDenom    |
| ImageDecodingClient | maxSpeedNum      |
| ImageDecodingClient | maxSpeedDenom    |

**8.1.16.3.2.3 Constraints**

None.

**8.1.16.3.3 Instantiation****8.1.16.3.3.1 Objects Created**

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 941**

| Type                | Object       | Multiplicity |
|---------------------|--------------|--------------|
| UrlSrc              | urlSource    | 1            |
| ImageDecodingClient | trickControl | 0..1         |

**8.1.16.3.3.2 Initial State**

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- urlSource.accessState == AsNoAccess
- urlSource.currentUrl == empty string
- urlSource.playState == PsStopped
- urlSource.pTrickControl == Null
- urlSource.totalSize == 0
- urlSource.totalDuration == 0

**8.1.16.3.4 Execution Constraints**

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier “thread-safe”.

## 8.1.16.4 Roles

### 8.1.16.4.1 UrlSrc

#### Signature

```

role UrlSrc{
    AccessState_t          accessState;
    PlayState_t            playState;
    String                 currentUrl;
    const UInt32            callbackRate;
    const UInt32            nrOfRetries;
    TrickControl*          pTrickControl;
    const uhUrlSrc_Schemes_t supportedSchemes;
    UInt32                  totalSize;
    UInt32                  totalDuration;
    UInt32                  nominalBufferLevel;
    UInt32                  currentBufferLevel;
}

```

#### Qualifiers

— root

#### Description

The UrlSrc role provides functionality to access a URL and stream its data into the platform. By default, linear playback is supported. It can provide notifications to its clients.

#### Independent Attributes

**Table 942**

| Name               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| accessState        | The current access state.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| playState          | The current play state.                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| currentUrl         | The URL identifying the current data to play.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| callbackRate       | Indicates the maximum number of times per second the notification functions OnDataConsumed and OnPlayTimeChanged will be called.                                                                                    |
| nrOfRetries        | Indicates the number of retries the UrlSrc role will try before a notification OnNotAccessible is given. This is only done when the connection was previously established and has been lost due to external events. |
| pTrickControl      | Points to the optionally available ImageDecodingClient object (Null if not available).                                                                                                                              |
| supportedSchemes   | A configurable item indicating the URL schemes (see subclause 8.1.16.1) are supported by this component.                                                                                                            |
| totalSize          | The total size of the data represented by the current URL                                                                                                                                                           |
| totalDuration      | The total duration of the data represented by the current URL                                                                                                                                                       |
| nominalBufferLevel | The nominal buffer level for the current URL.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| currentBufferLevel | The current buffer fullness level.                                                                                                                                                                                  |

#### Invariants

None.

**Instantiation**

See subclause 8.1.16.3.3

**Streaming Behavior**

The `UrlSrc` has no streaming input, because it is a source. It streams data (e.g. audio, video) from a physical source indicated by a URL. When the data is not streamed fast enough the platform will implement graceful degradation.

When the input of a stream indicates that all data is read, a notification `OnEndOfInput` is signaled. In this case, it is possible that the stream is still playing, but the component is then ready for a new call to `OpenUrl`.

When all data of a URL has been rendered then `OnEndOfRendering` is notified. In this case there is no autonomous state change (for instance `playState`) in the `UrlSrc`.

The preconditions on the `playState` in the `Stop`, `Start` (and `Pause`, `Resume` for role `ImageDecodingClient`) are independent of autonomous behavior. The `playState` is thus fully deducible from the calls to the mentioned functions and therefore not made observable.

When the `UrlSrc` is stopped (`Stop`), the position in the stream is reset to the start of that stream if the `UrlSrc` can negotiate about the position with the server. In this case, a (re)start (`Start`) will be from that start position. Otherwise the (re)start picks up from the data coming in.

**Active Behavior**

If the connection to a server is lost, a number (`nrOfRetries`) of retries is performed. In this case, the `accessState` is set to `AsRetrying`. Each retry is notified. If the retries are not aborted (see `AbortAction`), (1) after `nrOfRetries` retries an `OnNotAccessible` is sent or (2) when access is regained an `OnAccessible` is notified.

**8.1.16.4.2 TrickControl****Signature**

```
role TrickControl{
    const uhUrlSrc_StepModes_t availStepModes;
    const Bool                reverseSupp;
    const UInt8               minSpeedNum;
    const UInt8               minSpeedDenom;
    const UInt8               maxSpeedNum;
    const UInt8               maxSpeedDenom;
    const uhUrlSrc_StepModes_t actualAvailStepModes;
    const Bool                actualReverseSupp;
    const UInt8               actualMinSpeedNum;
    const UInt8               actualMinSpeedDenom;
    const UInt8               actualMaxSpeedNum;
    const UInt8               actualMaxSpeedDenom;
    Int8                      requestedSpeedNum;
    UInt8                     requestedSpeedDenom;
    Int8                      actualSpeedNum;
    UInt8                     actualSpeedDenom;
    UInt32                    currentPosition;
}
```

**Qualifiers**

— actor

### Description

The `TrickControl` role is dynamic. Depending on the content type and server capabilities of the data in the requested URL, it provides functionality to apply trick modes on the data that is streamed. This is only possible when the data rate is controlled by the `UrlSrc` component. The constant attributes of a `TrickControl` instance mirror the trick modes as allowed by the content type and server capabilities.

### Independent Attributes

Table 943

| Name                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>availStepModes</code>       | The available step modes support by the platform.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>reverseSupp</code>          | When <code>True</code> indicates that the speed range (as indicated by the other parameters) can also be used for reverse speed for this platform.                                                                                                 |
| <code>minSpeedNum</code>          | The numerator of the lower limit for the play back speed as support by the platform.                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>minSpeedDenom</code>        | The denominator of the lower limit for the playback speed as support by the platform.                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>maxSpeedNum</code>          | The numerator of the upper limit for the playback speed as support by the platform.                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>maxSpeedDenom</code>        | The denominator of the upper limit for the playback speed as support by the platform.                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>requestedSpeedNum</code>    | The numerator part of the requested playback speed.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>actualAvailStepModes</code> | The actual available step modes taking the capabilities of the platform, the capabilities of the server, and the content type into account.                                                                                                        |
| <code>actualReverseSupp</code>    | When <code>True</code> indicates that the actual speed range (as indicated by the other parameters) can also be used for reverse speed taking the capabilities of the platform, the capabilities of the server, and the content type into account. |
| <code>actualMinSpeedNum</code>    | The actual numerator of the lower limit for the play back speed taking the capabilities of the platform, the capabilities of the server, and the content type into account.                                                                        |
| <code>actualMinSpeedDenom</code>  | The actual denominator of the lower limit for the playback speed taking the capabilities of the platform, the capabilities of the server, and the content type into account.                                                                       |
| <code>actualMaxSpeedNum</code>    | The actual numerator of the upper limit for the playback speed taking the capabilities of the platform, the capabilities of the server, and the content type into account.                                                                         |
| <code>actualMaxSpeedDenom</code>  | The actual denominator of the upper limit for the playback speed taking the capabilities of the platform, the capabilities of the server, and the content type into account.                                                                       |
| <code>requestedSpeedDenom</code>  | The denominator part of the requested playback speed.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>actualSpeedNum</code>       | The numerator part of the actual playback speed.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>actualSpeedDenom</code>     | The denominator part of the actual playback speed.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>currentPosition</code>      | The current position in the stream that is playing.                                                                                                                                                                                                |

### Invariants

- `minSpeedDenom != 0`
- `maxSpeedNum != 0`
- `maxSpeedDenom != 0`
- `actualMinSpeedDenom != 0`
- `actualMaxSpeedNum != 0`
- `actualMaxSpeedDenom != 0`
- `requestedSpeedDenom != 0`
- `actualSpeedDenom != 0`
- `actualAvailStepModes` is a subset of `availStepModes`

```

— If reverse play is supported by the current server and reverse play is applicable for the current content
  type
  — actualReverseSupp == reverseSupp
— Else
  — actualReverseSupp == False
— (minSpeedNum/minSpeedDenom) <=
  (actualMinSpeedNum/actualMinSpeedDenom) <=
  (actualMaxSpeedNum/actualMaxSpeedDenom) <=
  (maxSpeedNum/maxSpeedDenom)
— If reverseSupp == True
  — (actualMinSpeedNum/actualMinSpeedDenom) <=
    (abs(requestedSpeedNum)/requestedSpeedDenom) <=
    (actualMaxSpeedNum/actualMaxSpeedDenom)
  — (actualMinSpeedNum/actualMinSpeedDenom) <=
    (abs(actualSpeedNum)/actualSpeedDenom) <=
    (actualMaxSpeedNum/actualMaxSpeedDenom)
— Else
  — (actualMinSpeedNum/actualMinSpeedDenom) <=
    (requestedSpeedNum/requestedSpeedDenom) <=
    (actualMaxSpeedNum/actualMaxSpeedDenom)
  — (actualMinSpeedNum/minSpeedDenom) <=
    (actualSpeedNum/actualSpeedDenom) <=
    (actualMaxSpeedNum/actualMaxSpeedDenom)

```

### Instantiation

An instance of this role is created after the server, as requested in the URL, has become available and the content type of the data is known. Based on the content type and server capabilities it is determined what trick modes can be provided via the `uhIUrlSrcTrick` or `uhIUrlSrcTrickStep` interface. When at least the trick modes `Pause`, `Resume`, and `SetPosition` are available, the `trickControl` object can be created. The object is created with a call to `GetTrickControl`.

The values of `actualAvailStepModes`, `actualReverseSupp`, `actualMinSpeedNum`, `actualMinSpeedDenom`, `actualMaxSpeedNum`, and `actualMaxSpeedDenom` are determined by the platform based on the capabilities of the platform, the capabilities of the server, and the content type.

### Initial State

```

— requestedSpeedNum == -1.
— requestedSpeedDenom == 1
— actualSpeedNum == 1
— actualSpeedDenom == 1
— currentPosition is determined from the position of the UrlSrc role.

```

### Streaming Behavior

None.

### Active Behavior

None.

### 8.1.16.4.3 UrlSourceClient

#### Signature

```
role UrlSourceClient{}
```

#### Qualifiers

— actor

#### Description

A `UrlSourceClient` represents a user of the `uhUrlSrc`, `uhUrlSrcTrick`, and `uhUrlSrcTrickStep` interfaces. It can provide the `uhUrlSrcNtf` interface when it wants to receive notifications. No constraints apply to the behavior of the `UrlSourceClient` other than those implied by Figure 97.

### 8.1.16.5 Interfaces

#### 8.1.16.5.1 uhUrlSrc

#### Qualifiers

— None

#### Description

This interface provides functionality to access a URL and provide linear playback. Typically, the functions in this interface should be used in a particular order which is: `Subscribe`, `OpenUrl`, wait for `OnAccessible`, and then `Start`.

#### Interface ID

```
uuid( 4CE3FDA6-25BF-4661-9E52-ACD03EFE1E61 )
```

#### 8.1.16.5.1.1 Subscribe

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhUrlSrcNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhUrlSrc_Notifications_t notifs );
```

#### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

8.1.16.5.1.2    Unsubscribe

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhUrlSrcNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhUrlSrc_Notifications_t notifs );
```

Qualifiers

- unsubscribe-function

8.1.16.5.1.3    GetSuppSchemes

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppSchemes ( [out] puhUrlSrc_Schemes_t pSupportedSchemes );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns all supported schemes (see 8.1.16.2.1.5).

Parameters

Table 944

| Name              | Description                                       |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| pSupportedSchemes | Output parameter returning the supported schemes. |

Return Values

Standard

Precondition

True

Action

- None

Postcondition

- \*pSupportedSchemes == urlSource.supportedSchemes.



8.1.16.5.1.4    **OpenUrl**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t OpenUrl (  
    [in, string] const String url,  
    [in] UInt32 timeOut );
```

**Qualifiers**

- asynchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the URL that identifies the data. The URL should comply to [29]. The `OpenUrl` function will try to make the connection to the location. It will generate a notification `OnNotAccessible` or `OnAccessible` on failure or on success.

During the attempt to access the URL, the state of the `UrlSrc` is `AsAccessing`. When the `UrlSrc` is in this state no other `OpenUrl` may be called. This state is not explicitly observable but only implicitly by deducing it from the notifications.

**Parameters**

**Table 945**

| Name                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>url</code>     | The URL that identifies the data that has to be played. The string is null-terminated.                                                                                          |
| <code>timeOut</code> | The number of microseconds (larger than 0) that building a connection may take before it is automatically cancelled. The actual time-out may depend on the underlying platform. |

**Return Values**

**Table 946**

| Name                                       | Description                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>UH_OK</code>                         | Indicates successful execution.                                    |
| <code>UH_ERR_URLSRC_INVALID_URL</code>     | The requested URL could not be parsed.                             |
| <code>UH_ERR_URLSRC_SCHEME_NOT_SUPP</code> | The scheme (see subclause 8.1.16.1.1) of the URL is not supported. |

**Precondition**

- `urlSource.accessState != AsAccessing`
- `timeOut > 0`

**Action**

- If `url` is valid URL
  - Modify `urlSource.currentUrl`
  - Modify `urlSource.accessState`
  - Flush input buffer
  - Modify `urlSource.currentBufferLevel`

#### Postcondition

- If *url* is valid URL && scheme of *url* supported
  - *urlSource.currentUrl* is a copy of *url*
  - *urlSource.accessState* == *AsAccessing*
  - *urlSource.currentBufferLevel* == 0

#### Asynchronous Action

- Modify *urlSource.accessState*
- If server and data in URL are accessible
  - If the server providing the URL does not have trick mode capabilities && *urlSource.pTrickControl* != Null
    - *urlSource.pTrickControl* = Null
    - Notify *OnTrickControlLost*(\*)
  - Compute new *urlSource.nominalBufferLevel*
  - Notify *OnAccessible*(\*)
- Else
  - If access was aborted due to a timeout
    - Notify *OnNotAccessible*(\*, *uhUrlSrc\_NacTimeOut*)
  - Else
    - Notify *OnNotAccessible*(\*, *uhUrlSrc\_NacNotFound*)

#### Asynchronous Postcondition

- If server and data in URL are accessible within time *timeOut*
  - *urlSource.accessState* == *AsAccessible*
  - new *urlSource.nominalBufferLevel* set
- Else
  - *urlSource.accessState* == *AsNoAccess*

#### Remarks

- When the component was in the playing state, it immediately starts playing the current URL.
- Note that when the *pTrickControl* is set to Null, this does not mean that the *pTrickControl* object is destroyed. Only when all interface pointers to that object are released, the object is destroyed. This is the obligation of the client.

#### 8.1.16.5.1.5 GetUrl

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetUrl (
    [in] UInt32 size,
    [out] pUInt32 pActualSize,
    [out, string, size_is(size)] String url);
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

Returns the URL that was set as a null-terminated string and the actual size of the URL.

**Parameters****Table 947**

| <b>Name</b>              | <b>Description</b>                                                                                     |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>size</code>        | The maximum number of characters to be returned of the URL identified by <code>url</code> .            |
| <code>pActualSize</code> | Output parameter returning the actual number of characters of the URL identified by <code>url</code> . |
| <code>url</code>         | Output parameter returning the URL that was set as a null-terminated string.                           |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None

**Postcondition**

- `*pActualSize ==` actual size of the URL identified by `url`
- `url` is a copy of `urlSource.currentUrl`

**8.1.16.5.1.6 Start****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Start ( );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function starts streaming the data whenever data becomes available. A consecutive call to start does not have any effect on the URL currently being streamed.

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

— True

**Action**— Modify `urlSource.playState`**Postcondition**

```
urlSource.playState == PsPlaying
```

## Remarks

- Data becomes available only with a call to `OpenUrl`.
- See also 8.1.16.4.1 for details on streaming behavior for starting a stopped stream.

### 8.1.16.5.1.7 Stop

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Stop ( );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

#### Description

Stops playing the current URL (flushes the data that has not been decoded, and stops rendering as soon as possible).

#### Return Values

Standard

#### Precondition

- True

#### Action

- If `urlSource.playState == PsPlaying || urlSource.playState == PsPaused`
  - Modify `urlSource.playState`
  - Notify `OnEndOfRendering(*)`
  - Flush input buffer
  - Modify `urlSource.currentBufferLevel`

#### Postcondition

- `urlSource.playState == PsStopped`
- `urlSource.currentBufferLevel == 0`

#### Remarks

- See also 8.1.16.4 for details on streaming behavior related to stopping a stream.

### 8.1.16.5.1.8 CloseUrl

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t CloseUrl ( );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Closes access to the server providing the URL.

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

`urlSource.accessState != AsAccessing`

**Action**

```
— If urlSource.accessState == AsAccessible ||
   urlSource.accessState == AsRetrying
   — Modify urlSource.accessState
   — Notify OnNotAccessible (*, uhUrlSrc_NacConnectionTerminated)
```

**Postcondition**

`urlSource.accessState == AsNoAccess`

**Remarks**

- A UrlSrc is required to re-obtain access to the URL.
- Note that the play state is not changed.

**8.1.16.5.1.9 AbortAction**

**Signature**

`uhErrorCode_t AbortAction ( )`

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

This function is intended to abort an `OpenUrl` or an automatic connection retry. Calling this function has no effect when there is no attempt to set a URL or to reconnect to a URL. The function is synchronous. When it aborted an `OpenUrl` or an automatic connection retry, it notifies the client with a synchronous `OnActionAborted` notification before completion and makes the `accessState` of the `currentUrl` equal to `AsNoAccess`.

**Return Values**

Table 948

| Name                                   | Description                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>UH_OK</code>                     | The call led to an abort of a <code>OpenUrl</code> call or of an autonomous connection retry. |
| <code>UH_ERR_URLSRC_NOT_ABORTED</code> | The call did not abort since the action completed before the abort took place.                |

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- If `urlSource.accessState == AsAccessing` ||  
`urlSource.accessState == AsRetrying`
- Cancel any action in an on-going `OpenUrl` or automatic re-connection.
- Modify `urlSource.accessState`
- Notify `OnActionAborted(*)`

**Postcondition**

- If `urlSource.accessState == AsAccessing` ||  
`urlSource.accessState == AsRetrying`
- `urlSource.accessState = AsNoAccess`

**Remarks**

- Only one of `OnAccessible`, `OnNotAccessible`, or `OnActionAborted` will be notified when the `AbortAction` is called that is intended to abort an `OpenUrl` or an autonomous reconnection call. The first two can be called when the following happens: before `AbortAction` inspects the `accessState`, either (1) the URL was found or the timeout occurred (for `OpenUrl`) or (2) the number of retries was reached or the connection was re-established (for the reconnection).

**8.1.16.5.1.10 GetTotalSize****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetTotalSize ( [out] pUInt32 pTotalSize );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

If the current URL is accessible and the total size of the data is known, this function returns that size. Otherwise it returns 0.

**Parameters****Table 949**

| Name                    | Description                                                            |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pTotalSize</code> | Output parameter returning the total size of the current URL in bytes. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

- True

Action

- If the current URL is accessible and the total size is known

Modify `urlSource.totalSize`

Postcondition

- `*pTotalSize == urlSource.totalSize`

8.1.16.5.1.11 GetTotalDuration

Signature

`uhErrorCode_t GetTotalDuration ( [out] pUInt32 pTotalDuration );`

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

If the current URL is accessible and the total duration of the data is known, this function returns that duration. Otherwise it returns 0.

Parameters

Table 950

| Name                        | Description                                                                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pTotalDuration</code> | Output parameter returning the total duration of the current URL in milliseconds. |

Return Values

Standard

Precondition

- True

Action

- If the current URL is accessible and the total duration is known
- Modify `urlSource.totalDuration`

Postcondition

- `*pTotalDuration == urlSource.totalDuration`

8.1.16.5.1.12 GetTrickControl

Signature

`uhErrorCode_t GetTrickControl ( [out] uhIUrlSrcTrick **ppTrickControl );`

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Creates an object of type `ImageDecodingClient`, see subclause 8.1.8.4.2, when the server providing the URL and the platform have trick capabilities. It then returns an interface pointer of the `ImageDecodingClient` role if present, otherwise it returns a Null pointer.

**Parameters**

**Table 951**

| Name                        | Description                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>ppTrickControl</code> | Output parameter returning an interface pointer of <code>uhUrlSrcTrick</code> interface if present, otherwise it returns a Null pointer. |

**Return Values**  
Standard

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— If the server providing the URL and the platform have trick mode capabilities &&  
    `urlSource.pTrickControl == Null`  
    — `urlSource.pTrickControl = create(trickControl)`

**Postcondition**  
— `*ppTrickControl ==` pointer to `uhUrlSrcTrick` of `urlSource.pTrickControl`.

**8.1.16.5.1.13 GetBufferFullness**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t GetBufferFullness ( [out] pUInt32 pBufferFullness );`

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
— thread-safe

**Description**  
If the current URL is accessible, this function returns the current buffer fullness level. Otherwise it returns 0.

**Parameters**

**Table 952**

| Name                         | Description                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pBufferFullness</code> | Output parameter returning the current buffer fullness in % of the nominal buffer level for the current URL. |

**Return Values**  
Standard



**Precondition**

— True

**Action**

— None

**Postcondition**— *\*pBufferFullness* == INT( 100 \* urlSource.currentBufferLevel/nominalBufferLevel )**Remark**

The returned buffer fullness may be larger than 100%.

**8.1.16.5.2 uhUrlSrcNtf****Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This is a notification interface to be provided by clients of the URL Source logical component that wish to receive notifications of `UrlSrc` related events.

**Interface ID**

uuid( 6921428F-2C90-43cc-9265-A202F3EBFFA0 )

**8.1.16.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhUrlSrc_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

**8.1.16.5.2.2 OnAccessible****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnAccessible ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The `UrlSrc` calls this function when a requested URL has become accessible.

Parameters

Table 953

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

Return Values  
None.

Precondition  
True

Action  
— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition  
True

8.1.16.5.2.3 OnNotAccessible

Signature  
[async] Void OnNotAccessible (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie  
    [in] uhUrlSrc\_NotAccessibleCause\_t cause );

Qualifiers  
None.

Description  
The `UrlSrc` calls this function when the URL that was accessed is no longer accessible.

Parameters

Table 954

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| cause  | The reason why the URL was not accessible.                    |

Return Values  
None.

Precondition  
True

Action  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.16.5.2.4 OnConnectionRetry****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnConnectionRetry ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The `UrlSrc` calls this function when the URL that was accessed is no longer accessible due to a lost connection. There are a number of autonomous retries and each retry causes such a notification. The time between retries is chosen by the platform. If not aborted (see `AbortAction`), the function is called `nrOfRetries` times before an `OnNotAccessible` is called.

**Parameters****Table 955****Name**

cookie

**Description**

The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.16.5.2.5 OnEndOfRendering****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnEndOfRendering ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The `UrlSrc` calls this function when it detects that the end of a stream has been reached while playing. It indicates that the data is rendered and has left the platform.

This notification is signaled due to the following conditions (the notification will come after data has left the platform):

- The end of the stream was encountered while playing that stream (either forward or reverse). Note that it is irrelevant how the end was reached (for example using `SetPosition`) just the fact that the end is reached triggers the notification.
- An `OpenUrl` is called that interrupts a playing stream.
- An `AbortAction` is called that interrupts an `OpenUrl` or a connection retry, while a stream was being played.
- A `CloseUrl` is called while a stream was being played.

In case the output of `UrlSrc` is not really a streaming output but for example an image, this function is only called in the latter three cases; i.e. when the client does `OpenUrl`, `AbortAction`, or `CloseUrl`.

## Parameters

**Table 956**

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

## Return Values

None.

## Precondition

True

## Action

- Any callback-compliant action.

## Postcondition

True

## 8.1.16.5.2.6 OnEndOfInput

### Signature

```
[async] void OnEndOfInput (
    [in] UInt32 cookie
);
```

## Qualifiers

None.

## Description

The `UrlSrc` calls this function while playing when the source of the data indicates that there is no more data. It does not mean that all data is rendered, but it indicates that a new `OpenUrl` can be performed without interrupting the current URL.

This notification is signaled only when an end of the input was encountered during normal streaming (playing forward or reverse in arbitrary speeds).

## Parameters

Table 957

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

## Return Values

None.

## Precondition

True

## Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

## Postcondition

True

## Remarks

Thus a call to `OpenUrl`, `CloseUrl`, `AbortAction`, `SetPosition`, `StepForward`, or `StepBackward` will not cause an `OnEndOfInput` notification.

### 8.1.16.5.2.7 OnDataConsumed

## Signature

```
[async] Void OnDataConsumed (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] UInt32 bytesConsumed );
```

## Qualifiers

None.

## Description

The `UrlSrc` calls this function each time at least 1% of the data has been consumed. However, this function will not be called more than `urlSource.callbackRate` times per second.

This function will only be called if the total size is known.

## Parameters

Table 958

| Name          | Description                                                                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie        | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                              |
| bytesConsumed | The number of bytes that have already been consumed of the data that is currently playing. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

8.1.16.5.2.8 OnPlayTimeChanged

**Signature**  
[async] Void OnPlayTimeChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] UInt32 timePlayed );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
The `UrlSrc` calls this function each time at least 1% of the total duration has passed. However, this function will not be called more than `urlSource.callbackRate` times per second.  
  
This function will only be called if the total duration is known.

**Parameters**

Table 959

| Name                    | Description                                                                                     |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>     | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                   |
| <code>timePlayed</code> | An approximation of the current position in milliseconds in the data that is currently playing. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

**Remarks**

After jumping in a variable bit rate stream, only an approximation of the time can be reported.

**8.1.16.5.2.9 OnActionAborted****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnActionAborted ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The `UrlSrc` calls this function when the client has called `AbortAction` and indeed a `OpenUrl` or a connection retry was cancelled.

**Parameters****Table 960****Name**

`cookie`

**Description**

The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.16.5.2.10 OnTrickControlLost****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnTrickControlLost ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

The `UrlSrc` calls this function when a new `OpenUrl` loses the capability to do trick modes. This notification will only come when previously a `GetTrickControl` call was made that indeed returned an interface pointer and when this interface pointer is not released.

**Parameters****Table 961**

| <b>Name</b>         | <b>Description</b>                                            |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**Remarks**

The client is obliged to do a `Release` on the interface pointer he previously obtained with `GetTrickControl`. As an exception to the rule, it is allowed to do this `Release` from this notification function.

**8.1.16.5.3 uhlUrlSrcTrick****Qualifiers**

— None

**Description**

This interface provides basic trick mode functions that can typically be provided for streaming audio and video.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( 49B2546A-6850-4d85-B57A-9904AC41D548 )`

**8.1.16.5.3.1 Pause****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Pause ( );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— single-threaded



**Description**

Pauses playback.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- If `urlSource.playState == PsPlaying`
- Modify `urlSource.playState`

**Postcondition**

- If `urlSource.playState == PsPlaying`
- `urlSource.playState == PsPaused`

**8.1.16.5.3.2 Resume****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Resume ( );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Resumes playback at the point in the stream where `Pause` halted it or from the position set by the last `SetPosition` call if `SetPosition` is called after `Pause`.

**Parameters**

None.

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- If `urlSource.playState == PsPaused`
- Modify `urlSource.playState`

**Postcondition**

— If `urlSource.playState == PsPaused`  
`urlSource.playState == PsPlaying`

**8.1.16.5.3.3 SetPosition****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetPosition (
    [in] UInt32 requestedTime,
    [in] uhUrlSrc_Rounding_t rounding,
    [out] pUInt32 pActualTime );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the position to the specified time. Returns the rounded position that was actually set.

**Parameters****Table 962**

| Name                       | Description                                                                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>requestedTime</code> | The requested position (in milliseconds) in the current stream.                         |
| <code>rounding</code>      | The rounding technique to be used.                                                      |
| <code>pActualTime</code>   | Output parameter returning the actual position (in milliseconds) in the current stream. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Modify `trickControl.currentPosition`.

**Postcondition**

— `trickControl.currentPosition == rounding(requestedTime)`

— `*pActualTime == rounding(requestedTime)`

— The position in the stream corresponds to `*pActualTime` (in milliseconds).

**Remarks**

— There are restrictions on how accurate the position is from which playback resumes after a jump. For video, the previous I-picture has to be located for example. From there, playing can resume. For a variable bit rate stream, only an approximation of the position to jump to can be determined.

— Jumping to a time later than the total duration will result in a jump to the end of the stream.

8.1.16.5.3.4    **GetPosition**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetPosition ( [out] pUInt32 pTime );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current position in the stream that is playing.

**Parameters**

**Table 963**

| Name  | Description                                                                    |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pTime | Output parameter returning the current position in the stream that is playing. |

**Return Values**  
Standard

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
— \*pTime == trickControl.currentPosition

8.1.16.5.3.5    **GetSpeedRange**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSpeedRange (
    [out] pBool  pReverseSupp,
    [out] pUInt8 pMinSpeedNum,
    [out] pUInt8 pMinSpeedDenom,
    [out] pUInt8 pMaxSpeedNum,
    [out] pUInt8 pMaxSpeedDenom );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns (1) whether reverse speeds are allowed and (2) the lower and upper bounds of the speed that can be handled for the content identified by the URL. The bounds are determined as follows:  $\text{minSpeed} = (*p\text{MinSpeedNum}/*p\text{MinSpeedDenom})$  and  $\text{maxSpeed} = (*p\text{MaxSpeedNum}/*p\text{MaxSpeedDenom})$ .

**Parameters****Table 964**

| Name                        | Description                                                                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pReverseSupp</code>   | Output parameter returning whether reverse speeds are supported.                          |
| <code>pMinSpeedNum</code>   | Output parameter returning the numerator part of the lower limit of the playback speed.   |
| <code>pMinSpeedDenom</code> | Output parameter returning the denominator part of the lower limit of the playback speed. |
| <code>pMaxSpeedNum</code>   | Output parameter returning the numerator part of the upper limit of the playback speed.   |
| <code>pMaxSpeedDenom</code> | Output parameter returning the denominator part of the upper limit of the playback speed. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— `*pReverseSupp == trickControl.actualReverseSupp`  
 — `*pMinSpeedNum == trickControl.actualMinSpeedNum`  
 — `*pMinSpeedDenom == trickControl.actualMinSpeedDenom`  
 — `*pMaxSpeedNum == trickControl.actualMaxSpeedNum`  
 — `*pMaxSpeedDenom == trickControl.actualMaxSpeedDenom`

**8.1.16.5.3.6 SetSpeed****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetSpeed (
    [in] Int8    requestedSpeedNum,
    [in] UInt8   requestedSpeedDenom,
    [out] pInt8  pActualSpeedNum,
    [out] pUInt8 pActualSpeedDenom );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the playback speed as follows:  $\text{requestedSpeed} = (\text{requestedSpeedNum}/\text{requestedSpeedDenom})$ . Returns the speed that was actually set as follows:  $\text{actualSpeed} = (\text{actualSpeedNum}/\text{actualSpeedDenom})$ .

## Parameters

Table 965

| Name                             | Description                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>requestedSpeedNum</code>   | The numerator part of the requested playback speed. When negative, the playback will be reverse.                         |
| <code>requestedSpeedDenom</code> | The denominator part of the requested playback speed.                                                                    |
| <code>pActualSpeedNum</code>     | Output parameter returning the numerator part of the actual playback speed. When negative, the playback will be reverse. |
| <code>pActualSpeedDenom</code>   | Output parameter returning the denominator part of the actual playback speed.                                            |

## Return Values

Standard

## Precondition

```

— requestedSpeedDenom != 0
— !trickControl.reverseSupp == True
  — (trickControl.actualMinSpeedNum/trickControl.actualMinSpeedDenom) <=
    (abs(requestedSpeedNum)/requestedSpeedDenom) <=
    (trickControl.actualMaxSpeedNum/trickControl.actualMaxSpeedDenom)
— Else
  — (trickControl.actualMinSpeedNum/trickControl.actualMinSpeedDenom) <=
    (requestedSpeedNum/requestedSpeedDenom) <=
    (trickControl.actualMaxSpeedNum/trickControl.actualMaxSpeedDenom)

```

## Action

```

— Modify trickControl.requestedSpeedNum
— Modify trickControl.requestedSpeedDenom
— Modify trickControl.actualSpeedNum
— Modify trickControl.actualSpeedDenom
— trickControl.actualSpeedNum/trickControl.actualSpeedDenom ==
  the speed closest to requestedSpeedNum/requestedSpeedDenom

```

## Postcondition

```

— trickControl.requestedSpeedNum == requestedSpeedNum
— trickControl.requestedSpeedDenom == requestedSpeedDenom
— *pActualSpeedNum == trickControl.actualSpeedNum
— *pActualSpeedDenom == trickControl.actualSpeedDenom

```

## 8.1.16.5.3.7 GetSpeed

## Signature

```

uhErrorCode_t GetSpeed (
    [out] pInt8 pRequestedSpeedNum,
    [out] pUInt8 pRequestedSpeedDenom,
    [out] pInt8 pActualSpeedNum,
    [out] pUInt8 pActualSpeedDenom );

```

## Qualifiers

```

— synchronous

— thread-safe

```

**Description**

Returns the playback speed as follows:  
 $\text{requestedSpeed} = (*p\text{RequestedSpeedNum} / *p\text{RequestedSpeedDenom})$  and the speed that was actually set as follows:  $\text{actualSpeed} = (*p\text{ActualSpeedNum} / *p\text{ActualSpeedDenom})$ .

**Parameters****Table 966**

| Name                              | Description                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pRequestedSpeedNum</code>   | Output parameter returning the numerator part of the requested playback speed. When negative, the requested playback is reverse. |
| <code>pRequestedSpeedDenom</code> | Output parameter returning the denominator part of the requested playback speed.                                                 |
| <code>pActualSpeedNum</code>      | Output parameter returning the numerator part of the actual playback speed. When negative, the actual playback is reverse.       |
| <code>pActualSpeedDenom</code>    | Output parameter returning the denominator part of the actual playback speed.                                                    |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- `*pRequestedSpeedNum == trickControl.requestedSpeedNum`
- `*pRequestedSpeedDenom == trickControl.requestedSpeedDenom`
- `*pActualSpeedNum == trickControl.actualSpeedNum`
- `*pActualSpeedDenom == trickControl.actualSpeedDenom`

**8.1.16.5.4 uhlUrlSrcTrickStep****Qualifiers**

- None

**Description**

This interface provides specific trick mode functions that enable clients to step through a stream per access unit.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( 53383DD1-BA73-47a6-84F0-394D12E60B36 )`

**8.1.16.5.4.1    GetAvailStepModes****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetAvailStepModes ( [out] puhUrlSrc_StepModes_t pAvailStepModes );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the available step modes.

**Parameters****Table 967**

| Name            | Description                                          |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| pAvailStepModes | Output parameter returning the available step modes. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pAvailStepModes == trickControl.actualAvailStepModes

**8.1.16.5.4.2    StepForward****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t StepForward ( );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Performs playback of the next access unit. If there is no next access unit, a return value indicating this is returned. The function returns when there was a noticeable effect for the client.

When the connection was lost, the function immediately returns without waiting for retries.

**Parameters**  
None.

**Return Values**

Table 968

| Name                          | Description                                                                  |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UH_OK                         | Indicates successful execution.                                              |
| UH_ERR_URLSRC_END_OF_STREAM   | The step cannot be performed because the end of the stream has been reached. |
| UH_ERR_URLSRC_CONNECTION_LOST | The step cannot be performed because the connection was lost.                |

**Precondition**  
— uhUrlSrc\_StepForward in trickControl.actualAvailStepModes  
— urlSource.playState == PsPaused

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
None.

8.1.16.5.4.3 StepBackward

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t StepBackward ( );

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
— single-threaded

**Description**  
Performs playback of the previous access unit. If there is no previous access unit, a return value indicating this is returned. The function returns when there was a noticeable effect for the client.  
  
When the connection was lost, the function immediately returns without waiting for retries.

**Parameters**  
None.

**Return Values**

Table 969

| Name                          | Description                                                                    |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UH_OK                         | Indicates successful execution.                                                |
| UH_ERR_URLSRC_END_OF_STREAM   | The step cannot be performed because the begin of the stream has been reached. |
| UH_ERR_URLSRC_CONNECTION_LOST | The step cannot be performed because the connection was lost.                  |



**Precondition**

— `uhUrlSrc_StepBackward` in `trickControl.actualAvailStepModes`

`urlSource.playState == PsPaused`

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

None.

**8.1.17 UhVbiSlice****8.1.17.1 Concepts****8.1.17.1.1 VBI Slicing**

The input for the VBI data capturing unit (or VBI Slicer) is video lines (e.g. ITU656). Data lines of an analog video input stream are lines 6 through 23 inclusive and lines 318 through 335 inclusive for the PAL and SECAM standards, and lines 10 through 21 inclusive and lines 273 through 284 inclusive for the NTSC standard. Video lines of the analog video input stream can also carry VBI data, e.g. Gemstar for the NTSC standard can use lines 22 through 25 inclusive and lines 285 through 288 inclusive.

The VBI Slicer extracts the VBI data from the VBI lines and passes it on to the client. Data of several VBI data types can be extracted. The variety of VBI data types (WST, CC, VPS, WSS or Gemstar) that can be extracted is platform specific.

The VBI Slicer can notify the client whenever new data of a video frame has been sliced, see Figure 98.

Each VBI standard has its own unique way of modulating (e.g. data rate, framing code) the bits on the input signal. Each VBI standard also defines the number of valid bytes (excluding header) that are sent per line. For example, VPS sends 13 bytes on line 16. WSS sends 14 bits on line 23 for 625-line PAL and SECAM systems, and sends 14 bits of data on lines 20 and 283 for 525-line NTSC systems.

Two independent streams of CC data are present in the analog video input stream: one in the odd field, the other one in the even field. The captured CC data from both odd and even fields will be sent to the client at the same time.

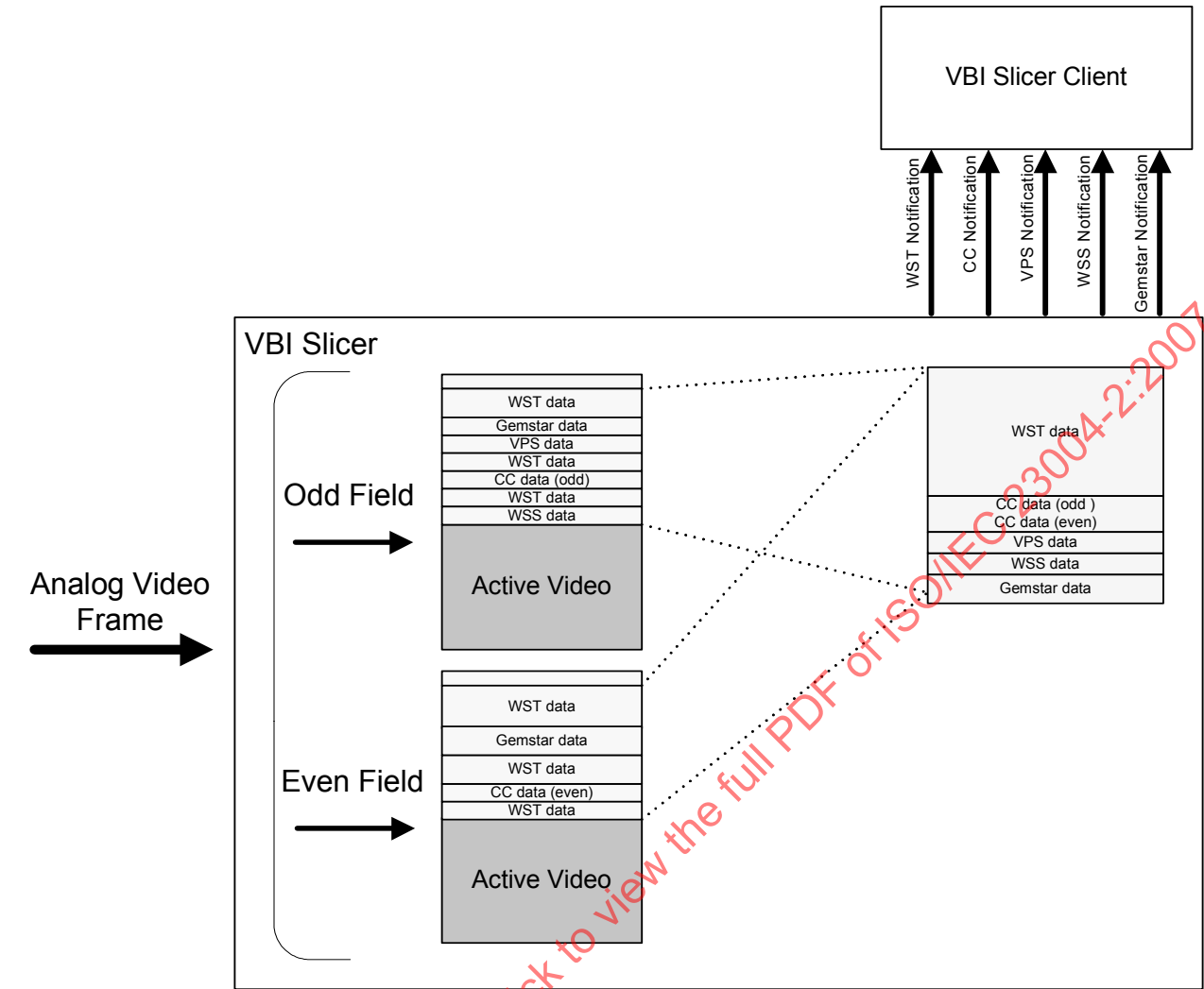


Figure 98 — Behavior of the VBI Slicer

The VBI Slicer extracts the VBI data present in the odd and even fields of a frame. When WST, CC, VPS, WSS and Gemstar data of a frame is sliced, each type of VBI data is notified separately to the client(s).

8.1.17.2 Types & Constants

8.1.17.2.1 Public Types & Constants

8.1.17.2.1.1 Error Codes

Signature

```
const uhErrorCode_t UH_ERR_VBISLICE_LINES_NOT_SET = 0x00000801;
```

Qualifiers

— error-codes

Description

The non-standard error codes that can be returned by functions of this logical component.

## Constants

**Table 970**

| Name                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UH_ERR_VBISLICE_LINES_NOT_SET | This error is specific to the VBI Slicer component and is only used in its interface <code>uhIVbiSliceAutoSlice</code> . This error is returned when the VBI Slicer cannot slice simultaneously all the specified data types on (at least one of) the given VBI line(s), or when no more VBI lines can be enabled, or when at least one VBI line cannot be disabled. |

### 8.1.17.2.1.2 `uhVbiSlice_Notification_t`

#### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhVbiSlice_Notification_t {
    uhVbiSlice_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhVbiSlice_FrameData           = 0x00000002,
    uhVbiSlice_FrameNoData         = 0x00000004,
    uhVbiSlice_Invalid             = 0x00000008
} uhVbiSlice_Notification_t, *puhVbiSlice_Notification_t;
```

#### Qualifiers

— enum-element

#### Description

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interfaces `uhIVbiSliceWstNtf`, `uhIVbiSliceCcNtf`, `uhIVbiSliceVpsNtf`, `uhIVbiSliceWssNtf` and `uhIVbiSliceGemstarNtf`. The values can be used to individually turn on and off the notifications.

## Values

**Table 971**

| Name                                        | Description                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhVbiSlice_SubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> , which occurs in all five notification interfaces.                                                           |
| <code>uhVbiSlice_FrameData</code>           | Represents <code>OnWstData</code> , <code>OnCcData</code> , <code>OnVpsData</code> , <code>OnWssData</code> and <code>OnGemstarData</code> .                |
| <code>uhVbiSlice_FrameNoData</code>         | Represents <code>OnWstNoData</code> , <code>OnCcNoData</code> , <code>OnVpsNoData</code> , <code>OnWssNoData</code> and <code>OnGemstarNoData</code> .      |
| <code>uhVbiSlice_Invalid</code>             | Represents <code>OnWstInvalid</code> , <code>OnCcInvalid</code> , <code>OnVpsInvalid</code> , <code>OnWssInvalid</code> and <code>OnGemstarInvalid</code> . |

### 8.1.17.2.1.3 `uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t`

#### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t, *puhVbiSlice_Notifications_t;
```

#### Qualifiers

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhVbiSlice_Notification_t`. These values are used in the `subscribe` and `unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**8.1.17.2.1.4    `uhVbiSlice_AllNotifications`****Signature**

```
const uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t uhVbiSlice_AllNotifications = 0x0000000F;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhVbiSlice_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `subscribe` and `unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**8.1.17.2.1.5    `uhVbiSlice_Wst_t`****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhVbiSlice_Wst_t {
    uhVbiSlice_EuroTeletext = 0,
    uhVbiSlice_UsTeletext   = 1,
    uhVbiSlice_Teletext     = 2,
    uhVbiSlice_Nabts        = 3,
    uhVbiSlice_Moji         = 4
} uhVbiSlice_Wst_t, *puhVbiSlice_Wst_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the different types of data standards for WST.

**Values****Table 972**

| Name                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhVbiSlice_EuroTeletext</code> | Teletext EuroWST, CCST (Chinese); lines 6 through 22 inclusive and lines 318 through 335 inclusive; 42 bytes/line.                                           |
| <code>uhVbiSlice_UsTeletext</code>   | US Teletext (WST); lines 14 through 18 inclusive and lines 277 through 281 inclusive; 34 bytes/line.                                                         |
| <code>uhVbiSlice_Teletext</code>     | Teletext; 42 bytes/line.                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>uhVbiSlice_Nabts</code>        | North-American Broadcast-Text-System (not for PAL); any combination of lines from line 10 to 20 inclusive and from line 273 to 283 inclusive; 36 bytes/line. |
| <code>uhVbiSlice_Moji</code>         | Japanese Teletext; 35 bytes/line.                                                                                                                            |

8.1.17.2.1.6 **uhVbiSlice\_Cc\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhVbiSlice_Cc_t {
    uhVbiSlice_EuroClosedCaption = 0,
    uhVbiSlice_UsClosedCaption   = 1
} uhVbiSlice_Cc_t, *puhVbiSlice_Cc_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the different types of data standards for CC.

**Values****Table 973**

| Name                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhVbiSlice_EuroClosedCaption | European Closed Caption; line 22 and/or line 335; 2 bytes/line.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| uhVbiSlice_UsClosedCaption   | US Closed Caption; for 525-line NTSC systems, the US Closed Caption data can be present on line 21 and/or line 284; for 625-line Latin American PAL, US Closed Caption can also be present on a line other than line 21 and/or also on a line other than line 284; 2 bytes/line. |

8.1.17.2.1.7 **uhVbiSlice\_Wss\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhVbiSlice_Wss_t {
    uhVbiSlice_EuroWss = 0,
    uhVbiSlice_UsWss   = 1
} uhVbiSlice_Wss_t, *puhVbiSlice_Wss_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the different types of data standards for WSS.

**Values****Table 974**

| Name               | Description                                                                              |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhVbiSlice_EuroWss | European WSS; line 23; 14 bits/line.                                                     |
| uhVbiSlice_UsWss   | US WSS; line 20 and/or line 283; 14 bits of data/line (20 bits/line including CRC bits). |

## 8.1.17.2.1.8 uhVbiSlice\_Gemstar\_t

**Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhVbiSlice_Gemstar_t {
    uhVbiSlice_Gemstar1x      = 0,
    uhVbiSlice_Gemstar2x      = 1
} uhVbiSlice_Gemstar_t, *puhVbiSlice_Gemstar_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Values of this type represent the different types of data standards for Gemstar.

**Values**

Table 975

| Name                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhVbiSlice_Gemstar1x | Gemstar 1X data; lines 10 through 25 inclusive and lines 273 through 288 inclusive; 2 bytes/line (only for US and Canada).                                                              |
| uhVbiSlice_Gemstar2x | Gemstar 2X data; lines 10 through 20 inclusive, lines 22 through 25 inclusive, lines 273 through 283 inclusive, lines 285 through 288 inclusive; 4 bytes/line (only for US and Canada). |

## 8.1.17.2.1.9 uhVbiSlice\_VbiData\_t

**Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhVbiSlice_VbiData_t {
    uhVbiSlice_VbiNone          = 0x00000000,
    uhVbiSlice_VbiEuroTeletext  = 0x00000001,
    uhVbiSlice_VbiUsTeletext    = 0x00000002,
    uhVbiSlice_VbiTeletext      = 0x00000004,
    uhVbiSlice_VbiNabts         = 0x00000008,
    uhVbiSlice_VbiMojit         = 0x00000010,
    uhVbiSlice_VbiEuroClosedCaption = 0x00000020,
    uhVbiSlice_VbiUsClosedCaption = 0x00000040,
    uhVbiSlice_VbiEuroWss       = 0x00000080,
    uhVbiSlice_VbiUsWss         = 0x00000100,
    uhVbiSlice_VbiVps           = 0x00000200,
    uhVbiSlice_VbiGemstar1x     = 0x00000400,
    uhVbiSlice_VbiGemstar2x     = 0x00000800
} uhVbiSlice_VbiData_t, *puhVbiSlice_VbiData_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent the different types of VBI data standards.

**Values****Table 976****Name****Description**

|                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhVbiSlice_VbiNone              | No service, do not capture VBI data on that line.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| uhVbiSlice_VbiEuroTeletext      | Teletext EuroWST, CCST (Chinese); lines 6 through 22 inclusive and lines 318 through 335 inclusive; 42 bytes/line.                                                                                                                                                               |
| uhVbiSlice_VbiUsTeletext        | US Teletext (WST); lines 14 through 18 inclusive and lines 277 through 281 inclusive; 34 bytes/line.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| uhVbiSlice_VbiTeletext          | Teletext; 42 bytes/line.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| uhVbiSlice_VbiNabts             | North-American Broadcast-Text-System (not for PAL); any combination of lines from line 10 to 20 inclusive and from line 273 to 283 inclusive; 36 bytes/line.                                                                                                                     |
| uhVbiSlice_VbiMoji              | Japanese Teletext; 35 bytes/line.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| uhVbiSlice_VbiEuroClosedCaption | European Closed Caption; line 22 and/or line 335; 2 bytes/line.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| uhVbiSlice_VbiUsClosedCaption   | US Closed Caption; for 525-line NTSC systems, the US Closed Caption data can be present on line 21 and/or line 284; for 625-line Latin American PAL, US Closed Caption can also be present on a line other than line 21 and/or also on a line other than line 284; 2 bytes/line. |
| uhVbiSlice_VbiEuroWss           | European WSS; line 23; 14 bits/line.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| uhVbiSlice_VbiUsWss             | US WSS; line 20 and/or line 283; 14 bits of data/line (20 bits/line including CRC bits).                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| uhVbiSlice_VbiVps               | Video Programming Service; line 16; 13 bytes/line.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| uhVbiSlice_VbiGemstar1x         | Gemstar 1X data; lines 10 through 25 inclusive and lines 273 through 288 inclusive; 2 bytes/line (only for US and Canada).                                                                                                                                                       |
| uhVbiSlice_VbiGemstar2x         | Gemstar 2X data; lines 10 through 20 inclusive, lines 22 through 25 inclusive, lines 273 through 283 inclusive, lines 285 through 288 inclusive; 4 bytes/line (only for US and Canada).                                                                                          |

**8.1.17.2.1.10 uhVbiSlice\_VbiDataSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhVbiSlice_VbiDataSet_t, *puhVbiSlice_VbiDataSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of VBI data standards.

8.1.17.2.2 Model Types & Constants

8.1.17.2.2.1 ValStat

Signature

```
typedef enum {  
    ValStatInvalid = -2,  
    ValStatUnknown = -1,  
    ValStatKnown   = 1  
} ValStat, *pValStat;
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This type represents the validity status of the related property/properties.

Values

Table 977

| Name           | Description                                                             |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ValStatInvalid | The signal strength property is temporarily not available.              |
| ValStatUnknown | The signal strength property is available, yet could not be determined. |
| ValStatKnown   | The signal strength property is available and determined.               |

8.1.17.3 Logical Component

8.1.17.3.1 Interface-Role Model

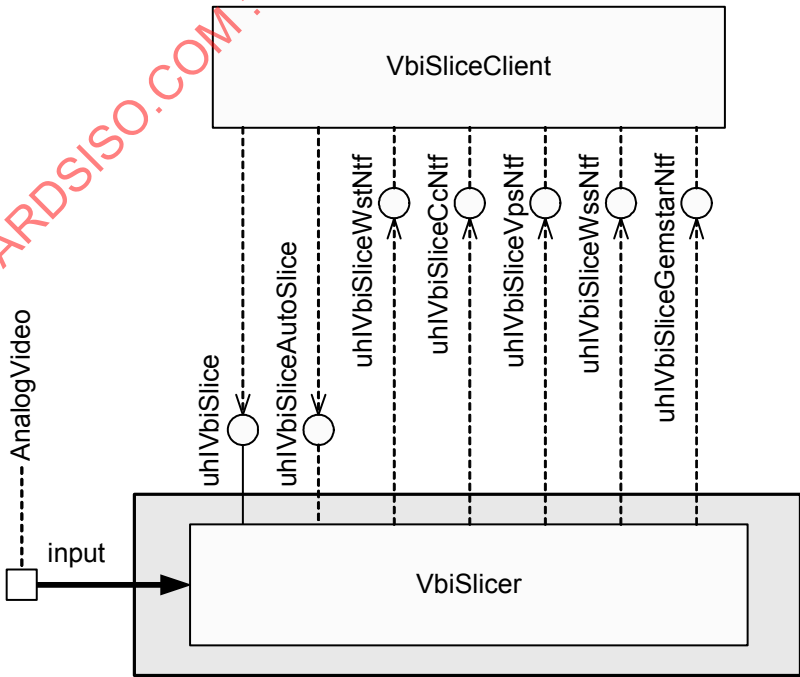




Figure 99 — Interface-Role Model of the VBI Slicer

Figure 99 depicts the interface-role model of the VBI Slicer. It shows the subscription and notification interfaces and the roles the VBI Slicer and a VBI Slicer Client can have.

The VBI Slicer is represented by the `VbiSlicer` role.

The VBI Slicer provides facilities to subscribe/unsubscribe to notifications of events related to the extraction of WST, CC, VPS, WSS, and Gemstar data through its `uhIVbiSlice` interface. It can also provide functionality to enable and disable automatic extraction of VBI data through its `uhIVbiSliceAutoSlice` interface. Client(s) (represented by the `VbiSliceClient` role) can optionally provide one or more callback interfaces (`uhIVbiSliceWstNtf`, `uhIVbiSliceCcNtf`, `uhIVbiSliceVpsNtf`, `uhIVbiSliceWssNtf`, `uhIVbiSliceGemstarNtf`). These interfaces contain functions that will be called by the VBI Slicer to notify events.

8.1.17.3.2 Diversity

8.1.17.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 978

| Role           | Interface             | Presence  |
|----------------|-----------------------|-----------|
| VbiSlicer      | uhIVbiSlice           | mandatory |
| VbiSlicer      | uhIVbiSliceAutoSlice  | optional  |
| VbiSliceClient | uhIVbiSliceWstNtf     | optional  |
| VbiSliceClient | uhIVbiSliceCcNtf      | optional  |
| VbiSliceClient | uhIVbiSliceVpsNtf     | optional  |
| VbiSliceClient | uhIVbiSliceWssNtf     | optional  |
| VbiSliceClient | uhIVbiSliceGemstarNtf | optional  |

8.1.17.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 979

| Role      | Attribute      |
|-----------|----------------|
| VbiSlicer | nrFramesNoData |

8.1.17.3.2.3 Constraints

nrFramesNoData >= 1

8.1.17.3.3 Instantiation

8.1.17.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 980

| Type      | Object | Multiplicity |
|-----------|--------|--------------|
| VbiSlicer | sli    | 1            |

#### 8.1.17.3.3.2 Initial State

- The VBI Slicer starts monitoring the VBI data lines, in its analog video input stream.
- The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- `sli.autoSlicingEnabled == True`
- `sli.nrVbiLines == 0`
- `sli.vbiLines == {}`
- `sli.vbiTypes == {}`
- `sli.wstStatus == ValStatInvalid`
- `sli.ccStatus == ValStatInvalid`
- `sli.vpsStatus == ValStatInvalid`
- `sli.wssStatus == ValStatInvalid`
- `sli.gemstarStatus == ValStatInvalid`

#### 8.1.17.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interface provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier “thread-safe”.

## 8.1.17.4 Roles

### 8.1.17.4.1 VbiSlicer

#### Signature

```

role VbiSlicer {
    const UInt8                nrFramesNoData;
    Bool                       autoSlicingEnabled;
    UInt32                     nrVbiLines;
    setof{UInt32}              vbiLines;
    setof{uhVbiSlice_VbiDataSet_t} vbiTypes;
    ValStat                    wstStatus;
    ValStat                    ccStatus;
    ValStat                    vpsStatus;
    ValStat                    wssStatus;
    ValStat                    gemstarStatus;
}

```

#### Qualifiers

— root

#### Description

A VBI Slicer monitors an analog video input stream and extracts VBI data from it. The extraction of VBI data can be automatic or not. The possibility of disabling the automatic extraction of VBI data depends on the capabilities of the platform.

The VBI Slicer provides notifications:

- when it has captured the VBI data of a frame for the specific type(s) the client is subscribed to in case the VBI Slicer extracts VBI data automatically;
- when it has captured the VBI data of a frame from the requested line(s) with the requested data type(s) in case the VBI Slicer does not extract VBI data automatically;
- when the data lines corresponding to a specific data type (among others WST, CC, VPS, WSS and Gemstar) contain no data of this type for a specific number (`nrFramesNoData`) of frames.

When a client subscribes to the `OnWstData` notification, to the `OnWssData` notification or to the `OnGemstarData` notification, the VBI Slicer provides a notification each time it has monitored a frame (odd and even fields) of its analog video input stream, no matter whether it contains VBI data or not.

#### Independent Attributes

**Table 981**

| Name                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>nrFramesNoData</code>     | Indicates the number of consecutive frames without VBI data that determines that the stream of VBI data has ended.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>autoSlicingEnabled</code> | Indicates whether the VBI Slicer automatically detects and extracts the VBI data that can appear on each of the data lines of its analog video input stream. If <code>True</code> the VBI Slicer automatically detects and extracts the VBI data in its analog video input stream. If <code>False</code> the VBI Slicer does not automatically extract the VBI data in its analog video input stream. |
| <code>nrVbiLines</code>         | The number of lines for which VBI data should to be sliced, i.e. the number of elements in arrays <code>vbiLines</code> and <code>vbiTypes</code> in case the VBI Slicer does not automatically extract the VBI data of its analog video input stream.                                                                                                                                                |

| Name                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>vbiLines</code>      | The set of VBI line(s) that should be sliced in case the VBI Slicer does not automatically extract the VBI data of its analog video input stream. <code>vbiLines[i]</code> contains the VBI line to be sliced with VBI data type(s) <code>vbiTypes[i]</code> .         |
| <code>vbiTypes</code>      | The set of VBI data type(s) that should be sliced in case the VBI Slicer does not automatically extract the VBI data of its analog video input stream. <code>vbiTypes[i]</code> contains the VBI data type(s) to be sliced for the VBI line <code>vbiLines[i]</code> . |
| <code>wstStatus</code>     | The validity status of the WST data.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>ccStatus</code>      | The validity status of the CC data.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>vpsStatus</code>     | The validity status of the VPS data.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>wssStatus</code>     | The validity status of the WSS data.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>gemstarStatus</code> | The validity status of the Gemstar data.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

**Dependent Attributes**

None.

**Invariants**

```

— nrFramesNoData >= 1
— If nrVbiLines == 0
  — vbiLines == {}
  — vbiTypes == {}
— For each i in {0..nrVbiLines -1}
  — vbiTypes[i] != uhVbiSlice_VbiNone

```

**Instantiation**

See subclause 8.1.17.3.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

The VBI Slicer continually monitors its analog video input stream and performs the following actions:

- extracting data from the data lines corresponding to any of the VBI data types (WST, CC, VPS, WSS or Gemstar) and raising an event when it has captured all VBI data of a frame in case the VBI Slicer extracts VBI data automatically;

extracting the requested VBI data as defined in `vbiTypes` from the corresponding `vbiLines` data lines and raising an event when it has captured all requested VBI data of a frame in case the VBI Slicer does not extract VBI data automatically;

- raising an event when it has monitored a frame (odd and even fields) of its analog video input stream if client(s) are subscribed to the notification related to extraction of WST data (`OnWstData`), to the notification related to extraction of WSS data (`OnWssData`) or to the notification related to extraction of Gemstar data (`OnGemstarData`);
- raising an event when the data lines corresponding to a specific data type (among others WST, CC, VPS, WSS, and Gemstar) contain no data for `nrFramesNoData` consecutive frames since the last time they contained data of this type.

The first action gives rise to the event notification defined by the `OnYyyData` (`Yyy = Wst, Cc, Vps, Wss, Gemstar`) notification function.

The second action gives rise to the event notification defined by the `OnYyyData` (`Yyy = Wst, Wss, Gemstar`) notification function.

The third action gives rise to the event notification defined by the `OnYyyNoData` (`Yyy = Wst, Cc, Vps, Wss, Gemstar`) notification function.

See Figure 100 for an example where `nrFramesNoData == 3` in case of CC and VPS data. See Figure 101 for an example where `nrFramesNoData == 3` in case of WST, WSS, and Gemstar data.

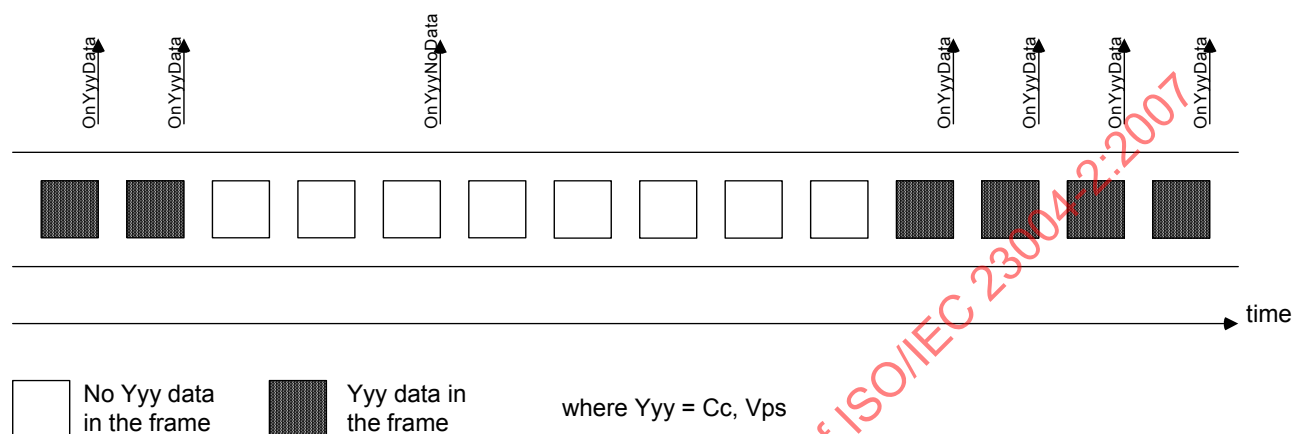


Figure 100 — Events Raised by the VBI Slicer in case of CC and VPS data.

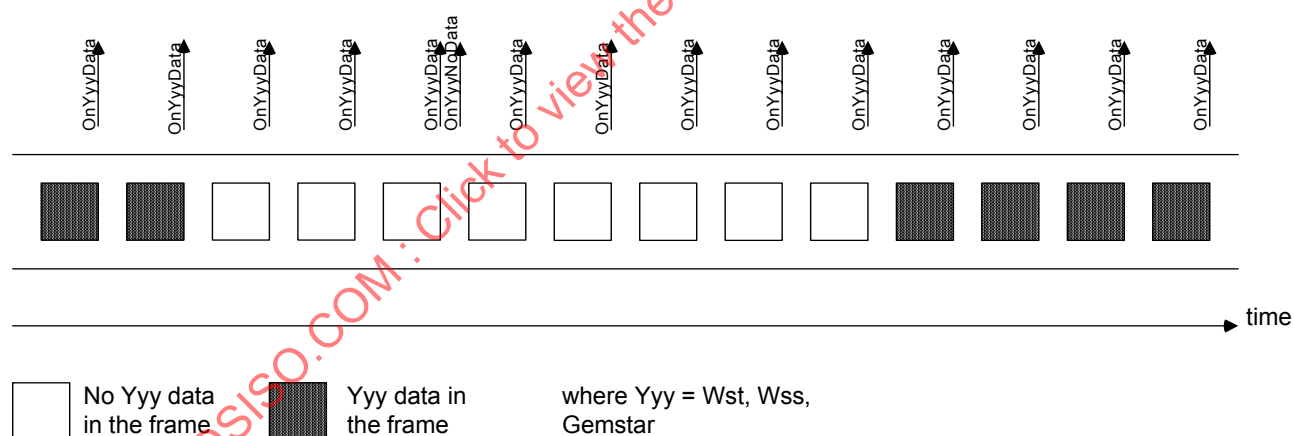


Figure 101 — Events Raised by the VBI Slicer in case of WST, WSS and Gemstar data.

### Active Behavior

The VBI Slicer has standard notification behavior (see `uhIVbiSliceWstNtf`, `uhIVbiSliceCcNtf`, `uhIVbiSliceVpsNtf`, `uhIVbiSliceWssNtf` and `uhIVbiSliceGemstarNtf`).

### Remarks

- When the extraction of VBI data is not automatic (`autoSlicingEnabled` is `False`) the VBI Slicer starts passing on VBI data to a client only after this client has defined the `vbiTypes` data types to extract from the corresponding `vbiLines` data lines and also only after this client has subscribed to the notifications of the type `OnYyyData`, where `Yyy` are the types in `vbiTypes`.

- When the extraction of VBI data is automatic (`autoSlicingEnabled` is `True`) the VBI Slicer starts passing on VBI data to a client only after this client has subscribed to the notifications of the type `OnYyyData`.
- The modification of the extraction of VBI data from automatic to non-automatic, or from non-automatic to automatic, does not have any influence on the set of VBI lines which is stored in the `sli.vbiLines` attribute of the VBI Slicer and on the set of VBI types which is stored in the `sli.vbiTypes` attribute of the VBI Slicer.

#### 8.1.17.4.2 VbiSliceClient

##### Signature

```
role VbiSliceClient {}
```

##### Qualifiers

- actor

##### Description

A VBI Slicer Client represents a user of the `uhIVbiSlice` and `uhIVbiSliceAutoSlice` interfaces. No constraints apply to the behavior of the VBI Slicer Client other than those implied by Figure 99.

#### 8.1.17.5 Interfaces

##### 8.1.17.5.1 uhIVbiSlice

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This interface of a VBI Slicer provides facilities to subscribe/unsubscribe to notifications of events related to the extraction of WST, CC, VPS, WSS and Gemstar data.

##### Interface ID

```
uuid( 0D1F574C-6643-407b-B505-1E3E269AC1C5 )
```

##### 8.1.17.5.1.1 WstSubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t WstSubscribe (  
    [in] uhIVbiSliceWstNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

- subscribe-function

**8.1.17.5.1.2 WstUnsubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t WstUnsubscribe (
    [in] uhIVbiSliceWstNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

**8.1.17.5.1.3 CcSubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t CcSubscribe (
    [in] uhIVbiSliceCcNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

**8.1.17.5.1.4 CcUnsubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t CcUnsubscribe (
    [in] uhIVbiSliceCcNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

**8.1.17.5.1.5 VpsSubscribe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t VpsSubscribe (
    [in] uhIVbiSliceVpsNtf *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— subscribe-function

#### 8.1.17.5.1.6 VpsUnsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t VpsUnsubscribe (  
    [in] uhIVbiSliceVpsNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

#### 8.1.17.5.1.7 WssSubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t WssSubscribe (  
    [in] uhIVbiSliceWssNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

#### 8.1.17.5.1.8 WssUnsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t WssUnsubscribe (  
    [in] uhIVbiSliceWssNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

#### 8.1.17.5.1.9 GemstarSubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GemstarSubscribe (  
    [in] uhIVbiSliceGemstarNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function



8.1.17.5.1.10 GemstarUnsubscribe

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GemstarUnsubscribe (  
    [in] uhIVbiSliceGemstarNtf *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

8.1.17.5.2 uhIVbiSliceAutoSlice

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This interface of a VBI Slicer provides functionality to enable and disable automatic extraction of VBI data from the data lines of the analog video input stream. It also provides functionality to set the VBI data types to capture per data line in case the extraction of VBI data is not automatic.

Interface ID

```
uuid( A0D11BAB-D693-45c1-8BAD-A58B37C714E5 )
```

8.1.17.5.2.1 GetAutoSlicingEnabled

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetAutoSlicingEnabled ( [out] pBool pEnabled );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns whether the VBI Slicer automatically extracts the VBI data from its analog video input stream.

Parameters

Table 982

| Name     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pEnabled | Output parameter returning whether the VBI Slicer automatically extracts the VBI data from its analog video input stream. If <code>True</code> , the VBI Slicer automatically extracts the VBI data from its analog video input stream. If <code>False</code> , the VBI Slicer does not automatically extract the VBI data from its analog video input stream. |

Return Values

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**`*pEnabled == sli.autoSlicingEnabled`**Remarks**

- When the extraction of the VBI data is automatic, the VBI Slicer extracts data from any data line corresponding to any of the VBI data types (WST, CC, VPS, WSS or Gemstar) irrespective of the requested data type(s) in `sli.vbiTypes` and irrespective of the requested line(s) in `sli.vbiLines`. The VBI Slicer raises an event for each of the specific types the client is subscribed to when it has sliced the VBI data of a frame if data of such a specific type has been sliced.
- When the extraction of the VBI data is not automatic, the VBI Slicer only extracts the requested VBI data with data type as defined in `sli.vbiTypes` from the requested `sli.vbiLines` data lines, if data is present. The VBI Slicer raises an event for each of the specific types the client is subscribed to when it has sliced the VBI data of a frame if data of such a specific type has been sliced.

**8.1.17.5.2.2 EnableAutoSlicing****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t EnableAutoSlicing ( [in] Bool enable );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets whether the VBI Slicer should automatically extract the VBI data from its analog video input stream.

**Parameters****Table 983**

| Name                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>enable</code> | The new setting indicating whether the VBI Slicer should automatically extract the VBI data from its analog video input stream. If <code>True</code> , the VBI Slicer automatically extracts the VBI data from its analog video input stream. If <code>False</code> , the VBI Slicer does not automatically extract the VBI data from its analog video input stream. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Modify `sli.autoSlicingEnabled`

**Postcondition**

`sli.autoSlicingEnabled == enable`

**Remarks**

- The modification of the extraction of VBI data from automatic to non-automatic, or from non-automatic to automatic, does not have any influence on the set of VBI lines which is stored in the `sli.vbiLines` attribute of the VBI Slicer and on the set of VBI types which is stored in the `sli.vbiTypes` attribute of the VBI Slicer.

**8.1.17.5.2.3 GetVbiLines****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetVbiLines (
    [in] UInt32 size,
    [out] pUInt32 pActNrVbiLines,
    [out, size_is(size)] UInt32* pLines,
    [out, size_is(size)] uhVbiSlice_VbiDataSet_t* pDataTypes );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the VBI lines for which VBI data should be sliced in case the extraction of VBI data is not automatic. The VBI data types that should be sliced for each of these lines are also returned.

**Parameters****Table 984**

| Name                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>size</code>           | The number of lines and the number of set of types that the buffers pointed by <code>pLines</code> and <code>pDataTypes</code> can contain.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>pActNrVbiLines</code> | The actual number of lines for which VBI data should be sliced in case the extraction of VBI data is not automatic, i.e. the number of relevant elements in arrays <code>pLines</code> and <code>pDataTypes</code> . Only <code>pLines[0]</code> through <code>pLines[*pActNrVbiLines-1]</code> inclusive and <code>pDataTypes[0]</code> through <code>pDataTypes[*pActNrVbiLines-1]</code> inclusive are relevant elements in array <code>pLines</code> and <code>pDataTypes</code> . |
| <code>pLines</code>         | Pointer to the first element of an array with the VBI line(s) that should be sliced in case the extraction of VBI data is not automatic. <code>pLines[i]</code> contains the VBI line to be sliced with VBI data type(s) <code>pDataTypes[i]</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>pDataTypes</code>     | Pointer to the first element of an array with the VBI data type(s) that should be sliced in case the extraction of VBI data is not automatic. <code>pDataTypes[i]</code> contains the VBI data type(s) to be sliced for the VBI line <code>pLines[i]</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

```

— *pActNrVbiLines == sli.nrVbiLines
— If sli.nrVbiLines <= size
—   For each i in {0..sli.nrVbiLines-1}
—     pLines[i] == sli.vbiLines[i]
—     pDataTypes[i] == sli.vbiTypes[i]
— Else
—   For each i in {0..size -1}
—     pLines[i] == sli.vbiLines[i]
—     pDataTypes[i] == sli.vbiTypes[i]

```

**8.1.17.5.2.4 SetVbiLines****Signature**

```

uhErrorCode_t SetVbiLines (
    [in] UInt32 nrVbiLines,
    [in, size_is(nrVbiLines)] const UInt32* pLines,
    [in, size_is(nrVbiLines)] const uhVbiSlice_VbiDataSet_t* pDataTypes );

```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the VBI data type(s) that should be sliced on the specified VBI line(s) in case the extraAction of VBI data is not automatic.

**Parameters****Table 985**

| Name       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| nrVbiLines | The number of lines to set with the VBI data type(s) to be sliced in case the extraction of VBI data is not automatic, i.e. the number of elements in arrays pLines and pDataTypes.                                       |
| pLines     | Pointer to the first element of an array with the VBI line(s) to be sliced in case the extraction of VBI data is not automatic. pLines[i] contains the VBI line to be sliced with VBI data type(s) pDataTypes[i].         |
| pDataTypes | Pointer to the first element of an array with the VBI data type(s) to be sliced in case the extraction of VBI data is not automatic. pDataTypes[i] contains the VBI data type(s) to be sliced for the VBI line pLines[i]. |

**Return Values****Table 986**

| Value                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UH_OK                         | Indicates successful execution.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| UH_ERR_VBISLICE_LINES_NOT_SET | Indicates that the specified data type(s) to be sliced on the specified VBI line(s) have not be set since the VBI Slicer cannot slice simultaneously all the specified data types on (at least one of) the given VBI line(s), or no more VBI lines can be enabled, or at least one VBI line cannot be disabled. |

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

```

— For each i in {0..nrVbiLines -1}
  — If pLines[i] in sli.vbiLines
    — Let j be the UInt32 such that sli.vbiLines[j] == pLines[i]
    — If pDataTypes[i] == uhVbiSlice_VbiNone
      — Modify sli.nrVbiLines
      — Modify sli.vbiLines
      — Modify sli.vbiTypes
    — Else if pDataTypes[i] != sli.vbiTypes[j]
      — Modify sli.vbiTypes[j]
  — Else
    — If pDataTypes[i] != uhVbiSlice_VbiNone
      — Modify sli.nrVbiLines
      — Modify sli.vbiLines
      — Modify sli.vbiTypes

```

**Postcondition**

```

— For each i in {0..nrVbiLines -1}
  — If pLines[i] in sli.vbiLines
    — Let j be the UInt32 such that sli.vbiLines[j] == pLines[i]
    — If pDataTypes[i] == uhVbiSlice_VbiNone
      — sli.nrVbiLines == sli.nrVbiLines' - 1
      — pLines[i] not in sli.vbiLines
    — Else if pDataTypes[i] != sli.vbiTypes[j]
      — sli.vbiTypes[j] == pDataTypes[i]
  — Else
    — If pDataTypes[i] != uhVbiSlice_VbiNone
      — sli.nrVbiLines == sli.nrVbiLines' + 1
    — There is a j in {0.. sli.nrVbiLines-1} for which
      — sli.vbiLines[j] == pLines[i]
      — sli.vbiTypes[j] == pDataTypes[i]

```

**Remarks**

- Although a certain VBI data service can be set for a certain line, this does not mean that this service will be available on that line, i.e. that valid data for the service has been found. For example, the VBI Slicer can be set up to slice lines 10 through 15 for `uhVbiSlice_VbiEuroTeletext` but it might not be available on line 12.

## 8.1.17.5.3 uhVbiSliceWstNtf

**Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This interface should be provided by each VBI Slicer Client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events related to WST data that occur in the VBI Slicer. The `WstSubscribe` function of `uhVbiSlice` can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**

```
uuid( F05A8483-6AC7-411e-BF1D-0F64D7099876 )
```

## 8.1.17.5.3.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

## 8.1.17.5.3.2 OnWstData

**Signature**

```
Void OnWstData (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Wst_t type,
    [in] UInt32 nrLines,
    [in, size_is(nrLines)] const UInt32 *pLines,
    [in] UInt32 sizeFirstBuffer,
    [in] UInt32 sizeSecondBuffer,
    [in, size_is(sizeFirstBuffer)] const UInt8 *pFirstBuffer,
    [in, size_is(sizeSecondBuffer)] const UInt8 *pSecondBuffer );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the VBI Slicer each time it has monitored a frame (odd and even fields) of its analog video input stream. The passed pointers `pFirstBuffer` and `pSecondBuffer` point to the sliced WST data of the monitored frame. The VBI Slicer owns the storage space occupied by the data. The storage spaces, and therefore the WST data, are guaranteed to stay unmodified until the next call of this function returns.

**Parameters****Table 987**

| <b>Name</b>                   | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>           | The value that was passed by the VBI Slicer client at subscription time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>type</code>             | The specific type of the WST data.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>nrLines</code>          | The number of lines of the monitored video frame for which WST data has been sliced.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>pLines</code>           | Pointer to a buffer containing the line numbers for which WST data has been sliced. <code>pLines</code> contains first the line numbers of the WST data stored in <code>pFirstBuffer</code> followed by the line numbers of the WST data stored in <code>pSecondBuffer</code> . See Figure 102 for an example of the organization of <code>pLines</code> and how <code>pLines</code> relates to the data in <code>pFirstBuffer</code> and in <code>pSecondBuffer</code> . If <code>nrLines</code> is 0, the content of <code>pLines</code> is irrelevant. |
| <code>sizeFirstBuffer</code>  | The size, in bytes, of valid WST data to which <code>pFirstBuffer</code> points. If <code>nrLines</code> is 0, <code>sizeFirstBuffer</code> is 0.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>sizeSecondBuffer</code> | The size, in bytes, of valid WST data to which <code>pSecondBuffer</code> points. If <code>nrLines</code> is 0, <code>sizeSecondBuffer</code> is 0.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>pFirstBuffer</code>     | Pointer to a <code>sizeFirstBuffer</code> bytes buffer of valid WST data. If <code>sizeFirstBuffer</code> is 0, the content of <code>pFirstBuffer</code> is irrelevant.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>pSecondBuffer</code>    | Pointer to a <code>sizeSecondBuffer</code> bytes buffer of valid WST data. If <code>sizeSecondBuffer</code> is 0, the content of <code>pSecondBuffer</code> is irrelevant.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**Remarks**

- When `nrLines` equals 0, no WST data has been extracted from the monitored video frame.
- The number of bytes per line of the specific type of WST data is known (see subclause 8.1.17.2.1.5).
- There is no specific relationship between the WST data to which `pFirstBuffer` points, and the WST data contained in the odd field of the video frames. The WST data to which `pFirstBuffer` points can originate from the odd field or even field of a video frame. The same holds for `pSecondBuffer`.
- The first byte of `pFirstBuffer` and of `pSecondBuffer` corresponds to the first byte of WST data on the first video line containing valid WST data in the odd and even fields or the other way around.
- The line numbers in `pLines` (and therefore the related WST data to which `pFirstBuffer` and `pSecondBuffer` point) are organised in increasing order. The layout of the bytes follows the WST standard, see [32].

- When `sizeFirstBuffer` equals 0, `pFirstBuffer` does not point to valid WST data. The same holds for `sizeSecondBuffer` with respect to `pSecondBuffer`.
- Two examples of the organization of the storage space and the relationship between `pFirstBuffer`, `pSecondBuffer` and `pLines` are shown in Figure 102. On the left, WST data (`uhVbiSlice_EuroTeletext`) is present on every line from line 6 to 22 inclusive and from line 318 to 335 inclusive. On the right, only line 326 contains WST data (`uhVbiSlice_EuroTeletext`). `pLines` contains first the line numbers of the WST data stored in `pFirstBuffer` followed by the line numbers of the WST data stored in `pSecondBuffer`.
- When the VBI Slicer extracts data with `uhVbiSlice_Moji` data type, the captured bits (from the Moji data line(s)) are constructed into bytes. A Moji data line contains 272 bits but is stored in 35 bytes; the first 2 bits are filled with zeros and the last 6 are undefined and should be ignored.

### 8.1.17.5.3.3 OnWstNoData

#### Signature

```
[async] Void OnWstNoData ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

#### Qualifiers

None.

#### Description

This function is called by the VBI Slicer whenever it detects that the data lines contained no WST data for `nrFramesNoData` consecutive frames since the last time they contained WST data.

#### Parameters

Table 988

| Name                | Description                                                              |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the VBI Slicer client at subscription time. |

#### Return Values

None.

#### Precondition

True

#### Action

- Any callback-compliant action.

#### Postcondition

True



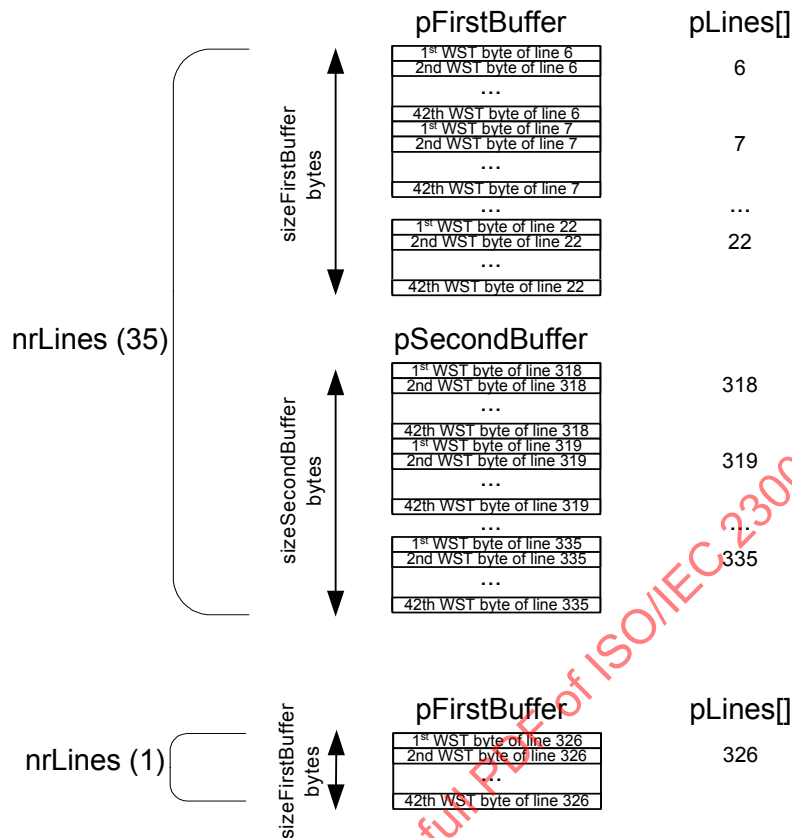


**Figure 102 — Organization of captured WST data, showing two examples: for `uhvbiSlice_EuroTeletext` data (42 bytes/line). The first example (at the top) shows 35 lines where every line from line 6 to 22 inclusive and from line 318 to 335 inclusive contains data. The second example (at the bottom) shows a single line where only line 326 contains data.**

**8.1.17.5.3.4 OnWstInvalid**

**Signature**  
`Void OnWstInvalid (`  
    `[in] UInt32 cookie`  
`);`

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is called when the WST validity status has become invalid.

**Parameters**

**Table 989**

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.17.5.4 uhIVbiSliceCcNtf**

**Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This interface should be provided by each VBI Slicer Client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events related to CC data that occur in the VBI Slicer. The `CcSubscribe` function of `uhIVbiSlice` can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( 63FED2B8-78C2-4007-952A-BD2B94002290 )`

**8.1.17.5.4.1 OnSubscriptionChanged**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

**8.1.17.5.4.2 OnCcData**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnCcData (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Cc_t type,  
    [in] UInt32 oLine,  
    [in] UInt32 eLine,  
    [in] UInt16 oField,  
    [in] UInt16 eField );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

Description

This function is called by the VBI Slicer whenever it has sliced CC data of a frame.

Parameters

Table 990

| Name   | Description                                                                                                                |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the VBI Slicer client at subscription time.                                                   |
| type   | The specific type of the CC data.                                                                                          |
| oLine  | The line number for which CC data from the odd field has been sliced. If oLine is 0, the content of oField is irrelevant.  |
| eLine  | The line number for which CC data from the even field has been sliced. If eLine is 0, the content of eField is irrelevant. |
| oField | The CC data from the odd field. The bytes are stored as indicated in Figure 103.                                           |
| eField | The CC data from the even field. The bytes are stored as indicated in Figure 103.                                          |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

Remarks

— The bit layout of the notified data in oField and eField follows the CC standard; see [14] in the case of uhVbiSlice\_UsClosedCaption. This is shown in Figure 103.

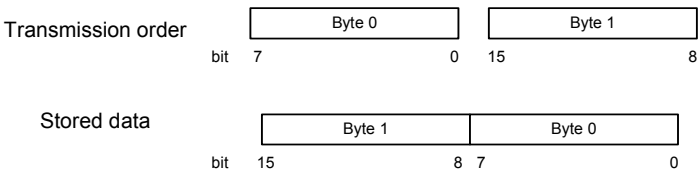


Figure 103 — The relationship of the bit layout of the captured CC data in oField and eField and the order of transmission of CC data in the analog video input stream.

— When this function is called by the VBI Slicer (i.e. when the VBI Slicer has sliced CC data of a frame), at least one of the oLine and eLine parameters is not equal to 0.

## 8.1.17.5.4.3 OnCcNoData

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnCcNoData (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] Bool field );
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the VBI Slicer whenever it detects that the CC data line of the field indicated by field contained no CC data for nrFramesNoData consecutive frames since the last time it contained CC data.

**Parameters**

Table 991

| Name   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the VBI Slicer client at subscription time.                                                                                                                          |
| field  | Indicates the field whose CC data line contained no CC data for nrFramesNoData consecutive frames. It is <b>True</b> for the stream on even fields and <b>False</b> for the stream on odd fields. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**Remarks**

The parameter field is necessary since for CC data streams on odd and even fields are not related and thus can end at a different time.

## 8.1.17.5.4.4 OnCcInvalid

**Signature**

```
Void OnCcInvalid (
    [in] UInt32 cookie
);
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called when the CC validity status has become invalid.

**Parameters**

Table 992

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.17.5.5 uhIVbiSliceVpsNtf**

**Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This interface should be provided by each VBI Slicer Client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events related to VPS data that occur in the VBI Slicer. The `VpsSubscribe` function of `uhIVbiSlice` can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( A4940072-01DA-4307-914F-0C70C23E8C18 )`

**8.1.17.5.5.1 OnSubscriptionChanged**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

8.1.17.5.5.2 OnVpsData

Signature

```
Void OnVpsData (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] UInt8 size,  
    [in, size_is(size)] const UInt8 *pBuffer );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This funAction is called by the VBI Slicer whenever it has sliced VPS data of a frame. The passed pointer points to the captured VPS data. The VBI Slicer owns the storage space occupied by the data. The storage space, and therefore the VPS data, is guaranteed to stay unmodified until the next call of this funAction returns.

Parameters

Table 993

| Name    | Description                                                              |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie  | The value that was passed by the VBI Slicer client at subscription time. |
| size    | The size, in bytes, of valid VPS data.                                   |
| pBuffer | Pointer to a size bytes buffer of valid data.                            |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

Remarks

- The number of bytes of VPS data is known: 13 bytes/line. The VPS data can be present on line 16 of the odd field.
- The first byte of the pBuffer corresponds to the first byte of valid VPS data on line 16.
- The layout of the bytes follows the VPS standard, see [30].

8.1.17.5.5.3 OnVpsNoData

**Signature**  
[**async**] Void OnVpsNoData ( [in] UInt32 cookie );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is called by the VBI Slicer whenever it detects that the VPS data line contained no VPS data for nrFramesNoData consecutive frames since the last time it contained VPS data.

**Parameters**

Table 994

| Name   | Description                                                              |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the VBI Slicer Client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

8.1.17.5.5.4 OnVpsInvalid

**Signature**  
Void OnVpsInvalid ( [in] UInt32 cookie );

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is called when the VPS validity status has become invalid.

**Parameters****Table 995**

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Description</b>                                            |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie      | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.1.17.5.6 uhIVbiSliceWssNtf****Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This interface should be provided by each VBI Slicer Client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events related to WSS data that occur in the VBI Slicer. The `WssSubscribe` function of `uhIVbiSlice` can be used to subscribe to these events.

**Interface ID**

```
uuid( 23AD8822-CD3C-438F-8996-535AC88204E4 )
```

**8.1.17.5.6.1 OnSubscriptionChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

**8.1.17.5.6.2 OnWssData****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnWssData (
```



```

[in] UInt32 cookie,
[in] uhVbiSlice_Wss_t type,
[in] Bool wssPresentOddField,
[in] Bool wssPresentEvenField,
[in] UInt16 dataOddField,
[in] UInt16 dataEvenField,
[in] UInt16 errorBitsOddField,
[in] UInt16 errorBitsEvenField );

```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the VBI Slicer each time it has monitored a frame (odd and even fields) of its analog video input stream. For each field, information over the actual extraction of the WSS data is passed as well as the WSS data and the error bits if extracted.

**Parameters****Table 996**

| Name                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie              | The value that was passed by the VBI Slicer client at subscription time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| type                | The specific type of the WSS data.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| wssPresentOddField  | Indicates whether WSS data from the odd field of the current frame has been extracted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| wssPresentEvenField | Indicates whether WSS data from the even field of the current frame has been extracted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| dataOddField        | If wssPresentOddField is True, dataOddField contains the WSS data of the odd field of the current frame. The WSS bits are in bits 0..13. If wssPresentOddField is False, the content of dataOddField is irrelevant.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| dataEvenField       | If wssPresentEvenField is True, dataEvenField contains the WSS data of the even field of the current frame. The WSS bits are in bits 0..13. If wssPresentEvenField is False, the content of dataEvenField is irrelevant.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| errorBitsOddField   | If wssPresentOddField is True, errorBitsOddField contains the error bits accompanying the WSS data of the odd field of the current frame. When the type of the WSS data is uhVbiSlice_EuroWss, each bit of errorBitsOddField indicates, when it equals 1, that there is an error in the corresponding WSS bit of dataOddField. When the type of the WSS data is uhVbiSlice_UsWss, if errorBitsOddField is not equal to 0, it indicates that the CRC check on the data in dataOddField failed. If wssPresentOddField is False, the content of errorBitsOddField is irrelevant.          |
| errorBitsEvenField  | If wssPresentEvenField is True, errorBitsEvenField contains the error bits accompanying the WSS data of the even field of the current frame. When the type of the WSS data is uhVbiSlice_EuroWss, each bit of errorBitsEvenField indicates, when it equals 1, that there is an error in the corresponding WSS bit of dataEvenField. When the type of the WSS data is uhVbiSlice_UsWss, if errorBitsEvenField is not equal to 0, it indicates that the CRC check on the data in dataEvenField failed. If wssPresentEvenField is False, the content of errorBitsEvenField is irrelevant. |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

Remarks

- The number of bits of WSS data is known: 14 bits/line. The WSS data can be present only on line 23 of the odd field for 625-line PAL and SECAM systems. For 525-line NTSC systems, the WSS data can be present on lines 20 and 283.
- When the type of the WSS data is `uhVbiSlice_EuroWss`, the layout of the bits follows the WSS standard as described in [31]. The value of the remaining two bits in the `dataOddField` is unspecified.
- When the type of the WSS data is `uhVbiSlice_UsWss`, the layout of the bits follows bit assignment and usage as defined in [33]. The value of the remaining two bits in the `dataOddField` and `dataEvenField` is unspecified. Figure 104 depicts the layout of the bits in `dataOddField` and `dataEvenField`.

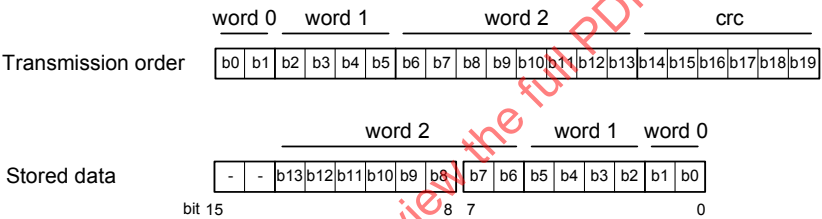


Figure 104 — The relationship of the bit layout of the captured 525-line WSS data in `dataOddField` and `dataEvenField` and the order of transmission of 525-line WSS data in the analog video input stream.

8.1.17.5.6.3 OnWssNoData

Signature

```
[async] Void OnWssNoData ( [in] UInt32 cookie );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called by the VBI Slicer whenever it detects that the WSS data line(s) contained no WSS data for `nrFramesNoData` consecutive frames since the last time it contained WSS data.

Parameters

Table 997

Name

`cookie`

Description

The value that was passed by the VBI Slicer Client at subscription time.

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

**8.1.17.5.6.4 OnWssInvalid**

**Signature**  
Void OnWssInvalid (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie  
);

**Qualifiers**  
None.

**Description**  
This function is called when the WSS validity status has become invalid.

**Parameters**

Table 998

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

**Return Values**  
None.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**  
True

## 8.1.17.5.7 uhIVbiSliceGemstarNtf

## Qualifiers

— callback

## Description

This interface should be provided by each VBI Slicer Client that wants to subscribe to notifications of events related to extraction of Gemstar data that occur in the VBI Slicer. The `GemstarSubscribe` function of `uhIVbiSlice` can be used to subscribe to these events.

## Interface ID

```
uuid( DE154F62-E874-40c2-A1E5-605AA856F0AE )
```

## 8.1.17.5.7.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

## Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Notifications_t notifs );
```

## Qualifiers

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

## 8.1.17.5.7.2 OnGemstarData

## Signature

```
[async] Void OnGemstarData (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] UInt32 nrLines,
    [in, size_is(nrLines)] const UInt32 *pLines,
    [in, size_is(nrLines)] const uhVbiSlice_Gemstar_t *pTypes,
    [in] UInt32 size,
    [in, size_is(size)] const UInt8 *pBuffer );
```

## Qualifiers

None.

## Description

This function is called by the VBI Slicer each time it has monitored a frame (odd and even fields) of its analog video input stream. The passed pointer `pBuffer` points to the sliced Gemstar data of the monitored frame. The VBI Slicer owns the storage space occupied by the data. The storage spaces, and therefore the Gemstar data, are guaranteed to stay unmodified until the next call of this function returns.

## Parameters

Table 999

| Name                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code>  | The value that was passed by the VBI Slicer Client at subscription time.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>nrLines</code> | The number of lines of the monitored video frame for which Gemstar data has been sliced.                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>pLines</code>  | Pointer to a buffer containing the line numbers for which Gemstar data has been sliced. <code>pLines[i]</code> contains the VBI line sliced with Gemstar data type <code>pTypes[i]</code> . If <code>nrLines</code> is 0, the content of <code>pLines</code> is irrelevant. |
| <code>pTypes</code>  | Pointer to a buffer containing the Gemstar type for each line for which Gemstar data has been sliced. If <code>nrLines</code> is 0, the content of <code>pTypes</code> is irrelevant.                                                                                       |
| <code>size</code>    | The size, in bytes, of valid Gemstar data to which <code>pBuffer</code> points. If <code>nrLines</code> is 0, <code>size</code> is 0.                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>pBuffer</code> | Pointer to a 4 byte aligned buffer with <code>size</code> bytes of valid Gemstar data. <code>pBuffer</code> points to the first element of this data. If <code>size</code> is 0, the content of <code>pBuffer</code> is irrelevant.                                         |

## Return Values

None.

## Precondition

True

## Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

## Postcondition

True

## Remarks

- When `nrLines` equals 0, no Gemstar data has been extracted from the monitored video frame.
- Gemstar data are stored in a 4 byte aligned buffer, i.e. 4 bytes are used to stored data of the `uhVbiSlice_Gemstar1x` and of the `uhVbiSlice_Gemstar2x` type. In case of `uhVbiSlice_Gemstar1x` data, the first two bytes contain the sliced Gemstar 1x data, the content of the remaining two bytes is undefined and should be ignored.
- When the extraction of VBI data is not automatic (`sli.autoSlicingEnabled == False`), the first byte of `pBuffer` corresponds to the first byte of sliced Gemstar data on the first video line requested that contains valid Gemstar data of a requested Gemstar data type.
- When the extraction of VBI data is automatic (`sli.autoSlicingEnabled == True`), the first byte of `pBuffer` corresponds to the first byte of sliced Gemstar data on the first video line that contains valid Gemstar data.
- The line numbers in `pLines` (and therefore the related Gemstar data to which `pBuffer` points) are organised in increasing order.
- For each line number in `pLines`, the size, in bytes, of the data can be retrieved from the data type indicated in `pTypes`. See subclause 8.1.17.2.1.8.
- The layout of the bytes follows the Gemstar standard, see [34].
- An example of the general layout of the storage space is shown in Figure 105.

| nrLines (8) | pBuffer   | pLines[ ] | pTypes[ ]            |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|----------------------|
|             | Gemstar1x | 14        | uhVbiSlice_Gemstar1x |
|             | Gemstar2x | 15        | uhVbiSlice_Gemstar2x |
|             | Gemstar1x | 19        | uhVbiSlice_Gemstar1x |
|             | Gemstar2x | 24        | uhVbiSlice_Gemstar2x |
|             | Gemstar2x | 279       | uhVbiSlice_Gemstar2x |
|             | Gemstar1x | 280       | uhVbiSlice_Gemstar1x |
|             | Gemstar1x | 282       | uhVbiSlice_Gemstar1x |
|             | Gemstar2x | 286       | uhVbiSlice_Gemstar2x |

Figure 105 — General layout of captured Gemstar data.

8.1.17.5.7.3 OnGemstarNoData

Signature

```
[async] Void OnGemstarNoData (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhVbiSlice_Gemstar_t gemstarType );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called by the VBI Slicer whenever it detects that the data lines contained no Gemstar data of the `gemstarType` type for `nrFramesNoData` consecutive frames since the last time they contained Gemstar data of this type.

Parameters

Table 1000

| Name        | Description                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie      | The value that was passed by the VBI Slicer Client at subscription time.                                                                                                           |
| gemstarType | Indicates the Gemstar type for which data lines contained no data for <code>nrFramesNoData</code> consecutive frames since the last time they contained Gemstar data of this type. |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

8.1.17.5.7.4 OnGemstarInvalid

Signature

```
Void OnGemstarInvalid (  
    [in] UInt32 cookie  
);
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called when the Gemstar validity status has become invalid.

Parameters

Table 1001

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

8.2 Video processing and rendering

8.2.1 UhlAmbientLevel

8.2.1.1 Concepts

8.2.1.1.1 Ambient Light

Video improvement algorithms that automatically change settings like brightness and contrast, in order to get a better picture quality, can attain a better result if they have an indication of the amount of ambient light in the room where the television set is, since this ambient light has a big influence on the way such settings are perceived.

The Ambient Level logical component, described in this document, provides the client with means to make the amount of ambient light known to the platform (see Figure 106).

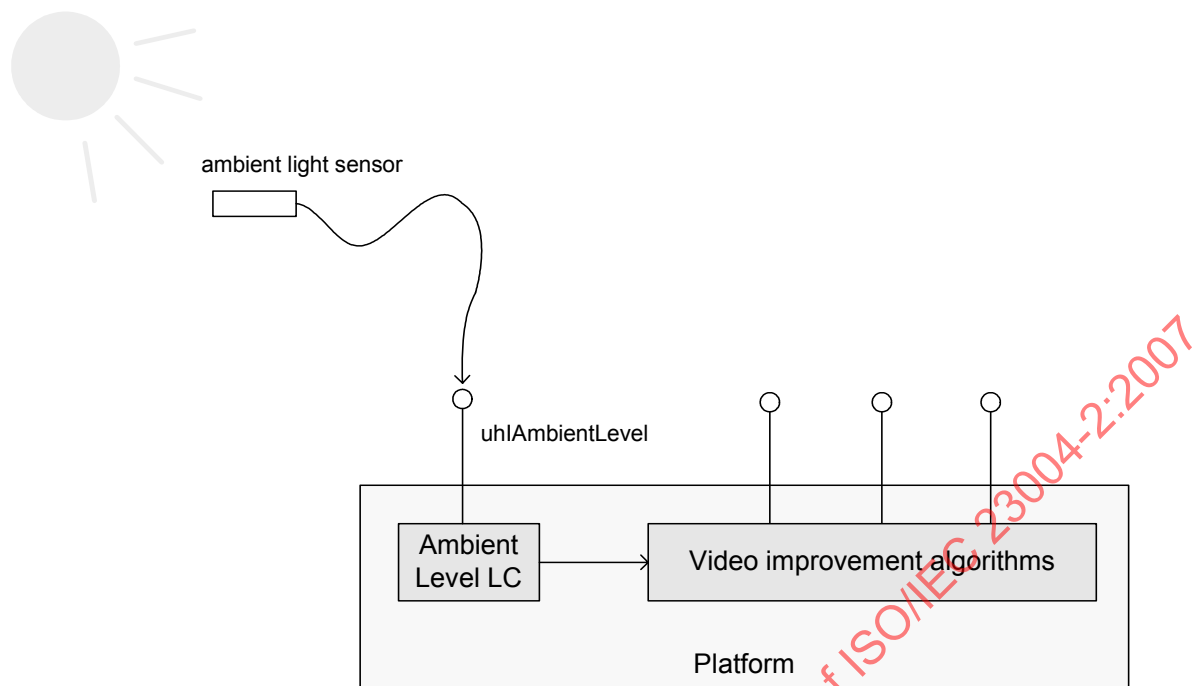


Figure 106 — The role of the Ambient Level LC in dealing with ambient light.

## 8.2.1.2 Types & Constants

### 8.2.1.2.1 Public Types & Constants

No additional types and constants are required for this logical component.

## 8.2.1.3 Logical Component

### 8.2.1.3.1 Interface-Role Model

The interface role-model is depicted in Figure 107.



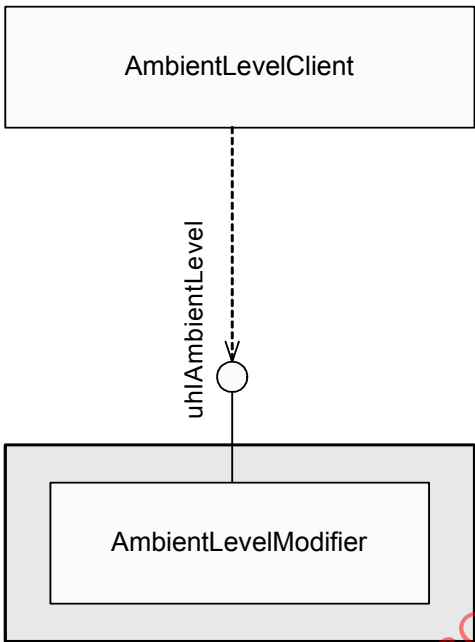


Figure 107 — Interface-Role Model of the Ambient Level logical component

The Ambient Level logical component (grey box) consists of the `AmbientLevelModifier` role. This role provides an interface (`uhIAmbientLevel`) for controlling the AL level. The control interface is meant for use by the client (`AmbientLevelClient`).

8.2.1.3.2 Diversity

8.2.1.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 1002

| Role                              | Interface                    | Presence  |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------|
| <code>AmbientLevelModifier</code> | <code>uhIAmbientLevel</code> | mandatory |

8.2.1.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 1003

| Role                              | Attribute             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <code>AmbientLevelModifier</code> | <code>minLevel</code> |
| <code>AmbientLevelModifier</code> | <code>maxLevel</code> |

8.2.1.3.2.3 Constraints

— `maxLevel`  $\geq$  `minLevel`

### 8.2.1.3.3 Instantiation

#### 8.2.1.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 1004**

| Type                 | Object | Multiplicity |
|----------------------|--------|--------------|
| AmbientLevelModifier | alm    | 1            |

#### 8.2.1.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

— `alm.level == alm.minLevel`

#### 8.2.1.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

### 8.2.1.4 Roles

#### 8.2.1.4.1 AmbientLevelModifier

##### Signature

```
role AmbientLevelModifier {
    const UInt32      minLevel;
    const UInt32      maxLevel;
    UInt32            level;
}
```

##### Qualifiers

— root

##### Description

The `AmbientLevelModifier` role controls the AL level which can be used by video improvement algorithms in the platform.

### Independent Attributes

**Table 1005**

| Name                  | Description                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <code>minLevel</code> | The minimum value for the AL level. |
| <code>maxLevel</code> | The maximum value for the AL level. |
| <code>level</code>    | The current value of the AL level.  |

**Dependent Attributes**

None.

**Invariants**

— `minLevel <= level <= maxLevel`

**Instantiation**

See subclause 8.2.1.3.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

None.

**Active Behavior**

None.

**8.2.1.4.2 AmbientLevelClient****Signature**

**role** `AmbientLevelClient` {}

**Qualifiers**

— `actor`

**Description**

An `AmbientLevelClient` represents a user of the `uhIAmbientLevel` interface.

**8.2.1.5 Interfaces****8.2.1.5.1 uhIAmbientLevel****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface controls the level of AL, which can be used by video improvement algorithms in the platform.

**Interface ID**

`uuid( 9431A895-0B70-4ed5-84F8-E23E351A037C )`

**Remarks**

In the following function specifications, the name `alm` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface; see subclause 8.2.1.3.3.1.

8.2.1.5.1.1      **GetLevel**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetLevel (  
    [out] pUInt32 pLevel );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current AL level.

**Parameters**

**Table 1006**

| Name   | Description                                      |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------|
| pLevel | Output parameter returning the current AL level. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pLevel == alm.level

8.2.1.5.1.2      **SetLevel**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetLevel (  
    [in] UInt32 level);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the AL level.

**Parameters****Table 1007**

| Name               | Description             |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>level</code> | The AL level to be set. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**`alm.minLevel <= level <= alm.maxLevel`**Action**— Modify `alm.level`**Postcondition**`alm.level == level``GetLevelRange`**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetLevelRange (
    [out] pUInt32 pMinLevel,
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxLevel);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the minimum and the maximum value for the AL level.

**Parameters****Table 1008**

| Name                   | Description                                                    |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pMinLevel</code> | Output parameter returning the minimum value for the AL level. |
| <code>pMaxLevel</code> | Output parameter returning the maximum value for the AL level. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

Postcondition

- \*pMinLevel == alm.minLevel
- \*pMaxLevel == alm.maxLevel

8.2.2 UhlAnaVenc

8.2.2.1 Concepts

8.2.2.1.1 Analog Video Encoder

This document defines the Analog Video Encoder logical component (LC). The Analog Video Encoder LC gives control over the encoding of a digital video stream into an analog video signal. The encoding type can be CVBS or YC. The encoded analog video signal has a specified color system. This color system can be a variety of PAL, NTSC or SECAM.

8.2.2.2 Types & Constants

8.2.2.2.1 Public Types & Constants

8.2.2.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

8.2.2.2.1.2 uhAnaVenc\_EncodingType\_t

Signature

```
typedef enum uhAnaVenc_EncodingType_t {
    uhAnaVenc_Cvbs      = 0x00000001,
    uhAnaVenc_Yc        = 0x00000002,
} uhAnaVenc_EncodingType_t, *puhAnaVenc_EncodingType_t;
```

Qualifiers

- enum-element

Description

Describes the different encoding types.

Values

Name

- uhAnaVenc\_Cvbs
- uhAnaVenc\_Yc

Table 1009

Description

- CVBS encoding type.
- YC encoding type.

**8.2.2.2.1.3      uhAnaVenc\_EncodingTypeSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAnaVenc_EncodingTypeSet_t, *puhAnaVenc_EncodingTypeSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type identify sets of encoding types, which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing values of type uhAnaVenc\_EncodingType\_t.

**8.2.2.2.1.4      uhAnaVenc\_ColorSystem\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhAnaVenc_ColorSystem_t {
    uhAnaVenc_PalM      = 0x00000001,
    uhAnaVenc_PalN      = 0x00000002,
    uhAnaVenc_PalBg     = 0x00000004,
    uhAnaVenc_NtscM     = 0x00000008,
    uhAnaVenc_Secam     = 0x00000010
} uhAnaVenc_ColorSystem_t, *puhAnaVenc_ColorSystem_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Describes the different color systems.

**Values****Table 1010****Name****Description**

uhAnaVenc\_PalM

PAL-M color system.

uhAnaVenc\_PalN

PAL-N color system.

uhAnaVenc\_PalBg

PAL-BG color system.

uhAnaVenc\_NtscM

NTSC-M color system.

uhAnaVenc\_Secam

SECAM color system.

**8.2.2.2.1.5      uhAnaVenc\_ColorSystemSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhAnaVenc_ColorSystemSet_t, *puhAnaVenc_ColorSystemSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type identify sets of color systems, which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing values of type uhAnaVenc\_ColorSystem\_t.

8.2.2.2.2 Model Types & Constants

None.

8.2.2.3 Logical Component

8.2.2.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 108 depicts the interface-role model of the Analog Video Encoder LC. It shows the roles and interfaces the Analog Video Encoder LC and its client can have.

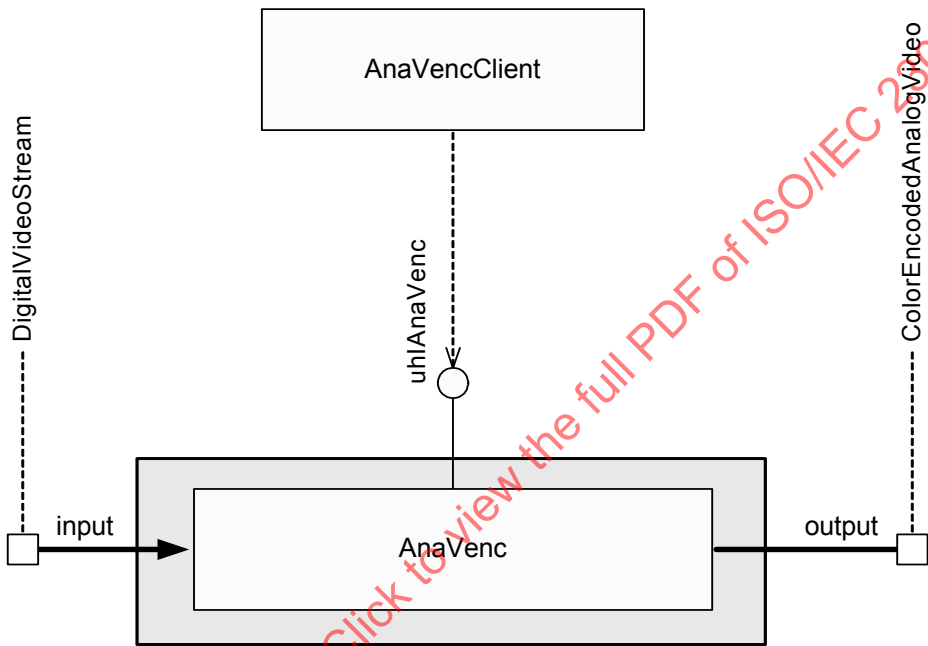


Figure 108 — Analog Video Encoder Interface-Role Model

The Analog Video Encoder LC (grey box) consists of the `AnaVenc` role. This role provides the interface `uhIAnaVenc` for encoding a digital video stream into an analog video signal. The control interface is meant for usage by the client `AnaVencClient`.

8.2.2.3.2 Diversity

8.2.2.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 1011

| Role    | Interface  | Presence  |
|---------|------------|-----------|
| AnaVenc | uhIAnaVenc | mandatory |



### 8.2.2.3.2.2 Configurable Items

**Table 1012**

| Role    | Attribute              |
|---------|------------------------|
| AnaVenc | encodingType           |
| AnaVenc | supportedEncodingTypes |
| AnaVenc | colorSystem            |
| AnaVenc | supportedColorSystems  |

### 8.2.2.3.2.3 Constraints

— See subclause *Invariants* in 7.2.1.4

### 8.2.2.3.3 Instantiation

#### 8.2.2.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 1013**

| Type    | Object  | Multiplicity |
|---------|---------|--------------|
| AnaVenc | anaVenc | 1            |

#### 8.2.2.3.3.2 Initial State

None.

#### 8.2.2.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

All interfaces described for the Analog Video Encoding logical component are intended to be used by a single client. The single client nature of the Analog Video Encoding interfaces is exposed by the fact that any change in one of the analog video encoding method parameters does not result in a notification being generated. If multiple clients are acting on the Analog Video Encoding logical component, they might interfere with each other without further notice.

8.2.2.4 Roles

8.2.2.4.1 AnaVenc

Signature

```
role AnaVenc {
    uhAnaVenc_EncodingType_t      encodingType;
    uhAnaVenc_EncodingTypeSet_t   supportedEncodingTypes;
    uhAnaVenc_ColorSystem_t       colorSystem;
    uhAnaVenc_ColorSystemSet_t    supportedColorSystems;
}
```

Qualifiers

— root

Description

The *AnaVenc* controls which encoding type and color system is used for encoding a digital video stream into an analog video signal.

Independent Attributes

Table 1014

| Name                   | Description                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| encodingType           | The current encoding type used for encoding the analog video signal.                                                         |
| supportedEncodingTypes | Vector that contains all supported encoding types. The vector is constructed by logical OR-ing the supported encoding types. |
| colorSystem            | The current color system that is used for encoding the analog video signal.                                                  |
| supportedColorSystems  | Vector that contains all supported color systems. The vector is constructed by logical OR-ing the supported color systems.   |

Dependent Attributes

None.

Invariants

- (supportedEncodingTypes & encodingType) != 0
- (supportedColorSystems & colorSystem) != 0

Instantiation

See subclause 8.2.2.3.3.

Streaming Behavior

The *AnaVenc* has a digital video stream as input. This video stream is encoded into an analog video signal using the selected encoding type and the selected color system.

Active Behavior

None.

**Execution Constraints**

None.

**8.2.2.4.2 AnaVencClient****Signature****role** AnaVencClient {}**Qualifiers**

— actor

**Description**

An instance of the role `AnaVencClient` represents a client of the analog video encoding functionality as provided by an Analog Video Encoder.

**8.2.2.5 Interfaces****8.2.2.5.1 uhlAnaVenc****Qualifiers**

— None.

**Description**

This interface provides control over the Analog Video Encoder. It provides functions to set the encoding type and the color system.

**Interface ID**

uuid( F14EACA3-C9AB-4b00-BE4A-02A20C599416 )

**Remarks**

In the following function specifications, the name `anaVenc` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface; see subclause 8.2.2.3.3.1

**8.2.2.5.1.1 SetEncodingType****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetEncodingType (
    [in] uhAnaVenc_EncodingType_t encodingType );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the encoding type that is used for encoding the analog output signal.

**Parameters****Table 1015**

| <b>Name</b>               | <b>Description</b> |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| <code>encodingType</code> | The encoding type. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**

— `(anaVenc.supportedEncodingTypes & encodingType) != 0`

**Action**

— `modify anaVenc.encodingType`

**Postcondition**

— `anaVenc.encodingType == encodingType`

**8.2.2.5.1.2 GetEncodingType****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetEncodingType (
    [out] puhAnaVenc_EncodingType_t pEncodingType );
```

**Qualifiers**

— `synchronous`

— `thread-safe`

**Description**

Returns the current encoding type that is used for encoding the analog output signal.

**Parameters****Table 1016**

| <b>Name</b>                | <b>Description</b>                                    |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pEncodingType</code> | Output parameter returning the current encoding type. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**

`True`

**Action**

— `None.`

**Postcondition**

— \*pEncodingType == anaVenc.encodingType

**8.2.2.5.1.3      SetColorSystem**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetColorSystem (  
    [in]  uhAnaVenc_ColorSystem_t colorSystem );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the color system that is used for the encoding of the analog video signal.

**Parameters**

**Table 1017**

| Name        | Description                                                        |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| colorSystem | The color system used for the encoding of the analog video signal. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

(anaVenc.supportedColorSystems & colorSystem) != 0

**Action**

- modify anaVenc.colorSystem

**Postcondition**

- anaVenc.colorSystem == *colorSystem*

**8.2.2.5.1.4      GetColorSystem**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetColorSystem (  
    [out] puhAnaVenc_ColorSystem_t pColorSystem );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the color system that is used for encoding the analog video signal.

Parameters

Table 1018

| Name         | Description                                                                                            |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pColorSystem | Output parameter returning the current color system that is used for encoding the analog video signal. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— None.

**Postcondition**  
— \*pColorSystem == anaVenc.colorSystem

8.2.2.5.1.5      GetSuppEncodingType

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetSuppEncodingTypes (  
    [out] puhAnaVenc\_EncodingTypeSet\_t pSupportedEncodingTypes );

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
  
— thread-safe

**Description**  
Returns a vector that contains the encoding types that are supported by the Analog Video Encoder. The vector is constructed by logical OR-ing the supported encoding types.

Parameters

Table 1019

| Name                    | Description                                                        |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSupportedEncodingTypes | Output parameter returning a vector with supported encoding types. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— None.

**Postcondition**

— \*pSupportedEncodingTypes == anaVenc.supportedEncodingTypes

**8.2.2.5.1.6 GetSuppColorSystems**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSuppColorSystems (  
    [out] puhAnaVenc_ColorSystemSet_t pSupportedColorSystems );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns a vector that contains the color systems that are supported by the Analog Video Encoder. The vector is constructed by logical OR-ing the supported color systems.

**Parameters**

**Table 1020**

| Name                   | Description                                                       |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSupportedColorSystems | Output parameter returning a vector with supported color systems. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- None.

**Postcondition**

— \*pSupportedColorSystems == anaVenc.supportedColorSystems

**8.2.3 UhlAnaVencrypt**

**8.2.3.1 Concepts**

**8.2.3.1.1 Introduction**

This document defines the Analog Video Encryption logical component (LC). The Analog Video Encryptor gives control over an anti-taping feature.

### 8.2.3.1.2 Analog Video Encryption

The Analog Video Encryptor modifies an analog video signal in such a way that copying the video while maintaining the original quality is not possible anymore. The applied copy-protection is transparent when viewing the original program. But when a copy is made, the quality of the video degrades to such an extent that it loses its value. The copy protection feature will be called anti-taping in the rest of this document.

### 8.2.3.1.3 Macrovision

The Macrovision Copy Protection process provides functionality for the anti-taping feature. The process consists of two primary aspects: the “AGC” process and the “Colorstripe” process. Each of these processes creates modifications to the standard analog video signal designed to exploit fundamental differences in the way display products and VCR products use the various component parts of an analog video signal.

As its name implies, the AGC process disturbs the luminance automatic gain control (AGC) circuit in the VCR. The encoded video signal appears to the AGC circuit as an abnormally high amplitude signal, which the AGC circuit corrects for, resulting in dark distorted pictures. The AGC process consists of luminance signal components only.

The colorstripe process creates a modified color burst on small groups of selected lines throughout the picture. The VCR uses the color burst to perform functions that a display device does not have to contend with and therefore has problems taping it correctly. The colorstripe encoded color burst waveform, as its name implies, results in color stripes appearing across the picture of the copy while leaving the directly displayed picture quality unaffected. The colorstripe process consists of chrominance signal components only.

For more detailed information about the Macrovision anti-taping process, see [11].

## 8.2.3.2 Types & Constants

### 8.2.3.2.1 Public Types & Constants

#### 8.2.3.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

#### 8.2.3.2.1.2 uhAnaVencrypt\_Feature\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAnaVencrypt_Feature_t {
    uhAnaVencrypt_SyncReductionInsideVbi    = 0x00000001,
    uhAnaVencrypt_SyncReductionOutsideVbi   = 0x00000002,
    uhAnaVencrypt_AgcCycling                 = 0x00000004,
    uhAnaVencrypt_ColorStripe               = 0x00000008,
    uhAnaVencrypt_BackPorchPulses           = 0x00000010,
    uhAnaVencrypt_VbiPulses                  = 0x00000020
} uhAnaVencrypt_Feature_t, *puhAnaVencrypt_Feature_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

##### Description

Describes the different anti-taping features.



## Values

**Table 1021**

| Name                                               | Description                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhAnaVencrypt_SyncReductionInsideVbi</code>  | Sync amplitude reduction feature for lines inside VBI. When set, the feature is enabled. Otherwise, the feature is disabled. |
| <code>uhAnaVencrypt_SyncReductionOutsideVbi</code> | Sync amplitude reduction feature for lines outside VBI. When set, the feature is enabled. Otherwise the feature is disabled. |
| <code>uhAnaVencrypt_AgcCycling</code>              | AGC pulse amplitude feature. When set, the amplitude is cycling. Otherwise, the amplitude is static.                         |
| <code>uhAnaVencrypt_ColorStripe</code>             | Colorstripe feature. When set, the feature is enabled. Otherwise, the feature is disabled.                                   |
| <code>uhAnaVencrypt_BackPorchPulses</code>         | End of field back porch pulses feature. When set, the feature is enabled. Otherwise, the feature is disabled.                |
| <code>uhAnaVencrypt_VbiPulses</code>               | PS and AGC pulses feature. When set, the feature is enabled. Otherwise, the feature is disabled.                             |

### 8.2.3.2.1.3 `uhAnaVencrypt_FeatureSet_t`

#### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhAnaVencrypt_FeatureSet_t, *puhAnaVencrypt_FeatureSet_t;
```

#### Qualifiers

— enum-set

#### Description

Values of this type identify sets of anti-taping features which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing values of type `uhAnaVencrypt_Feature_t`.

### 8.2.3.2.1.4 `uhAnaVencrypt_ColorStripe_t`

#### Signature

```
typedef struct _uhAnaVencrypt_ColorStripe_t {
    UInt8 firstLineFirstStripeField1;
    UInt8 spacingFirstToSecondStripeField1;
    UInt8 firstLineFirstStripeField2;
    UInt8 spacingFirstToSecondStripeField2;
    UInt8 spacingFromSecondStripe;
    UInt8 nrStripesPerField;
    UInt8 nrLinesPerStripe;
} uhAnaVencrypt_ColorStripe_t, *puhAnaVencrypt_ColorStripe_t;
```

#### Qualifiers

None.

#### Description

Defines the attributes used for selecting the line numbers for which the waveform is modified by the Macrovision Copy Protection Process. These lines are so called colorstripe lines.

**Fields****Name**

firstLineFirstStripeField1  
 spacingFirstToSecondStripeField1  
 firstLineFirstStripeField2  
 spacingFirstToSecondStripeField2  
 spacingFromSecondStripe  
 nrStripesPerField  
 nrLinesPerStripe

**Table 1022****Description**

First line in first colorstripe. Field 1 / Even field.  
 Colorstripe spacing, first to second stripe. Field 1 / Even field.  
 First line in first colorstripe. Field 2 / Odd field.  
 Colorstripe spacing, first to second stripe. Field 2 / Odd field.  
 Colorstripe spacing, from second stripe in each field.  
 Number of colorstripes per field.  
 Number of lines per colorstripe.

**Constraints**

— Values for the fields of this type must comply with the Macrovision specification [11].

**8.2.3.2.1.5 uhAnaVencrypt\_BurstWaveform\_t****Signature**

```
typedef struct _uhAnaVencrypt_BurstWaveform_t {
    Bool    advanceBurstStart;
    UInt8   startBurstToFirstPhaseSwitch;
    UInt8   firstToSecondPhaseSwitch;
    UInt8   secondPhaseSwitchToEndBurst;
    UInt8   subcarrierPhaseZones;
    UInt16  stripeLinePhases;
} uhAnaVencrypt_BurstWaveform_t, *puhAnaVencrypt_BurstWaveform_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

Defines the attributes that characterize the burst waveform used on those lines selected as the colorstripe lines.

**Fields****Table 1023****Name**

advanceBurstStart  
 startBurstToFirstPhaseSwitch  
 firstToSecondPhaseSwitch  
 secondPhaseSwitchToEndBurst  
 subcarrierPhaseZones  
 stripeLinePhases

**Description**

Advanced burst start On / Off (True / False).  
 Duration of start of burst to first phase switch point (zone 1).  
 Duration of first to second phase switch point (zone 2).  
 Duration of second phase switch to end of burst (zone 3).  
 Subcarrier phase zones (zone 1 to 3).  
 Colorstripe lines phases (line phase 1 to 5).

**Constraints**

— Values for the fields of this type must comply with the Macrovision specification [11].

### 8.2.3.2.1.6 uhAnaVencrypt\_VbiPulse\_t

#### Signature

```
typedef struct _uhAnaVencrypt_VbiPulse_t {
    UInt8    durationPseudoSyncPulseA;
    UInt8    durationPseudoSyncPulseB;
    UInt8    locationFirstPseudoSyncPulseA;
    UInt8    locationFirstPseudoSyncPulseB;
    UInt8    spacingPseudoSyncPulseA;
    UInt8    spacingPseudoSyncPulseB;
    UInt16   lineNumberSelection;
    UInt16   lineNumberFormatSelection;
    UInt8    pulseConfigurationA;
    UInt8    pulseConfigurationB;
    UInt8    nrBackPorchPulsesPriorVsync;
    UInt8    nrBackPorchPulsesAfterVsync;
} uhAnaVencrypt_VbiPulse_t, *puhAnaVencrypt_VbiPulse_t;
```

#### Qualifiers

None.

#### Description

Defines the attributes used in the AGC process. The AGC process consists primarily of creating a number of pulse pairs in and around the VBI data.

#### Fields

Table 1024

#### Name

#### Description

|                               |                                               |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| durationPseudoSyncPulseA      | PS pulse duration, format A.                  |
| durationPseudoSyncPulseB      | PS pulse duration, format B.                  |
| locationFirstPseudoSyncPulseA | First PS pulse location, format A.            |
| locationFirstPseudoSyncPulseB | First PS pulse location, format B.            |
| spacingPseudoSyncPulseA       | PS pulse spacing, format A.                   |
| spacingPseudoSyncPulseB       | PS pulse spacing, format B.                   |
| lineNumberSelection           | Line number selections with PS/AGC pulses.    |
| lineNumberFormatSelection     | Line numbers with A/B format PS/ AGC pulses.  |
| pulseConfigurationA           | PS/AGC pulse line configuration, format A.    |
| pulseConfigurationB           | PS/AGC pulse line configuration, format B.    |
| nrBackPorchPulsesPriorVsync   | Number of back porch pulses before to V-sync. |
| nrBackPorchPulsesAfterVsync   | Number of back porch pulses after V-sync.     |

#### Constraints

— Values for the fields of this type must comply with the Macrovision specification [11].

### 8.2.3.2.2 Model Types & Constants

None.

8.2.3.3 Logical Component

8.2.3.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 109 depicts the interface-role model of the Analog Video Encryption LC. it shows the roles and interfaces the Analog Video Encryption LC and its client can have.

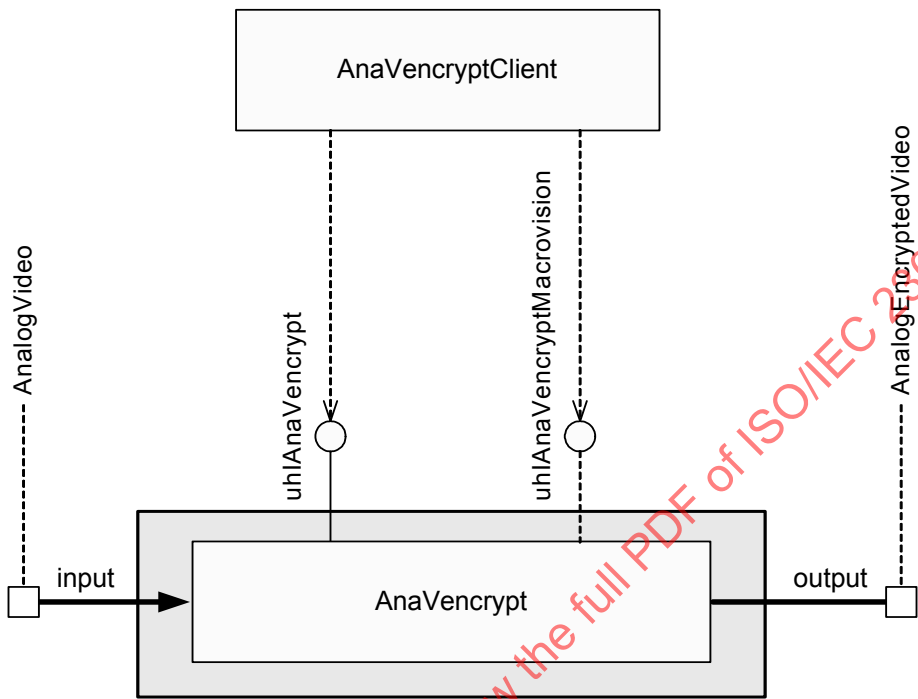


Figure 109 — Interface-Role Model of the Analog Video Encryptor

The Analog Video Encryption LC (grey box) consists of the `AnaVencrypt` role. This role provides two interfaces. The `uhIAnaVencrypt` interface controls whether the anti-taping feature is enabled or disabled. The `uhIAnaVencryptMacrovision` interface controls the anti-taping feature as developed by Macrovision. The control interfaces are meant for usage by the client `AnaVencryptClient`.

8.2.3.3.2 Diversity

8.2.3.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 1025

| Role                     | Interface                              | Presence  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------|
| <code>anaVencrypt</code> | <code>uhIAnaVencrypt</code>            | mandatory |
| <code>anaVencrypt</code> | <code>uhIAnaVencryptMacrovision</code> | optional  |

8.2.3.3.2.2 Configurable Items

None.

8.2.3.3.2.3 Constraints

None.

### 8.2.3.3.3 Instantiation

#### 8.2.3.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 1026**

| Type        | Object      | Multiplicity |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| AnaVencrypt | anaVencrypt | 1            |

#### 8.2.3.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- `anaVencrypt.enabled == False`
- `anaVencrypt.rgbOutputProtectionEnabled == False`
- `anaVencrypt.featureSetup == 0`

The following attributes are structs with undefined values:

- `anaVencrypt.colorStripeSetup`
- `anaVencrypt.burstWaveformSetup`
- `anaVencrypt.vbiPulseSetup`

#### 8.2.3.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

### 8.2.3.4 Roles

#### 8.2.3.4.1 AnaVencrypt

##### Signature

```
role AnaVencrypt {
    Bool    enabled;
    Bool    rgbOutputProtectionEnabled;
    uhAnaVencrypt_FeatureSet_t    featureSetup;
    uhAnaVencrypt_ColorStripe_t    colorStripeSetup;
    uhAnaVencrypt_BurstWaveform_t    burstWaveformSetup;
    uhAnaVencrypt_VbiPulse_t    vbiPulseSetup;
}
```

##### Qualifiers

- root

##### Description

The `AnaVencrypt` provides functionality to enable, disable and configure the anti-taping feature.

**Independent Attributes****Table 1027**

| <b>Name</b>                             | <b>Description</b>                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>enabled</code>                    | Indicates whether the anti-taping feature is enabled (True) or not (False). |
| <code>rgbOutputProtectionEnabled</code> | Enables or disables copy protection of waveforms for RGB output.            |
| <code>featureSetup</code>               | Current set of selected anti-taping features.                               |
| <code>colorStripeSetup</code>           | Attributes for selecting the colorstripe lines.                             |
| <code>burstWaveformSetup</code>         | Attributes for setting the colorstripe burst waveform.                      |
| <code>vbiPulseSetup</code>              | Attributes for configuring the AGC process.                                 |

**Dependent Attributes**

None.

**Invariants**

None.

**Instantiation**

See subclause 8.2.3.3.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

The `AnaVencrypt` has an analog video signal as input. When the anti-taping feature is enabled, the analog video signal is modified in such a way that the signal cannot be taped with the original video quality. The modified analog signal is passed to the output. When the anti-taping feature is disabled, the analog video signal at the input is passed to the output without modification.

**Active Behavior**

None.

**8.2.3.4.2 AnaVencryptClient****Signature**

```
role AnaVencryptClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

— actor

**Description**

An instance of the role `AnaVencryptClient` represents a client of the anti-taping functionality as provided by an Analog Video Encryptor.

**8.2.3.5 Interfaces****8.2.3.5.1 uhlAnaVencrypt****Qualifiers**

— None.

**Description**

This interface provides functionality to enable or disable anti-taping functionality.

**Interface ID**

uuid( 3832FFB9-FF41-49e9-81F5-E73AB09C2292 )

**Remarks**

In the following function specifications, the name `anaVencrypt` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface; see subclause 8.2.3.3.1.

**8.2.3.5.1.1      Enable**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Enable (
    [in] Bool enabled );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Enables or disables the anti-taping feature.

**Parameters**

**Table 1028**

| Name                 | Description                                                          |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>enabled</code> | Boolean to enable (True) or disable (False) the anti-taping feature. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- Modify `anaVencrypt.enabled`

**Postcondition**

- `anaVencrypt.enabled == enabled`

### 8.2.3.5.1.2 GetEnabled

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetEnabled (
    [out] pBool pEnabled );
```

#### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

#### Description

Returns whether the anti-taping feature is enabled or disabled.

#### Parameters

Table 1029

| Name     | Description                                                                                       |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pEnabled | Output parameter returning whether the anti-taping feature is enabled (True) or disabled (False). |

#### Return Values

Standard

#### Precondition

True

#### Action

- None.

#### Postcondition

- \*pEnabled == anaVencrypt.enabled

### 8.2.3.5.2 uhlAnaVencryptMacrovision

#### Qualifiers

None.

#### Description

This interface provides functions to set Macrovision data to control the anti-taping feature. For more information about Macrovision and the meaning of the data, see [11].

#### Interface ID

uuid( 6980D3D0-D741-4877-AE23-815D954DCBB9 )



**Remarks**

In the following function specifications, the name `anaVencrypt` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface; see subclause 8.2.3.3.1

**8.2.3.5.2.1 SetFeatures****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetFeatures (
    [in] uhAnaVencrypt_FeatureSet_t featureSetup );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the Macrovision anti-taping features.

**Parameters****Table 1030**

| Name                      | Description                                    |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <code>featureSetup</code> | Vector with the selected anti-taping features. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- Modify `anaVencrypt.featureSetup`

**Postcondition**

- `anaVencrypt.featureSetup == featureSetup`

**8.2.3.5.2.2 SetColorStripe****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetColorStripe (
    [in] uhAnaVencrypt_ColorStripe_t colorStripeSetup );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the attributes used for selecting the line numbers for which the waveform is modified by the Macrovision Copy Protection process. These lines are so called colorstripe lines.

**Parameters****Table 1031**

| Name             | Description                                    |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| colorStripeSetup | Parameter for selecting the colorstripe lines. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Modify `anaVencrypt.colorStripeSetup`

**Postcondition**

— `anaVencrypt.colorStripeSetup == colorStripeSetup`

**8.2.3.5.2.3 SetBurstWaveform****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetBurstWaveform (
    [in] uhAnaVencrypt_BurstWaveform_t burstWaveformSetup );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the attributes that characterize the burst waveform used on those lines selected as the colorstripe lines.

**Parameters****Table 1032**

| Name               | Description                                      |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| burstWaveformSetup | Parameter to set the colorstripe burst waveform. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

Action

— Modify `anaVencrypt.burstWaveformSetup`

Postcondition

— `anaVencrypt.burstWaveformSetup == burstWaveformSetup`

8.2.3.5.2.4 SetVbiPulse

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t SetVbiPulse (
    [in] uhAnaVencrypt_VbiPulse_t  vbiPulseSetup );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

Description

Sets the attributes used in the AGC process. The AGC process consists primarily of creating a number of pulse pairs in and around the VBI data.

Parameters

Table 1033

| Name                       | Description                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>vbiPulseSetup</code> | Parameter for the AGC process. |

Return Values

Standard

Precondition

True

Action

— Modify `anaVencrypt.vbiPulseSetup`

Postcondition

— `anaVencrypt.vbiPulseSetup == vbiPulseSetup`

8.2.3.5.2.5 EnableRgbOutputProtection

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t EnableRgbOutputProtection (
    [in] Bool  rgbOutputProtectionEnabled );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Enables or disables the RGB output copy protection.

**Parameters**

**Table 1034**

| Name                       | Description                                                               |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| rgbOutputProtectionEnabled | Parameter to enable (True) or disable (False) RGB output copy protection. |

**Return Values**

Standard

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Modify anaVencrypt.rgbOutputProtectionEnabled

**Postcondition**

— anaVencrypt.rgbOutputProtectionEnabled== rgbOutputProtectionEnabled

**8.2.4 UhlAntiAging**

**8.2.4.1 Concepts**

**8.2.4.1.1 Introduction**

Unlike conventional CRT, other display types, like plasma and LCD, may have the peculiarity to suffer from aging effects if a static picture (or a broadcaster's logo) remains active on the display for longer periods. To reduce these "burn-in" effects in this kind of matrix panels (in fact, aging of display phosphors for plasma and image sticking for LCD), a counter measure is provided, called "Anti-Aging". In short, this feature slowly shifts the picture in horizontal and vertical direction to spread the aging effects over a bigger area. The small shift needs to be invisible for a customer.

Figure 110 (upper half) shows how the entire picture is shifted across the screen (the red dot is the initial "centered" position). The shifting area in this case is 4 pixels (right and left) and 3 lines (up and down). The size of the shifting area is limited by the amount of overscan that is available (overscan is the part of the input image that is not displayed).

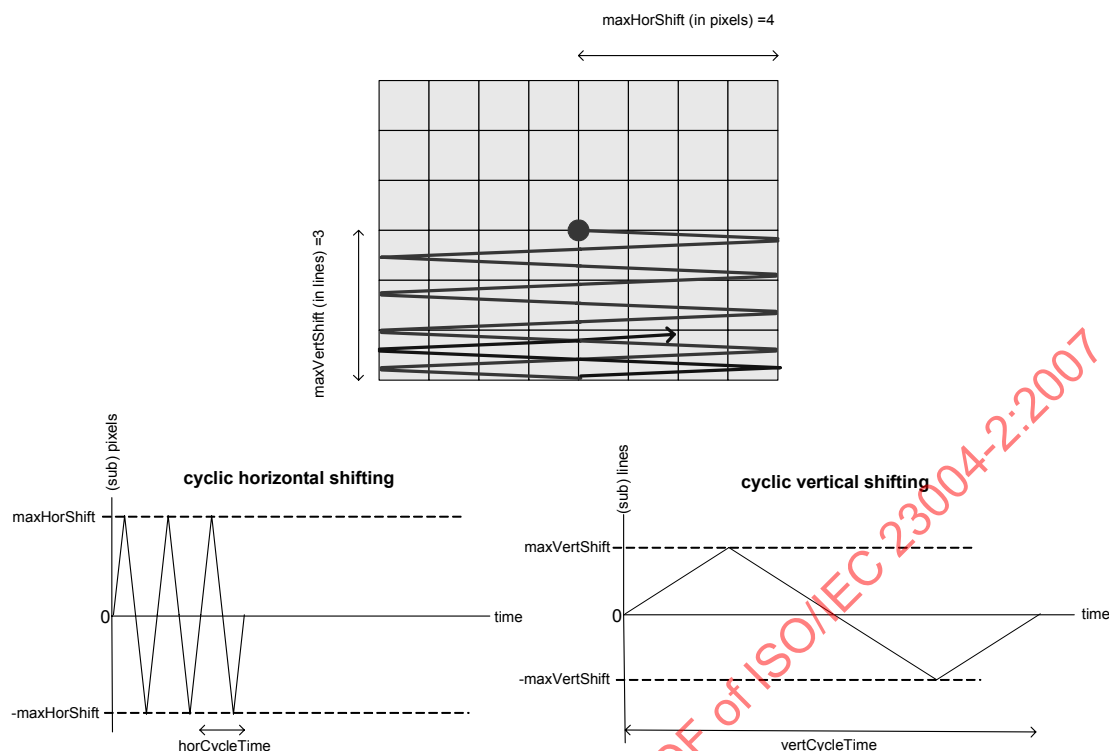


**Figure 110 — The anti-aging process: a combination of horizontal and vertical cyclic shifting.**

If not enough overscan is available, e.g. anti-aging wants to shift 2.7 pixels to the right, but there are only 2 pixels overscan to the right, then the platform shifts the picture only 2 pixels (the actual shift is clipped). The client should actually take care that enough overscan is available or turn anti-aging off if that is not the case.

The movement of the picture can be decomposed into a cyclic horizontal shift process and a cyclic vertical shift process (lower half of Figure 110). The respective speeds of these processes ( $\text{horCycleTime}$  and  $\text{vertCycleTime}$ ) should be set in such a way that a large part of the shifting area is covered, so that the aging effect is spread as much as possible. In the example, horizontal shifting is a lot faster than vertical shifting to achieve this.

Because the slower of the two shift processes typically takes a few hours to complete a full cycle, it is best to store the last shift position in non-volatile memory when the television set is switched off, so that the anti-aging process can continue from this position when the set is switched on again. This will guarantee a more homogeneous spread of the picture shift over long periods.

More important for spreading the aging effects and for keeping the anti-aging invisible, is the (sub-pixel/line) resolution of the shifts. The resolution determines how smooth the shifting is. It can be expressed as the number of single shift steps that can be used to cover the distance of a single pixel or line ( $\text{horStepSize}$  or  $\text{vertStepSize}$ ). So, the actual distance covered by a single shift step is  $1/\text{horStepSize}$  pixel or  $1/\text{vertStepSize}$  line.

Figure 111 shows how the time inbetween two horizontal shift steps (hor step time) can be derived from  $\text{horCycleTime}$ ,  $\text{maxHorShift}$ , and  $\text{horStepSize}$ . A similar derivation can be made for the time between two vertical shift steps.

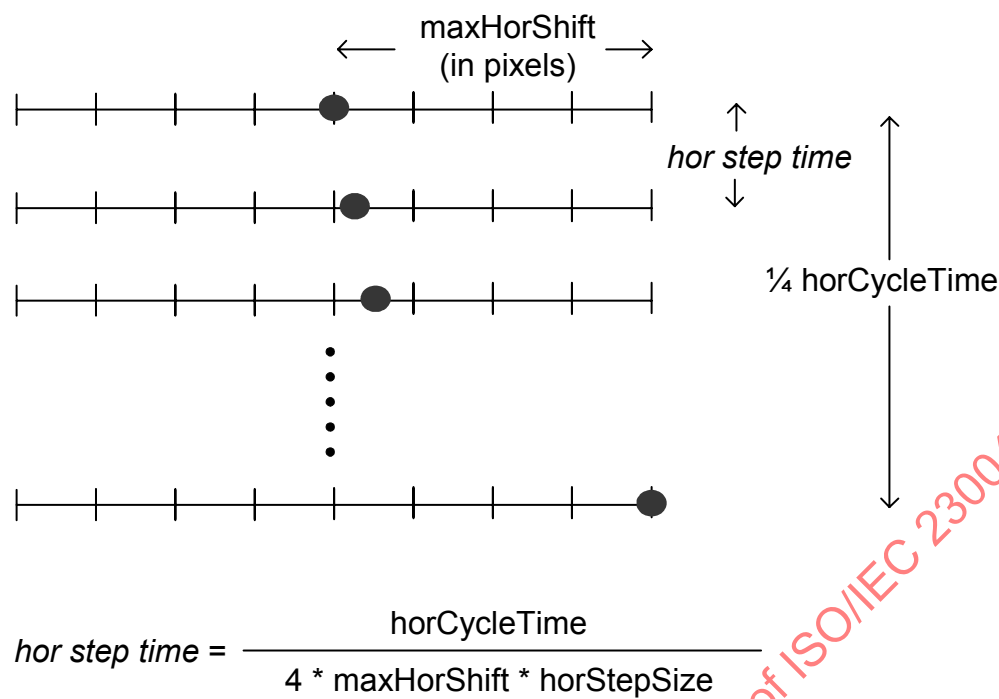


Figure 111 — Deriving hor step time from horCycleTime, maxHorShift, and horStepSize.

8.2.4.2 Types & Constants

8.2.4.2.1 Public Types & Constants

8.2.4.2.1.1 uhAntiAging\_Mode\_t

Signature

```
typedef enum _uhAntiAging_Mode_t {
    uhAntiAging_Off          = 0x00000001,
    uhAntiAging_Horizontal   = 0x00000002,
    uhAntiAging_Vertical     = 0x00000004,
    uhAntiAging_Both         = 0x00000008
} uhAntiAging_Mode_t, *puhAntiAging_Mode_t;
```

Qualifiers

— enum-element

Description

Values of this type represent modes of operation of the anti-aging algorithm.

Values

Table 1035

| Name            | Description    |
|-----------------|----------------|
| uhAntiAging_Off | No anti-aging. |

| Name                   | Description                              |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| uhAntiAging_Horizontal | Only horizontal anti-aging.              |
| uhAntiAging_Vertical   | Only vertical anti-aging.                |
| uhAntiAging_Both       | Both horizontal and vertical anti-aging. |

#### 8.2.4.2.1.2 uhAntiAging\_Modes\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhAntiAging_Modes_t, *puhAntiAging_Modes_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of anti-aging modes which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type uhAntiAging\_Mode\_t.

#### 8.2.4.3 Logical Component

##### 8.2.4.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 112 depicts the interface-role model of the AA (the grey box in Figure 112). It shows the control interface and the roles involved in the AA.

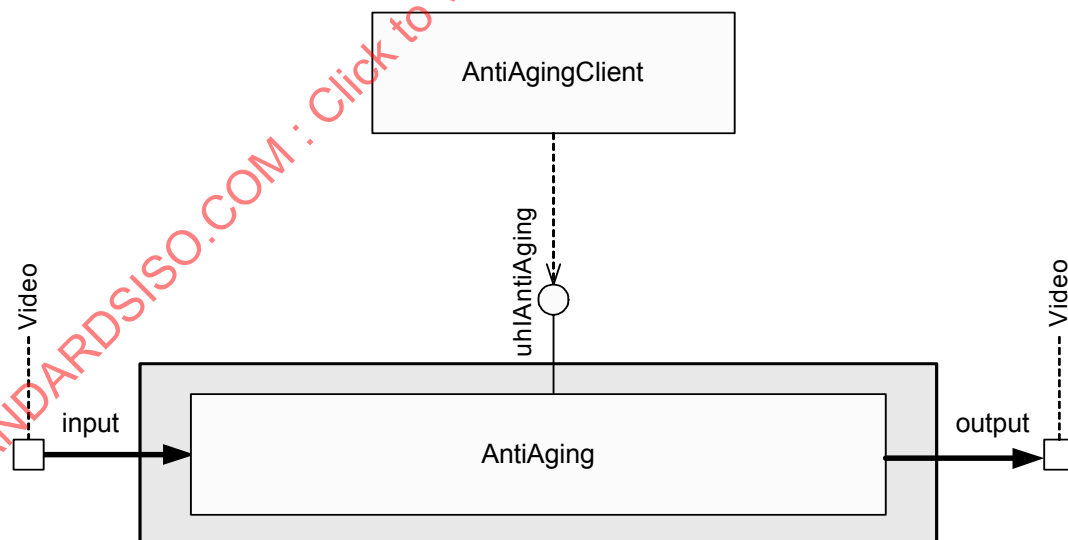


Figure 112 — Interface-Role Model

An AA contains the role AntiAging which provides the control interface uhAntiAging. A client (represented by the AntiAgingClient role) can use this control interface.

## 8.2.4.3.2 Diversity

## 8.2.4.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 1036

| Role      | Interface    | Presence  |
|-----------|--------------|-----------|
| AntiAging | uhIAntiAging | mandatory |

## 8.2.4.3.2.2 Configurable Items

The following table contains a list of role attributes that can be given a value upon creation of an AA. For a description of the attributes, see AntiAging, subclause 8.2.4.4.1.

Table 1037

| Role      | Attribute     |
|-----------|---------------|
| AntiAging | horCycleTime  |
|           | vertCycleTime |
|           | maxHorShift   |
|           | maxVertShift  |
|           | suppModes     |
|           | horStepSize   |
|           | vertStepSize  |

## 8.2.4.3.2.3 Constraints

- horCycleTime > 0
- vertCycleTime > 0

Additionally, the hardware will pose certain restrictions on the values that can be given to the configurable items listed above.

## 8.2.4.3.3 Instantiation

## 8.2.4.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following object is created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 1038

| Type      | Object | Multiplicity |
|-----------|--------|--------------|
| AntiAging | aag    | 1            |

## 8.2.4.3.3.2 Initial State

- aag.mode == uhAntiAging\_Off
- aag.curHorPos == 0



— aag.curVertPos == 0

8.2.4.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

8.2.4.4 Roles

8.2.4.4.1 AntiAging

Signature

```
role AntiAging {
    uhAntiAging_Mode_t      mode;
    const UInt32             maxHorShift;
    const UInt32             maxVertShift;
    const UInt32             horCycleTime;
    const UInt32             vertCycleTime;
    UInt32                   curHorPos;
    UInt32                   curVertPos;
    const uhAntiAging_Modes_t suppModes;
    const UInt32             horStepSize;
    const UInt32             vertStepSize;
}
```

Qualifiers

Root.

Description

The AntiAging role applies the anti-aging algorithm to a video stream.

Independent Attributes

Table 1039

| Name          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| mode          | The current anti-aging mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| maxHorShift   | The maximum horizontal picture shift, to the left and to the right (in %). The maximum allowed shift (in pixels) of the input (to the right or left) then is: $\frac{\text{maxHorShift} \cdot \text{width of displayed area}}{1000}$ See Figure 113. |
| maxVertShift  | The maximum vertical picture shift, up and down (in %). The maximum allowed shift (in lines) of the input (up or down) then is: $\frac{\text{maxVertShift} \cdot \text{height of displayed area}}{1000}$ See Figure 113.                             |
| horCycleTime  | The horizontal cycle time (in milliseconds).                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| vertCycleTime | The vertical cycle time (in milliseconds).                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| curHorPos     | The current horizontal position of the anti-aging algorithm (in milliseconds).                                                                                                                                                                       |
| curVertPos    | The current vertical position of the anti-aging algorithm (in milliseconds).                                                                                                                                                                         |

| Name         | Description                                                                                    |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| suppModes    | The supported anti-aging modes.                                                                |
| horStepSize  | The horizontal shift resolution at the output (steps of $\frac{1}{\text{horStepSize}}$ pixel). |
| vertStepSize | The vertical shift resolution at the output (steps of $\frac{1}{\text{vertStepSize}}$ line).   |

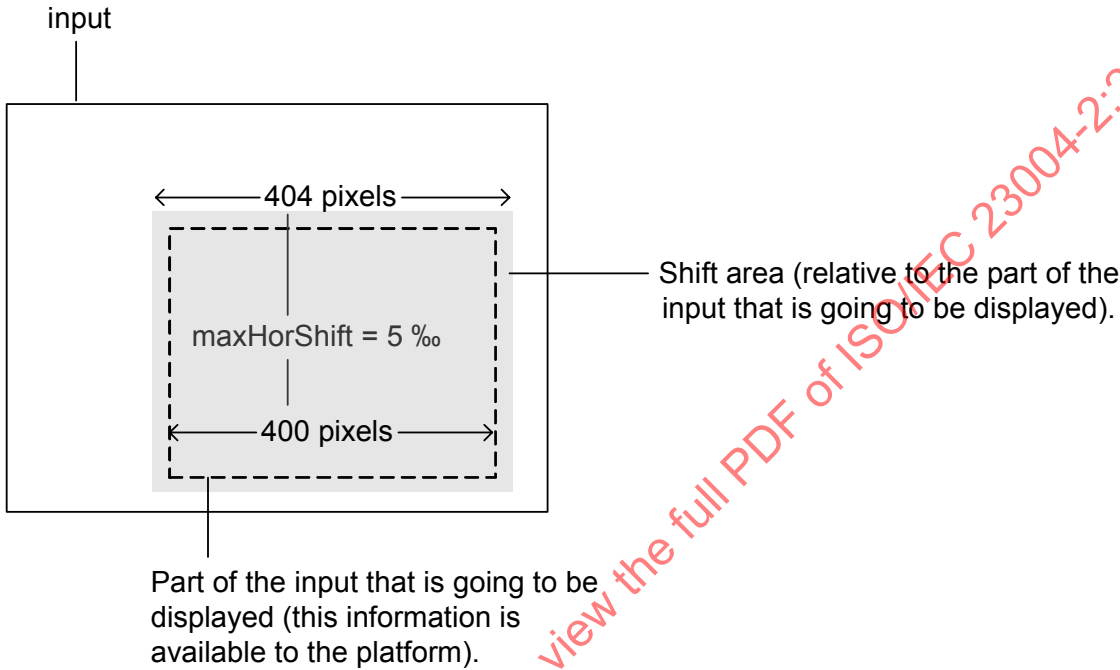


Figure 113 — Specification of the size of the shift area.

Dependent Attributes

None.

Invariants

- mode in suppModes
- 0 <= curHorPos < horCycleTime
- 0 <= curVertPos < vertCycleTime

Instantiation

The AntiAging role is always instantiated as part of an AA.

Streaming Behavior

The AntiAging role applies a horizontal and/or a vertical shift of subpixel resolution to the incoming video and streams the result to the output of the AA. See Figure 114 for an example. Note that the output stream of the AA is conceptual; there does not need to be a software or hardware component that actually outputs such images. The anti-aging algorithm varies the shifts in time. The client has some control over this algorithm via the uhIAntiAging interface.

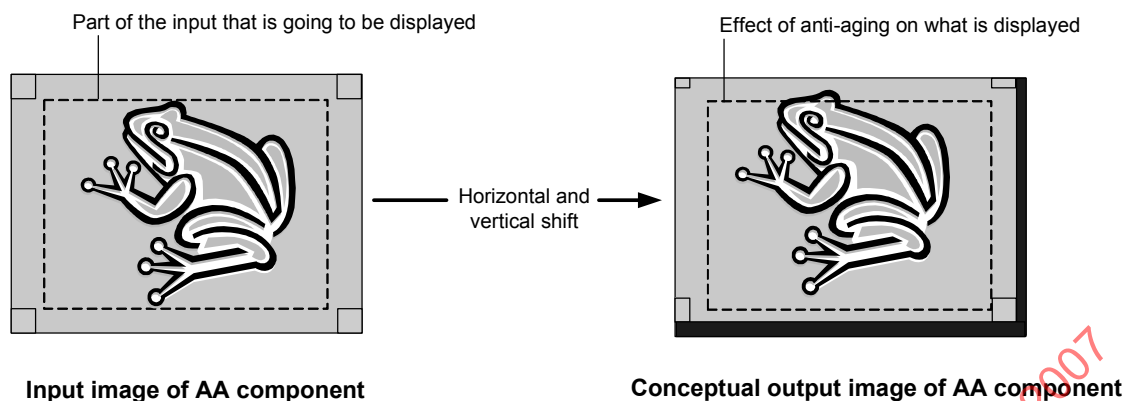


Figure 114 — Processing of a single image by the Anti-Aging component.

### Active Behavior

None.

#### 8.2.4.4.2 AntiAgingClient

### Signature

```
role AntiAgingClient {}
```

### Qualifiers

— actor

### Description

A `AntiAgingClient` represents a user of the `uhIAntiAging` interface. No constraints apply to the behavior of the `AntiAgingClient` other than those implied by Figure 112.

#### 8.2.4.5 Interfaces

##### 8.2.4.5.1 uhIAntiAging

### Qualifiers

None.

### Description

This interface of the `AntiAging` role allows control over the anti-aging algorithm.

### Interface ID

```
uuid( 658A2801-38AF-48e9-8FBD-D42BD76F68D7 )
```

8.2.4.5.1.1      **GetSuppModes**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t GetSuppModes ( [out] puhAntiAging\_Modes\_t      pSuppModes );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the supported anti-aging modes.

**Parameters**

Table 1040

| Name       | Description                                                |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSuppModes | Output parameter returning the supported anti-aging modes. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pSuppModes == aag.suppModes

8.2.4.5.1.2      **GetMode**

**Signature**

uhErrorCode\_t GetMode ( [out] puhAntiAging\_Mode\_t      pMode );

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current anti-aging mode.

Parameters

Table 1041

| Name               | Description                                             |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pMode</code> | Output parameter returning the current anti-aging mode. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
`True`

**Action**  
— `None`.

**Postcondition**  
— `*pMode == aag.mode`

8.2.4.5.1.3      **SetMode**

**Signature**  
`uhErrorCode_t SetMode ( [in] uhAntiAging_Mode_t mode );`

- Qualifiers**
- `synchronous`
  - `single-threaded`

**Description**  
Sets the mode of the anti-aging algorithm. If anti-aging is turned off, shifting stops, but the current horizontal and vertical offsets of the image are maintained (also, if anti-aging in one of the two directions is turned off, the offset in that direction is maintained).

Parameters

Table 1042

| Name              | Description                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <code>mode</code> | The new mode of the anti-aging algorithm. |

**Return Values**  
Standard

**Precondition**  
— `mode in aag.suppModes`

**Action**  
— `Modify aag.mode`

## Postcondition

— aag.mode == mode

### 8.2.4.5.1.4 GetCycleTime

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetCycleTime (
    [out] pUInt32      pHorCycleTime,
    [out] pUInt32      pVertCycleTime );
```

## Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

## Description

Returns the horizontal and vertical cycle times of the anti-aging algorithm.

## Parameters

Table 1043

| Name           | Description                                                                                         |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pHorCycleTime  | Output parameter returning the horizontal cycle time of the anti-aging algorithm (in milliseconds). |
| pVertCycleTime | Output parameter returning the vertical cycle time of the anti-aging algorithm (in milliseconds).   |

## Return Values

Standard.

## Precondition

True

## Action

- None.

## Postcondition

- \*pHorCycleTime == aag.horCycleTime
- \*pVertCycleTime == aag.vertCycleTime

### 8.2.4.5.1.5 GetCurPos

## Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetCurPos (
    [out] pUInt32      pCurHorPos,
    [out] pUInt32      pCurVertPos );
```

## Qualifiers

- synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current position of the anti-aging algorithm. The position contains information on the current horizontal and vertical shift of the picture and horizontal and vertical shift directions of the algorithm. See `SetCurPos` for more detailed information on “positions”. Note that if movement in one or two directions is switched off, the algorithm maintains its current position in the direction(s) in which the movement is switched off..

**Parameters**

Table 1044

| Name                     | Description                                                                                               |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pCurHorPos</code>  | Output parameter returning the current horizontal position of the anti-aging algorithm (in milliseconds). |
| <code>pCurVertPos</code> | Output parameter returning the current vertical position of the anti-aging algorithm (in milliseconds).   |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None.

**Postcondition**

- `*pCurHorPos == aag.curHorPos`
- `*pCurVertPos == aag.curVertPos`

**8.2.4.5.1.6 SetCurPos**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetCurPos (
    [in] UInt32 horPos,
    [in] UInt32 vertPos );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Applies a horizontal and a vertical shift to the input video and sets horizontal and vertical shift directions for the anti-aging algorithm (all independent from the current anti-aging mode). Positioning is done by specifying where the algorithm is in its horizontal and vertical cycles. Figure 115 gives an example of how a vertical position is specified. A horizontal cycle starts with shifting right and a vertical cycle starts with shifting down.

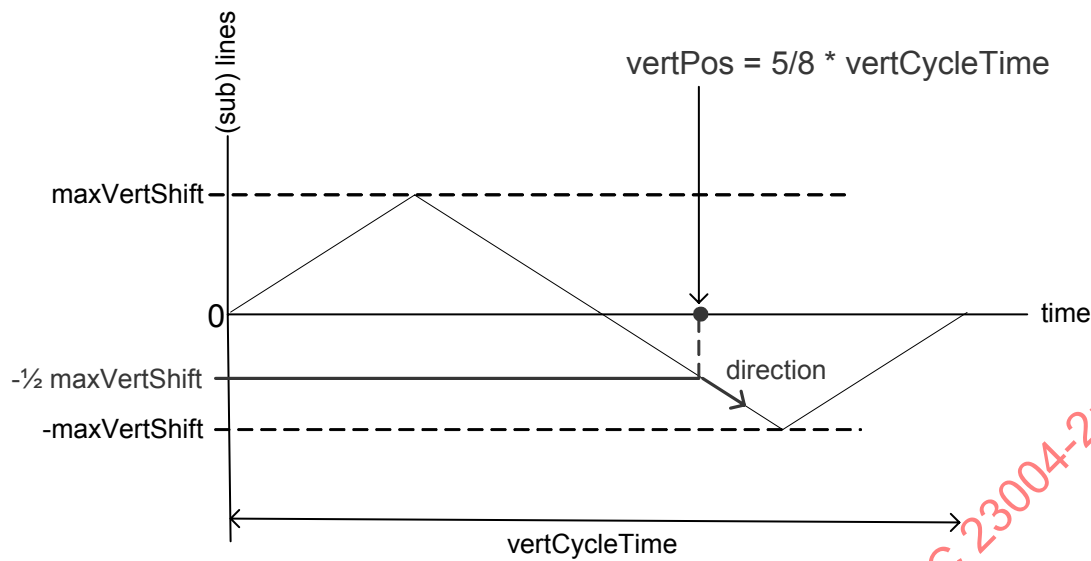


Figure 115 — Example of “positioning” the algorithm (vertically).

Parameters

Table 1045

| Name    | Description                                    |
|---------|------------------------------------------------|
| horPos  | The new horizontal position (in milliseconds). |
| vertPos | The new vertical position (in milliseconds).   |

Return Values  
Standard.

Precondition

- $0 \leq \text{horPos} < \text{aag.horCycleTime}$
- $0 \leq \text{vertPos} < \text{aag.vertCycleTime}$
- $\text{horPos} == 0$  or  $\text{aag.suppModes}$  includes at least one of the following:  $\text{uhAntiAging\_Horizontal}$ ,  $\text{uhAntiAging\_Both}$
- $\text{vertPos} == 0$  or  $\text{aag.suppModes}$  includes at least one of the following:  $\text{uhAntiAging\_Vertical}$ ,  $\text{uhAntiAging\_Both}$

Action

- Modify  $\text{aag.curHorPos}$ ,  $\text{aag.curVertPos}$ .

Postcondition

- $\text{aag.curHorPos} == \text{horPos}$
- $\text{aag.curVertPos} == \text{vertPos}$



## 8.2.5 UhlBbarDet

### 8.2.5.1 Concepts

#### 8.2.5.1.1 Black Bar Detection

Pictures can be transmitted with another aspect ratio than they were recorded with. In such a case, the picture is mapped to, e.g. 4:3 or 16:9 aspect ratio and black bars are added above and below. The size of these black bars depends on the aspect ratio of the recorded picture.

Black bars can be identified by the first real (non-black) video line (*firstLine*) and the last real video line (*lastLine*). The interface described in this document abstracts from the actual black bar detection algorithm, but it does support recursive algorithms, i.e. algorithms that, when determining the position of black bars in a video frame, use information from earlier frames. Figure 116 depicts a simple example, that shows how a recursive algorithm can do a better detection than a non-recursive one. An algorithm that does not use information from previous frames may conclude that the black bars end where the white circles begin (because the background of the circles is very dark).

The interface provides a *Reset* function, that “clears the history” of the algorithm (which does not make sense for a non-recursive algorithm).

The algorithm may process fields and/or frames, but the interface is always frame based: the first and last lines that are returned by the algorithm are relative to a frame.

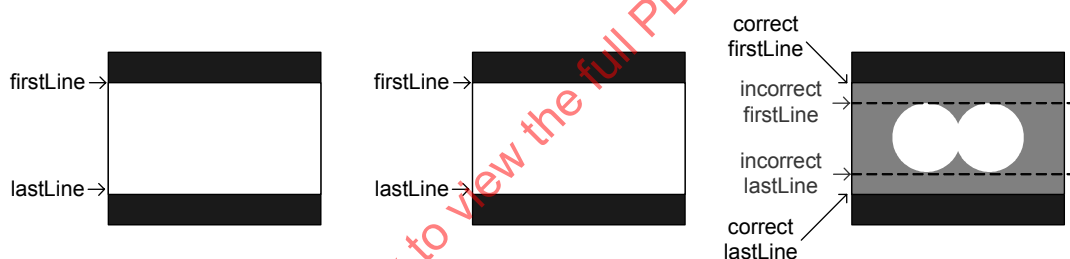


Figure 116 — Preventing a false detection by using information from previous frames.

### 8.2.5.2 Types & Constants

#### 8.2.5.2.1 Public Types & Constants

##### 8.2.5.2.1.1 uhBbarDet\_ValStat\_t

#### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhBbarDet_ValStat_t {
    uhBbarDet_ValStatInvalid = -2,
    uhBbarDet_ValStatUnknown = -1,
    uhBbarDet_ValStatKnown    = 1
} uhBbarDet_ValStat_t, *puhBbarDet_ValStat_t;
```

#### Qualifiers

None.

**Description**

This type represents the validity status of the related property/properties.

**Values****Table 1046**

| Name                     | Description                                                              |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhBbarDet_ValStatInvalid | The property/properties are temporarily not available.                   |
| uhBbarDet_ValStatUnknown | The property/properties are available, yet they could not be determined. |
| uhBbarDet_ValStatKnown   | The property/properties are available and determined.                    |

**8.2.5.2.1.2 uhBbarDet\_Notification\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhBbarDet_Notification_t {
    uhBbarDet_SubscriptionChanged          = 0x00000001,
    uhBbarDet_FirstAndLastVideoLinesChanged = 0x00000002
} uhBbarDet_Notification_t, *puhBbarDet_Notification_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIBbarDetNtf`.

**Values****Table 1047**

| Name                                    | Description                                               |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| uhBbarDet_SubscriptionChanged           | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> .           |
| uhBbarDet_FirstAndLastVideoLinesChanged | Represents <code>OnFirstAndLastVideoLinesChanged</code> . |

**8.2.5.2.1.3 uhBbarDet\_Notifications\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhBbarDet_Notifications_t, *puhBbarDet_Notifications_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhBbarDet_Notification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**8.2.5.2.1.4 uhBbarDet\_AllNotifications****Signature**

```
const uhBbarDet_Notifications_t uhBbarDet_AllNotifications = 0x00000003;
```

**Qualifiers**

— None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhBbarDet_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**8.2.5.2.2 Model Types & Constants**

None.

**8.2.5.3 Logical Component****8.2.5.3.1 Interface-Role Model**

The interface role-model is depicted in Figure 117.

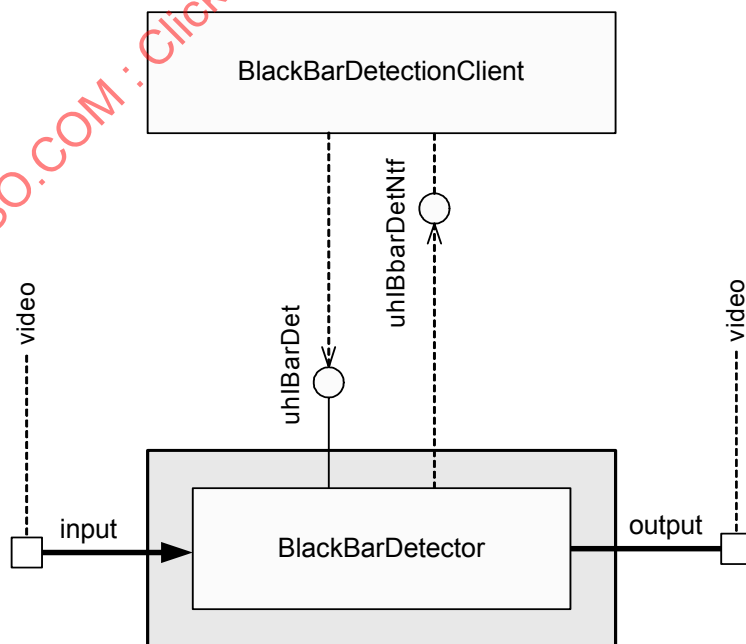


**Figure 117 — Interface-Role Model of the Black Bar Detection logical component**

The BBD (grey box) consists of the `BlackBarDetector` role. This role provides an interface (`uhIBbarDet`) for controlling the black bar detection algorithm. The control interface is meant for use by the client (`BlackBarDetectionClient`). This client can optionally provide a call-back interface (`uhIBbarDetNtf`) allowing it to subscribe to notifications of events in the BBD.

8.2.5.3.2 Diversity

8.2.5.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 1048

| Role                                 | Interface                  | Presence  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------|
| <code>BlackBarDetector</code>        | <code>uhIBbarDet</code>    | mandatory |
| <code>BlackBarDetectionClient</code> | <code>uhIBbarDetNtf</code> | optional  |

8.2.5.3.2.2 Configurable Items

None.

8.2.5.3.2.3 Constraints

None.

8.2.5.3.3 Instantiation

8.2.5.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 1049

| Type                          | Object           | Multiplicity |
|-------------------------------|------------------|--------------|
| <code>BlackBarDetector</code> | <code>bbd</code> | 1            |

8.2.5.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- `bbd.vertRes ==` vertical resolution of input
- `bbd.firstLine == 0`
- `bbd.lastLine == bbd.vertRes-1`
- `bbd.status == uhBbarDet_ValStatInvalid`
- The vertical resolution is frame based, so if, for instance, the input is PAL in the initial state, then `bbd.lastLine == 575`.

8.2.5.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

8.2.5.4 Roles

8.2.5.4.1 BlackBarDetector

Signature

```
role BlackBarDetector {
    UInt32 firstLine;
    UInt32 lastLine;
    UInt32 vertRes;
    uhBbarDet_ValStat_t status;
}
```

Qualifiers

— root

Description

The BlackBarDetector role determines the position of black bars in a video signal.

Independent Attributes

Table 1050

| Name      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| firstLine | The current first (non-black) video line as determined by the algorithm.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| lastLine  | The current last (non-black) video line as determined by the algorithm.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| vertRes   | The vertical resolution, that together with firstLine and lastLine defines the black bars. Note that this only equals the current vertical resolution of the input stream, if the algorithm that is used, immediately concludes that there are new first and last lines when the vertical input resolution changes. |
| status    | Validity state of the black bar properties (first line, last line, vertical resolution).                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

Dependent Attributes

None.

Invariants

— 0 <= firstLine <= lastLine < vertRes.

Instantiation

See subclause 8.2.5.3.3.

Streaming Behavior

The BlackBarDetector has a video signal as an input. It determines the first and last (non-black) video lines of the input video. The BlackBarDetector does not change the input stream.

Active Behavior

The BlackBarDetector has standard notification behavior (see uhIBbarDetNtf).

#### 8.2.5.4.2 BlackBarDetectionClient

##### Signature

```
role BlackBarDetectionClient {}
```

##### Qualifiers

— actor

##### Description

A `BlackBarDetectionClient` represents a user of the `uhIBbarDet` interface.

#### 8.2.5.5 Interfaces

##### 8.2.5.5.1 uhIBbarDet

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This interface provides means to get the position of black bars in the input video and to reset the black bar detection algorithm.

##### Interface ID

`uuid( 486FAF36-49ED-4dfd-AD61-DE747770E195 )`

##### Remarks

In the following function specifications, the name `bbd` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface; see subclause 8.2.5.3.3.1.

##### 8.2.5.5.1.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (  
    [in] uhIBbarDetNtf                *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32                        cookie,  
    [in] uhBbarDet_Notifications_t    notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

##### 8.2.5.5.1.2 Unsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhIBbarDetNtf                *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32                        cookie,  
    [in] uhBbarDet_Notifications_t    notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

8.2.5.5.1.3      GetFirstAndLastVideoLines

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetFirstAndLastVideoLines (  
    [out] puhBbarDet_ValStat_t pStatus,  
    [out] pUInt32                pFirstLine,  
    [out] pUInt32                pLastLine,  
    [out] pUInt32                pVertRes );
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns the first and last (non-black) video lines as determined by the algorithm. It also returns the vertical resolution, which is needed to determine the size of the black bars.

Parameters

Table 1051

| Name       | Description                                                                                |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pStatus    | Output parameter that indicates the validity of the other [out] parameters.                |
| pFirstLine | Output parameter returning the first (non-black) video line (determined by the algorithm). |
| pLastLine  | Output parameter returning the last (non-black) video line (determined by the algorithm).  |
| pVertRes   | Output parameter returning the vertical resolution (frame based).                          |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

True

Action

None.

Postcondition

- \*pStatus == bbd.status
- \*pFirstLine == bbd.firstLine
- \*pLastLine == bbd.lastLine
- \*pVertRes == bbd.vertRes

#### 8.2.5.5.1.4 Reset

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Reset ( );
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

##### Description

Resets the black bar detection algorithm.

##### Parameters

None.

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

True

##### Action

- Modify `bbd.vertRes`
- Modify `bbd.firstLine`
- Modify `bbd.lastLine`

##### Postcondition

- `bbd.vertRes ==` vertical resolution of the input
- `bbd.firstLine == 0`
- `bbd.lastLine == bbd.vertRes-1`

#### 8.2.5.5.2 uhlBbarDetNtf

##### Qualifiers

- callback

##### Description

This is the notification interface to be provided by clients of the BBD that wish to subscribe to notifications of events of the BBD.

##### Interface ID

```
uuid( 65199AF1-1787-4c84-8D86-5C3EEB1A1071 )
```



8.2.5.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhBbarDet_Notifications_t notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

8.2.5.5.2.2 OnFirstAndLastVideoLinesChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnFirstAndLastVideoLinesChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhBbarDet_ValStat_t status,
    [in] UInt32 firstLine,
    [in] UInt32 lastLine,
    [in] UInt32 vertRes );
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called by the BlackBarDetector whenever the algorithm signals a change of either the first or the last (non-black) video line (or both). Note that a particular algorithm may report new first and last lines some time after these have actually become effective. It is up to the algorithm to decide when it has done a stable detection.

Parameters

Table 1052

| Name      | Description                                                                                                      |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie    | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                                                    |
| status    | Parameter that indicates the validity of the other [in] parameters (first line, last line, vertical resolution). |
| firstLine | The first (non-black) video line.                                                                                |
| lastLine  | The last (non-black) video line.                                                                                 |
| vertRes   | The vertical resolution (frame based).                                                                           |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

## Postcondition

True

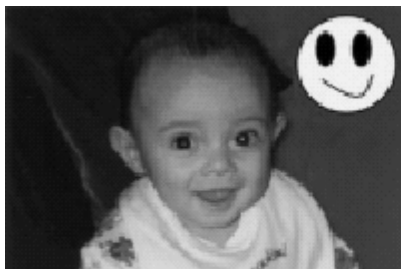
### 8.2.6 UHIColEnh

#### 8.2.6.1 Concepts

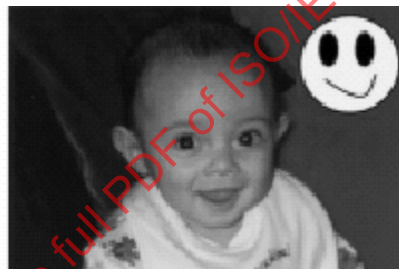
##### 8.2.6.1.1 Introduction

Video Color Enhancement deals with enabling and disabling the color features Skin Tone Correction, Blue Stretch, and Green Enhancement.

Skin Tone Correction comes from the NTSC world, where the "hue" adjustment of the color decoder is critical. They eye is very sensitive to aberrations of skin tones. Colors that are possible skin tones are pulled towards a standard skin tone.



**Before SkinTone  
Correction**



**After SkinTone  
Correction**

Blue stretch comes from the Asian Pacific world, where very high color temperatures are typically appreciated. If we would just increase the gain of blue then everything would become bluish, including skin tones. Instead, only tints that are almost white will be made a very bright white. This will suggest a brighter picture, like it is the middle of a summer's day.

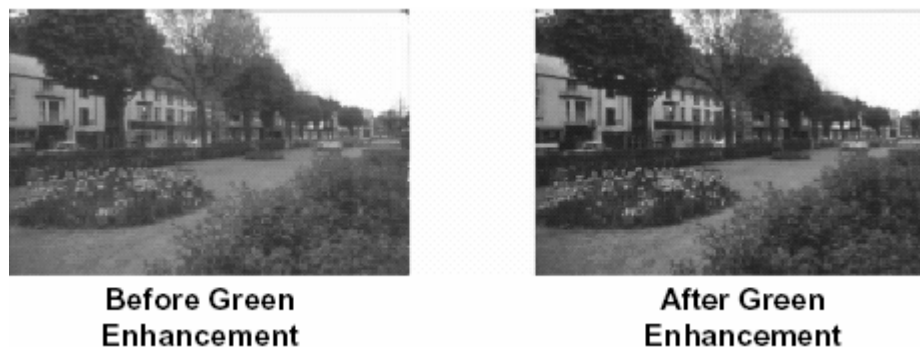


**Before Blue Stretch**



**After Blue Stretch**

Green enhancement increases the saturation of green tints. Grass and leaves will look like it is always springtime.



### 8.2.6.2 Types & Constants

No additional types and constants are required for this logical component. For the basic types used, see Annex B of ISO/IEC 23004-1.

### 8.2.6.3 Logical Component

#### 8.2.6.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 118 depicts the interface-role model of the VCE (the grey box in Figure 118). It shows the control interface and the roles involved with the VCE.

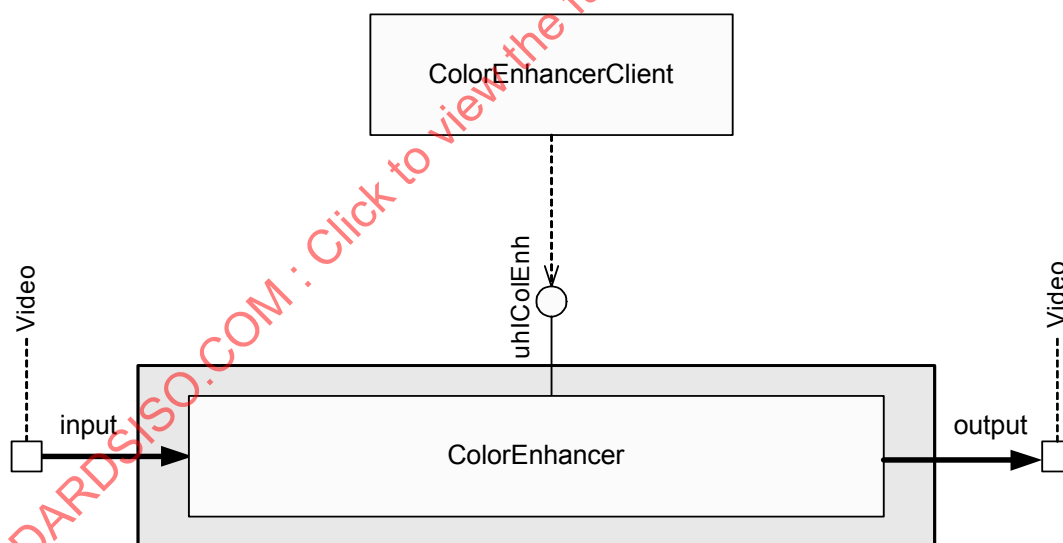


**Figure 118 — Interface-Role Model**

A VCE contains the role `ColorEnhancer` and provides the control interface `uhIColEnh`. A client (represented by the `ColorEnhancerClient` role) can use this control interface.

8.2.6.3.2 Diversity

8.2.6.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 1053

| Role          | Interface | Presence  |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| ColorEnhancer | uhIColEnh | mandatory |

8.2.6.3.2.2 Configurable Items

None.

8.2.6.3.2.3 Constraints

— None

8.2.6.3.3 Instantiation

8.2.6.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following object is created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 1054

| Type          | Object | Multiplicity |
|---------------|--------|--------------|
| ColorEnhancer | cenh   | 1            |

8.2.6.3.3.2 Initial State

- `cenh.skinToneCorrectionEnabled == False`
- `cenh.blueStretchEnabled == False`
- `cenh.greenEnhancementEnabled == False`

8.2.6.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

## 8.2.6.4 Roles

### 8.2.6.4.1 ColorEnhancer

#### Signature

```
role ColorEnhancer {
    Bool skinToneCorrectionEnabled;
    Bool blueStretchEnabled;
    Bool greenEnhancementEnabled;
}
```

#### Qualifiers

Root.

#### Description

A `ColorEnhancer` enhances the colors of the incoming video signal. Supported operations are enabling or disabling the color features Skin Tone Correction, Blue Stretch, and Green Enhancement.

#### Independent Attributes

Table 1055

| Name                                   | Description                                                     |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>skinToneCorrectionEnabled</code> | Indicates if the color feature Skin Tone Correction is enabled. |
| <code>blueStretchEnabled</code>        | Indicates if the color feature Blue Stretch is enabled.         |
| <code>greenEnhancementEnabled</code>   | Indicates if the color feature Green Enhancement is enabled.    |

#### Dependent Attributes

None.

#### Invariants

None.

#### Instantiation

The `ColorEnhancer` role is always instantiated as part of a VCE.

#### Streaming Behavior

The `ColorEnhancer` observes the incoming video signal, enhances this based on the control input of the client, and streams the enhanced video signal to the output of the VCE.

#### Active Behavior

None.

8.2.6.4.2 ColorEnhancerClient

Signature

role ColorEnhancerClient {}

Qualifiers

— actor

Description

A ColorEnhancerClient represents a user of the uhIColEnh interface. No constraints apply to the behavior of the ColorEnhancerClient other than those implied by Figure 1 — Simplified example graph..

8.2.6.5 Interfaces

8.2.6.5.1 uhIColEnh

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This interface of the ColorEnhancer role allows a ColorEnhancerClient to enable or disable the color features.

Interface ID

uuid( 2800F840-AE38-4d6c-877A-B8BF5867F68B )

8.2.6.5.1.1 GetSkinToneCorrectionEnabled

Signature

uhErrorCode\_t GetSkinToneCorrectionEnabled ( [out] pBool pEnabled );

Qualifiers

— synchronous

— thread-safe

Description

Indicates if Skin Tone Correction is enabled (True) or disabled (False).

Parameters

Table 1056

| Name     | Description                                                                               |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pEnabled | Output parameter returning if Skin Tone Correction is enabled (True) or disabled (False). |

Return Values

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None.

**Postcondition**— `*pEnabled == cenh.skinToneCorrectionEnabled`**8.2.6.5.1.2 EnableSkinToneCorrection****Signature**`uhErrorCode_t EnableSkinToneCorrection ( [in] Bool enable );`**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— single-threaded

**Description**

Enables (True) or disables (False) Skin Tone Correction.

**Parameters****Table 1057**

| Name                | Description                                                                                  |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>enable</code> | Input parameter indicating whether to enable (True) or disable (False) Skin Tone Correction. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**— Modify `cenh.skinToneCorrectionEnabled`.**Postcondition**— `cenh.skinToneCorrectionEnabled == enable`**8.2.6.5.1.3 GetBlueStretchEnabled****Signature**`uhErrorCode_t GetBlueStretchEnabled ( [out] pBool pEnabled );`**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**  
Indicates if Blue Stretch is enabled (True) or disabled (False).

**Parameters**

Table 1058

| Name     | Description                                                                       |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pEnabled | Output parameter returning if Blue Stretch is enabled (True) or disabled (False). |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
— None.

**Postcondition**  
— \*pEnabled == cenh.blueStretchEnabled

8.2.6.5.1.4 EnableBlueStretch

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t EnableBlueStretch ( [in] Bool enable );

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
  
— single-threaded

**Description**  
Enables (True) or disables (False) Blue Stretch.

**Parameters**

Table 1059

| Name   | Description                                                                          |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| enable | Input parameter indicating whether to enable (True) or disable (False) Blue Stretch. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True



Action

— Modify `cenh.blueStretchEnabled`.

Postcondition

— `cenh.blueStretchEnabled == enable`

8.2.6.5.1.5      **GetGreenEnhancementEnabled**

Signature

`uhErrorCode_t GetGreenEnhancementEnabled ( [out] pBool pEnabled );`

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Indicates if Green Enhancement is enabled (`True`) or disabled (`False`).

Parameters

Table 1060

| Name                  | Description                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pEnabled</code> | Output parameter returning if Green Enhancement is enabled ( <code>True</code> ) or disabled ( <code>False</code> ). |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

`True`

Action

— None.

Postcondition

— `*pEnabled == cenh.greenEnhancementEnabled`

8.2.6.5.1.6      **EnableGreenEnhancement**

Signature

`uhErrorCode_t EnableGreenEnhancement ( [in] Bool enable );`

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

Description

Enables (True) or disables (False) Green Enhancement.

Parameters

Table 1061

| Name   | Description                                                                               |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| enable | Input parameter indicating whether to enable (True) or disable (False) Green Enhancement. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

True

Action

— Modify `cenh.greenEnhancementEnabled`.

Postcondition

— `cenh.greenEnhancementEnabled == enable`

8.2.7 UhICti

8.2.7.1 Concepts

8.2.7.1.1 Introduction

The UV bandwidth of an analog video signal sampled at 4:2:2 is considerably smaller than that of a video signal from a digital source. After up-sampling to 4:4:4, the UV spectrum of the former is 90% empty. To increase the perceived color sharpness and reduce the quality difference between analog and digital signals, one can perform color transient improvement (CTI), which steepens the transients present in the UV signal, thereby increasing the bandwidth. See Figure 36 for the effect of CTI.

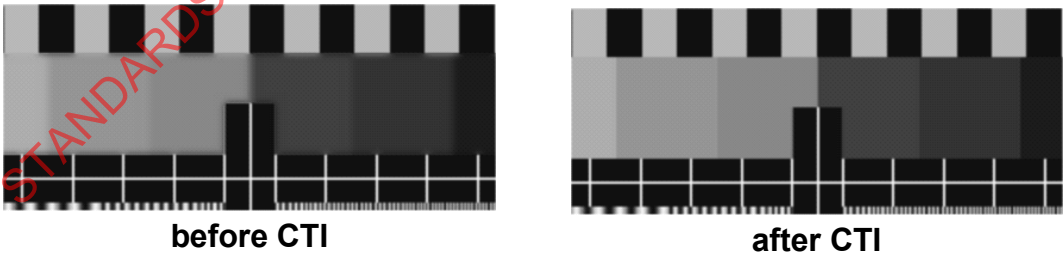


Figure 119 — The effect of CTI on a video signal.

The client can enable, disable, and set different levels of CTI. A higher level of CTI results in sharper color transitions. Note that for a real digital signal (from a digital source), CTI should be disabled or a lower level of CTI should be selected.

## 8.2.7.2 Types & Constants

### 8.2.7.2.1 Public Types & Constants

#### 8.2.7.2.1.1 uhCti\_Notification\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhCti_Notification_t {
    uhCti_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhCti_LevelChanged        = 0x00000002
} uhCti_Notification_t, *puhCti_Notification_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

##### Description

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhICtiNtf`.

##### Values

**Table 1062**

##### Name

`uhCti_SubscriptionChanged`  
`uhCti_LevelChanged`

##### Description

Represents `OnSubscriptionChanged`.  
 Represents `OnCtiLevelChanged`.

#### 8.2.7.2.1.2 uhCti\_Notifications\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhCti_Notifications_t, *puhCti_Notifications_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type

`uhCti_Notifications_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

#### 8.2.7.2.1.3 uhCti\_AllNotifications

##### Signature

```
const uhCti_Notifications_t uhCti_AllNotifications = 0x00000003;
```

##### Qualifiers

— None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhCti_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**8.2.7.2.2 Model Types & Constants**

None.

**8.2.7.3 Logical Component**

**8.2.7.3.1 Interface-Role Model**

The interface role-model is depicted in Figure 37

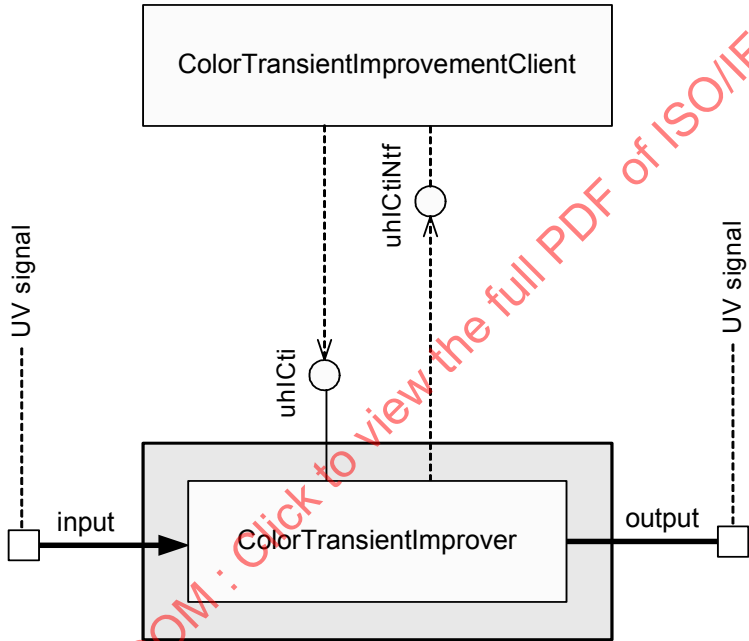


**Figure 120 — Interface-Role Model of the Color Transient Improvement logical component**

The Color Transient Improvement logical component (grey box) consists of the `ColorTransientImprover` role. This role provides an interface (`uhICti`) for controlling CTI. The control interface is meant for use by the client (`AudioAutomaticVolumeLevelingClient`). This client can optionally provide a call-back interface (`uhICtiNtf`) allowing it to subscribe to notifications of events in the Color Transient Improvement logical component.

**8.2.7.3.2 Diversity**

**8.2.7.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces**

**Table 1063**

| Role                                         | Interface              | Presence  |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------|-----------|
| <code>ColorTransientImprover</code>          | <code>uhICti</code>    | mandatory |
| <code>ColorTransientImprovementClient</code> | <code>uhICtiNtf</code> | optional  |

### 8.2.7.3.2.2 Configurable Items

**Table 1064**

| Role                   | Attribute |
|------------------------|-----------|
| ColorTransientImprover | minLevel  |
| ColorTransientImprover | maxLevel  |

### 8.2.7.3.2.3 Constraints

`maxLevel >= minLevel`

### 8.2.7.3.3 Instantiation

#### 8.2.7.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

**Table 1065**

| Type                   | Object | Multiplicity |
|------------------------|--------|--------------|
| ColorTransientImprover | cti    | 1            |

#### 8.2.7.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- `cti.enabled == False`
- `cti.level == cti.minLevel`

#### 8.2.7.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

8.2.7.4 Roles

8.2.7.4.1 ColorTransientImprover

Signature

```
role ColorTransientImprover {
    Bool          enabled;
    const UInt32   minLevel;
    const UInt32   maxLevel;
    UInt32         level;
}
```

Qualifiers

— root

Description

The ColorTransientImprover role controls the CTI level for enhancing the steepness of transients in the UV component of a video stream. The level of CTI can be set and the Color Transient Improver can be enabled or disabled.

Independent Attributes

Table 1066

| Name     | Description                              |
|----------|------------------------------------------|
| enabled  | Indicates whether CTI is enabled or not. |
| minLevel | Minimum value for the CTI level.         |
| maxLevel | Maximum value for the CTI level.         |
| level    | Current value of the CTI level.          |

Dependent Attributes

None.

Invariants

— minLevel <= level <= maxLevel

Instantiation

See subclause 7.2.1.3.3.

Streaming Behavior

The ColorTransientImprover has a UV signal as an input. When the ColorTransientImprover is enabled, it will perform CTI on the input stream. This processed stream is passed to the output. When the ColorTransientImprover is disabled, the stream at the input is passed to the output without any processing.

Active Behavior

The ColorTransientImprover has standard notification behavior (see uhICtiNtf).

#### 8.2.7.4.2 ColorTransientImprovementClient

##### Signature

```
role ColorTransientImprovementClient {}
```

##### Qualifiers

— actor

##### Description

A `AudioAutomaticVolumeLevelingClient` represents a user of the `uhICti` interface.

#### 8.2.7.5 Interfaces

##### 8.2.7.5.1 uhICti

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This interface controls the level of CTI that is applied to the video signal.

##### Interface ID

```
uuid( A91557A5-8DFF-41ce-873F-BD9401AB94C8 )
```

##### Remarks

In the following function specifications, the name `cti` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface; see subclause 8.2.7.3.3.1.

##### 8.2.7.5.1.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhICtiIntf          *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32              cookie,
    [in] uhCti_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

8.2.7.5.1.2      **Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhICtiNtf          *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32             cookie,  
    [in] uhCti_Notifications_t  notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

- unsubscribe-function

8.2.7.5.1.3      **GetEnabled**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetEnabled (  
    [out] pBool             pEnabled);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns whether CTI is enabled or not.

**Parameters**

**Table 1067**

| Name     | Description                                                                   |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pEnabled | Output parameter returning whether CTI is enabled (True) or disabled (False). |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pEnabled == cti.enabled



8.2.7.5.1.4      **Enable**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Enable (  
    [in] Bool          enable );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Enables or disables CTI.

**Parameters**

**Table 1068**

| Name   | Description                                      |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------|
| enable | Boolean to enable (True) or disable (False) CTI. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- Modify `cti.enabled`

**Postcondition**

- `cti.enabled == enable`

8.2.7.5.1.5      **GetLevel**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetLevel (  
    [out] pUInt32          pLevel );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current CTI level.

**Parameters****Table 1069**

| Name                | Description                                       |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pLevel</code> | Output parameter returning the current CTI level. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
— `*pLevel == cti.level`

**8.2.7.5.1.6 SetLevel****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetLevel (
    [in] UInt32          level);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**  
Sets the CTI level.

**Parameters****Table 1070**

| Name               | Description              |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>level</code> | The CTI level to be set. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
— `cti.minLevel <= level <= cti.maxLevel`

**Action**  
— Modify `cti.level`

**Postcondition**

— `cti.level == level`

**8.2.7.5.1.7      GetLevelRange****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetLevelRange (
    [out] pUInt32      pMinLevel,
    [out] pUInt32      pMaxLevel);
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the minimum and the maximum value for the CTI level.

**Parameters****Table 1071****Name****Description**

`pMinLevel`

Output parameter returning the minimum value for the CTI level.

`pMaxLevel`

Output parameter returning the maximum value for the CTI level.

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— `*pMinLevel == cti.minLevel`

— `*pMaxLevel == cti.maxLevel`

**8.2.7.5.2      uhICtiNtf****Qualifiers**

— callback

**Description**

This is the notification interface to be provided by clients of the Color Transient Improvement logical component that wish to subscribe to notifications of events of the Color Transient Improvement logical component.

Interface ID

uuid( 0A2B13BA-033E-4b7e-9934-9D51A387CEB0 )

8.2.7.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32      cookie,
    [in] uhCti_Notifications_t  notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

8.2.7.5.2.2 OnCtiLevelChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnCtiLevelChanged (
    [in] UInt32      cookie,
    [in] UInt32      level);
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called by the ColorTransientImprover whenever it detects a change of the CTI level.

Table 1072

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| level  | The new CTI level.                                            |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

## 8.2.8 UhlDnr

### 8.2.8.1 Concepts

#### 8.2.8.1.1 Dynamic Noise Reduction

This document defines the logical component Dynamic Noise Reducer. The Dynamic Noise Reducer logical component gives control over Dynamic Noise Reduction (DNR) functionality of the used platform. The following paragraph gives a short explanation of DNR.

Video pictures are often quite static. There is a lot of correlation between successive pictures. Additive noise is usually random ("Gaussian" noise), moving and not static. This makes the noise quite obvious to the eye. By averaging a series of pictures, the original picture content remains the same because of the correlation between the pictures. The random noise content is uncorrelated and will be reduced according to the number of pictures averaged. Temporal noise reduction will clean up the picture without affecting its resolution as long as the picture is static.

The principle of DNR is based on:

- strong temporal correlation in the picture,
- weak or no temporal correlation in the noise.

DNR increases the temporal correlation in the picture by temporal low-pass filtering. On a moving picture this will cause smearing. The effect is very similar to that of a long-persistence phosphor in certain picture tubes. This is of course not desired. So, in the presence of motion the noise reduction must be switched off. Two kinds of temporal variation must be distinguished: noise and motion. The threshold for this distinction may be set according to the current noise level. This is then called "Adaptive" Dynamic Noise Reduction.

There is another way to reduce the amount of noise: averaging the signal value of a pixel with that of neighboring pixels of which one has the confidence that they have approximately the same value. Small differences are interpreted as noise and may be filtered. Large differences are assumed to be intended and must not be filtered.

Above, two different types of noise filtering are described: temporal and spatial.

Temporal noise filtering uses temporal neighbors: the values of the same pixel in the past (or future). Motion will destroy the confidence in the historic value. Continued temporal filtering in the presence of motion causes motion smear.

Spatial noise filtering uses spatial neighbors: the value of pixels in the immediate vicinity. Strong details will destroy the confidence in neighbor values. Continued spatial filtering in the presence of detail causes loss of sharpness, plastic faces etc. There is of course a link with detail enhancement sharpness.

## 8.2.8.2 Types & Constants

### 8.2.8.2.1 Public Types & Constants

#### 8.2.8.2.1.1 uhDnr\_Notification\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhDnr_Notification_t {
    uhDnr_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhDnr_LevelChanged        = 0x00000002
} uhDnr_Notification_t, *puhDnr_Notification_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-element

##### Description

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIDnrNtf`.

##### Values

Table 1073

| Name                                   | Description                                     |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhDnr_SubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> . |
| <code>uhDnr_LevelChanged</code>        | Represents <code>onDnrLevelChanged</code> .     |

#### 8.2.8.2.1.2 uhDnr\_Notifications\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhDnr_Notifications_t, *puhDnr_Notifications_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

— enum-set

##### Description

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhDnr_Notification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

#### 8.2.8.2.1.3 uhDnr\_AllNotifications

##### Signature

```
const uhDnr_Notifications_t uhDnr_AllNotifications = 0x00000003;
```

##### Qualifiers

— None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhDnr_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**8.2.8.2.2 Model Types & Constants**

None.

**8.2.8.3 Logical Component**

**8.2.8.3.1 Interface-Role Model**

The interface role-model is depicted in Figure 121

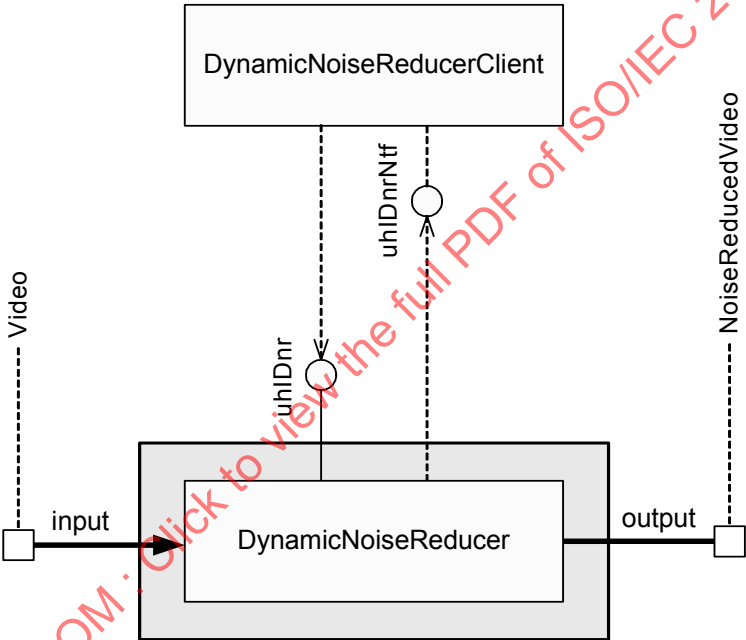


**Figure 121 — Interface-Role Model of the DynamicNoiseReducer**

The Dynamic Noise Reducer logical component (grey box) consists of the `DynamicNoiseReducer` role. This role provides an interface (`uhIDnr`) for controlling the dynamic noise reduction. The control interface is meant for use by the client (`DynamicNoiseReducerClient`). This client can optionally provide a call-back interface (`uhIDnrNtf`) allowing it to subscribe to notifications of events in the Dynamic Noise Reducer.

**8.2.8.3.2 Diversity**

**8.2.8.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces**

**Table 1074**

| Role                                   | Interface              | Presence  |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------|-----------|
| <code>DynamicNoiseReducer</code>       | <code>uhIDnr</code>    | mandatory |
| <code>DynamicNoiseReducerClient</code> | <code>uhIDnrNtf</code> | optional  |

8.2.8.3.2.2      Configurable Items

Table 1075

| Role                | Attribute   |
|---------------------|-------------|
| DynamicNoiseReducer | minDnrLevel |
| DynamicNoiseReducer | maxDnrLevel |

8.2.8.3.2.3      Constraints

maxDnrLevel >= minDnrLevel

8.2.8.3.3      Instantiation

8.2.8.3.3.1      Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 1076

| Type                | Object | Multiplicity |
|---------------------|--------|--------------|
| DynamicNoiseReducer | dnr    | 1            |

8.2.8.3.3.2      Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- dnr.dnrEnabled == False
- dnr.dnrLevel == dnr.minDnrLevel

8.2.8.3.4      Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".



8.2.8.4 Roles

8.2.8.4.1 DynamicNoiseReducer

Signature

```
role DynamicNoiseReducer {
    Bool dnrEnabled;
    const UInt32 minDnrLevel;
    const UInt32 maxDnrLevel;
    UInt32 dnrLevel;
}
```

Qualifiers

— root

Description

The `DynamicNoiseReducer` role controls the DNR level for reducing the amount of noise in a video stream. The level of DNR can be set and the Dynamic Noise Reducer can be enabled or disabled.

Independent Attributes

Table 1077

| Name                     | Description                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <code>dnrEnabled</code>  | Indicates whether DNR is enabled or not. |
| <code>minDnrLevel</code> | Minimum value for the DNR level.         |
| <code>maxDnrLevel</code> | Maximum value for the DNR level.         |
| <code>dnrLevel</code>    | Current value of the DNR level.          |

Dependent Attributes

None.

Invariants

— `minDnrLevel` <= `dnrLevel` <= `maxDnrLevel`

Instantiation

See subclause 8.2.8.3.3.

Streaming Behavior

The `DynamicNoiseReducer` has a video stream as an input. When the `DynamicNoiseReducer` is enabled, it will try to reduce the amount of noise in the stream. This processed stream is passed to the output. When the `DynamicNoiseReducer` is disabled, the stream at the input is passed to the output without any processing.

Active Behavior

The `DynamicNoiseReducer` has standard notification behavior (see `uhIDnrNtf`).

#### 8.2.8.4.2 DynamicNoiseReducerClient

##### Signature

**role** DynamicNoiseReducerClient {}

##### Qualifiers

— actor

##### Description

A DynamicNoiseReducerClient represents a user of the uhIDnr interface.

#### 8.2.8.5 Interfaces

##### 8.2.8.5.1 uhIDnr

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This interface controls the level of DNR (Dynamic Noise Reduction) that is applied to the video signal.

##### Interface ID

uuid( 5D59534C-990E-470b-9487-A8C44F3B9B7E )

##### Remarks

— In the following function specifications, the name dnr will be used to refer to the provider of this interface; see subclause 8.2.8.3.3.1.

##### 8.2.8.5.1.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhIDnrNtf          *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32             cookie,
    [in] uhDnr_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

8.2.8.5.1.2      **Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhIDnrNtf          *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32             cookie,  
    [in] uhDnr_Notifications_t  notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

- unsubscribe-function

8.2.8.5.1.3      **GetEnabled**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetEnabled (  
    [out] pBool pDnrEnabled);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns whether DNR is enabled or not.

**Parameters**

**Table 1078**

| Name        | Description                                                                   |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pDnrEnabled | Output parameter returning whether DNR is enabled (True) or disabled (False). |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- *\*pDnrEnabled* == dnr.dnrEnabled

#### 8.2.8.5.1.4 Enable

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Enable (
    [in] Bool dnrEnabled );
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- single-threaded

##### Description

Enables or disables DNR.

##### Parameters

Table 1079

##### Name

dnrEnabled

##### Description

Boolean to enable (True) or disable (False) the dynamic noise reduction.

##### Return Values

Standard.

##### Precondition

True

##### Action

- Modify dnr.dnrEnabled

##### Postcondition

- dnr.dnrEnabled == dnrEnabled

#### 8.2.8.5.1.5 GetLevel

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetLevel (
    [out] pUInt32 pDnrLevel );
```

##### Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

##### Description

Returns the current DNR level.

Parameters

Table 1080

| Name      | Description                                       |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------|
| pDnrLevel | Output parameter returning the current DNR level. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
True

**Action**  
None.

**Postcondition**  
— \*pDnrLevel == dnr.dnrLevel

8.2.8.5.1.6      **SetLevel**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t SetLevel (  
    [in] UInt32 dnrLevel);

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous  
  
— single-threaded

**Description**  
Sets the DNR level.

Parameters

Table 1081

| Name     | Description              |
|----------|--------------------------|
| dnrLevel | The DNR level to be set. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
— dnr.minDnrLevel <= dnrLevel <= dnr.maxDnrLevel

**Action**  
— Modify dnr.dnrLevel

Postcondition

dnr.dnrLevel == dnrLevel

8.2.8.5.1.7      GetLevelRange

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetLevelRange (  
    [out] pUInt32 pMinDnrLevel,  
    [out] pUInt32 pMaxDnrLevel);
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns the minimum and the maximum value for the DNR level.

Parameters

Table 1082

| Name         | Description                                                     |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMinDnrLevel | Output parameter returning the minimum value for the DNR level. |
| pMaxDnrLevel | Output parameter returning the maximum value for the DNR level. |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

True

Action

None.

Postcondition

- \*pMinDnrLevel == dnr.minDnrLevel
- \*pMaxDnrLevel == dnr.maxDnrLevel

8.2.8.5.2      uhIDnrNtf

Qualifiers

- callback

Description

This is the notification interface to be provided by dynamic noise reducer clients that wish to subscribe to notifications of dynamic noise reducer events.

Interface ID

uuid( 6ED768AB-54D8-44bc-993A-638F60FCD555 )

8.2.8.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhDnr_Notifications_t notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

8.2.8.5.2.2 OnDnrLevelChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnDnrLevelChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] UInt32 dnrLevel);
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is called by the `DynamicNoiseReducer` whenever it detects a change of the DNR level.

Table 1083

| Name     | Description                                                   |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie   | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| dnrLevel | The new DNR level.                                            |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— Any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

## 8.2.9 UhlHistoMod

### 8.2.9.1 Concepts

#### 8.2.9.1.1 Introduction

Histogram Modification (HM) can be used to improve the local contrast in a picture of which the distribution of grey levels is sub-optimal. First, the histogram of the picture is measured: the luminance range is divided in equal intervals, and for each interval the pixels with a luminance value falling in that interval are counted. From such a histogram, a transfer curve can be calculated that adjusts the luminance<sup>24</sup> of the pixels in such a way that the histogram of the adjusted picture is somewhat flatter than the original histogram (see Figure 122 for an example with 5 intervals), which is perceived as a better quality picture.

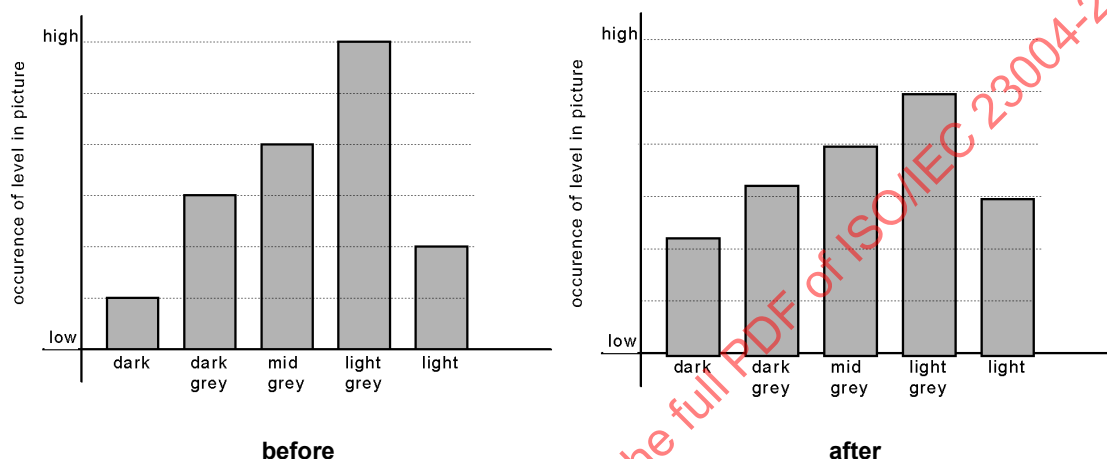


**Figure 122 — Example of the luminance histogram of a TV picture (before and after histogram modification).**

The client can enable, disable, and set different levels of HM. A higher level of HM results in more contrast.

### 8.2.9.2 Types & Constants

#### 8.2.9.2.1 Public Types & Constants

##### 8.2.9.2.1.1 uhHistoMod\_Notification\_t

#### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhHistoMod_Notification_t {
    uhHistoMod_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhHistoMod_LevelChanged        = 0x00000002
} uhHistoMod_Notification_t, *puhHistoMod_Notification_t;
```

#### Qualifiers

— enum-element

<sup>24</sup>The chrominance (UV) component of the video signal is also adjusted by HM.



**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIHistoModNtf`.

**Values**

**Table 1084**

| Name                                        | Description                                      |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhHistoMod_SubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> .  |
| <code>uhHistoMod_LevelChanged</code>        | Represents <code>OnHistoModLevelChanged</code> . |

**8.2.9.2.1.2      `uhHistoMod_Notifications_t`**

**Signature**

**typedef** `Int32 uhHistoMod_Notifications_t, *puhHistoMod_Notifications_t;`

**Qualifiers**

— `enum-set`

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhHistoMod_Notification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

**8.2.9.2.1.3      `uhHistoMod_AllNotifications`**

**Signature**

**const** `uhHistoMod_Notifications_t uhHistoMod_AllNotifications = 0x00000003;`

**Qualifiers**

— `None`.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhHistoMod_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**8.2.9.2.2      `Model Types & Constants`**

`None`.

**8.2.9.3      `Logical Component`**

**8.2.9.3.1      `Interface-Role Model`**

The interface role-model is depicted in Figure 123

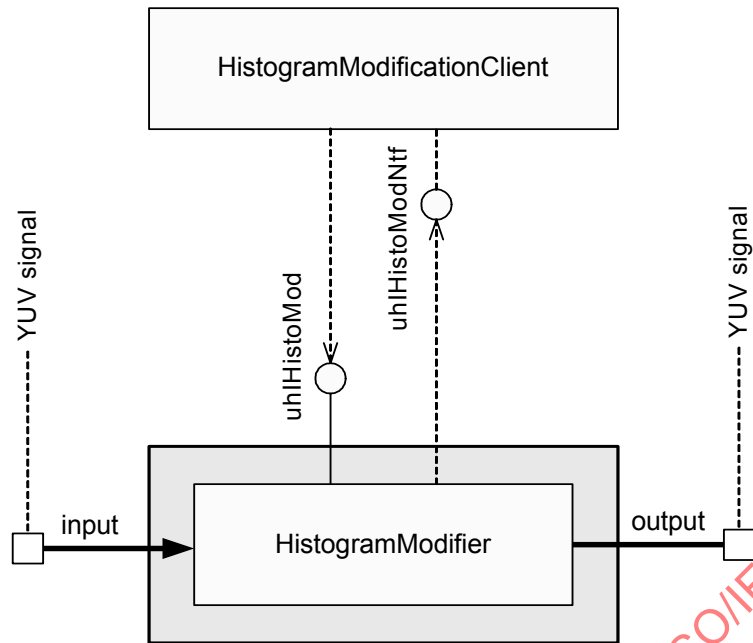


Figure 123 — Interface-Role Model of the Histogram Modification logical component

The Histogram Modification logical component (grey box) consists of the `HistogramModifier` role. This role provides an interface (`uhIHistoMod`) for controlling HM. The control interface is meant for use by the client (`HistogramModificationClient`). This client can optionally provide a call-back interface (`uhIHistoModNtf`) allowing it to subscribe to notifications of events in the Histogram Modification logical component.

8.2.9.3.2 Diversity

8.2.9.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 1085

| Role                                     | Interface                   | Presence  |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------|
| <code>HistogramModifier</code>           | <code>uhIHistoMod</code>    | mandatory |
| <code>HistogramModificationClient</code> | <code>uhIHistoModNtf</code> | optional  |

8.2.9.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 1086

| Role                           | Attribute             |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <code>HistogramModifier</code> | <code>minLevel</code> |
| <code>HistogramModifier</code> | <code>maxLevel</code> |

8.2.9.3.2.3 Constraints

— `maxLevel` >= `minLevel`

8.2.9.3.3 Instantiation

8.2.9.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 1087

| Type              | Object | Multiplicity |
|-------------------|--------|--------------|
| HistogramModifier | hm     | 1            |

8.2.9.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

```
hm.enabled == False
hm.level == hm.minLevel
```

8.2.9.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

8.2.9.4 Roles

8.2.9.4.1 HistogramModifier

Signature

```
role HistogramModifier {
    Bool enabled;
    const UInt32 minLevel;
    const UInt32 maxLevel;
    UInt32 level;
}
```

Qualifiers

— root

Description

The HistogramModifier role controls the HM level for enhancing the contrast of a video signal. The level of HM can be set and the HistogramModifier can be enabled or disabled.

Independent Attributes

Table 1088

| Name     | Description                             |
|----------|-----------------------------------------|
| enabled  | Indicates whether HM is enabled or not. |
| minLevel | Minimum value for the HM level.         |

| Name                  | Description                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| <code>maxLevel</code> | Maximum value for the HM level. |
| <code>level</code>    | Current value of the HM level.  |

#### Dependent Attributes

None.

#### Invariants

`minLevel <= level <= maxLevel`

#### Instantiation

See subclause 8.2.9.3.3.

#### Streaming Behavior

The `HistogramModifier` has a YUV signal as an input. When the `HistogramModifier` is enabled, it will perform HM on the input stream. This processed stream is passed to the output. When the `HistogramModifier` is disabled, the stream at the input is passed to the output without any processing.

#### Active Behavior

The `HistogramModifier` has standard notification behavior (see `uhIHistoModNtf`).

#### 8.2.9.4.2 HistogramModificationClient

##### Signature

```
role HistogramModificationClient {}
```

##### Qualifiers

— actor

##### Description

A `HistogramModificationClient` represents a user of the `uhIHistoMod` interface.

#### 8.2.9.5 Interfaces

##### 8.2.9.5.1 uhIHistoMod

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This interface controls the level of HM that is applied to the video signal.

##### Interface ID

`uuid( 2E687DB9-E887-41b8-B014-165F95D38613 )`

Remarks

— In the following function specifications, the name hm will be used to refer to the provider of this interface; see subclause 8.2.9.3.3.1.

8.2.9.5.1.1      **Subscribe**

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (  
    [in] uhIHistoModNtf          *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32                  cookie,  
    [in] uhHistoMod_Notifications_t  notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

8.2.9.5.1.2      **Unsubscribe**

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhIHistoModNtf          *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32                  cookie,  
    [in] uhHistoMod_Notifications_t  notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

8.2.9.5.1.3      **GetEnabled**

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetEnabled (  
    [out] pBool      pEnabled);
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns whether HM is enabled or not.

Parameters

Table 1089

| Name     | Description                                                                  |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pEnabled | Output parameter returning whether HM is enabled (True) or disabled (False). |

Return Values

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— \*pEnabled == hm.enabled

**8.2.9.5.1.4      Enable**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Enable (  
    [in] Bool          enable );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Enables or disables HM.

**Parameters**

**Table 1090**

| Name   | Description                                     |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------|
| enable | Boolean to enable (True) or disable (False) HM. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

- Modify hm.enabled

**Postcondition**

- hm.enabled == *enable*

8.2.9.5.1.5      **GetLevel**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetLevel (
    [out] pUInt32          pLevel );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current HM level.

**Parameters**

**Table 1091**

| Name   | Description                                      |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------|
| pLevel | Output parameter returning the current HM level. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pLevel == hm.level

8.2.9.5.1.6      **SetLevel**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetLevel (
    [in] UInt32          level);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Sets the HM level.

**Parameters****Table 1092**

| Name  | Description             |
|-------|-------------------------|
| level | The HM level to be set. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**

— `hm.minLevel <= level <= hm.maxLevel`

**Action**

— Modify `hm.level`

**Postcondition**

— `hm.level == level`

**8.2.9.5.1.7 GetLevelRange****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetLevelRange (
    [out] pUInt32      pMinLevel,
    [out] pUInt32      pMaxLevel);
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

— thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the minimum and the maximum value for the HM level.

**Parameters****Table 1093**

| Name      | Description                                                    |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| pMinLevel | Output parameter returning the minimum value for the HM level. |
| pMaxLevel | Output parameter returning the maximum value for the HM level. |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**

— True

**Action**

None.



**Postcondition**

- *\*pMinLevel* == hm.minLevel
- *\*pMaxLevel* == hm.maxLevel

**8.2.9.5.2 uhHistoModNtf****Qualifiers**

- callback

**Description**

This is the notification interface to be provided by clients of the Histogram Modification logical component that wish to subscribe to notifications of events of the Histogram Modification logical component.

**Interface ID**

uuid( D89F166C-6DF0-4f9e-8364-79C7468679E6 )

**8.2.9.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32          cookie,
    [in] uhHistoMod_Notifications_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

- onsubscriptionchanged-function

**8.2.9.5.2.2 OnHistoModLevelChanged****Signature**

```
[async] Void OnHistoModLevelChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] UInt32 level);
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the `HistogramModifier` whenever it detects a change of the HM level.

**Table 1094**

| Name                | Description                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cookie</code> | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| <code>level</code>  | The new HM level.                                             |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

**8.2.10 UhNoiseMeas****8.2.10.1 Concepts****8.2.10.1.1 Noise Measurement**

The Noise Measurement logical component offers an abstract view on the amount of noise in a video signal. A discrete range of noise “levels” is defined by `minLevel` and `maxLevel`. The current noise level of the video signal is a number within that range, corresponding to the amount of noise in the signal (Figure 124). The meter scale defined by this range is a linear scale, so going from one level to the next always corresponds with (more or less) the same increase in noise.

The extremes of the meter scale, `minLevel` and `maxLevel`, do not necessarily correspond with an absolute minimum and an absolute maximum amount of noise, so, when the meter has reached `maxLevel` and the signal becomes noisier, the client won't notice it. The inverse holds for `minLevel`.



**Figure 124 — A discrete linear meter scale.**

**8.2.10.2 Types & Constants****8.2.10.2.1 Public Types & Constants****8.2.10.2.1.1 uhNoiseMeas\_ValStat\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhNoiseMeas_ValStat_t {
    uhNoiseMeas_ValStatInvalid = -2,
    uhNoiseMeas_ValStatUnknown = -1,
    uhNoiseMeas_ValStatKnown    = 1
} uhNoiseMeas_ValStat_t, *puhNoiseMeas_ValStat_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This type represents the validity status of the related property/properties.

**Values****Table 1095**

| <b>Name</b>                | <b>Description</b>                                                       |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhNoiseMeas_ValStatInvalid | The property/properties are temporarily not available.                   |
| uhNoiseMeas_ValStatUnknown | The property/properties are available, yet they could not be determined. |
| uhNoiseMeas_ValStatKnown   | The property/properties are available and determined.                    |

**8.2.10.2.1.2 uhNoiseMeas\_Notification\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhNoiseMeas_Notification_t {
    uhNoiseMeas_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhNoiseMeas_LevelChanged        = 0x00000002
} uhNoiseMeas_Notification_t, *puhNoiseMeas_Notification_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhINoiseMeasNtf`.

**Values****Table 1096**

| <b>Name</b>                     | <b>Description</b>                              |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| uhNoiseMeas_SubscriptionChanged | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> . |
| uhNoiseMeas_LevelChanged        | Represents <code>OnNoiseLevelChanged</code> .   |

**8.2.10.2.1.3 uhNoiseMeas\_Notifications\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhNoiseMeas_Notifications_t, *puhNoiseMeas_Notifications_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhNoiseMeas_Notification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

## 8.2.10.2.1.4 uhNoiseMeas\_AllNotifications

**Signature**

```
const uhNoiseMeas_Notifications_t uhNoiseMeas_AllNotifications = 0x00000003;
```

**Qualifiers**

— None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhNoiseMeas_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

## 8.2.10.2.2 Model Types &amp; Constants

None.

## 8.2.10.3 Logical Component

## 8.2.10.3.1 Interface-Role Model

The interface role-model is depicted in Figure 125

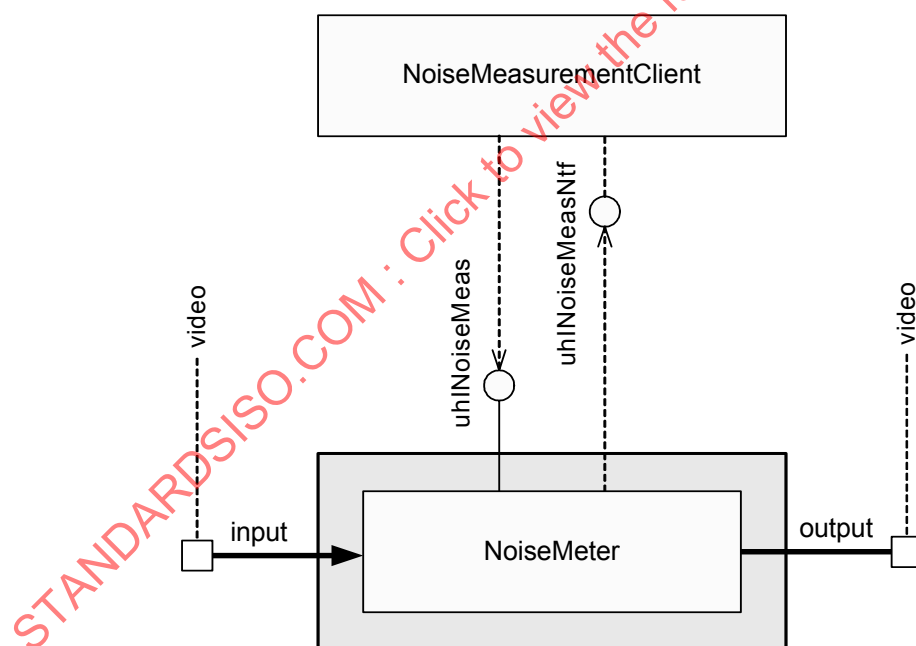


**Figure 125 — Interface-Role Model of the Noise Measurement logical component**

The Noise Measurement logical component (grey box) consists of the `NoiseMeter` role. This role provides an interface (`uhINoiseMeas`) for controlling the noise measurement. The control interface is meant for use by the client (`NoiseMeasurementClient`). This client can optionally provide a call-back interface (`uhINoiseMeasNtf`) allowing it to subscribe to notifications of events in the Noise Measurement logical component.

### 8.2.10.3.2 Diversity

#### 8.2.10.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 1097

| Role                   | Interface       | Presence  |
|------------------------|-----------------|-----------|
| NoiseMeter             | uhINoiseMeas    | mandatory |
| NoiseMeasurementClient | uhINoiseMeasNtf | optional  |

#### 8.2.10.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 1098

| Role       | Attribute |
|------------|-----------|
| NoiseMeter | minLevel  |
| NoiseMeter | maxLevel  |

#### 8.2.10.3.2.3 Constraints

—  $\text{maxLevel} \geq \text{minLevel}$

### 8.2.10.3.3 Instantiation

#### 8.2.10.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 1099

| Type       | Object | Multiplicity |
|------------|--------|--------------|
| NoiseMeter | nm     | 1            |

#### 8.2.10.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

—  $\text{nm.status} == \text{uhNoiseMeas\_ValStatUnknown}$   
 —  $\text{nm.enabled} == \text{False}$   
 —  $\text{nm.level} == \text{undefined}$

### 8.2.10.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

8.2.10.4 Roles

8.2.10.4.1 NoiseMeter

Signature

```
role NoiseMeter {
    uhNoiseMeas_ValStat_t status;
    Bool enabled;
    const UInt32 minLevel;
    const UInt32 maxLevel;
    UInt32 level;
}
```

Qualifiers

— root

Description

The NoiseMeter role provides means to get an indication of the amount of noise in a video signal. The noise level can be queried and the NoiseMeter can be enabled or disabled.

Independent Attributes

Table 1100

| Name     | Description                                            |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| status   | Validity state of the noise measurement property.      |
| enabled  | Indicates whether noise measurement is enabled or not. |
| minLevel | Minimum noise level.                                   |
| maxLevel | Maximum noise level.                                   |
| level    | Current noise level.                                   |

Dependent Attributes

None.

Invariants

— minLevel <= level <= maxLevel

Instantiation

See subclause 8.2.10.3.3.

Streaming Behavior

The NoiseMeter has a video signal as an input. When the NoiseMeter is enabled, it will perform noise measurement on the input stream. When the NoiseMeter is disabled, the stream at the input is passed to the output without any measurement being done (level is not updated).

Active Behavior

The NoiseMeter has standard notification behavior (see uhINoiseMeasNtf).

#### 8.2.10.4.2 NoiseMeasurementClient

##### Signature

```
role NoiseMeasurementClient {}
```

##### Qualifiers

— actor

##### Description

A `NoiseMeasurementClient` represents a user of the `uhINoiseMeas` interface.

#### 8.2.10.5 Interfaces

##### 8.2.10.5.1 uhINoiseMeas

##### Qualifiers

None.

##### Description

This interface provides means to get an indication of the amount of noise in the video signal.

##### Interface ID

```
uuid( 3F28370B-1418-48fd-8BFE-D1BA35B6E25F )
```

##### Remarks

In the following function specifications, the name `nm` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface; see subclause 8.2.10.3.3.1.

##### 8.2.10.5.1.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (
    [in] uhINoiseMeasNtf          *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                   cookie,
    [in] uhNoiseMeas_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

##### 8.2.10.5.1.2 Unsubscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (
    [in] uhINoiseMeasNtf          *pINotify,
    [in] UInt32                   cookie,
    [in] uhNoiseMeas_Notifications_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

8.2.10.5.1.3    **GetEnabled**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetEnabled (  
    [out] pBool      pEnabled);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns whether noise measurement is enabled or not.

**Parameters**

Table 1101

| Name     | Description                                                                                 |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pEnabled | Output parameter returning whether noise measurement is enabled (True) or disabled (False). |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

— \*pEnabled == nm.enabled

8.2.10.5.1.4    **Enable**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Enable (  
    [in] Bool      enable );
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- single-threaded

**Description**

Enables or disables noise measurement.



**Parameters****Table 1102**

| Name                | Description                                                                                  |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>enable</code> | Boolean to enable ( <code>True</code> ) or disable ( <code>False</code> ) noise measurement. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**`True`**Action**— Modify `nm.enabled`**Postcondition**— `nm.enabled == enable`**8.2.10.5.1.5 GetLevel****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetLevel (
    [out] puhNoiseMeas_ValStat_t pStatus,
    [out] pUInt32                pLevel);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the current noise level.

**Parameters****Table 1103**

| Name                 | Description                                                          |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>pStatus</code> | Output parameter that indicates the validity of the level parameter. |
| <code>pLevel</code>  | Output parameter returning the current noise level.                  |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**`True`**Action**

None.

#### Postcondition

— \*pStatus == nm.status  
 — \*pLevel == nm.level

#### 8.2.10.5.1.6 GetLevelRange

#### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetLevelRange (
    [out] pUInt32      pMinLevel,
    [out] pUInt32      pMaxLevel);
```

#### Qualifiers

— synchronous  
 — thread-safe

#### Description

Returns the minimum and the maximum noise levels.

#### Parameters

Table 1104

| Name      | Description                                         |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| pMinLevel | Output parameter returning the minimum noise level. |
| pMaxLevel | Output parameter returning the maximum noise level. |

#### Return Values

Standard.

#### Precondition

True

#### Action

None.

#### Postcondition

— \*pMinLevel == nm.minLevel  
 — \*pMaxLevel == nm.maxLevel

#### 8.2.10.5.2 uhlNoiseMeasNtf

#### Qualifiers

— callback

**Description**

This is the notification interface to be provided by clients of the Noise Measurement logical component that wish to subscribe to notifications of events of the Noise Measurement logical component.

**Interface ID**

uuid( 1BD48979-C4F1-444d-8D20-63ADA3F20885 )

**8.2.10.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32          cookie,
    [in] uhNoiseMeas_Notifications_t  notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

**8.2.10.5.2.2 OnNoiseLevelChanged**

**Signature**

```
[async] Void OnNoiseLevelChanged (
    [in] UInt32          cookie,
    [in] uhNoiseMeas_ValStat_t status,
    [in] UInt32          level);
```

**Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This function is called by the NoiseMeter whenever it detects a change of the noise level.

**Table 1105**

| Name   | Description                                                   |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time. |
| status | Parameter that indicates the validity of the level parameter. |
| level  | The new noise level.                                          |

**Return Values**

None.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— Any callback-compliant action.

**Postcondition**

True

## 8.2.11 uhlScanRateConv

### 8.2.11.1 Concepts

#### 8.2.11.1.1 Scan Rate Conversion

This document defines the Scan Rate Converter logical component (LC). The Scan Rate Converter LC gives control over scan rate conversion functionality. The following paragraphs give a short explanation of scan rate conversions and how to use them.

##### 8.2.11.1.1.1 Background

Scan rate conversions are video conversions by which the scan rate of the video at the output has been changed compared to the scan rate at the input. The main reasons to do these conversions are to:

- Adapt the original scan rate, such that it matches the display capabilities.
- Improve the perceived picture quality.

In order to do scan rate conversion video streams need de-interlacing and/or temporal conversion.

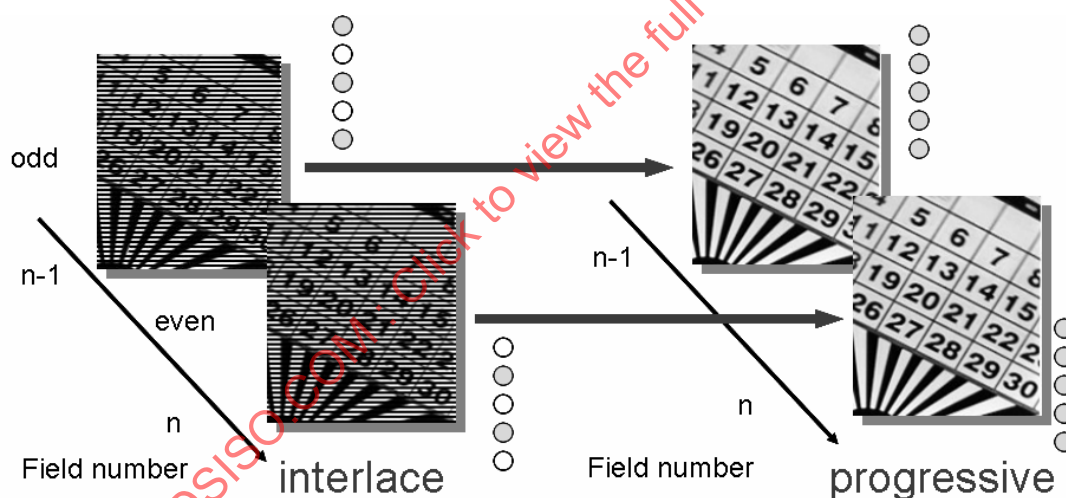


**Figure 126 — Concept of de-interlacing**

De-interlacing is the conversion of a interlaced picture to a progressive picture as depicted in Figure 126. De-interlacing algorithms vary from simple to very complex.

Selection of a de-interlacing algorithm mainly depends on:

- Content of source material:  
De-interlacing algorithms often do well in a particular category (for example texture or robustness), but less in another.
- Source material:  
Source material can be recorded by either a film or a video camera.

- **Film camera:** A film camera shoots progressive pictures at 24 Hz. When broadcasted, the 24 Hz progressive material is interlaced (doubling the frequency) and speed-up to 50/60 Hz. On the receiving end the source material although having a frequency of 50/60 Hz, has motion information at 25/30 Hz as depicted in Figure 127.

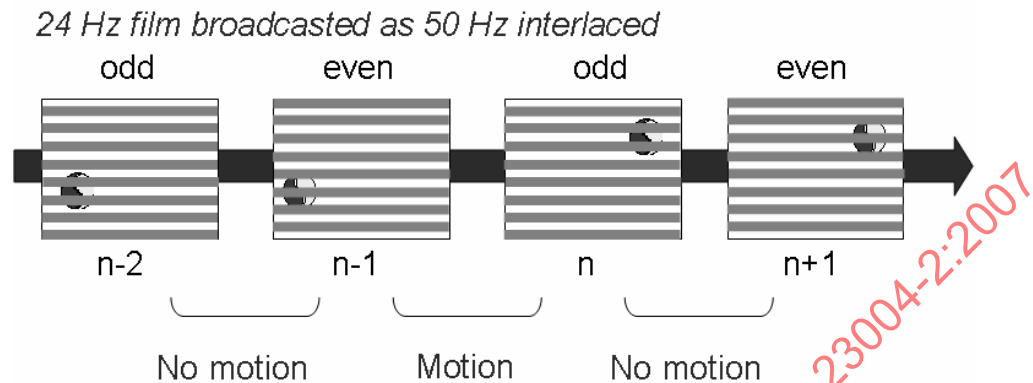


**Figure 127 — Source material recorded with film camera.**

Because there is no motion information between two interlaced fields out of the same progressive frame, de-interlacing source material recorded by a film camera is combining the correct interlaced fields to a progressive frame as depicted in Figure 128.

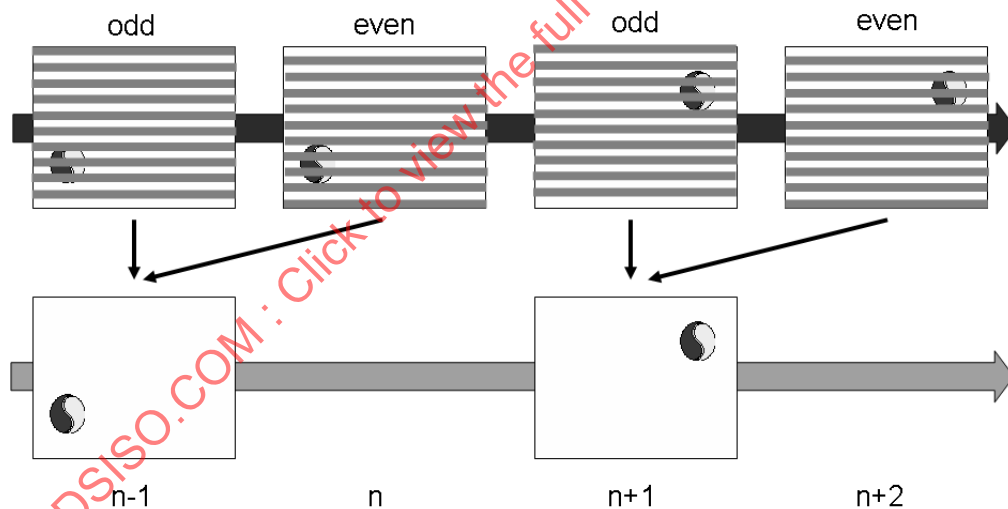


**Figure 128 — De-interlacing film material.**

— **Video camera:** A video camera shoots interlaced pictures at 50/60Hz, which directly can be broadcasted. Because there is motion information in between fields, combining to interlaced fields to one progressive frame can lead to unacceptable motion artifacts. For this reason de-interlacing source material recorded by a video camera often use more complex algorithms which need multi field input as depicted in Figure 129.

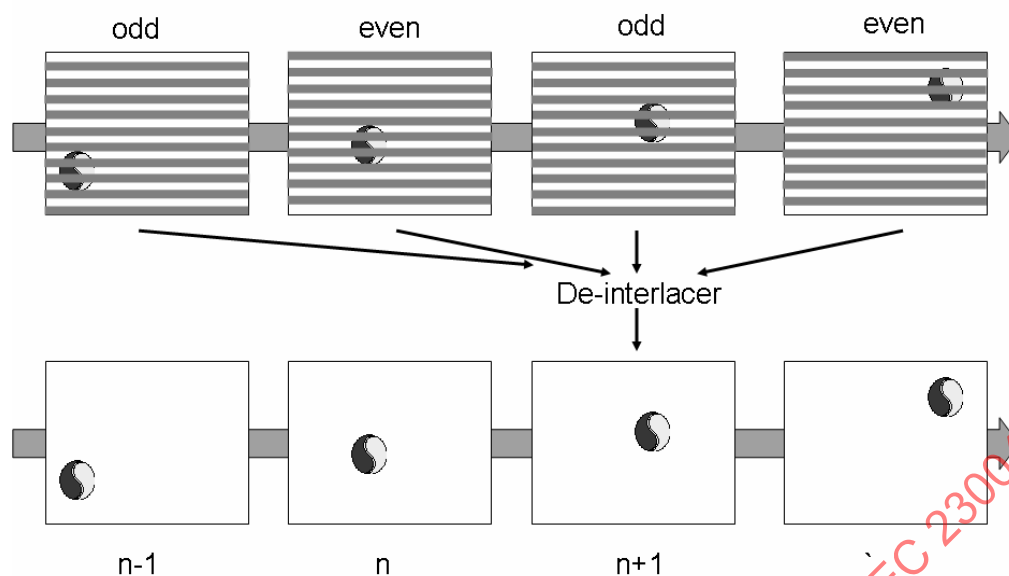


Figure 129 — De-interlacing video material.

Temporal conversion, can be either converting to a higher or lower temporal frequency by calculating the non-transmitted/recorded pictures in between the existing ones or replacing/skipping the temporal positions of the existing pictures.

Temporal conversions are done to:

- Improve video quality by reducing large area flicker.
- Drive a display that cannot handle the input field rate.
- Improve motion pattern in source material.

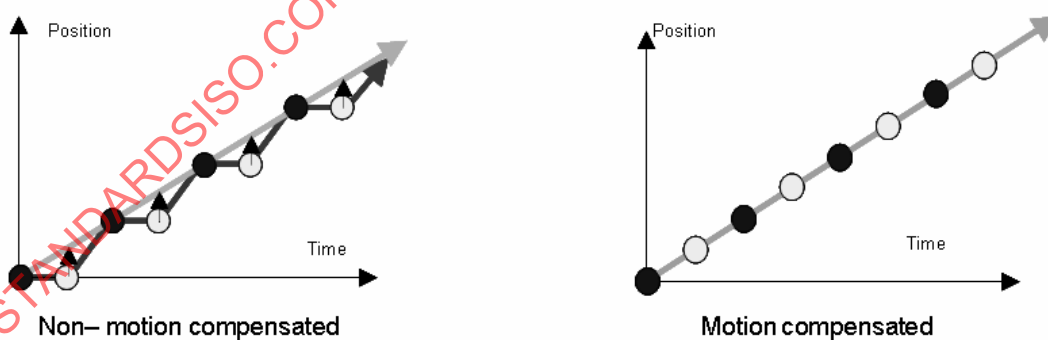


Figure 130 — Non-motion compensated versus motion compensated upconversion.

Temporal conversion can be done motion compensated or non-compensated as shown in Figure 130. Non-motion compensated temporal conversion (e.g. repetition of frames) leads to a distorted motion pattern. By compensating the intermediate frames the motion pattern can become natural again.

### 8.2.11.1.1.2 Usage

The scan rate converter interface offers control over the various algorithms to convert from an input scan rate to an output scan rate.

These algorithms control the following concepts:

#### a) De-interlacing

For de-interlacing several algorithms are available. Available algorithms can do processing in spatial or temporal domain, filtered or unfiltered, with or without motion compensation. Best choice of algorithm depends on source type and content of the source material but maybe restricted/limited by use-case (resource usage). De-interlacing algorithms often do well in a particular category (for example texture or robustness), but less in another. For this reason the client can decide to leave the selection of an algorithm to the de-interlacer. In this case the de-interlacer will select, based on the source type and the content which algorithm is the best.

The need for de-interlacing depends on the relationship of the scan type between the input and the output video stream.

In case of progressive input de-interlacing is never needed.

- In case of interlaced input and progressive output, de-interlacing is always needed.
- In case of interlaced input and interlaced output, de-interlacing is optional. Internal processing may require progressive intermediates, by the platform may decide the input first has to be de-interlaced, processed and afterwards re-interlaced.

#### b) Scan/Motion rate conversion

Scan rate conversion is needed when there is a difference between the scan rate of the input format and the output format.

The motion rate represents the frequency of the motion information in the source material. This can differ from the actual field or frame rate. E.g. for film source in 50i or 50p, the motion rate is 25. If by de-interlacing or scan rate conversion the motion portrait is disturbed, this can be corrected via motion rate conversion.

#### c) Re-interlacing

In case the output scan type is interlaced and the input is progressive or a intermediate processing stage needs a progressive input, re-interlacing is needed. Re-interlacing simply consists of extracting even and odd fields from a progressive frame.

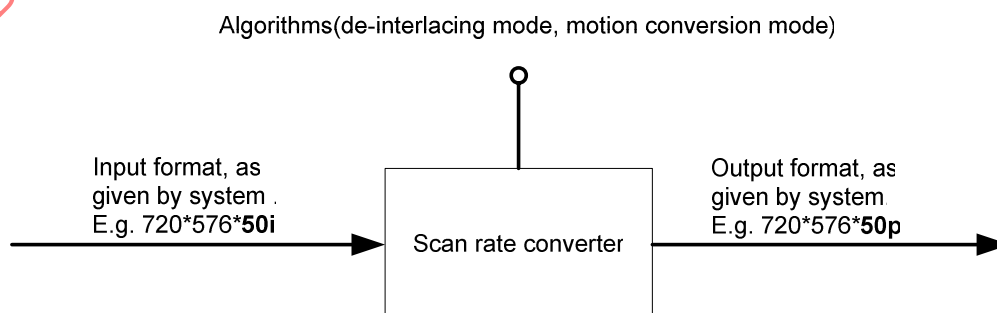


**Figure 131 — Example concept scan rate conversion.**

The scan rate converter depicted in Figure 131 can be controlled by:

- De-interlacing algorithms: Setting an algorithm used for re/de-interlacing. De-interlacing algorithms can vary from simple algorithms that only use information of the current field(spatial), to complex algorithms that use multiple fields(temporal), filters(e.g. average, median) and motion compensation. Table 1106 gives an example of the possible combinations.

**Table 1106— Example combinations for de-interlacing**

| Algorithm               | Temporal | Filtered | Motion compensated |
|-------------------------|----------|----------|--------------------|
| Line repeat             | False    | False    | False              |
| Line filter             | False    | True     | False              |
| Field insert            | True     | False    | False              |
| Motion adaptive         | True     | True     | False              |
| Motion compensated      | True     | True     | True               |
| Auto motion adaptive    | True     | *Auto    | False              |
| Auto motion compensated | True     | *Auto    | True               |

\* Auto: Depending on the source and motion type a selection is made. In case the source type is film or there is no motion in the source material, field insert is preferred and thus filters are disabled. In all other cases, filters will be enabled.

- Temporal conversion mode: Since the need for temporal conversion is determined by the ratio between the input and output format, the temporal conversion mode controls whether the conversion is done motion compensated or not.

Depending on ratio between input and output format and/or platform limitations, not all supported algorithms are always available. For this reason the scan rate converter maintains a list of available conversion algorithms. The client of the scan rate converter can subscribe on the changes of this list. In case the availability of one or more algorithms(s) changes the list is updated. If the updated list does not contain the algorithm as preferred by the client the scan rate converter uses a default algorithm, notifying the client of a change of the actual algorithm. The client then can choose to overrule by one of the list of available algorithms. The client can set a preferred algorithm at any time, as long as the preferred algorithm is a member of the available algorithms list it will reflect the actual algorithm.

#### 8.2.11.1.1.3 Multiple Instantiation

The scan rate converter can be instantiated more than once. In case of multiple instantiation, system limitations cause a strong dependency between the different instantiations. In order to make mixing possible is it necessary that the inputs of the mixer have the same frequency and scan type. Because the scan rate converter instances are logically placed before the mixer, the output of the scan rate converter instances



should all be the same. For this reason the output format of the scan rate converter always represents the actual output format.

STANDARDSISO.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO/IEC 23004-2:2007

## 8.2.11.2 Types & Constants

### 8.2.11.2.1 Public Types & Constants

#### 8.2.11.2.1.1 Error Codes

None.

#### 8.2.11.2.1.2 uhScanRateConv2\_DeiMode\_t

##### Signature

```
typedef enum _uhScanRateConv2_DeiMode_t {
    uhScanRateConv2_NotApplicable      = 0x00000001,
    uhScanRateConv2_LineRepeat          = 0x00000002,
    uhScanRateConv2_LineFilter          = 0x00000004,
    uhScanRateConv2_FieldInsert         = 0x00000008,
    uhScanRateConv2_MotionAdaptive       = 0x00000010,
    uhScanRateConv2_MotionCompensated    = 0x00000020,
    uhScanRateConv2_AutoMotionAdaptive   = 0x00000040,
    uhScanRateConv2_AutoMotionCompensated = 0x00000080
} uhScanRateConv2_DeiMode_t, *puhScanRateConv2_DeiMode_t;
```

##### Qualifiers

enum-element.

##### Description

The re/de-interlacing modes.

##### Values

Table 1107

| Name                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhScanRateConv2_NotApplicable  | De-interlacing is not applicable.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| uhScanRateConv2_LineRepeat     | De-interlacing by repeating the lines of a single field (consisting of only even or odd lines), filling the entire frame. This results in the video having effectively half the vertical resolution, scaled to the full resolution. This technique will cause a noticeable reduction in picture quality. This technique is often referred to as bob de-interlacing, because the fields are bobbed up and down.. |
| uhScanRateConv2_LineFiltered   | De-interlacing by applying a filter which uses multiple lines of a single field (consisting of only even or odd lines).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| uhScanRateConv2_FieldInsert    | De-interlacing by combining two consecutive fields into one progressive frame. When there is no motion between the consecutive fields this is a very good de-interlacing method. When there is motion, this method will introduce major motion artifacts. This technique is often referred to as weave de-interlacing, because the fields are simply weaved together.                                           |
| uhScanRateConv2_MotionAdaptive | De-interlacing by combining the best of the line repeat uhScanRateConv2_LineRepeat and field insert method by use of a median filter. This filter approximates the field insert method when there is no motion and the line repeat when there is. To reduce detail flicker, vertical averaging is added                                                                                                         |

| Name                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uhScanRateConv2_MotionCompensated     | Basically this de-interlacing method is same as uhScanRateConv2_MotionAdaptive. However additionally motion information is used to generate the missing lines.                                                                                                    |
| uhScanRateConv2_AutoMotionAdaptive    | De-interlacing by either using the uhScanRateConv2_FieldInsert or uhScanRateConv2_MotionAdaptive method depending on the detected input source material (video or film). For video material, a median filter is used and for film material field insertion.       |
| uhScanRateConv2_AutoMotionCompensated | De-interlacing by either using the uhScanRateConv2_FieldInsert or uhScanRateConv2_MotionCompensated method depending on the detected input source material (video or film). For video material, motion compensated is used and for film material field insertion. |

**Remarks**

— None.

**8.2.11.2.1.3 uhScanRateConv2\_DeiModeSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhScanRateConv2_DeiModeSet_t, *puhScanRateConv2_DeiModeSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of re/de-interlacing modes that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type uhScanRateConv2\_DeiMode\_t.

**Constraints**

— None.

**8.2.11.2.1.4 uhScanRateConv2\_McTcMode\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhScanRateConv2_McTcMode_t {
    uhScanRateConv2_McTcEnabled = 0x00000001,
    uhScanRateConv2_McTcDisabled = 0x00000002
} uhScanRateConv2_McTcMode_t, *puhScanRateConv2_McTcMode_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

The motion compensated temporal conversion modes.

## Values

Table 1108

| Name                         | Description                                        |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| uhScanRateConv2_McTcEnabled  | Motion compensated temporal conversion is enabled. |
| uhScanRateConv2_McTcDisabled | Motion compensated temporal conversion is enabled. |

**8.2.11.2.1.5    uhScanRateConv2\_McTcModeSet\_t****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhScanRateConv2_McTcModeSet_t, *puhScanRateConv2_McTcModeSet_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of motion compensated temporal conversion modes that are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhScanRateConv2_McTcModeSet_t`.

**8.2.11.2.1.6    uhScanRateConv2\_Notification\_t****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhScanRateConv2_Notification_t {
    uhScanRateConv2_OnSubscriptionChanged      = 0x000000001,
    uhScanRateConv2_OnAvailableAlgorithmsChanged = 0x000000002,
    uhScanRateConv2_OnActualAlgorithmChanged    = 0x000000004
} uhScanRateConv2_Notification_t, *puhScanRateConv2_Notification_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhIScanRateConv2Ntf`.

## Values

Table 1109

| Name                                         | Description                              |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| uhScanRateConv2_OnSubscriptionChanged        | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged.        |
| uhScanRateConv2_OnAvailableAlgorithmsChanged | Represents OnAvailableAlgorithmsChanged. |
| uhScanRateConv2_OnActualAlgorithmChanged     | Represents OnActualAlgorithmChanged.     |

#### 8.2.11.2.1.7 uhScanRateConv2\_NotificationSet\_t

**Signature**

```
typedef          Int32          uhScanRateConv2_NotificationSet_t,
*puhScanRateConv2_NotificationSet t;
```

## Qualifiers

— enum-set

### Description

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions, which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `NotificationFunction`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions to specify the event notification to be enabled or disabled.

#### 8.2.11.2.1.8 uhScanRateConv2\_AllNotifications

**Signature**

```

const uhScanRateConv2_NotificationSet_t
uhScanRateConv2_AllNotifications = 0x00000007;

```

## Qualifiers

— None.

### Description

Defines the set of all values of type. This constant can be used in calls of *Subscribe* and *Unsubscribe* functions to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

#### 8.2.11.2.2 Model Types & Constants

None

### 8.2.11.3 Logical Component

#### 8.2.11.3.1 Interface-Role Model

Figure 132 depicts the interface-role model of the Scan Rate Converter LC. It shows the roles and interfaces the Scan Rate Converter LC and its clients can have.

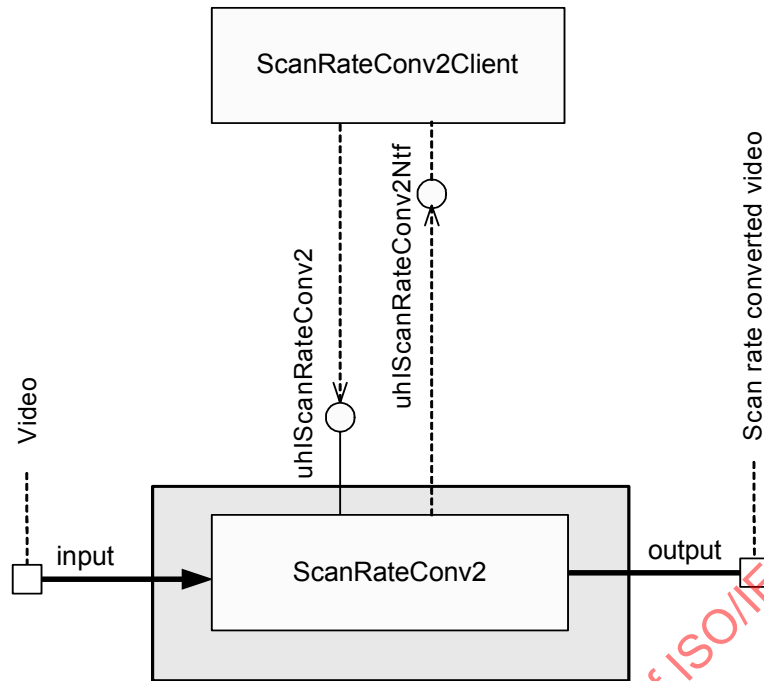


Figure 132 — Scan Rate Converter Interface Role Model

The Scan Rate Converter LC (grey box) consists of the ScanRateConv role. This role provides one interface: uhIScanRateConv2. The uhIScanRateConv2 interface controls the scan rate conversion mode. This interface is provided to the client ScanRateConv2Client. This client can optionally provide one callback interface: uhIScanRateConv2Ntf. This allows the client to subscribe to notifications of events in the Scan Rate Converter.

8.2.11.3.2 Diversity

8.2.11.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 1110

| Role                | Interface           | Presence  |
|---------------------|---------------------|-----------|
| ScanrateConv        | uhIScanRateConv2    | mandatory |
| ScanRateConv2Client | uhIScanRateConv2Ntf | optional  |

8.2.11.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 1111

| Role         | Attribute       |
|--------------|-----------------|
| ScanRateConv | defaultAlgoList |

In case the preferred conversion algorithm is not available at current system constrains, the scanrate converter will use the next best algorithm in line as described in the defaultAlgoList as default. This way the client can provide design-time policy via this configurable item, in combination with end-user preference via interface.

The `defaultAlgoList` represents an ordered copy of the supported de-interlacing and temporal conversion modes.

8.2.11.3.2.3 Constraints

None.

8.2.11.3.3 Instantiation

8.2.11.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 1112

| Type         | Object | Multiplicity |
|--------------|--------|--------------|
| ScanRateConv | conv   | 1            |

8.2.11.3.3.2 Initial State

- `conv.preferredDeiMode == uhScanRateConv2_AutoMotionCompensated`
- `conv.preferredMcTcMode == uhScanRateConv2_McTcEnabled`

The following attributes are undefined:

- `conv.availableDeiModes`
- `conv.availableMcTcModes`
- `conv.supportedDeiModes`
- `conv.supportedMcTcModes`
- `conv.actualDeiMode`
- `conv.actualMcTcMode`

8.2.11.3.4 Execution Constraints

Per interface, at most one thread may have access to each interface. The only exception is thread-safe functions.

8.2.11.4 Roles

8.2.11.4.1 ScanrateConv

Signature

```
role ScanRateConv {
    uhScanRateConv2_DeiModeSet_t    availableDeiModes;
    uhScanRateConv2_McTcModeSet_t    availableMcTcModes;
    uhScanRateConv2_DeiModeSet_t    supportedDeiModes;
    uhScanRateConv2_McTcModeSet_t    supportedMcTcModes;
    uhScanRateConv2_DeiMode_t        preferredDeiMode;
    uhScanRateConv2_McTcMode_t        preferredMcTcMode;
    uhScanRateConv2_DeiMode_t        actualDeiMode;
    uhScanRateConv2_McTcMode_t        actualMcTcMode;
}
```

Qualifiers

— root

Description

The ScanRateConv controls which algorithms will be used for converting the video stream.

Independent Attributes

Table 1113

| Name               | Description                                                     |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSupportedDeiModes | Set of de-interlacing algorithms supported by current platform. |
| pSupportedMcTcMode | Set of temporal conversion modes supported by current platform  |

Dependent Attributes

Table 1114

| Name                | Description                                                                     |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pAvailableDeiModes  | Set of de-interlacing algorithms available at current limitations/restrictions  |
| pAvailableMcTcModes | Set of temporal conversion modes available at current limitations/restrictions. |
| preferredDeiMode    | Preferred de-interlacing algorithm as set by client.                            |
| preferredMcTcMode   | Preferred temporal conversion mode as set by client.                            |
| actualDeiMode       | The actual de-interlacing algorithm that is used by the scan rate converter.    |
| actualMcTcMode      | The actual temporal conversion mode that is used by the scan rate converter.    |

Invariants

None.



### Instantiation

A `ScanRateConv` is always instantiated as part of a Scan Rate Converter; see subclause 8.2.11.3.3.

### Streaming Behavior

The `ScanRateConv` converts the scan rate of the video stream at the input into the requested output scan rate using the actual algorithm. In most cases, the actual algorithm is equal to the preferred algorithm for the current input format as set by the client. When the preferred algorithm is temporally unavailable because of system limitations, then the next best as described in the `defaultAlgoList` will become the actual algorithm.

### Active Behavior

The active behavior of a subject conceptually consists of two activities:

- Executing pending subscribe/unsubscribe actions, i.e. actions that are a consequence of in-calls to the asynchronous `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions. No execution order is specified for these actions except for the subscribe/unsubscribe actions that relate to the same subscription (observer-cookie pair): they are serialized and executed in first-in-first-out order, i.e. in the order the `Subscribe/Unsubscribe` functions were called.
- Executing asynchronous (i.e. potentially delayed) calls to the `OnEvent` notification functions (including `OnSubscriptionChanged`) in reaction to the occurrence of events. No execution order is specified for these calls except for the calls that relate to the same subscription (observer-cookie pair): they are serialized and executed in first-in-first-out order, i.e. in the order of detecting the events.

The active behavior associated with the subscribe/unsubscribe actions is defined by the specifications of the asynchronous `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions. The active behavior associated with the calls to notification functions is specified in the event-action table below. The implicit assumption in all this is that the order of executing the subscribe/unsubscribe actions and the notifications is consistent with the two first-in-first-out rules described above.

**Table 1115**

| Event                                                                                                                                                                            | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Changing constraints / limitations / dependencies causing change in the availability of the conversion algorithms. For example the change of the preferred in- or output format. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— For each observer <code>x</code> and cookie <code>c</code> such that <code>uhScanRateConv2_OnAvailableAlgorithmsChanged</code> in <code>subscription[x,c]</code> the subject performs the following asynchronous function call: <code>OnAvailableAlgorithmsChanged()</code></li> <li>— Modify <code>conv-&gt;pAvailableAlgorithms</code></li> </ul>                                       |
| Changing constraints / limitations / dependencies causing the current conversion algorithm to be no longer available.                                                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— For each observer <code>x</code> and cookie <code>c</code> such that <code>uhScanRateConv2_OnActualAlgorithmChanged</code> in <code>subscription[x,c]</code> the subject performs the following asynchronous function call: <code>OnActualAlgorithmChanged()</code></li> <li>— Modify <code>conv.actualAlgorithm</code> with consecutive value of <code>defaultAlgoList</code></li> </ul> |

#### 8.2.11.4.2 ScanRateConv2Client

##### Signature

```
role ScanRateConv2Client {}
```

##### Qualifiers

— actor

##### Description

A `ScanRateConv2Client` represents a user of the interface `uhIScanRateConv2`.

#### 8.2.11.5 Interfaces

##### 8.2.11.5.1 uhIScanRateConv2

##### Qualifiers

— root

##### Description

This interface controls the algorithm that is used to convert the scan rate of a video stream.

##### Interface ID

```
uuid( A0D524B7-0999-42a7-BD60-3A45CECDF579 )
```

##### Remarks

In the following function specifications, the name `conv` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface; see subclause 8.2.11.3.3.1.

##### 8.2.11.5.1.1 Subscribe

##### Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe(  
    [in] uhIScanRateConv2Ntf          *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32                        cookie,  
    [in] uhScanRateConv2_NotificationSet_t notifs );
```

##### Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

8.2.11.5.1.2    **Unsubscribe**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe(  
    [in] uhIScanRateConv2Ntf          *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32                        cookie,  
    [in] uhScanRateConv2_NotificationSet_t notifs );
```

**Qualifiers**

— unsubscribe-function

8.2.11.5.1.3    **GetSupportedAlgorithms**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetSupportedAlgorithms(  
    [out] puhScanRateConv2_DeinterlacingModeSet_t pSuppDeinterlacingModes,  
    [out] puhScanRateConv2_TemporalConversionModeSet_t pSuppTemporalConversionModes);
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

**Description**

Returns orthogonal list supported de-interlacing and temporal conversion modes.

**Parameters**

**Table 1116**

| Name                         | Description                                                               |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pSuppDeinterlacingModes      | Output parameter returning a list of supported de-interlacing modes.      |
| pSuppTemporalConversionModes | Output parameter returning a list of supported temporal conversion modes. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pSuppDeinterlacingModes == conv.supportedDeinterlacingModes
- \*pSuppTemporalConversionModes == conv.supportedTemporalConversionModes

**8.2.11.5.1.4 GetAvailableAlgorithms****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetAvailableAlgorithms(
    [out] puhScanRateConv2_DeiModeSet_t pAvailDeiModes,
    [out] puhScanRateConv2_McTcModeSet_t pAvailMcTcModes );
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

**Description**

Returns orthogonal list available de-interlacing and temporal conversion modes.

**Parameters****Table 1117**

| Name            | Description                                                                         |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pAvailDeiModes  | Output parameter returning a list of currently available de-interlacing modes.      |
| pAvailMcTcModes | Output parameter returning a list of currently available temporal conversion modes. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None.

**Postcondition**

— \*pAvailDeiModes == conv.availableDeiModes  
 — \*pAvailMcTcModes == conv.availableMcTcModes

**8.2.11.5.1.5 SetPreferredAlgorithm****Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t SetPreferredAlgorithm(
    [in] uhScanRateConv2_DeiMode_t deiMode,
    [in] uhScanRateConv2_McTcMode_t mcTcMode);
```

**Qualifiers**

— synchronous

**Description**

Sets the preferred algorithm. When algorithm is not part of the list of available algorithms, the scan rate converter autonomously will select a default conversion algorithm as described by the configurable item defaultAlgoList.

Parameters

Table 1118

| Name     | Description                            |
|----------|----------------------------------------|
| deiMode  | The preferred de-interlacing mode      |
| mcTcMode | The preferred temporal conversion mode |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**  
— deiMode in conv.supportedDeiModes  
— mcTcMode in conv.supportedMcTcModes

**Action**  
None

**Postcondition**  
— conv.preferredDeiMode == deiMode  
— conv.preferredMcTcMode == mcTcMode

8.2.11.5.1.6    **GetPreferredAlgorithm**

**Signature**  
uhErrorCode\_t GetPreferredAlgorithm(  
    [out] puhScanRateConv2\_DeiMode\_t pDeiMode,  
    [out] puhScanRateConv2\_McTcMode\_t pMcTcMode);

**Qualifiers**  
— synchronous

**Description**  
Returns the preferred algorithm.

Parameters

Table 1119

| Name      | Description                                                       |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pDeiMode  | Output parameter returning the preferred de-interlacing mode      |
| pMcTcMode | Output parameter returning the preferred temporal conversion mode |

**Return Values**  
Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

— None

**Postcondition**

- \*pDeiMode == conv.preferredDeiMode
- \*pMcTcMode == conv.preferredMcTcMode

**8.2.11.5.1.7     GetActualAlgorithm**

**Signature**

```
uhErrorCode_t GetActualAlgorithm(  
    [out] puhScanRateConv2_DeiMode_t  pDeiMode,  
    [out] puhScanRateConv2_McTcMode_t pMcTcMode);
```

**Qualifiers**

- synchronous
- thread-safe

**Description**

Returns the actual used algorithm.

**Parameters**

**Table 1120**

| Name      | Description                                                          |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pDeiMode  | Output parameter returning the actual used de-interlacing mode.      |
| pMcTcMode | Output parameter returning the actual used temporal conversion mode. |

**Return Values**

Standard.

**Precondition**

True

**Action**

None.

**Postcondition**

- \*pDeiMode == conv.ActualDeiMode
- \*pAvailMcTcModes == conv.actualMcTcMode

8.2.11.5.2 uhScanRateConv2Ntf

Qualifiers

— callback

Description

This is the notification interface to be provided by Scan Rate Converter clients that wish to subscribe to notifications of Scan Rate Converter events.

Interface ID

uuid( 2C94B293-E7C1-4f27-95CE-544F9AB26B48 )

8.2.11.5.2.1 OnSubscriptionChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnSubscriptionChanged (
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhScanRateConv2_NotificationSet_t notif );
```

Qualifiers

— onsubscriptionchanged-function

8.2.11.5.2.2 OnAvailableAlgorithmsChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnAvailableAlgorithmsChanged(
    [in] UInt32 cookie,
    [in] uhScanRateConv2_DeiModeSet_t availDeiModes,
    [in] uhScanRateConv2_McTcModeSet_t availMcTcModes);
```

Qualifiers

None.

Description

This function is used by a ScanRateConv to notify a client that list of allowed algorithms has changed.

Parameters

Table 1121

| Name           | Description                                                                         |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie         | The value that was passed by the client at subscription time.                       |
| availDeiModes  | Output parameter returning a list of currently available de-interlacing modes.      |
| availMcTcModes | Output parameter returning a list of currently available temporal conversion modes. |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— any callback-compliant action.

Postcondition

True

8.2.11.5.2.3 OnActualAlgorithmChanged

Signature

```
[async] Void OnActualAlgorithmChanged(  
    [in] UInt32 cookie,  
    [in] uhScanRateConv2_DeiMode_t deiMode,  
    [in] uhScanRateConv2_McTcMode_t mcTcMode);
```

Qualifiers

— None.

Description

This function is used by a ScanRateConv to notify a client that the actual algorithm has changed.

Parameters

Table 1122

| Name     | Description                                                               |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cookie   | The value that was passed by the ScanRateConvClient at subscription time. |
| deiMode  | Output parameter returning the actual used de-interlacing mode.           |
| mcTcMode | Output parameter returning the actual used temporal conversion mode.      |

Return Values

None.

Precondition

True

Action

— any callback-compliant action

Postcondition

True



## 8.2.12 UhlSharpEnh

### 8.2.12.1 Concepts

#### 8.2.12.1.1 Sharpness Enhancement

The Sharpness Enhancement logical component described in this document deals with enhancing the sharpness of the luminance (Y) component of a YUV signal. Via the main interface (`uhISharpEnh`) of the logical component, the client can set a sharpness enhancement (SE) level. A higher SE level corresponds with more sharpening.

The sharpness enhancement methods used are Luminance Transient Improvement (LTI) and peaking. LTI steepens transients (see Figure 133) and peaking adds undershoots and overshoots to transients (see Figure 134).

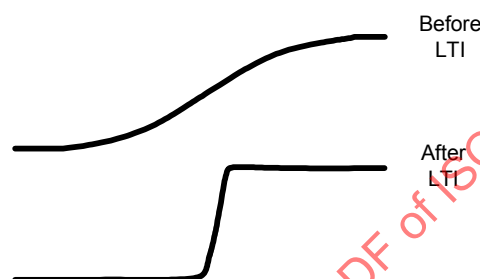


Figure 133 — LTI: steepening transients in the luminance signal.



Figure 134 — Peaking: adding undershoots and overshoots to transients in the luminance signal.

#### 8.2.12.1.2 Color Dependent Sharpness

The logical component optionally supports an interface (`uhISharpEnhCds`), via which another sharpness enhancement method can be controlled: Color Dependent Sharpness (CDS). CDS is a form of peaking applied to the luminance signal in red or magenta areas only. The client can set a CDS level (where a higher level corresponds with more sharpening).

8.2.12.2 Types & Constants

8.2.12.2.1 Public Types & Constants

8.2.12.2.1.1 uhSharpEnh\_Notification\_t

Signature

```
typedef enum _uhSharpEnh_Notification_t {
    uhSharpEnh_SubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhSharpEnh_LevelChanged        = 0x00000002
} uhSharpEnh_Notification_t, *puhSharpEnh_Notification_t;
```

Qualifiers

— enum-element

Description

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface uhISharpEnhNtf.

Values

Table 1123

| Name                           | Description                       |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| uhSharpEnh_SubscriptionChanged | Represents OnSubscriptionChanged. |
| uhSharpEnh_LevelChanged        | Represents OnLevelChanged.        |

8.2.12.2.1.2 uhSharpEnh\_Notifications\_t

Signature

```
typedef Int32 uhSharpEnh_Notifications_t,
    *puhSharpEnh_Notifications_t;
```

Qualifiers

— enum-set

Description

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type uhSharpEnh\_Notification\_t. These values are used in the Subscribe and Unsubscribe functions of the interface uhISharpEnh to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

8.2.12.2.1.3 uhSharpEnh\_AllNotifications

Signature

```
const uhSharpEnh_Notifications_t
    uhSharpEnh_AllNotifications = 0x00000003;
```

Qualifiers

— None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhSharpEnh_Notification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions of the interface `uhISharpEnh` to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

**8.2.12.2.1.4    `uhSharpEnh_CdsNotification_t`****Signature**

```
typedef enum _uhSharpEnh_CdsNotification_t {
    uhSharpEnh_CdsSubscriptionChanged = 0x00000001,
    uhSharpEnh_CdsLevelChanged       = 0x00000002
} uhSharpEnh_CdsNotification_t, *puhSharpEnh_CdsNotification_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-element

**Description**

Values of this type represent notification functions. That is, there is a one-to-one correspondence between these values and the functions in the notification interface `uhISharpEnhCdsNtf`.

**Values****Table 1124**

| Name                                           | Description                                     |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uhSharpEnh_CdsSubscriptionChanged</code> | Represents <code>OnSubscriptionChanged</code> . |
| <code>uhSharpEnh_CdsLevelChanged</code>        | Represents <code>OnLevelChanged</code> .        |

**8.2.12.2.1.5    `uhSharpEnh_CdsNotifications_t`****Signature**

```
typedef Int32 uhSharpEnh_CdsNotifications_t,
    *puhSharpEnh_CdsNotifications_t;
```

**Qualifiers**

— enum-set

**Description**

Values of this type represent sets of notification functions which are typically constructed by logical OR-ing of values of type `uhSharpEnh_CdsNotification_t`. These values are used in the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions of the interface `uhISharpEnhCds` to specify the event notifications to be enabled or disabled.

## 8.2.12.2.1.6 uhSharpEnh\_CdsAllNotifications

**Signature**

```
const uhSharpEnh_CdsNotifications_t
    uhSharpEnh_CdsAllNotifications = 0x00000003;
```

**Qualifiers**

— None.

**Description**

Defines the set of all values of type `uhSharpEnh_CdsNotification_t`. This constant can be used in calls of the `Subscribe` and `Unsubscribe` functions of the interface `uhISharpEnhCds` to enable or disable all event notifications, respectively.

## 8.2.12.2.2 Model Types &amp; Constants

None.

## 8.2.12.3 Logical Component

## 8.2.12.3.1 Interface-Role Model

The interface role-model is depicted in Figure 135.

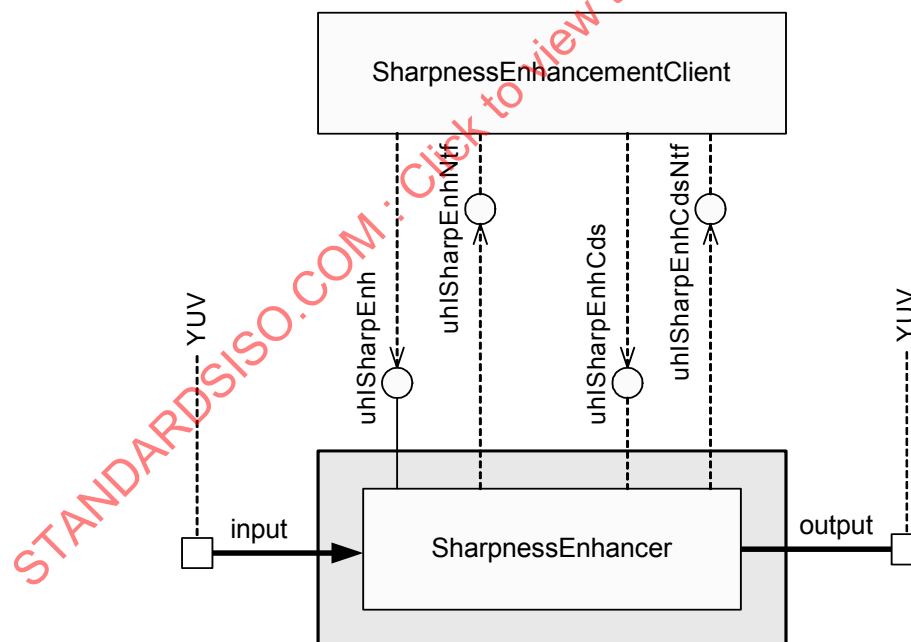


**Figure 135 — Interface-Role Model of the Sharpness Enhancement logical component**

The Sharpness Enhancement logical component (grey box) consists of the `SharpnessEnhancer` role. This role provides the interface `uhISharpEnh` for controlling the level of SE and the interface `uhISharpEnhCds` for controlling the level of CDS. The control interfaces are meant for use by the client (`SharpnessEnhancementClient`). This client can optionally provide call-back interfaces

(uhISharpEnhNtf and uhISharpEnhCdsNtf) allowing it to subscribe to notifications of events in the Sharpness Enhancement logical component.

### 8.2.12.3.2 Diversity

#### 8.2.12.3.2.1 Provided Interfaces

Table 1125

| Role                       | Interface         | Presence  |
|----------------------------|-------------------|-----------|
| SharpnessEnhancer          | uhISharpEnh       | mandatory |
| SharpnessEnhancementClient | uhISharpEnhNtf    | optional  |
| SharpnessEnhancer          | uhISharpEnhCds    | optional  |
| SharpnessEnhancementClient | uhISharpEnhCdsNtf | optional  |

#### 8.2.12.3.2.2 Configurable Items

Table 1126

| Role              | Attribute         |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| SharpnessEnhancer | minSharpnessLevel |
| SharpnessEnhancer | maxSharpnessLevel |
| SharpnessEnhancer | minCdsLevel       |
| SharpnessEnhancer | maxCdsLevel       |

#### 8.2.12.3.2.3 Constraints

- $\text{maxSharpnessLevel} \geq \text{minSharpnessLevel}$
- $\text{maxCdsLevel} \geq \text{minCdsLevel}$

#### 8.2.12.3.3 Instantiation

##### 8.2.12.3.3.1 Objects Created

The following objects are created when the logical component is instantiated:

Table 1127

| Type              | Object | Multiplicity |
|-------------------|--------|--------------|
| SharpnessEnhancer | se     | 1            |

##### 8.2.12.3.3.2 Initial State

The following constraints apply to the initial state of a logical component instance:

- $\text{se.sharpnessEnabled} == \text{False}$
- $\text{se.sharpnessLevel} == \text{se.minSharpnessLevel}$
- $\text{se.cdsEnabled} == \text{False}$

— se.cdsLevel == se.minCdsLevel

8.2.12.3.4 Execution Constraints

The interfaces provided by an instance of this logical component may not be accessed concurrently from different threads. The only exceptions are those functions that have the qualifier "thread-safe".

8.2.12.4 Roles

8.2.12.4.1 SharpnessEnhancer

Signature

```
role SharpnessEnhancer {
  Bool                sharpnessEnabled;
  const UInt32        minSharpnessLevel;
  const UInt32        maxSharpnessLevel;
  UInt32              sharpnessLevel;
  Bool                cdsEnabled;
  const UInt32        minCdsLevel;
  const UInt32        maxCdsLevel;
  UInt32              cdsLevel;
}
```

Qualifiers

— root

Description

The SharpnessEnhancer role controls the level for enhancing the sharpness of a luminance signal via LTI and peaking, and it controls the level for enhancing the sharpness of a luminance signal via CDS. The levels of SE and CDS can be set and both sharpness enhancement methods of the SharpnessEnhancer can be enabled or disabled.

Independent Attributes

Table 1128

| Name              | Description                              |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------|
| sharpnessEnabled  | Indicates whether SE is enabled or not.  |
| minSharpnessLevel | The minimum SE level.                    |
| maxSharpnessLevel | The maximum SE level.                    |
| sharpnessLevel    | The current SE level.                    |
| cdsEnabled        | Indicates whether CDS is enabled or not. |
| minCdsLevel       | The minimum CDS level.                   |
| maxCdsLevel       | The maximum CDS level.                   |
| cdsLevel          | The current CDS level.                   |

Dependent Attributes

None.

**Invariants**

- $\text{minSharpnessLevel} \leq \text{sharpnessLevel} \leq \text{maxSharpnessLevel}$
- $\text{minCdsLevel} \leq \text{cdsLevel} \leq \text{maxCdsLevel}$

**Instantiation**

See subclause 8.2.12.3.3.

**Streaming Behavior**

The `SharpnessEnhancer` has a YUV signal as an input. When SE and/or CDS are enabled, the `SharpnessEnhancer` will perform SE and/or CDS on the input stream. Enhancements only apply to the Y component of the signal (CDS uses the UV signal as input to enhance the sharpness of the Y signal). The processed stream is passed to the output.

**Active Behavior**

The `SharpnessEnhancer` has standard notification behavior (see `uhISharpEnhNtf` and `uhISharpEnhCdsNtf`).

**8.2.12.4.2 SharpnessEnhancementClient****Signature**

```
role SharpnessEnhancementClient {}
```

**Qualifiers**

- actor

**Description**

A `SharpnessEnhancementClient` represents a user of the interfaces `uhISharpEnh` and `uhISharpEnhCds`.

**8.2.12.5 Interfaces****8.2.12.5.1 uhISharpEnh****Qualifiers**

None.

**Description**

This interface controls the level of SE that is applied to the video signal.

**Interface ID**

```
uuid( D539C012-4D67-42f9-980F-2BFF7260D93E )
```

**Remarks**

In the following function specifications, the name `se` will be used to refer to the provider of this interface; see subclause 8.2.12.3.3.1.

8.2.12.5.1.1   Subscribe

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Subscribe (  
    [in] uhISharpEnhNtf          *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32                  cookie,  
    [in] uhSharpEnh_Notifications_t  notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— subscribe-function

8.2.12.5.1.2   Unsubscribe

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t Unsubscribe (  
    [in] uhISharpEnhNtf          *pINotify,  
    [in] UInt32                  cookie,  
    [in] uhSharpEnh_Notifications_t  notifs );
```

Qualifiers

— unsubscribe-function

8.2.12.5.1.3   GetEnabled

Signature

```
uhErrorCode_t GetEnabled (  
    [out] pBool      pEnabled);
```

Qualifiers

- synchronous
- thread-safe

Description

Returns whether SE is enabled or not.

Parameters

Table 1129

| Name     | Description                                                                  |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pEnabled | Output parameter returning whether SE is enabled (True) or disabled (False). |

Return Values

Standard.

Precondition

True

Action

None.